

THE BOOK
OF MORMON

סֵפֶר מוֹרְמוֹן

THE BOOK OF MORMON

סֵפֶר מוֹרְמוֹן



Institute of Ancient Studies

מִכּוֹן מַחְקַר הָעֵת הָעַתִּיקָה

ספר מורמון

הספר ראה אור בישראל על ידי מכון
מחקר העת העתיקה

© 2025 כל הזכויות שמורות למכון
מחקר העת העתיקה

www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il

The Book of Mormon

Published in Israel by the Institute of Ancient Studies

© Copyright 2025 Institute of Ancient Studies

All rights reserved

www.InstituteofAncientStudies.co.il

מכון מחקר העת העתיקה פועל ללא תלות בכל
כנסייה, דת או כת ואינו מבקש להמיר את הדת
של שום אדם ושום עם. מטרתו היא הפצת כתב
הקודש של ספר מורמון לעם ולארץ שבהם נולד.

התרגום העברי של ספר מורמון הושלם בשנים
2018–2024 בידי צוות של ארבעה לשונאים
ישראלים מקצועיים. מרביתו של החומר
לספר מבוסס בעיקר על מהדורת ספר מורמון
באנגלית מ-1830, תוך הסתמכות מסוימת על
מהדורת 1920.

The Institute of Ancient Studies operates independent of any church,
religion, or sect and does not seek to persuade any person or people to
another religion. Rather, it seeks to disseminate the sacred scripture
of the Book of Mormon to the people and land of its inception.

The Hebrew translation of the Book of Mormon was completed in the
years 2018–2024 by a team of four professional Israeli linguists. The
work's core material is based primarily on the 1830 English edition
of the Book of Mormon with some reliance on the 1920 edition.

תִּכְוֵן הָעִנְיָנִים

CONTENTS

מבוא	vii	FOREWORD
הקדמה	1	PREFACE
ספר נְפִי א	3	THE BOOK OF 1 NEPHI
ספר נְפִי ב	65	THE BOOK OF 2 NEPHI
ספר יַעֲקֹב	141	THE BOOK OF JACOB
ספר אֶנוֹשׁ	164	THE BOOK OF ENOS
ספר יָרוֹם	167	THE BOOK OF JAROM
ספר אוֹמְנִי	169	THE BOOK OF OMNI
דְּבָרֵי מוֹרְמוֹן	172	WORDS OF MORMON
ספר מוֹשִׁיעַ	175	THE BOOK OF MOSIAH
ספר עֲלְמָא	256	THE BOOK OF ALMA
ספר הֵלְמָן	472	THE BOOK OF HELAMAN
ספר נְפִי ג	525	THE BOOK OF 3 NEPHI
ספר נְפִי ד	601	THE BOOK OF 4 NEPHI
ספר מוֹרְמוֹן	607	THE BOOK OF MORMON
ספר אֶתֶר	631	THE BOOK OF ETHER
ספר מוֹרוֹנִי	673	THE BOOK OF MORONI

מבוא

ספר מורמון הוא תעוד של נביאים יהודים שנודדו ליבשת אמריקה בסביבות שנת 600 לפנה"ס. הספירה והוא היסטוריה מקצרת של צאצאיהם עד לנפילת הציויליזציה שלהם בשנת 421 לספירה. הספר מכיל גם היסטוריה מקצרת של עם שנודד ליבשת אמריקה ממגדל בבל.

ספר מורמון תרגם לאנגלית במשך חדשים בידי יוסף סמית, כאשר היה בן עשרים וארבע. הספר תרגם באמצעות אורים ותמים או אבן חוזה ממצרית מתקנת שהייתה חרוטה על גבי לוחות זהב, וראה אור בפעם הראשונה בשנת 1830 בפלמיר, ניו יורק.

נביאי ספר מורמון ראו את הסוף למן ההתחלה ונבאו את בואו של המשיח שנגלה אליהם לאחר תחייתו מן המתים. נאמנותו של ספר מורמון לכתבי הקודש של היהודים בצאה לידי בטוי בהגשמת אלוהים את בריתותיו להשבת בית ישראל.

FOREWORD

The Book of Mormon is a record of Jewish prophets who migrated to the Americas about 600 B.C. and an abridged history of their descendants until their civilization ended in A.D. 421. It also contains an abridged history of a people who migrated to the Americas from the Tower of Babel.

The Book of Mormon was translated into English during a two-month period by Joseph Smith at age twenty-four years. Translated by means of Urim and Thummim or seer stone from Reformed Egyptian writings inscribed on gold plates, it was first published in 1830 in Palmyra, New York.

Book of Mormon prophets saw the end from the beginning and foretold the coming of Messiah, who appeared to them after his resurrection from the dead. The Book of Mormon's fidelity to sacred Jewish scriptures is seen in God's fulfilling his covenants to restore the house of Israel.

הַקְדָּמָה

תִּאֲוֹר אֲשֶׁר נִכְתָּב בְּיַד מוֹרְמוֹן עַל גְּבֵי לוחות
הַלְקוּחִים מִלּוּחֹת נָפִי. לְפִיכָּה, זֶהוּ קְצוֹר
קוֹרוֹת עִם נָפִי וְכֵן שֶׁל הַלְמָנִים. נִכְתָּב בְּעֵבוֹר
הַלְמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְכֵן
לְיְהוּדִים וְלַגּוֹיִים. נִכְתָּב בְּדֶרֶךְ שֶׁל צוּי וּבְרוּחַ
הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַהֲתַגְלוֹת. נִכְתָּב וְנִחְתָּם וְהִטְמָן
לְשֵׁם יְהוָה כְּדֵי שֶׁלֹּא יֵאבֹד. יֵצֵא לְאוֹר עַל יְדֵי
מִתְּנַת אֱלֹהִים וּבְכַחוֹ לְמַעַן בְּאוּרוֹ. נִחְתָּם בְּיַד
מוֹרְמוֹנִי וְהִטְמָן לְשֵׁם יְהוָה כְּדֵי שְׂרִיפָה אוֹר
בַּעֲת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינָיו מֵאֵת הַגּוֹיִים. בְּאוֹר
תִּאֲוֹר זֶה עַל יְדֵי מִתְּנַת אֱלֹהִים.

נוֹסֵף עַל כֵּן, קְצוֹר הַלְקוּחַ מִסֵּפֶר אֶתֶר, שֶׁהוּא
תַּעֲדוֹר שֶׁל אֲנָשֵׁי יָרֵד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִפְּזָרִים בְּזִמְנָן
שִׁיהוּה בְּלִבָּל אֶת שְׂפַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, כְּאֲשֶׁר הֵם
בְּנוֹ מַגְדֵּל כְּדֵי לְהַגִּיעַ לַשָּׁמַיִם. אָכֵן זֶה נֹעֵד
לְהִרְאוֹת לְשִׂאֲרֵית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּמְה גְדוּלִים
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה לְאַבוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכְדֵי
שִׂידְעוּ אֶת בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, וְכִי הֵם לֹא מִגְרָשִׁים
מִפְּנֵי לְעוֹלָם, וְכֵן כְּדֵי לְשַׁכְנֵעַ אֶת הַיְּהוּדִים
וְאֶת הַגּוֹיִים כִּי יִשׁוּעַ הוּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, הָאֵל
הַנִּצָּחִי, הַמִּתְגַּלֵּה לִפְנֵי כָּל הָעַמִּים. וְעַתָּה, אִם
יֵשׁ פְּגָמִים, מְקוֹרָם בְּטָעוֹת אֲנוּשׁ; לְפִיכָּה אֵל
תִּרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים כְּדֵי שֶׁתִּמָּצְאוּ לֹלֵא
רַבִּב בְּכֵס מִשְׁפַּט הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

PREFACE

An account written by the hand of Mormon upon plates taken from the plates of Nephi. Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites. Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile. Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation. Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof. Sealed up by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile. The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven. Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel how great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever. And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that Jesus is the Christ, the eternal God, manifesting himself unto all nations. And now, if there are faults, they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment seat of Christ.

ספר נפִי א

תאור קורות לחי ואשתו שריה, וארבעת בָּנָיו, הנקראים, החל בבכור, לָמָן, לְמוּאֵל, שָׁם וְנָפִי. יהוה מזהיר את לחי לצאת מארץ ירושלים, כי הוא מתנבא לעם על עוונם והם מבקשים לאבד את חייו. הוא יוצא למסע של שלשה ימים במדבר עם משפחתו. נפִי לוקח את אחיו וחוזר לארץ ירושלים בעבור כתב הזכרון אשר ליהודים. תאור סבלם. הם לוקחים את בנות ישמעאל להם לנשים. הם לוקחים את משפחותיהם ויוצאים למדבר. תלאותיהם וסבלותיהם במדבר. מהלך מסעיהם. הם מגיעים למים הגדולים. אחיו של נפִי מורדים בו. הוא מבלבל אותם, ובונה ספינה. הם קוראים את שם המקום רב־שפּע. הם חוצים את המים הגדולים אל הארץ היעודה, ושאר הקורות אותם. זאת לפי תאור נפִי; או במלים אחרות, אֲנִי, נפִי, כתבתי את כתב הזכרון הזה. (בערך 600–588 לפני הספירה.)

א

אֲנִי, נפִי, נולדתי להורים נכבדים, לָכֵן יִסְדּוּ לְמוּדִי עַל חֶלֶק מִכָּל חֻכְמַת אָבִי. וְאֵף אֲשֶׁר רָעוֹת רַבּוֹת רָאִיתִי בְיָמַי, חָנַן אוֹתִי יְהוָה בְּרַב טוֹבוֹ כָּל יָמַי. אָכֵן, קִנֵּיתִי רַב דַּעַת עַל טוֹב אֱלֹהִים וּסְתָרָיו; עַל כֵּן אֶכְתֹּב אֶת כְּתָב זְכוֹנֹתִי בְיָמַי.

אָכֵן, אֶכְתֹּב כְּתָב זְכוֹרֹן בְּשֵׁפֶת אָבִי, אֲשֶׁר חָבְרוּ בָּהּ חֻכְמַת הַיְּהוּדִים וּשְׁפַת הַמִּצְרִים.

יָדַעְתִּי אֲנִי כִּי כְּתָב הַזְכוֹרֹן אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי רוֹשֵׁם אִמְתָּהּ הוּא; וּבְמוֹ יָדִי כְּתַבְתִּיו וְהוּא עַל פִּי יִדְעָתִי.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת אַחַת לְמַלְכוּת צִדְקִיָּהוּ מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה, וְאָבִי, לָחִי, גָּר בִּירוּשָׁלַם כָּל יָמָיו; וּבַעֲצֵם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים, וְהֵם הִתְנַבְּאוּ בָּעָם כִּי יָשׁוּבוּ מִדְּרָכָם כֹּן תִּחְבֹּר הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם.

וּבִצְאַת אָבִי, לָחִי, הִתְפַּלֵּל הוּא אֶל יְהוָה, אָכֵן כָּכָל לְבֹ הָעֵתִיר בְּעַד עַמּוֹ;

וְהָיָה בְּהֵעֲתִירוֹ אֶל יְהוָה, בָּא עַמּוּד אֵשׁ וְשָׁכַן עַל צוּר לְפָנָיו; וְהוּא רָאָה וּשְׁמַע רַבּוֹת.

THE BOOK OF 1 NEPHI

An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, beginning at the eldest, Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesies to the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He takes three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi takes his brethren and returns to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confounds them, and builds a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record. (About 600–588 B.C.)

1

1 I Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

2 Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

3 And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

4 For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

5 Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

6 And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much;

וּבְחִזְוֵהוּ חִיל וְרַעְדָּה עָזָה מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
רָאָה וְאֵף שָׁמַע.

and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

וְהָיָה בְּשׁוּבוֹ אֶל בֵּיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם,
הוּא נָפַל עַל מִטָּתוֹ, יַעַן כִּי גָבְרוּ עָלָיו רוּחַ
יְהוָה וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה.

7 And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

וּבְגִבּוֹר עָלָיו הָרוּחַ, הוּא נִשָּׂא הֶרְחָק בְּחִזּוֹן,
וְרָאָה אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְדָמָה כִּי רָאָה אֶת
אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא יוֹשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּאוֹ, וְסָבִיבוֹ מִקְהֵלִי
מַלְאָכִים אֵין מִסְפָּר מְרֻנְנִים וּמְשַׁבְּחִים
לְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

8 And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

וְהָיָה כִּי רָאָה בְּרִדָּת אֶחָד מִקִּרְבַּי הַשָּׁמַיִם,
וְהִנֵּה זֵיוֹ גָּדוֹל מִזֵּהָר הַשָּׁמֶשׁ בְּצַהֲרֵי הַיּוֹם.

9 And it came to pass that he saw one descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

וְהוּא רָאָה שְׁנַיִם עֶשְׂרִי נֹסְפִים בָּאִים אַחֲרָיו,
וְזִינָם עַז מִזֵּהָר כּוֹכְבֵי הָרָקִיעַ.

10 And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

וְהֵם יָרְדוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְבָא הָרִאשׁוֹן
וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי אָבִי וְנָתַן לוֹ סֵפֶר וַצִּוְהוּ לִקְרֹא.

11 And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

וְהָיָה כְּקִרְאוֹ הוּא נִמְלָא רוּחַ יְהוָה.

12 And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

וְהוּא קָרָא בְּסֵפֶר וְאָמַר: אוֹי אוֹי לִירוּשָׁלַם,
כִּי רָאִיתִי אֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֶיךָ! וְכֵן עוֹד רַבִּים
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָא אָבִי בְּסֵפֶר עַל אוֹדוֹת
יְרוּשָׁלַם, אֲשֶׁר הִיא תִּחְרַב עַל יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, וְאֲשֶׁר
רַבִּים יָפְלוּ בַּחֲרָב וְרַבִּים יָגְלוּ בַּבִּלָּה.

13 And he read, saying: Woe, woe, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

וְהָיָה בְּקִרְאָה אָבִי בְּסֵפֶר, וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ דְּבָרִים רַבִּים
גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים, הוּא צָעַק אֶל יְהוָה דְּבָרִים
רַבִּים, כְּמוֹ אֱלֹהִים: גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים מַעֲשֵׂיךָ,
יְהוָה אֵל שֶׁדִּי! כֹּס מַלְכוּתְךָ בְּגִבְהֵי מְרוֹמַיִם
וּגְבוּרָתְךָ וְטוֹבָךָ וְרַחֲמֶיךָ עַל כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ;
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר רַחוּם אַתָּה, לֹא תִסְבֵּל כִּי יֵאבְדוּ
הַבָּאִים אֵלֶיךָ!

14 And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth, and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

כָּלשׁוֹן הַזֹּאת דִּבֶּר אָבִי בְּשִׁבְחוֹ אֶת אֱלֹהָיו,
כִּי עֲלָצָה נַפְשׁוֹ, וְכָל לְבוֹ נִמְלָא מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר רָאָה, אָכֵן, אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָהוּ יְהוָה.

15 And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶסְפֵּר אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב אָבִי, כִּי הוּא כָּתַב דְּבָרִים רַבִּים
אֲשֶׁר רָאָה בְּחִזּוֹנוֹת וּבַחֲלוֹמוֹת; וְהוּא אֵף

16 And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he

נְפִי א א:יז-ב:ד

- כתב דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָבֵא אוֹתָם
וְהִגִּידָם לְבָנָיו וְאֵינִי לֹא אֶסְפָּרם כְּתָמָם.
- אךְ אֲנִי אֶסְפָּר אֶת קוֹרוֹתַי בְּיָמַי. הִנְנִי חוֹרֵט
אֶת קַצּוֹר כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי עַל גְּבִי לוחות
אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי בְּמִי יָדִי. וְאַחֵר קָצְרִי אֶת כְּתָב
הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי, אֶכְתֹּב אֶת קוֹרוֹת חַיִּי.
- עַל כֵּן חָפַצְנִי אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ, כִּי אַחֵר הָרְאוֹת
יְהוָה נִפְלְאוֹת כֹּה רַבּוֹת לְאָבִי, לְחִי, עַל אוֹדוֹת
חֲרָבֹן יְרוּשָׁלַם, יֵצֵא אָבִי אֶל הָעָם וְהַחֵל לְהַנְבִּיא
בְּקִרְבָּם וּלְהוֹדִיעֵם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה
וְאֵף שָׁמַע.
- וְהָיָה כִּי לָעֵגוּ לוֹ אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד בָּם, כִּי הוּא אָכֵן הוֹכִיחָם עַל
רְשָׁעָתָם וְעַל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהוּא הֵעִיד כִּי
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה וְשָׁמַע, וְכֵן הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר קָרָא בַסֵּפֶר, מִדְּבָרִים מִפְּרָשׁוֹת עַל
בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְאֵף עַל גְּאֻלַּת הָעוֹלָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּשָׁמַע אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו; אָכֵן, כְּמַעֲשֵׂם בְּנֵי־אִדָם
אֲשֶׁר מָקְדָם, אֲשֶׁר גִּרְשׁוּם וּרְגָמוּם וְהָרְגוּם;
וְהֵם גַּם בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ לְקַחְתָּהּ. וְאֲנִי, נָפִי,
אֶרְאֶה אֶתְכֶם כִּי רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה הֵם עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר
בְּחָרָם, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם, לְחַזְקָם עַד הַיּוֹם
לָהֶם הַכֹּחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

ב

2

- וַיְהִי דְּבַר אֶל אָבִי בַחֲלוֹם וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: בְּרוּךְ
אַתָּה, לְחִי, עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ וְעַל כִּי
הָיִיתָ נֶאֱמָן וְתוֹדִיעָה אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיךָ. הִנֵּה הֵם מְבַקְשִׁים אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ.
- וַיְהִי צָוָה אֶת אָבִי בַחֲלוֹם כִּי יִקַּח אֶת
מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וַיֵּצֵא מִמְּדִבְרָה.
- וְאָבִי שָׁמַע לְדְּבַר יְהוָה וַעֲשָׂה כַּאֲשֶׁר צָוָהוּ.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא יֵצֵא מִמְּדִבְרָה, וְעֹזֵב אֶת בֵּיתוֹ
וְאֶת נַחֲלָתוֹ וְאֶת זְהָבוֹ וְאֶת כֶּסֶפוֹ, וְאֶת
- 1 For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.
- 2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.
- 3 And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.
- 4 And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver,

יְקָרָתָיו; וְלֹא לָקַח עִמּוֹ דָּבָר, וּזְלָת מִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ
וְצִידָה וְאַהֲלִים, וְהָיָה יֵצֵא הַמִּדְבָּרָה.

and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

וְהָיָה יָרַד אֶל קְרִבַּת הַחוֹף אֲשֶׁר לִים סוּף.
וְהָיָה נָסַע בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּפָאֲתֵי יַם סוּף עַם
מִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָּהּ אֲמִי שָׂרִיָּה וְאַחֵי
הַגְּדוֹלִים, לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם.

5 And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָסַע שְׁלֹשֶׁת יָמִים בַּמִּדְבָּר,
הָיָה נָטָה אֶת אֹהֶלֹו בְּעֵמֶק לְיַד נְהַר מַיִם.

6 And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

וְהָיָה בָּנָה מִזְבֵּחַ אֲבָנִים וְהִקְרִיב קֶרֶבֶן לַיהוָה
וְנָתַן תּוֹדוֹת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

7 And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

וְהָיָה קָרָא אֶת שֵׁם הַנְּהַר לָמֹן, וְהָיָה נִשְׁפָּף
אֶל יַם סוּף. וְהָעֵמֶק הַזֶּה בְּגִדּוֹת הַנְּהַר, אֲצֵל
תּוֹצְאוֹתָיו.

8 And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

וְכִרְאוֹת אָבִי כִי מִיָּמֵי הַנְּהַר נִשְׁפָּכִים
אֶל אֲגֹן יַם סוּף, הָיָה דְּבַר אֶל לָמֹן לֵאמֹר:
מִי יִתֵּן וְתִהְיֶה כְּנְהַר הַזֶּה, שׁוֹאֵף תָּמִיד
אֶל אֲגֹן כָּל הַצִּדָּקָה!

9 And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

וְהָיָה אִף דְּבַר אֶל לְמוֹאֵל: מִי יִתֵּן
וְהִיִּיתָ כְּעֵמֶק הַזֶּה, אֵיתָן וְיִצְבֵּי וּבִלְתִּי סָר
מִמִּצְוֹת יְהוָה!

10 And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

כֵּן דְּבַר אָבִי מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי עֵרֶף לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל,
כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ רַבּוֹת עַל אֲבִיהֶם, עַל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה
אִישׁ חֲזוֹנוֹת וְעַל אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִילָם מֵאֶרֶץ
יְרוּשָׁלַם, לְנִטֵּשׁ אֶת נַחֲלָתָם וְאֶת זָהָבָם
וְאֶת כֶּסֶףָם וְאֶת יְקָרָתָיהֶם, לָמוֹת בַּמִּדְבָּר.
וְהֵם אָמְרוּ כִּי זֹאת עֲשָׂה מִפְּנֵי דְמִיוֹנוֹת
לְבֹ הָאֵיּוֹלִים.

11 Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

כֵּן הִתְלוֹנְנוּ לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל, הַגְּדוֹלִים אֲשֶׁר
בְּאַחֵים, עַל אֲבִיהֶם, וְהֵם הִתְלוֹנְנוּ כִּי לֹא
הִבִּינוּ אֶת מַפְעָלוֹת הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר יִצְרָם.

12 And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

אִף הֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי תִחָרַב הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה
יְרוּשָׁלַם, כְּדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים. וְהָיוּ הֵם כְּאִנְשֵׁי
יְהוּדָה אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם, אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת
נַפְשׁ אָבִי.

13 Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

וְאָבִי דְּבַר אֲלֵיהֶם תְּקִיפוֹת בְּעֵמֶק לְמוֹאֵל,
וְהָיָה מְלֵא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָעַד גּוֹפָם

14 And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did

נְפִי א ב:טו-ג:א

מִפְּנֵי וְהוּא הִכְלִימָם לְבָל יִהְיוּ לְדָבָר בּוֹ סָרָה;
וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּם.

shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

15 וְאָבִי שָׁכַן בְּאֹהֶל.

15 And my father dwelt in a tent.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אֲף אֲשֶׁר הָיִיתִי צָעִיר מְאֹד,
הָיִיתִי בָּעַל מְדָה, וְאִף הָיָה חֲפָצִי רַב לְדַעַת
עַל אוֹדוֹת מִסְתָּרֵי אֱלֹהִים, עַל כֵּן זָעַקְתִּי
אֶל יְהוָה, וְאָכֵן הוּא פָקַדְנִי וְנָטָה אֶת לִבִּי
לְהֶאֱמִין בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אָבִי, וְלֹא מָרַדְתִּי
בּוֹ כְּאֶחָי.

16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל שָׁם וְהוֹדַעְתִּיהוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה לִי יְהוָה בְּרוּחַ קֹדֶשׁ, וְהוּא
הֶאֱמִין לְדִבְרֵי.

17 And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

אֲף לָמֵן וּלְמוֹאֵל לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי.
וּבְהִיּוֹתִי נִעְצָב עַל קִשִּׁי לִבָּם, קָרָאתִי אֶל
יְהוָה לְמַעַנָם.

18 But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

וְהָיָה דְּבַר יְהוָה אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה,
נְפִי, עַל אֱמוּנָתְךָ, כִּי שָׁקַדְתָּ לְשִׁחְרָנִי
בְּלִב עָנָו.

19 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְהִצַּלְתֶּם,
וְתִבְלֹו אֶל אֶרֶץ יְעוּדָה, אֶל אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
הִכִּינוֹתִי לָכֶם, אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָה מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת.

20 And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

וְהָיָה אִם יִמְרְדוּ בְךָ אֶחָיו, הִכְרַת יִכְרְתוּ
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

21 And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְהָיִיתָ מוֹשֵׁל
עַל אֶחָיו וּמוֹרָה לָהֶם.

22 And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

כִּי הִנֵּה בְיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִמְרְדוּ בִּי, אֲשַׁלַּח בָּהֶם
מְאָרָה קָשָׁה, וְלֹא יַעֲצְרוּ כַח לִגְבֹר עַל זִרְעֶךָ,
מִלִּבְד אֲשֶׁר יִמְרְדוּ בִּי אֲף הֵם.

23 For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

וְהָיָה אִם יִמְרְדוּ בִּי זִרְעֶךָ, וְנָתַתִּי אֶת זִרְעֶךָ
שׁוֹט לְהַכּוֹתָם, לְעוֹרָרָם לְזָכֹר אֶת דְּרָכֵי.

24 And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

ג

3

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אַחֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי עִם יְהוָה, שִׁבְתִּי אֶל
אֹהֶל אָבִי.

1 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

- 2 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.
- 3 For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.
- 4 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.
- 5 And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.
- 6 Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.
- 7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.
- 8 And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.
- 9 And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.
- 10 And it came to pass that when we had come up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.
- 11 And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.
- 12 And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.
- 13 And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.
- וְאָבִי דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲלֹמְתִי חִלּוֹם, וּבוֹ צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה כִּי תָשׁוּבוּ, אֶתְּךָ וְאֶתְּךָ, אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- כִּי הִנֵּה בְיַד לָבָן כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים וְכֵן תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתַי, וְהֵם חָרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל.
- עַל כֵּן צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה כִּי תֵלְכוּ, אֶתְּךָ וְאֶתְּךָ, אֶל בֵּית לָבָן, וּתְבַקְשׁוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת וּתְבִיאֻם הֵנָּה, הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- וְעַתָּה, הִנֵּה אֶתְּךָ מְתַלּוֹנְנִים בְּאַמְרִם כִּי קָשָׁה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּרְשָׁתִי מֵהֵם; אֲךָ רָאִה כִּי לֹא אֲנִי דִרְשָׁתִי זֹאת מֵיָדָם, כִּי אִם מִצִּוּת יְהוָה הִיא.
- עַל כֵּן, לָכֵן, בְּנִי, וְיְהוָה יִחְנֶנֶךָ, כִּי לֹא תִתְלַוְנָתָהּ.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אָמַרְתִּי אֶל אָבִי: אֵלַי וְעֲשִׂיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לֹא יִצְוֶה יְהוָה אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, בְּלֹא אִם פָּנָה לָהֶם דֶּרֶךְ לַמַּעַן יִקְיִמוּ אֶת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם.
- וְהָיָה בְּשִׁמְעֵי אָבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׂמַח מְאֹד, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי בִרְכֵנִי יְהוָה.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, וְאֶחָיו יִצְחָק וְיִצְחָקוֹ בְּמִדְבָּר וְאֶחָיו עֲמֹנוֹ, לַעֲלוֹת לָאָרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְהָיָה בְּעֲלוֹתָנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, נוֹעֲצָנוּ אִישׁ בְּאָחָיו.
- וְהִפְלָנוּ גּוֹרְלוֹת, לְדַעַת מִי מִמֶּנּוּ יִלֶּךְ אֶל בֵּית לָבָן. וְהִגּוֹרֵל עַל לָמָן. וְלָמָן הָלַךְ אֶל בֵּית לָבָן וַדְּבַר עִמּוֹ, וְלָבָן יוֹשֵׁב בְּבֵיתוֹ.
- וְהוּא בִקֵּשׁ מִלָּבָן אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת הַחָרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָהֶם תּוֹלְדוֹת בֵּית אָבִי.
- וְלָבָן רָגַז וְגִרְשׁוֹ מִפָּנָיו וְלֹא אָבָה לְתַתּוֹ אֶת הַכְּתָבִים. וְאָמַר אֵלָיו לָבָן: שׂוֹדֵד אַתָּה, הִנֵּנִי קָם לְהָרְגֶךָ.

- 14 אך לָמֶן בָּרַח מִפָּנָיו וְסִפֵּר לָנוּ אֵת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לוֹ לָבוֹן. וְאַנְחָנוּ הִתְעַצְבָנוּ מְאֹד, וְאָחִי הָיוּ נִכְוָנִים לָשׁוּב אֶל אָבִי הַמְדַּבֵּרָה.
- 15 וְאָמַרְתִּי לָהֶם: חַי יְהוָה וְחַי נַפְשֵׁנוּ כִּי לֹא נֵרֵד אֶל אָבִינוּ הַמְדַּבֵּרָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָקִים אֵת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה.
- 16 עַל כֵּן, הָבָה נִשְׁמֹר אֲמוּנִים לְנַצֵּר אֵת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה; לָכֵן נֵרְדָּה נָא אֶל נַחֲלַת אָבִינוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה הַשָּׂאִיר זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל עֶשֶׂר וְכָל זֶאת עָשָׂה מִפָּנֵי מִצְוֹת יְהוָה,
- 17 יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי יְרוּשָׁלַם תִּהְרָב מִפָּנֵי רָשָׁעִת אֲנָשִׁיָּהּ.
- 18 כִּי הִנֵּה מָאֲסוּ אֵת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, וְאֵלּוּ יֹשֵׁב אָבִי בְּאַרְץ אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לְבָרֹחַ מִמֶּנָּה, הֵן אֲבָד אִף הוּא. עַל כֵּן שׁוּמָה הָיָה עָלָיו לָנוֹס מִן הָאֶרֶץ.
- 19 וְהִנֵּה, מִחֻקַּת אֱלֹהִים זֹאת אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּל אֵת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת, לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר לְבָנֵינוּ אֵת שִׁפְתֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ;
- 20 וְאִף לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר בְּעִבְרוֹם אֵת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים וּגְבוּרָתוֹ שָׁמָּה בְּפִיהֶם, מִימֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- 21 בַּדְּבָרִים כָּאֵלֶּה מִשְׁכַּתִּי אֵת לֵב אָחִי אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמְרוּ בְּאֲמוּנָה אֵת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 22 וַיְרֵדְנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתֵנוּ וְאֶסְפָּנוּ אֵת זָהָבֵנוּ וְאֵת כֶּסֶפֵּנוּ וְאֵת יְקָרוֹתֵינוּ.
- 23 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אֶסְפָּנוּ אֵת כָּל אֵלֶּה, עָלִינוּ שֵׁנִית אֶל בֵּית לָבוֹן.
- 24 וּבָאנוּ אֶל לָבוֹן וּבִקְשָׁנוּ מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יִתֵּן לָנוּ אֵת הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל אֲשֶׁר בְּעִבְרוֹם נָתַן לוֹ אֵת זָהָבֵנוּ וְאֵת כֶּסֶפֵּנוּ וְכָל יְקָרוֹתֵינוּ.

נְפִי א ג:כה-ד:ב

- 25 And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.
- וְהָיָה כִּכְרָאוֹת לָבָן אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ כִּי הָיָה רַב וְעָצוֹם הוּא חָמַד אוֹתוֹ, עַד אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשָׁנוּ מִבֵּיתוֹ וְאָף שָׁלַח אֶת עֲבָדָיו לְהָרִיגוּ, לְמַעַן יִנְחַל אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ.
- 26 And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.
- וּבְרַחְנוּ מִפְּנֵי עֲבָדֵי לָבָן, וְהָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְהִשְׁאִיר מֵאֲחֹר אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ, וְהוּא נָפַל בְּיַד לָבָן.
- 27 And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.
- וּבְרַחְנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, וְעֲבָדֵי לָבָן לֹא הִשִּׁיגוּנוּ. וְהִתְחַבְּאוּנוּ בְּמַעֲרַת סִלַּע.
- 28 And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.
- וְלָמָן רָגַז עָלַי וְכֵן עַל אָבִי; וְלִמְאוּאֵל, אַחֵר שָׁמְעוֹ לְדִבְרֵי לָמָן, כַּעַס אָף הוּא. עַל כֵּן דִּבְרוּ לָמָן וְלִמְאוּאֵל דְּבָרִים קָשִׁים רַבִּים אֵלֵינוּ, אַחֵיהֶם הַצְעִירִים, וְאָף הִכּוּנוּ בִּשְׁבָט.
- 29 And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִכּוֹתָם אוֹתָנוּ בִּשְׁבָט, וְהִנֵּה בָּא מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה וְעָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְדִבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: לָמָּה תִּכּוּ אֶת אַחֵיכֶם הַקָּטָן בִּשְׁבָט? הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי בָחַר יְהוָה לְהָיִיתׁ מוֹשֵׁל עָלֵיכֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם? הִנֵּה, עֲלֵה תַעֲלֶה שְׁנֵית יְרוּשָׁלַיִם וְנִתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדֵיכֶם.
- 30 And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלּוֹת הַמַּלְאָךְ לְדַבֵּר אֵלֵינוּ הוּא הִלָּךְ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 31 And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר צֵאתוֹ, הִחֲלוּ לָמָן וְלִמְאוּאֵל לְהִתְלַוֵּן שְׁנֵית לֵאמֹר: הֲכִיצֵד יִתֵּן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדֵינוּ? הִנֵּה אִישׁ חֲזָק הוּא וְיִשָּׁר חֲמֻשִׁים הֵנוּ וְיֵשׁ לֹא יָדוּ לְהָרִג חֲמֻשִׁים וּמִדּוּעַ אָף כִּי לֹא אוֹתָנוּ?

ד

4

- 1 And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?
- וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אֶחָי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּה נַעֲלֶה שְׁנֵית יְרוּשָׁלַיִם וְנִצְרְנוּ בְּאִמּוּנָה אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, כִּי הִנֵּה אֲדִיר הוּא מְכַל הָאָרֶץ, וּמִדּוּעַ אָף לֹא מְלָכָן וְחֲמֻשָּׁיו, וְאָף מִרְבָּבוֹתָיו?
- 2 Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.
- עַל כֵּן הִבֵּה נַעֲלֶה, וְחִזְקֵנוּ כַּמֹּשֶׁה, כִּי הוּא אָבָן דִּבֵּר אֶל מֵי יָם סוּף וְחָצוּ הַיָּם וְהִנֵּה, וְאֲבוֹתֵינוּ עָבְרוּ בּוֹ בַּיַּבֵּשׁ מִן הַשָּׁבִי, וְצִבְאוֹת פָּרַעַה רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם וְטָבְעוּ בְּמֵי יָם סוּף.

- הִנֵּה תִדְעוּ כִּי אֱמֶת הִיא; וְאִי יוֹדְעִים אֹתָם
כִּי מִלֵּאף דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם, אִיכָּה תִּהְיֶה סוֹף הַבָּה
נִעְלָה; בְּיַד יְהוָה לְהַצִּילֵנוּ, כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עִם
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וּבִידּוֹ לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת לָבָן, כַּאֲשֶׁר
עָשָׂה לְמִצְרַיִם.
- וּכְדַבְּרִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עוֹד אֲחִי רוּגְזִים
וְאִי יוֹסִיפוּ לְהִתְלַוֵּן; אֲךָ הֵם הִלְכוּ אַחֲרֵי עַד
בּוֹאֵנוּ אֶל קְרֶבֶת חוֹמוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְהָיָה בַּלַּיְלָה, וְאִמְרָתִי אֲלֵיהֶם לְהִסְתַּר מִחוּץ
לְחוֹמוֹת. וְאַחֲרֵי הִסְתַּרְם, הִתְגַּנְּבְתִּי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶל
תוֹךְ הָעִיר, וְהִלַּכְתִּי וּפְנֵי מוֹעֲדוֹת אֶל בֵּית לָבָן.
- הוּבְלַתִּי עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ מִבְּלִי דַעַת אֶת
אֲשֶׁר אֶעֱשֶׂה.
- וְאֲכֹן, הִלַּכְתִּי קְדִימָה; וּבְהִתְקַרְבִּי אֶל בֵּית
לָבָן וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אִישׁ נוֹפֵל לְפָנַי עַל הָאָרֶץ,
כִּי הָיָה שָׁכּוֹר מְיִין.
- וּבְקֶרְבִּי אֵלָיו רָאִיתִיו, וְהִנֵּה הוּא לָבָן.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וּשְׁלֶפֶתָיָהּ מִתְעַרָּה.
וְנֹצֵב הַחֶרֶב הָיָה זָהָב טָהוֹר, מַעֲשֵׂה אֲמָנוֹת,
וְלַחֲבָה פִלָּדָה יְקָרָה מְאֹד.
- וְהָרוּחַ דָּחַק בִּי כִּי אֶהְרֹג אֶת לָבָן, אֲךָ אֲנִי
אִמְרָתִי בְּלִבִּי: הֵן מֵעוֹלָם לֹא שָׁפַכְתִּי דָם אָדָם.
וְנִסְגוּתִי לְאַחֹר כִּי לֹא חָפַצְתִּי לְהִרְגוֹ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ שְׁנִית: הִנֵּה נִתְּנוּ יְהוָה בְּיָדְךָ.
וְאֲכֹן גַּם יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בִקֵּשׁ לָבָן אֶת נַפְשִׁי וְלֹא
שָׁמַע לְמִצְוֹת יְהוָה וְאִי גָזַל הוּא אֶת רְכוּשֵׁנוּ.
- וְהָרוּחַ הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר אֵלַי: הִרְגָּהוּ, כִּי נִתְּנוּ
יְהוָה בְּיָדְךָ.
- הִנֵּה הוֹרֵג יְהוָה אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים, לְהַקִּים אֶת
צְדָקַת דְּרָכּוֹ. כִּי טוֹב אֶבְדֹּן אִישׁ אֶחָד מִהַשְׁחָת
עִם שְׁלָם בְּחֶסֶר אֲמוּנָה.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, בְּשָׁמַעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
זָכַרְתִּי אֶת דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלַי בַּמִּדְבָּר
- 3 Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.
- 4 Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.
- 5 And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.
- 6 And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.
- 7 Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.
- 8 And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.
- 9 And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.
- 10 And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.
- 11 And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.
- 12 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;
- 13 Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.
- 14 And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying

- לֵאמֹר: אִם יִשְׁמֹר זֶרְעֶךָ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי יִצְלִיחוּ
בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה. that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.
- 15 אַף סָבַרְתִּי כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת
יְהוָה כְּכַתּוּב בְּתוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, בְּלִתִּי אִם תְּהִיָּה
הַתּוֹרָה בְּיָדָם. Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.
- 16 וְאִף יָדַעְתִּי כִּי נִחְרְטָה הַתּוֹרָה עַל גְּבֵי לוחות
נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל. And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.
- 17 וְיָדַעְתִּי עוֹד כִּי נָתַן יְהוָה אֶת לָבָן בְּיָדִי לְמַעַן
הַתְּכַלִּית הַזֹּאת, לְמַעַן אֶקַּבֵּל אֶת כְּתָבִי
הַזֶּכֶר עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו. And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.
- 18 עַל כֵּן שָׁמַעְתִּי לְקוֹל הָרוּחַ וְתַפְשִׁיתִי אֶת לָבָן
בְּשַׁעַר רֹאשׁוֹ, וְכָרַתִּי אֶת רֹאשׁוֹ בְּמוֹ חֶרֶב. Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.
- 19 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי אֶת רֹאשׁוֹ בְּחֶרֶב, לְקַחְתִּי
אֶת בְּגָדֵי לָבָן וּלְבָשָׁתִּים; לֹא הִחֲסֵרְתִּי דִבָּר.
וְחָגַרְתִּי אֶת שְׂרִיוֹנוֹ עַל מְתָנִי. And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.
- 20 וְכַעֲשׂוֹתִי זֹאת, הִלַּכְתִּי אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר אֲשֶׁר
לְלָבָן. וּבִלְכַתִּי אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר רָאִיתִי אֶת עַבְדּוֹ
לָבָן אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדוֹ מַפְתָּחוֹת הָאוֹצָר וְצִוִּיתִיָּהוּ,
וְקוֹלִי קוֹל לָבָן. אֲשֶׁר יָלַף עָמִי אֶל הָאוֹצָר. And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.
- 21 וְהוּא דָּמָה בְּלָבוֹ כִּי אֲדוֹנָיו לָבָן אֲנִי, כִּי רָאָה אֶת
הַמַּלְבוּשִׁים וְכֵן אֶת הַחֶרֶב הַחֲגוּרָה עַל מְתָנִי. And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.
- 22 וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עָמִי עַל אֲדוֹת זְקֵנֵי אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה,
בִּידְעוֹ כִּי אֲדוֹנָיו לָבָן נוֹעֵד עִמָּהֶם בַּלַּיְלָה. And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.
- 23 וְאֲנִי דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלָיו כְּמוֹ הָיִיתִי לָבָן. And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.
- 24 וְאֲמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו כִּי עָלִי לְשֵׂאת אֶת הַכְּתוּבִים
הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל אֶל אַחֵי
הַגְּדוֹלִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם מֵחוּץ לַחוֹמוֹת. And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.
- 25 וְאִף צִוִּיתִיו לָלֶכֶת אַחֵרִי. And I also bade him that he should follow me.
- 26 וְהוּא, בְּדַמּוֹתוֹ בִּנְפִשׁוֹ כִּי דִּבַּרְתִּי עַל אֲדוֹת בְּנֵי
הַקְּהֵלָה, וְכִי אָמַנְסָה הָיִיתִי לָבָן. אֲשֶׁר הִרְגֵּיתִי,
הַלֵּךְ אַחֵרִי. And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.
- 27 וּבִלְכַתִּי אֶל אַחֵי אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵחוּץ לַחוֹמוֹת,
הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת עַל אֲדוֹת זְקֵנֵי
אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה. And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

- 28 והיה כאשר ראני לָמֹן, הוא נִחָרד חָרָדָה גְדוֹלָה, וְכֵן לְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם, וְהֵם נָסוּ מִפָּנַי, כִּי דָמוּ בְנִפְשָׁם אֲשֶׁר לָבָן הוּא, וְכִי הוֹרִגְנִי, וּמִבְקֵשׁ הוּא אֶף אֶת נַפְשָׁם.
- 29 וְקִרְאתִי אַחֲרֵיהֶם, וְהֵם שָׁמְעוּנִי וְעָמְדוּ מִנּוּס מִפָּנַי.
- 30 והיה בְּרֹאוֹת עֶבֶד לָבָן אֶת אֶחָי, אֲחֻזְתָּהוּ רָעָדָה וְהוּא בָקֵשׁ לָנוֹס מִפָּנַי וּלְשׁוּב הָעִירָה, אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 31 וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, בְּהִיּוֹתִי אִישׁ בַּעַל מְדָה, וּבִאֲשֶׁר חָנַן אוֹתִי יְהוָה בְּכֹחַ רַב, תַּפְשֵׁתִי אֶת עֶבֶד לָבָן וְהִחֲזַקְתִּי בּוֹ לִבָּל יָנוּס.
- 32 And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.
- 33 וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֵלָיו בְּשִׁבּוּעָה כִּי לֹא יִירָא, כִּי חָפְשִׁי יִהְיֶה כְמוֹנוֹ, אִם יֵרֵד עִמָּנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- 34 And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.
- 35 וּבִשְׁמֻעוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי הִתְאַזָּר זֹרָם עַז. וְזֹרָם הוּא שֵׁם עֶבֶד לָבָן. וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי יֵרֵד הַמִּדְבָּרָה, אֶל אֲבִינוּ. וְאֵף נִשְׁבַּע הוּא לָנוּ כִּי יֵשֵׁב עִמָּנוּ מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהַלָּאָה.
- 36 And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.
- 37 וְאַנְחֵנוּ חָפְצֵנוּ כִּי יֵשֵׁב עִמָּנוּ לִבָּל יֵדְעוּ אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוּדָה כִּי בָרַחְנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה פֶּן יִרְדּוּ אַחֲרֵינוּ וְיִמָּיתוּנוּ.
- 38 And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.
- 39 וְכַאֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּע לָנוּ זֹרָם אֲמוּנִים סָר פָּחַדְנוּ מִפָּנָיו.
- 40 וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת לִוְחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל וְאֶת עֶבֶד לָבָן וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, וְנִסְעָנוּ אֶל אֹהֶל אֲבִינוּ.

ה

5

- וְהָיָה בְּבֹאֵנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה אֶל אָבִינוּ, מְלָאָה
נִפְשׁוֹ גִילָה; וְאָף שִׂמְחַת אִמִּי, שָׂרִיָּה, גְּדֹלָה
מְאֹד, כִּי אָבִן הִתְאַבְּלָה עָלֵינוּ.
- וַעֲשֹׂר אֲשֶׁר סָבְרָה הִיא כִּי מָתְנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְהִיא
אָף הִתְלוֹנְנָה עַל אָבִי בְּאִמְרָה אֵלָיו כִּי בַעַל
חֲזוֹנוֹת הוּא. וְהִיא אָמְרָה: הִנֵּה הוֹלֵכְתֵּנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ
נַחֲלָתֵנוּ, וּבְנֵי אִיָּנָם עוֹד, וְאֵנּוּ אֲבָדְנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה הִתְלוֹנְנָה אִמִּי עַל אָבִי.
- וְאָבִי דִּבֶּר אֵלֶיהָ לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר בַּעַל
חֲזוֹנוֹת אָנֹכִי, כִּי לִי לִי רְאִיתִי דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים
בְּחֻזּוֹן, לֹא יָדַעְתִּי אֶת טוֹב אֱלֹהִים, אִף
נִשְׁאַרְתִּי לְשָׁכֵן בִּירוּשָׁלַם לְגֹעַ עִם אָחִי.
- אֲךֹ הִנֵּה נַחֲלָתִי אֶרֶץ יְעוֹדָה, וּבִזְאוֹת יָגֵל לָבִי.
אָבִן יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יֵצֵא יְהוָה אֶת בְּנֵי מִיַּד לָבִן
וַיִּשְׁבִּיָם מִשָּׁה אֵלֵינוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- כְּדִבְרֵים כֵּאלֶּה עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ נָחַם אָבִי,
לְחִי, אֶת אִמִּי שָׂרִיָּה בַּעַת מִסְעָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר
וַעֲלוֹתֵנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם לְקַחַת אֶת כְּתָב
הַזְכָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְיְהוּדִים.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר שָׁבְנוּ אֶל אֹהֶל אָבִי, הִיְתָה שִׂמְחָתָם
שְׁלֵמָה וְאִמִּי נִחְמָה.
- וְאִמִּי דִּבְרָה לֵאמֹר: עַתָּה יָדַעְתִּי אֶל נְכוֹן כִּי
צָוָה יְהוָה אֶת אִישִׁי לְבָרוּחַ הַמִּדְבָּרָה. אִף
יָדַעְתִּי אֶל נְכוֹן כִּי הִגָּן יְהוָה עַל בְּנֵי וְהִצִּילָם
מִיַּד לָבִן וְנָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ לְהַקִּים אֶת אֲשֶׁר צָוָה.
כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה דִּבְרָה אִמִּי.
- וְהֵם עָלְצוּ מְאֹד וְהִעֲלוּ זֶבֶח וְעוֹלָה לַיהוָה
וְהוֹדוּ לֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹדוּ לֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, לְקַח אָבִי,
לְחִי, אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִחְרְטוּ עַל
לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקְּלָל וְחָקַר בָּהֶם מֵרֵאשִׁיתָם.
- 1 And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.
- 2 For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.
- 3 And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.
- 4 And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.
- 5 But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.
- 6 And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.
- 7 And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.
- 8 And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.
- 9 And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.
- 10 And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

נְפִי א ה:יֵא-כב

- 11 And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;
- 12 And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;
- 13 And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.
- 14 And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.
- 15 And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.
- 16 And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.
- 17 And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—
- 18 That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.
- 19 Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.
- 20 And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.
- 21 And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.
- 22 Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.
- וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי יֵשׁ בָּהֶם חֲמִשָּׁת הַסְּפָרִים אֲשֶׁר לְמֹשֶׁה, הַמְּסַפְּרִים עַל בְּרִיאַת הָעוֹלָם וְעַל אָדָם וְחוּהָ אֲשֶׁר הֵם הוֹרִינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים.
- וְאֵף כְּתָב הַזְּכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר לַיהוּדִים, מֵרִאשִׁיתָם וְעַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן צִדְקִיָּהוּ מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה.
- וְאֵף נְבוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, מֵרִאשִׁיתָן וְעַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן צִדְקִיָּהוּ; וְכֵן נְבוּאוֹת רַבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי יִרְמְיָהוּ.
- וְאֵבִי, לְחִי, מָצָא עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל גַּם אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו. כִּךְ יָדַע כִּי יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי יוֹסֵף הוּא; הוּא יוֹסֵף בֶּן יַעֲקֹב אֲשֶׁר נִמְכַּר לְמִצְרַיִם, אֲשֶׁר הִצִּילָהוּ יְד יְהוָה לִמְעַן יִצִּיל אֶת אֲבִיו יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ מִמוֹת בָּרָעַב.
- וְהֵם אֵף הוּצְאוּ מִן הַשְּׁבִיָּה וּמֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים, אֲכֵן הוּא אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרָם.
- כֹּה גָּלָה אֲבִי, לְחִי, אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו. וְלָבוֹ, אֵף הוּא הָיָה יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי יוֹסֵף; לָכֵן שָׁמַר אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְּכוֹנוֹת, הוּא וְאֲבוֹתָיו.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת אֲבִי אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה, הוּא נִמְלָא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וַהֲתִנַּבֵּא עַל זֶרְעוֹ;
- כִּי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל הָאֵלֶּה אֲכֵן יִפְּצוּ בְּכָל הָאֻמוֹת וְהַמְּשַׁפְּחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ מִזֶּרְעוֹ.
- עַל כֵּן אָמַר כִּי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל הָאֵלֶּה לֹא יֵאָבְדוּ לְעוֹלָם וְאֵף לֹא יִכָּהוּ בְּרַבּוֹת הַיָּמִים. וְהוּא נָבֵא דְבָרִים רַבִּים עַל אוֹדוֹת זֶרְעוֹ.
- וְהָיָה עַד הַעַת הַהִיא, אֲנִי וְאֲבִי שָׁמְרָנוּ אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה.
- וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְּכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה וְחִקְרָנוּ אוֹתָם וְרָאִינוּ כִּי נִחְמָדִים הֵם וְכִי רַב עֶרְכָם בְּעֵינֵינוּ, וּבָהֶם יִכְלָנוּ לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה בְּמִסְרָנוּ אוֹתָם לְבָנֵינוּ.
- עַל כֵּן מִחֻמַּת יְהוָה הָיְתָה זֹאת אֲשֶׁר נִקְחָם עִמָּנוּ בְּמִסְעָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעֻדָּה.

1

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶכְתֹּב אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתַי בְּזֶה
אֲשֶׁר רָשַׁמְתִּי, וְלֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה כֵן אַחֵר כִּד בְּלוּחוֹת
אֲשֶׁר לִי, כִּי כְּתוּבִים הֵם בְּסֵפֶר הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר
שָׁמַר אָבִי. עַל כֵּן לֹא אֶכְתֹּבֶם בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה.

דִּי לִי לֹמַר כִּי מִצֵּאֲצָאִי יוֹסֵף אֲנִינִי.

וְאִין בְּלִבִּי עַל אֲשֶׁר אֵינִנִּי מְרַבֶּה לְסַפֵּר
אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אָבִי, כִּי אֵין נָתַן לְכְתֹבָם עַל
גְּבִי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כִּי רָצוֹנִי לְמַלֵּא אֶת פְּנֵיהֶם
לְכְתִּיבָה עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.

כִּי מְלֵא כּוֹנְנִי הִיא לְמַשׁוֹךְ אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם
לְבוֹא אֶל אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם, אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי
יַעֲקֹב וְלִהְיוֹשֶׁעַ.

עַל כֵּן לֹא אֶכְתֹּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בָּהֶם
חִפְץ לְבְנֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, כִּי אִם אֶת אֲשֶׁר חִפְץ
בָּהֶם אֱלֹהִים וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם מִבְּנֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה.

עַל כֵּן אֶצְוֶה אֶת זֶרְעִי לְבַל יִמְלְאוּ אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה בַּדְּבָרִים מִחֲסְרֵי עֲרֹךְ
לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

2

וְעַתָּה רָצוֹנִי כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי בְּחַתְמוֹ אָבִי, לְחִי,
לְהַתְנַבֵּא עַל זֶרְעוֹ, הָיָה אֵלָיו דְּבַר יְהוָה שְׁנִית,
וְאָמַר כִּי לֹא טוֹב לָכֶתוּ עִם מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ לְבָדֶם
הַמִּדְבָּרָה, כִּי שׁוּמָה עַל בְּנָיו לְקַחַת לָהֶם
בָּנוֹת לְנָשִׁים, לְמַעַן יִקְיִמוּ זֶרַע לִיהוָה
בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

וַיְהוֹה צִוָּה אֶת אָבִי כִּי נָשׁוּב, אֲנִי, נְפִי, וְאֲחִי,
אֶל אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם וְנָבִיא עִמָּנוּ אֶת יִשְׁמַעְאֵל
וּבֵיתוֹ הַמִּדְבָּרָה.

עַל כֵּן נִסְעָנוּ שְׁנֵית הַמִּדְבָּרָה, אֲנִי, נְפִי,
עִם אֲחִי, לְעֵלּוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַיִם.

וְעָלִינוּ אֶל בֵּית יִשְׁמַעְאֵל וּמִצָּאנוּ חֵן בְּעֵינָיו,
עַד כִּי דִבְרָנוּ אֵלָיו אֶת דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה.

6

1 And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

2 For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

3 And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

4 For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

5 Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

6 Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

7

1 And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

3 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

4 And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

- 5 And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.
- 6 And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.
- 7 And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.
- 8 And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?
- 9 How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?
- 10 How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?
- 11 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten how great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?
- 12 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.
- 13 And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.
- 14 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.
- 15 Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye
- ויהוה הרף את לב ישמעאל וכן את לב בני ביתו, עד כי ירדו עמנו המדברה אל אהל אבינו.
- והיה בנסענו במדבר, והנה למן ולמואל ושתי בנות ישמעאל ושני הבנים אשר לישמעאל ובני משפחתם מרדו בנו, אכן, הם מרדו בי, נפי, ובשם ובאביהם. ישמעאל, ובאשתו ושלוש בנותיו הנוספות.
- והיה במרדם בנו הם בקשו לשוב אל ארץ ירושלם.
- ואני, נפי, נעצבתי על קשי לבם; על כן דברתי אליהם, אל למן ואל למואל, לאמרו: ראו נא, הנכם אחי הבכירים ואיכה זה תקשו לבבכם ועיניכם טחו מראות, עד אשר חייב אני, אחיכם הצעיר, לדבר אליכם ולהיות לכם למופת.
- איכה לא שמעתם לדברי יהוה.
- איכה שכחתם כי ראיתם מלאך יהוה.
- איכה שכחתם כמה גדולים מעשי יהוה אשר עשה למעננו בהצילו אותנו מידי לבן וכן במקבלנו את כתב הזכרון.
- איכה שכחתם כי ביד יהוה לעשות את כל חפצו למען בני האדם, אם אף מחזיקים הם באמונה בו. על כן הבה נהיה לו שומרי אמונים.
- והיה אם נשמר לו אמונים, הרי נקבל את הארץ היעודה; ואתם תדעו בימים אשר יבואו כי יקום דבר יהוה על חרבן ירושלם, כי כל אשר דבר יהוה על אודות חרבנה קום יקום.
- הן עד מהרה יחדל רוח יהוה להתאמץ עמם, כי מאסו את הנביאים והשליכו את ירמיהו אל בית הכלא. והם בקשו את נפש אבי, עד כי גרשוהו מן הארץ.
- ועתה הנני אומר לכם: אם תשובו ירושלימה, תאבדו אף אתם עמהם. ואם נבחר בעיניכם, עלו אל הארץ וזכרתם את אשר אנכי אומר

- לָכֶם: אִם תִּלְכוּ, תִּאבְדּוּ אִף אַתֶּם; הֵן כִּךְ
הִצִּיקֵנִי רוּחַ יְהוָה לְדַבֵּר.
- 16 And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.
- 17 But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.
- 18 And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.
- 19 And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.
- 20 And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.
- 21 And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.
- 22 And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.
- וְהָיָה בְּדַבְרִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֶל אַחֵי, הֵם כָּעָסוּ עָלַי וְשָׁלְחוּ יָדֵיהֶם אֵלַי,
כִּי רָגְזוּ מְאֹד; וְהֵם אָסְרוּנִי בַחֲבָלִים,
כִּי בָקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי וּלְנַטְשָׁנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר,
טָרֶף לְחַיּוֹת פְּרָא.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֶמְרִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהָיָה נִפְּלוּ
הַחֲבָלִים אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדַי וְעַל רַגְלִי, וְאֲנִי עֹמְדָתִי
לִפְנֵי אַחֵי וְדַבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם שֵׁנִית.
- וְהֵם רָגְזוּ עָלַי כְּבָרָאשׁוֹנָה וּבָקְשׁוּ לְשַׁלַּח
אֶת יְדֵיהֶם בִּי, וְהָיָה, אַחַת מִבְּנוֹת יִשְׁמָעֵאל,
וְכֵן אִמָּהּ וְאֶחָד מִבְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, הִתְחַנְּנוּ אֵלַי
אֲחֵי עַד אֲשֶׁר רַךְ לִבָּבָם וְהֵם חָדְלוּ לְבָקֵשׁ
אֶת נַפְשִׁי.
- וְהֵם נִעְצְבוּ עַל רִשְׁעָתָם, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לִפְנֵי
וּבָקְשׁוּ אֶת סְלִיחָתִי עַל הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לִי.
- וְאֲנִי סָלַחְתִּי לָהֶם כְּתֹם לִבִּבִּי עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ
וְעִוְרָתִים לְהַתְפַּלֵּל אֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לְמַעַן
יִסָּלַח לָהֶם; וְכֵן עָשׂוּ. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הִתְפַּלֵּלְם אֵל
יְהוָה הוֹסַפְנוּ לְנִסֵּעַ אֶל אָהֶל אַבְיֵנוּ.
- אָכֵן, יָרַדְנוּ אֶל אָהֶל אַבְיֵנוּ. וְאַחֵר רִדְתִּי עִם
אַחֵי וְכָל בֵּית יִשְׁמָעֵאל אֶל אָהֶל אָבִי, הֵם נָתְנוּ
תּוֹדוֹת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְהִקְדִּירוּ לוֹ זֶבֶח וְעֹלָה.

ח

8

- 1 And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.
- וְאֶסְפָּנוּ כָּל מִיְּנֵי זֵרַעִים, מִמִּינֵי כָּל הַדָּגָנִים
וְעוֹד כָּל מִיְּנֵי זֵרַעֵי פְּרוֹת.

- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת שֶׁבֵּת אָבִי בַּמִּדְבָּר הוּא דִּבֶּר
אֵלַיִנוּ לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲלֹמְתִי חִלּוּם; אוֹ בְּמַלְיָם
אַחֲרוֹת: חֲזִיתִי חֲזוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה עֹלֶץ לְבִי בִיהוּה בִּרְאוּתִי אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה
מִפְּנֵי נְפִי וְשָׁם; אָכֵן, מִזֶּה אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי יֵשׁ לִי עַל
מֶה לְהַנִּיחַ כִּי הֵמָּה, וְכֹן רַבִּים מִזֶּרְעָם, יִוָּשְׁעוּ.
- אֲדָּה הִנֵּה, לָמֹן וְלִמְוֶאל, יִרְאֵתִי מְאֹד מִפְּנֵיכֶם,
כִּי הִנֵּה נִדְמָה לִי אֲשֶׁר בַּחֲלוּמֵי רְאִיתִי מִדְּבַר
שְׂמָמָה וְחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אִישׁ לְבוּשׁ שְׂמָלָה לְבָנָה, וְהוּא
בָּא וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי.
- וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי וּבִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנִּי לָלֶכֶת אַחֲרָיו.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִלַּכְתִּי אַחֲרָיו, וְרָאִיתִי כִּי אֲנִי
בְּתוֹךְ שְׂמָמָה חֹשֶׁכָה וְקוֹדֶרֶת.
- וְאַחֵר לָכֵתִי שָׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת בַּחֹשֶׁכָה, הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי
אֶל יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר יַחְמַל עָלַי כְּרַב רַחֲמָיו.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֶל יְהוָה רָאִיתִי
שָׂדֶה גָדוֹל וְרַחֵב יָדַיִם.
- וְרָאִיתִי עֵץ אֲשֶׁר פְּרִיו נִחְמַד לְשֹׂמֵחַ לֵבָב
אָנוּשׁ.
- וְנִגַּשְׁתִּי וְטָעַמְתִּי מִן הַפְּרִי הַזֶּה וְהִנֵּה מִתּוֹק
הוּא מְכַל אֲשֶׁר טָעַמְתִּי מֵעוֹדִי. וְרָאִיתִי כִּי לֵבָן
הַפְּרִי הַזֶּה מְכַל לֵבָן אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי מֵעוֹדִי.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר טָעַמְתִּי מִמֶּנּוּ, מָלֵא הַפְּרִי אֶת נַפְשִׁי
שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה עַד מְאֹד; לֵבָן חִפְצָתִי כִּי אֵף בְּנִי
מִשְׂפָּחָתִי יִטְעֶמוּ מִמֶּנּוּ, בִּידְעִי כִּי נִחְמַד הוּא
מִכָּל פְּרִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּנִשְׂאֵי עֵינַי כֹּה וְכֹה לְמַצָּא אֶת
מִשְׂפָּחָתִי, וְהִנֵּה רָאִיתִי נָהָר מִיַּם זֹרֵם לִיד
הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר מִפְּרִיו טָעַמְתִּי.
- וּפְנִיתִי לְרְאוֹת מֵאֵין יָבוֹא, וְרָאִיתִי אֶת מְקוֹר
הַמַּיִם בְּמִרְחָק מֶה וּלְיָד עוֹמְדִים שְׂרָיָה
- 2 And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.
- 3 And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.
- 4 But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.
- 5 And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.
- 6 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.
- 7 And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.
- 8 And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.
- 9 And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.
- 10 And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.
- 11 And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.
- 12 And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.
- 13 And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.
- 14 And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah,

נְפִי א ח:טו-כה

- אִמְכֶם, וְשָׁם וְנָפִי, וְכִמּוּ לֹא יָדְעוּ אָנֹה יֵלְכוּ. and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.
- 15 וְקָרָאתִי לָהֶם וְאִי אָמַרְתִּי לָהֶם בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל כִּי יָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי וְיִטְעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי, אֲשֶׁר הִיָּה נְחָמֵד מִכָּל פֵּרִי. And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.
- 16 וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֵלַי וְיִטְעְמוּ אִי מִן הַפֵּרִי. And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.
- 17 וְאֲנִי חָפְצָתִי כִּי אִי לָמֵן וְלִמְוֹאֵל יָבוֹאוּ וְיִטְעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי. עַל כֵּן נִשְׁאַתִּי עֵינַי אֶל מְקוֹר הַנְּהָר, אוֹלִי אֶרְאֶם. And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.
- 18 וְאִמְנֶם רָאִיתִי אוֹתָם, אִי הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לָבוֹא אֵלַי וְלִטְעֹם מִן הַפֵּרִי. And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.
- 19 וְרָאִיתִי מַעֲקָה בְּרֹזֶל וְהִיא נִמְשָׁף לְאַרְבֵּי גִדְתַּי הַנְּהָר, מוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.
- 20 וְכִּי רָאִיתִי שְׁבִיל יָשָׁר וְצָר, לְאַרְבֵּי מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל וְעַד הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. וְהִנֵּה הַשְּׁבִיל נִמְשָׁף מִמְּקוֹר הַנְּהָר וְעַד שְׂדֵה גָדוֹל וְרָחֵב יָדִים, כִּמּוֹ הִיָּה זֶה עוֹלָם. And I also beheld a straight and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.
- 21 וְרָאִיתִי הַמְּוִנִי אָדָם עַד אִין מִסְפָּר, אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵהֶם נִדְחָפוּ קְדִימָה, לַעֲלוֹת עַל הַשְּׁבִיל הַמוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדוֹ עֲמֻדָתִי. And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.
- 22 וְהֵם בָּאוּ וְהִחֲלוּ לָלֶכֶת בַּשְּׁבִיל הַמוֹבִיל אֶל הָעֵץ. And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.
- 23 וְעָלָה שָׁם עֲרַפֵּל חֲשֹׁכָה; אָכֵן, עֲרַפֵּל חֲשֹׁכָה כָּבֵד מְאֹד עַד כִּי אָלָה אֲשֶׁר נִכְנסוּ לַשְּׁבִיל נִדְחוּ מִדֶּרֶכָם, תָּעוּ וְאָבְדוּ. And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.
- 24 וְרָאִיתִי אַחֵרִים נִדְחָפִים קְדִימָה, וְהֵם בָּאוּ וְהִחֲזִיקוּ בְּקֶצֶה מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל; וְנִדְחָפוּ קְדִימָה דֶּרֶךְ עֲרַפֵּל הַחֲשֹׁכָה בְּהֶצְמָדָם אֶל מַעֲקָה הַבְּרֹזֶל, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הָעֵץ וְיִטְעְמוּ מִפְּרִיו. And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.
- 25 וְהִיָּה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טִעְמוּ מִפְּרִי הָעֵץ, וְהֵם הִפְנוּ אֶת מַבְטָם כְּנִכְלָמִים. And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

- 26 And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.
- 27 And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.
- 28 And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.
- 29 And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.
- 30 But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.
- 31 And he also saw other multitudes pressing their way towards that great and spacious building.
- 32 And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.
- 33 And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.
- 34 These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.
- 35 And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.
- 36 And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.
- 37 And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would
- וְהִפְנִיתִי עוֹד אֶת מִבְטֵי סְבִיב. וְרָאִיתִי מִעֵבֶר לְנֹהַר הַמַּיִם בַּיִת גָּדוֹל וְרוּחָב מְדוּת וְהוּא כְּנֹצֵב בְּאֵוִיר, רָם וְנֹשָׂא מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה.
- וְהַבַּיִת מְלֵא אָדָם, זָקֵן וְצָעִיר, זָכָר וּנְקֵבָה, וּלְבוּשָׁם הַדּוֹר מְאֹד; וְהֵם כְּמַלְעִיגִים בְּשִׁלְחָם אֶצְבָּע אֶל עֵבֶר הַבָּאִים וְהַטּוֹעֵמִים מִן הַפֵּרִי.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טָעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי הֵם נִכְלְמוּ, מִפְּנֵי הַלּוֹעֲגִים לָהֶם, וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֵלֵי נְתִיבִים אֲסוּרִים וְאֶבְדּוּ.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אֵינְנִי מְסַפֵּר אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אָבִי.
- וְלִמְעַן קָצֵר בְּכַתְּבָהּ אֶסְפֵּר כִּי הוּא רָאָה וְהִנֵּה הַמּוֹנִי אָדָם נוֹסְפִים נִדְחָפִים קְדִימָה וְהֵם בָּאוּ וַתִּפְשׁוּ בְקֶצֶה מַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל וַיִּנְדְּחֻהוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת דֶּרֶךְ קְדִימָה, נֶאֱחָזִים בְּחִזְקָה בְּמַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל עַד אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ, וַנִּפְּלוּ עַל פְּנֵיהֶם וַיִּטְעְמוּ מִפְּרֵי הָעֵץ.
- וְהוּא אַף רָאָה הַמּוֹנִים אֲחֵרִים מִתְאַמְצִים בְּדֶרֶכָם אֶל עֵבֶר הַבַּיִת הַגָּדוֹל וְרוּחָב הַמְדוּת הַהוּא.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים הַטּוֹבְעִים בְּמַצּוֹלוֹת הַמַּיִם וְרַבִּים נִעְלְמוּ מֵעֵינָיו בְּנִדְחָם בְּשִׁבְלִים זָרִים.
- רַב הָיָה הַקְּהוּמֹן אֲשֶׁר נָכַס אֶל הַבַּיִת הַזֶּה. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָכַסוּ אֵלָיו, שָׁלְחוּ לַעֲמָתִי וּלְעַמַּת טוֹעֲמֵי הַפֵּרִי אֶת אֶצְבָּע הַלֶּעֱגָה, אֲךָ אֲנַחְנוּ לֹא שָׁתַנּוּ לִבָּנוּ לָהֶם.
- אֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי אָבִי: כָּל אֲשֶׁר שָׁת לְבוֹ לָהֶם קָשָׁל וְאֶבְדּוּ.
- וְאָבִי אָמַר כִּי לָמֹן וּלְמוֹאֵל לֹא טָעְמוּ מִן הַפֵּרִי.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר דִּבֵּר אָבִי אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי חֲלוֹמוֹ אוֹ חֲזוֹנוֹ, וְהֵם רַבִּים, הוּא אָמַר אֵלֵינוּ כִּי מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר רָאָה בְּחִזּוֹן, הוּא יָרָא עַד מְאֹד לָלֶמֶן וּלְמוֹאֵל, מִפְּנֵי דִאֲגָתוֹ כִּי יִדְחוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהוּא עוֹרָרָם בְּכָל רִגְשֵׁי אָב אוֹהֵב, וְאָמַר אֵלֵיהֶם כִּי יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרוֹ, אוֹלֵי יִרְחַמֵּם יְהוָה,

וְלֹא יִשְׁלִיכֶם. אָכֵן, הִטָּף הִטָּף לָהֶם אָבִי.

be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטָּף אֲלֵיהֶם וְאִי נִבֵּא לָהֶם
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים, צִוָּם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה,
וְחָדַל מִדְּבַר אֲלֵיהֶם.

38 And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

ט

9

אֵת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, רָאָה אָבִי, וּשְׁמָעָם
וְדִבְרָם בְּשִׁבְתּוֹ בְּאֵהֶל בְּעֵמֶק לְמוּאֵל, וְכֵן עוֹד
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים וְגִדּוּלִים, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְכַתֵּבָם עַל
גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.

1 And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

וְעַתָּה, כְּדִבְרֵי עַל אֹדוֹת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הִנֵּה
הֵם אֵינָם הַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶסְפֵּר בָּהֶם אֶת מְלֵא
דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי עַמִּי, כִּי לַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם אֶסְפֵּר
אֶת דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי עַמִּי בְּמִלָּאָם קָרָאתִי בִשְׁם נְפִי.
עַל כֵּן הֵם נִקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נְפִי עַל שְׁמִי.
וְהַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֵף הֵם נִקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נְפִי.

2 And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

אֲנִי צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
לְתַכְלִית הַמִּיחָדָת, לְמַעַן יִחַרֵּט כָּתֹב וְזָרוֹן עַל
אֹדוֹת שְׁרוֹת עַמִּי.

3 Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

עַל הַלּוּחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים יִחַרְטוּ דְּבָרֵי יָמֵי
שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים וּמִלְחָמוֹת עַמִּי וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם.
אָכֵן, הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הֵם לְדִבְרֵי שְׁרוֹת עַמִּי,
וְהַלּוּחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים הֵם לְדִבְרֵי יָמֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן
הַמְּלָכִים וּמִלְחָמוֹת בְּנֵי עַמִּי וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם.

4 Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

עַל כֵּן צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
לְקִיָּם תַּכְלִית בְּחֻקְמָתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר אוֹתָהּ לֹא אֵדַע.

5 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

אוּלָּם יוֹדֵעַ יְהוָה אֵת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים מִרִּאשִׁיתָם;
עַל כֵּן יִכְיֶן דְּרָף לְמַעַן הָקִים אֶת כָּל מַעֲשָׂיו
בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי אָדָם, כִּי הִנֵּה לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְהָקִים אֶת
כָּל דְּבָרָיו, וְכֵן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.

6 But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words.

1 And thus it is. Amen.

י

10

וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אוֹסִיף עַתָּה לְסַפֵּר עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה אֶת קוּרֹתַי וְאֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנֵי וְאֶת שְׁרוֹתַי.
וּבְהוֹסִיפִי לְסַפֵּר אֶת קוּרֹתַי עָלַי לְסַפֵּר מַעֲשֵׂי
מִדְּבָרֵי אָבִי וְגַם אֲחֵי.

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

- 2 For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—
- 3 That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.
- 4 Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.
- 5 And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.
- 6 Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.
- 7 And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—
- 8 Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.
- 9 And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.
- 10 And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.
- 11 And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.
- וּבְכָלוֹת אָבִי לְהַגִּיד אֶת דְּבָרֵי חֲלוֹמוֹ וְכֵן לְעוֹרָרָם לְשִׁקְיָדָה רַבָּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל אֹדוֹת הַיְּהוּדִים,
- אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵי חֲרָבָנָם, אִף חֲרָבֵי הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וְגָלוּת רַבִּים מֵהֶם בָּבֶלָה, יָשׁוּבוּ לָעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; אָכֵן יָשׁוּבוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה, וְאַחֲרֵי שׁוּבָם יִנְחֲלוּ שְׁנִית אֶת אֶרֶץ יִרְשָׁתָם.
- וְכַעֲבֹר שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה מֵעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר עָזַב אָבִי אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם, יָקִים יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים נְבִיא מִקֶּרֶב הַיְּהוּדִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מָשִׁיחַ, אוֹ בְּלִשׁוֹן אַחֵר: מוֹשִׁיעַ הָעוֹלָם.
- וְהוּא אִף דִּבֶּר עַל הַנְּבִיאִים, אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵהֶם הֶעִידוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עַל אֹדוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו וְהוּא גּוֹאֵל הָעוֹלָם.
- אָכֵן יִהְיוּ כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם בְּנֵי כָלִיָּן וְכַשְׁלוֹן, וְכֵן יִשְׁאַרוּ לְעוֹלָם, בְּלֹתִי אִם סָמְכוּ עַל הַגּוֹאֵל הַזֶּה.
- וְהוּא אִף דִּבֶּר עַל נְבִיא אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא לִפְנֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, לְהַכִּין אֶת דֶּרֶךְ יְהוָה.
- וְהוּא יֵלֶךְ וַיִּקְרָא בַּמִּדְבָּר: פָּנוּ דֶּרֶךְ לַיהוָה, יִשְׁרוּ מַסְלֹחֹתָיו, כִּי בְקִרְבָּכֶם עוֹמֵד אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵדַעְתֶּם וְהוּא אֲדִיר מִמֶּנִּי, אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶנִּי שָׂוֶה לְהַתִּיר אֶת שַׁרְוֹךְ נַעְלֹ. וְאָבִי הִרְבֵּה לְדַבֵּר עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- וְאָבִי אָמַר כִּי יִטְבִּיל בְּבֵית עֲבָרָא, אֲשֶׁר מֵעֵבֶר לִירְדֵן; וְכֵן אָמַר כִּי יִטְבִּיל בְּמִים; אִף אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ הוּא יִטְבִּיל בְּמִים.
- וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִטְבִּיל אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ בְּמִים, יִחְזֶה וַיַּעֲיֵד כִּי הִטְבִּיל אֶת שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- וְאַחֲרֵי דִבְרֵי אָבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל אָחִי עַל הַבְּשׂוּרָה אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפּוּהָ בְּקֶרֶב הַיְּהוּדִים וְאִף עַל שִׁקְיַת הַיְּהוּדִים בַּחֲסֹר אֱמוּנָה. וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה אֶת הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבֹא, וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה, יָקוּם מִן הַמֵּתִים וַיִּגְלֶה עֲצָמוֹ לְגוֹיִים עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

- 12 רבות דבר אבי על אודות הגוים וכן על בית ישראל, כי נמשל לעץ הזית, אשר יכרתו את ענפיו ויפזרום על כל פני הארץ. Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive-tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- 13 על כן, אמר כי נהג כאיש אחד אל הארץ היעודה, להקים את דבר יהוה כי נתפזר על כל פני הארץ. Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.
- 14 ואחר אשר יפזרו בית ישראל, יקבצו שנית, או בקצרה, אחר קבל הגוים את מלא הבשורה, ירכבו ענפיו הטבעיים של עץ הזית והם שארית בית ישראל, אכן, הם ידעו את משיח האמת אשר הוא אדונייהם וגואלם. And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive-tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.
- 15 כדברים האלה נבא אבי בדבריו אל אחי, וכן דברים נוספים רבים אשר אינני כותב בספר הזה, כי כתבתי מהם ככל אשר נראה לי מתאים בספרי הנוסף. And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.
- 16 כל הדברים האלה, אשר דברתי, נעשו בשבת אבי באהל בעמק למואל. And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.
- 17 והיה אחר אשר שמעתי, אני, נפי, את כל אמרות אבי על אודות הדברים אשר ראה בחזון ואת אשר דבר בלח רוח הקדש, הוא הכח אשר קבל על ידי האמונה בן אלהים, ובן אלהים הוא המשיח אשר יבוא, חפצתי אף אני, נפי, לראות ולשמע ואף לדעת את הדברים האלה, בלח רוח הקדש, אשר הוא מתת אלהים לכל אשר ישקדו לבקשו, בימי קדם כבימים אשר יתגלה לבני האנוש. And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.
- 18 כי אחד הוא אתמול והיום ועד עולם; ומוכנה הדרך לכל בני האדם מיסוד העולם, אם ינחמו על חטאייהם ויבואו אליו. For he is the same yesterday, to-day, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.
- 19 המתאמץ לבקש ימצא; וסתרי אלהים יגלו לו, בלח רוח הקדש, בימים האלה כבימי קדם, ובימי קדם כבימים אשר יבואו. כי מהלך יהוה הוא מעגל נצח אחד. For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.
- 20 על כן זכר נא, בן אדם, כי על כל מעשיו תובא למשפט. Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.
- 21 לכן, אם את הרע בקשיתם לעשות בימי מבחנכם, טמאים תמצאו לפני פס המשפט. Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God;

נְפִי א י:כב-יא:ט

אֲשֶׁר לֹא־לֵהִים. וְכָל דְּבַר טָמֵא לֹא יִשְׁכֵּן עִם
אֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן מִנְּדִים תִּהְיוּ לְעוֹלָם.

and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יִסְמְכֵנִי לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
וְלֹא לְהַכְחִישָׁם.

22 And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

י

11

וְהָיָה בְּחַפְצִי לָדַעַת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָם
אָבִי, וְאֲנִי הֵאֱמַנְתִּי כִּי יוּכַל יְהוָה לְהוֹדִיעַנִי
אוֹתָם; אָכֵן, כִּפְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁבַּתִּי וְהִגִּיתִי בְּלִבִּי
וְהִנֵּה נִשְׁאַנִּי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֶל הַר רֵם וְנִשְׂאָ,
אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאִיתִיו מֵעוֹלָם וְלֹא הִצַּגְתִּי עָלָיו
מֵעוֹדִי אֶת כַּף רַגְלִי.

1 For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הִנֵּה, מָה חֹפְצֶךָ?

2 And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

וְאָמַרְתִּי: חֹפְצִי לִרְאוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי.

3 And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הֲתֵאֱמִין כִּי אָבִיךָ רָאָה אֶת
הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו דְּבַר?

4 And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן, אֵתָּה יָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲאֱמִין לְכָל
דְּבָרֵי אָבִי.

5 And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

וּכְדִבְרֵי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, קָרָא הָרוּחַ בְּקוֹל
גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר: הוֹשַׁעְנָא, יְהוָה אֵל עֲלִינוּ! אֵל עַל
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, אָכֵן, מֵעַל הַכֹּל. וּבְרוּךְ אַתָּה, נְפִי,
כִּי תֵאֱמִין בְּכֹן אֵל עֲלִינוּ; עַל כֵּן תִּרְאֶה אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חֹפְצָתָ לִרְאוֹתָם.

6 And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

וְזֶה לָךְ הָאוֹת: אַחֲרֵי רְאוֹתְךָ אֶת הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר
אֶת פְּרִיו טָעַם אָבִיךָ, תִּרְאֶה גַם אִישׁ יוֹרֵד מִן
הַשָּׁמַיִם וְתִהְיֶה לוֹ עַד רִאִיָּה; וְאַחֲרֵי רְאוֹתְךָ
אוֹתוֹ הָעֵד תִּעֲדִיד כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

7 And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הָרוּחַ: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבַּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי
עֵץ; וְהוּא דְּמָה לְעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, וְיָפִי
תִּפְאֶרֶתוֹ אָכֵן עֲלָה עַל כָּל יָפִי; וְלִבְנָתוֹ הִיְתָה
צַחְרָה כְּשִׁלְגַת נֹשֵׁב.

8 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

וּבִרְאוֹתִי אֶת הָעֵץ אָמַרְתִּי אֵל הָרוּחַ:
אָכֵן רָאִיתִי אֶת אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתָנִי, זֶה הָעֵץ
הַיָּקָר מִכָּל.

9 And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is most precious above all.

- 10 And he said unto me: What desirest thou?
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: מַה חֲפָצְךָ?
- 11 And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.
וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: לָדַעַת אֶת פְּשָׁרוֹ; כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי עִמּוֹ כְּדִבֵּר אֶחָד הָאָדָם כִּי רָאִיתִי אִשָּׁר דְּמוּת אָדָם לוֹ, וְאוֹלָם יָדַעְתִּי כִּי רוּחַ יְהוָה הוּא. וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עִמִּי כְּדִבֵּר אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ.
- 12 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִבֵּט נָא! וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי לְהִבִּיט אֵלָיו וְלֹא רָאִיתִיו כִּי נִעְלַם מִפְּנֵי.
- 13 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאַף עָרִים אֲחֵרוֹת. וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הָעִיר נָצְרֶת וְבָהּ רָאִיתִי בְּתוּלָה וְהִיא יָפֶת תֹּאֵר מְאֹד וְצַחְרָה.
- 14 And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים, וַיֵּרֶד מַלְאָךְ וַעֲמַד לִפְנֵי וְאָמַר אֵלַי: מַה רֹאֶה אַתָּה, נְפִי?
- 15 And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.
וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: בְּתוּלָה יָפֶת תֹּאֵר מְאֹד וַיִּפֶּת מְרָאָה מְכֹל יְתֵר הַבְּתוּלוֹת.
- 16 And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הֵיכָדַעְתָּ אֶת מַחִילַת הַקְּבוֹד אֲשֶׁר לָאֱלֹהִים?
- 17 And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.
וְאָמַרְתִּי: יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יֹאֲהֵב אֶת בְּנָיו, וְאוֹלָם אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת פֶּשֶׁר כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.
- 18 And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִנֵּה אֲשֶׁר הִנֵּךְ רֹאֶה הִיא אִם בֶּן אֱלֹהִים כְּדֶרֶךְ הַבָּשָׂר.
- 19 And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!
וְרָאִיתִי אוֹתָהּ נִשְׂאָת בְּרוּחַ; וְאַחֵר הִנָּשְׂאָה בְּרוּחַ לְמִשְׁךָ זְמַן, וְדִבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא!
- 20 And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.
וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי שֵׁנִית אֶת הַנִּשְׂעָרָה, וְהִיא נוֹשֵׂאת יֶלֶד בְּזְרוּעוֹתֶיהָ.
- 21 And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רְאֵה אֶת שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים! הוּא בֶן אָב הָעוֹלָמִים! הֵכָדַעְתָּ אֶת פֶּשֶׁר הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ?
- 22 And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.
וַעֲנִיתִי לוֹ וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן, זֹאת הִיא אֲהֶבַת אֱלֹהִים, הַקּוֹרֶנֶת אֵלַי לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. עַל כֵּן הִיא נְחָמְדָה מְכֹל.

- 23 And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.
וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: אָכֵן; וְהִיא הַמְשִׁמַּחַת נַפְשׁ יוֹתֵר מִכָּל.
- 24 And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אַמְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים מֵהַלֵּךְ בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ. וְרָאִיתִי רַבִּים נוֹפְלִים לְרַגְלָיו וּמִשְׁתַּחֲוִּים לוֹ.
- 25 And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.
וְרָאִיתִי כִּי מַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי הוּא דִּבַּר אֱלֹהִים הַמּוֹבִיל אֶל מַעְיֵן הַמַּיִם הַחַיִּים אוֹ אֶל עֵץ הַחַיִּים; וְהַמַּיִם הָהֵם נִמְשָׁלוּ לְאַהֲבַת אֱלֹהִים; וְרָאִיתִי גַם כִּי עֵץ הַחַיִּים נִמְשָׁל לְאַהֲבַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 26 And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִבֵּט נָא וְרָאֵה אֶת מִחִילַת הַכְּבוֹד אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.
- 27 And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת גּוֹאֵל הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבַּר אָבִי, וְאֶף רָאִיתִי אֶת הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר יָכִין אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לְפָנָיו. וְשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים הָלַךְ וְנִטְבַּל עַל יָדָיו. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הַטְּבִילוֹ, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַשְּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יוֹרֵדֶת מִן הַשְּׁמַיִם וְנוֹחָה עָלָיו בְּדְמוּת יוֹנָה.
- 28 And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.
וְרָאִיתִי אוֹתוֹ הוֹלֵךְ וּמְשַׁמֵּשׂ אֶת הָעָם בְּגִבּוֹרָה וּבְרַב תַּפְאָרָה; וְהָרַבּוּתִּים נֶאֱסָפוּ לְשָׁמְעוֹ. וְרָאִיתִי כִּי הִדְיָחוּהוּ מִתּוֹכָם.
- 29 And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.
וְכֵן רָאִיתִי שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר אַחֵרִים הוֹלְכִים בְּעֶקְבוֹתָיו. וְהֵם נִשְׂאוּ בְּרוּחַ הָאֵלֶּה מִפָּנַי, עַד כִּי לֹא רָאִיתִים.
- 30 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.
וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשְּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים שֵׁנִית וְרָאִיתִי מַלְאָכִים יוֹרְדִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וּמְשַׁרְתִּים אוֹתָם.
- 31 And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.
וְעוֹד הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים מֵתְהַלֵּךְ בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ. וְרָאִיתִי הַמּוֹנִי אָדָם מִכִּי חֹלִי, הַנִּגּוּעִים בְּכָל מִינֵי נֹגַע וְשָׂדִים וְרוּחוֹת טְמֵאִים. וְהַמַּלְאָךְ דִּבֶּר אֵלַי וְהִרְאֵנִי אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְהֵם נִרְפְּאוּ בְּכַח שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, וְהַשְּׂדִים וְהַרוּחוֹת הַטְּמֵאִים נִדְּחוּ מֵהֶם.
- 32 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the
וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים

נִלְקַח עַל יְדֵי הָעֵם. אָכֵן, בֶּן אֵל הָעוֹלָמִים
נִשְׁפָּט עַל יְדֵי בְנֵי תַבָּל; וְרֹאֵיתִי וְאָעִיד עַל כָּן.

people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world;
and I saw and bear record.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רֹאֵיתִי כִּי הוּרָם עַל הַצֵּלֵב וְנִהָרַג עַל
חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם.

33 And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the
sins of the world.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָרַג, רֹאֵיתִי אֶת הַמוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ
נֹאֲסָפִים לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשִׁלְיַחֵי הַשָּׁה, כִּי כֵן נִקְרְאוּ
שְׁנַיִם הָעֶשְׂרִי בְּפִי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה.

34 And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were
gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus
were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

וְהַמוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ נֹאֲסָפוּ יַחְדָּו. כִּי הָיוּ בְּתוֹךְ
בֵּית גָּדוֹל וְרוּחַב מְדוּת כַּבֵּית אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי.
וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: רָאָה אֶת
הָעוֹלָם וְאֶת חֻכְמָתוֹ; אָכֵן, רָאָה כִּי בֵּית
יִשְׂרָאֵל נֹאֲסָפוּ יַחְדָּו לְהִלָּחֵם כְּנֶגֶד שְׁנַיִם
עֶשְׂרִי שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה.

35 And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that
they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which
my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying:
Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of
Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of
the Lamb.

וְרֹאֵיתִי וְאָעִיד אֲשֶׁר הַבֵּית הַגָּדוֹל וְרוּחַב
הַמְדוּת הָיָה צְאוֹת הָעוֹלָם; וְהוּא נָפַל וְגִדּוּלָהּ
מְאֹד הָיְתָה מִפִּלְתּוֹ. וְעוֹד דִּבֶּר אֵלַי מַלְאָךְ
יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: כֹּה יִהְיֶה חֲרָבֵן כָּל הָאֲמוֹת,
וְהַמְשַׁפְּחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר
יִלָּחֲמוּ עַל שְׁנַיִם עֶשְׂרִי שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה.

36 And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and
spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall
thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto
me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds,
tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of
the Lamb.

יב

12

וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִבֵּט וְרֹאֵה אֶת זֶרַעְךָ
וְאֶת זֶרַע אֲחִיךָ. וְהִבֵּטִיתִי וְרֹאֵיתִי אֶת הָאָרֶץ
הַיְעוּדָה; וְרֹאֵיתִי הַמוֹנֵי אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר מִסְפָּרָם
כְּחוֹל הַיָּם.

1 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy
seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the
land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were
in number as many as the sand of the sea.

וְרֹאֵיתִי הַמוֹנִים נֹאֲסָפִים לְהִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּאֲחִיו;
וְרֹאֵיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה, וְהָרַג רַב
בְּחֶרֶב בְּקֶרֶב עַמִּי.

2 And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to
battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars,
and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

וְרֹאֵיתִי דוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים עוֹבְרִים, כְּדֶרֶךְ
מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בָּאָרֶץ; וְרֹאֵיתִי עָרִים רַבּוֹת
עַד כִּי לֹא מְנִיתִי אוֹתָן.

3 And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the
manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities,
yea, even that I did not number them.

וְרֹאֵיתִי עֶרְפֶּל חֹשֶׁכָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה
וְרֹאֵיתִי בְּרָקִים וְשִׁמְעֵתִי רָעָמִים וְרַעְשֵׁי אֲדָמָה
וְכָל מִינֵי קוֹלוֹת הַמְּלָה; וְרֹאֵיתִי אֶת הָאֲדָמָה
וְאֶת הַסֵּלְעִים נִבְקָעִים; וְרֹאֵיתִי הָרִים
מִתְמוֹטְטִים וְנִבְקָעִים, וְרֹאֵיתִי אֶת בְּקַעוֹת
הָאָרֶץ נִשְׁבָּרוֹת; וְרֹאֵיתִי עָרִים רַבּוֹת נִבְלָעוֹת;

4 And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the
land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and
earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth
and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces;
and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw
many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned

- וְרָאִיתִי רַבִּים שְׂרֹפִי אֵשׁ; וְרָאִיתִי רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה מִפְּנֵי רָעַשׁ הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר רְאוּתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, רָאִיתִי כִּי סָרוּ עֲרַפְלֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְרָאִיתִי הַמּוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָפְלוּ מִפְּנֵי מִשְׁפָּטֵי יְהוָה הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנּוֹרָאִים.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם נִפְתָּחִים וְשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים יוֹרֵד מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהוּא בָּא מְטָה וְהִתְגַּלָּה אֵלֵיהֶם.
- וְרָאִיתִי עוֹד, וְהִנֵּנִי מַעֲיֵד, כִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ נָחָה עַל שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר נֹסֶפִים וְהֵם הִסְמְכוּ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים וְנִבְחָרוּ.
- וְהַמְּלָאךְ דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר תַּלְמִידֵי הַשָּׂה אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְשִׁמְשׁ לִפְנֵי זִרְעָה.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: הִתְזַכֵּר אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׂה? הֲנֵה כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר שְׂבָטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן יִשְׁפְּטוּ הֵם אֶת שְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר הַשָּׁרְתִּים אֲשֶׁר מִזְרַעְךָ, כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם.
- וְשְׁנַיִם עֶשֶׂר הַשָּׁרְתִּים אֲשֶׁר הִנֵּךְ רוּחָה, יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת זִרְעָה, הֲנֵה הֵם צְדִיקִים לְעוֹלָם; כִּי בַעֲבוּר אֱמוּנָתָם בְּשֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, הִלְבִּינוּ בְּגִדֵיהֶם בְּדָמוֹ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבֵּטִיתִי וְרָאִיתִי שְׁלֹשָׁה דּוֹרוֹת עוֹבְרִים בְּצִדְקָה. וְהָיָה בְּגִדֵיהֶם לְבָנִים כְּלָבָן שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים. וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ: אֵלֶּה הַלְּבִינוּ בְּדָם הַשָּׂה, בַּעֲבוּר אֱמוּנָתָם בּוֹ.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי גַם רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הָרְבִיעִי אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ בְּצִדְקָה.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַמּוֹנֵי הָאָרֶץ נֹאֲסָפִים יַחַד.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמְּלָאךְ: רְאֵה אֶת זִרְעָה וְאֶת זִרְעֵי אַחֶיךָ.
- וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת עַם זִרְעִי נֹאֲסָפִים בְּהַמּוֹנֵיהֶם עַל זִרְעֵי אַחֶי; וְהֵם נֹאֲסָפוּ לְמִלְחָמָה.
- with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.
- 5 And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.
- 6 And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.
- 7 And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.
- 8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.
- 9 And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.
- 10 And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.
- 11 And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.
- 12 And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.
- 13 And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.
- 14 And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.
- 15 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

- 16 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.
- וַדְּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת מַעְיֵן הַמַּיִם הַמְטַנְפִּים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ, וְהוּא הַנָּהָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו, וּמְצוּלוֹתָיו הֵן תַּחְתִּיּוֹת שָׁאוּל.
- 17 And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.
- וְעַרְפְּלֵי הַחֹשֶׁכָה הֵם מְדוּחֵי הַשָּׁטָן הַמְסַנְוִירִים עֵינַיִם וּמְקַשִּׁים אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וּמְנַהִיגִים אוֹתָם אֶל מַסְלֹת רְחֵבֹת אֲשֶׁר אָבוֹד יֵאבְדוּ בָהֶן.
- 18 And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.
- וְהַבֵּית הַגָּדוֹל וְרָחֵב הַמְדוּת אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִיךָ הוּא דְמִיוֹנוֹת שָׁוְא וְגָאוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְתַהוֹם גְּדוֹלָה וְנוֹרָאָה מַפְרִידָה אוֹתָם; וְהִיא דִּבְרַת הַצֶּדֶק אֲשֶׁר לֹאֵל הַנִּצְחִי וְלַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הוּא שֶׁהָאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מַעֲיִדָה עָלָיו מִיָּמֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד הָעֵת הַזֹּאת, וְיַמְעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם.
- 19 And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.
- וְהָיָה בְּדִבְרַת הַמַּלְאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי כִּי זָרַע אַחִי אֶכֶן נִלָּחֵם בְּזַרְעִי, כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ; וָרָאִיתִי כִּי מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת זַרְעִי וּמְדוּחֵי הַשָּׁטָן גָּבַר זָרַע אַחִי עַל עַם זַרְעִי.
- 20 And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.
- וְהִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי אֶת עַם זָרַע אַחִי גּוֹבְרִים עַל זַרְעִי; וְהֵם פָּשְׁטוּ בַּהֲמוֹנִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 21 And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.
- וָרָאִיתִי אוֹתָם נֶאֱסָפִים בַּהֲמוֹנֵיהֶם; וָרָאִיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם. וּבִמִּלְחָמוֹת וּבִשְׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה רָאִיתִי דוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים עוֹבְרִים.
- 22 And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.
- וַאֲמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִנֵּה, אֵלֶּה יִשְׁקָעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה.
- 23 And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.
- וָרָאִיתִי כִּי אַחֵר שִׁקִּיעָתָם בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה, הָיוּ לְעַם כְּהָה גָּנוֹן, מְאֹס וּמְטַנָּף, שִׁקוּעַ בְּעֲצָלוֹת וּבְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת.

יג

13

- 1 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.
- וַדְּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִבֵּט נָא! וְהִבְטַתִּי וָרָאִיתִי עַמִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹת לָרֹב.
- 2 And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.
- וַאֲמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: מָה אַתָּה רוֹאֶה? וָאָמַרְתִּי: אֲנִי רוֹאֶה עַמִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹת לָרֹב.

- 3 And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אֵלֶּה עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים וּמַמְלָכוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 4 And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the foundation of a great church.
וְרָאִיתִי בֵּין עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים יְסוֹד כְּנִסְיָה גְדוֹלָה.
- 5 And the angel said unto me: Behold the foundation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רְאֵה יְסוֹד כְּנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר הִיא נְתַעֲבֶת יוֹתֵר מִכָּל שְׂאָר הַכְּנִסְיּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הוֹרֶגֶת אֶת קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים; אַכֵּן, מַעֲנָה אוֹתָם וְאוֹסֶרֶת אוֹתָם, וְאֵף נוֹתֶנֶת עֲלֵיהֶם עַל בְּרוֹץ וּמוֹלִיכָה אוֹתָם בַּשָּׁבִי.
- 6 And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנְּתַעֲבֶתֶת הַזֹּאת; וְרָאִיתִי אֶת הַשָּׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְיַסְדָּהּ.
- 7 And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.
וְרָאִיתִי זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּמָשִׁי וְשָׁנִי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁזָּר, וְכָל מִינֵי בִגְדֵי יָקָרוֹת; וְרָאִיתִי זֹנוֹת לָרֹב.
- 8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.
וַדָּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: רְאֵה אֶת הַזָּהָב וְהַכֶּסֶף, הַמָּשִׁי וְהַשָּׁנִי וְהַשֵּׁשׁ הַמְשֻׁזָּר וּבִגְדֵי הַיָּקָרוֹת וְהַזֹּנוֹת! הֵם מִשְׁאֵת לֵב הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנְּתַעֲבֶתֶת הַזֹּאת.
- 9 And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.
וּבַעֲבוּר שִׁבַּח הָעוֹלָם הֵם מְשַׁמְדִּים אֶת קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים וּמוֹלִיכִים אוֹתָם בַּשָּׁבִי.
- 10 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי מַיִם רַבִּים הַמְבַדִּילִים אֶת הַגּוֹיִּים מִזֶּרַע אָחִי.
- 11 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.
וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: רְאֵה אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל זֶרַע אָחִיד!
- 12 And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who were separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.
וְנִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת עֵינֵי וְרָאִיתִי אִישׁ בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים הִבְדִּילוּהוּ מִזֶּרַע אָחִי; וְרָאִיתִי כִּי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים יָרְדָה וּפָעָלָה בְּאִישׁ, וְהוּא יָצָא וְנָסַע עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים, עַד הַגִּיעוֹ אֶל זֶרַע אָחִי אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.
- 13 And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.
וְרָאִיתִי אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר פָּעָלָה בְּקֶרֶב גּוֹיִּים אֲחֵרִים, וְהֵם יָצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה וְהִלְכוּ עַל הַמַּיִם הָרַבִּים.
- 14 And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.
וְרָאִיתִי הַמוֹנֵי גּוֹיִּים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וְרָאִיתִי אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל זֶרַע אָחִי, וְהֵם הוּפְצוּ מִלִּפְנֵי הַגּוֹיִּים וְנִגְפוּ.

- 15 And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר נָחָה עַל הַגּוֹיִם וְהִנֵּה הֵם הִצְלִיחוּ וְקִבְּלוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ לְנַחֲלָה; וְרָאִיתִי כִּי הָיוּ לְבָנִים וְנָאִים לְמִרְאָה וַיְפִי תֹאֵר, כְּדַמּוֹת עַמִּי לִפְנֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם.
- 16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה; וְהָיָה כֹחַ יְהוָה עִמָּהֶם.
- 17 And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי גּוֹי אֲרָצוֹת מוֹלְדָתָם נֶאֱסְפוּ עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם וְעַל הָאָרֶץ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּם.
- 18 And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים הָיָה עִמָּם, וְאַף כִּי חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים הָיְתָה עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ לְאַסֹּר מִלְחָמָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 19 And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִן הַשְׁבִּיָּה נִצְּלוּ בְכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים מִיַּד כָּל שְׂאֵר הָעַמִּים.
- 20 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.
- וְרָאִיתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, כִּי הֵם הִצְלִיחוּ בָּאָרֶץ. וְרָאִיתִי סֵפֶר אֲשֶׁר הִחְזִיקוּהוּ בֵּינֵיהֶם.
- 21 And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?
- וְאָמַר אֱלִי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הֲתָדַע אַתָּה פֶּשֶׁר הַסֵּפֶר?
- 22 And I said unto him: I know not.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: לֹא יָדַעְתִּי.
- 23 And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: הִנֵּה, הוּא יוֹצֵא מִפִּי יְהוּדִי. וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַסֵּפֶר. וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: הַסֵּפֶר אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה רֹאֶה הוּא כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְיְהוּדִים וְבוֹ בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְבוֹ אֵף רַבּוֹת מִנְּבוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים. וְהוּא כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן כְּפִי הַחֲרִיטוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל, אֲךֹּ אֵין הֵן כַּה רַבּוֹת; וְאוּלַּם יֵשׁ בָּהֶן דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן רַב עֶרְכָּן לְגוֹיִם.
- 24 And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.
- וְאָמַר אֱלִי מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה: הִנֵּה רָאִיתָ כִּי הַסֵּפֶר יָצָא מִפִּי יְהוּדִי; וּבְצֵאתוֹ מִפִּי יְהוּדִי הָיְתָה בּוֹ בְּשׁוּרֵת יְהוָה בְּמִלְאָה, אֲשֶׁר שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר הַשְּׁלִיחִים מְעִידִים עָלָיו. וְהֵם מְעִידִים עַל פִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בָּשָׂה אֱלֹהִים.
- 25 Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.
- עַל כֵּן, דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה יוֹצְאִים בְּטָהֳרָתָם מִן הַיְּהוּדִים אֶל הַגּוֹיִם, עַל פִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּאֱלֹהִים.

- ואחר צאתם ביד שנים עשר שליחי השה מן היהודים אל הגוים, הנך רואה את יסוד הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת ההיא אשר היא נתעבת מכל שאר הכנסיות. כי הנה הם עקרו מן הבשורה אשר לשה חלקים רבים אשר הם ברורים ויקרים מאד, וכן עקרו דברי בריתות יהוה רבים.
- 26 And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of a great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.
- ואכל זאת עשו למען עות את דרכי הישר אשר ליהוה ולמען סנור עיני בני אדם והקשות לבם.
- 27 And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.
- הנה ראית כי אחר צאת הספר מעם הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת, נעקרו דברים ברורים ויקרים רבים מן הספר, אשר הוא ספר שיהוה אלהים.
- 28 Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.
- ואחר עקירת דברים ברורים ויקרים אלה נפוצ הספר אל כל עמי הגוים. ואחר הפצת הספר בין כל עמי הגוים, אף מעבר למים הרבים אשר ראית אותם עם הגוים אשר יצאו מן השביה, הנך רואה, כי מפני עקירת דברים ברורים ויקרים רבים מן הספר, אשר היו פשוטים להבנת בני אדם כפי הפשטות אשר בשה אלהים, אכן מפני הדברים האלה אשר נעקרו מספר בשורת שיהוה אלהים, רבים עד מאד הכושלים, עד אשר גדול כח השטן לגבר עליהם.
- 29 And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.
- ועל אף זאת, הנך רואה כי הגוים אשר יצאו מן השביה ואשר נשאו בכח אלהים מעל שאר העמים על פני הארץ, אשר היא נבחרת על כל שאר הארצות, היא הארץ אשר יעדה יהוה אלהים בברית עם אביה, להיות ארץ נחלת זרעו; אכן, הנך רואה כי לא יניח יהוה אלהים לגוים להכחיד את תערבת זרעו אשר בקרב עם אחיה.
- 30 Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.
- גם לא יניח הוא לגוים להכחיד את זרע אחיה.
- 31 Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.
- ואף לא יניח יהוה אלהים כי לעולם ישארו הגוים בעורונו הנורא אשר ראית אותם מצויים בו, מפני חלקי בשורת השה הברורים והיקרים אשר הסתרו בידי הכנסייה הנתעבת ההיא, אשר חזית את יסודה.
- 32 Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

- 33 על כן כה יאמר שה אלהים: ארחם את הגוים כאשר אפקד את שארית בית ישראל במשפט גדול.
- 34 Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.
- 34 ודבר מלאך יהוה אלי לאמר: כה אמר שה אלהים: אחר פקדי את שארית בית ישראל, והשארית אשר בה אדבר היא זרע אביך; הנה אחר פקדי אותם במשפט והכותי אותם ביד הגוים, ואחר אשר רב יהיה כשלון הגוים מפני חלקי בשורת השם הבורים והיקרים אשר נעקרו בידי הפנסייה הנתעבת ההיא, אשר היא אם הזנות, ביום ההוא ארחם את הגוים, נאום השם, עד כי בעצם גבורתי אביא אליהם רב בשורת, אשר תהיה ברורה ויקרה, נאום השם.
- 35 And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.
- 35 כי כה אמר השם: הנני מתגלה לזרעך למען יכתבו דברים רבים אשר אשלחם אליהם, אשר הם ברוכים ויקרים. ואחר אשר ישמד זרעך וישקע בחסר אמונה, וכן זרע אחיך, הנה יטמנו הדברים האלה ויצאו לאור אל הגוים, במתת השם ומכחו.
- 36 For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.
- 36 ובהם תכתב בשורת, נאום השם, וצורי וישועתי.
- 37 And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.
- 37 וברוכים הם המבקשים ביום ההוא ליסד את ציון אשר לי, כי להם תהיה מתת רוח הקדש וכחה. והיה אם יתמידו עד הקץ, ינשאו ביום האחרון, ונושעו במלכות עולם אשר לשם; ואשר ישמיעו שלום ויבשרו ששון רב, מה נאום יהוה עלי ההרים.
- 38 And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.
- 38 וראיתי את שארית זרע אחי ואף את ספר שה אלהים, אשר יצא מפי יהודי, והוא בא מן הגוים אל שארית זרע אחי.
- 39 And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.
- 39 והיה אחר בואו אליהם, ראיתי ספרים נוספים אשר יצאו בכח השם, מאת הגוים אליהם, למען נתנו בלב הגוים ובלב שארית זרע אחי ובלב היהודים אשר נפוצו על פני כל הארץ, כי כתבי הנביאים ושנים עשר שליחי השם אמת הם.
- 40 And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first,
- 40 ודבר המלאך אלי לאמר: כתבי הזכרון האחרונים האלה, אשר ראית בקרב הגוים,

יֵאָשְׁרוּ אֶת אֲמִתּוֹת הַכְּתָבִים הָרָאשׁוֹנִים,
אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה, יוֹדִיעוּ
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַבְּרוּרִים וְהַיְקָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִעְקְרוּ
מֵהֶם; יוֹדִיעוּ לְכָל הַמְּשַׁפְּחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת
וְהָעַמִּים כִּי שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים הוּא בֶן אָב הָעוֹלָמִים
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הָעוֹלָם וְכִי שׁוֹמֵה עַל כָּל הָאָדָם לְבֹא
אֵלָיו, כֹּן לֹא יוֹשְׁעוּ.

וְהֵם יָבֹאוּ עַל פִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְוֹנֵנוּ
עַל פִּי הַשָּׁה; וְדַבְּרֵי הַשָּׁה יוֹדְעוּ בְּכַתְבֵי זִרְעוֹ
וּבְכַתְבֵי שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשָּׁה, עַל כֵּן יִכְוֹנֵנוּ
שְׁנֵיהֶם בְּאַחַד; כִּי אֵל אֶחָד וְרוּשָׁה אֶחָד יֵשׁ
עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

וְהֵנָּה יָמִים בָּאִים וְהוּא יִתְגַּלֶּה לְכָל הָעַמִּים,
לְיִהוּדִים וְאֶף לְגוֹיִם; וְאַחַר הַתְּגַלּוּתוֹ לְיִהוּדִים
וְלְגוֹיִם, יִתְגַּלֶּה הוּא לְגוֹיִם וְאֶף לְיִהוּדִים,
וְהָאַחֲרוֹנִים יִהְיוּ רִאשׁוֹנִים, וְהָרִאשׁוֹנִים
יִהְיוּ אַחֲרוֹנִים.

י

וְהִיָּה אִם יִשְׁמְעוּ הַגּוֹיִם אֶל שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים
בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, הוּא יוֹדַע אֱלֹהִים בְּדַבּוֹר וְאֶף
בְּכַח, אֲכֹן בְּמַעֲשֵׂהוּ, לְגַלֵּל אֶת אֲבְנֵי הַנֶּגֶף
אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.

וְאִם לֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים,
וְנִמְנֵנוּ עִם זֶרַע אֲבִיד; אֲכֹן, הֵם יִמְנוּ עִם בֵּית
יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְהִיוּ עִם בְּרוּךְ בְּאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה עַד
עוֹלָם; לֹא יוֹרְדוּ עוֹד אֵלֵי שְׁבִיָּה וּבֵית
יִשְׂרָאֵל לֹא יִכְלָם עוֹד.

וְהַבּוֹר הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר חָפְרָה לָהֶם הַכְּנָסִיָּה
הַגָּדוֹלָה וְהַנֶּתְעָבֶת, אֲשֶׁר נֹסְדָה בְּיַד הַשָּׂטָן
וּבְנֵיו לְמַעַן הוֹרִיד אֶת נַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם
שְׂאוּלָה, אֲכֹן, אָמַר שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים, הַבּוֹר הַגָּדוֹל
אֲשֶׁר חָפְרָה לְמַחֹת אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, הִסְתֵּם
יִסְתֵּם בְּיַד חוֹפְרֵיהָ, עַד הַשְׁמָדָם; אוּלָם
נַפְשָׁם לֹא תִשְׁמַד, כִּי אִם בְּהִשְׁלָכָתָהּ אֶל
שְׂאוּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא קֵץ.

כִּי הִנֵּה, זֹאת עַל פִּי שְׁבִיָּת הַשָּׂטָן, וְאֶף עַל
פִּי צִדְקַת אֱלֹהִים, עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר יַרְשִׁיעוּ
וְיִתְעִיבוּ לִפְנָיו.

which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

41 And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42 And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

14

1 And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

2 And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

3 And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

4 For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

- 5 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.
- 6 Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.
- 7 For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.
- 8 And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.
- 9 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.
- 10 And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.
- 11 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.
- 12 And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.
- 13 And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.
- וַדְּבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי, נְפִי, לֵאמֹר: אֶתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי בְּהִנָּחֵם הַגּוֹיִים עַל רְעֵתָם יִיטֵב לָהֶם; גַּם יִדְעָתָּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאַף שָׁמַעְתָּ כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנָּחֵם מִרְעָתוֹ, אֲבֹד יֵאבֹד.
- וְהָיָה אִם יִקְשׂוּ הַגּוֹיִים אֶת לִבָּם כְּנִגְדֵּךְ שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, אוֹי לָהֶם.
- כִּי הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת, אֲמַר שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, וְעָשִׂיתִי מַעֲשֶׂה גָדוֹל וְנִפְלֵא בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; מַעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר יִקּוּם עָדֵי עַד, בְּאַפִּן הָאֶחָד אוֹ הָאֲחֵר, אִם לְמִשָּׁף לִבָּם לְשָׁלוֹם וּלְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם וְאִם לְשִׁלְחָם אֶל קִשֵּׁי לִבָּם וְעוֹרוֹן דַּעְתָּם, אֲשֶׁר יוֹבִילוּם אֵלַי שְׂבִיָּה וְאַף כְּלִיוֹן, בְּהִמָּר וּבְרוּחַ, עַל פִּי שְׂבִיַת הַשָּׁטָן, אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו דְּבַרְתִּי.
- וְהָיָה בְּדְבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא אֲמַר אֵלַי: הֲתִזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתוֹת אֲב הַמְרוֹמִים אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל? וְאָמַרְתִּי: אָכֵן.
- וְהוּא אֲמַר אֵלַי: רְאֵה אֶת הַכְּנָסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּחְשָׁבָת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הַשָּׁטָן מִיְסְּדָהּ.
- וְהוּא אֲמַר: רַק שְׁתֵּי כְּנָסְיֹת לְבָדוֹן יֵשׁ, הָאֶחָת הִיא כְּנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים וְהָאֲחֵרַת כְּנָסְיַת הַשָּׁטָן. עַל כֵּן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שִׁיף לְכְּנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים שִׁיף לְכְּנָסְיָהּ הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, וְזוֹנַת כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהִבְטַחְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי אֶת זוֹנַת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, וְהִיא יֹשֶׁבֶת עַל מַיִם רַבִּים; וְהִיא מְשָׁלָה עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ, בֵּין כָּל הָאֻמּוֹת וְהַמְשָׁפָחוֹת וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת כְּנָסְיַת שׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים, וּמִתִּי מַעַט אֲנָשֶׁיָּהּ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת וְתוֹעֵבוֹת הַזּוֹנָה הַיּוֹשֶׁבֶת עַל מַיִם רַבִּים; וְאוֹלָם רָאִיתִי כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי כְּנָסְיַת הַשָּׁה, וְהֵם קְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים, אֵף הֵם הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ; וְהָיְתָה מְשָׁלָתָם עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ מַעֲטָה, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת הַזּוֹנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי אִם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת הַגְּדוֹלָה קִבְּצָה הַמוֹנִי אָדָם עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ מִבֵּין כָּל עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִים, לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשׁוֹה אֱלֹהִים.

- 14 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת גְּבוּרַת שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים נָחָה עַל קְדוּשֵׁי כְּנָסִית הַשֵּׁה וְעַל עַם בְּרִית יְהוָה, הַפְּזוּרִים עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ וַיְהִיו חֲמוּשִׁים בַּצִּדְקָה וּבְגְבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים בְּרַב תַּפְאָרָה.
- 15 And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.
- וְרָאִיתִי כִּי חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים נִתְּכָה עַל הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת הַהִיא עַד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעַמִּים וּמִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- 16 And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—
- וּבִהְחֹל הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה בֵּין כָּל עַמֵּי אֵם הַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, דִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל אֵם הַזְנוֹת, וְהִנֵּה רוֹאֶה אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 17 And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.
- וּבְבוֹא יוֹם הַשִּׁפּוֹף חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל אֵם הַזְנוֹת, הַכְּנָסִיָּה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁטִין מִיְסָדָהּ, אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם הַהוּא תִּחַל פְּעֻלַּת הָאֵב לַפְּנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ בַּעֲבוּר תְּקוּמַת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 18 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!
- וַדִּבֶּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי וְאָמַר: הִבֵּט נָא!
- 19 And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.
- וְהִבְטֵיתִי וְרָאִיתִי אִישׁ וְהוּא לוּבָשׁ שְׁלֵמָה לְבָנָה.
- 20 And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמַּלְאָךְ: הִנֵּה אֶחָד מִשְׁנֵים עָשָׂר שְׁלִיחֵי הַשֵּׁה.
- 21 Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.
- הִנֵּה יַחֲזֶה וְיִכְתֹּב אֶת שְׁאֵר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְדְבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ.
- 22 And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.
- וְאֵף יִכְתֹּב הוּא עַל אוֹדוֹת קֵץ הָעוֹלָם.
- 23 Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.
- אָכֵן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתֹּב יִשְׂרָאֵל וּנְכוּחִים; וְהִנֵּה הֵם נִכְתָּבִים בְּסֵפֶר אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ אֶת דְּבָרָיו בְּצֵאתָם מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי. וּבְעֵת אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי, אוֹ בְעֵת צֵאת הַסֵּפֶר מִפִּי הַיְּהוּדִי, הָיוּ הַדְּבָרִים הַנִּכְתָּבִים בְּרוּרִים וְטְהוּרִים, וְיִקְרִים מְאֹד, וְקִלִּי הַבְּנֵה לְכָל אָדָם.
- 24 And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתֹּב שְׁלִיחַ הַשֵּׁה הַזֶּה הֵנּם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ; וְהִנֵּה, אֶת שְׁאֵרֶם רְאֵה תִרְאֶה.

- 25 But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.
- אֲךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּרְאֶה אַחֲרַי כֵּן, לֹא תִכְתֹּב, כִּי מִנָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת שְׁלִיחַ שֶׁה אֱלֹהִים לְכַתְּבָם.
- 26 And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.
- וְכֵן לְאַחֲרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ הִרְאָה יְהוָה אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים; וְהֵם כָּתְבוּם; אֲמָנָם חֲתוּמִים הֵם לְמַעַן יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר בְּטָהֳרָם אֶל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, עַל פִּי הָאֱמֻת אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׂה, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה.
- 27 And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, שָׁמַעְתִּי וְהִנֵּנִי מַעֲיֵד כִּי שֵׁם שְׁלִיחַ הַשָּׂה הוּא יוֹחָנָן, כְּדִבְרַר הַמַּלְאָךְ.
- 28 And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, בְּהִיוֹתִי מִצְוָה שְׁלֹא לְכַתֵּב אֶת שְׂאָר הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי וְשָׁמַעְתִּי, מוֹצֵא סִפְקִי בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבֹתִים; וְאֶכְתֹּב אֲךָ מִקְצַת מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי.
- 29 And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מַעֲיֵד כִּי רָאִיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, וּמַלְאָךְ יְהוָה אֵכֵן הוֹדִיעָם אוֹתִי.
- 30 And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.
- וְעַתָּה הַשְׁלַמְתִּי דִּבְרַר עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי בְּעֵת הַנִּשְׁאָי בְּרוּחַ; וְאִם אֵכֵן לֹא נִכְתְּבוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי, אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבֹתִים, אֱמֻת וְנִכּוֹן הֵם. אָמֵן.

טו

15

- 1 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אַחֲרֵ הַנִּשְׁאָי בְּרוּחַ וְאַחֲרֵ רְאוּתִי אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, שָׁבְתִי אֶל אֹהֶל אָבִי.
- 2 And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things my father had spoken unto them.
- וְרָאִיתִי אֶת אֲחֵי וְהֵם מְרִיבִים זֶה עִם זֶה עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי אָבִי אֵלֵיהֶם.
- 3 For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.
- אֵכֵן, הוּא דִּבְרַר אֵלֵיהֶם גְּדוּלוֹת וְרַבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר קָשׁוֹת הָיוּ מִהֶבֶן, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִדְרֹשׁ אִישׁ אֶת יְהוָה, וּמִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם לֹא פָּנּוּ אֶל יְהוָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיָה עֲלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.
- 4 And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, נִעְצַבְתִּי מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם וּמִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי; כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר קוֹם יְקוֹמוּ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הַגְּדוֹלָה.

- 5 And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.
- 6 And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.
- 7 And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive-tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.
- 8 And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?
- 9 And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.
- 10 Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?
- 11 Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.
- 12 Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive-tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?
- 13 And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—
- 14 And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.
- וְהִכְרַעְתִּי מִפְּנֵי יְסוּרֵי, כִּי חֲשַׁבְתִּים לְגִדּוּלִים
מִכָּל הַיְסוּרִים, מִפְּנֵי חֲרָבִן עִמִּי, אֲשֶׁר אֶת
מִפְּלֹתָם רָאִיתִי.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתִּי כֹחַ, וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אַחֵי,
וּבִקְשָׁתִי לָדַעַת מֵהֶם אֶת שְׂרָשׁ מִרִּבּוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה, לֹא נוֹכַל לְהַבִּין אֶת דְּבָרֵי
אֲבִינוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעֵנָפִים הַטְּבָעִים
אֲשֶׁר לְעֵץ הַחַיִּית וְכֵן עַל הַגּוֹיִים.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲדִרְשַׁתֶּם אֶת יְהוָה?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: לֹא דִרְשָׁנוּ, כִּי לֹא הוֹדִיעָנוּ
יְהוָה בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה.
- וְאָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵיכָה לֹא שְׁמַרְתֶּם אֶת מִצְוֹת
יְהוָה? אֵיכָה תֵּאבְדוּ מִפְּנֵי קִשִּׁי לְבַבְכֶּם?
- הֲאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה?
אִם לֹא תִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבַבְכֶּם, וּתְבַקְשׁוּ מִמֶּנִּי
בְּאֵמוּנָה, בְּהֶאֱמִינְכֶם כִּי יִנָּתֵן לָכֶם, כְּאֲשֶׁר
תִּשְׁמְרוּ בְּשִׁקְיָה אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, אָכֵן יִדְּעוּ
לָכֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל נִמְשַׁל לְעֵץ
הַחַיִּית עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּאֲבִינוּ;
וְהִנֵּה, הֲלֹא מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל נִקְטָפְנוּ? הֲאֵין
אֲנַחְנוּ עֵנָף מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל?
- אָכֵן, הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר מֵתְכַנֵּן אֵלֵינוּ אֲבִינוּ, עַל
אוֹדוֹת הַרְקֶבֶת הָעֵנָפִים הַטְּבָעִים עַל יְדֵי
מִלֵּא הַגּוֹיִים הַזֶּה, כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, כְּאֲשֶׁר
יִשְׁקַע וְזֶרְעֵנוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֵמוּנָה, אָכֵן, בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים
וְדוֹרוֹת רַבִּים אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִגָּלֶה הַמָּשִׁיחַ לְבָנֵי
הָאָדָם בְּגוֹף, תֵּבֹא מִלֵּא בְּשׁוֹרֵת הַמָּשִׁיחַ
אֶל הַגּוֹיִים וּמִן הַגּוֹיִים אֶל שְׂאֲרִית זֶרְעֵנוּ.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא יִדְּעוּ שְׂאֲרִית זֶרְעֵנוּ כִּי מִבֵּית
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵם, וְכִי הֵנָּה עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה; וְיִדְּעוּ
וְיָבִירוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, וְכֵן יִדְּעוּ
אֶת בְּשׁוֹרֵת גּוֹאֲלָם אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ הוּא שֶׁרֶת אֶת
אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן יִתְוַדְּעוּ אֶל גּוֹאֲלָם וְאֶל עֲקָרֵי
תּוֹרָתוֹ לְמַעַן יִדְּעוּ אֵיךְ לְבֹא אֵלָיו וּלְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

- 15 And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?
- הֲלֹא יִשְׂמְחוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא וְיִשְׁבְּחוּ לְאֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים, צוּרָם וְיִשׁוּעָתָם? הֲלֹא יִקְבְּלוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא כֹּחַ וּמְחִיָּה מִגֶּפֶן הָאֱמֶת? הֲלֹא יָבוֹאוּ אֶל צֶאֱן הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים?
- 16 Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive-tree, into the true olive-tree.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הִמָּה עוֹד יִזְכְּרוּ בְּתוֹךְ בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְיִרְכָּבוּ אֶל עֵץ הַזֵּית הַנֶּאֱמָן בְּהֵיוֹתָם עֹנֵף טִבְעִי.
- 17 And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.
- זֶה הוּא דְעַת אָבִינוּ; וְדַעְתּוֹ הִיא כִּי לֹא יָקוּם הַדָּבָר עַד אֲשֶׁר יִפּוּצוּ בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים; וְכִי יָקוּם הַדָּבָר עַל יַד הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה יְהוָה אֶת גְּבוּרָתוֹ לַגּוֹיִים, עַל כִּי מֵאֲסוּרוֹ הַיְּהוּדִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 18 Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.
- עַל כֵּן לֹא דִבֶּר אָבִינוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת זֶרְעוֹ לְבָד, כִּי אֲכֹן עַל אוֹדוֹת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּלּוּ, מוֹרָה עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר תָּקוּם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר פָּרַת יְהוָה לְאַבְרָהָם אָבִינוּ, לֵאמֹר: בְּזֶרְעֶךָ יִבְרְכוּ כָּל מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- 19 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי דִבֵּר אֵלֵיהֶם עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. אֲכֹן, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת הַשְּׁבִת הַיְּהוּדִים בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים.
- 20 And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.
- וְשִׁנַּנְתִּי בְּאָזְנֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל הַשְּׁבִת הַיְּהוּדִים, אוֹ שִׁבְת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵי הַשְּׁבִתָם לֹא יִכְלְמוּ עוֹד וְיִשׁוּבוּ לֹא יִפּוּצוּ. וְהִרְבֵּיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל אֶחָי, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָגְעוּ וַנִּכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- 21 And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?
- וְהֵם דִּבְּרוּ אֵלַי שֵׁנִית לֵאמֹר: מַה פֶּשֶׁר הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ בַּחֲלוֹם? מַה פֶּשֶׁר הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר רָאָה?
- 22 And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.
- וְאֶמַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם: הוּא דְמוּת עֵץ הַחַיִּים.
- 23 And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: מַה פֶּשֶׁר מַעֲקֶה הַבְּרֹזֶל, אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ, הַמוֹלִיךְ אֶל הָעֵץ?
- 24 And I said unto them that it was the word of God, and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.
- וְאֶמַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם כִּי פֶשֶׁרוֹ הוּא דְבַר אֱלֹהִים; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִקְשִׁיב לְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים וַיֹּאחֲז בּוֹ בְּחֻזָּקָה לֹא יֵאבֵד לְעוֹלָם; אֲף לֹא יוֹכְלוּ מִדּוּחֵי הַשֵּׁטָן וְחֻצֵי אֲשׁוֹ לְגִבּוֹר עָלָיו, לְסַנּוֹר וּלְהוֹבִילוֹ לְאַבְדּוֹן.

- 25 ואֲנִי, נְפִי, הִזְכַּחְתִּים כִּי יִטּוּ אָזְנָם אֶל דְּבַר יְהוָה, אָכֵן, הִפְצַרְתִּי בָהֶם בְּכָל תַּעֲצוּמוֹת נַפְשִׁי, וּבְכָל מְאֹדִי, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדְבַר אֱלֹהִים וְיִזְכְּרוּ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו תָּמִיד בְּכָל דְּבַר.
- 26 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: מָה פֶּשֶׁר נָהַר הַמַּיִם אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִינוּ?
- 27 וְאִמַּרְתִּי לָהֶם כִּי הַמַּיִם אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אָבִי, טִנְפָּת הֵם; וְכֵן עִסְקָה דַּעַת אָבִי בְּדְבָרִים אֲחֵרִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאָה אֶת טִנְפַּת הַמַּיִם.
- 28 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי הִיְתָה זֹאת תְּהוֹם נוֹרָאָה אֲשֶׁר הִפְרִידָה בֵּין הָרָשָׁעִים וּבֵין עֵץ הַחַיִּים וּקְדוּשֵׁי אֱלֹהִים.
- 29 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי זֹאת דְּמוּת שָׂאוֹל הָאִמָּה אֲשֶׁר הִכְנָה לְרָשָׁעִים, כְּדִבַּר הַמַּלְאָךְ אֵלַי.
- 30 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי אָבִינוּ אָכֵן רָאָה כִּי מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים הִבְדִּיל אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים מִן הַצַּדִּיקִים; וְהִנֵּה אֲשֶׁר שָׁם הָיָה כְּנֶגֶה שְׁלֵהֲבַת בּוֹעֶרֶת הָעוֹלָה אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְעוֹלָם וָעַד.
- 31 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: הָאֵם פֶּשֶׁר הַדְּבַר לִיסוּרֵי הַגּוֹף בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָן, אוֹ הָאֵם לְמַצֵּב הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַסּוֹפִי אַחֵר מוֹת הַגּוֹף הַזְּמָנִי, אוֹ הָאֵם מוֹרָה לְדְבָרִים זְמָנִיִּים?
- 32 וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי אֵלָּה דְמוּת גַּם הַדְּבָרִים הַזְּמָנִיִּים וְגַם הָרוּחַ, כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפָּטוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אָכֵן, עַל מַעֲשֵׂי גּוֹפֵם הַזְּמָנִי בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָן.
- 33 לָכֵן, אִם יָמוּתוּ בְּרָשָׁעֶתָם הֵם אָכֵן יִדְחוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדְבָרֵי הָרוּחַ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם דְּבָרֵי צֶדֶק. עַל כֵּן יָבוֹאוּ לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִשְׁפָּט עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם; וְאִם מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם טִנְפָּת, אִף הֵם מְטֻנְפִּים יְהִיוּ, וְאִם הֵם מְטֻנְפִּים אֵין הֵם יְכוּלִים לְשִׁבֵּת בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אִם לֹא כֵן, תִּהְיֶה מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים מְטֻנְפָּת.
- 34 וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים אֵינָה מְטֻנְפָּת וְלֹא יוּכַל לָבוֹא שָׁם כָּל דְּבַר טָמֵא. לָכֵן חַיֵּב כִּי יוֹכֵן מְקוֹם טִנְפָּת לְאֲשֶׁר הוּא מְטֻנָּף.
- Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.
- And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?
- And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.
- And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.
- And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.
- And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.
- And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?
- And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.
- Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.
- But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35 And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

וְאֵכֹן יֵשׁ מְקוֹם מוּכָן, שְׂאוֹל הָאִימָה אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ דִּבַּרְתִּי, וְהַשָּׂטָן הַכִּינָהּ. לָכֵן הַמַּצֵּב הַסּוֹפִי אֲשֶׁר לְנַפְשׁ בְּנֵי אָדָם הֵנוּ יְשִׁיבָה בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ נִדּוּי מִפְּנֵי הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבַּרְתִּי.

36 Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

לָכֵן דְּחוּיִים הָרָשָׁעִים מִן הַצַּדִּיקִים וְכֵן מֵעֵץ הַחַיִּים, אֲשֶׁר פְּרִיו יָקָר וְנֹחֵמֵד מִכָּל שֵׂאֵר הַפְּרוֹת וְהוּא אֵכֹן הַגָּדוֹל בְּיוֹתֵר בְּמַתָּנוֹת אֱלֹהִים. כֹּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֶל אַחֵי. אָמֵן.

טז

16

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

וְהָיָה בְּכַלּוֹתִי, נְפִי, לְדַבֵּר אֶל אַחֵי, הֵם אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: הִנֵּה קָרָאתָ אֵלֵינוּ דְּבָרִים קָשִׁים, יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר נוֹכַל לְשֹׂאת.

2 And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

וְאִמַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵכֹן יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי קִשּׁוֹת עַל הָרָשָׁעִים, כַּפִּי הָאֱמֶת; וְאֵת הַצַּדִּיקִים הִצַּדֵּקְתִּי, וְאֵף הַעֲדוּתִי כִּי בְיוֹם הַאֲחֵרוֹן יִנְשְׂאוּ; אֵף קִשָּׁה הָאֱמֶת בְּאָזְנֵי הָאֲשָׁמִים, כִּי תִגְזֹרם בְּתוֹךְ.

3 And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

וְלוֹ צַדִּיקִים הֵייתֶם, אַחֵי, הִחַפְצִים לְשִׁמְעַת אֶל הָאֱמֶת וְלִשְׁתִּית לֵב אֲלֵיהָ, לְמַעַן תִּהְלְכוּ זְקוּפִים לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, אֲזִי לֹא הִתְלוֹנְנֶתֶם עַל הָאֱמֶת וְלֹא אִמַּרְתֶּם: דִּבַּרְתָּ עָלֵינוּ קִשּׁוֹת.

4 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִפְצַרְתִּי בְּאַחֵי בְּרַב שְׂקִידָה לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה.

5 And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

וְאִחֵי נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְאֲנִי שִׂמְחָתִי וְצַפִּיתִי כִּי יֵלְכוּ בְּנִתְיבוֹת צֶדֶק.

6 Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נֶאֱמְרוּ וְנַעֲשׂוּ בְּשֵׁבֶת אָבִי בְּאֵהָל בְּעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר קָרָא שְׁמוֹ לְמוּאֵל.

7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לָקַחְתִּי אֶחַת מִבָּנוֹת יִשְׁמַעֵאל לִי לְאִשָּׁה, וְגַם אַחֵי לָקָחוּ מִבָּנוֹת יִשְׁמַעֵאל לָהֶם לְנָשִׁים; וְזוֹרָם לָקַח אֶת בִּתּוֹ יִשְׁמַעֵאל הַבְּכִירָה לוֹ לְאִשָּׁה.

8 And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

וְכָךְ מָלֵא אָבִי אֶת כָּל מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לוֹ; וְאֲף אֲנִי, נְפִי, הִתְבָּרַכְתִּי עַד מְאֹד מֵאֵת יְהוָה.

- 9 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.
- 10 And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.
- 11 And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.
- 12 And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.
- 13 And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.
- 14 And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.
- 15 And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.
- 16 And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.
- 17 And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.
- 18 And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.
- וְהָיָה בְּקוֹם אָבִי בִּבְקָר וּבְקָרְבוֹ אֶל פֶּתַח הָאֹהֶל, הוּא רָאָה, לְרֹב הַשְׁתּוּמְמוֹתוֹ, כַּדּוֹר עָגֹל עַל הָאֲדָמָה וְהוּא מְלֹאכֶת מְחֻשֶּׁבֶת, נְחֹשֶׁת קָלִל טוֹבָה. וּבְתוֹךְ הַכַּדּוֹר שְׁתֵּי מְחוּגּוֹת, וְהָאֶחָת מוֹרָה אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ עָלִינוּ לְנִסְעָה בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- וְאֶסְפְּנוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צָרִיכִים הָיִינוּ לְשִׂאת אֶל הַמִּדְבָּר, וְכָל שְׂאֵר צִדְתָּנוּ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ יְהוָה, וְלִקְחָנוּ כָּל מִינֵי זֶרַע לְשִׂאת הַמִּדְבָּרָה.
- וְנִשְׂאָנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְנִסְעָנוּ הַמִּדְבָּרָה, מֵעֵבֶר נָהַר לָמָן.
- וְנִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ אַרְבָּעָה יָמִים לְפָאֲתֵי דְרוֹם, דְרוֹם-מִזְרָח, וְנָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ שְׁנִית וְקִרְאָנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם שָׁזֶר.
- וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת קְשֵׁתוֹתֵינוּ וְחֻצֵינוּ וְהִלָּכְנוּ אֶל הַמִּדְבָּר לְצוֹד צִידָה לְמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ; וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן, שָׁבְנוּ אֵלֵיהֶן אֶל שָׁזֶר בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְנִסְעָנוּ שְׁנִית בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּכוּוֹן הַהוּא, נִשְׁמָרִים אֶל הַפּוֹרִים אֲשֶׁר לְאֻזְרֵי הַמִּדְבָּר הַגּוֹבְלִים בָּיָם סוּף.
- וְהָיָה מִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יָמִים רַבִּים וְצִדְנוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ צִיד בְּקִשְׁתוֹת וּבְחֻצִים וּבְאֲבָנִים וּבְקִלְעִים אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ.
- וְנִסְעָנוּ בְּכוּוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוֹרָה הַכַּדּוֹר, וְהוּא הוֹבִילָנוּ אֶל הַפּוֹרִים בְּאֻזְרֵי הַמִּדְבָּר.
- וְאַחֵר נִסְעָנוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יָמִים רַבִּים, נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ לְעֵת קִצְרָה, לָנוּחַ לָנוּ שְׁנִית וּלְהִבִּיא צִיד לְמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ.
- וְהָיָה בְּיָצְאִי, נְפִי, לְצוֹד צִיד, וְהִנֵּה שִׁבְרָתִי אֶת קְשֵׁתִי, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עֲשׂוּיָה מִפְּלָדָה טוֹבָה. וְאַחֵר שִׁבְרִי אֶת קְשֵׁתִי וְהִנֵּה רָגָזוּ עָלַי אַחֵי עַל אֲשֶׁר אֲבָדָה קְשֵׁתִי, כִּי לֹא הִבָּאנוּ צִיד.

- 19 And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.
- וְשָׁבוּ אֶל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ רֵיקָם, וְהָנָה אֲנִשְׁנוּ יָגָעִים מְאֹד מִן הַמַּסָּע וְרַב סָבָלָם מִחֹסֶר הַמָּזוֹן.
- 20 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.
- וְלָמָן וְלִמְוֶאל וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל הִתְלוֹנְנוּ רַבּוֹת עַל תְּלֹאוֹתֵיהֶם וְסִבְלוֹתֵיהֶם בַּמִּדְבָּר, וְאִי אָבִי הֵחֵל לְהִתְלוֹנֵן עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו. אַכְּוָה, הִכְלָנוּ נַעֲצָבוּ מְאֹד עַד כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל יְהוָה.
- 21 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.
- וּבְסִבְלִי עִם אֲחֵי עַל הִשָּׁחַת קִשְׁתִּי, וּבְרַפּוֹת קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם, רַבּוֹ תְּלֹאוֹתֵינוּ, עַד כִּי לֹא יָכֻלְנוּ לְהָבִיא צִיד.
- 22 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל אֲחֵי, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת לִבָּם, עַד כִּי הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָשִׂיתִי קִשֶׁת מֵעֵץ, וְחוּץ מִמֶּקֶל יֶשֶׁר; וְחִמְשִׁיתִי אֶת עֲצָמִי בְּקִשֶׁת וְחוּץ, קִלַּע וְאַבְנִים. וְאָמַרְתִּי אֶל אָבִי: אָנָּה אֵלַי לְהָבִיא צִיד?
- 24 And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.
- וְאָבִי שָׁאַל אֶת יְהוָה, כִּי הֵם נִכְנְעוּ מִפָּנָי דְּבָרִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי רַבִּים אֲמַרְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם בְּחַעֲצוֹמוֹת נַפְשִׁי.
- 25 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.
- וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֶל אָבִי; וְהוּא הִתְיַסֵּר עַד מְאֹד עַל תְּלֹנְתּוֹ עַל יְהוָה, עַד כִּי שָׁקַע בְּמַעֲמָקֵי דְאָבָה.
- 26 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו קוֹל יְהוָה: הִבֵּט אֶל הַכְּדֹוֹר וּרְאֵה אֶת אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּב.
- 27 And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.
- וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אָבִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים עַל פָּנֵי הַכְּדֹוֹר הוּא יָרָא וַיִּתְּרַד מְאֹד, וְכֵן אֲחֵי וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל וּנְשׁוֹתֵינוּ.
- 28 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, רָאִיתִי אֶת הַמַּחְוִים אֲשֶׁר בְּתוֹךְ הַכְּדֹוֹר וְהָיְתָה פְּעֻלָּתָם עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה וְהִחְרִיצוֹת וְשִׁמַּת הַלֵּב אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ בָּהֶם.
- 29 And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to
- וְאִי כְּתִיבָה חֲדָשָׁה נִכְתָּבָה עֲלֵיהֶם, קִלָּה לְקוֹרָא, אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעָתָנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה; וְהִכְתָּב הִתְחַלֵּף פַּעַם בְּפַעַם, עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה וְהִחְרִיצוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ בּוֹ.

- וְכִפּוּי נִכְחִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְדַעַת כִּי בְּקִטְנוֹת עוֹשָׂה
יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָלִיתִי עַל פִּסְגַּת הָהָר, עַל פִּי
הַהוֹרָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ עָלַי פְּנֵי הַכְּדוּר.
- וְצִדְתִּי חַיּוֹת שָׂדֶה, מֵאֲכָל לְמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵינוּ.
- וְשָׁבְתִי אֶל אֹהֲלֵינוּ וּבְיָדֵי הַחַיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר
צִדְתִּי; וַיִּמָּה גְּדוּלָּה הָיְתָה שֶׁמִּחְתָּם בְּרֹאוֹתָם
כִּי הִבְאִיתִי צִיד, וְהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה וְנָתַנוּ
לוֹ תוֹדוֹת.
- וְשָׁבְנוּ לְנִסְעַ בְּדֶרֶךְ קְרוֹבָה לְאֲשֶׁר הָלַכְנוּ
בְּרֵאשׁוֹנָה; וְאַחֵר נָסַעְנוּ יָמִים רַבִּים נָטִינוּ
אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ שֵׁנִית לְנוֹחַ יָמִים אַחָדִים.
- וַיִּשְׁמַעְאֵל מֵת וְנִקְבֵּר בַּמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא
שְׁמוֹ נַחוֹם.
- וּבָנוֹת יִשְׁמַעְאֵל הָרְבוּ לְקוֹנוֹ עַל מוֹת אָבִיהֶן
וְעַל תִּלְאֻתֵיהֶן בַּמִּדְבָּר. וְהֵן הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל אָבִי
כִּי הוֹצִיאָן מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם לֵאמֹר: אָבִינוּ מֵת,
וְאֲנַחְנוּ הָרְבִינוּ לְנֶגֶד בַּמִּדְבָּר וְאֵף סָבְלָנוּ סָבָל
רַב, רָעָב, צָמָא וּיְגִיעָה; וְאַחֵר הִתְלַאֲוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
הֵן נִגְוָע בְּרָעָב בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- כֹּה הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עַל אָבִי וְעָלַי; וְהֵן בִּקְשׁוּ לָשׁוּב
אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- וְאָמַר לִמֹּן אֶל לִמְוֶאֶל וְאֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעְאֵל:
הִבֵּה נְהַרְגֵה אֶת אָבִינוּ וְאֶת אֶחָיו נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר
שָׂת עֲצָמוֹ לְהִיּוֹת לָנוּ, אֶחָיו הַבְּכִירִים,
מוֹשֵׁל וּמוֹרָה.
- הִנֵּה, הוּא אוֹמֵר כִּי דִבֵּר אֵלָיו יְהוָה, וְאֵף כִּי
מַלְאָכִים שָׁרְתוּהוּ. אֵף יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי מִכְּזָב
הוּא; הוּא אוֹמֵר לָנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
וּמְרַבֵּה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת תַּחְבּוּלוֹתָיו לְמַעַן שִׁקֵּר
אֶת עֵינֵינוּ, בְּחֻשְׁבוֹ, אוֹלִי, כִּי יוֹכֵל לְהוֹבִילָנוּ
אֶל מִדְבָּר נֶכָר; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִילָנוּ הָרְחֵק,
חָשַׁב הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲצָמוֹ מֶלֶךְ וְשֹׁלֵט עָלֵינוּ,
לְמַעַן יַעֲשֶׂה בָנוּ כְּחֻצְצוֹ וְכֻרְצוֹנוֹ. כֹּה הָעִיר
אֶחָי לִמֹּן אֶת לִבָּם לְכַעַס.
- the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by
small means the Lord can bring about great things.
- 30 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the
mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.
- 31 And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, insomuch that I did
obtain food for our families.
- 32 And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts
which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food,
how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble
themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.
- 33 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly
the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the
space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry
for the space of a time.
- 34 And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place
which was called Nahom.
- 35 And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceed-
ingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions
in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he
had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is
dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have
suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these
sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.
- 36 And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and
they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.
- 37 And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael:
Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has
taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder
brethren.
- 38 Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels
have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us;
and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning
arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead
us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he
has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do
with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did
my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

וְהָיָה יְהוָה עִמָּנוּ, אִף קוֹלוֹ הִרְבֵּה עָלֵיהֶם
דְּבָרִים, וְהוֹכִיחַם מְאֹד; וְאַחֵר הוֹכִיחַם קוֹל
יְהוָה, הִסִּירוּ כַּעֲסָם וַנִּחְמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם, עַד
כִּי שָׁב יְהוָה לְבָרְכֵנוּ בְּמִזְוֹן, וְלֹא אָבִדְנוּ.

39 And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

יז

17

וְנִסְעָנוּ שֵׁנִית בְּמִדְבָּר; וּמִן הָעַת הָהִיא נִסְעָנוּ
לְפָאֲתֵי מִזְרָח. וְנִסְעָנוּ וְהִלְכְנוּ בְּמִדְבָּר בְּתַלְאָה
רַבָּה; וְנִשְׁיֵנוּ הוֹלִידוּ יְלָדִים בְּמִדְבָּר.

1 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

וּבְרַכַּת יְהוָה רַבְתָּה עָלֵינוּ, עַד כִּי בָאָכְלָנוּ
בָּשָׂר נָא בְּמִדְבָּר, שֶׁפַע חֵלֶב נִשְׁיֵנוּ לְמַעַן
יִלְדִיָּהוּ, וְהָיוּ חִזְקוֹת אִף כְּגִבֹּרִים וְהָיוּ סָבְלוּ
אֶת מִסְעֵיהֶן בְּלִי תַלְנָה.

2 And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

וְכַךְ רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי יֵשׁ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים. וְאִם יִשְׁמְרוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו,
יִכְלְכֻם אֱלֹהִים וַיִּאֲזָרֵם חֵיל וַיְכִין צָרְכָם
לְהַקִּים אֶת הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם; עַל כֵּן, הֵכִין
צָרְכָנוּ בִּימֵי מְגוּרֵינוּ בְּמִדְבָּר.

3 And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

וְשָׁכְנוּ שָׁם שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אָכֵן, שְׁמוֹנֶה
שָׁנִים בְּמִדְבָּר.

4 And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

וּבָאֵנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרָאנוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ
רֶב־שֶׁפַע מִפְּנֵי פְרוֹתֶיהָ הָרְבִים וְדִבְשָׁה; וְכָל
זֹאת הֵכִין יְהוָה לְמַעַן לֹא נָאִבֵּד. וְרָאִינוּ אֶת
הַיָּם, אֲשֶׁר אֶת שְׁמוֹ קָרָאנוּ אִירִיאָנְטוּם
וּפְשָׁרוֹ מִיַּם רַבִּים.

5 And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

וְנִשְׁיֵנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּקִרְבַּת חוּף הַיָּם; וְאִף כִּי
סָבְלָנוּ תַּלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וּקְשָׁיִים רַבִּים עַד אֲשֶׁר
לֹא נוּכַל לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּלֶם, עַל־צֵנוּ מְאֹד בְּבוֹאֵנוּ
אֶל חוּף הַיָּם; וְקָרָאנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם
רֶב־שֶׁפַע, מִפְּנֵי פְרוֹתֶיהָ הָרְבִים.

6 And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

וְאַחֵר הַיּוֹתִי, נְפִי, בָּאָרֶץ רֶב־שֶׁפַע יָמִים רַבִּים,
הָיָה אֵלַי קוֹל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: קוּם, לֵךְ אֶל הָהָר.
וְקָמְתִי וְעָלִיתִי עַל הָהָר וְקָרָאתִי אֶל יְהוָה.

7 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

- 8 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.
- 9 And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?
- 10 And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.
- 11 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.
- 12 For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;
- 13 And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.
- 14 Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.
- 15 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.
- 16 And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.
- 17 And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.
- 18 And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.
- וַדְּבַר יְהוָה אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: בְּנֵה סְפִינָה עַל פִּי הַתְּבִנִית אֲשֶׁר אֶרְאֶה, לְמַעַן אוֹלִיךָ אֶת עַמִּי אֶל מַעְבַּר הַמַּיִם הָאֵלֶּה.
- וָאִמַּרְתִּי: יְהוָה, אָנָּה אֵלֶּךָ לְמִצָּא עֲפֻרֹת בְּרוֹץ לְמַלְאֶכֶת הַתֵּכָה בְּעִבּוֹר כָּלִים לְבִנוֹת סְפִינָה עַל פִּי הַתְּבִנִית אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתָנִי.
- וַיְהוֶה הוֹרֵנִי אָנָּה אֵלֶּךָ לְמִצָּא עֲפֻרֹת בְּרוֹץ לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּלִים.
- וָאֲנִי, נְפִי, עָשִׂיתִי מִפּוֹחַ מַעֲוֹרוֹת חַיִּית לְפַחַת בּוֹ אֵשׁ; וּכְכֹלֹתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמִּפּוֹחַ אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אָפִיחַ אֵשׁ, הִכִּיתִי אֶבֶן בְּאַבֵּן לְהַבְעִיר אֵשׁ.
- כִּי עַד הָעַתָּה הָיָא לֹא נִתְּנָנוּ יְהוָה לְהַרְבוֹת בְּעֶרְתִּי אֵשׁ בְּמִסְעָנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר, כִּי אָמַר: אֲמַתִּיךָ אֶת מֵאֲכַלְכֶּם לְמַעַן לֹא תִבְשְׁלוּהוּ.
- וָאֲנִי אֲפִי אֶהְיֶה מְאוֹרְכֶּם בַּמִּדְבָּר; וְאִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי אֲבֹן אֶפְנֶה אֶת דְּרָכְכֶם לְפָנֵיכֶם. וְהָיָה אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, אוֹלִיכְכֶם אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וַיִּדְעַתֶּם כִּי אֲנִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר מוֹלִיכְכֶם.
- וַיְהוֶה הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר: אַחֵר בּוֹאֲכֶם אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, וְכִי אֲנִי יְהוָה, הַצֹּלֶתִיכֶם מֵאֲבִדוֹן בְּאֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִי אֶתְכֶם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- עַל כֵּן אֲנִי, נְפִי, הִתְאַמְצְתִּי לִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, וְהִפְצַרְתִּי בְּאַחֵי לִשְׁמִירַת אֱמוּנִים וְלִשְׁקִידָה.
- וְעָשִׂיתִי כָלִים מִעֲפֻרֹת הַבְּרוֹץ אֲשֶׁר הִתְכַּתִּי מִן הַסֵּלֶע.
- וּבְרָאוֹת אַחֵי כִּי בָאתִי לְבִנוֹת סְפִינָה, יָחֳלוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן עָלַי לֵאמֹר: אָחִינוּ סָכָל; מִדְּמָה הוּא בְּנִפְשׁוֹ כִּי יַעֲלֶה בִידּוֹ לְבִנוֹת סְפִינָה; אֲכֹן, מִדְּמָה הוּא כִּי יוֹכֵל לְחַצּוֹת אֶת הַמַּיִם הָאֲדִירִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- כֹּה הִתְאוּנְנוּ עָלַי אַחֵי, וְחָפְצוּ לְחַדֵּל מִעֲבֹדָה, כִּי לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי אוֹכֵל לְבִנוֹת סְפִינָה, וְאִם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוֹרָה לִי זֹאת.

- 19 ואֲנִי, נְפִי, דָּאֲבִיתִי מְאֹד עַל קִשִּׁי לָבָם; וּבְרָאוּתָם אֶת דָּאֲבֹן לְבִי הֵם עָלְצוּ בְלָבָם, עַד כִּי שָׁשׂוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: יִדְעֻנוּ אֲשֶׁר לֹא תוּכַל לְבָנוֹת סְפִינָה, כִּי יִדְעֻנוּ אֲשֶׁר אִין לָךְ שְׁקוּל הַדַּעַת; וְלָכֵן, אִין בְּיָדְךָ לְבַצֵּעַ עֲבֹדָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה.
- 20 And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.
- 21 וְהִנֵּךְ כְּאָבִינוּ, הוֹלֵךְ אַחֵר מִחֻשְׁבוֹת סְכָלוֹת לָבוֹ; הוּא הוֹבִילָנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאֲנַחְנוּ נִדְדָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר בִּשְׁנֵים הָרְבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה; וְנָשִׁינוּ עִמּוֹ בְּהָרִיוֹנוֹ, וְיָלְדוּ יְלָדִים בַּמִּדְבָּר, וְסָבְלוּ כָּל רָע, זֹלַת הַמָּוֶת; וְטוֹב הָיָה מוֹתוֹן טָרָם צֹאתָן מִירוּשָׁלַם מִסָּבֵל הַתְּלָאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.
- 20 And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.
- 21 הִנֵּה, סָבְלָנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר בִּשְׁנֵים הָרְבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יָכְלָנוּ לִהְיוֹת מְרוֹכְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶרֶץ נִחְלָתָנוּ, וְאֵף לִהְיוֹת מְאֻשְׁרִים.
- 21 Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.
- 22 יִדְעֻנוּ כִּי הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם צָדִיק הָיָה; כִּי שָׁמְרוּ אֶת חֻקֵּי יְהוָה וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו, וְאֶת כָּל מִצְוֹתָיו, עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; וּבִזְכוּת יִדְעֻנוּ כִּי עִם צָדִיק הוּא. וְאָבִינוּ שָׁפַט אוֹתָם וְהוֹבִילָנוּ מִשָּׁם כִּי שָׁמַעְנוּ לְדִבְרָיו; וְהִנֵּה אַחֵינוּ כְּמוֹהוּ. כִּזְזֵאת הִתְלוֹנְנוּ אַחֵי וְרָגְנוּ עָלֵינוּ.
- 22 And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.
- 23 וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: הֲתֵאֱמִינוּ כִּי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, הָיוּ יוֹצְאִים מִיַּד הַמִּצְרִים לִילָא שְׁמַעוּ לְדִבְרֵי יְהוָה?
- 23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?
- 24 הָאֲמַנִּים תִּחְשְׁבוּ כִּי הֵם הָיוּ מוֹצְאִים מֵעֲבָדוֹת, אִלּוּ לֹא צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת מֹשֶׁה לְנַהֲגֵם מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים?
- 24 Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?
- 25 הֵן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי בְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָיוּ בְּבֵית עֲבָדִים; אֵף יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי מִשָּׂאֵם הָיָה כְּבֹד מְנֻשָּׂא; עַל כֵּן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי צֹאתָם מֵעֲבָדוֹת הָיְתָה לְטוֹבָתָם.
- 25 Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.
- 26 הֵן יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי יְהוָה צִוָּה אֶת מֹשֶׁה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה; אֵף יִדְעֻתֶם כִּי בְּדָבְרוֹ נִבְקְעוּ מִי יָם סוּף הַנָּה וְהַנָּה, וּבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָלְכוּ בִּיבֶשֶׁת.
- 26 Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

- 27 ואולם ידעתם כי המצרים, אשר היו צבאות פרעה, טבעו בים סוף. But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.
- 28 וידעתם גם כי המן היה מאכלם במדבר. And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.
- 29 ואף ידעתם כי משה בדברו, כפי גבורת אלהים אשר היתה בו, הכה בסלע ויצאו מים למען ישברו בני ישראל את צמאם. Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.
- 30 ועל אף כי הוליכם יהוה אלהיהם, גואלם, ההולך לפנייהם ונהגם יומם והאיר להם לילה ועשה להם את הכל לספק את המועיל לאדם, הם הקשו את לבם ועורו את עיניהם, וחרפו את משה ואת אלהי האמת, אל חי. And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.
- 31 וכפי דברו הוא השמידם, וכפי דברו הוא נהגם, וכפי דברו עשה הכל למענם; לא נעשה דבר כי אם בדברו. And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not anything done save it were by his word.
- 32 ואחר חצותם את נהר הירדן הוא חזקם למען יגרשו את בני הארץ ופיצו אותם עדי השמדם. And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.
- 33 והנה, התחשבו כי בני הארץ הזאת, אשר היו בארץ היעודה ואשר אבותינו גרשום ממנה, היו צדיקים? הנני אומר לכם: לא! And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.
- 34 התחשבו כי אבותינו היו מבחרים מהם, אלו היו הם עם צדיק? אומר לכם: לא! Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.
- 35 כל הבשר אחד בעיני יהוה; הישר ימצא חן בעיני אלהים. אף הנה העם הזה מאס בכל דבר אלהים ועוונם שלם; חמת אלהים היתה עליהם במלואה; יהוה ארר את הארץ עליהם וברכה למען אבותינו; אכן, הוא אררה עליהם עד השמדם, וברכה למען אבותינו, בעבור יתגברו עליה. Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.
- 36 הנה, יהוה ברא את הארץ לשבת בה, ואת בניו ברא להתנחל בה. Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.
- 37 והוא מקים עם צדיק, ומשמיד את עמי הרשעים. And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

- 38 And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.
וְהוּא מוֹלִיךְ אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים אֶל אֲרָצוֹת חֲמֻדָּה, וְאֶת הָרָשָׁעִים הוּא מְשַׁמֵּד, וְאֶת אֲרָצָם הוּא מְאַרֵר עֲלֵיהֶם לְמַעַנָם.
- 39 He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.
הוּא מוֹשֵׁל בְּגִבְהֵי מְרוֹמִים, כִּי הֵם כִּסְאוֹ וְהָאָרֶץ הָדוֹם רִגְלָיו.
- 40 And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.
וְהוּא אוֹהֵב אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּלוּהוּ לֵהוּיֹת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. הִנֵּה, הוּא אָהַב אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ וְכָרַת עִמָּם בְּרִית, אַבְרָהָם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב; וְהוּא זָכַר אֶת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת, וְהוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם.
- 41 And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.
וְהוּא יִשְׁרָם בַּמִּדְבָּר בְּשִׁבְטוֹ, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, כְּמוֹכֶם, וַיְהִי וַיִּשְׁרָם עַל עֲוֹנָם. וְהוּא שָׁלַח בָּהֶם נָחָשׁ שָׂרִף מְעוֹפֹפִים; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכּוּם, הוּא הֵכִין דֶּרֶךְ לְרַפָּאָם; וְאֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת הָיָה לְהִבְטִי; אֹךְ מִפְּנֵי פִשְׁטוֹת הַדֶּרֶךְ, אוֹ קְלוּתָהּ, רַבּוּ הַמֵּתִים.
- 42 And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.
וְהֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם, וַחֲרָפוּ אֶת מֹשֶׁה וְאֶף אֶת אֱלֹהִים; וְאוּלַם יַדְעֶתֶם כִּי הוּא הוֹבִילָם בְּכֹחוֹ, אֲשֶׁר אֵין שֹׁוֹה לוֹ, אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעֻדָּה.
- 43 And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.
וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵר כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִגִּיעַ הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִרְשִׁיעוּ כְּמַעַס בְּמַלְאָם, וְלֹא אֲדַע אֶת הַדְּבָר אֲלֵא כִּי כַּעַת הַזֹּאת הֵם עַל סֶף הַכְּלִיוֹן; כִּי יִדְעִתִּי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יוֹם כְּלִיוָנָם, זֵוִילַת מַעֲשִׂים, אֲשֶׁר יִלְכוּ לְשִׁבְיָהּ.
- 44 Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.
עַל כֵּן צִוָּה יְהוָה אֶת אָבִי לְצֵאת הַמִּדְבָּרָה; וְאֲנִשִּׁי יְהוּדָה בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ, וְאֶף אַתֶּם אֲמַרְתֶּם לְהַרְגּוֹ. לָכֵן, רוֹצְחִים אַתֶּם בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, וְהִנֵּנְכֶם כְּמוֹהֶם.
- 45 Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.
מְהִירִים אַתֶּם לַעֲוֹל, וְאִטִּיִּים לִזְכוֹר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם. רָאִיתֶם מַלְאָךְ, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם; אֹךְ שָׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת קוֹלוֹ כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם; וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם בְּקוֹל דְּמָמָה דְּקָה, אֹךְ הָיִיתֶם אִטוּמֵי רִגֵּשׁ וְלֹא יָכַלְתֶּם לְהִרְגִּישׁ אֶת דְּבָרָיו; עַל כֵּן דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם כְּדִבְרֵי קוֹל הָרָעַם, אֲשֶׁר הִתְרִיד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה כְּמוֹ עֵמֵד לְבִקְעָהּ.
- 46 And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he

- את העקב והמישור ישבר. על כן, איכה תקשו לבבכם כל כך?
- 47 Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.
- 48 And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words, they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.
- 49 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.
- 50 And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.
- 51 And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?
- 52 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.
- 53 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.
- 54 And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.
- והנה נקעה נפשי ממצוקה מפניכם, ולפי דואב; יראתי פן תשליכו לעולם. הנה, מלאתי רוח עד אשר אין כח בגוי.
- וכדברי את הדברים האלה, הם רגזו עלי וחפצו להשליכני אל מצולות הים; ובבואם לשלח בי את ידם דברתי אליהם לאמר: בשם אל שדי, הנני אוסר עליכם לגעת בי, כי מלאתי גבורת אלהים, עד כלות בשרי, ואשר ישלח ידו אלי כקנה יבש: בל והיה כאין לפני גבורת אלהים, כי הוא יכה.
- ואני, נפי, אמרתי אליהם כי יחדלו להתלונן על אביהם, וכי לא ימנעו מעבד עמי, כי אלהים צוני לבנות ספינה.
- ואמרתי אליהם: אלו צוני אלהים לעשות את כל הדברים, יכלתי לעשותם. אם יצוני לומר למים האלה, יהיו עפר, אכן יהיו עפר; ואם אמר את הדבר, הן יקום.
- ואכן, אם ליהוה כח כה רב והוא עשה נפלאות כה רבות בין בני האדם, כיצד אין בידי להורותני לבנות ספינה?
- ואני, נפי, הרביתי לדבר אל אחי, עד אשר בושו ולא יכלו להתנפח עמי; אף לא העזו לשלח ידם בי, ולא לגעת בי באצבעים ימים רבים. וזאת לא העזו פן יבלו לפני, כה אדירה היתה רוח אלהים, וכך גברה עליהם.
- ואמר אלי יהוה: נטה ידך שנית אל אחיך ולא יבלו לפניך אף אני אהמם נאום יהוה, וזאת אעשה למען ידעו כי אני יהוה אלהיהם.
- ואני נטיתי את ידי אל אחי ולא בלו לפני, אף טלטלם יהוה כאשר דבר.

וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: עֵתָּה יָדַעְנוּ אֶל נָכוֹן כִּי יְהוָה עִמָּךְ
כִּי יָדַעְנוּ כִּי כָח יְהוָה הוּא אֲשֶׁר טָלַטְלָנוּ. וְהֵם
נָפְלוּ לִפְנֵי וְאָמְרוּ לְעַבְדִּי, אַךְ אֲנִי לֹא הִנַּחְתִּים
זֹאת, וְאָמַרְתִּי: אַחִיכֶם אֲנִי, אַחִיכֶם הִקְטָן;
לָכֵן עֲבֹדוּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, וְכַבְּדוּ אֶת
אֲבִיכֶם וְאֶת אִמְכֶם לְמַעַן יֵאָרִיכוּ יְמֵיכֶם
בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם נוֹתֵן לָכֶם.

55 And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

יח

18

וְאֲחִי עֲבָדוּ אֶת יְהוָה וְהָלְכוּ עִמִּי, וְעָשִׂינוּ
קִרְשִׁים מִלֵּאכֶת מְחֻשֶׁבֶת. וַיְהוֶה הָרָאִנִי
כִּפְעַם בְּפַעַם אֶת הָאֶפֶס אֲשֶׁר אָכִין אֶת
קִרְשֵׁי הַסְּפִינָה.

1 And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַקִּרְשִׁים כְּדֶרֶךְ
חֻקְמַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְאֶף אֶת הַסְּפִינָה לֹא בְּנִיתִי
כְּדֶרֶךְ אֲנָשִׁים, כִּי בְּנִיתִי אוֹתָהּ בְּאֶפֶס אֲשֶׁר
הָרָאִנִי יְהוָה; עַל כֵּן לֹא הִיְתָה זֹאת מִלֵּאכֶת
כְּדֶרֶךְ הָאֲנָשִׁים.

2 Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִלַּכְתִּי לַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת אֶל הָהָר,
וְהִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֶל יְהוָה פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת; עַל כֵּן
הָרָאִנִי יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת.

3 And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַסְּפִינָה, כְּדָבָר
יְהוָה, רָאוּ אֲחֵי כִי טוֹבָה הִיא, מִעֲשֵׂה אֲמָנוֹת
טוֹב מְאֹד; עַל כֵּן נִכְנַעְנוּ שְׁנֵית לִפְנֵי יְהוָה.

4 And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֶל אָבִי לֵאמֹר כִּי נָקוּם וְנֵרֵד
אֶל הַסְּפִינָה.

5 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

וְלִמְחֻרָתָּהּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִכְיֵנוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים,
פִּרְוֹת וּבָשָׂר לָרֹב מִן הַמִּדְבָּר, וּדְבַשׁ בְּשֹׁפַע
וְצִידָה כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ יְהוָה, יֵרְדוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה,
וְכָל מִשְׁאֲנֵנוּ עִמָּנוּ וְכֹן זֵרְעֵנוּ וְכָל חֶפֶץ אֲשֶׁר
הִבֵּאֵנוּ עִמָּנוּ, כָּל אֶחָד כְּכִי שְׁנוֹתָיו; אָכֹן יֵרְדוּ
כָּלֵנוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה עִם נְשֹׁתֵינוּ וְיִלְדֵינוּ.

6 And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

וְאָבִי הוֹלִיד שְׁנֵי בָנִים בַּמִּדְבָּר;
שֵׁם הָרֵאשׁוֹן יַעֲקֹב וְהַצֶּעִיר יוֹסֵף.

7 And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

וְאַחֵר רָדַת כָּלֵנוּ אֶל הַסְּפִינָה,
וְעִמָּנוּ צִידָתָנוּ וְחֻפְצֵינוּ, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ,

8 And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded

יֵצְאוּנוּ לַיָּם וְנִשְׁאַנוּ הָרוּחַ אֶל
הָאָרֶץ הַיְעֵדָה.

us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַנוּ הָרוּחַ יָמִים רַבִּים, וְהִנֵּה
אֶחָי וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל וְכֹן נְשֹׁתֵיהֶם הֵחִלוּ לַעֲלֹז,
עַד כִּי פָּרְצוּ בְּמַחֲלוּת וּבְשִׁירִים וּבְדַבְּרֵי
נִבְלֹת וְשִׁכְחוּ בְּכֹחַ מִי הוּבְאוּ שָׁמָּה; אָכֵן, הֵם
הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּנִבְלֹת רַבָּה.

9 And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, יִרְאתִי מְאֹד פֶּן יִחַרָה בְּנִי אֶף
יְהוָה וַיַּכֵּנוּ עַל עֲוֹנוֹנָנוּ, וְנִבְלַע בְּמַצֹּלוֹת הַיָּם;
עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, נְפִי, הֵחִלֹּתִי לְדַבֵּר עִמָּם בְּדַבְּרִים
נְכוּחִים; אֲדָּהֵם רְגִזוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: לֹא נִחְפֹּץ
אֲשֶׁר אֶחֱיוֹנוּ הַצָּעִיר יִשְׁלֹט בָּנוּ.

10 And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

וְלָמֶן וּלְמוֹאֵל תְּפִשׁוּנִי וְאֶסְרוּנִי בְּחִבְלִים
וְנִהְגוּ בִּי קָשׁוֹת מְאֹד; וַיְהוֶה נֶשֶׂא זֹאת לְמַעַן
יִרְאֶה אֶת כֹּחוֹ, לְמַלֵּא אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר
עַל הָרָשָׁעִים.

11 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

וּבְאַסְרָם אוֹתִי עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכֹלְתִּי לָנוּעַ,
וְהִנֵּה הַמָּכוֹן אֲשֶׁר הָכִין יְהוָה חָדַל לַפְעֹל.

12 And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

עַל כֵּן, הֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ לָאֵן יִנְהֲגוּ אֶת הַסְּפִינָה,
עַד אֲשֶׁר קָמָה סַעְרָה גְּדוֹלָה, אָכֵן, סוּפָה עָזָה
וְאַיִמָּה, וְאַנְחָנוּ נִשְׁאַנוּ לְאַחֹר עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם
בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים; וְהֵם יָרְאוּ מְאֹד פֶּן יִטְבְּעוּ
בָּיָם, וְאוֹלָם הֵם לֹא הִתִּירוּנִי.

13 Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

וּבַיּוֹם הָרְבִיעִי לְהִנְשָׂאנוּ לְאַחֹר הַתַּחֲזָקָה
הַסּוּפָה עַד מְאֹד.

14 And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

וְהָיָה כִּי כְּמַעַס נִבְלַעְנוּ בְּמַצֹּלוֹת הַיָּם.
אָכֵן, אַחֲרָם אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַנוּ לְאַחֹר עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם
בְּמִשְׁךְ אַרְבָּעָה יָמִים, הִבִּינוּ אֶחָי כִּי מִשְׁפָּטִי
יְהוָה עָלֵיהֶם וְכִי יֵאבְדוּ אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מֵעֲוֹנוֹם.
וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֵלַי וְהִתִּירוּ אֶת הַחִבְלִים אֲשֶׁר עַל
יָדִי, וְהִנֵּה הֵן צָבוּ עַד מְאֹד, וְכֵן צָבוּ מְאֹד
קָרְסָלִי וְרַב הָיָה הַכָּאֵב.

15 And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrist, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

וְאוֹלָם פָּנִיתִי אֶל אֱלֹהֵי וְהִלֵּלְתִּיו כָּל הַיּוֹם,
וְלֹא הִתְלַוְנִיתִי עַל יְהוָה מִפְּנֵי תִלְאוֹתַי.

16 Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

17 ואֲבִי, לְחִי, דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים וְכֵן אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, אֲךָ הֵם נָשְׁפוּ אִיוִּמִּים רַבִּים עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר בְּעַבּוּרִי; וְהוֹרִי הָיוּ אֲזַי בָּאִים בִּימֵים, וְנָפְלוּ לְמִשְׁכַּב חֲלָים מִפְּנֵי צָעַר לִבָּם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁבִּיעוּם בְּנִיָּהֶם.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

18 וּמִפְּנֵי יְגוֹנָם וְצָעָרָם הָרַב, וְעוֹזֹן אַחִי, הֵם כָּמַעַט נִשְׂאוּ מִן הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, לְהוֹעֵד לְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם; אַכֵּן, כָּמַעַט יֵרְדָה שִׁיבָתָם לְשֹׁכֵן עֶפְרָ; אֲךָ כָּמַעַט הִשְׁלָכוּ בִּיגוֹנָם אֶל תוֹךְ קֶבֶר מִיָּם.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

19 וַיַּעֲקֹב וַיּוֹסֵף, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ קְטָנִים וְנִצְרָכִים לְטָפוֹל רַב, סָבְלוּ מִפְּנֵי תִלְאוֹת אִמָּם; וְאִשְׁתִּי, בְּדַמְעָה וּבִתְפִלָּתָהּ, וְאֲףִי וְלִדִּי, לֹא רָפְכוּ אֶת לֵב אַחִי לְהַתִּירוֹנִי.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

20 וְלֹא הָרַךְ דְּבַר אֶת לִבָּם, אֲלֹא גְבוּרַת יְהוָה הַמְאַיֶּמֶת עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַכְחִידָם; עַל כֵּן, בְּרָאוּתָם כִּי עָמְדוּ לְהִבָּלַע בְּמַצּוּלוֹת הַיָּם, נִחְמוּ הֵם עַל אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ וְהַתִּירוֹנִי.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

21 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הַתִּירוֹנִי, לְקַחְתִּי אֶת הַמָּכּוֹן, וְהִנֵּה הוּא פָּעַל כַּאֲשֶׁר חָפְצָתִי. וְאַנִּי הַתְּפִלָּתִי אֶל יְהוָה; וּכְכֹלֹתִי לְהַתְּפַלֵּל שָׁכְכוּ הָרוּחוֹת, וְהַסְעָרָה חָדְלָה, וְהַיָּמָה שָׁלוֹה רָבָה.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

22 וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, נִהְגֵּיתִי אֶת הַסְפִּינָה, וְנִסְעָנוּ שְׁנֵית אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

23 וְהָיָה אַחֵר נִסְעָנוּ יָמִים רַבִּים, הִגַּעְנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, וּבַעֲלוֹתָנוּ עַל הַיַּבְשָׁה נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְקָרָאנוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

24 וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה וְלִזְרֹעַ זֵרַע; וְזָרְעָנוּ אֶת כָּל זֵרְעֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר הִבָּאנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם. וְהֵם צִמְחוּ מְאֹד, וְהָיוּ מְבָרָכִים בְּשָׁפַע.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

25 וְהָיָה בְּנִסְעָנוּ בְּיַעְרֹת הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, מִצָּאנוּ כָּל מִין בְּהֵמָה, פָּרָה וְשׁוֹר חֲמֹר וְסוֹס, עֶז וְיַעֵל, וְכָל חַיַּת בָּר לְמִינָהּ אֲשֶׁר לְתוֹשֵׁלֵת הָאָדָם. וּמִצָּאנוּ עֲפָרוֹת מָכֶל מִין, זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְנַחֲשֶׁת.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

יט

19

- וְצוֹנִי יְהוָה, וְעָשִׂיתִי לִיחוֹת מֵעוֹפֶרֶת זָהָב לְחַרֵּט עַל גְּבִיֵּיהֶם אֶת כְּתָבִי וְזִכְרוֹנוֹת עַמִּי. וְחָרַטְתִּי עַל הַלִּיחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי אֶת דְּבָרֵי זִכְרוֹנוֹת אָבִי וְאֶת דְּבָרֵי מִסְעָנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר וְאֶת נְבוּאוֹת אָבִי; וְאֶף רַבּוֹת מִנְּבוּאוֹתֵי חָרַטְתִּי עַל גְּבִיֵּיהֶם.
- וְכַעֲשׂוֹתִי אוֹתָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יִצְוֶנִי יְהוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֵף אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה; עַל כֵּן חָרוּטִים דְּבָרֵי זִכְרוֹנוֹת אָבִי וְתוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו וְרַב דְּבָרֵי כָּל מִסְעָנִי בַּמִּדְבָּר עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיָּהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי. עַל כֵּן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לִפְנֵי עֲשׂוֹתִי אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הִזְכַּרְתִּי, לְמַעֲשֶׂה, בְּתֵאוֹר רַב יוֹתֵר עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנִים.
- וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתִי אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כְּמִצְוָה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, צִוִּיתִי לְכַתֵּב עַל גְּבִי הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֶת הַחֲלָקִים הַבְּרוּרִים וְהַיְקָרִים יוֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר לְשֵׁרוֹת עַמִּי וּלְדְבָרֵי נְבוּאָה; וְאֵף כִּי אֲשֶׁמַּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ בַּעֲבוּר יְלָמְדִם עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר יִנְחַל אֶת הָאָרֶץ וְכֵן בַּעֲבוּר תְּכָלִיזוֹת אַחֵרוֹת אֲשֶׁר תְּכָלִיזוֹן יְדוּעָה לִיהוָה.
- עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, נְפִי, רָשַׁמְתִּי עַל גְּבִי הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֲחֵרִים כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן הַמִּסְפָּר אוֹ מִסְפָּר בְּתֵאוֹר רַב יוֹתֵר, עַל מְלַחְמוֹת עַמִּי, מְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם וְהַשְׁחָתָתָם. זֹאת עָשִׂיתִי וְצִוִּיתִי עַל עַמִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ אַחֵר לְכַתֵּב: וְכִי יַעֲבִירוּ אֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מִדּוֹר לְדּוֹר, אוֹ מִנְּבִיא אֶל נְבִיא, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִצְוֶם יְהוָה שְׁנִית.
- וְדְבָרֵי מְלֶאכֶת הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה עוֹד יִסְפְּרוּ; וְהִנֵּה אוֹסִיף לְסַפֵּר כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; וְזֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ לִידְעִית עַמִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם קִדְשֵׁת יוֹתֵר.
- אוּלָּם, לֹא אֶכְתֵּב דְּבָר עַל לִיחוֹת בְּלִתי אִם חֲשַׁבְתִּי קְדוֹשׁ. וְאִם אֶטְעֶה, הֲלֹא גַם אֲנִשִּׁי קֶדֶם טְעוּ? אֵף לֹא אֶצְטַדֵּק בְּתֵתִי דְּכִי בְּזוּלָתִי, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי חֲלָשְׁתִּי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא מֵאֵת רַפְיוֹן הַבָּשָׂר.
- 1 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.
- 2 And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.
- 3 And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.
- 4 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.
- 5 And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.
- 6 Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

- 7 For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.
- 8 And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.
- 9 And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.
- 10 And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.
- 11 For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.
- 12 And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.
- 13 And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.
- 14 And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.
- כי את אשר נחשב בעיני מקצת האנשים יקר, באשר לגוף ובאשר לנפש, אחרים חושבים לריק ורומסים אותו תחת רגליהם; אכן, אף את אלהי ישראל עצמו רומסים הם תחת רגליהם. אף אדבר בלשון אחר: הם חושבים אותו לריק ואינם שומעים בקול עצתו.
- הנה הוא בא, כדבר המלאך, שש מאות שנה מיום צאת אבי מירושלם.
- ובני תבל, מפני עוונם ופשטוהו כדבר ריק. על כן יצליפו בו והוא יסבל זאת; יכווה והוא יסבל זאת; אכן, יירקו עליו והוא יסבל זאת, מפני חסדו וארף אפיו לבני האנוש.
- ואלהי אבותינו, אשר הוציאם ממצרים, מבית עבדים, ואשר שמרם במדבר, אלהי אברהם ויזחק, ואלהי יעקב, ימסר עצמו, כדבר המלאך, כבן אדם לידי אנשי רשע, בעבור יתנשא, כדבר זינוק, ובעבור יצלב, כדבר נאום, ובעבור יקבר בקבר חצוב, כדברי זנוס אשר דבר על אודות שלשת ימי החשכה, אשר יהיו לאות כי מת, הנתן ליושבי איי הים, וביותר לאשר מבית ישראל המה.
- כי כה אמר הנביא: ביום ההוא פקוד יהיה אלהים את כל בית ישראל; לקצתם בקולו, מפני צדקתם, לשמחתם הרבה ולישועתם, ולאחרים בקולות רעם ובקבוצתו, בסערה ובאש, בעשן וערפל חשכה, ובפתיחת פי האדמה ובעקירת הרים.
- כל אלה בוא יבואו, נאום הנביא זנוס. וסלעי הארץ בקוע יבקעו; ומפני נאקת האדמה, רבים ממלכי איי הים יפעלו ברוח אלהים ויקראו: אלהי הטבע סובל.
- ואשר לאלה אשר בירושלם, כה אמר הנביא: יענום כל העמים על אשר יצלבו את אלהי ישראל, וישו את לבם, וימאסו באותות ובמופתים, ובגבורת אלהי ישראל ותפארתו.
- וענ אשר ישו את לבם ויבזו את קדוש ישראל, נאום הנביא, יתעו בבשר ואבדו, והיו לשריקה ולשנינה, ולשנואים בקרב כל העמים.

- 15 Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.
- 16 Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.
- 17 Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.
- 18 And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.
- 19 Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.
- 20 For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.
- 21 And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.
- 22 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.
- 23 And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.
- 24 Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have
- וְכֵן אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: וְאוֹלָם, בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִחַדְלוּ לִפְנוֹת עֶרְףָּ לַקְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִזְכֹּר הוּא אֶת הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- אִזּוֹ יִזְכֹּר אֶת אֵי הַיָּם; וְיִקְבֹּץ אֶת כָּל עַם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, נְאוּם יְהוָה, מֵאַרְבַּע כַּנְפוֹת הָאָרֶץ, כַּדְּבַר הַנְּבִיא זֵנוֹס.
- וְכָל הָאָרֶץ תִּרְאֶה אֶת יְשׁוּעַת יְהוָה, אָמַר הַנְּבִיא; וְכָל אֲמָהּ וּמִשְׁפָּחָהּ, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם וְיִבְרָכָהּ.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּתִבְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעַמִּי, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲמִשׁוֹ; לְכֵם לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוָה גּוֹאֲלְכֶם.
- עַל כֵּן אֲדַבֵּר אֵל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אִם יִקְבְּלוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- כִּי הִנֵּה פּוֹעֲלֹת בִּי הָרוּחַ עַד חֲלִי, בְּעִבּוֹר הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם, עַד כִּי כָל מִפְרָקִי אֵיבָרִי רַפִּים; כִּי לֹא הָיָה יְהוָה רַחוּם לְהִרְאוֹתֵנִי עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָה לְנְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵים, אֲבֹדְתִי אִף אֲנִי.
- הֵן הִרְאָה יְהוָה לְנְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵים אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכֵן הִרְאָה לְרַבִּים עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ; עַל כֵּן, חָיֵב כִּי יוֹדְעִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי כְּתוּבִים הֵם עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לְמַדְתִּי אֶת אַחֵי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; אֲכֹן קִרְאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים הַחְרוּטִים עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל, לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה בְּאַרְצוֹת אַחֵרוֹת, בֵּין הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר מִקֶּדֶם.
- וְקִרְאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים בְּסִפְרֵי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; אִף לְמַעַן אֲמִשׁוֹ לְכֵם הֵיטֵב לְהֶאֱמִין בִּיהוָה גּוֹאֲלְכֶם, קִרְאתִי בְּאָזְנוֹיהֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב הַנְּבִיא יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ; כִּי אֶת כָּל הַכְּתוּבִים הַמְּשֻׁלָּחִים לָנוּ בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹעִילוּנוּ וְיִלְמְדוּנוּ.
- לְכֵן דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: שְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא, אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר שְׁאֲרִית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הַמְּהָ, עֲנֵף כְּרוֹת; שְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ אֵל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וַעֲשׂוּ אוֹתָם מִשְׁלַל

לְכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לְכֶם תִּקְוָה כְּלֹאֲחִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר
מֵהֶם נִגְדַּעְתֶּם; כִּי בְדֶרֶךְ זֶה כָּתַב הַנְּבִיא:

hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for
after this manner has the prophet written.

כ

20

- 1 Hear ye this, O house of Jacob, which are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, which swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, but not in truth, nor in righteousness.
 - 2 For they call themselves of the holy city, and stay themselves upon the God of Israel; the Lord of hosts is his name.
 - 3 I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I shewed them; I did them suddenly, and they came to pass.
 - 4 Because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;
 - 5 I have even from the beginning declared it to thee; before it came to pass I shewed it thee: lest thou shouldest say, Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image, hath commanded them.
 - 6 Thou hast heard, see all this; and will not ye declare it? I have shewed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.
 - 7 They are created now, and not from the beginning; even before the day when thou heardest them not; lest thou shouldest say, Behold, I knew them.
 - 8 Yea, thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time that thine ear was not opened: for I knew that thou wouldest deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.
 - 9 For my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain for thee, that I cut thee not off.
 - 10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver; I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.
 - 11 For mine own sake, even for mine own sake, will I do it: for how should my name be polluted? and I will not give my glory unto another.
- שָׁמְעוּ זֹאת, בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, הַנִּקְרָאִים בְּשֵׁם
יִשְׂרָאֵל וּמִמֵּי יְהוּדָה יֵצְאוּ; הַנִּשְׁבָּעִים בְּשֵׁם
יְהוָה וּבֵאלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יִזְכִּירוּ, לֹא בֶאֱמֶת
וְלֹא בִצְדָקָה.
- כִּי מַעִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ נִקְרְאוּ וְעַל אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל
נִסְמְכוּ: יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת שְׁמוֹ.
- הָרַשְׁנוֹת מֵאֶזְ הַבְּרִיָּה וּמִפִּי יֵצְאוּ וְאֲשַׁמִּיעֶם;
פִּתְאֻם עָשִׂיתִי וַתְּבֹאנָה.
- מִדַּעְתִּי כִּי קָשָׁה אַתָּה; וְגִיד בְּרֹזֶל עֲרֹפְךָ
וּמִצְחֶךָ נְחוֹשֶׁה.
- וְאֶגִּיד לְךָ מֵאֶז, בְּטֶרֶם תִּבּוֹא הַשְׁמַעְתִּיךָ,
כֹּן תֹּאמַר: עֲצָבִי עָשָׂם וּפִסְלִי וְנִסְכִּי צָוָם.
- שָׁמַעְתָּ חֲזֹה כָּלֵה; וְאַתָּה הֲלוֹא תִגְדֹּד?
הַשְׁמַעְתִּיךָ חֲדָשׁוֹת מֵעַתָּה, וְנִצְרוֹת,
וְלֹא יָדַעְתָּם.
- עַתָּה נִבְרָאוּ, וְלֹא מֵאֶז וּלְפָנֵי יוֹם, וְלֹא
שָׁמַעְתָּם כֹּן תֹּאמַר: הִנֵּה יָדַעְתִּין.
- גַּם לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ, גַּם לֹא יָדַעְתָּ, גַּם מֵאֶז לֹא
פִתְחָה אָזְנוֹךָ, כִּי יָדַעְתִּי בְּגוֹד תִּבְגְּדוּ וּפִשַׁע
מִבְטָן קָרָא לְךָ.
- לְמַעַן שְׁמִי אֲאָרִיד אִפִּי, וְתִהְלֶתִי אֲחֻסָּם לְךָ
לְבִלְתִּי הִכְרִיתֶךָ.
- הִנֵּה צִרְפְּתִיךָ, בְּחִרְתִּיךָ בְּכוֹר עֲנִי וְלֹא בְכָסֶף.
- לְמַעְנִי, לְמַעְנִי אֶעֱשֶׂה, כִּי אֵיךְ יִחַל וּכְבוֹדִי
לֹאֲחֹר לֹא אֶתֵּן.

נְפִי א כ:יב–כא:א

- 12 Hearken unto me, O Jacob and Israel, my called; I am he; I am the first, I also am the last.
שְׁמַע אֵלַי, יַעֲקֹב, וְיִשְׂרָאֵל מִקְרָאִי:
אֲנִי הוּא, אֲנִי רִאשׁוֹן, אֲנִי אַחֲרוֹן.
- 13 Mine hand also hath laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens: when I call unto them, they stand up together.
אֲפִי יָדִי יִסְדָּה אֶרֶץ וְיָמִינִי טָפְחָה שָׁמַיִם;
קָרָא אֲנִי אֲלֵיהֶם, יַעֲמָדוּ יַחְדָּו.
- 14 All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them hath declared these things? The Lord hath loved him: he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall be on the Chaldeans.
הַקָּבְצוּ כָלְכֶם וּשְׁמָעוּ; מִי בֵּהֶם הִגִּיד אֵת
אֵלֶּה? יְהוָה אֲהָבָו; אֲכֹן, יַעֲשֶׂה חֲפָצוֹ בְּבָבֶל
וְזָרְעוֹ בְּשָׁדִים.
- 15 I, even I, have spoken; yea, I have called him: I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.
אֲנִי, אֲנִי דִבַּרְתִּי, אֲנִי קָרָאתִיו; הִבֵּאתִיו
וְהַצְלִיחַ דְּרָכּוֹ.
- 16 Come ye near unto me, hear ye this; I have not spoken in secret from the beginning; from the time that it was, there am I: and now the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.
קָרְבוּ אֵלַי, שְׁמָעוּ זֹאת, לֹא בִסְתֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי;
מֵרֵאשִׁי, מֵעַתָּה הָיִיתִּיהָ שָׁם אֲנִי; וְעַתָּה, אֲדַנִּי
יְהוָה שָׁלְחָנִי וְרוּחוֹ.
- 17 Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am the Lord thy God which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldest go.
כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה גְּאֻלְךָ, קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל:
אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, מְלַמֵּדְךָ לְהוֹעִיל,
מְדַרְיֶכְךָ בְּדֶרֶךְ תֵּלֶךְ.
- 18 O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments! Then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea:
לֹא הָיְתָה הַקְּשִׁיבָה לְמִצְוֹתַי, וְהָיָה כְּנָהָר שְׁלוֹמְךָ
וְצִדְקָתְךָ כְּגַלֵּי הַיָּם.
- 19 Thy seed also had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.
וְהָיָה כְּחוֹל יִרְעָךָ, וְצֶאֱצָאִי מֵעֵד כְּמַעֲתָיו;
לֹא יִכָּרֵת וְלֹא יִשָּׁמַד שְׁמוֹ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- 20 Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter it even to the end of the earth; say ye, The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.
צֵאוּ מִבָּבֶל, בְּרָחוּ מִכַּשְׂדִּים, בְּקוֹל רִנָּה
הִגִּידוּ הַשְׁמִיעוּ זֹאת, הוֹצִיאָהוּ עַד קֶצֶה
הָאָרֶץ; אָמְרוּ: גְּאֹל יְהוָה עֲבָדוֹ יַעֲקֹב.
- 21 And they thirsted not when he led them through the deserts: he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them: he clave the rock also, and the waters gushed out.
וְלֹא צָמְאוּ; בְּחֶרְבוֹת הוֹלִיכֶם. מִיַּם מִצּוֹר
הֵזִיל לָמוֹ; וַיִּבְקַע צוּר וַיִּזְבּוּ מִיַּם.
- 22 There is no peace, saith the Lord, unto the wicked.
אֵין שְׁלוֹם, אָמַר יְהוָה לְרָשָׁעִים.

כא

21

- 1 And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me; and hearken, ye people, from far! The Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.
וְשׁוּב: הִאֲזִינוּ בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּל הַנִּגְדָּעִים
וְהַנִּדְחִים עַל רָשָׁעַת רוּעֵי עַמִּי; כָּלְכֶם הַנִּגְדָּעִים
וְהַמִּפְזָּרִים בְּנֶכַר אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם;
שְׁמָעוּ אֲנִים אֵלַי וְהַקְשִׁיבוּ לְאָמִים מִרְחוֹק;
יְהוָה מִבֶּטֶן קָרָאֲנִי, מִמְּעֵי אִמִּי הִזְכִּיר שְׁמִי.

- וַיֵּשֶׁם פִּי כְחֶרֶב חֲדָה, בְּצֶל יְדוֹ הִחְבֵּיאֲנִי;
וַיִּשְׁמְנֵנִי לְחֵץ בָּרוּר; בְּאַשְׁפֹּתוֹ הִסְתִּירָנִי.
- וַיֹּאמֶר לִי, עַבְדִּי אַתָּה, יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר
בָּךְ אֶתְפָּאֵר.
- וָאֲנִי אָמַרְתִּי: לְרִיק יִנְעַמְתִּי, לְתֹהוּ וְהֶבֶל
כַּחַי כְּלִיתִי; אֲכֹן מִשְׁפָּטִי אֶת יְהוָה וּפְעֻלָּתִי
אֶת אֱלֹהֵי.
- וַעֲתָה אָמַר יְהוָה, יוֹצְרִי מִבֶּטֶן לְעַבְדָּ לּוֹ,
לְשׁוֹבֵב יַעֲקֹב אֱלֹוֵי וְיִשְׂרָאֵל לֹו יֵאָסֶף; וְאֶכְבֹּד
בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, וְאֱלֹהֵי הָיָה עִזִּי.
- וַיֹּאמֶר: נָקַל מִהְיוֹתָ לִי עַבְדָּ, לְהַקִּים אֶת
שְׁבִטִי יַעֲקֹב, וּנְצוּרֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל לְהַשִּׁיב; וּנְתַתִּיךָ
לְאוֹר גּוֹיִם לְהָיוֹת יְשׁוּעָתִי עַד קֵצֵה הָאָרֶץ.
- כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: גֹּאֲלֵ יִשְׂרָאֵל קְדוֹשׁוֹ, לְבָזֶה
נָפַשׁ, לְמַתְעֵב גּוֹי, לְעַבְדֵּי מַעֲשֵׂי־לִם: מַלְכִּים יִרְאוּ
וְקָמוּ, שָׂרִים וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לְמַעַן יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָן,
קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיְבָרֶךְךָ.
- כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: בְּעֵת רְצוֹן עֲנִיתִיךָ וּבְיוֹם
יְשׁוּעָה עֲזַרְתִּיךָ; וְאַצְרָךְ, וְאַתְּנֶךָ לְבְרִית עִם
לְהַקִּים אֶרֶץ, לְהַנְחִיל נַחֲלוֹת שְׁמֹמוֹת.
- לֵאמֹר לְאַסּוּרִים: צֵאוּ; לְאֲשֶׁר בַּחֹשֶׁךְ: הִגְלוּ;
עַל דְּרָכִים יִרְעוּ וּבְכָל שְׁפִיִּים מְרִיעֵתָם.
- לֹא יִרְעָבוּ וְלֹא יִצְמָאוּ וְלֹא יִכָּם שָׁרֵב וְשִׁמְשׁ;
כִּי מִרְחָמָם יִנְהָגָם וְעַל מִבּוּעֵי מַיִם יִנְהָלָם.
- וְשִׁמְתִּי כָּל הָרִי לְדֶרֶךְ, וּמִסְלָתִי יִרְמוּן.
- הִנֵּה אֵלֶּה, מִרְחוֹק יָבוֹאוּ: וְהִנֵּה אֵלֶּה מִצָּפוֹן
וּמִמֶּיִם, וְאֵלֶּה מֵאֶרֶץ סִינִים.
- 2 And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;
- 3 And said unto me, Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.
- 4 Then I said, I have laboured in vain, I have spent my strength for nought, and in vain: yet surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.
- 5 And now, saith the Lord that formed me from the womb to be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him, Israel being gathered to him, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.
- 6 And he said, It is a light thing that thou shouldest be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel: I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth.
- 7 Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, and his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nation abhorreth, to a servant of rulers, Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful, and the Holy One of Israel, and he shall choose thee.
- 8 Thus saith the Lord, In an acceptable time have I heard thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee: and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;
- 9 That thou mayest say to the prisoners, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Shew yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.
- 10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; neither shall the heat nor sun smite them: for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.
- 11 And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.
- 12 Behold, these shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

- 13 רְנוּ שָׁמַיִם וְגִלִּי אֶרֶץ, וּפְצְחוּ הָרִים רִנָּה; כִּי נַחֵם יְהוָה עַמּוֹ וְעֲנִיּוֹ יִרְחָם.
Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.
- 14 וַתֹּאמֶר צִיּוֹן עֲזָבַנִי יְהוָה, וְאֲדֹנָי שְׁכַחֲנִי.
But Zion said, The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.
- 15 הֲתִשְׁכַּח אִשָּׁה עוֹלָה מִרְחֶם בֶּן בֶּטֶן? גַּם אֵלֶּה תִשְׁכַּחֲנָה, וְאַנֹכִי לֹא אֶשְׁכַּח.
Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee.
- 16 הֵן עַל כַּפַּיִם חֲקַתִּיךָ; חוֹמֹתֶיךָ נִגְדִי תָמִיד.
Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.
- 17 מְהֵרָה בָּנֶיךָ; מְהֵרָסֶיךָ וּמְחַרְבֵיךָ מִמֶּךָ יֵצְאוּ.
Thy children shall make haste; thy destroyers and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.
- 18 שִׂאִי סְבִיב עֵינֶיךָ וּרְאִי: כָּלֵם נִקְבְּצוּ בְּאוֹ לָךְ; חֵי אֲנִי, נָאִם יְהוָה, כִּי כָלֵם כָּעֲדֵי תִלְבָּשִׁי וּתְקַשְּׁרִים כַּכֶּלֶה.
Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these gather themselves together, and come to thee. As I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth.
- 19 כִּי חֲרַבְתִּיךָ וְשִׁמְמַתִּיךָ וְאֶרֶץ הָרָסָתָה, כִּי עָתָה תִּצָּרִי מִיּוֹשֵׁב וְרִחְקוֹ מִבְּלָעֶיךָ.
For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.
- 20 עוֹד יֹאמְרוּ בְּאָזְנוֹיךָ בְּנֵי שִׁכְלֶיךָ: צַר לִי הַמָּקוֹם, וְנָשָׂה לִי וְאַשְׁבָּה.
The children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me: give place to me that I may dwell.
- 21 וְאָמַרְתָּ בְּלִבְבְּךָ: מִי יֵלֵד לִי אֶת אֵלֶּה וְאֲנִי שְׂכוּלָה וְנִלְמוּדָה, גִּלָּה וְסוּרָה? וְאֵלֶּה מִי גִדְּלָהּ? הֵן אֲנִי נִשְׁאַרְתִּי לְבַדִּי; אֵלֶּה אֵיפֹה הֵם?
Then shalt thou say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been?
- 22 כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנָי יְהוָה: הִנֵּה אֲשָׂא אֶל גּוֹיִם יָדַי וְאֶל עַמִּים אֲרִים נְסִי; וְהִבִּיאוּ בָנֶיךָ בְּחוּצָן וּבְנִתֶיךָ עַל כְּתָף תִּנְשָׂאנָה.
Thus saith the Lord God, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.
- 23 וְהָיוּ מְלָכִים אֲמִנֶיךָ וּשְׂרוּתֵיהֶם מִיְּנִיקֶיךָ; אֲפִים אֶרֶץ יִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לָךְ וְעֹפֶר רַגְלֶיךָ יִלְחֲכוּ; וְיָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִבְשׁוּ קוֹנֵי.
And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers: they shall bow down to thee with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.
- 24 הֲיִקָּח מִגְבוּר מִלְּקוֹחַ, וְאִם שְׂבִי צָדִיק יִמְלֹט?
Shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

נְפִי א כֹא:כֶה-כב:ו

כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: גַּם שְׁבִי גְבוּר יִקָּח, וּמִלְקוֹחַ
עֲרִיץ יִמְלֹט; וְאֵת יְרִיבֶךָ אֲנֹכִי אֶרִיב, וְאֵת בְּנֶיךָ
אֲנֹכִי אוֹשִׁיעַ.

25 But thus saith the Lord, Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered: for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

וְהֶאֱכַלְתִּי אֶת מוֹנִיךָ אֶת בְּשָׂרָם, וְכַעֲסִיס דָּמָם
יִשְׁכְּרוּן; וְיָדְעוּ כָּל בָּשָׂר כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה מוֹשִׁיעֶךָ
וְגֹאֲלֶךָ, אֲבִיר יַעֲקֹב.

26 And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood, as with sweet wine: and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob.

כב

22

וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי, אֲנִי, אֵת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל,
בָּאוּ אֵלַי אַחֵי וְאָמְרוּ: מֶה פִּנְתָּ הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתָ? הֲאֵם נְבִינִים כְּדַבְּרֵי רוּחַ,
אֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ עַל פִּי הָרוּחַ, וְלֹא עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר?

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, אָמַרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵלֶּה הַתְּגָלוֹ
לְנִבְיָא בְּקוֹל הָרוּחַ, כִּי עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ נִוְדְּעִים
לְנִבְיָאִים כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַבָּאִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם
עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר.

2 And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

לָכֵן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי עֲלֵיהֶם נוֹגְעִים הֵן
לְדְּבָרִים זְמַנִּיִּים וְהֵן לְדְּבָרֵי הָרוּחַ; וְנִרְאָה כִּי
יָבוֹא יוֹם, וְנִפְּוֹץ יִהְיֶה בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל עַל פְּנֵי כָּל
הָאָרֶץ וּבֵין כָּל הָעַמִּים.

3 Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הֵם אֲשֶׁר כָּבַד נִמְחָה זְכָרָם
מִקֶּרֶב אֲנָשֵׁי יְרוּשָׁלַם; אָכֵן, רַב בְּנֵי הַשִּׁבְטִים
גָּלוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם פְּזוּרִים פֹּה וָשָׁם עַל פְּנֵי
אֵי הַיָּם; וְהֵיכָן הֵם אִישׁ מִקֶּרְבָּנוּ לֹא יָדַע,
זוֹלַת כִּי גָלוּ.

4 And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

וּמֵאֵז גָּלוּ, הַגָּדוֹ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּנִבְאוֹת
עֲלֵיהֶם, וְכֵן עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִמְעַתֶּה יִפּוּצוּ
וְיִכְלְמוּ מִפְּנֵי קְדוּשַׁת יִשְׂרָאֵל; כִּי עָלֵינוּ יִקְשׁוּ
אֵת לִבָּם; עַל כֵּן יִפְּזְרוּ בֵּין כָּל הָעַמִּים,
וְכָל הָאָדָם יִשְׁנְאוֹם.

5 And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

אֲףִי אַחַר הָיְתָה הַגּוֹיִם אֲמִנִּיהֶם, בְּנִשְׂא יְהוָה
יָדוֹ עַל הַגּוֹיִם, וּבְהִרְיָמָם לְנֶס, וְאַחַר נִשְׂאָם
אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם בְּחֶצֶן וּבְנִוְתֵיהֶם עַל כַּתְּף, הִנֵּה,
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מְדַבֵּר בָּהֶם דְּבָרִים זְמַנִּיִּים הֵם,
כִּי כִּךָ הֵן בְּרִיתוֹת יְהוָה עִם אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; וְכִנְיָתָן
אֵלֵינוּ בְּיָמִים לְבֹא, וְכֵן אֵל כָּל אַחֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר
מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.

6 Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7 And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.
- 8 And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.
- 9 And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.
- 10 And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.
- 11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.
- 12 Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.
- 13 And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.
- 14 And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.
- 15 For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.
- וְכֹנֶנֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַזֵּה כִּי בָּאִים יָמִים וְאַחֵר
אֲשֶׁר כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל יִגָּלֶה וְיִכָּלֵם, יָקִים יְהוָה
אֱלֹהִים עִם גְּדוֹל בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים; אַכֵּן, עַל פָּנֵי
הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְעַל יְדֵיהֶם יִפּוֹץ זֶרְעֵנוּ.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִפּוֹץ זֶרְעֵנוּ, יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים
לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשֵׂה נִפְלָא בֵּין הַגּוֹיִּים, אֲשֶׁר רַב
יְהִי עֲרֻכּוֹ לְזִרְעֵנוּ; לָכֵן, נִמְשָׁל הַדְּבָר
לְכָל־כֶּלֶת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיַד־יְהוָה וְהַנְשָׂאָם
בְּיָדֵיהֶם וְעַל כַּתְפֵיהֶם.
- וְאִף רַב יְהִי עֲרֻכּוֹ לְגוֹיִּים; וְלֹא רַק לְגוֹיִּים,
כִּי אִם לְכָל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, לְהוֹדִיעַת דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת
אֲבִי הַמְרוֹמִים אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אַבְרָהָם לֵאמֹר:
בְּזֶרְעֶךָ תִּתְּבָרְכֶנָּה כָּל מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה.
- וְרָצוֹנִי, אַחֵי, אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ כִּי לֹא תִבְרַכְנָה כָּל
מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָאָדָמָה, בְּלֹתִי אִם חֹשֶׁף יְהוָה אֶת
זְרֻעוֹ לְעֵינֵי הָעַמִּים.
- לָכֵן יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְחֹשֶׁף אֶת זְרֻעוֹ
לְעֵינֵי כָל הָעַמִּים, לְמַעַן הָקִים אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתָיו
בַּהֲבִיאוֹ אֶת בְּשׂוֹרְתוֹ אֶל אֲשֶׁר מִבְּנֵי
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא יְשִׁיבָם מִגְלוֹתָם, וְיִקְבְּצֵם
לְאַרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם, וְיֹצִיאֵם מִחֹשֶׁךְ וּמִגְלוֹתָם;
וְיִדְעוּ כִּי יְהוָה הוּא מוֹשִׁיעַם וְגוֹאֲלָם,
אֲבִיר יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְדָם הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת הַזֵּה, הִיא,
אֲשֶׁר הִיא זוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, יָשׁוּב עַל רִאשָׁם;
כִּי יִלָּחֲמוּ אִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ, וְתִפֹּל הַחֶרֶב אֲשֶׁר
בְּיָדֵיהֶם עַל רִאשֵׁיהֶם, וְשִׁכְרוּ מִדָּמָם.
- אַכֵּן, כָּל עִם אֲשֶׁר יָקוּם לְהִלָּחֵם בָּכֶם, בֵּית
יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִסָּב וְיִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ; וְנִפְּלוּ בְּבוֹר
אֲשֶׁר כָּרוּ לְלַכֹּד אֶת עַם יְהוָה. וְכָל הַצּוֹבָאִים
עַל צִיּוֹן יִשְׁמְדוּ; וְנִפְּלָה לְעַפְרָה הַזֹּנוֹה הַגְּדוֹלָה,
הִיא הַכְּנִסְיָה הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּתְעַבֶּת אֲשֶׁר הִטְּתָה
אֶת דַּרְכֵי יְהוָה הַיְשׁוּרוֹת, וְגְדוֹלָה תִּהְיֶה מִפְּלִיתָהּ.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַנְּבִיא: בְּמַהֲרָה בָּאָה הַעֵת
אֲשֶׁר יֵאבֹד כַּחַּ הַשָּׁטָן לְשֹׁלֵט בְּלֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;
כִּי קָרוֹב הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר כָּל גָּאֹה וּמִרְשִׁיעַ כִּקְשׁ
יְהִי, וּבָא יוֹמָם לְהַשְׂרֹף.

- 16 For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.
- כִּי קִרְבָּה עֵת הַשֹּׁפָף מְלֵא חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי לֹא יִתִּיר אֱלֹהִים הַשְׁמַדַּת הַצַּדִּיקִים בְּיַד הָרָשָׁעִים.
- 17 Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.
- עַל כֵּן בְּכַחוֹ יִחְיֶה אֶת הַצַּדִּיק, גַּם אִם נִחְרָצָה שְׂפִיכַת מְלֵא חֲמָתוֹ; הִנֵּה יִנָּצְרוּ אַנְשֵׁי צֶדֶק, וְאוֹיְבֵיהֶם יַעֲלוּ בָאֵשׁ; לָכֵן אֵל לַצַּדִּיק לִירֵא; כִּי כֹה אָמַר הַנָּבִיא: אֵף אִם בָּאֵשׁ תִּהְיֶה זֹאת, הִמָּה יִנָּצֵלוּ.
- 18 Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.
- אֲכֹן, אַחֵי, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עַד מִהֲרָה יְבוֹאוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; אֵף יְבוֹאוּ דָם וְאֵשׁ וְתִימְרוֹת עָשָׁן; וְנִחְרָץ בּוֹאֵם עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת; וְיִהְיֶה זֹאת עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם עַל פִּי הַבָּשָׂר אִם יִקְשׂוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 19 For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.
- הִנֵּה, לֹא יֵאבֹד הַצַּדִּיק; כִּי בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַצּוֹבֵא עַל צִיּוֹן יִכָּרֵת.
- 20 And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.
- וְהִכֵּן יִכְיֶן יְהוָה אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לְעַמּוֹ, לְמַלְא אֶת דְּבָרֵי מֹשֶׁה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר לֵאמֹר: נָבִיא כְּמוֹנִי יָקִים לָךְ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; אֵלָיו תִּשְׁמָעוּן כָּכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם. וְהִיא כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע אֶל הַנָּבִיא הַהוּא, וְנִכָּרֵת מֵעַמּוֹ.
- 21 And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, נְפִי, מְדַבֵּרְכֶם כִּי הַנָּבִיא אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה, קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל הוּא, וְלָכֵן יוֹצִיא מִשְׁפָּט בְּצֶדֶקָה.
- 22 And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—
- אֲכֹן, אֵל לַצַּדִּיקִים לִירֵא, כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְלָמוּ. אֵף לֹא כֵן מַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן, הִיא אֲשֶׁר תִּבְנֶה בְּקִרְבֵּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם, וְתִוָּסַד בְּקִרְבֵּי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בַּבָּשָׂר.
- 23 For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.
- כִּי בְּמִהֲרָה תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת הַנִּבְנוֹת לְמַעַן קָצֵץ, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוֹת לְהַשְׁיִיג שְׁלָטוֹן עַל הַבָּשָׂר, וְהַנִּבְנוֹת לְמַעַן מְצֹא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי בְנֵי הָעוֹלָם, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּשׁוּקָתָם תַּאֲוַת הַבָּשָׂר וְחִפְצֵי הָעוֹלָם וְעִשְׂוֹת כָּל מִינֵי עֲוֹן; וּבִקְצָרָה: כָּל הַשִּׁיכִּים לְמַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן, עֲלֵיהֶם לִירֵא וְלָרַעַד וְלִחְרָד; הֵם אֲשֶׁר יוֹרְדוּ עַד עָפָר וְיִכָּלוּ כְּקֶשֶׁ; וְזֹאת כְּדִבְרֵי הַנָּבִיא.
- 24 And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.
- וּמִהֲרָה תְּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יוֹבְלוּ הַצַּדִּיקִים כְּעִגְלֵי מִרְבָּק, וְקְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל יִמְלֹךְ בְּשִׁרְרָה וּבְעֹז, וּבְגִבּוּרָה וּבְרֵב תִּפְאָרָה.

נְפִי א כב:כה – נְפִי ב א:א

- וְהוּא יִקְבֹּץ אֶת בְּנָיו מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנָפוֹת הָאָרֶץ; וְהוּא יִמְנֶה אֶת צֹאנוֹ וְהֵם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתוֹ; וְהֵיךְ עֵדֶר אֶחָד וְרוֹעֶה אֶחָד; וְהוּא יִרְעֶה אֶת צֹאנוֹ, וְבוֹ יִמְצְאוּ מִרְעָה.
- 25 And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.
- וּמִפְּנֵי צְדָקַת עַמּוֹ לֹא יִהְיֶה לְשָׁטָן שְׁלֹטוֹן; עַל כֵּן לֹא יֵצֵא חֲפָשִׁי הוּא בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת; כִּי אֵין הוּא שׁוֹלֵט עַל לֵב הָאֲנָשִׁים הַשׁוֹכְנִים בְּצִדְקָה, וּמוֹלֵךְ קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 26 And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲכֹן, בְּבִשָּׁר יְבוֹאוּ.
- 27 And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.
- וְהִיךְ אִם יִנְחֲמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵם, יִשְׁכְּנוּ כָּל הָאֲמוֹת, הַמְשַׁפְּחוֹת, הַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים לְבִטָּח, עִם קָדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 28 But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּלִיתִי דְּבָרִי, וְאֵין אֶת נִפְשִׁי לְדַבֵּר עוֹד עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 29 And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.
- הִנֵּה, אַחֵי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִחְשְׁבוּ אֲשֶׁר הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל אֱמַת הֵם; וַיַּעֲדוּ כִּי עַל הָאָדָם לְשִׁמְעַ אֶל מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 30 Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.
- עַל כֵּן, אֵל נָא תִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי אֲנִי וְאָבִי הָעֵידוֹנוּ עֲלֵיהֶם וְלִמְדָנוּם. הִנֵּה, אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ לְמִצְוֹתָיו וְתִתְּמִידוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, תִּשְׁעוּ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. כֵּן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.
- 31 Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.

סֵפֶר נְפִי ב

THE BOOK OF 2 NEPHI

סֵפֶר קוֹרוֹת מוֹת לְחִי. אַחֵי נְפִי מוֹרְדִים בּוֹ. יְהוָה מְוַהֵר אֶת נְפִי כִּי עָלָיו לְצֵאת לַיַּעֲרוֹת. מִסְעָיו בַּיַּעֲרוֹת וַיֵּתֶר קוֹרוֹתָיו. (בְּעֶרְךָ 545–588 לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

The account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness; and so forth. (About 588–545 B.C.)

א

1

- וְהִיךְ בְּכִלּוֹתַי אֲנִי, נְפִי, לְלַמֵּד אֶת אַחֵי דִבְרֵי אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֵלֵיהֶם, וְהִגַּה בְּאָזְנֵיהֶם מֵהַגְדֻלָּה מִעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לָמַעַנָם בְּהוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל מַרְדָּם עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם,
וְעַל רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּאֶשֶׁר חָס עַל חַיֵּיהֶם וְלֹא
בִּלְעָם הָיָם.

וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה,
אֲשֶׁר נָחֻלָּהָ, כִּמָּה רַחוּם הָיָה יְהוָה בְּהַזְהִירוֹ
אוֹתָנוּ לָנוּס מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם.

וְהוּא אָמַר: חֲזִיתִי חֲזוֹן וּמִמֶּנּוּ יָדַעְתִּי כִּי
יְרוּשָׁלַם נִחְרָבָה; וְאִלּוּ נִשְׁאַרְנוּ בִּירוּשָׁלַם,
אֲבִדְנוּ אִף אֲנַחְנוּ.

וְהוּא אָמַר: אִף כִּי סָבֵלְנוּ תִּלְאָה, נָחֻלְנוּ אֶרֶץ
יְעוּדָה, אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָה מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת; אֶרֶץ
אֲשֶׁר פָּרַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּרִית עִמִּי לְהִיטֶתָּהּ
אֶרֶץ נָחֻלָּה וְזַעֲרִי. אֲכֹן, יְהוָה פָּרַת עִמִּי בְּרִית
לְתֵת אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לִי וּלְיֻצְאָי חֲלָצִי עַד
עוֹלָם, וְכֹן לְכָל אֲשֶׁר תּוֹצִיאֵם יַד יְהוָה
מֵאֲרָצוֹת נֹסֶפֶת.

וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, לְחִי, מִנְבֵּא כִּפִּי פִּעֻלַּת הָרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר
בִּי, כִּי לֹא יָבֹא אִישׁ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, בְּלִתִּי
הַבִּיאָתוֹ יַד יְהוָה.

לְכֹן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת קֹדֶשׁ לְאִשֶּׁר יָבִיאֵם. וְהִנֵּה
אִם יַעֲבֹדוּהָ עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה, תִּהְיֶה
זֹאת אֶרֶץ חֲרוּת לָהֶם; לְכֹן לֹא יֵרְדוּ לְשָׁבִי
לְעוֹלָם; וְאִם כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם תִּבּוֹא; כִּי אִם
יִרְבֶּה עֲוֹנָם, אֲרוּרָה תִּהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ בְּעִבּוּרָם,
אֶף לְצַדִּיקִים תִּהְיֶה בְּרוּכָה עַד עוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּה, מִחֻכְמָה נִשְׁמָרָה עֲדִין הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת
מִיַּד יַעַת עַמִּים אֲחֵרִים, כִּי הִנֵּה עַמִּים רַבִּים
הֵיוּ עוֹלִים עַל הָאָרֶץ עַד כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָּהּ מָקוֹם
לְנַחֲלָה.

וְהִנֵּה דִּבֶּר יְהוָה הָיָה אֵלַי, לְחִי, וְאָמַר כִּי אִם
יִשְׁמְרוּ אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מֵאֶרֶץ
יְרוּשָׁלַם אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו, תִּצְלַח דְּרָכָם עַל פְּנֵי
הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְיִשְׁמְרוּ מִפְּגִיעַת כָּל שָׂאָר
הָעַמִּים, לְמַעַן יִירָשׁוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת
לְנַחֲלָתָם. וְהִנֵּה אִם יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו,
מְבָרָכִים יִהְיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאִישׁ
לֹא יִפְרִיעַם וְלֹא יִקַּח מִיָּדָם אֶת אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם;
וְהֵם יִשְׁכְּנוּ לְבֶטַח עַד עוֹלָם.

2 And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters,
and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not
swallowed up in the sea.

3 And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which
they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us
that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

4 For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jeru-
salem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also
have perished.

5 But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land
of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which
the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the
inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto
me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led
out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

6 Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit
which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall
be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And
if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments
which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore,
they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because
of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their
sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

8 And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the
knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun
the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

9 Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those
whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep
his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and
they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land
unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments
they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none
to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they
shall dwell safely forever.

- אֲדָה הִנֵּה, יָבוֹא יוֹם וְהֵם יִשְׁקָעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֲמוֹנָה, אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר בֵּרַכְהָ אוֹתָם יְיָ הוּא בֵּרַכְהָ כֹה רַבָּה, אַחֲרֵי יָדָעַם עַל בְּרִיאַת הָאָרֶץ וְעַל כָּל הָאֲדָם וְעַל מַעֲשֵׂי יְיָ הוּא הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים מִיָּמֵי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם; אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן בְּיָדֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת הַכֹּל בְּכַח אֲמוֹנָה; אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵיהֶם כָּל הַמִּצְוֹת מִרֵּאשִׁיתָם, וְאַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר הוֹבִאוּ בְּטוֹבוֹ אֵין קֵץ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה הַיְקָרָה הַזֹּאת, הִנֵּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר, אִם יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִמָּאֲסוּ בַּקְדוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, מְשִׁיחַ הָאֲמֶת, הוּא גּוֹאֲלָם וְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם, מִשְׁפַּט הַשּׁוֹפֵט בְּצֶדֶק יַחֲוֹל עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אָכֵן, הוּא יָבִיא עֲלֵיהֶם עַמִּים אֲחֵרִים וְיִתֵּן לָהֶם כָּח וְיִקַּח מֵהֶם אֶת אֲדָמוֹת נַחֲלוֹתֵיהֶם, לְהַפִּיצָם וּלְנַגֵּפָם.
- וְהִנֵּה, בַּחֲלֹף דּוֹר אַחֵר דּוֹר, תִּהְיֶה בָהֶם שְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים, וְגִדּוּלוֹת יַפְקָדוּם. עַל כֵּן, בְּנֵי, חַפֵּץ אֲנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, אָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִשְׁמָעוּ לְדִבְרִי.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתִתְעוֹרְרוּ; עוֹרֵי מִתְרַדְמָה עֲמָקָה, אָכֵן מִתְרַדְמַת שְׂאוֹל, וְהַתְנַעֲרוּ מִן הָאֲזִקִּים הַנּוֹרָאִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם נֶאֱסָרְתֶּם, הָאֲזִקִּים הָאוֹסְרִים אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יוֹרְדוּ שָׁבִי אֶל תְּהוֹם הַסֶּבֶל וְעֲנֹת הַתַּמִּיד.
- עוֹרוּ! קוּמוּ מִעַפְרָן וְשִׁמְעוּ דִּבְרֵי אָב רֹעֵד, אֲשֶׁר עַד מִהֲרָה תִּנְיֹחוּ אֶת אֵיבְרֵי בְּקֶבֶר קָר וְדוֹמָם, אֲשֶׁר כָּל בָּאִיו לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ; בְּעוֹד יָמִים אַחֲדִים אֵלַי בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- אֲדָה הִנֵּה נָצַל יְיָ אוֹת נַפְשִׁי מִשְׂאוֹל; חֲזִיתִי בַּתְּפָאֲרָתוֹ וְהִנֵּנִי חִבּוּק לְעַד בְּזִרְעוֹת אֶהְבֶּתוֹ.
- וְחַפְצִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת חֻקֵּי יְיָ וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו; הֵן זֹאת הִיְתָה עֲרָגַת נַפְשִׁי מִקֶּדָם.
- לְעֵתִים דָּאֵב לִבִּי, כִּי יִרְאֵתִי פֶן יָקוּם יְיָ וְאֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּמִלֵּא חֲמָתוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם עַל קִשְׁי לְבַבְכֶם, לְהַכְרִית וּלְהַשְׁמִיד אֶתְכֶם לְעַד.
- אוֹ, כִּי תָבוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם קִלְלָה לְדוֹרוֹת רַבִּים; וְיִפְקְדְכֶם חֶרֶב וָרָעָב, וְתִהְיוּ שְׂנוּאִים וּמוֹדְלִים כְּרָצוֹן הַשָּׁטָן וְכִשְׁבִּי.
- 10 But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.
- 11 Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.
- 12 Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.
- 13 O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.
- 14 Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.
- 15 But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.
- 16 And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.
- 17 My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;
- 18 Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

19 O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

אָנָא, בְּנֵי, אֵל נָא יְבוֹאוּכֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה;
כִּי אִם תִּהְיוּ עִם סֶגְלָה נְבָחָר לַיהוָה. אַךְ הִנֵּה,
רְצוֹנוֹ יַעֲשֶׂה, כִּי דִרְכּוֹ צֶדֶק לְעוֹלָם.

20 And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

אָכֵן הוּא אָמַר: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי,
תִּצְלִיחוּ בָאָרֶץ; אֲךָ אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת
מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.

21 And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

וְעַתָּה, לְמַעַן תִּגַּל נַפְשִׁי בָכֶם, וְלִמְעַן יִפְרֹד
לִבִּי מִן הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה בְּשִׂמְחָה עֲלֵיכֶם, לְבַל
אֲרֹד לְקַבְּרִי בְּצַעַר וּבְיָגוֹן, קוּמוּ מֵעַפָּר, בְּנֵי,
וְהִיוּ לְגִבּוֹרִים, וְהִיוּ לְבָכֶם וְנַפְשְׁכֶם נְכוֹנִים
כָּאֶחָד, מֵאֲחָדִים בְּכָל, לְבַל תִּרְדּוּ לְשִׁבְיָה;

22 That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

לְבַל תִּאָּרְרוּ בְּמֵאֲרָה מִמֵּאֲרָה, וּלְבַל תִּבְיֵאוּ
עַלְיֵכֶם חֲמַת אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק, עַד אֲבִדְנֶכֶם, אָכֵן,
אֲבִדוֹן נַפֶּשׁ וְגוּף לְעַד.

23 Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

עוֹרוּ, בְּנֵי, חַגְרוּ נֶשֶׁק צֶדֶקָה; הַתְּנַעֲרוּ מִן
הָאֲזָקִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם נֶאֱסַרְתֶּם; צֵאוּ מִן
הָאֲפֵלָה, קוּמוּ מֵעַפָּר.

24 Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

אַל תִּמְרְדוּ עוֹד בְּאֲחִיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר חֲזוֹנוֹתָיו
מִפְאָרִים הָיוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת מִיּוֹם
עֲזַבְנוּ אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְהָיָה כְּלִי בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים
לְהִבְיֵאֵנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְדוּדָה; כִּי לוֹלָא הוּא,
בְּרָעַב גּוֹעֵנוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר. עַל אֵף זֹאת, בִּקְשָׁתֶם אֶת
נַפְשׁוֹ לְקַחְתָּהּ; אָכֵן, מִפְּנֵיכֶם נָשָׂא יָגוֹן רַב.

25 And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

הִנְנִי יָרָא עַד מְאֹד מִפְּנֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר יוֹסִיף הוּא
לְסַבֵּל. הִנֵּה אֲשַׁמְתֶּם בּוֹ כִּי מִבְּקֵשׁ הוּא תִקְוָה
וּשְׂרָרָה עֲלֵיכֶם; וְאֲנִי יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לֹא עָשָׂה כֵן,
כִּי אִם בִּקֵּשׁ אֶת תִּפְאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת
שְׁלוֹמְכֶם וְטוֹבְתְכֶם לְעַד.

26 And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

וְהִתְלַוְנַתֶּם עַל כִּי נִהַג בָּכֶם נְכוּחוֹת;
אָמַרְתֶּם כִּי פָעַל בְּתִקְיָפוֹת וְאֵף רָגַז עֲלֵיכֶם.
אֲךָ רְאוּ כִּי תִקְיָפוֹת הָיְתָה תִקְיָפוֹת כַּח דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בּוֹ; וְאֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם עַל רָגִזוֹ,
הָאֲמַת הָיְתָה זֹאת, עַל פִּי אָמַת אֱלֹהִים,
וְלֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה אֲחִיכֶם לְעַצֹּר מִהִשְׁמִיעְכֶם
בְּאִמְץ עַל אֹדוֹת עוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם.

27 And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he,

אֵף שׁוּמָה הָיָא כִּי כַח אֱלֹהִים עִמּוֹ וּבְצוּתוֹ
אֲתַכֶּם עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִשְׁמַע. כִּי, הִנֵּה, לֹא הָיָה זֶה

נְפִי ב א:כח-ב:ד

הוא, כי אם רוח יהוה אשר בו, והוא אשר פתח את פיו לדבר ולא יכול היה הוא לעצור.

but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

ועתה, בני לֵמֹן, וְכֹן לְמוֹאֵל וְשָׁם, וְאִי בְנֵי אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם בְּנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל, הִנֵּה כִי אִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ בְּקוֹל נָפִי, לֹא תִאבְדּוּ. וְאִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ אֲנִיחָ לָכֶם בְּרָכָה, וְהִיא רִאשׁוֹנָה בְּרָכָתִי.

28 And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

אִם אִם לֹא תִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ, אֲסִיר אֶת בְּרָכָתִי הָרִאשׁוֹנָה, אֶת עֲצָם בְּרָכָתִי, וְעָלָיו הִיא תִּנּוּחַ.

29 But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

ועתה, זֹרָם, אֲלִיךָ דְּבָרִי: הִנֵּה עֶבֶד לָבָן אַתָּה, וְעַל אִי זֹאת יֵצְאָתָּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם; וְיֹדַע אֲנִי כִי יָדִיד נָאֻמָּן אַתָּה לְבְנֵי נָפִי עַד עוֹלָם.

30 And now Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

עַל כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי הַיֹּתֵד נָאֻמָּן, יִבְרַךְ זֶרַעְךָ עִם זֶרַעוֹ, וְיִשְׁכְּנוּ בְּהַצְלָחָה לְאֶרֶץ יָמִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת. וְדָבָר, זֹלַת עוֹנָם, לֹא יַצִּיקָם וְיַפְרִיעַם מִלְּהַצְלִיחַ עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת עַד עוֹלָם.

31 Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

אֲכֹן, אִם תִּשְׁמָר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה יְקֹדִישׁ הוּא אֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְבִטְחוֹן זֶרַעְךָ עִם זֶרַע בְּנֵי.

32 Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

ב

2

ועתה, יַעֲקֹב, אֲלִיךָ אֲדַבֵּר: בְּכוֹר אַתָּה לְבְנֵי הַנּוֹלָדִים בְּיָמֵי מִצְוֹקָתִי בְּמִדְבָּר. הִנֵּה סְבָלָתָּ יְסוּרִים וְרַב צָעַר בְּיָלְדוּתְךָ, מִפְּנֵי גִסוּת אַחִיךָ.

1 And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

וְאוֹלָם, יַעֲקֹב, בְּכוֹר הַנּוֹלָדִים לִי בְּמִדְבָּר, אַתָּה יָדַעְתָּ אֶת גְּדֻלַּת אֱלֹהִים; וְהוּא יְקֹדִישׁ אֶת סְבָלוֹתֶיךָ לְמַעַן רוֹחֲתֶךָ.

2 Nevertheless, Jacob, my first-born in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

עַל כֵּן תִּתְבָּרַךְ נַפְשְׁךָ וְתִשְׁכֹּן לְבִטָּח עִם אַחִיךָ נָפִי; יָמֶיךָ יַעֲבֹרוּ עָלֶיךָ בְּעִבְדוּת אֱלֹהֶיךָ. וְיִדַּעְתִּי כִי נִגְאָלָתָּ, מִפְּנֵי צָדֻקַת גּוֹאֲלְךָ; עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ כִּי יָבוֹא בְּמִלְאֵת הַיָּמִים לְהַבִּיא יְשׁוּעָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

3 Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ אֶת תְּפָאֲרָתוֹ בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ; לָכֵן בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה כְּפִי אֵלֹו אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה בְּגוֹפּוֹ. כִּי הָרוּחַ אֶחָד הוּא, אֶתְמוּל הַיּוֹם וְעַד עוֹלָם, וּמוֹכֶנָה הַדֶּרֶךְ מֵאֵד נְפִילַת הָאָדָם, וְהַיְשׁוּעָה חֲנֹם הִיא.

4 And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

נְפִי ב ב:ה-יב

- וּבְנֵי הָאָדָם מְקַבְּלִים תּוֹרָה דִּיָּהּ, לְדַעַת טוֹב וְרָע. וְחָק נָתַן לָהֶם; אִךְ בְּחָק לֹא יִצְדָּק אָנוּשׁ; לֹא־מֹר, עַל פִּי הַחֹק נִכְרְתִים בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אֲכֹן, עַל פִּי חָק הַחֹמֶר דִּינָם לְהַכְרִית, וְעַל פִּי חָק הָרוּחַ דִּינָם לֹא־בֹד מִן הַטּוֹב וּלְהַתְאֲמִלָּל לְעוֹלָם.
- עַל כֵּן בָּאָה הַגָּאֻלָּה מֵאֵת מְשִׁיחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְעַל יָדָיו; כִּי מָלֵא חֶסֶד וְאֱמֶת הוּא.
- הִנֵּה הוּא מִקְרִיב עֲצָמוֹ קָרְבָן עַל חַטָּא, לְמַלֵּא אֶת תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק וְזֹאת בְּעִבּוּר כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם לֵב שָׁבוּר וְרוּחַ נִכְאָה; וְזוֹלַת אֵלֶּה, לֹא יִכּוֹלָה תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק לְהִמְלֵא.
- לָכֵן, מִה רַב עֵרֶךְ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְיוֹשְׁבֵי תֵבֶל; לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ כִּי לֹא יִשְׁכֹּן כָּל בָּשָׂר לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, בְּלֹתִי עַל יְדֵי הַסְּגֻלוֹת וְהַרְחָמִים וְהַחֶסֶד אֲשֶׁר לְמְשִׁיחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הַמִּקְרִיב אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ בְּבָשָׂר וְלוֹקַח אוֹתָהּ שְׁנִית בְּכַח הָרוּחַ, לְהַבִּיא אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, וְהוּא רֹאשׁוֹן הַקָּמִים לְתַחִיָּה.
- עַל כֵּן רֹאשִׁית תְּבוּאָה הוּא לְאֱלֹהִים, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ מִלִּיץ יֵשֶׁר לְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהַמֵּאֲמִינִים בּוֹ יִנְשְׁעוּ.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר הוּא מִלִּיץ יֵשֶׁר לְכָל, יָבוֹאוּ כָּל־הָאָדָם אֶל אֱלֹהִים; אֲכֹן, יַעֲמִדוּ הַכֹּל לִפְנֵי הַשֹּׁפֵט עַל יְדָיו כְּפִי הָאֱמֶת וְהַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ. לָכֵן תְּכֵלִית הַחֹק אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הָאֵל הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְהִיא הַפְּגִיעָה עַל פִּי הַעֲנֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע, הוּא הַהִפּוּ מִן הָאֲשֶׁר אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע לְמַלֵּא אֶת תְּכֵלִית הַכִּפּוּרָה,
- כִּי הֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ נֶגֶד בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים; אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא כֵן, בְּכוֹר הַנּוֹלָדִים לִי בַּמִּדְבָּר, לֹא הָיוּ מִתְבַּצְּעִים לֹא צֶדֶק וְלֹא רֶשַׁע, גַּם לֹא קִדְשָׁה וְלֹא יָגוֹן, אִךְ לֹא טוֹב וְלֹא רָע; אִם כֵּן, הָיוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים חִיבִים לְהִיּוֹת תְּרַפָּכֶת אַחַת; לָכֵן, אִלּוּ הָיָה גּוֹף אֶחָד, הֵכָרַח הָיָה לוֹ לְהוֹתוֹ כְּמֵת, בְּלֹא חַיִּים וּבְלֹא מוֹת, בְּלֹא הַשְׁחָתָה וּבְלֹא חֹסֶר הַשְׁחָתָה, אִךְ בְּלִי אֲשֶׁר וּבְלִי יָגוֹן, וּבְלִי תַחוּשָׁה וּבְלִי קִהּוֹת חוּשִׁים;
- עַל כֵּן, הֵכָרַח הָיָה כִּי נִבְרָא לְדַבֵּר רִיק, לְלֹא כּוֹנֵן בְּבְרִיאתוֹ; וְהֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר דָּבָר זֶה יִשְׁחִית אֶת חֻכְמַת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת תְּכֵלִיתוֹתָיו
- 5 And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.
- 6 Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.
- 7 Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.
- 8 Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.
- 9 Wherefore, he is the first-fruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.
- 10 And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—
- 11 For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my first-born in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.
- 12 Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his

הנצחיות ואת גבורת אלהים ואת
רחמי וצדקו.

eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice
of God.

ואם תאמר כי אין חק, אף תאמר כי אין
חטא. ואם תאמר כי אין חטא, אף תאמר
כי אין צדק. ואם אין צדק אין אשׁר ואם אין
צדק ואשׁר, אין עונש ויגון. ואם אלה אינם,
אין אלהים. ואם אין אלהים, אנחנו איננו
וכן אין ארץ; וען אשׁר לא יכולה היתה
להיות בריאת דברים, ולא פעלה ולא
הפעלות והכרח היה אשׁר הכל נעדר.

13 And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye
shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And
if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no
righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And
if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are
not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things,
neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have
vanished away.

והנה, בני, מדבר אני אליכם למען הועילכם
ולמדכם; אכן יש אלהים והוא ברא הכל, את
השמים ואת הארץ ואת כל אשׁר בם, דברים
לפעלה ולהפעלות.

14 And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and
learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the
heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to
act and things to be acted upon.

ולמען בצע את תכליותיו הנצחיות באחרית
האדם, אחר אשׁר ברא את הורינו הראשונים,
את חית השדה ואת עוף השמים, ובקצרה
את כל אשׁר נברא, הכרח אשׁר היה נגד;
אף הפרי האסור כנגד עץ החיים; האחד
מתוק והאחר מר.

15 And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had
created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the
air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there
was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of
life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

לכן נתן יהוה אלהים לאדם לפעל ברשות
עצמו; אך לא יכול האדם לפעל ברשות
עצמו, בלתי אם פתהו זה, או אחר.

16 Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself.
Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was
enticed by the one or the other.

ואני, לחי, כפי אשׁר קראתי בכתובים,
חיב לשער כי מלאך אלהים, ככתוב,
נפל משמים ונהפך שטן, כי בקש את
הרע בעיני אלהים.

17 And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs
suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had
fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that
which was evil before God.

וען אשׁר נפל משמים והיה אמלל לעד, בקש
אף לאמלל את כלל האדם. לכן דבר אל חוה,
והוא הנחש הזקן אשׁר הוא השטן, אבי כל
קזב, וכה אמר: טעמי מן הפרי האסור ולא
מות תמתון, והייתם כאלהים, ידעי טוב ורע.

18 And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable
forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said
unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father
of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall
not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

ואחר אשׁר טעמו אדם וחוה מן הפרי האסור
גרשו מגן עדן לעבד את האדמה.

19 And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were
driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

והם הולידו צאצאים; את משפחת
כל האדמה.

20 And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all
the earth.

ואלהים האריך כחפצו את ימי בני האדם,
למען ינחמו מחטא בעודם בבשר; על כן

21 And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to
the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore,

הפכו ימיהם לַעַת מִבְּחִן וְהֶאָרְכוּ עַל פִּי
מִצְוֹת יְהוָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם. כִּי הוּא צִוָּה עַל כָּלם
לְהִנָּחם מִחַטָּא, וְהִרְאָה לָהֶם כִּי אֲבָדוּ מִפְּנֵי
עֲבֵרַת הוֹרִיָּהֶם.

their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא־לֹא פָשַׁע אָדָם, לֹא נָפַל, כִּי נִשְׁאָר
הָיָה בְּגֵן עֵדֶן. וְכָל הַבְּרִיאָה הָיְתָה נֹתֶרֶת
כַּאֲשֶׁר נִבְרָאָה; וְכֵן הָיוּ לְעוֹלָם, עַד אֵין קֵץ.

22 And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

וְלֹא הָיוּ נוֹלָדִים יְלָדִים; וְכֵן הָיוּ נִשְׁאָרִים
זָכִים, בְּלֹא שְׂמֻחָה, כִּי לֹא הָיוּ יוֹדְעִים יְגוֹן;
וְלֹא עוֹשִׂים טוֹב, כִּי לֹא הָיוּ יוֹדְעִים מִהוּ חַטָּא.

23 And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

אָךְ הִנֵּה, הַכֹּל נַעֲשֶׂה בְּחִכְמַת הַיּוֹדֵעַ כֹּל.

24 But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

אָדָם נָפַל לְמַעַן הָיִית בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וּבְנֵי הָאָדָם
הֵם לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לָהֶם שְׂמֻחָה.

25 Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

וְהַמָּשִׁיחַ יָבוֹא בְּמִלְאֵת הַיָּמִים, לְגַאֲלָא אֶת בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם מִן הַנִּפְיִלָה. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר גְּאוּלִּים הֵם מִן
הַנִּפְיִלָה, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ חֲפְשִׁיִּים עַד עוֹלָם, בְּדַעְתָּם
טוֹב וְרָע; לְפַעַל בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצָמָם וְלֹא לְהִיֹּת
נִפְעָלִים, זֹלָתָה עַל יְדֵי עֲנֵשׁ הַחֹק בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל
וְהָאֲחֵרוֹן עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

26 And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

עַל כֵּן בְּנֵי הָאָדָם חֲפְשִׁיִּים בְּבָשָׂר; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר
צָרִיד לָאָדָם, נָתַן לוֹ. וְהֵם חֲפְשִׁיִּים לְבָחֹר
בְּחֻפְשׁ וְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּתוֹנָה הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר
לְכָלֵל הָאָדָם, אוֹ לְבָחֹר שְׂבִיָּה וּמָוֶת כְּפִי שְׂבִיָּה
הַשָּׁטָן וְכֹחֹ; כִּי מִבְּקֵשׁ הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת כָּלֵל
הָאָדָם אֲמֻלִּים כְּמוֹתוֹ.

27 Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, רְצוּנִי כִּי תִבְטִיאוּ אֶל הַמְּתוֹנָה הַגָּדוֹל
וְתִקְשִׁיבוּ לְמִצְוֹתָיו הַגָּדוֹלוֹת; וְתִהְיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים
לְדִבְרֵי, וְתִבְחָרוּ בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָם, כַּחֲפִצַּי רוּחַ קְדִישׁ.

28 And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

וְאַל תִּבְחָרוּ בְּמוֹת נֶחֱחִי, כְּפִי יֵצֵר הַבָּשָׂר
וְהָרַע אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ. הַמְּחַזֵּק אֶת רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן
לְקַחַת שְׂבִי, לְהוֹרִידְכֶם שְׂאוּלָה, לְמַעַן
יִשְׁלַט בְּכֶם בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ.

29 And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי דְּבָרִים מְעַטִּים אֵלֶּה, בְּנֵי, אֶל
כָּלְכֶם, בְּאַחֲרִית יְמֵי מִבְּחָנִי; בְּחִרְתִּי בְּחֵלֶק

30 I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words

הטוב, כְּדָבַר הַנְּבִיא. וְכָל תְּכַלִּיתִי הִיא שְׁלוֹם
נַפְשׁוֹתֵיכֶם לָעַד. אָמֵן.

of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting
welfare of your souls. Amen.

ג

3

וְעַתָּה, יוֹסֵף, בֶּן זָקוּנִי, אֵלֶיךָ אֲדַבֵּר. נוֹלַדְתָּ
בְּמִדְבָּר תְּלָאוֹתִי; אַכֵּן בַּעַת מְלָאָה סָאת יְגוֹנִי
לִלְדָה אוֹתְךָ אִמִּי.

1 And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born
in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest
sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

יִקְדֹּשׁ נָא יְהוָה אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אִף לָךְ;
מִיֵּטֶב הָאָרֶץ הִיא לְנַחֲלָתְךָ וּלְנַחֲלַת זֶרְעֶךָ עִם
אֲחִיךָ, לְבִטְחָה עַד עוֹלָם, אִם אַף תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת
מִצְוֹת קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

2 And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most
precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed
with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep
the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

אַכֵּן, יוֹסֵף, בֶּן זָקוּנִי, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ מִמִּדְבָּר
תְּלָאוֹתִי, יִבְרַכְךָ יְהוָה לְעוֹלָם, כִּי לֹא יֵאבֹד
זֶרְעֶךָ עַד כָּלֹתָם.

3 And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the
wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy
seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

כִּי יוֹצֵא חֲלָצִי אֶתְּךָ, וְאֲנִי צָאֲצָא יוֹסֵף, אֲשֶׁר
הוֹבָא לְמִצְרַיִם בְּשִׁבְי. וְגִדּוּלִים דְּבָרֵי הַבְּרִיתוֹת
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת יְהוָה לְיוֹסֵף.

4 For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant
of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the
covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

וְיוֹסֵף אַכֵּן חָזָה אֶת יוֹמָנוּ. וְיְהוָה אָמַר לוֹ
כִּי מִחֲלָצִיו יָקִים צֶמַח צְדִיק לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל;
לֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי אִם עֲנָף אֲשֶׁר יִגְדֵּעַ; אַךְ
הוּא יִזְכָּר בְּדִבְרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ
יִתְגַּלֶּה לָהֶם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, בְּרוּחַ גְּבוּרָה,
לְהוֹצִיאֵם מִחֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר; אַכֵּן, מֵאַפְלַת
סִתְרִים וּמִשְׁכְּבָה לְחֵרוֹת.

5 Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of
the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise
up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a
branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in
the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest
unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of
them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out
of captivity unto freedom.

כִּי אָמַת הַעִיד יוֹסֵף בְּאָמְרוֹ: חוֹזֶה יָקִים יְהוָה
אֱלֹהֵי, וְהוּא יִהְיֶה חוֹזֶה נִבְחָר לְיוֹצֵאִי חֲלָצִי.

6 For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise
up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

אַכֵּן אָמַר יוֹסֵף: כֹּה אָמַר לִי יְהוָה: חוֹזֶה
נִבְחָר אָקִים מִיוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצִיךָ, וְגִדּוֹל יִהְיֶה
כְּבוֹדוֹ בֵּין צָאֲצָאֶיךָ. וְאַצְוֶהוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשֶׂה
לְמַעַן יוֹצְאֵי חֲלָצִיךָ, אֲחִיךָ, אֲשֶׁר רַב יִהְיֶה
עִרְכּוֹ לָהֶם, וְהוּא לְהוֹדִיעֵם אֶת דְּבָרֵי
הַבְּרִיתוֹת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם אֲבוֹתֶיךָ.

7 Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will
I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly
among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment
that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which
shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the
knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

וְאַצְוֶהוּ לְחַדֵּל מִכָּל מַעֲשֶׂה, זֹלַת אֲשֶׁר אֲצִוֶּהוּ.
וְאֶגְדִּילֵהוּ בְּעֵינַי, כִּי אֶת מְלָאכְתִּי יַעֲשֶׂה.

8 And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other
work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him
great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

- 9 And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.
- 10 And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.
- 11 But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.
- 12 Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.
- 13 And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.
- 14 And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;
- 15 And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.
- 16 Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.
- 17 And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.
- 18 And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give
- גדול יהיה כמשה, אשר אמרתי כי אקמהו
לכם, להציל את עמי, בית ישראל.
- ואת משה אקים להציל את עמך
מארץ מצרים.
- אך חוזה אקים מחלציה; ואתן לו כח להביא
את דברי לזרע חלציה, ולא למען הביא את
דברי בלבד, כי אם להוכיחם אשר דברי אמת
הוא, אשר כבר יצא ביניהם, נאום יהוה.
- על כן, יוצא חלציה יכתב, ויוצא חלצי יהודה
יכתב; והדברים אשר יכתבו יצמחו יחדו
לכלם תורות כזב ולשכף מריבות, ולשים
שלום בין יוצאי חלציה, ולהודיעם באחרית
הימים על אודות אבותיהם ועל דברי
בריתותי אשר פרת, נאום יהוה.
- ומרפיון הוא יתחזק ביום ההוא, נאום יהוה,
אשר תחל מלאכתו בכל עמי, למען תשוב
לאיתנה, בית ישראל!
- וזה דבר נבואת יוסף לאמר: אכן, יברך
יהוה את החוזה ההוא, והמבקשים להשמידו
יכלמו; כי הקם יקום דבר יהוה אלי על אודות
יוצא חלצי. הנה בטחתי כי יקום הדבר הזה.
- ושם החוזה יקרא בשמי, ויהיה בשם אביו;
והוא ידמה לי, כי את אשר יוציא יהוה בגדו
ובכחו יביא את עמי אל ישועתם.
- אכן, זאת נבואת יוסף לאמר: בטוח אני
בדבר הזה, כבטחתי בדבר יהוה על משה; כי
כה אמר יהוה אלי: אנצח את זרעך עד עולם.
- ואמר יהוה: אנכי אקים את משה; ואתן לו
עז במשה, ואתן לו בינה לכתב. אך לא אתיר
את לשונו להרבות דבור, כי לא אעשנו גבור
לשון. אך את תורת אכתב לו במו אצבעי,
ודובר אתן למענו.
- ויהוה הוסיף לאמר אלי: ואנכי אקים בעבור
יוצאי חלציה, ואתן לו דובר, ואשימו לכתב

את כתבי יוצא חלציה, בעבור יוצאי חלציה;
והשמיע הדובר, יוצא חלציה, את הכתוב.

unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto
the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

והדברים אשר יכתב הם המועילים
בחכמתי אשר יצאו אל יוצאי חלציה.
ודמה כי קראו יוצאי חלציה אליהם מן
העפר, כי ידעתי את אמונתם.

19 And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are
expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins.
And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the
dust; for I know their faith.

אכן, קראו הם מן העפר אל אחיהם להנחם
מחטא, אף פעבר דורות רבים עליהם;
והעקתם תצא על פי פשטות דבריהם.

20 And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their
brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall
come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness
of their words.

ומפני אמונתם יצאו דבריהם מפי אל
אחיהם, יוצאי חלציה; ובאמונתם הפכתי את
רפיון דבריהם לחזק, למען זכרי את בריתי
אשר כרתי לאבותי.

21 Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth
unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of
their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of
my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

והנה, בני יוסף, בדברים האלה
נבא אבי מקדם.

22 And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of
old prophesy.

לכן, ברוך אתה מפני הברית הזאת; ולא
יאבדו צאצאיה, כי ישמעו לדברי הספר.

23 Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall
not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

ויקום איש חיל ביניהם, אשר ירבה לעשות
טוב, בדבר שפתיים ובמעשה; כלי ביד אלהים,
באמונה יתרה, לעשות פלאים כבירים ואת
המעשה הגדול בעיני אלהים, לכונו השבה
גדולה לבית ישראל ולזרע אחיה.

24 And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much
good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of
God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing
which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much
restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

ברוך אתה, יוסף. קטן אתה, לכן שמע בקול
אחיה נפי, ויעשה לך כאשר דברתי. זכר את
דברי אביך הגווע. אמן.

25 And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore
hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto
thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the
words of thy dying father. Amen.

ד

4

ועתה, אני, נפי, אדבר על אודות
הנבואות אשר עליהן דבר אבי, בדבר
יוסף אשר נלקח מצרימה.

1 And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my
father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

כי יוסף אכן נבא על כל זרעו; והנבואות אשר
כתב, אין רבות אשר גדולות מהן. והוא נבא
עלינו, ועל דורותינו אשר לבוא, וכתובים
המה על גבי לוחות נחשת הקלל.

2 For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the
prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he
prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are
written upon the plates of brass.

- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר עַל נְבוֹאוֹת יוֹסֵף, הוּא קָרָא לְבָנָי לְמֹן וּלְבָנוֹתָיו וְאָמַר לָהֶם: בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי בְכוּרִי וּבָנוֹתָיו אַתֶּם, אֲחַפֵּץ כִּי תִאֲזִינוּ לְדִבְרִי.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תַּעֲשׂוּ חֵיל בְּאֶרֶץ, וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- אָכֵן, בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, לֹא תוּכַל נַפְשִׁי לָרֶדֶת אֶל קִבְרִי בְּלִי תַת לָכֶם בְּרָכָה; יָדַעְתִּי כִּי אִם תִּגְדְּלוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ הַנִּכְבָּה, לֹא תִסּוּרוּ מִמֶּנָּה.
- וְהָיָה אִם תִּבּוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם קָלְלָה, הִנֵּה בְרָכְתִּי נְתוּנָה לָכֶם, וְקָלְלַתְכֶם תוֹסֵר מִכֶּם וְתִבּוֹא עַל רֹאשׁ הוֹרֵיכֶם.
- לָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי בְרָכְתִּי לֹא יִתְנַכֵּם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי תֵאבְדוּ; אֲךָ הוּא יִרְחַם אֶתְכֶם וְאֶת זֶרְעְכֶם עַד עוֹלָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל בְּנֵי לְמֹן וְאֶל בָּנוֹתָיו, הוּא צִוָּה לְהֵבִיא לִפְנָיו אֶת בְּנֵי לְמוּאֵל וְאֶת בָּנוֹתָיו.
- וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹת בְּנֵי הַשֵּׁנִי, הִנֵּה אֲבָרְכְכֶם בְּבִרְכָּה אֲשֶׁר בְּרָכְתִּי אֶת בְּנֵי לְמֹן וּבָנוֹתָיו; עַל כֵּן לֹא תִשְׁמְדוּ עַד כְּלֹלְתְכֶם, כִּי בְרוּךְ יְהִי זֶרְעְכֶם בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת אָבִי לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אָכֵן, לְכָל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ.
- וּכְכֹלֹתוֹ לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל שָׁם לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה וּבְרוּךְ זֶרְעֲךָ, כִּי תִירַשׁ אֶת הָאָרֶץ כְּאַחִיד נָפִי; וְזֶרְעֲךָ יִמְנָה עִם זֶרְעוֹ, וְהָיִיתָ כְּאַחִיד, וְזֶרְעֲךָ כְּזֶרְעוֹ; וּבְרוּךְ תִּהְיֶה כָּל יְמֶיךָ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר דִּבֶּר אָבִי, לְחִי, אֶל כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתוֹ, עַל פִּי רִגְשִׁי לְבֹו וּכְרוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ, הוּא בָּא בְּיָמָיו. וְהוּא מָת וְנִקְבֹּר.
- 3 Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my first-born, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.
- 4 For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.
- 5 But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.
- 6 Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.
- 7 Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.
- 8 And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.
- 9 And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.
- 10 And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.
- 11 And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.
- 12 And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

- 13 And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.
- 14 For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.
- 15 And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.
- 16 Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.
- 17 Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.
- 18 I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.
- 19 And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.
- 20 My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.
- 21 He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.
- 22 He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.
- 23 Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the nighttime.
- 24 And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.
- וְהָיָה אַךְ יָמִים אֲחֵדִים מִיּוֹם מוֹת אָבִי, רָגְזוּ עָלַי לָמֶן וְלִמְוֹאֵל וּבְנֵי יִשְׁמָעֵאל מִפְּנֵי תוֹכְחוֹת יְהוָה.
- כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶלְצָתִי לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי יְהוָה; וְהִרְבֵּיתִי דְבַר אֲלֵיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה אָבִי לִפְנֵי מוֹתוֹ; רַבִּים מִן הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּתוּבִים עַל לוחותֵי הַנוֹסְפִים; כִּי עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם רְשׁוּמִים רַב דְּבָרֵי יָמִינוּ.
- וְעַל גְּבִי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֶכְתֹּב אֶת דְּבָרֵי נַפְשִׁי, וְכֵן כְּתָבִי מִקְרָא רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר חֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל; כִּי כְתָבִי הַמִּקְרָא הֵם עֲנֵג נַפְשִׁי וּבְהֵם הוֹגָה לִבִּי, וְאֲנִי אֶכְתֹּבָם לְלִמּוּד אֶת בְּנֵי וְלַהֲוֵעֵלָם.
- הִנֵּה מִתְעַנֶּגֶת נַפְשִׁי בְּדְבָרֵי יְהוָה, וְלִבִּי הוֹגָה תָּמִיד בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי וְשָׁמַעְתִּי.
- אוּלָּם, אַךְ כִּי הֶעֱתִיר עָלַי יְהוָה אֶת רַב טוֹבוֹ, בְּהִרְאוֹתָיו לִי אֶת מַעֲשָׂיו הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים, יִקְרָא לִבִּי בְּקוֹל: הוֹי, אִמְלֵל אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹנִי! לִבִּי דוֹאֵב מִפְּנֵי בְשָׁרִי; נַפְשִׁי עֲצוּבָה מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתַי.
- הֲנִי מְכֻתָּר מִפְּנֵי הַפְּתוּיִים וְהַחֲטָאִים הַצָּרִים עָלַי עַל נִקְלָה.
- בְּרָצוֹתִי לְשִׂמְחָה נֶאֱנַק לִבִּי מִפְּנֵי חֲטָאִי, אוּלָּם יִדְעָתִי מִי הוּא מִבְּטָחִי.
- אֱלֹהִים מִשְׁעֲנָתִי. הוּא נִהְלֵנִי בְּתַלְאֻתַי בְּמִדְבָּר, וְהוּא שָׁמְרָנִי עַל פְּנֵי מִיָּמִי תְהוֹם הַגְּדוֹלָה.
- הוּא מִלְּאֵנִי בְּאַהֲבָתוֹ עַד כְּלוֹת בְּשָׁרִי.
- הוּא הִכְלִים אֶת אוֹיְבֵי, עַד אֲשֶׁר רָעְדוּ מִפְּנֵי.
- הוּא שָׁמַע צַעֲקָתִי יוֹמָם, וְהוֹדִיעָנִי בַּחֲזוֹנוֹת לַיְלָה.
- יוֹמָם הִתְאַמְצָתִי לְהַעֲתִיר לִפְנֵי תַפְלָה עֲזָה; קוֹלִי בְּמָרוֹם הִשְׁמַעְתִּי, וּמַלְאָכִים יָרְדוּ וְשִׁרְתוּנִי.

- 25 ועל כנפי רוחו נשא גופי על הרים רמים מאד, ועיני ראו גדולות, אף גדולות מהשגת אדם; על כן צויתי כי לא אכתבן.
- 26 ואם גדולות כאלה אכן ראיתי, אם יהוה, במחילת כבודו לבני האדם יפקדם ברחמי כה רבים, מדוע יבך לבי ונפשי תתמהמה בעמק הבכא, ובשרי יכלה וכחי ירפה מפני תלאותי?
- 27 ומדוע אכנע לחטא, מפני בשרי? מדוע אתן יד לפתויים לתת מקום בלבי למרשע ההוא לאבד את שלומי ולצרר את נפשי? מדוע אכעס מפני אויבי?
- 28 עורי, נפשי! אל תוסיפי שקע בחטא. גילה, לבי, ואל תוסף תת מקום לאויב נפשי.
- 29 אל תרגז עוד מפני אויבי. אל נא תרפה כחי מפני תלאותי.
- 30 עלי, לבי, וקרא אל יהוה לאמר: אהללך, יהוה, לעולם; נפשי תגל בך, אלהי יצור ישועתי.
- 31 אנא, יהוה, גאל את נפשי! פדני מיד אויבי! שלח בי חיל בבוא עלי מראה חסא!
- 32 לו ינעלו תמיד שערי שאול לפני, כי לבי נשבר ורוחי נכאה! יהוה, אל נא תנעל שערי צדקתך בפני, למען אלך בעמק שפלה ולא אסור מדרך מישרים!
- 33 אנא, יהוה, עטפני במעיל צדקתך! שמה לי, יהוה, דרך להמלט מאויבי! הישירה נתיבי לפני! אל נא תתן אבן נגף על דרכי. פנה נא את דרכי לפני ואל תגדרנה, אף חסם את דרכי אויבי.
- 34 יהוה, בך בטחתי ובה אבטח לעולם. לא אשים מבטחי בזרוע בשר, כי ידעתי אשר ארור הבוטח בזרוע בשר. אכן ארור הוא אשר יבטח באדם ושם את הבשר ורועו.
- And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.
- O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?
- And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?
- Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.
- Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.
- Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.
- O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?
- May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!
- O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.
- O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

אֲכֹן, יָדַעְתִּי כִּי הָעֵנֶק יַעֲנִיק אֱלֹהִים לְאִשְׁרִי
יִבְקֶשׁ. אֲכֹן, יִתֵּן לִי אֱלֹהִי, אִם לֹא בְעוֹלָה
אֲבַקֶּשׁ; עַל כֵּן אֶשָּׂא קוֹלִי אֵלֶיךָ, אֶקְרָא אֵלֶיךָ,
אֱלֹהִי, צוּר צִדְקָתִי. קוֹלִי יַעֲלֶה אֵלֶיךָ תָּמִיד,
צוּרִי וְאֱלֹהִי, אֱלֹהִי עַד. אָמֵן.

35 Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

ה

5

וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הִרְבֵּיתִי לְקַרְא אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהִי מִפְּנֵי
כַּעַס אַחִי.

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

אֲךָ כַּעַס גָּבַר עָלַי, עַד אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

2 But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

וְהֵם הִתְלוֹנְנוּ עָלַי לֵאמֹר: אַחֵינוּ הַצָּעִיר יִחְשָׁב
לְמַשָּׁל בָּנוּ, וְנִסְיוֹנוֹת רַבִּים הָיוּ לָנוּ מִפְּנֵיו; לָכֵן
הִבָּה נִהְרָגְהוּ וְלֹא נוֹסִיף לְהִתְעַנּוֹת מִפְּנֵי דְבָרָיו.
הֵן אֵין חֲפָצָנוּ לְהִתֵּן שָׁלִיט עָלֵינוּ; כִּי לָנוּ, הָאֲחֵים
הַבְּכִירִים, הַשְּׁלִטוֹן עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה.

3 Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

וְאֲנִי לֹא כָתַבְתִּי עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי תִלְוֹנָתָם עָלַי. דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי כִי
בִקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

4 Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

וַיְהוֶה הַזֶּהִירָנִי כִּי אֶפְרָד מֵהֶם וְאֶבְרַח אֶל
הַיַּעְרוֹת עִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִחְפָּצוּ לָבוֹא עִמִּי.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

וְלִקְחָתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶת מִשְׁפַּחְתִּי וְאֶת זֹרָם
וּמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וְאֶת שָׁם, אַחִי הַגָּדוֹל וּמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ,
וְאֶת יַעֲקֹב וְיוֹסֵף, אַחֵי הַצָּעִירִים, וְאֶת אַחֵיוֹתִי,
וְכָל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לָלֶכֶת עִמִּי. וְכָל הַהוֹלְכִים עִמִּי
הָאֲמִינִים לְאִזְהָרוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְהַתְּגִלּוֹתָיו; עַל כֵּן
שָׁמַעוּ לְדְבָרִי.

6 Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

וְלִקְחָנוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יָכֻלְנוּ
לְשֵׂאת, וְנִסְעָנוּ בַּיַּעַר יָמִים רַבִּים; וְאַחֵר נִסְעָנוּ
יָמִים רַבִּים נָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ.

7 And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

וּבְנֵי עַמִּי חָפְצוּ כִּי נִקְרָא אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּקוֹם
הַהוּא נְפִי, וְלָכֵן קִרְאָנוּ אֶת שְׁמוֹ נְפִי.

8 And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי קִבְּלוּ עָלֵיהֶם לְהִקְרָא בְּשֵׁם
עִם נְפִי.

9 And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

- 10 And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things according to the law of Moses.
- וְשָׁמְרָנוּ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטֵי יְהוָה וְחֻקֵּי וּמִצְוֹתָיו בְּכָל דְּבָר, עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 11 And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.
- וַיְהוֹה הָיָה עִמָּנוּ, וְרִבְתָּהּ הַצִּלְחָתָנוּ עַד מְאֹד; כִּי זָרַעְנוּ זֶרַע, וְקָצְרָנוּ שֹׁפַע, וְגִדְלָנוּ עֲדָרֵי צֹאן וּבָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי בְהֵמָה.
- 12 And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, הֵבֵאתִי עִמִּי אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים עַל לִיחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל וְכֵן אֶת הַכְּדֹר, אוֹ הַמְּכֹנָן, אֲשֶׁר הִכִּינָה יְד יְהוָה בְּעֶבְרֹר אָבִי, כְּכָתוּב.
- 13 And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.
- וַהֲחִלּוּנוּ לְהַצְלִיחַ מְאֹד וּלְרַבּוֹת בָּאָרֶץ.
- 14 And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, לָקַחְתִּי אֶת חֶרֶב לָבָן וְעָשִׂיתִי חֲרָבוֹת רַבּוֹת כְּמוֹהָ, פֶּן יַעֲלֹ עָלֵינוּ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עִתָּה בְּשֵׁם לָמָנִים; כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֶת שִׂנְאָתָם אֵלַי וְאֶל צְאִצְאִי, וְאֶל אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עִמִּי.
- 15 And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.
- וְאֲנִי לִמַּדְתִּי אֶת עַמִּי לִבְנוֹת בָּתִּים וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מְלָאכָה עֵץ וּבְרָזָל, נְחֹשֶׁת וְנְחָשֶׁת קָלֵל, וּפְלָדָה וְזָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְעַפְרוֹת יָקָרוֹת, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּשֹׁפַע רַב.
- 16 And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, בִּנִיתִי מִקְדָּשׁ וְתִבְנִיתוֹ כְּתִבְנִית הַהִיכָל אֲשֶׁר לְשִׁלְמוֹה, זֹלַת בְּנִיתוֹ בְּחֻפְצֵי יָקָרוֹת רַבִּים, כִּי אֵלֶּה לֹא נִמְצְאוּ בָּאָרֶץ הַהִיא. לָכֵן לֹא נִתֵּן לִבְנוֹתוֹ כְּהִיכָל אֲשֶׁר לְשִׁלְמוֹה, אֲךָ תִּבְנִית בְּנִיתוֹ כְּמוֹתוֹ וּמְלָאכָתוֹ מְלָאכָה מְחֻשָּׁבֶת.
- 17 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.
- וְאֲנִי, נְפִי, סִבּוֹתִי בְּעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ שׁוֹקְדִים עַל עֲבוֹדָתָם וְעֹמְלֵי בְּמְלָאכָת כַּפַּיִם.
- 18 And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.
- וְהָיָה חֻפְצָם כִּי אֶהְיֶה מֶלֶכָם; אֲךָ אֲנִי, נְפִי, רָצִיתִי כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם מֶלֶךְ; אוּלָם עָשִׂיתִי לְמַעַנָם כְּפִי כֹחִי.
- 19 And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.
- וְהִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל אֲחֵי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי אֶהְיֶה מוֹשֶׁלָם וּמוֹרָם. עַל כֵּן הָיִיתִי לָהֶם מוֹשֶׁל וּמוֹרָה, עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת יְהוָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשִׁי.
- 20 Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they
- וְהִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלַי לֵאמֹר: אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִיךָ,

- יִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה. וְאַכְּנָם
נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי.
- 21 And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.
- 22 And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.
- 23 And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.
- 24 And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.
- 25 And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.
- 26 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.
- 27 And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.
- 28 And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.
- 29 And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.
- 30 And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.
- 31 Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.
- 32 And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.
- וַיְהוֹה הִסָּב עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הַקְּלָלָה; אַכְּנָם, מִאֲרָה קָשָׁה, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם, כִּי הִקְשׁוּ עָלָיו אֶת לִבָּם עַד אֲשֶׁר דָּמָה לְחִלְמִישׁ. וּבְהִיוֹתָם לְבָנִים וּמִרְאָם נְאֻמָּה וְעִנִּי וְעַד מְאֹד, וּלְמַעַן לֹא יִפְתּוּ אֶת עַמִּי, הִעֲטָה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיהֶם עוֹר כְּהָה.
- וְכֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הִנְנִי שׂוֹם אוֹתָם מֵאוֹסִים לְעַמִּי בְלֹתִי אִם יִנְחָמוּ וְיָשׁוּבוּ מִעֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְאָרֹר יִהְיֶה זֶרַע הָאִישׁ הַמִּתְעַרֵּב בְּזֶרְעִם; מִקְּלָל יִהְיֶה בְּעֶצֶם הַקְּלָלָה הַזֹּאת. כֹּה דִבֶּר יְהוָה וְכֵן יַעֲשׂ.
- וּמִפְּנֵי קְלָלָתָם, אֲשֶׁר עֲלֵיהֶם, הָיוּ לְעַם עָצֵל, מְלֵא תַחְבּוּלוֹת וְעָרְמָה; מִבְּקָשִׁים בְּיַעַר חַיּוֹת טָרֵף.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי: הֵם יִהְיוּ שׁוֹט לְזֶרְעִי לְעוֹרְרָם לְזָכֹר אוֹתִי, וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִזְכְּרוּנִי וְלֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִי, יִצְלִיפוּ בָהֶם עַד כְּלוּתָם.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, קִדְּשֵׁתִי אֶת יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת יוֹסֵף לְהִיְוֹת כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים בְּאַרְצִי עַמִּי.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חִיֵּינוּ חַיֵּי אִשָּׁר.
- וּשְׁלֹשִׁים שָׁנָה חָלְפוּ מִיּוֹם צֵאתָנוּ מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- וְשִׁמְרֵתִי, אֲנִי, נְפִי, עַד הַזְּמַן הַזֶּה, אֶת זְכֵרֹנוֹת עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי עַל הַלּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי: עֲשֵׂה לָּךְ לּוּחוֹת נֹסְפִים; וְעֲלֵיהֶם תַּחְרֹט דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הֵם טוֹבִים בְּעֵינִי, לְמַעַן הוֹעִילוּ לְעַמִּי.
- וְאַנִּי, נְפִי, בְּשִׁמְעִי לְמִצְוֹת יְהוָה, עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, וְחָרַטִּי עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- וְאַנִּי חָרַטִּי דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נְעִימִים הֵם לְאֱלֹהִים. וְאִם יִנְעֲמוּ לְעַמִּי דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים, יִנְעֲמוּ לָהֶם אֵף כְּתַבִּי הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבִי

33 And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.
 הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה. וְהִיא אִם יַחְפְּצוּ בְּנֵי עַמִּי לְדַעַת אֶת תּוֹלְדוֹתָם בְּתֵאוּר רַב יוֹתֵר, יִבְקְשׁוּן הַמָּה בְּלוּחוֹתֵי הָאַחֵרִים.

34 And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.
 דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי כִי אַרְבַּעִים שָׁנָה חָלְפוּ, וְכָבֵר הָיוּ לָנוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת עִם אֶחָיו.

1

דְּבָרֵי יַעֲקֹב, אָחִי נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל עַם נְפִי:

אָחִי הָאֱהוּבִים, אָנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאתִי מֵעַם אֱלֹהִים וְהִסְמַכְתִּי עַל פִּי סֵדֶר קִדְשׁוֹ, וְאֲשֶׁר קִדְשְׁתִּי בְּיַד אָחִי נְפִי, אֵלָיו תִּבְטְאוּ כְּמֶלֶךְ אוֹ כְּמִגֹּן, וְעָלִיו תִּשָּׁעֲנוּ לְבִטָּחָה; הִנֵּה יָדַעְתֶּם כִּי דְבַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים מְאֹד.

וְאוֹלָם אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם עוֹד, כִּי רְצוֹנִי בְּשָׁלוֹם נַפְשְׁכֶם; אָכֵן גְּדוֹלָה דְּאֲנִי לָכֶם, וְאַתֶּם יָדַעְתֶּם כִּי כֵן תָּמִיד. הֲלֹא הִפְצַרְתִּי בָכֶם בְּרַב שְׂקִידָה, וְאֵף לְמַדְרִיכֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי אָבִי, וְדְבַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים מִיָּמֵי בְרִיאַת הָעוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּי מְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם עַל דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קִיָּמִים עָתִיד וְעַל אֲשֶׁר יִבְאוּ; לָכֵן אֶקְרָא לְפָנֵיכֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ, וְהֵם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אָחִי כִי אֲדַבֵּר בְּאַזְנוֹיֶכֶם. וּמְדַבֵּר אָנִי אֵלֵיכֶם לְמַעַנְכֶם, בְּעֵבוֹר תִּלְמְדוּ וּתְפַאֲרוּ אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵיכֶם.

וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֶקְרָא, הֵם דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ עַל כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; לָכֵן, נִתְּנִים הֵם לְהִיּוֹת נִמְשָׁלִים אֵלֵיכֶם, כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם. אָכֵן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יִשְׁעִיהוּ נִתְּנִים לְהִתְמַשֵּׁל אֵלֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם.

וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים: כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה: הִנֵּה אֲשָׂא אֶל גּוֹיִם יָדִי, וְאֶל עַמִּים אָרִים נְסִי; וְהִבִּיאוּ בְּנֵיךְ בְּחֻצְוִן, וּבָנִתֶיךָ עַל כַּתֵּף תִּנְשָׂאנָה.

וְהָיוּ מְלָכִים אֲמֻנֶיךָ וְשָׂרֵיהֶם מִיְּנִיקֶיךָ; אֲפִים אֶרְץ יִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לָךְ, וְעֵפֶר רַגְלֶיךָ יִלְחֲכוּ; וְיָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִבְשׁוּ קִנִּי.

6

1 The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

2 Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

3 Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

4 And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

5 And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

6 And now these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

7 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

- 8 And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.
- 9 Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.
- 10 And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.
- 11 Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.
- 12 And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.
- 13 Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.
- 14 And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.
- 15 And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.
- ועתה, אני, יעקב, אדבר מעט על הדברים האלה. כי הנה הראני יהוה כי היושבים בירושלם, אשר באנו ממנה, הומתו והגלו.
- אולם הראני יהוה כי עוד ישוּבו שמה וכן הראני כי יהוה אלהים, קדוש ישראל, יתגלה אליהם בבשר; ואחר התגלותו, הם יצליפו בו ויצלבו אותו, וזאת על פי דברי המלאך אשר דבר עמי.
- ואחר אשר יכבידו את לבם ויקשו את ערפם על קדוש ישראל, יבואו עליהם משפטי קדוש ישראל; ויבוא היום בו יכו וינגעו.
- ואחר אשר יפצו הנה והנה, כי כה אמר המלאך, ורבים ינגעו בבשר, אך מפני תפלות שומרי האמונים לא יאבדו; ואף כי יהיו פזורים, ומכים, ושנואים ירחמם יהוה; וכאשר יבואו אל דעת גואלם, יקבצו שנית אל ארצות נחלתם.
- וברוכים יהיו הגוים, אלה אשר עליהם כתב הנביא; כי אם ינחמו על חטאייהם ולא ילחמו בציון ולא יתחברו עם הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת ההיא, הם יושעו; כי יקים יהוה אלהים את בריתותיו אשר כרת עם בניו; הן לתכלית הזאת כתב הנביא את הדברים האלה.
- על כן, ילחכו הלוחמים בציון ובעם ברית יהוה את עפר רגליהם, ועם יהוה לא יבושו. כי עם יהוה הם אלה המקוים לו; כי עוד מקוים המה לבוא המשיח.
- והנה, כפי דברי הנביא, יוסיף המשיח שנית לקנותם ולהשיבם; על כן יודע הוא לפנייהם בגבורה וברב תפארה, להשמיד את אויביהם, ביום אשר הם יאמינו בו; ולא ישמיד הוא אף אחד אשר יאמין בו.
- ואשר אינם מאמינים בו, ישמדו, באש ובסופה, ברעשי אדמה ובשפיכות דמים, בדבר ובקרעב. וידעו כי יהוה הוא האלהים, קדוש ישראל.

- 16 For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?
כִּי הִיָּקַח מִגְבוֹר מִלְּקוֹחַ; וְאִם שְׁבִי צָדִיק יִמְלֹט?
- 17 But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—
כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: גַּם שְׁבֵי גְבוֹר יִקָּח וּמִלְּקוֹחַ עָרִיץ יִמְלֹט; אֶת יְרִיבֹךָ אֲנֹכִי אָרִיב וְאֶת בְּנִיֶּךָ אֲנֹכִי אוֹשִׁיעַ.
- 18 And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.
וְהֶאֱכַלְתִּי אֶת מוֹנִיָּךְ אֶת בְּשָׂרָם, וְכָעָסִים דָּמָם יִשְׁכְּרוּן; וְיָדְעוּ כָּל בָּשָׂר כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה מוֹשִׁיעֶךָ וְגֹאֲלֶךָ, אֲבִיר יַעֲקֹב.

ז

7

- 1 Thus saith the Lord, Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement, whom I have put away? or which of my creditors is it to whom I have sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.
כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: אֵי זֶה סֵפֶר כְּרִיתוֹת אֲמַכֶּם אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַחְתִּיהָ, אוֹ מִי מִנּוּשֵׁי אֲשֶׁר מְכַרְתִּי אֶתְכֶם לוֹ? הֵן בַּעֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וּבַפְשָׁעֵיכֶם שָׁלַחְהָ אֲמַכֶּם.
- 2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man? When I called, was there none to answer? Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? Or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a wilderness: their fish stinketh, because there is no water, and dieth for thirst.
מַדּוּעַ בָּאתִי וְאִין אִישׁ, קָרָאתִי וְאִין עֹנֶה? הֲקִצּוֹר קִצְרָה יָדִי מִפְּדוּת, וְאִם אִין בִּי כֹחַ לְהַצִּיל? הֵן בְּגַעַרְתִּי אֶחְרִיב יָם, אֲשִׁים נְהָרוֹת מִדְּבָר, תִּבְאֵשׁ דְּגָתָם מֵאִין מַיִם וְתָמוּת בַּצָּמָא.
- 3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.
אֶלְבִּישׁ שָׁמַיִם קִדְרוֹת; וְשָׁכ אֲשִׁים בְּסוּתָם.
- 4 The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season to him that is weary: he wakeneth morning by morning, he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the learned.
אֲדַנִּי יְהוָה נָתַן לִי לְשׁוֹן לַמּוֹדִים, לְיָדַעַת לַעֲוֹת אֶת יָעֵף, דָּבָר יַעֲרִיב בְּבִקָּר בְּבִקָּר, יַעֲרִי לִי אֲזֹן לְשִׁמְעַת כָּל־מוֹדִים.
- 5 The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.
אֲדַנִּי יְהוָה פָּתַח לִי אָזְנוֹ, וְאֲנֹכִי לֹא מָרִיתִי: אַחֲזֹר לֹא נִסּוּגְתִּי.
- 6 I gave my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair: I hid not my face from shame and spitting.
גָּוִי נָתַתִּי לְמַכִּים וְלַחֲיִי לְמוֹרְטִים; פָּנַי לֹא הִסְתַּרְתִּי מִכְּלָמוֹת וְרָק.
- 7 For the Lord God will help me; therefore shall I not be confounded: therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.
וְאֲדַנִּי יְהוָה יִעֲזָר לִי, עַל כֵּן לֹא נִכְלָמְתִּי; עַל כֵּן שָׁמַתִּי פָנַי כַּחֲלָמִישׁ, וְאָדַע כִּי לֹא אֲבוֹשׁ.
- 8 He is near that justifieth me; who will contend with me? Let us stand together: who is mine adversary? Let him come near to me.
קָרוֹב מִצְדִּיקִי. מִי יָרִיב אִתִּי? נַעֲמֻדָה יַחַד; מִי בָעַל מִשְׁפָּטִי? יָגֵשׁ אֵלַי.

- 9 Behold, the Lord God will help me; who is he that shall condemn me? Lo, they all shall wax old as a garment; the moth shall eat them up.
- 10 Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? Let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.
- 11 Behold, all ye that kindle a fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks: walk in the light of your fire, and in the sparks that ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand; ye shall lie down in sorrow.
- הֵן אֲדֹנִי יְהוָה יֵעֲזָר לִי. מִי הוּא יִרְשָׁעֵנִי? הֵן כָּלֶם כְּבָגֵד יִבְלֶה, עָשׂ יֹאכְלֵם.
- מִי בָכֶם יִירָא יְהוָה, שְׁמִיעַ בְּקוֹל עַבְדּוֹ אֲשֶׁר הֵלֵךְ חֲשָׁכִים וְאֵין נֹגֵה לוֹ? יִבְטַח בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה, וְיִשָּׁעַן בְּאֱלֹהָיו.
- הֵן כָּלְכֶם קִדְחִי אֵשׁ, מֵאֲזִירֵי זִיקוֹת; לָכֵן בָּאוּר אֲשֶׁכֶם, וּבְזִיקוֹת בַּעֲרַתְם. מִיַּד הֵיטָה זֹאת לָכֶם, לְמַעַצְבָּה תִשְׁכַּבּוּן.

8

ח

- 1 Hearken to me, ye that follow after righteousness, ye that seek the Lord: look unto the rock whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit whence ye are digged.
- 2 Look unto Abraham your father, and unto Sarah that bare you: for I called him alone, and blessed him, and increased him.
- 3 For the Lord shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody.
- 4 Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation: for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light of the people.
- 5 My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arms shall judge the people; the isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.
- 6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.
- 7 Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart is my law; fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.
- 8 For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool: but my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.
- שְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי רֹדְפֵי צֶדֶק, מְבַקְשֵׁי יְהוָה; הִבִּיטוּ אֶל צוּר חֲצֵבְתְּכֶם, וְאֶל מְקַבֵּת בּוֹר נִקְרָתְכֶם.
- הִבִּיטוּ אֶל אֲבִרְהָם אֲבִיכֶם, וְאֶל שָׂרָה תְּחוּלְלֵכֶם: כִּי אֶחָד קָרָאתִיו, וְאַבְרָכָהוּ וְאַרְבָּהוּ.
- כִּי נַחֵם יְהוָה צִיּוֹן, נַחֵם כָּל חֲרֻבֹתֶיהָ; וְיִשָּׂם מִדְּבָרָה כְּעֵדֶן, וְעִרְבָתָהּ כֶּגֶן יְהוָה; שִׂשׁוֹן וְשִׁמְחָה יִמְצָא בָּהּ, תוֹדָה וְקוֹל זִמְרָה.
- הִקְשִׁיבוּ אֵלַי עַמִּי, וְלֹאֹמְרֵי אֵלַי הֲאִינוּ: כִּי תוֹרָה מֵאִתִּי תֵצֵא, וּמִשְׁפָּטִי לְאוֹר עַמִּים אֲרִגִּיעַ.
- קְרוֹב צֶדֶקִי יֵצֵא וְשָׁעִי, וְזִרְעִי עַמִּים יִשְׁפֹּטוּ; אֵלַי אֵימִם יָקוּ, וְאֶל זִרְעִי יִיחַלּוּן.
- שִׂאוּ לְשִׁמִּים עֵינֵיכֶם, וְהִבִּיטוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת; כִּי שָׁמַיִם כְּעָשָׁן נִמְלָחוּ, וְהָאָרֶץ כְּבָגֵד תִּבְלָה, וְיֹשְׁבֶיהָ כְּמוֹ כֵּן יָמוּתוּן. וְיִשׁוּעָתִי לְעוֹלָם תִּהְיֶה, וְצִדְקָתִי לֹא תִחָת.
- שְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי יוֹדְעֵי צֶדֶק, עִם תוֹרָתִי בְלִבָּם: אֶל תִּירְאוּ חֲרַפַּת אָנוּשׁ, וּמִגְדַּףְתֶּם אֶל תִּחָתוּ.
- כִּי כְּבָגֵד יֹאכְלֵם עָשׂ וְכַצְמֹר יֹאכְלֵם סֵם; וְצִדְקָתִי לְעוֹלָם תִּהְיֶה, וְיִשׁוּעָתִי לְדוֹר דּוֹרִים.

- 9 Awake, awake, put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake, as in the ancient days, in the generations of old. Art thou not it that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?
עוֹרֵי עוֹרֵי לְבָשִׁי עֹז, זְרוּעַ יְהוָה, עוֹרֵי כִימִי
קָדָם דְּרוֹת עוֹלָמִים; הֲלוֹא אַתָּה הָיָה הַמְחַצֶּבֶת
רַהַב, מַחֲלֶלֶת תַּנִּין?
- 10 Art thou not it which hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?
הֲלוֹא אַתָּה הָיָה הַמְחַרְבֶּת יָם, מִי תְהוֹם רַבָּה;
הַשְׁמָה מַעַמְקֵי יָם, דֶּרֶךְ לַעֲבֹר גְּאוּלִּים?
- 11 Therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.
וּפְדוּיֵי יְהוָה יָשׁוּבוּ, וּבָאוּ צִיּוֹן בְּרִנָּה, וְשִׂמְחַת
עוֹלָם עַל רֹאשָׁם; שִׂשׂוֹן וְשִׂמְחָה יִשְׁיִגּוּ, נֶסֶם
יִגּוּן וְאַנְחָה.
- 12 I, even I, am he that comforteth you: who art thou, that thou shouldest be afraid of a man that shall die, and of the son of man which shall be made as grass;
אֲנֹכִי, אֲנֹכִי הוּא מְנַחֵמְכֶם, מִי אַתָּה וְתִירָאִי;
מֵאַנּוּשׁ יָמוּת, וּמִבֶּן אָדָם חָצִיר יָנֵת;
- 13 And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth; and hast feared continually every day because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy, and where is the fury of the oppressor?
וְתִשְׁכַּח יְהוָה עֹשֶׂה, נוֹטֶה שָׁמַיִם וְיֹסֵד אֶרֶץ;
וְתִפְחַד תָּמִיד כָּל הַיּוֹם מִפְּנֵי חֲמַת הַמַּצִּיק,
כַּאֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵן לְהִשָּׁחִית? וְאַיָּה חֲמַת הַמַּצִּיק?
- 14 The captive exile hasteneth that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.
מִהָרַע צֹעֵה לְהַפְתֵּחַ; וְלֹא יָמוּת לְשַׁחַת, וְלֹא
יִחָסֵר לֶחֱמוֹ.
- 15 But I am the Lord thy God, that divided the sea, whose waves roared: The Lord of hosts is his name.
וְאֲנֹכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ רֹעֵה הַיָּם, וַיַּהֲמוּ גָלְוֵי; יְהוָה
צְבָאוֹת שְׁמוֹ.
- 16 And I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens, and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion, Thou art my people.
וְאִשָּׁם דְּבָרֵי בְּפִיךָ, וּבִצֵּל יָדִי כְּסִיתִיךָ; לִנְטֹעַ
שָׁמַיִם וְלִיֹּסֵד אֶרֶץ, וְלֵאמֹר לְצִיּוֹן: עַמִּי אַתָּה.
- 17 Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury; thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling, and wrung them out.
הִתְעוֹרְרִי הִתְעוֹרְרִי, קוּמִי יְרוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר
שָׁתִית מִיַּד יְהוָה אֶת כּוֹס חֲמָתוֹ; אֶת קְבַעַת
כּוֹס הַתְּרַעֲלָה שָׁתִית מִצִּית.
- 18 There is none to guide her among all the sons whom she hath brought forth; neither is there any that taketh her by the hand of all the sons that she hath brought up.
אֵין מְנַהֵל לָהּ, מִכָּל בָּנִים יִלְדָהּ; וְאֵין מְחַזֵּק
בְּיָדָהּ, מִכָּל בָּנִים גִּדְּלָהּ.
- 19 These two things are come unto thee; who shall be sorry for thee? Desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword: by whom shall I comfort thee?
שְׁתֵּי הַנָּה קָרְאִיתִיךָ, מִי יִנּוּד לָךְ? הַשָּׁד
וְהַשָּׁבֶר וְהָרָעָב וְהַחֶרֶב, מִי אֲנַחֲמֶךָ?
- 20 Thy sons have fainted, they lie at the head of all the streets, as a wild bull in a net: they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.
בָּנֶיךָ עָלְפוּ שָׁכְבוּ, בְּרֹאשׁ כָּל חוֹצוֹת כְּתוּר
מִקָּמָר; הַמְּלֵאִים חֲמַת יְהוָה, גְּעֵרַת אֱלֹהֶיךָ.
- 21 Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, but not with wine:
לְכֵן שְׁמָעִי נָא זֹאת, עֲנִיָּה; וְשִׁכְרַת וְלֹא מֵיין.

- 22 Thus saith thy Lord the Lord, and thy God that pleadeth the cause of his people, Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, even the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again:
- 23 But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; which have said to thy soul, Bow down, that we may go over: and thou hast laid thy body as the ground, and as the street, to them that went over.
- 24 Awake, awake; put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city: for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.
- 25 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, and sit down, O Jerusalem: loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.
- כה אמר אֲדֹנָיִךְ יְהוָה: וְאַלֵּהֶיךָ יָרִיב עִמּוֹ. הִנֵּה לָקַחְתִּי מִיָּדְךָ אֶת כּוֹס הַתַּרְעֵלָה, אֶת קִבְעַת כּוֹס חֲמָתִי לֹא תוֹסִיפִי לְשִׁתּוֹתָהּ עוֹד.
- וְשִׁמַּתִּיהָ בְּיַד מוֹגִיף אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ לְנַפְשְׁךָ שְׁחִי וְנַעֲבֶרְהָ; וְתַשִּׁימִי כְּאַרְץ גּוֹף, וְכַחוּץ לַעֲבָרִים.
- עוֹרִי עוֹרִי, לְבָשִׂי עֹז, צִיּוֹן: לְבָשִׂי בְּגָדֵי תִפְאָרְתְּךָ, יְרוּשָׁלַם עִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי לֹא יוֹסִיף יָבֹא בָּךְ עוֹד עָרֹל וְטָמֵא.
- הִתְנַעְרִי מֵעָפָר, קוּמִי שְׁבִי, יְרוּשָׁלַם; הִתְפַּתְחִי מִזִּמְרֵי צַוְאָרְךָ, שְׁבִיָּה בַת צִיּוֹן.

ט

9

- 1 And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—
- 2 That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.
- 3 Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.
- 4 For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.
- 5 Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.
- 6 For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the
- וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, קָרָאתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן תֵּדְעוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,
- אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל הַיְּהוּדִים, בְּפִי נְבִיאָיו הַקְּדוֹשִׁים, מִרְאשִׁית וְעַד עַתָּה, וּמִדּוֹר לְדוֹר עַד עַתָּה שׁוֹבִים אֶל כְּנִסְיַת הָאֱמֶת וְצֶאֱנָן אֱלֹהִים; אֲנִי יִקְבְּצוּ אֶל אֶרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם, אִף יִכּוֹנְנוּ בְּכָל אֶרְצוֹת יְעוּדָם.
- הִנֵּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, אֲדַבֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֵלֶּה אֵלֵיכֶם לְמַעַן תִּגְלוּ וְתִרְמִימוּ אֶת רֹאשְׁכֶם לְעוֹלָם עַל הַבְּרָכוֹת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲנִיק יְהוָה לְבָנֵיכֶם.
- בְּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעִיתִי כִּי רַבִּים מִכֶּם הִרְבוּ בִקֵּשׁ דַּעַת אֶת אֲשֶׁר לְבֹא, וְיִדְעִיתִי כִּי יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר יִבְלֶה בְּשָׂרֵנוּ וְיָמוּת; וְאַוֶּלֶם בְּגוֹפֵנוּ נִרְאֶה אֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- יִדְעִיתִי כִּי יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר הוּא יִתְגַּלֵּה בְּגוֹף לַיּוֹשְׁבִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה בָּאנוּ; כִּי יִהְיֶה הַיּוֹתוֹ בְּתוֹכָם לְהוֹעִיל; כִּי רָאוּי לְבוֹרָא הַגָּדוֹל לְהִתִּיר עֲצָמוֹ לְהִיּוֹת נִכְנַע לְאָדָם בְּבֶשֶׁר, וְלָמוֹת בְּעָבוּר כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ לְמַעַן יִכְנָעוּ לוֹ כָּלָם.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר נִגְזַר הַמּוֹת עַל כָּל הָאָנוּשׁ, לְמִיָּם אֶת תְּכֵנִיתוֹ רַבַּת הַחֲמִלָּה אֲשֶׁר לְבוֹרָא הַגָּדוֹל, הַכֶּרֶם כִּי יִהְיֶה כֹחַ תַּחֲיָה; וְהַתַּחֲיָה תִּבּוֹא אֶל

הָאָדָם עָקַב נִפְלָאוֹ; וְהַנִּפְלָאוֹ בָּאָה עָקַב עֲבָרָתוֹ;
וּמִפְּנֵי נִפְלָאוֹ, נִכְרַת הָאָדָם מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

לָכֵן הִכְרַח כִּי תִהְיֶה כְּפָרָה מִחֻלָּטָה, כִּי בְלֹא
כְּפָרָה מִחֻלָּטָה, לֹא תוּכַל הִשְׁחָתָה הַזֹּאת
לְהַפֵּךְ לְבִלְתִּי הִשְׁחָתָה. עַל כֵּן חֵיב הָיָה הַדִּין
הָרִאשׁוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִחְרַץ עַל הָאָדָם, לְהַמְשִׁיךְ
עַד אֵין קֵץ. וְאֵלּוֹ הָיָה כֵּן, הָיָה הַבֶּשֶׂר שׁוֹכֵב
לְהִרְקֵב וּלְהִתְפֹּרֵר אֶל אִמָּא אֲדָמָה, וְלֹא
הָיָה קֵם עוֹד.

7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

הוֹ, חֲכָמַת אֱלֹהִים וְרַחֲמָיו וְחֶסֶדּוֹ! כִּי
לִוְלֵי קֵם הַבֶּשֶׂר שְׁנִית הָיוּ נִשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ נִכְנָעוֹת
לְמַלְאָךְ אֲשֶׁר נָפַל מִלִּפְנֵי הָאֵל הַנִּצְחִי וְנַעֲשָׂה
שָׂטָן, וְלֹא הָיוּ קָמוֹת עוֹד.

8 O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

וְהָיוּ אֵז נִשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ נַעֲשׂוֹת כְּמוֹהוּ; וְהָיוּ
נַעֲשִׂים שְׂדִים, מְלֹאכֵי שָׂטָן, לְהַרְחִיקֵנוּ מִלִּפְנֵי
אֱלֹהֵינוּ, לְהִשָּׂאֵר עִם אָבִי הַכֶּזֶב, בְּמַצּוּקָה
כְּמוֹהוּ; אֲכֹן, הוּא הַיָּצוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָעָרִים עַל
הוֹרִינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, הַלּוֹבֵשׁ דְּמוּת מְלֹאךְ אֹר
וּמַעֲוֹרֵר בְּכֵי אָדָם אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֶר לְרַצָּח,
וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מַעֲשֵׂי סֵתֶר אֲפִלִּים.

9 And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

מֶה רַב טוֹב אֱלֹהֵינוּ, הַמְכִּין לָנוּ דֶּרֶךְ לְהַמְלִיט
מֵאֲחִיצַת יָד הַמְּפַלֶּצֶת הָאִמָּה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר
הִיא מָוֶת וְשָׂאוֹל, אֲשֶׁר קְרָאִתִּים מוֹת הַגּוֹף
וּמוֹת הַנֶּשְׁמָה.

10 O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

וּמִפְּנֵי דֶּרֶךְ הַנֶּאֱלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹאֲלֵהֵנוּ,
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עָלָיו,
אֲשֶׁר הוּא חֲמָרִי, יִפְטֹר אֶת מִתִּי; וְהַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה
הוּא הַקֶּבֶר.

11 And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

וְהַמָּוֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עָלָיו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַמָּוֶת
הָרוּחָנִי, אֵף הוּא יִפְטֹר אֶת מִתִּי; וְהַמָּוֶת הָרוּחָנִי
הַזֶּה הוּא שָׂאוֹל; לָכֵן הַמָּוֶת וְשָׂאוֹל יִפְטֹרוּ אֶת
מִתִּיהֶם, וְשָׂאוֹל תִּפְטֹר אֶת נִשְׁמוֹתֶיהָ הַשְּׁבוּיֹת,
וְהַקֶּבֶר יִפְטֹר אֶת גּוֹיֹתֵיהֶם הַשְּׁבוּיֹת, וְגוֹפֵי בְנֵי
הָאָדָם וְנִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם יָשׁוּבוּ גּוֹף אֶל נֶשְׁמָה;
וְזֹאת בְּכַח הַתְּחִיָּה אֲשֶׁר לְקְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

12 And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

מֶה גְדוֹלָה תְּכֵנִית אֱלֹהֵינוּ! כִּי זֹאת וְעוֹד,
גֵּן עֵדֶן אֲשֶׁר לֹאֲלֵהִים יִפְטֹר אֶת נִשְׁמוֹת
הַצַּדִּיקִים, וְהַקֶּבֶר יִפְטֹר אֶת גּוֹיֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים;
וְהַנֶּשְׁמָה וְהַגּוֹף יָשׁוּבוּ זֶה אֶל זֶה, וְכָל הָאָדָם

13 O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they

יַעֲשׂוּ בְּלִתֵּי נִשְׁחָתִים וּבְנֵי אֲלֻמּוֹת; וְנִהְיוּ
נִפְשוֹת חַיּוֹת בְּעֵלּוֹת יְדִיעָה שְׁלֵמָה הַדּוֹמָה
לִידְעָתָנוּ בַּעֲת הַיּוֹתֵנוּ בַּבָּשָׂר, אֲלֵא כִּי תִהְיֶה
אִזּוּ יְדִיעָתָנוּ שְׁלֵמָה.

are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh,
save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

עַל כֵּן נִדְעַה יְדִיעָה שְׁלֵמָה אֶת כָּל אֲשַׁמְתָּנוּ
וְטִמְאַתָּנוּ וְעִרְוָתָנוּ; וְהַצְדִּיקִים יִדְעוּ יְדִיעָה
שְׁלֵמָה אֶת תַּעֲנוּגָם וְאֶת צִדְקָתָם בְּהִיּוֹתָם
לִזְבָּשִׁים טָהֵר, מְעִיל צִדְקָה.

14 Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our
uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect
knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed
with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

וּבַעֲת עֲבָר כָּל הָאָדָם מִן הַמִּיתָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה
הַזֹּאת אֶל הַחַיִּים, וּבְהַעֲשׂוֹתָם כֹּךְ בְּנֵי אֲלֻמּוֹת,
הֵם יִפְּעוּ לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְקֹדֶשׁ
יִשְׂרָאֵל; אִזּוּ יַעֲשֶׂה הַמִּשְׁפָּט, וְאִזּוּ יִהְיֶה עֲלֵיהֶם
לְהַשְׁפֵּט עַל פִּי מִשְׁפָּט הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.

15 And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from
this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they
must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and
then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to
the holy judgment of God.

וְאִמְנָם, חַי יְהוָה, כִּי כֵן דְּבַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים,
וְזֹאת מִלְּתוֹ הַנֶּצְחִית, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִחַלֵּף; כִּי
אֲשֶׁר הֵם צְדִיקִים, יַעֲמְדוּ בְּצִדְקָתָם; וְאֲשֶׁר
הֵם טִמְאִים, יַעֲמְדוּ בְּטִמְאַתָּם; כִּי הֵטֵמְאִים
הֵם הַשָּׁטָן וּמַלְאָכָיו; וְהֵם יַעֲבְרוּ אֶל אֵשׁ
תְּמִיד הָעֲרוּכָה לָהֶם; וְיִסְרִיָּהֶם יִהְיוּ כְּמִקְנֵה
אֵשׁ וְגִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר לְהַבְתּוֹ עוֹלָה לְעֵדֵי עַד
בְּלֹא קֵץ.

16 And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it,
and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are
righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy
still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and
they shall go away into everlasting fire; prepared for them; and their
torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up
forever and ever and has no end.

מִה גְּדוֹל אֱלֹהֵינוּ, וּמִה גְּדוֹל מִשְׁפָּטוֹ! כִּי הוּא
מְקִים אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר יֵצֵאוּ מִפִּיו, וְחֻקָּיו
קוֹם יִקְוּמוּ.

17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his
words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must
be fulfilled.

אֲנִי הַצְדִּיקִים, קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר
הָאִמְנָנוּ בְּקֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאוּ אֶת צִלְבֵי
הָעוֹלָם וּבָזוּ לְחִרְפָּתָם, הֵמָּה יִירָשׁוּ אֶת מַלְכוּת
אֱלֹהִים הָעֲרוּכָה לָהֶם מִסּוּד הָעוֹלָם, וְתִהְיֶה
שִׂמְחָתָם שְׁלֵמָה עַד עוֹלָם.

18 But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they
who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the
crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the
kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of
the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

מִה גְּדוֹלִים רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהֵינוּ, קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל!
כִּי הוּא מַצִּיל אֶת קֹדֶשָׁיו מִן הַמַּפְלָצָה
הָאִימָה: הַשָּׁטָן, וּמּוֹת וּשְׂאוֹל, וּמִקְנֵה הָאֵשׁ
הַהוּא וְגִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הֵיא יִסּוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ.

19 O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For
he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death,
and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

מִה רַבָּה קִדְשַׁת אֱלֹהֵינוּ! כִּי הוּא יוֹדֵעַ כָּל
הַדְּבָרִים, וְאֵין דְּבַר נִעְלָם מִיְדַעְתּוֹ.

20 O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and
there is not anything save he knows it.

וְהוּא בָּא אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְהַצִּיל אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם,
אִם יִשְׁמְעוּ בְּקוֹלוֹ; וְהוּא יִסְבֵּל אֶת מַכְאוֹבֵי כָּל
הָאָדָם, אֲכֹן מַכְאוֹבֵי כָּל חַי: אִישׁ, אִשָּׁה, וְיֶלֶד,
אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁפַּחַת אָדָם.

21 And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will
hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men,
yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children,
who belong to the family of Adam.

- 22 And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.
וְיִסְבֵּל הוּא זֹאת בְּעֶבְוֹר תַּחֲוֹל הַתְּחִיָּה עַל כָּל הָאָדָם, לְמַעַן יִוָּכְלוּ הַכֹּל לְעִמּוֹד לִפְנֵי בְיוֹם הַמִּשְׁפָּט הַגָּדוֹל.
- 23 And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.
וְהוּא מְצַוֶּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם לְהִנָּחַם מִחַטָּא, וּלְהִטָּבֵל בְּשֵׁמוֹ, בְּאַמּוּנָה שְׁלֵמָה בְּקִדּוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְלֹא, לֹא יוֹשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 24 And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.
וְאִם לֹא יִנָּחְמוּ מִחַטָּא, וְלֹא יֵאֱמִינוּ וְיִטָּבְלוּ בְּשֵׁמוֹ, וְלֹא יִתְמִידוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, אֲרוּרִים יִהְיוּ; כִּי כֹה דִבֶּר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, קִדּוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 25 Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.
עַל כֵּן נָתַן יְהוָה חֹק; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין חֹק, אֵין עֲנִיֶּשָׁה; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין עֲנִיֶּשָׁה, אֵין הַרְשָׁעָה; וּבְאֲשֶׁר אֵין הַרְשָׁעָה, יֵשׁ לְרַחֲמֵי קִדּוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל תְּבִיעֵת זְכוּת עָלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי הַכִּפּוּרָה; כִּי בְכֹחוֹ הֵם נוֹשָׁעִים.
- 26 For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.
כִּי הַכִּפּוּרָה מְמַלֵּאת אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ אֶל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָתַן לָהֶם חֹק, לְהַצִּילֵם מִיַּד הַמַּפְלֵצַת הָאֵימָה הַהִיא: מוֹת וּשְׂאוֹל, הַשָּׁטָן וּמִקְוֵה הָאֵשׁ וְהַגִּפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הִיא יְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ; וְהֵם מוֹשָׁבִים אֶל הָאֱלֹהִים, קִדּוּשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נָתַן בָּהֶם רוּחַ חַיִּים.
- 27 But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!
אֲדָּהּ הוּא לְאֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ חֹק, וְאֲשֶׁר לוֹ כָּל מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ, וְהוּא עוֹבֵר עָלֵיהֶן וּמַכְלֶה לְרִיק אֶת יְמֵי מִבְּחָנוֹ, כִּי נוֹרָא מַצְבּוֹ!
- 28 O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.
אָהָה, תַּחְבּוּלוֹת הַמְרָשָׁע הַהוּא! אָהָה, הַכֹּל וְחִלְשוֹת הָאָדָם וְאוֹלָתוֹ! בְּקִנּוּתָם דַּעַת מְדַמִּים כִּי חֲכָמִים הֵם, בְּעוֹד אֵינֶם שׁוֹמְעִים לְעֶצֶת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אִם מִשְׁלִיכִים אוֹתָהּ, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם אֲשֶׁר מַעֲצָמָם יוֹדְעִים הֵם; עַל כֵּן חֲכָמָתָם הִיא אוֹלָת וְאֵין בָּהּ לְהוֹשִׁילָם; הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.
- 29 But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.
אֲדָּהּ טוֹב לְאָדָם אֲשֶׁר יִלְמַד, אִם אֲדָּהּ יִשְׁמַע לְעֶצֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- 30 But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.
הוּא לְעֵשִׁירִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם עֲשִׁירִים בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה. כִּי מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׁרָם יְבוֹזוּ לְעֲנִיִּים וְיַרְדִּפוּ אֶת הָעֲנִיִּים וְלִבָּם לְאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן אוֹצָרָם הוּא אֱלֹהֵיהֶם; וְהִנֵּה יֵאָבֵד אֲף אוֹצָרָם עִמָּהֶם.
- 31 And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.
הוּא לְחֹרְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ, כִּי הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.

- 32 **הוּי לְעֹרְרִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵרְאוּ, כִּי הֵם יֵאָבְדוּ.** Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.
- 33 **הוּי לְעֹרְלֵי לֵב, כִּי תִכְסֹּם יְדִיעַת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.** Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.
- 34 **הוּי לְשֹׁקֵרָן, כִּי יִשְׁלַף שְׂאוּלָה.** Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.
- 35 **הוּי לְרוֹצֵחַ, הַהוֹרֵג בְּזִדּוֹן, כִּי מוֹת יָמוּת.** Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.
- 36 **הוּי לְזֹנִים, כִּי הֵם יִוָּרְדוּ שְׂאוּלָה.** Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.
- 37 **הוּי לְעוֹבְדֵי אֱלִילִים, כִּי שֵׁטָן כָּל הַשְּׂטָנִים חָפֵץ בָּהֶם.** Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.
- 38 **וּבִקְצֶרָה: הוּי לְכָל הַמֵּתִים בַּחַטָּאֵיהֶם; כִּי יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים, וְיֵרְאוּ אֶת פָּנָיו, וְיַעֲמְדוּ בַּחַטָּאֵיהֶם.** And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.
- 39 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זְכְרוּ אֶת אֵימַת הָעֲבָרָה עַל הָאֵל הַקָּדוֹשׁ, וְאֶת אֵימַת הַכְּנִיעָה לַמְּשִׁיכַת הָעָרוֹם הַהוּא. זְכְרוּ כִּי הַתְּמַסְרוֹת לְבָשָׁר הֵיא מָוֶת וְהַתְּמַסְרוֹת לְרוּחַ הֵיא חַיִּי עוֹלָם.** O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.
- 40 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִטּוּ אָזְנוֹ לְדִבְרֵי. זְכְרוּ אֶת גְּדֻלַּת קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל. אַל נָא תֹאמְרוּ כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי עֲלֵיכֶם קְשׁוֹת; כִּי אִם כֹּה תֹאמְרוּ, מִגִּדְפִים אַתֶּם אֶת הָאֱמֶת, כִּי אֶת דִּבְרֵי יוֹצֵרְכֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי. יִדְעָתִי אֲשֶׁר דִּבְרֵי אֱמֶת קִשִּׁים הֵם עַל כָּל טְמָאָה; אֲף הַצִּדִּיקִים לֹא יֵירְאוּ מֵהֶם, כִּי אֶת הָאֱמֶת אוֹהֲבִים הֵם וְלֹא יִרְעוּ.** O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.
- 41 **אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, בּוֹאוּ אֶל יְהוָה הַקָּדוֹשׁ. זְכְרוּ כִּי אֶרְחוּתִּי צָדֵק. אֲכֹן, הַדְרֹף לְאָדָם צָרָה, אֲף מִשְׁתַּרְעַת הֵיא בְּמִסְלָה יִשְׁרָה לְפָנָיו, וְשׁוֹמֵר הַשַּׁעַר הוּא קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְאִין הוּא מַעֲבִיד שָׁם מִשְׁרָת; וְאִין כָּל דְּרֹף לְבֹא שָׁמָּה, כִּי אִם בִּשְׁעָר; וְאִין לְרִמּוֹתוֹ, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים שְׁמוֹ.** O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.
- 42 **וְלְכָל הַדּוֹפֵק עַל הַשַּׁעַר הוּא יִפְתָּח; וְהַחֲכָמִים וְהַמְּלִמִּדִּים וְהַעֲשִׂירִים, אֲשֶׁר הֵם נִפְחִים בְּגִאָוָה מִפְּנֵי לְמוּדָם וְחִכְמָתָם וְעִשְׂרָם אוֹתָם הוּא יִבְּהוּ, וּבִלְתִּי אִם יִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת אֲלֵה, וְיִכִּירוּ כִּי נֹאֲלִים הֵם לְפָנָיו אֱלֹהִים, וְיִשְׁפִּילוּ לַמַּעֲמָקִי עֲנֻה, לָהֶם לֹא יִפְתָּח.** And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

- 43 But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.
- אך דְּבָרֵי הַפְּקָחִים וְהַנְּבוֹנִים יִסְתָּרוּ מֵהֶם לְעוֹלָם, אַכֵּן, הַשְׂמֻחָה הַמוֹכֶנֶה לְקִדּוּשׁ.
- 44 O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.
- אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זְכֹרוּ אֶת דְּבָרַי. הִנְנִי פוֹשֵׁט אֶת שְׂמֹלְתִי וּמְנַעֵר אוֹתָהּ לִפְנֵיכֶם; אֲנִי מִבְקֵשׁ מֵאֵל יְשׁוּעָתִי כִּי יִבִּיט עָלַי בְּעֵינָיו הַבּוֹחֶנֶת; וְתִדְעוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, כִּי הָאֱלֹהִים, הַשֹּׁפֵט כָּל הָאָדָם עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הִיָּה עֵד כִּי נִעַרְתִּי מִנִּפְשִׁי אֶת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וְכִי הִנְנִי עוֹמֵד לִפְנֵי בִּיפְעָה, נָקִי מִדְּמָכֶם.
- 45 O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.
- אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, סוּרוּ מִחַטָּאֵיכֶם; נַעֲרוּ אֶת זִמְתְּי הַחֲפֵץ לִכְבֹּל אֶתְכֶם בְּחִזָּקָה; בּוֹאוּ אֶל הָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הוּא צוּר יְשׁוּעָתְכֶם.
- 46 Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.
- הַכִּינוּ אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם לַיּוֹם הַנּוֹכָד, יוֹם הַדִּין אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִשְׁפֹּט הַצַּדִּיק בְּצִדֵּק, לְכָל תַּרְתַּעוֹ בַּפֶּחַד אִים, וְלִבְל תִּזְכְּרוּ אֶת אֲשַׁמְתְּכֶם הַנוֹרָאָה בְּשִׁלְמוּתָהּ, וְתִאָּלְצוּ לִקְרֹא: קְדוֹשׁ, קְדוֹשׁ מִשְׁפָּטָהּ, יְהוָה, אֵל שֶׁדִּי. יָדַעְתִּי אֲשַׁמְתִּי; עֲבַרְתִּי אֶת חֻקָּהּ; וּפִשְׁעִי, מִמֶּנִּי הֵם; וְהִשְׁטָן נִחְלְנִי וְאֲנִי טָרֶף לְמִצְוֹתָיו הַנוֹרָאָה.
- 47 But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?
- רְאוּ, אֲחֵי, הֲאֵם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי אֶעֱרֶכֶם לְאִמְתָּהּ הַנוֹרָאָה אֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲאֶעֱנֶה אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם אִם טְהוֹר לְבָבְכֶם? הֲהִיִּיתִי יָשָׁר עִמָּכֶם, עַל פִּי יָשָׁר הָאִמְתָּה, אֱלֹו נְקִיִּים מִחַטָּא הִיִּיתֶם?
- 48 Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.
- אֱלֹו קְדוּשִׁים אַתֶּם, הִיָּה דְּבָרִי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּדִבְרֵי קִדְשׁ; אֲךָ יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם קְדוּשִׁים, וְהִנֵּנְכֶם רוֹאִים אוֹתִי כְּרֹאֵת מוֹרֶה, הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא אֲשֶׁר אֶלְמִדְכֶם אֶת תּוֹצְאוֹת הַחַטָּא.
- 49 Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.
- נִפְשִׁי תִתְּעֵב חַטָּא וּבִצְדָקָה יִתְעַנֵּג לְבִי; אֶהְלֵל אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי קִדְשִׁי.
- 50 Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.
- בּוֹאוּ, אֲחֵי, כָּל צָמָא לִכּוּ לַמַּיִם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ כֶּסֶף, לִכּוּ שִׁבְרוּ וְאָכְלוּ; וְלִכּוּ שִׁבְרוּ בְּלוֹא כֶּסֶף וּבְלֹא מַחִיר יַיִן וְחָלָב.
- 51 Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Hearken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.
- לָמָּה תִשְׁקְלוּ כֶּסֶף בְּלוֹא לֶחֶם וְיִגִּיעְכֶם בְּלֹא לִשְׂבֻעָה. שְׁמַעוּ שְׂמוּעָה אֵלִי וְזָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; בּוֹאוּ אֶל קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאָכְלוּ לִשְׂבֻעָה בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכָּלָה וְלֹא יִשְׁחַת, וְתִתְעַנֵּג בְּדִשּׁוֹן נַפְשְׁכֶם.

- 52 Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.
- ראו, אחי האהובים, זכרו את דברי אלהיכם; התפללו תמיד אליו יומם, ובלילה הודו לשם קדשו; שמחו את לבבכם.
- 53 And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.
- ראו מה גדולים דברי בריתות יהוה ומה גדולים מעשי מחילת כבודו לבני האנוש; ומפני גדלותו, וחסדו ורחמיו, אמר לנו כי לא יכלה זרענו כלו, בדרך הבשר, כי אם הוא ינצרים; ובדורות אשר יבואו יהיו הם צמח צדקה לבית ישראל.
- 54 And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.
- ועתה, אחי, חפצי כי אוסיף דבר אליכם; אך למחרת אנידכם את יתר דברי. אמן.

י

10

- 1 And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.
- ועתה, אני יעקב, אוסיף לדבר אליכם, אחי האהובים, על אודות צמח הצדקה אשר הזכרתי.
- 2 For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.
- כי דברי ברית יהוה אשר נתנו לנו, יבואו עלינו בעודנו בבשר; והראה לי כי רבים מבנינו יאבדו, בדרך הבשר, מפני חסר אמונתם; ואולם, יכמרו רחמי אלהים על רבים; ובנינו ישובו למען הענק להם ידיעת אמת על גואלם.
- 3 Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.
- על כן, כפי אשר אמרתי לכם, הכרח כי יבוא משיח, כי כך יקרא שמו, כדבר המלאך אלי לילה, אכן, יבוא בקרב היהודים, בקרב גדולי הרשעים אשר בעולם; והם יצלבוהו, כי כך ראוי לאלהינו, ואין עוד אמה על פני הארץ אשר תצלב את אלהיה.
- 4 For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.
- כי לו נעשו הפלאים האדירים בקרב עמים אחרים, כי אז נחמו אנשיהם על מעשיהם והכירו כי הוא אלהיהם.
- 5 But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.
- אך מפני תחבולות כמרים ועוונות יקשו אלה אשר בירושלם את ערפם עליו, למען יצלב.
- 6 Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.
- לכן, מפני עוונם, יבוא עליהם הרס ורעב ודבר ודמים; ואשר לא יאבדו, יפוצו בקרב כל העמים.

- 7 But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.
- 9 Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?
- 10 But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.
- 11 And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.
- 12 And I will fortify this land against all other nations.
- 13 And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.
- 14 For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.
- 15 Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.
- 16 Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.
- 17 For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—
- 18 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בִּי, כִּי אֲנִי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲזִי אֶקִּים בְּרִיתִי עִם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְהַשְׁיבָם בְּעוֹדָם בְּבָשָׂר עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וְנִקְבְּצוּ מִרְחֹבֵי פְזוּרָתָם, מֵאֵי הַיָּם וּמֵאֲרָבֶּעַ כְּנָפּוֹת הָאָרֶץ; וְהַגּוֹיִים יִגְדְּלוּ בְּעֵינֵי, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהִים, בְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאוּם אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וְהָיוּ מְלָכֵי הַגּוֹיִים אֲמִנִּיהֶם, וְשָׂרוֹתֵיהֶם מִיִּנְיֻתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן, גְּדוֹלִים דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה לְגוֹיִים, כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר וּמִי יִתְוַכַּח?
- וְכֹה אָמַר אֱלֹהִים: הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אָרֶץ "נַחֲלָתְכֶם תִּהְיֶה וְהַגּוֹיִים יִתְבָּרְכוּ בָּאָרֶץ."
- וְתִהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אָרֶץ דְּרוֹר לְגוֹיִים; וְלֹא יִהְיוּ בָּהּ מְלָכִים, אֲשֶׁר יִקְוֶמוּ עַל הַגּוֹיִים.
- וְאֲנִי אֲבַצֵּר אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת עַל כָּל שָׂאֵר הָאֻמּוֹת.
- וְכָל הַנִּלְחָם בְּצִיּוֹן יֵאָבֵד, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהִים.
- כִּי הַמִּקִּים עָלַי מֶלֶךְ יֵאָבֵד, כִּי אֲנִכִּי, יְהוָה, מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֶהְיֶה מֶלֶכָם; וְלִשְׁוֹמְעִים בְּקוֹלִי אֶהְיֶה מְאֹרַד עַד עוֹלָם.
- הֵן בְּעִבּוֹר הַקָּס אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהַקִּים לָהֶם בְּעוֹדָם בָּשָׂר, הַשְׁחַת אֲשַׁחִית אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הָאֶפֶל וְהַרְצַח וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בַּמִּסְתָּרִים.
- עַל כֵּן הַנִּלְחָם עָלַי צִיּוֹן, יְהוּדִי וְגוֹי, עֶבֶד וְחֹפֶשֶׁת, אִישׁ וְאִשָּׁה אֲבוֹד יֵאָבֵדוּ; כִּי הֵם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר זוֹנֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינֻ לְמַעֲנִי, נִגְדִּי הוּא, נְאוֹם אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- כִּי אֶקִּים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר אַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם בְּעוֹדָם בְּבָשָׂר.
- לְכֵן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כֹּה אָמַר אֱלֹהֵינוּ: אֲנִי אַעֲנֶה אֶת יְרֵעָה בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים; אוֹלָם אֲרַכֶּה אֶת לִבֵּב הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ לָהֶם כְּאָב; וְיִהְיוּ הַגּוֹיִים מְבָרָכִים וְיִמְנוּ בְּתוֹךְ בֵּית יִשְ�רָאֵל.

- 19 וְאֶנֶכִּי אֶקְדִּישׁ אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְזֶרְעְכֶם וְלֹאֲשֶׁר יִמְנוּ בְּתוֹךְ זֶרְעֲךָ לְאָרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם, עַד עוֹלָם; כִּי אֶרֶץ נִבְחָרָת הִיא מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת, אָמַר אֵלַי אֱלֹהִים, עַל כֵּן חֲפָצִי כִּי יַעֲבֹדוּנִי כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, נָאוֹם אֱלֹהִים.
- 20 And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.
- 21 But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.
- 22 For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.
- 23 Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.
- 24 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.
- 25 Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ אֱלֹהֵינוּ הָרַחוּם יְדִיעָה כֹּה רַבָּה עַל אֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִבֵּה נִזְכְּרָהוּ וְנִסִּיר חַטָּאֵינוּ, וְאֵל נָא נוֹרִיד רָאשֵׁינוּ, כִּי אֵין אֲנַחְנוּ מִנְּדִים; אָמֵנָם גְּלִינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָנוּ; אַף הוּבְלָנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ טוֹבָה יוֹתֵר, כִּי יִהְיֶה עֲשָׂה אֶת הַיָּם לְאֶרֶץ לָנוּ, וְעַל אֶחָד מֵאֵי הַיָּם אֲנַחְנוּ יוֹשְׁבִים.
- וְגִדּוּלִים דְּבָרֵי יְהוָה עַל יוֹשְׁבֵי אֵי הַיָּם; עַל כֵּן, וְכִי עַל אֵיִם מְדַבֵּר, הִכָּרַח אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ אֵיִם נוֹסְפִים עַל זֶה, וְאֵף בָּהֶם יוֹשְׁבִים אַחֵינוּ.
- כִּי הִגִּלָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם, כְּחֲפָצוֹ וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ. וְהִנֵּה יְהוָה פּוֹקֵד אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִקְטָפוּ, עַל כֵּן פּוֹקֵד הוּא אֶף אוֹתָנוּ.
- לָכֵן, שִׂמְחוּ אֶת לְבָבְכֶם וְזָכְרוּ כִּי חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם לַפֻּעַל בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצֻמְכֶם, לִבְחֹר בְּדֶרֶךְ מוֹת נֹצְחִי אוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ חַיִּי עוֹלָם.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִטּוּ רְצוֹנְכֶם לְאֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אֱלֹהִים וְאֵל תִּטּוּ לְאֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ הַשָּׁטָן וְלִתְאֲוַת הַבָּשָׂר; וְזָכְרוּ, אַחֵר הַתְּרַצוֹתְכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי רַק בְּחַסְדּוֹ אַתֶּם נוֹשְׁעִים.
- לָכֵן, יְהִי רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַקִּימְכֶם מִן הַמָּוֶת בְּכַח הַתְּחִיָּה, אֵף לְהַקִּימְכֶם מִמּוֹת נֹצְחִי בְּכַח הַכִּפּוּרָה, לִמְעַן תִּתְקַבְּלוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים הַנִּצְחִית, בְּעִבּוֹר תְּהִלָּתוֹ בְּחַסְדֵּי קֹדֶשׁ. אָמֵן.

יָאֵב

11

- 1 And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.
- 2 And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people,
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֶכְתֹּב עוֹד מִדְּבָרֵי יִישׁוּעָהוּ; כִּי חֲפָצָה נִפְשִׁי בְּדְבָרָיו. וְאֲנִי אֲמַשִּׁיל אֶת

נְפִי ב יא:ג-יב:ג

דְּבָרָיו לְעַמִּי וְאֶשְׁלַח אֵל כָּל בְּנֵי, כִּי הוּא אָבִן
רָאָה אֶת גּוֹאֲלִי, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי אֹנְכִי.

and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

וְאָחִי יַעֲקֹב רָאָהוּ אִפִּי הוּא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי
אֲנִי; לָכֵן אֶשְׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרֵיהֶם אֵל בְּנֵי לְמַעַן
הוֹכִיחַ לָהֶם כִּי דְבָרֵי אֱמֶת הֵם. וְעַל פִּי דְבַר
שְׁלֹשָׁה, אֲמַר אֱלֹהִים, אֲכַוֵּן אֶת דְּבָרִי. וְאוֹלָם
שׁוֹלַח אֱלֹהִים עֲדִים נֹסְפִים וְאֵת אֱמֶת כָּל
דְּבָרָיו הוּא מוֹכִיחַ.

3 And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

הִנֵּה נַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת לְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּי אֶת אֱמֶת
בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ; כִּי לְתַכְלִית הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה תּוֹרַת
מֹשֶׁה; וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּ מֵאֱלֹהִים
לְאָדָם מֵעַתָּה רִאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם הִמָּה כְּדִגְמָתוֹ.

4 Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

וְהִנֵּה הִתְעַנֶּגָה נַפְשִׁי בְּבְרִיתוֹת יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר
כָּרַת עִם אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; אֲכֹן, נַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת
בְּחֶסֶד וּבְצִדְקָה, וּבְגִבּוֹרָתוֹ וּבְרַחֲמָיו, בְּתַכְנִיתוֹ
הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּצְחִית אֲשֶׁר בִּישׁוּעָה מִמָּוֶת.

5 And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

וְנַפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת לְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּי כִּי בְּלֹא בִיאַת
הַמָּשִׁיחַ סוֹף כָּל הָאָדָם אֲבָדוֹן.

6 And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

כִּי אִם אֵין מָשִׁיחַ, אֵין אֱלֹהִים; וְאִם אֵין
אֱלֹהִים, אֵין אֲנַחְנוּ קְיָמִים; כִּי לֹא יוֹכֵלָה הָיִתָּה
לְהִיּוֹת בְּרִיאָה. אֲךָ יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְהוּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ,
וְהוּא בָּא בְּמִלְאֵת עֵתוֹ.

7 For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

וְעַתָּה אֶכְתֹּב מִדְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ, לְמַעַן יְרוֹמְמוּ
אֶת לִבָּם אֵלֶּה מַעֲמֵי אֲשֶׁר יִרְאוּם וְיִשְׂמְחוּ
בְּעִבּוֹר כָּל הָאָדָם. הִנֵּה הַדְּבָרִים, וְיִכּוֹלִים
אַתֶּם לְהַמְשִׁילָם לָכֵם וּלְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

8 And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

יב

12

הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר חָזָה יִשְׁעִיהוּ בֶן אֲמוֹץ עַל
יְהוּדָה וִירוּשָׁלַם.

1 The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem.

וְהָיָה בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, נִכּוֹן יְהִיָּה הַר בֵּית
יְהוָה בְּרֹאשׁ הַהָרִים וְנִשְׂא מִגְבָּעוֹת; וְנִהְרֹו
אֵלָיו כָּל הַגּוֹיִם.

2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

וְהָלְכוּ עַמִּים רַבִּים וְאָמְרוּ: לָכוּ וְנַעֲלֶה אֶל הַר
יְהוָה אֵל בֵּית אֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב, וְיִרְנוּ מִדְּרָכָיו,
וְנִלְכֶה בְּאַחֲרֵיתוֹ; כִּי מִצִּיּוֹן תֵּצֵא תּוֹרָה וְדָבַר
יְהוָה מִירוּשָׁלַם.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

- 4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.
- וְשֹׁפֵט בֵּין הַגּוֹיִם וְהוֹכִיחַ לְעַמִּים רַבִּים;
וְכַתְּתוּ חֶרְבוֹתָם לְאֵתִים וְחֲנִיתוֹתֵיהֶם
לְמִזְמֵרוֹת, לֹא יִשָּׂא גּוֹי אֶל גּוֹי חֶרֶב וְלֹא
יִלְמְדוּ עוֹד מִלְחָמָה.
- 5 O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.
- בֵּית יַעֲקֹב לְכוּ וְנִלְכֶּה בְּאוֹר יְהוָה.
- 6 Therefore thou hast forsaken thy people the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and are soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.
- כִּי נִטְשָׁתָה עַמְּךָ בֵּית יַעֲקֹב כִּי מָלְאוּ מִקֶּדֶם,
וְעֲנָנִים כְּפִלְשְׁתִּים; וּבְיַלְדֵי נְכָרִים יִשְׁפִּיקוּ.
- 7 Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots:
- וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ כֶּסֶף וְזָהָב, וְאֵין קֶצֶה לְאַצְרֹתָיו;
וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ סוּסִים, וְאֵין קֶצֶה לְמִרְכָּבוֹתָיו.
- 8 Their land also is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made:
- וְתִמְלֵא אֶרְצוֹ אֱלִילִים; לְמַעֲשֵׂה יָדָיו יִשְׁתַּחֲווּ,
לְאֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ אֶצְבָּעֹתָיו.
- 9 And the mean man boweth down, and the great man humbleth himself: therefore forgive them not.
- וְיִשָּׁח אָדָם וְיִשְׁפֹּל אִישׁ; וְאֵל תִּשָּׂא לָהֶם.
- 10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty.
- בּוֹא בַצּוּר וְהִסְתֵּמוּ בְּעָפָר מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה;
וּמִהֲדָר גָּאֹנֹו.
- 11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- עֵינֵי גִבְהוֹת אָדָם שִׁפְּלוּ, וְשַׁח רוּם אֲנָשִׁים;
וְנִשְׁגַּב יְהוָה לְבַדּוֹ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 12 For the day of the Lord of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:
- כִּי יוֹם לַיהוָה צָבָאוֹת עַל כָּל גָּאֹה וָרוֹם;
וְעַל כָּל נִשְׂא וְשִׁפְּלוּ.
- 13 And upon all the cedars of Lebanon, that are high and lifted up, and upon all the oaks of Bashan,
- וְעַל כָּל אֲרֻזֵּי הַלְבָּנוֹן הָרָמִים וְהַנִּשְׂאִים;
וְעַל כָּל אֱלוֹנֵי הַבָּשָׁן.
- 14 And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills that are lifted up,
- וְעַל כָּל הַהָרִים הָרָמִים; וְעַל כָּל
הַגְּבָעוֹת הַנִּשְׂאוֹת.
- 15 And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall,
- וְעַל כָּל מִגְדָּל גְּבוּהָ; וְעַל כָּל חוֹמָה בְּצוּרָה.
- 16 And upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.
- וְעַל כָּל אֲנִיּוֹת תַּרְשִׁישׁ; וְעַל כָּל שְׂכִיּוֹת הַחֶמְדָּה.
- 17 And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low: and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.
- וְשַׁח גִּבְהוֹת הָאָדָם, וְשִׁפְּלוּ רוּם אֲנָשִׁים; וְנִשְׁגַּב
יְהוָה לְבַדּוֹ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 18 And the idols he shall utterly abolish.
- וְהָאֱלִילִים כָּלִיל יִחְלֹף.

- 19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- 20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which they made each one for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;
- 21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.
- 22 Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils: for wherein is he to be accounted of?
- ובָּאוּ בַּמְעֵרוֹת הָאֵרֶץ, וּבַמְחֹלוֹת הָעֵפֶר, מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה וּמִהֲדָר גָּאוֹנוֹ, בְּקוֹמוֹ לַעֲרֹץ הָאָרֶץ.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִשְׁלִיךְ הָאָדָם אֶת אֱלִילֵי כֶסֶף וְאֶת אֱלִילֵי זָהָב וְהָבּוּ אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לוֹ; לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת, לַחֲפָר פְּרוֹת וְלַעֲטִלְפִים,
- לָבוֹא בְּנִקְרוֹת הָצֻרִים וּבְסֻעֲפֵי הַסְּלָעִים, מִפְּנֵי פַחַד יְהוָה, וּמִהֲדָר גָּאוֹנוֹ, בְּקוֹמוֹ לַעֲרֹץ הָאָרֶץ.
- חֲדְלוּ לָכֶם מִן הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר נְשָׁמָה בְּאָפוֹ, כִּי בַמָּה נִחְשָׁב הוּא?

יג

13

- 1 For, behold, the Lord, the Lord of hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem and from Judah the stay and the staff, the whole stay of bread, and the whole stay of water,
- 2 The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient,
- 3 The captain of fifty, and the honourable man, and the counsellor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.
- 4 And I will give children to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.
- 5 And the people shall be oppressed, everyone by another, and every one by his neighbour: the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honourable.
- 6 When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, saying, Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let this ruin be under thy hand:
- 7 In that day shall he swear, saying, I will not be an healer; for in my house is neither bread nor clothing: make me not a ruler of the people.
- 8 For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen: because their tongue and their doings are against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.
- כִּי הִנֵּה הָאֲדֹנָן יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת, מְסִיר מִירוּשָׁלַם וּמִיְהוּדָה מִשְׁעַן וּמִשְׁעִנָּה; כָּל מִשְׁעַן לֶחֶם וְכָל מִשְׁעַן מַיִם.
- גִּבּוֹר וְאִישׁ מִלְחָמָה; שׁוֹפֵט וְנָבִיא, וְקָסֵם וְזָקֵן.
- שָׂר חֲמִשִּׁים וְנִשְׂוֹא פָנִים; יוֹעֵץ וְחָכֵם חֲרָשִׁים, וְנָבוֹן לַחֵשׁ.
- וְנָתַתִּי נְעָרִים שָׂרֵיהֶם; וְתַעֲלֹלִים יִמְשְׁלוּ בָם.
- וְנִגַּשׁ הָעָם, אִישׁ בְּאִישׁ וְאִישׁ בְּרֵעֵהוּ; יִרְהָבוּ הַנְּעָר בְּזָקֵן וְהַנְּקֵלָה בְּנִכְבָּד.
- כִּי יִתְפָּשׂ אִישׁ בְּאָחִיו; בֵּית אָבִיו שְׂמָלָה לָכֶה, קָצִין תִּהְיֶה לָנוּ; וְהַמְקַשְׁלָה הַזֹּאת תַּחַת יָדָךְ.
- יִשָּׂא בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵאמֹר: לֹא אֶהְיֶה חַבֵּשׁ, וּבִבִּיתִי אֵין לֶחֶם וְאֵין שְׂמָלָה; לֹא תִשְׁיַמְנִי קָצִין עִם.
- כִּי פִשְׁלָה יְרוּשָׁלַם וַיהוּדָה נָפְלָה: כִּי לְשׁוֹנָם וּמַעֲלֵיהֶם אֶל יְהוָה לְמַרּוֹת עֵינֵי כְבוֹדוֹ.

- 9 The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! For they have rewarded evil unto themselves.
- הַכָּרַת פְּנֵיהֶם עֲנָתָהּ בָּם וַחֲטֹאתָם כְּסֹדֹם, הִגִּידוּ לֹא כְחָדוּ; הוּא לְנַפְשָׁם כִּי גָמְלוּ לָהֶם רָעָה.
- 10 Say ye to the righteous, that it shall be well with him: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.
- אָמְרוּ צְדִיק כִּי טוֹב; כִּי פְרִי מַעֲלָלֵיהֶם יֵאָכְלוּ.
- 11 Woe unto the wicked! It shall be ill with him: for the reward of his hands shall be given him.
- הוּא לְרָשָׁע רָע; כִּי גְמוֹל יָדָיו יַעֲשֶׂה לוֹ.
- 12 As for my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they which lead thee cause thee to err, and destroy the way of thy paths.
- עַמִּי נַגְשָׁיו מְעוֹלִל וְנָשִׁים מְשָׁלוּ בוֹ; עַמִּי מְאַשְׁרִיךְ מִתַּעֲרִים וְדָרָךְ אֶרְחֻתֶיךָ בִּלְעָזָה.
- 13 The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.
- נִצָּב לְרִיב יְהוָה, וְעֹמֵד לְדִין עַמִּים.
- 14 The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people, and the princes thereof: for ye have eaten up the vineyard; the spoil of the poor is in your houses.
- יְהוָה בְּמִשְׁפָּט יָבֹא עִם זְקֵנֵי עַמּוֹ וּשְׂרָרָיו; וְאַתֶּם בְּעֶרְתֶּם הַכֶּרֶם, גִּזְלַת הָעֲנִי בְּבֵיתְכֶם.
- 15 What mean ye that ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor? saith the Lord God of hosts.
- מָה לָּכֶם תִּדְכְּאוּ עַמִּי וּפְגִי עֲנִיִּים תִּטְחֲנוּ, נָאִם אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת?
- 16 Moreover the Lord saith, Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet:
- וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה: יַעַן כִּי גָבְהוּ בָנוֹת צִיּוֹן, וַתֵּלֶכְנָה נְטוּיֹת גְּרוֹן וּמִשְׁקְרוֹת עֵינַיִם; הֵלוֹךְ וְטֹפֵף תֵּלֶכְנָה וּבִרְגְלֵיהֶם תַּעֲכֹסְנָה.
- 17 Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.
- וַיִּשָּׁפַח אֲדֹנֵי קִדְקֹד בָּנוֹת צִיּוֹן; וַיְהוֶה פְתָהֵן יַעֲרָה.
- 18 In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments about their feet, and their cauls, and their round tires like the moon,
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִסֹּר אֲדֹנֵי אֶת תַּפְאֶרֶת הָעֲכָסִים וְהַשְׁבִּיסִים וְהַשְׁהֲרָנִים.
- 19 The chains, and the bracelets, and the mufflers,
- הַנְּטָפוֹת וְהַשִּׁירֹת וְהָרַעְלוֹת.
- 20 The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings,
- הַפָּאָרִים וְהַעֲצָדוֹת וְהַקְשָׁרִים, וּבִתֵּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ וְהַלְחָשִׁים.
- 21 The rings, and nose jewels,
- הַטְּבָעוֹת וְנִזְמֵי הָאָז.
- 22 The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping pins,
- הַמַּחְלָצוֹת וְהַמַּעֲטָפוֹת וְהַמְטָפְחוֹת וְהַחֲרִיטִים.
- 23 The glasses, and the fine linen, and the hoods, and the veils.
- וְהַגְּלִינִים וְהַסְּדִינִים וְהַעֲנִיפוֹת וְהַרְדִּידִים.

- 24 And it shall come to pass, that instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle a rent; and instead of well-set hair baldness; and instead of a stomacher a girding of sackcloth; and burning instead of beauty.
- וְהָיָה תַחַת בִּשְׁם מִן יְהוָה, וְתַחַת חֲגוּרָה נִקְפָּה, וְתַחַת מַעֲשֵׂה מִקְשָׁה קִרְחָה, וְתַחַת פְּתִיגִיל מִחֲגֹרֶת שָׁק כִּי תַחַת יָפִי.
- 25 Thy men shall fall by the sword, and thy mighty in the war.
- מִתֵּיךְ בַּחֶרֶב יִפְּלוּ; וּגְבוּרֹתֶיךָ בַּמִּלְחָמָה.
- 26 And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she being desolate shall sit upon the ground.
- וְאָנוּ וְאִבְּלוּ פִתְחֶיהָ; וְנִקְתָּה לְאַרְצָךְ תִּשָּׁב.

14

יד

- 1 And in that day seven women shall take hold of one man, saying, We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel: only let us be called by thy name, to take away our reproach.
- וְהִחֲזִיקוּ שִׁבְעַת נָשִׁים בְּאִישׁ אֶחָד, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵאמֹר: לֶחֱמֵנוּ נֹאכַל וְשִׁמְלֹתֵנוּ נִלְבָּשׁ; רַק יִקְרָא שְׁמֶךָ עָלֵינוּ; אֲסֹף חֲרָפָתֵנוּ.
- 2 In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious, and the fruit of the earth shall be excellent and comely for them that are escaped of Israel.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִהְיֶה צֶמַח יְהוָה יְהוּדָה לְיָפִי וּלְקַבֹּד; וּפְרֵי הָאָרֶץ לְגִאוֹן וּלְתַפְאֶרֶת לְפָלִיטַת יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 3 And it shall come to pass, that he that is left in Zion, and he that remaineth in Jerusalem, shall be called holy, even every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem:
- וְהָיָה הַנִּשְׁאָר בְּצִיּוֹן, וְהַנּוֹתָר בִּירוּשָׁלַם קְדוֹשׁ יֵאָמֶר לוֹ: כָּל הַכְּתוּב לַחַיִּים בִּירוּשָׁלַם.
- 4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.
- אִם רָחַץ אֲדֹנִי אֶת צֹאת בְּנוֹת צִיּוֹן; וְאֶת דְּמֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם יְדִיחַ מִקֶּרְבָּהּ, בְּרוּחַ מִשְׁפָּט וּבְרוּחַ בָּעֵר.
- 5 And the Lord will create upon every dwelling place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night: for upon all the glory shall be a defence.
- וּבְרָא יְהוָה עַל כָּל מְכוֹן הַר צִיּוֹן וְעַל מִקְרָאָהּ, עָנָן וַיּוֹמֶם וְעָשָׁן וְנֹגֶה אֵשׁ לְהִבָּה לַיְלָה; כִּי עַל כָּל כְּבוֹד חָפָה.
- 6 And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and for a covert from storm and from rain.
- וְסִכָּה תִהְיֶה לְצֶל יוֹמָם מִחֶרֶב; וּלְמִחְסָה וּלְמִסְתוֹר, מִזֶּרֶם וּמִמָּטָר.

15

טו

- 1 Now will I sing to my well beloved a song of my beloved touching his vineyard. My well beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill:
- אֲשִׁירָה נָא לְיָדִידִי, שִׁירַת דּוּדִי לְכַרְמּוֹ: כָּרֶם הִיא לְיָדִידִי בְּקֶרֶן בֶּן שָׁמֶן.
- 2 And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a winepress therein: and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.
- וַיִּעְזָּקוּהוּ וַיִּסְקָלֵהוּ, וַיִּשְׁעֵהוּ שָׂרֵק, וַיִּבֶן מִגְדָּל בְּתוֹכּוֹ וְגַם יָקַב חֲצֵב בוֹ; וַיִּקֹּוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲנָבִים וַיַּעַשׂ בְּאֲשִׁים.

- 3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.
- 4 What could have been done more to my vineyard, that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes, brought it forth wild grapes?
- 5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard: I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down:
- 6 And I will lay it waste: it shall not be pruned, nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns: I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.
- 7 For the vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant: and he looked for judgment, but behold oppression; for righteousness, but behold a cry.
- 8 Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!
- 9 In mine ears said the Lord of hosts, Of a truth many houses shall be desolate, even great and fair, without inhabitant.
- 10 Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of an homer shall yield an ephah.
- 11 Woe unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink; that continue until night, till wine inflame them!
- 12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.
- 13 Therefore my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge: and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.
- 14 Therefore hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.
- 15 And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled:
- וְעַתָּה, יוֹשְׁבֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאִישׁ יְהוּדָה שְׁפֹטוּ נָא, בֵּינִי וּבֵין כַּרְמִי.
- מָה לַעֲשׂוֹת עוֹד לְכַרְמִי וְלֹא עָשִׂיתִי בּוֹ? מַדּוּעַ קִוִּיתִי לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲנָבִים וַיַּעַשׂ בְּאֲשִׁים?
- וְעַתָּה אֹדִיעָה נָא אֶתְכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה לְכַרְמִי: הִסֵּר מְשׁוּכָתוֹ וְהָיָה לְבָעַר, פָּרַץ גְּדָרוֹ וְהָיָה לְמֶרְמֶס.
- וְאֶשְׁתִּיהוּ בָתָּה; לֹא יִזְמַר וְלֹא יַעֲדָר, וְעַלָּה שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית; וְעַל הָעֵבִים אֲצַוָּה מִהַמְטִיר עָלָיו מָטָר.
- כִּי כָרֶם יְהוָה צִבְאוֹת בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאִישׁ יְהוּדָה נָטַע שְׁעִשׂוּעִי; וַיִּקְוֶה לְמִשְׁפָּט וְהִנֵּה מִשְׁפָּח, לְצַדִּיקָה וְהִנֵּה צָעָקָה.
- הוּא, מִגִּיעֵי בֵּית בְּבֵית, שָׂדֶה בְּשָׂדֶה יִקְרִיבוּ עַד אֶפֶס מְקוֹם; וְהוֹשַׁבְתֶּם לְבִדְדָכֶם בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ.
- בְּאָזְנִי יְהוָה צִבְאוֹת, אִם לֹא בְתִים רַבִּים, לְשִׁמָּה יִהְיוּ גְדֻלִּים וְטוֹבִים מֵאֵין יוֹשֵׁב.
- כִּי עֲשָׂרַת צִמְדֵי כָרֶם יַעֲשׂוּ בֵּת אֶחָת; וְזֶרַע חֹמֶר יַעֲשֶׂה אֵיפָה.
- הוּא, מְשַׁכְּמִי בִבְקָר, שֹׁכֵר יִרְדְּפוּ; מֵאֲחֲרֵי בִנְשָׁף יוֹ יִדְּלִיקֶם.
- וְהָיָה כְנֹר וְנֶבֶל, תֶּף וְחָלִיל וְיִין מִשְׁתֵּיהֶם; וְאֵת פֶּעַל יְהוָה לֹא יִבִּיטוּ, וּמַעֲשֵׂה יָדָיו לֹא רָאוּ.
- לָכֵן גָּלָה עַמִּי מִבְּלִי דַעַת; וּכְבוֹדוֹ מִתִּי רָעַב, וְהִמּוֹנוֹ צָחָה צָמָא.
- לָכֵן הִרְחִיבָהּ שְׂאוֹל נִפְשָׁה וּפָעָרָה פִּיהָ לְבָלִי חֶק; וַיִּרֶד הַדְּרָה, וְהִמּוֹנָה וּשְׂאוֹנָה וְעִלְזָ בָּהּ.
- וַיִּשַׁח אָדָם וַיִּשְׁפֹּל אִישׁ, וַעֲיָנִי גְבוּהִים תִּשְׁפֹּלְנָה.

- 16 But the Lord of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.
וַיִּגְבֹּהַּ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת בַּמִּשְׁפָּט, וְהָאֵל הַקֹּדֶשׁ נִקְדָּשׁ בַּצְדִּיקָה.
- 17 Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.
וְרָעוּ כְבָשִׁים כְּדִבְרָם, וְחֲרֻבוֹת מַחִים גָּרִים יֹאכְלוּ.
- 18 Woe unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope:
הוֹי, מִלְשֵׁכֵי הָעוֹן בַּחֲבִלֵי הַשָּׁוְא, וְכַעֲבוֹת הָעֲגֻלָּה חֲטָאָה.
- 19 That say, Let him make speed, and hasten his work, that we may see it: and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it!
הָאֹמְרִים יַמְהֵר יַחֲיִישָׁה מַעֲשָׂהוּ לְמַעַן נִרְאָה; וְתִקְרַב וְתִבְּרָאָה עֲצַת קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיִגְדָּעָה.
- 20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!
הוֹי הָאֹמְרִים לָרַע טוֹב וְלְטוֹב רָע: שְׂמִים חֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר וְאוֹר לְחֹשֶׁךְ, שְׂמִים מֶר לְמֵתוּק וּמֵתוּק לְרָע.
- 21 Woe unto them that are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight!
הוֹי, חֲכָמִים בְּעֵינֵיהֶם; וְנָגְדֵי פְנֵיהֶם נְבִנִים.
- 22 Woe unto them that are mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink:
הוֹי, גִּבּוֹרִים לְשִׁתּוֹת יַיִן; וְאֲנָשֵׁי חֵיל לְמִסֵּךְ שִׁכָּר.
- 23 Which justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!
מַצְדִּיקֵי רָשָׁע עֵקֶב שְׂחָד; וְצֹדֶקֶת צְדִיקִים יִסִּירוּ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 24 Therefore as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, so their root shall be as rottenness, and their blossom shall go up as dust: because they have cast away the law of the Lord of hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.
לְכֹן כַּאֲכַל קֶשׁ לְשׁוֹן אֵשׁ וַחֲשַׁשׁ לְהִבָּה יִרְפָּה, שְׂרָשָׁם כַּמֶּקֶד יִהְיֶה וּפְרֻחָם כַּאֲבָק יַעֲלֶה; כִּי מָאֲסוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת וְאֶת אִמְרַת קֹדֶשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל נֶאֱצָו.
- 25 Therefore is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them: and the hills did tremble, and their carcases were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
עַל כֵּן חָרָה אַף יְהוָה בְּעַמּוֹ וַיִּטּ יָדוֹ עֲלֵיו וַיַּכֵּהוּ, וַיִּרְגְּזוּ הַהָרִים, וַתִּהְיֶה נִבְלָתָם כְּסוּפָה בְּקֶרֶב חוּצוֹת; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נִטְוִיהָ.
- 26 And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth: and, behold, they shall come with speed swiftly:
וַיָּשָׂא נֵס לְגוֹיִם מֵרְחוֹק, וַיִּשְׁרַק לוֹ מִקְצֵה הָאָרֶץ; וְהִנֵּה מִהֵרָה קָל יָבוֹא.
- 27 None shall be weary nor stumble among them; none shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken:
אִין עֵיף וְאִין כּוֹשֵׁל בּוֹ, לֹא יָגוּם וְלֹא יִישָׁן; וְלֹא נִפְתָּח אֲזוּר חֲלָצִיו, וְלֹא נִתַּק שְׂרוּף נַעֲלָיו.
- 28 Whose arrows are sharp, and all their bows bent, their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind:
אֲשֶׁר חֲצִיו שְׁנֹנִים וְכָל קִשְׁתֵּיהֶם דִּרְכוֹת; פָּרָסוֹת סוֹסֵיוֹ כֶּצֶר נִחְשָׁבוּ, וְגִלְגָּלֵיו כְּסוּפָה.

- 29 Their roaring shall be like a lion, they shall roar like young lions: yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry it away safe, and none shall deliver it.
- וַיִּנָּהֶם עָלָיו בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא כְּנִהֲמַת יָם; וַיִּנָּבֹט לְאַרְצָן, וַהֲנֵה חֹשֶׁךְ צָר וְאוֹר חֹשֶׁךְ בְּעֵרִיפָהּ.
- 30 And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea: and if one look unto the land, behold darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

16

טז

- 1 In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.
- בְּשָׁנַת מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ עֲזַיָּהוּ, וָאֶרְאָה אֶת אֲדֹנָי יֹשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּא רָם וְנִשָּׂא, וְשׁוּלָיו מְלֵאִים אֶת הַהֵיכָל.
- 2 Above it stood the seraphim: each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.
- שָׂרָפִים עֹמְדִים מִמַּעַל לוֹ, שֵׁשׁ כְּנָפִים שֵׁשׁ כְּנָפִים לְאַחַד; בְּשָׁתִּים יִכְסֶה פָּנָיו, וּבְשָׁתִּים יִכְסֶה רַגְלָיו, וּבְשָׁתִּים יַעֲוֹפֶה.
- 3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.
- וָקָרָא זֶה אֶל זֶה וַאֲמַר: קְדוֹשׁ קְדוֹשׁ קְדוֹשׁ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, מְלֵא כָל הָאָרֶץ כְּבוֹדוֹ.
- 4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.
- וַיָּנֻעוּ אֲמוֹת הַסָּפִים מִקּוֹל הַקּוֹרֵא; וַהֲבִיתָ יִמְלֵא עָשָׁן.
- 5 Then said I, Woe is me! For I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of hosts.
- וַאֲמַר: אוֹי לִי כִּי נִדְמִיתִי, כִּי אִישׁ טָמֵא שֹׁפְתִים אֲנִי וּבְתוֹךְ עַם טָמֵא שֹׁפְתִים אֲנִי יוֹשֵׁב; כִּי אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת רָאוּ עֵינַי.
- 6 Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar:
- וַיַּעֲף אֶלַי אֶחָד מִן הַשָּׂרָפִים וּבִידוֹ רֹצֶפֶה; בְּמַלְקָחִים לָקַח מֵעַל הַמִּזְבֵּחַ.
- 7 And he laid it upon my mouth, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.
- וַיִּגַּע עַל פִּי וַיֹּאמֶר: הִנֵּה נִגַּע זֶה עַל שִׁפְתֶּיךָ; וְחַטְאֲתְךָ תִּכָּפֵר.
- 8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me.
- וָאֲשָׁמַע אֶת קוֹל אֲדֹנָי אֹמֵר: אֶת מִי אֶשְׁלַח וּמִי יֵלֶךְ לָנוּ? וַאֲמַר: הִנְנִי שְׁלָחְנִי.
- 9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear ye indeed, but understand not; and see ye indeed, but perceive not.
- וַיֹּאמֶר: לֵךְ וְאָמַרְתָּ לָעָם הַזֶּה; שְׁמָעוּ שְׁמוֹעַ וְאַל תִּבְיִנוּ, וּרְאוּ רְאוּ וְאַל תִּדְעוּ.
- 10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.
- הַשְׁמֵן לֵב הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְאָזְנוֹי הַכִּבְדִּי; וְעִנִּי הָשַׁע פֶּן יִרְאֶה בְּעֵינָיו וּבְאָזְנוֹי יִשְׁמָע; וּלְבָבוֹ יִבִּין וְשָׁב וְרֻפָּא לוֹ.

- 11 ואמר: עד מתי, אֲדֹנִי? ויאמר: עד אשר אם
שָׂאוּ עָרִים מֵאִין יוֹשֵׁב, וּבָתִּים מֵאִין אָדָם,
וְהָאֲדָמָה תִּשָּׁאָה שְׁמָמָה.
- 12 ורחק יהוה את האדם, ורבה העזובה בקרב
הארץ.
- 13 ועוד בה עשריה, ושבה והיתה לבער; כאלה
וכאלון אשר בשלכת מצבת בם, זרע קדש
מצבתה.

17

יז

- 1 And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of
Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son
of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it,
but could not prevail against it.
- 2 And it was told the house of David, saying, Syria is confederate with
Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the
trees of the wood are moved with the wind.
- 3 Then said the Lord unto Isaiah, Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou, and
Shear-Jashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the
highway of the fuller's field;
- 4 And say unto him, Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be
fainthearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce
anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.
- 5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil
counsel against thee, saying,
- 6 Let us go up against Judah, and vex it, and let us make a breach therein
for us, and set a king in the midst of it, even the son of Tabeal:
- 7 Thus saith the Lord God, It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.
- 8 For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus is Rezin;
and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken, that it
be not a people.
- 9 And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is
Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe, surely ye shall not be established.
- 10 Moreover the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying,

ויוסף יהוה דבר אל אחז לאמר:

- 11 שֶׁאֵל לְךָ אוֹת מֵעַם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; הֲעֵמֶק שֶׁאֵלָה אוֹ הַגְּבִהָ לְמַעְלָה.
- 12 וַיֹּאמֶר אַחֲזָ: לֹא אֶשְׁאֵל וְלֹא אֶנְסֶה אֶת יְהוָה.
- 13 וַיֹּאמֶר: שְׁמָעוּ נָא, בֵּית דָּוִד; הֲמַעֲט מִכֶּם הַלְאוֹת אֲנָשִׁים כִּי תִלְאוּ גַם אֶת אֱלֹהֶיךָ?
- 14 לָכֵן יִתֵּן אֲדֹנִי הוּא לָכֶם אוֹת; הִנֵּה הָעַלְמָה הָרָה וְיִלְדֶת בֶּן; וְקָרָאת שְׁמוֹ עִמָּנוּ אֵל.
- 15 חֲמָאָה וּדְבֹשׁ יֹאכֵל לְדַעְתּוֹ מָאוֹס בָּרָע, וּבָחֹר בְּטוֹב.
- 16 כִּי בְּטָרֶם יָדַע הַנֶּעַר מָאוֹס בָּרָע וּבָחֹר בְּטוֹב, תִּעָזֹב הָאָדָמָה אֲשֶׁר אֹתָהּ קִץ, מִפְּנֵי שְׁנֵי מַלְכֶיהָ.
- 17 יָבִיא יְהוָה עָלֶיךָ וְעַל עַמּוֹךְ וְעַל בֵּית אָבִיךָ יָמִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא בָאוּ, לְמִיּוֹם סוּר אֶפְרַיִם מֵעַל יְהוּדָה, אֶת מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר.
- 18 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִשְׂרָק יְהוָה לְזָבוּב אֲשֶׁר בַּקְצָה יֹאנְרִי מִצְרַיִם, וְלִדְבוּרָה אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְץ אַשּׁוּר.
- 19 וּבָאוּ וְנָחוּ כָּלֶם בְּנִחְלֵי הַבְּתוֹת וּבְנִקְיֵי הַסְּלָעִים, וּבְכָל הַנִּעְצוּצִים, וּבְכָל הַנִּהְלָלִים.
- 20 בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִגְלַח אֲדֹנִי בַתֶּעַר הַשְׂכִּירָה בְּעִבְרֵי נָהָר בְּמֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר אֶת הָרֹאשׁ וְשֵׁעַר הָרַגְלִים, וְגַם אֶת הַזָּקֵן תִּסְפֶּה.
- 21 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִחְיֶה אִישׁ עֹגֶלֶת בָּקָר וּשְׁתֵּי צֹאן.
- 22 וְהָיָה מְרֵב עֲשׂוֹת חֶלֶב יֹאכֵל חֲמָאָה; כִּי חֲמָאָה וּדְבֹשׁ יֹאכֵל, כָּל הַנּוֹתֵר בְּקֶרֶב הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יְהִיָּה כָּל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יְהִיָּה שֵׁם אֵלָּה גִפְּוּ בְּאֵלָּה כֶּסֶף, לְשִׁמִּיר וּלְשִׁית יְהִיָּה.
- 24 בַּחֲצִים וּבִקְשֹׁת יָבֹא שָׁמָּה, כִּי שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית תִּהְיֶה כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depth, or in the height above.
- But Ahaz said, I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.
- And he said, Hear ye now, O house of David; Is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?
- Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.
- Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil, and choose the good.
- For before the child shall know to refuse the evil, and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.
- The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come, from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah; even the king of Assyria.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of the rivers of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.
- And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.
- In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, namely, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet: and it shall also consume the beard.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that a man shall nourish a young cow, and two sheep;
- And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk that they shall give he shall eat butter: for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.
- And it shall come to pass in that day, that every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, it shall even be for briers and thorns.
- With arrows and with bows shall men come thither; because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

- 25 וְכָל הַהָרִים אֲשֶׁר בִּמְעַדָּר יַעֲדִירוּ לֹא תָבוֹא שְׁמָהּ, יִרְאֵת שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית; וְהִיא לְמִשְׁלַח שׁוֹר וּלְמִרְמַס שָׂה.
- And on all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns: but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and for the treading of lesser cattle.

יח

18

- 1 וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֵלַי: קַח לְךָ גָּלִיוֹן גָּדוֹל וְכָתַב עָלָיו בְּחֶרֶט אֲנֹשׁ, לְמַהֵר שְׁלַל חֵשׁ בָּז.
- Moreover the Lord said unto me, Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen concerning Maher-Shalal-Hash-Baz.
- 2 וָאֶעֱיִדָה לִּי עֲדִים נְאֻמִּים, אֶת אוּרִיָּה הַכֹּהֵן, וְאֶת זִכְרְיָהוּ בֶן יֵבֶרֶכְיָהוּ.
- And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.
- 3 וָאֶקְרַב אֶל הַנְּבִיאָה, וַתַּהַר, וַתֵּלֶד בֶּן; וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֵלַי: קְרָא שְׁמוֹ מַהֵר-שְׁלַל חֵשׁ בָּז.
- And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived, and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me, Call his name Maher-Shalal-Hash-Baz.
- 4 כִּי בְטָרָם יָדַע הַנַּעַר קְרָא אָבִי וְאִמִּי, יִשָּׂא אֶת חֵיל דְּמִשְׁק וְאֶת שְׁלַל שְׁמֵרוֹן לִפְנֵי מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר.
- For before the child shall have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.
- 5 וַיֹּסֶף יְהוָה דְּבַר אֵלַי עוֹד לֵאמֹר:
- The Lord spake also unto me again, saying,
- 6 יַעַן כִּי מֵאִס הָעָם הַזֶּה אֵת מִי הַשְׁלַח הַהֲלָכִים לְאֵט, וּמִשׁוֹשׁ אֶת רִצְיוֹ וּבֶן רִמְלִיָּהוּ;
- Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;
- 7 וְלָכֵן הִנֵּה אֲדֹנִי מַעֲלָה עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִי הַנָּהָר הַעֲצוּמִים וְהַרְבִּים, אֶת מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר, וְאֶת כָּל כְּבוֹדוֹ; וְעָלָה עַל כָּל אַפְיָקוֹ וְהָלַךְ עַל כָּל גְּדוֹתָיו.
- Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria, and all his glory: and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks:
- 8 וְהָלַךְ בִּיהוּדָה שָׁטָף וַעֲבַר, עַד צִנְעָר יִגָּע; וְהָיָה מִשׁוֹת כְּנָפָיו מִלֵּא רָחֵב אֲרָצָה עֲמָנוּ אֵל.
- And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.
- 9 רַעּוּ עִמָּם וְחַתּוּ, וְהִאָּזִינוּ כָּל מְרַחְקֵי אֶרֶץ; הִתְאָזְרוּ וְחַתּוּ, הִתְאָזְרוּ וְחַתּוּ.
- Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear, all ye of far countries: gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.
- 10 עֲצוּ עִצָּה וְתִפֹּר; דְּבַרוּ דְּבַר וְלֹא יָקוּם כִּי עֲמָנוּ אֵל.
- Take counsel together, and it shall come to nought; speak the word, and it shall not stand: for God is with us.
- 11 כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֵלַי: כְּחֻזַּקת הַיָּד; וַיִּסְרֵנִי מִלִּכְתּוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר:
- For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying,
- 12 לֹא תֹאמְרוּן קֶשֶׁר לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר הָעָם הַזֶּה קֶשֶׁר; וְאֶת מוֹרְאוֹ לֹא תִירָאוּ וְלֹא תַעֲרִיצוּ.
- Say ye not, A confederacy, to all them to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

- 13 Sanctify the Lord of hosts himself; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.
אֶת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת אֹתוֹ תִּקְדִּישׁוּ, וְהוּא מוֹרְאֲכֶם וְהוּא מִעֲרָצְכֶם.
- 14 And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.
וְהָיָה לְמִקְדָּשׁ וּלְאַבֵּן נִגָּף, וּלְצוּר מִכְשׁוֹל לְשֹׁנֵי בְּתֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל, לִפְח וּלְמוֹקֵשׁ לְיוֹשְׁבֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 15 And many among them shall stumble, and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.
וְכָשְׁלוּ בָם רַבִּים; וְנָפְלוּ וְנִשְׁבְּרוּ, וְנִקְשְׁוּ וְנִלְכְּדוּ.
- 16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.
צוּר תְּעוּדָה, חֲתוּם תּוֹרָה בְּלִמְדֵי.
- 17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.
וְחִכִּיתִי לַיהוָה הַמְסַתִּיר פָּנָיו מִבֵּית יַעֲקֹב; וְקִוִּיתִי לוֹ.
- 18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of hosts, which dwelleth in mount Zion.
הִנֵּה אֲנִי וְהַיְלָדִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי יְהוָה לְאֹתוֹת וּלְמוֹפְתִים בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל מֵעַם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, הַשֹּׁכֵן בְּהַר צִיּוֹן.
- 19 And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep, and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? For the living to the dead?
וְכִי יֹאמְרוּ אֲלֵיכֶם: דִּרְשׁוּ אֶל הָאֲבוֹת וְאֶל הַיִּדְעָנִים, הַמְצַפְצָפִים וְהַמְהַגִּים: הֲלֹא עִם אֵל אֱלֹהֵיו יִדְרֹשׁ בְּעַד הַחַיִּים אֶל הַמֵּתִים?
- 20 To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.
לְתוֹרָה וּלְתְּעוּדָה; אִם לֹא יֹאמְרוּ כַּדָּבָר הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ שָׁחַר.
- 21 And they shall pass through it, hardly bestead and hungry: and it shall come to pass, that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.
וְעָבְרוּ בָּהּ נִקְשָׁה וָרָעֵב; וְהָיָה כִּי יָרֵעַב וְהִתְקַצֵּף, וְקָלַל בְּמִלְכּוֹ וּבֵאלֹהָיו וּפָנָה לְמַעְלָה.
- 22 And they shall look unto the earth; and behold trouble and darkness, dimness of anguish; and they shall be driven to darkness.
וְאֵל אֶרֶץ יִבִּיט; וְהִנֵּה צָרָה וַחֲשָׁכָה מְעוֹף צוּקָה, וְאַפְלָה מִגֵּדָח.

יט

19

- 1 Nevertheless the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at the first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward did more grievously afflict her by the way of the sea, beyond Jordan, in Galilee of the nations.
כִּי לֹא מוֹעָף לְאֲשֶׁר מוֹצַק לָהּ; כְּעַת הָרָאשׁוֹן הִקַּל אֶרְצָה זְבֻלֹן וְאֶרְצָה נַפְתָּלִי, וְהֶאֱחָרוֹן הִכְבִּיד דֶּרֶךְ הַיָּם עָבַר הַיַּרְדֵּן גָּלִיל הַגּוֹיִם.
- 2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light: they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.
הָעָם הַהֹלְכִים בַּחֹשֶׁךְ רָאוּ אֹר גָּדוֹל; יֹשְׁבֵי בְּאֶרֶץ צִלְמוֹת, אֹר נָגַה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 3 Thou hast multiplied the nation, and not increased the joy: they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.
הִרְבִּיתָ הַגּוֹי, לוֹ הִגְדַּלְתָּ הַשְׂמֵחָה; שָׂמְחוּ לִפְנֶיךָ כְּשִׂמְחַת בִּקְצִיר כַּאֲשֶׁר יִגְּלוּ בַּחֲלֻקָם שָׁלָל.

- 4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor, as in the day of Midian.
- כי את על סבלו ואת מטה שִׁכְמוֹ שָׁבַט;
הִנֵּגְשׁ בּוֹ הַחֲתָתָה כְּיוֹם מִדְיָן.
- 5 For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.
- כִּי כָּל סָאוֹן סָאוֹן בְּרֹעַשׁ, וְשִׁמְלָה מְגוֹלָלָה
בְּדָמִים; וְהָיְתָה לְשָׂרְפָה מֵאֲכֹלֶת אֵשׁ.
- 6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the mighty God, the everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.
- כִּי יֵלֵד יֵלֵד לָנוּ; בֶּן נָתַן לָנוּ וְהָיָה הַמִּשְׁרָה עַל
שִׁכְמוֹ; וְיִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ פֶּלֶא יוֹעֵץ, אֵל גִּבּוֹר, אָבִי
עַד, שֶׁר שְׁלוֹם.
- 7 Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even forever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.
- לְמִרְבֵּה הַמִּשְׁרָה וּלְשְׁלוֹם אֵין קֵץ; עַל
כִּסֵּא דָוִד וְעַל מַמְלַכְתּוֹ לְהָכִין אֹתָהּ וּלְסַעְדָּהּ
בְּמִשְׁפָּט וּבִצְדָקָה, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. קִנְיַת
יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת תַּעֲשֶׂה זֹאת.
- 8 The Lord sent a word into Jacob, and it hath lighted upon Israel.
- דְּבַר שְׁלַח אֲדֹנָי בְּיַעֲקֹב וְנִפְל בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 9 And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitant of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart,
- וְיָדְעוּ הָעָם כֻּלּוֹ, אֶפְרַיִם וְיוֹשֵׁב שְׁמֶרֶון, בְּגָאוֹה
וּבְגִדְל לֵבָב לֵאמֹר:
- 10 The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones: the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.
- לְבָנִים נָפְלוּ וְגִזִּית נִבְנָה; שִׁקְמִים גִּדְּעוּ וְאַרְזִים
נִחְלִיף.
- 11 Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;
- יְהוָה אֶת צָרֵי רִצִּין עֲלֵיו, וְאֶת אֹיְבָיו יִסְכְּסֵם.
- 12 The Syrians before, and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- אַרְם מִקֵּדָם וּפְלִשְׁתִּים מֵאַחֲרֵי; וַיֹּאכְלוּ אֶת
יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּכָל פִּה. בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד
יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.
- 13 For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of hosts.
- וְהָעָם לֹא שָׁב עַד הַמִּכֶּה; וְאֶת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת
לֹא דָרְשׁוּ.
- 14 Therefore the Lord will cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush, in one day.
- וַיִּכְרֹת יְהוָה מִיִּשְׂרָאֵל, רֹאשׁ וְזָנָב כֶּפֶף וְאַגְמוֹן
יוֹם אֶחָד.
- 15 The ancient and honourable, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.
- זָקֵן וְנִשְׂוָא פָּנִים הוּא הָרֹאשׁ; וְנָבִיא מוֹרֶה
שִׁקְרָה הוּא הַזָּנָב.
- 16 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.
- וַיְהִיו מְאַשְׁרֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה מִתְּעִים,
וּמְאַשְׁרֵיו מִבְּלָעִים.
- 17 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows: for everyone is an hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- עַל כֵּן עַל בָּחוּרָיו לֹא יִשְׂמַח אֲדֹנָי, וְאֶת יְתָמָיו
וְאֶת אֶלְמָנוֹתָיו לֹא יִרְחַם כִּי כֻלּוֹ חֲנֹף וּמִרְעָה,
וְכָל פֶּה דֹבֵר נִבְלָה; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ,
וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נְטוּיָה.

- 18 כי בַּעֲרָה כָּאֵשׁ רִשְׁעָהּ, שְׁמִיר וְשִׁית תֹּאכֵל; וְתִצַּת בְּסִבְכֵי הַיַּעַר, וַיִּתְאַבְּכוּ גֵאוֹת עָשָׂן.
For wickedness burneth as the fire: it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.
- 19 בַּעֲבֶרֶת יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת נִעְתָּם אֶרֶץ; וַיְהִי הָעָם כְּמֹאכֵלֵת אֵשׁ; אִישׁ אֶל אָחִיו לֹא יַחְמֹל.
Through the wrath of the Lord of hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire: no man shall spare his brother.
- 20 וַיִּגְזֹר עַל יְמִין וָרֵעֵב; וַיֹּאכַל עַל שְׁמֹאוֹל וְלֹא שָׂבַעוּ; אִישׁ בָּשָׂר זָרְעוֹ יֹאכֹלוּ.
And he shall snatch on the right hand, and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand, and they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm:
- 21 מְנַשֶּׁה אֶת אֶפְרַיִם וְאֶפְרַיִם אֶת מְנַשֶּׁה, יַחֲדוֹ הָמָּה עַל יְהוּדָה; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נִטְוִיָּה.
Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh: and they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

כ

20

- 1 הוּא הַחֻקִּים חֻקֵּי אָנוֹן, וּמִכְתָּבִים עָמַל כְּתָבוּ.
Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;
- 2 לְהִטּוֹת מִדִּין דָּלִים, וּלְגֹזֵל מִשְׁפַּט עֲנִי עַמִּי; לְהִיּוֹת אֱלֻמְנוֹת שָׁלָלָם, וְאֵת יְתוּמִים יִבְזֹו.
To turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!
- 3 וּמָה תַעֲשׂוּ לְיוֹם פְּקֻדָּהּ, וּלְשׂוֹאָה מִמָּרְחָק תָּבוֹא; עַל מִי תִנּוּסוּ לְעֶזְרָה? וְאֵנָּה תַעֲזֹבוּ כְבוֹדְכֶם?
And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?
- 4 בְּלִתִּי כָרַע תַּחַת אֲסִיר, וְתַחַת הַרוּגִים יִפְלוּ; בְּכָל זֹאת לֹא שָׁב אָפוֹ, וְעוֹד יָדוֹ נִטְוִיָּה.
Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.
- 5 הוּא אַשּׁוּר, שִׁבְט אַפִּי; וּמִסָּה הוּא בִידָם יַעֲמִי.
O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is mine indignation.
- 6 בְּגוֹי חָנָף אֲשַׁלְחֶנּוּ, וְעַל עַם עֲבָרְתִּי אֲצַנְנֵהוּ לְשַׁלֵּל שָׁלָל וּלְבַז בֹּז, וּלְשׁוּמוֹ מִרְמָס כַּחֲמֶר חוּצוֹת.
I will send him against an hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.
- 7 וְהוּא לֹא בֶן יִדְמָה, וּלְבָבוֹ לֹא בֶן יַחֲשָׁב; כִּי לְהַשְׁמִיד בְּלָבָבוֹ וּלְהַכְרִית גּוֹיִם לֹא מַעֲט.
Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few.
- 8 כִּי יֹאמֶר: הֲלֹא שָׂרֵי יַחֲדוֹ מְלָכִים?
For he saith, Are not my princes altogether kings?
- 9 הֲלֹא כַּכְרֶמִּישׁ כָּלְנוּ? אִם לֹא כַּאַרְפַּד חֻמָּת, אִם לֹא כַּדַּמָּשְׁק שְׁמֶרְוֹן?
Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

- 10 כַּאֲשֶׁר מָצָאָה יָדִי לְמַמְלַכַת הָאֱלִילִים, וּפְסִילֵיהֶם מִירוּשָׁלַם וּמִשָּׁמְרוֹן.
As my hand hath found the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;
- 11 הֲלֹא כַּאֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְשָׁמְרוֹן וּלְאֶלְלִיָּהּ, כֵּן אֶעֱשֶׂה לִירוּשָׁלַם וְלַעֲצָבֶיהָ?
Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and her idols?
- 12 וְהָיָה כִּי יַבְצֵעַ אֲדָנִי אֶת כָּל מַעֲשָׂהוּ בְּהָר צִיּוֹן, וּבִירוּשָׁלַם אֶפְקֹד עַל פְּרִי גֹדֶל לִבָּב מֶלֶךְ אַשּׁוּר, וְעַל תַּפְאֶרֶת רוּם עֵינָיו.
Wherefore it shall come to pass, that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.
- 13 כִּי אָמַר: בְּכֹחַ יָדִי עָשִׂיתִי וּבְחֻמָּתִי כִּי נִבְנוֹתִי; וְאֶסִּיר גְּבוּלֹת עַמִּים וְעִתּוֹדֵיהֶם שׁוֹשִׁיתִי, וְאוֹרִיד כְּאִבִּיר יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶם.
For he saith, By the strength of my hand I have done it, and by my wisdom; for I am prudent: and I have removed the bounds of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man:
- 14 וְתַמְצָא כְּקֹן יָדִי לְחֵיל הָעַמִּים; וְאֶסַּף בִּיעִצִּים עֲזוֹבוֹת כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲנִי אֶסְפֹּתִי; וְלֹא הָיָה נִדָּד כָּנָף, וּפִצָּה פִּה וּמִצְפָּצָף.
And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people: and as one gathereth eggs that are left, have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.
- 15 הֲיִתְפָּאֵר הַגִּרְזֹן עַל הַחֹצֵב בּוֹ? אִם יִתְגַּדֵּל הַמַּשְׁוֹר עַל מְנִיפוֹ? כִּהְנִיף שִׁבְט וְאֵת מְרִימּוֹ, כִּהְרִים מִטָּה לֹא עָץ?
Shall the axe boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Or shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself, as if it were no wood.
- 16 לָכֵן יִשְׁלַח הָאֲדֹנָי יְהוִה צְבָאוֹת בְּמִשְׁמָנֵי רוּחוֹ, וְתַחַת כְּבֹדוֹ יִקְדַּח בְּקִדּוֹ אֵשׁ.
Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of hosts, send among his fat ones leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.
- 17 וְהָיָה אֹרֶךְ יִשְׂרָאֵל לְאֵשׁ, וְקִדּוּשׁוֹ לִלְהָבָה; וּבְעֶרְהָ וְאֶכְלָה שִׁתּוֹ וְשִׁמְרֹו בְיוֹם אֶחָד.
And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame: and it shall burn and devour his thorns and his briers in one day;
- 18 וּכְבוֹד יַעֲרֹ וְכִרְמֻלּוֹ מִנְפֶּשׁ וְעַד בָּשָׂר יִכְלָה, וְהָיָה כְּמַסַּס נֶסֶס.
And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body: and they shall be as when a standard bearer fainteth.
- 19 וְשָׂר עֵץ יַעֲרֹ מִסְפָּר יְהִי, וְנִעַר יִכְתְּבֵם.
And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.
- 20 וְהָיָה בְיוֹם הַהוּא לֹא יוֹסִיף עוֹד שָׂר יִשְׂרָאֵל וּפְלִיטַת בֵּית יַעֲקֹב לְהִשָּׁעַן עַל מִכְּהוֹ; וְנִשְׁעַן עַל יְהוִה קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּאֵמֶת.
And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them; but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.
- 21 שָׂר יָשׁוּב; שָׂר יַעֲקֹב אֵל גְּבוֹר.
The remnant shall return, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

- 22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return: the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.
- כִּי אִם יִהְיֶה עַמּוֹד יִשְׂרָאֵל כְּחוֹל הַיָּם שְׂאֵר יָשׁוּב בּוֹ; כָּלִיוֹן חֲרוּץ, שׁוֹטֵף צִדְקָה.
- 23 For the Lord God of hosts shall make a consumption, even determined, in the midst of all the land.
- כִּי כָלָה וְנִחְרְצָה אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת, עֹשֶׂה בִקְרֹב כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 24 Therefore thus saith the Lord God of hosts, O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian: he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.
- לָכֵן, כֹּה אָמַר אֲדֹנֵי יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת: אַל תִּירָא עַמִּי יֹשֵׁב צִיּוֹן מֵאַשּׁוּר; בְּשֶׁבֶט יַכְכָּה, וּמִטְהוּ יִשָּׂא עָלָיו בְּדֶרֶךְ מִצְרַיִם.
- 25 For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.
- כִּי עוֹד מְעַט מִזְעָר וְכָלָה זַעַם, וְאַפִּי עַל תִּבְלִיתָם.
- 26 And the Lord of hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb: and as his rod was upon the sea, so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.
- וְעוֹרָר עָלָיו יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת שׁוֹט כְּמַכַּת מִדְיָן בְּצוּר עוֹרֵב, וּמִטְהוּ עַל הַיָּם; וְנִשָּׂאוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ מִצְרַיִם.
- 27 And it shall come to pass in that day, that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יָסוּר סִבְלוֹ מֵעַל שִׁכְמְךָ, וְעָלוֹ מֵעַל צִוְּאָרְךָ; וְחִבְל עַל מִפְּנֵי שָׁמֶן.
- 28 He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages:
- בָּא עַל עֵיִת עֵבֶר בְּמִגְרוֹן; לְמַכְמֶשׁ יִפְקִיד כָּלָיו.
- 29 They are gone over the passage: they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramah is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.
- עָבְרוּ מֵעֲבָרָה גִבְעָה; מְלוֹן לָנוּ; חֲרָדָה הָרָמָה, גִּבְעַת שְׂאוֹל נָסָה.
- 30 Lift up thy voice, O daughter of Gallim: cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.
- צַהֲלִי קוֹלְךָ, בַּת גָּלִים, הַקְשִׁיבִי לַיִּשָּׁה, עֲנִיָּה עֲנָתוֹת.
- 31 Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.
- נִדְּדָה מַדְמָנָה; יֹשְׁבֵי הַגְּבִים הִעִיזוּ.
- 32 As yet shall he remain at Nob that day: he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.
- עוֹד הַיּוֹם בְּנוֹב לַעֲמֹד; וְנִפֵּף יָדוֹ הַר בַּת צִיּוֹן, גִּבְעַת יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 33 Behold, the Lord, the Lord of hosts, shall lop the bough with terror: and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down, and the haughty shall be humbled.
- הִנֵּה הָאֲדוֹן יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת, מִסְעֵף פֶּאֶרָה בְּמַעֲרָצָה; וְרַמֵּי הַקוֹמָה גְּדוּעִים, וְהַגְּבוּהִים יִשְׁפְּלוּ.
- 34 And he shall cut down the thickets of the forest with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.
- וְנִקַּף סִבְכֵי הַיַּעַר בַּבְּרִזָּל, וְהַלְבָּנוֹן בְּאֲדִיר יָפוֹל.

כֹא

21

- 1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:
- 2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;
- 3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord: and he shall not judge after sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:
- 4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.
- 5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
- 6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.
- 7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
- 8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.
- 9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.
- 10 And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek: and his rest shall be glorious.
- 11 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.
- 12 And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.
- וַיֵּצֵא חֹטֶר מִגִּזְעוֹ יֵשׁוּ, וְנֹצֵר מִשְׁרָשָׁיו יִפְרֶה.
וְנָחָה עָלָיו רוּחַ יְהוָה, רוּחַ חֲכָמָה וּבִינָה, רוּחַ עֲצָה וּגְבוּרָה, רוּחַ דַּעַת וְיִרְאַת יְהוָה.
וְהָרִיחוֹ בִּירְאַת יְהוָה; וְלֹא לְמַרְאֵה עֵינָיו יִשְׁפֹּט, וְלֹא לְמַשְׁמַע אָזְנוֹ יוֹכִיחַ.
וְשִׁפֹּט בְּצֶדֶק דְּלִים, וְהוֹכִיחַ בְּמִישׁוֹר לַעֲנִי אֶרֶץ; וְהִכָּה אֶרֶץ בְּשֹׁבֵט פִּי, וּבְרוּחַ שְׁפָתָיו יָמִית רָשָׁע.
וְהָיָה צֶדֶק אֲזוֹר מִתְּנִי, וְהֶאֱמוּנָה אֲזוֹר מִחֻצָּיו.
וְגַר זֶאֵב עִם כֶּבֶשׂ, וְנֹמֵר עִם גְּדִי יִרְבֹּץ; וְעֹגֵל וּכְפִיר וּמְרִיא יַחְדָּו, וְנֹעַר קֹטֶן נָהֵג בָּם.
וּפָרָה וְדֹב תִּרְעִינָה, יַחְדָּו יִרְבְּצוּ יְלָדֵיהֶן; וְאַרְיֵה כְּבָקָר יֹאכֹל תֶּבֶן.
וְשֹׁעֵשֶׂע יֻנָּק עַל חֹר פֶּתֶן, וְעַל מְאוֹרֵת צִפְעוֹנִי גְמוּל יָדוֹ הָדָה.
לֹא יִרְעוּ וְלֹא יִשְׁחִיתוּ בְּכָל הָר קִדְשִׁי, כִּי מְלֵאָה הָאֶרֶץ דַּעַת אֶת יְהוָה, כַּמַּיִם לַיָּם מְכַסִּים.
וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא שֹׁרֵשׁ יֵשׁוּ אֲשֶׁר עֲמִיד לְנֵס עַמִּים, אֵלָיו גּוֹיִם יִדְרֹשׁוּ, וְהָיְתָה מְנוַחָתוֹ כְּבוֹד.
וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יוֹסִיף אֲדָנִי שְׁנִית יְדוֹ, לְקַנּוֹת אֶת שְׂאֵר עַמּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאַר מֵאַשּׁוּר וּמִמִּצְרַיִם וּמִפַּתְרוֹס וּמִכּוּשׁ וּמִעִילָם וּמִשִּׁנְעָר וּמִחֻמַּת וּמֵאֲזֵי הַיָּם.
וְנִשָּׂא נֵס לְגוֹיִם, וְאָסַף נִדְחֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְנִפְצוֹת יְהוּדָה יִקְבֹּץ מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנֻפּוֹת הָאֶרֶץ.

- 13 The envy also of Ephraim shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off: Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.
- 14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines toward the west; they shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.
- 15 And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind shall he shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.
- 16 And there shall be an highway for the remnant of his people, which shall be left, from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.
- וְסִרְהָ קִנְאָת אֶפְרַיִם, וְצָרֵי יְהוּדָה יִכָּרְתוּ;
אֶפְרַיִם לֹא יִקְנֹא אֶת יְהוּדָה, וְיְהוּדָה לֹא יִצַּר
אֶת אֶפְרַיִם.
- וְעָפוּ בְּכַתְּף פְּלִשְׁתִּים יָמָה; יַחֲדוּ יִבְזוּ אֶת בְּנֵי
קֶדְם; אֲדוֹם וּמוֹאָב מִשְׁלֹחַ יָדָם, וּבְנֵי עַמּוֹן
מִשְׁמָעֵתָם.
- וְהָחֵרֵם יְהוָה אֶת לְשׁוֹן יָם מִצְרַיִם; וְהִנִּיף יָדוֹ
עַל הַנָּהָר בְּעֵס רֹחוֹ, וְהִכָּהוּ לְשִׁבְעָה נְחָלִים,
וְהִדְרִיךְ בְּנָעָלִים.
- וְהָיְתָה מְסִלָּה לְשָׂאֵר עַמּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִשָּׂאֵר
מֵאַשּׁוּר, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל בְּיוֹם עָלְתוֹ
מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם.

כב

22

- 1 And in that day thou shalt say, O Lord, I will praise thee: though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.
- 2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid: for the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song; he also is become my salvation.
- 3 Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.
- 4 And in that day shall ye say, Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.
- 5 Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things: this is known in all the earth.
- 6 Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion: for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.
- וְאָמַרְתָּ בְּיוֹם הַהוּא: אֲדֹךְ יְהוָה כִּי אָנַפְתָּ בִּי,
יָשָׁב אַפְּךָ וַתְּנַחֲמֵנִי.
- הִנֵּה, אֵל יְשׁוּעָתִי אֶבְטַח וְלֹא אֶפְחָד; כִּי עֲזָי
וַתְּמַרְתָּ יְהוָה, וַיְהִי לִי לְיְשׁוּעָה.
- וּשְׂאֲבַתֶּם מֵיִם בְּשִׂשׁוֹן מִמַּעֲיֵנֵי הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- וְאָמַרְתֶּם בְּיוֹם הַהוּא: הוֹדוּ לַיהוָה, קְרָאוּ בְשִׁמּוֹ,
הוֹדִיעוּ בְּעַמִּים עֲלִילָתוֹ, הִזְכִּירוּ כִּי נִשְׁגָּב שְׁמוֹ.
- זַמְּרוּ יְהוָה כִּי גָאוֹת עָשָׂה; מוֹדַעַת זֹאת
בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- צִהֲלִי וְרַנִּי, יוֹשֶׁבֶת צִיּוֹן, כִּי גָדוֹל בְּקִרְבְּךָ
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

כג

23

- 1 The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.
- 2 Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.
- 3 I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones for mine anger, even them that rejoice in my highness.
- מִשָּׂא בָּבֶל אֲשֶׁר חָזָה יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ בֶן אַמּוּץ.
- עַל הַר נִשְׁפָּה שָׂאוּ נֶס, הִרִימוּ קוֹל לָהֶם,
הִנִּיפוּ יָד, וַיָּבֹאוּ פִתְחֵי נְדִיבִים.
- אֲנִי צִוִּיתִי לְמִקְדָּשִׁי; גַּם קָרָאתִי גִבּוֹרֵי לְאַפִּי,
עֲלִיזֵי גְאוּתִי.

- 4 The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the Lord of hosts mustereth the host of the battle.
- קול הַמִּזְמֹר בְּהָרִים, דְּמוּת עַם רַב; קוֹל שְׂאוֹן מִמְּלָכוֹת גּוֹיִם, נִאָּסְפִים יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, מִפְּקֹד צָבָא מְלֻחָמָה.
- 5 They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, even the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.
- בָּאִים מֵאַרְץ מְרֹחֶק, מִקְצֵה הַשָּׁמַיִם; יְהוָה וְכָלֵי זַעַמּוֹ לְחַבֵּל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 6 Howl ye; for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.
- הִילֵלוּ, כִּי קָרוֹב יוֹם יְהוָה; כְּשֹׁד מִשְׁדֵּי יְבוּא.
- 7 Therefore shall all hands be faint, and every man's heart shall melt:
- עַל כֵּן כָּל יָדִים תִּרְפִּינָה; וְכָל לֵבב אֲנוּשׁ יִמָּס.
- 8 And they shall be afraid: pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain as a woman that travaileth: they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.
- וְנִבְהָלוּ, צִרִים וְחִבְלִים יֵאָחֲזוּן; כִּי־לֵדָה יִחִילוּ, אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ יִתְמַהוּ, פָּנֵי לְהִבִּים פָּנִיָּהֶם.
- 9 Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.
- הִנֵּה יוֹם יְהוָה בָּא, אֲכֹזְרִי וְעִבְרָה וְחֲרוֹן אָף לְשׁוֹם הָאָרֶץ לְשִׁמָּה, וְחִסְאִיהָ יִשְׁמִיד מִמֶּנָּה.
- 10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.
- כִּי כּוֹכְבֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם וְכִסְיָלֵיהֶם, לֹא יִהְיוּ אוֹרִם; חֹשֶׁךְ הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ בְּצֵאתוֹ, וְיָרֵחַ לֹא יִגִּיה אוֹרָו.
- 11 And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible.
- וּפָקַדְתִּי עַל תִּבְל רָעָה, וְעַל רָשָׁעִים עֲוֹנִם; וְהִשְׁבַּתִּי גֵאוֹן זִידִים, וְגֵאוֹת עֲרִיצִים אֲשַׁפִּיל.
- 12 I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.
- אֲוִקִיר אֲנוּשׁ מִפָּז; וְאָדָם מִכֶּתֶם אוֹפִיר.
- 13 Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.
- עַל כֵּן שָׁמַיִם אֲרַגִּיז, וְתִרְעַשׂ הָאָרֶץ מִמְּקוֹמָהּ בְּעִבְרַת יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, וּבְיוֹם חֲרוֹן אָפוֹ.
- 14 And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up: they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.
- וְהָיָה כְּצִבִּי מְדָח, וְכִצְאוֹן וְאִין מִקְבִּץ; אִישׁ אֶל עַמּוֹ יָפְנוּ, וְאִישׁ אֶל אֲרָצוֹ יָנוּסוּ.
- 15 Every one that is found shall be thrust through; and every one that is joined unto them shall fall by the sword.
- כָּל הַנִּמְצָא יִדְקַר; וְכָל הַנִּסְפָּה יָפוּל בַּחֶרֶב.
- 16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled, and their wives ravished.
- וְעַלְלֵיהֶם יִרְטָשׁוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם; יִשָּׁסוּ בְּתֵיהֶם, וְנִשְׁבִּיהֶם תִּשְׁכַּבְּנָה.
- 17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver; and as for gold, they shall not delight in it.
- הִנֵּנִי מַעִיר עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מְדֵי אֲשֶׁר כֶּסֶף לֹא יַחְשְׁבוּ, וְזָהָב לֹא יַחְפְּצוּ בוֹ.

- כד

24

- 115

- 9 Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming: it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.
- שָׂאוֹל מִתַּחַת רִגְזָה לְךָ לִקְרֹאת בּוֹאֶךָ; עוֹרֵר לְךָ רִפְאִים כָּל עֲתוּדֵי אֶרֶץ, הַקִּים מִכְסְּאוֹתָם כָּל מְלָכֵי גוֹיִם.
- 10 All they shall speak and say unto thee, Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?
- כָּל־ם יַעֲנוּ וַיֹּאמְרוּ אֵלֶיךָ: גַּם אַתָּה חֲלִיתָ כְּמוֹנוּ; אֵלֵינוּ נִמְשָׁלָתָ.
- 11 Thy pomp is brought down to the grave, and the noise of thy viols: the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.
- הוֹרֵד שָׂאוֹל וְגֹאֲזָה, הַמִּית נְבָלֶיךָ; תַּחֲתֶיךָ יֵצֵעַ רֶמָּה, וּמִכְסֶּיךָ תוֹלְעָה.
- 12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!
- אֵיךְ נָפַלְתָּ מִשָּׁמַיִם, הַיֵּלֶל בֶּן שָׁחַר! נִגְדַעְתָּ לְאֶרֶץ, חוֹלָשׁ עַל גּוֹיִם!
- 13 For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north:
- וְאַתָּה אָמַרְתָּ בְּלִבְבְּךָ: הַשָּׁמַיִם אֶעֱלֶה, מִמַּעַל לְכוֹכְבֵי אֱל, אָרִים כְּסִאי; וְאֵשֵׁב בְּהַר מוֹעֵד, בִּירְכַתִּי צָפוֹן.
- 14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.
- אֶעֱלֶה עַל בְּמֹתֵי עָב; אֲדַמָּה לְעֵלְיוֹן.
- 15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.
- אָךְ אַל שָׂאוֹל תּוֹרֵד, אֶל יִרְכַתִּי בּוֹר.
- 16 They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms;
- רְאִיךָ אֵלֶיךָ יִשְׁגִּיחוּ, אֵלֶיךָ יִתְבּוֹנְנוּ; הֲזֶה הָאִישׁ מְרַגֵּז הָאֶרֶץ, מְרַעֵשׁ מַמְלָכוֹת?
- 17 That made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof; that opened not the house of his prisoners?
- שֵׁם תִּבַּל כַּמִּדְבָּר, וְעָרָיו הָרָס; אֲסִירָיו לֹא פָתַח בֵּיתָהּ.
- 18 All the kings of the nations, even all of them, lie in glory, everyone in his own house.
- כָּל מְלָכֵי גוֹיִם, כָּל־ם, שָׁכְבוּ בְּכְבוֹד, אִישׁ בְּבֵיתוֹ.
- 19 But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and as the raiment of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.
- וְאַתָּה הִשְׁלַכְתָּ מִקְבְּרֶךָ, כְּנִצָּץ נִחְעָב, לְבָשׁ הָרָגִים, מְטֻעֵי חֶרֶב; יוֹרְדֵי אֶל אֲבְנֵי בּוֹר, כְּפֶגֶר מוּבָס.
- 20 Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned.
- לֹא תִחַד אִתָּם בְּקְבוּרָה כִּי אֲרֻצָּךְ שִׁחַתָּ, עַמְּךָ הָרַגְתָּ; לֹא יִקְרָא לְעוֹלָם זֶרַע מְרַעִים.
- 21 Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.
- הַכִּינוּ לְבָנָיו מִטְבַּח בַּעֲוֹן אֲבוֹתָם, כֹּל יִקְמוּ וַיִּרְשׁוּ אֶרֶץ, וּמָלְאוּ פְנֵי תִבַּל עָרִים.
- 22 For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.
- וְקָמְתִי עֲלֵיהֶם, נְאֻם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת; וְהִכַּרְתִּי לְבָבֶל שֵׁם וְשָׂרָהּ, וְנִין וְנִכְדָּהּ, נְאֻם יְהוָה.

נְפִי ב כד:כג-כה:ב

- 23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water: and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of hosts.
- 24 The Lord of hosts hath sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand:
- 25 That I will break the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.
- 26 This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations.
- 27 For the Lord of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?
- 28 In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.
- 29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.
- 30 And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety: and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.
- 31 Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved: for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.
- 32 What shall one then answer the messengers of the nation? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

כה

25

- 1 Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.
- 2 For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

- על כן כותב אני לעמי, לכל אשר יקבלו
בעתיד לבוא את כתבי אלה, למען ידעו את
משפטי אלהים, אשר יבואו על כל העמים,
על פי דברו אשר דבר.
- לכן, שמעו, עמי, אשר מבית ישראל אתם,
והאזינו לדברי; ועו אשר דברי ישעיהו אינם
ברורים לכם, אך הנם ברורים לכל אשר מלא
רוח נבואה. ואני אנבא לכם נבואה על פי
הרוח אשר בי; אכן, אנבא על פי הפשטות
אשר עמי מעת יצאתי מירושלם עם אבי;
כי הנה נפשי חפצה להגיד דברים ברורים
אל עמי, למען ילמדו.
- אכן, מתענגת נפשי בדברי ישעיהו, כי יצאתי
מירושלם ועיני ראו את דברי היהודים, וידע
אני כי היהודים מבינים את דברי הנביאים,
ואין עם אחר המבין את הדברים אשר
נאמרו אל היהודים, כמוהם עצמם, וזאת
אם למדו על פי ארח היהודים.
- ואולם, אני, נפי, לא למדתי את בני על
פי ארח היהודים; אך אנכי גרתי בירושלם
והנני יודע את חבלי הארץ אשר סביבה; ואף
הזכרתי לבני על אודות משפטי אלהים אשר
חלו בקרב היהודים, ככל אשר דבר ישעיהו,
ואני לא אכתבם.
- והנני מוסיף בנבואתי, כפי פשטות דברי,
אשר ידעתי כי אין אדם יכול לטעות בה;
אך בעת אשר יתקיימו דברי נבואת ישעיהו,
ידעו האנשים ידיעה שלמה אשר נבואותיו
מתקיימות בעת ההיא.
- על כן יש להן ערך לבני האדם; ואשר יחשבו
אשר אין להן ערך, אליהם מכון אני את דברי,
ואיחד אותם לעמי, בידיעה כי רב יהיה להם
ערך נבואותיו באחרית הימים, כי בעת ההיא
יבינו; על כן לטובתם כתבתי אותן.
- ובאשר אבד דור אחד בקרב היהודים מפני
עוון, כן הם אבדו מדור לדור כפי עוונותיהם;
ומעולם לא אבד אף אחד מהם, מבלי אשר
הודיעו על כך נביאי יהוה.
- על כן הודיעו על החרבן אשר בוא יבוא
עליהם מיד אחר צאת אבי מירושלם, אף הם
- 3 Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.
- 4 Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.
- 5 Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.
- 6 But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.
- 7 But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.
- 8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.
- 9 And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.
- 10 Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem;

- הקשו את לבם; וכדבר נבואתי הם נשמדו,
זולת המגלים בבבלה.
- ועתה הנני מדבר זאת מפני הרוח אשר בי.
ואף כי הגלו, הם ישובו שנית וינחלו את ארץ
ירושלם; אכן, הם יושבו אל ארץ נחלתם.
- ואולם תהייה להם מלחמות ושמועות
מלחמה; ובבוא היום אשר יתגלה להם
בבשר הבן הילוד היחיד אשר לאב, והוא
אבי שמים וארץ, הנה אז ימאסו בו, מפני
עוונותיהם וקשי לבם וערפם.
- והם אכן יצלבוהו; ואחר אשר יניחוהו בקבר
במשך שלשה ימים הוא יקום מן המתים,
ומרפא בכנפיו; וכל המאמינים בשמו
במלכות אלהים יושעו. על כן מתענגת נפשי
לנבא על אודותיו, כי חזיתי את יומו, ולפי
ירומם את שם קדשו.
- והנה, אחר עלות המשיח מן המתים ואחר
התגלותו לעמו, לכל אלה אשר יאמינו
בשמו, תחרב ירושלם שנית, כי הוי לנלחמים
באלהים ובאנשי כנסתו.
- על כן יפוצו היהודים בכל העמים; אכן,
אף בכל תחרב, ולכן עמים אחרים יפיצו
את היהודים.
- אכן אחר תפוצתם ואחר אשר יצליף בהם
יהוה אלהים ביד עמים אחרים במשך דורות
רבים, אכן, מדור לדור, עד אשר ישתכנעו
להאמין במשיח בן אלהים, ובפפרה, אשר
היא מחלסת, לכל בני האדם; וביום אשר
יאמינו בו ויעבדו את האב בשמו, בלב טהור
ובנקיון כפים, ולא יצפו עוד לבוא משיח
אחר, אזי תבוא העת אשר יהיו נכונים
להאמין בדברים האלה.
- ויסיר יהוה שנית את ידו להשיב את עמו
ממפלתם וכשלונם, אף יסיר להפליא את
בני אדם הפלא ופלא.
- לכן יביא יהוה את דבריו אליהם, ודבריו
ישפטום ביום האחרון, כי יתנום בעבור
- 11 And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.
- 12 But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.
- 13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.
- 14 And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.
- 15 Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.
- 16 And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.
- 17 And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.
- 18 Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose

יִמְשֹׁךְ לָבָם בְּדַבֵּר מְשִׁיחַ הָאֱמֶת, אֲשֶׁר
מֵאֲסוּהוּ; וְלִמְעַן מִשֹּׁךְ לָבָם לְחַדֵּל מִצָּפוֹת עוֹד
לָבוֹא מְשִׁיחַ, כִּי אֵין צָפוּי לָבוֹא אַף אֶחָד, זֹלָת
מְשִׁיחַ שֶׁקֶר אֲשֶׁר יִרְמָה אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים; כִּי עַל
מְשִׁיחַ אֶחָד בְּלִבָּד דִּבְרוּ הַנְּבִיאִים, וְזֶה
הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יִמְאָסוּ בוֹ הַיְּהוּדִים.

of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

כִּי עַל פִּי דִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, יָבוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ לְאַחֵר
שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה מִיּוֹם צֵאת אָבִי מִירוּשָׁלַם,
וְעַל פִּי דִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, וְכֵן עַל פִּי דִבְרֵי מַלְאָךְ
אֱלֹהִים, יִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

19 For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲחִי, דִּבַּרְתִּי בְרוּרוֹת לְמַעַן לֹא תִטְעוּ. חַי
יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָה אֶת יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאֶרֶץ
מִצְרָיִם, וְנָתַן לְמֹשֶׁה כֹּחַ לְרַפֵּא אֶת הָעַמִּים אַחֵר
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּמוּ בְּחֹשֵׁי הָאָרֶס, אִם אֹף יִשְׁאוּ עֵינֵיהֶם
אֶל הַנָּחֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָה לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר נָתַן
לְמֹשֶׁה כֹּחַ לְהַכּוֹת בְּסֻלֶּעַ וְיִצְאוּ מִיָּם, הִנֵּה אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כְּאֲשֶׁר הִדְבָּרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִכְוִנִים,
חַי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, לֹא נָתַן שֵׁם אַחֵר תַּחַת
הַשְּׁמִים, כִּי אִם שֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו
דִּבַּרְתִּי, אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו יוּכַל הָאָדָם לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

לָכֵן אֶמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלַי כִּי הִדְבָּרִים
אֲשֶׁר אֶכְתֹּב יִשְׁמְרוּ וְיִנָּצְרוּ, וְיִמָּסְרוּ לְזֶרַעִי,
מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, לְקִיָּם אֶת דִּבְרֵי הַבְּרִית לְיוֹסֵף,
אֲשֶׁר זָרְעוּ לֹא יֵאבֹד לְעוֹלָם, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר
תַּעֲמֹד הָאָרֶץ.

21 Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

עַל כֵּן יִצְאוּ הִדְבָּרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, כָּכָל
אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲמֹד הָאָרֶץ; וְהֵם יִמָּסְרוּ כְּחַפְצֵי אֱלֹהִים
וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ; וְהַעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר יִחְזִיקוּ בָהֶם, יִשְׁפָּטוּ
בָּהֶם עַל פִּי הִדְבָּרִים הַכְּתוּבִים.

22 Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

כִּי שׁוֹקְדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְכַתֵּב, לְמִשֹּׁךְ אֶת לֵב בְּנֵינוּ
וְאֶת אַחֵינוּ לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמְשִׁיחַ וּלְהַתְרַצוֹת לִפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים; כִּי יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי בְּחֻסְדּוֹ אֲנַחְנוּ
נוֹשָׁעִים, אַחֵר כָּל אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵינוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת.

23 For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

וְאִף כִּי מֵאֲמִינִים אֲנַחְנוּ בְּמְשִׁיחַ, אֲנַחְנוּ
שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וּמִצְוֹתַיִם בְּדִבְקוֹת
לְמְשִׁיחַ, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְקַיְּמוּ דִבְרֵי הַתּוֹרָה.

24 And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

כִּי לְתַכְלִית הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה הַתּוֹרָה; עַל כֵּן מִתָּה
הַתּוֹרָה בְּעֵינֵינוּ, וְאֲנַחְנוּ הַתְּחִינּוּ בְּמְשִׁיחַ
מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָנוּ; אֹף שׁוֹמְרִים אֲנַחְנוּ אֶת
הַתּוֹרָה בְּעִבּוֹר הַמִּצְוֹת.

25 For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

- אָבן, אַנחנוּ מדְּבָרִים בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, שְׁשִׁים בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, מְטִיפִים עַל אֲדוּת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, מְנַבְּאִים עַל הַמִּשִּׁיחַ וְכוּתְבִים עַל פִּי נְבוֹאוֹתֵינוּ, לְמַעַן יִדְעוּ בְּנֵינוּ לְהִיכֵן יְבָקְשׁוּ לְמַחֵל עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.
- עַל כֵּן אַנחנוּ מדְּבָרִים עַל אֲדוּת הַתּוֹרָה, לְמַעַן יִכִּירוּ בְּנֵינוּ אֵת הַיְּהוּת הַתּוֹרָה מֵתָּה; וְהֵם, בִּידְעָם כִּי הַתּוֹרָה מֵתָּה, יֵצְפוּ אֶל הַחַיִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, וְיִדְעוּ מִדּוּעַ נִתְּנָה הַתּוֹרָה; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הַתְּקִימָה הַתּוֹרָה בְּמִשִּׁיחַ, אֵל לֵהֶם לְהַקְשׁוֹת אֵת לִבָּם עָלָיו בַּעַת אֲשֶׁר צָרִיכָה הַתּוֹרָה לְחַלּוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי עַמִּי, הִנֵּכֶם עִם קִשָּׁה עֲרֹף; עַל כֵּן דִּבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, לְמַעַן לֹא תִפְשְׁלוּ בַּהֲבִנָּה. וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי יַעֲמִדוּ כְּעֵדוֹת עֲלֵיכֶם; כִּי הֵנָּה מִסְפִּיקִים לְלַמֵּד כָּל אָדָם אֵת הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיֶּשֶׁרָה וְהִיא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשִּׁיחַ וְלֹא לִכְחֹשׁ בּוֹ; כִּי אִם תִּכְחֹשׁוּ בּוֹ, תִּכְחֹשׁוּ אֶף אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַתּוֹרָה.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיֶּשֶׁרָה הִיא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּמִשִּׁיחַ וְלֹא לִכְחֹשׁ בּוֹ. וְהַמִּשִּׁיחַ הוּא קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת לִפְנָיו וּלְעַבְדּוֹ בְּכָל מְאֹדְכֶם, וּבְכָל לִבְבְּכֶם וּבְכָל כֹּחְכֶם, אֲכֹן לְעַבְדּוֹ בְּכָל נַפְשְׁכֶם; וְאִם כֵּן תַּעֲשׂוּ, הַשֵּׁלֶךְ לֹא תִשְׁלַכּוּ.
- וְכָל עוֹד יוֹעִיל הַדְּבָר, עֲלֵיכֶם לָקִים אֶת פְּקֻדוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת חֻקֹּתָיו עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה לְמֹשֶׁה.
- 26 And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.
- 27 Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.
- 28 And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.
- 29 And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.
- 30 And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

כו

26

- וְאַחֵר תִּקּוּמַת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים, הוּא יִתְגַּלֶּה לְפָנֵיכֶם, בְּנֵי וְאֶחָי הָאֱהוּבִים; וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיכֶם יִהְיוּ הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת.
- וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רֹאֵיתִי דּוֹרוֹת רַבִּים חוֹלְפִים וְעוֹבְרִים, וּמִלְחָמוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת תִּהְיֶינָה בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמִּי.
- וּבְבוֹא הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, יִנָּתְנוּ אוֹתוֹת לְעַמִּי עַל לִדְתּוֹ וְעַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל תְּחִיָּתוֹ; אֵף גְּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא יִהְיֶה הַיּוֹם הַהוּא לְרָשָׁעִים, כִּי אֲבוֹד יִאֲבְדוּ; וְכָלִינוֹם יָבוֹא עַל אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים
- 1 And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.
- 2 For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.
- 3 And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and

וְאֵת הַקְדוּשִׁים וְעַל אֲשֶׁר רָגְמוּם וְהָרְגוּם;
אֲכֹן תַּעֲלֶה זַעֲקַת דָּם הַקְדוּשִׁים אֶל אֱלֹהִים מִן
הָאֲדָמָה וְתַעֲרִיד עֲלֵיהֶם.

stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

עַל כֵּן, כָּל גָּאָה וְעוֹשֶׂה רָשָׁעָה, יִשְׂרָפֶם כָּלִיל
הַיּוֹם הַבָּא, כִּי פֶקֶשׁ יִהְיֶה, נָאוֹם יִהְיוּ צָבָאוֹת.

4 Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

וּבְלָעוּ מֵעַמְמֵי הָאֲדָמָה אֶת הוֹרְגֵי הַנְּבִיאִים
וְהַקְדוּשִׁים, נָאוֹם יִהְיוּ צָבָאוֹת; וְכִסּוּם הַהָרִים,
וּנְשָׂאוֹם סוּפוֹת, וְהַתְמוּטְטוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בָּתִּים,
וְכָתְתוּ אוֹתָם לַפְתִּיתִים, וּשְׁחָנוּם לְאָבֶק.

5 And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

וּפְקָדוֹם קוֹלוֹת רַעַם וּבִרְקִים וְרַעְשֵׁי אֲדָמָה
וְכָל מִינֵי הָרָס, כִּי אֵשׁ חֲרוֹן אַף יִהְיוּ דִלְקָה
בָּהֶם, וְהָיוּ כֶּקֶשׁ, וְכָלָה אוֹתָם הַיּוֹם הַבָּא,
נָאוֹם יִהְיוּ צָבָאוֹת.

6 And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

הוֹי, מְכַאוֹבֵי וּמַצּוֹקַת נַפְשִׁי עַל אֲבֹדוֹן בְּנֵי עַמִּי
וְעַל הָרָגָם! כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, בְּעֵינֵי רְאִיתִי זֹאת,
וּמִרְאָה כְּמַעַט כָּלָה אוֹתִי מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה, אֲךָ
עָלִי לִזְעַק לְאֱלֹהִי: דְּרָכֶיךָ דְּרָכֵי צֶדֶק.

7 O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

אֲךָ הַצַּדִּיקִים הַשּׁוֹמְעִים לְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים,
וְאֵינָם מְכַחֲדִים אוֹתָם, כִּי אִם מַצְפִּים
בְּדַבְּקוֹת לְבָא הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְלְאוֹתוֹת הַנִּתְּנִים, עַל
אֵף כָּל הָרְדִיפוֹת, הִמָּה לֹא יֵאבְדוּ.

8 But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

כִּי בֶן הַצֶּדֶק יוֹפִיעַ לָהֶם; הוּא יִרְפָּאֵם וְשָׁלוֹם
יִהְיֶה לָהֶם עַמּוֹ, עַד חֲלָף שְׁלֹשָׁה דּוֹרוֹת וְכֹן
רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הָרְבִיעִי עָבְרוּ בַּצֶּדֶקָה.

9 But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

וְכַעֲבַר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָבֹא כָלִיוֹן מְהִיר
עַל עַמִּי; כִּי עַל אֵף מְכַאוֹבֵי נַפְשִׁי, חֲזִיתִי
בְּזֹאת; עַל כֵּן יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יָבֹא כָלִיוֹן;
וְכִי חֲנִם יִמְכְּרוּ עֵצָמָם, כִּי בִמְחִיר גָּאוֹתָם
וְאוֹלָתָם יִקְצְרוּ כָלִיוֹן; כִּי מִפְּנֵי כְּנִיעָתָם לְשׁוֹטָן
וּבְחִירָתָם מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ עַל פְּנֵי אֹר, יִרְדּוּ
אֵלַי שְׁחַת.

10 And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

כִּי לֹא לְעוֹלָם יִדּוֹן רוּחַ יְהוָה עִם הָאָדָם.
וּבְחִדְלָה רוּחוֹ לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִם הָאָדָם, חֵישׁ יָבֹא
אֲזִי הַכָּלִיוֹן; עַל זֹאת תִּמְרָה נַפְשִׁי.

11 For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

- 12 And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;
- וּבְאֶשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עַל מְשִׁיכַת לֵב הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁוֶעַ הוּא אֶכֶן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, שׁוֹמָה הִיא כִּי אִף לֵב הַגּוֹיִים נִמְשָׁךְ לְדַעַת כִּי יִשְׁוֶעַ הוּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים.
- 13 And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.
- וְכִי הוּא יִנָּדַע לְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בּוֹ, בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, לְכָל אֲמָה וּמִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם, בְּעֲשׂוֹתוֹ פְּלָאוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת, אוֹתוֹת וּנְפִלְאוֹת בִּקְרֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, כְּכִי אֲמוּנָתָם.
- 14 But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִיבֵא לָכֶם עַל אַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים, עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר יָבִיא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 15 After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁקְעוּ זְרַעִי וְזְרַעֵי אַחֵי בַחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה, וַיִּגְנְפוּ לִפְנֵי הַגּוֹיִים, אֶכֶן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יַחְנֶה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כְּדוֹר וַיִּצּוֹר עֲלֵיהֶם מִצָּב וַיִּקִּים עֲלֵיהֶם מִצְרוֹת, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפְּלוּ לְעַפְרָה עַד כְּלוֹתָם, אִף עַל כִּי יִכְתְּבוּ אִמְרוֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים, וְתִשְׁמַעְנָה תְּפִלוֹת הַנֶּאֱמָנִים, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ בַחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה שָׂכוֹחַ לֹא יִשְׁכָּחוּ.
- 16 For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.
- כִּי יִדְּבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם הַנִּשְׁמָדִים מִן הָאָדָמָה, וּמִתַּחַתִּית עֹפֵר תִּשָּׁח אִמְרָתָם, וַיְהִי כְּאוֹב מִכָּר קוֹלָם, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים יִתֵּן לוֹ כֹּחַ לִלְחָשׁ עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם יָבֹא מִתּוֹךְ הָאָדָמָה; וְדְבוּרָם יִלְחֹשׁ מִן הָעֶפֶר.
- 17 For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הֵמָּה יִכְתְּבוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה בְּקִרְבָּם, וַיִּכְתְּבוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם וַיַּחְתְּמוּ בְּסֵפֶר וְלֹא יִהְיוּ לְשׁוֹקְעִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה, כִּי מִבְּקָשֵׁים הֵם לְשַׁחַת אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 18 Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—
- וְכִי חִישׁ יִשְׁמְדוּ הַנִּשְׁמָדִים; וַיְהִי הַמּוֹן עָרִיצֵיהֶם כְּמִץ עוֹבֵר, כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: וַיְהִי לְפַתָּע פְּתָאִם.
- 19 And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.
- וְהִשּׁוֹקְעִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה יִגְנְפוּ בְּיַד הַגּוֹיִים.
- 20 And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom
- אִף הַגּוֹיִים מִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִבְהוּת עֵינֵיהֶם, וַיִּכְשְׁלוּ עַל כִּי גָדוֹל מְכַשׁוֹלָם, וּבְאֶשֶׁר בָּנוּ כְּנִסְיוֹת לָרֹב, הֵם מוֹרִידִים אֶת גְּבוּרַת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת נְפִלְאוֹתָיו וּמְשִׁיפִים לְעַצְמָם אֶת חֻכְמָתָם

וְאֵת לְמוּדָם, לְמַעַן בָּצַע וְלָטְחוֹן פָּנֵי עֲנִיִּים.

and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

אֲכֹן רַבּוֹת הַכְּנִסְיוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוּת אֲשֶׁר הֵן מִקּוֹר קִנְאָה וּמְרִיבָה וְרִשְׁעָה.

21 And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

אִי יֵשׁ בָּהֶן אֲגִידוֹת סֵתֶר, כְּבִימֵי קֶדֶם, כְּמִסְתָּרֵי הַשָּׁטָן, כִּי הוּא יְסוּד כָּל אֵלֶּה; אֲכֹן, יְסוּד הַרְצָח וּמַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ; וְהוּא מוֹבִילֵם בְּצִוְאַרְם בְּחֶבֶל פִּשְׁתִּים, עַד אוֹסְרוֹ אוֹתָם בַּעֲבוּתָיו לְעוֹלָם.

22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כִּי יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים אֵינּוּ פוֹעֵל בַּמְּחֹשְׁכִים.

23 For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

וְהוּא לֹא יַעֲשֶׂה דָבָר, בְּלִתֵּי אִם יוֹעִיל לְעוֹלָם; כִּי הוּא אוֹהֵב אֶת הָעוֹלָם, עַד כִּי מוֹסְרוֹ אֶת חַיָּיו בַּעֲבוּר יְמֻשָּׁף אֵלָיו אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. לָכֵן אֵינְנוּ אוֹסְרֵם עַל אִישׁ לְקַחַת חֵלֶק בִּישׁוּעָתוֹ.

24 He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

הִיִּקְרָא הוּא לְאִישׁ לֵאמֹר: סוּר מִמֶּנִּי? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי כֹה יֹאמֵר: בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, כָּל קִצּוֹת הָאָרֶץ, שִׁבְרוּ חֶלֶב וְדָבַשׁ, בְּלֹא כֶסֶף וּבְלֹא מַחִיר.

25 Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

הִצְוָה הוּא אִישׁ לַעֲזֹב אֶת בֵּית הַכְּנִסָּה, אוֹ לְצֵאת מִבֵּית הַתַּפְלָה? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא.

26 Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

הִצְוָה הוּא אִישׁ לְהִמָּנַע מִקַּחַת חֵלֶק בִּישׁוּעָתוֹ? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי נָתַן אֶת יִשׁוּעָתוֹ חִנָּם לְכָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהוּא צִוָּה עַל עַמּוֹ לְמַשֹּׁף אֶת לֵב כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא.

27 Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

הִצְוָה יִהְיֶה עַל אִישׁ שְׁלֹא לְקַחַת חֵלֶק בְּטוֹבוֹ? הִנֵּה אֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי לְכָל אָדָם זְכוּת שְׁוֹה לְזוּלָתוֹ, וְאֵין אִסּוּר עַל אִישׁ.

28 Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

אֲךָ מִצְוָה הוּא לֹאֲסֹר עַל תְּרִמְיוֹת כְּמָרִים; אֲשֶׁר הֵן הַסְּפוֹת אֲנָשִׁים הַמִּתְנַשְּׂאִים לְאוֹר עוֹלָם, לְמַעַן בָּצַע וְתִהְיֶה בְּנֵי תִבְלָה, וְאֵת טוֹבַת צִיּוֹן לֹא בִקְשׁוּ.

29 He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

הִנֵּה יִהְיֶה אוֹסֵר זֹאת; לָכֵן צִוָּה יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים עַל כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשִׁמּוֹר חֶסֶד; וְהַחֲסֹד הוּא אֲהָבָה. וְאִם אֵין בָּהֶם חֶסֶד אֵין הֵם מֵאוֹמָה.

30 Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love, and except they should have charity they were nothing.

על כן, אֱלֹהֵי הַיְהוּדִים בָּהֶם חֶסֶד, לֹא הָיוּ מְנִיחִים
לְאַבְדֹן הָעוֹבֵד בְּצִיּוֹן.

Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

אֲפֹר הָעוֹבֵד בְּצִיּוֹן יַעֲבֹד לְשֵׁם צִיּוֹן; כִּי אִם
תִּמְוֹרֶת כֶּסֶף יַעֲבֹד, אָבוֹד יֵאבֹד.

31 But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

וְעוֹד צִוָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי אִישׁ לֹא יִרְצַח וְלֹא
יִשְׁקַר וְלֹא יִגְנֹב, וְכִי לֹא יִשָּׂא אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהָיו
לְשׁוֹא; וְלֹא יִקְנֹא, וְלֹא יִשְׂתִּי אִיבָה; וְכִי לֹא
יִרִיב אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, וְלֹא יִזְנֶה; וְלֹא יַעֲשֶׂה כָּכָל
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה, אָבוֹד יֵאבֹד.

32 And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

כִּי אִם אֶחָד מִן הָעוֹנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה אֵינְנוּ מַאֲת
יְהוָה; כִּי הוּא עוֹשֶׂה אֶת הַטּוֹב לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם;
וְהוּא לֹא יַעֲשֶׂה דָּבָר, כִּי אִם יְהִי יֵשֶׁר לָהֶם.
וְהוּא קוֹרָא לָהֶם כָּל־מַלְאָכָיו וְלִקְחַת חֶלֶק
בְּטוֹבוֹ; וְאֵין הוּא מְשִׁיב רִיקִם אִם אֶחָד מִן
הַבָּאִים אֵלָיו, שְׂחֹר כָּלָבוֹ, עֶבֶד כְּחַפְּשִׁי, זָכָר
כְּנַקְבָּה; וְהוּא זוֹכֵר אֶת הַכּוֹפְרִים; הַכֹּל שְׂוִים
לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, יְהוּדִי וְנִכְרִי.

33 For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

כז

27

כִּי הִנֵּה בְּאַחֲרֵית הַיָּמִים, יָמֵי הַגּוֹיִם, יְהִיו כָּל
עַמֵּי הַגּוֹיִם, וְכֵן הַיְהוּדִים, אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ
אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יְהִיו בְּאַרְצוֹת
אַחֲרוֹת, אִם בְּכָל אַרְצוֹת הָעוֹלָם, הִנֵּה כָּל־
יְהוּדֵי שְׂכוּרִים מִעוֹן וְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת.

1 But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

וּבָבוֹא הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, מִעַם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת יִפְקְדוּ,
בְּרַעַם וּבְרַעַשׁ וּקוֹל גָּדוֹל; סוּפָה וּסְעָרָה וְלֶהֱב
אֵשׁ אוֹכְלָה.

2 And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

וְהָיוּ כְּחֶלֶם חֲזוֹן לַיְלָה, כָּל הַגּוֹיִם הַצּוֹבְאִים
עַל צִיּוֹן וְהַמְצִיקִים לָהּ; וְהָיָה לָהֶם כְּאִשׁוֹר
יְחֹלֶם הָרָעֵב, וְהִנֵּה אוֹכֵל וְהִקִּיץ וְרִיקָה נִפְשׁוֹ;
וְכַאֲשֶׁר יְחֹלֶם הַצָּמָא, וְהִנֵּה שׁוֹתֶה וְהִקִּיץ
וְהִנֵּה עֵיט, וְנִפְשׁוֹ שׁוֹקֵקָה; כֵּן יְהִי הַמּוֹן כָּל
הַגּוֹיִם הַצּוֹבְאִים עַל הַר צִיּוֹן.

3 And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

כִּי הִנֵּה, כְּלָכֶם הָעוֹשִׂים עוֹל, הַתְּמַהְמוֹהוּ
וְהַתְּמַהְמוֹהוּ, הַשְׁתַּעֲשְׂעוּ וְשַׁעֲנוּ; שְׂכָרוֹ וְלֹא יֵין, נָעוּ
וְלֹא שִׁכָּר.

4 For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

- 5 For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.
- 6 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.
- 7 And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.
- 8 Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.
- 9 But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;
- 10 But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.
- 11 And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.
- 12 Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.
- 13 And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.
- 14 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good
- כִּי נִסַּךְ עֲלֵיכֶם יְהוָה רוּחַ תַּרְדֵּמָה, כִּי עֲצַמְתֶּם אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם וּמָאַסְתֶּם בְּנְבִיאִים, וְאֶת רְאשֵׁיכֶם וְהַחֲוִזִּים כָּסָה מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹנְכֶם.
- וְהָבִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲלֵיכֶם דְּבָרֵי סֵפֶר, וְהֵם דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר נָמוּ שָׁנְתֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה, חֲתוּם יִהְיֶה הַסֵּפֶר; וּבּוֹ דְּבָרֵי חֲזוֹת מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, מֵרֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם וְעַד אַחֲרִיתוֹ.
- עַל כֵּן, מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים, לֹא יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים בְּעַת הָרָשָׁעָה וְתוֹעֵבוֹת בְּנֵי תָבַל; אֲכֹן, נִצּוֹר מֵהֶם יִהְיֶה הַסֵּפֶר.
- וְאוּלָּם יִנָּתֶן הַסֵּפֶר לְאִישׁ וְהוּא יִתֵּן אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַכְּתוּב בּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם דְּבָרֵי יְשֻׁנֵי עֶפְרָה, אֲכֹן הוּא יִתֵּנָם לְאַחֵר.
- אֲךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים לֹא יִמְסֹר וְאִף אֶת הַסֵּפֶר לֹא יִתֵּן; כִּי חֲתוּם יִהְיֶה בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים, וְדְבָרֵי חֲזוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִחְתָּמִים, נִצּוֹרִים יִהְיוּ בַּסֵּפֶר עַד לְעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֹׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, בָּהּ יֵצְאוּ לְאוֹר; וְהִנֵּה מִגְלִים הֵם אֶת הַכֹּל, מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם וְעַד אַחֲרִיתוֹ.
- בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָאוּ דְּבָרֵי הַסֵּפֶר הַחֲתוּמִּים מֵעַל גִּגּוֹת הַבָּתִּים; בְּכַח הַמְּשִׁיחַ יִקְרָאוּ; וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים יִתְגַּלוּ לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם, אֶת אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹלָם הָיָה בְּקִרְבָּם וְאֶת אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה עַד קֵץ הָעוֹלָם.
- לְכֵן, בְּיוֹם יִנָּתֶן הַסֵּפֶר לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִזְכַּרְתִּי, יִסְתֵּר הַסֵּפֶר מֵעֵינֵי יוֹשְׁבֵי תָבַל, לְמַעַן לֹא תִרְאֶהוּ עֵין אִישׁ, זוּלַת שְׁלֹשָׁה עֲדִים אֲשֶׁר יִחְזּוּ בּוֹ, בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים; זוּלַת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יִנָּתֶן הַסֵּפֶר לְיָדוֹ; וְהֵם יַעֲיִדוּ עַל אֱמֻת הַסֵּפֶר וְעַל הַדְּבָרִים הַכְּתוּבִים בּוֹ.
- וְלֹא יִהְיֶה אִישׁ אֲחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִרְאֶה אֶת הַסֵּפֶר, זוּלַת מִתֵּי מַעַט, כְּרִצּוֹן אֱלֹהִים, בְּעֶבְרַת עֵינָיו עַל דְּבָרֵי לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי דְבָרֵי הַנֶּאֱמָנִים יִדְּבְרוּ כְּאֵלוּ מֵאֵת הַמֵּתִים.
- עַל כֵּן, יוֹסִיף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְהוֹצִיא אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַסֵּפֶר לְאוֹר, וְהוּא יְכִוֵּן אֶת דְּבָרֵי בְּפִי עֲדִים,

- כַּמְסַפֵּר אֲשֶׁר יִיטֵב בְּעֵינָיו; וְהוּא לֹאֲשֶׁר יִמָּאֵס
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים!
- וְהִיָּה כִּי יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים לְאֲשֶׁר יִנְתֵּן הַסֵּפֶר
לְיָדוֹ: קַח אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם
חֲתוּמִּים, וְתִמְסְרֵם לְאַחֵר, לְמַעַן יֵרְאֶה אוֹתָם
אֶל יוֹדְעֵי סֵפֶר לֵאמֹר: קְרָא נָא זֶה. וְאָמַר
הַמְּלָמֵד: הִבֵּא נָא הִנֵּה אֶת הַסֵּפֶר וְאֶקְרָא
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים.
- וְיֹאמְרוּ כֵּן הַמְּלָמְדִּים לְמַעַן תִּפְאָרְתָּם בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי
תִּבְלָה וּלְמַעַן בְּצַעַר, וְלֹא לְמַעַן תִּפְאָרֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר הָאִישׁ: לֹא אוּכַל הֵבִיא אֶת הַסֵּפֶר,
כִּי חֲתוּם הוּא.
- וְאָמַר הַמְּלָמֵד: לֹא אוּכַל לְקְרֹאָהוּ.
- עַל כֵּן, יִתֵּן יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים שְׁנִית אֶת הַסֵּפֶר
וְדְבָרָיו לְיָדֵי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַע סֵפֶר; וְאָמַר הָאִישׁ
אֲשֶׁר לֹא לָמַד: לֹא יָדַעְתִּי סֵפֶר.
- וְיֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֵלָיו: לֹא יִקְרְאוּם יוֹדְעֵי
סֵפֶר, כִּי מֵאֲסוּם, וּבְיָדֵי לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה
אֲשֶׁר לִי; לְכֵן תִּקְרָא אֹתָהּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
אֶתֵּן לָךְ.
- אַל תִּשְׁלַח יָדְךָ אֶל הַדְּבָרִים הַחֲתוּמִּים, אֲשֶׁר
אֲנִכִּי אוֹצִיָּאֵם לְאוֹר בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי;
וְהִרְאִיתִי לְבִנֵּי הָאָדָם כִּי בְיָדִי לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת
הַמַּעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר לִי.
- לְכֵן, אַחֵר קְרָאָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיךָ,
וְאַחֵר קִבַּלְךָ אֶת הָעֵדִים אֲשֶׁר הִגַּדְתִּי לָךְ עַל
אוֹדוֹתֵיָהֶם, אַזִּי תַּחֲתָם אֹתָהּ אֶת הַסֵּפֶר שְׁנִית
וְתִסְתִּירָהוּ לִי לְמַעַן אֲשַׁמֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
לֹא קְרָאתָ, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֶרְאֶה בְּחֻמְתִּי לְגִלּוֹת
אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים לְבִנֵּי הָאָדָם.
- כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים, וְאֲנִכִּי אֱלֹהֵי פְלָאוֹת; וְאֲנִי
אֶרְאֶה לְכָל בְּנֵי תִבְלָה כִּי אֶחָד אֲנִי אֶתְמוּל,
הַיּוֹם וְלָעוֹלָם; לֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה דְבַר בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי
אָדָם כִּי אִם כְּפִי אֲמוֹנָתָם.
- וְיוֹסִיף יְהוָה וְיֹאמַר אֶל אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִנְתֵּנוּ לְיָדוֹ:
- 15 But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.
- 16 And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.
- 17 And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.
- 18 Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.
- 19 Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.
- 20 Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.
- 21 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.
- 22 Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.
- 23 For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.
- 24 And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

- 25 Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—
- יֵעַן כִּי נִגַּשׁ הָעָם הַזֶּה, בְּפִיו וּבִשְׂפָתָיו כְּבֹדוֹנִי, וְלִבּוֹ רָחַק מִמֶּנִּי, וְתֹהִי יִרְאַתָּם אֹתִי מִצִּוּת אֲנָשִׁים מִלְּמֻדָּה,
- 26 Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.
- לְכֵן, הִנְנִי יוֹסֵף לְהַפְלִיא אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה הַפְּלִא וּפְלֵא; וְאֶבְדָּה חֲכָמַת חֲכָמָיו וּבִינָה נִבְנְיוֹ תִסְתַּתֵּר.
- 27 And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?
- הוֹי, הַמַּעֲמִיקִים מִיְהוָה לְסַתֵּר עֲצָה; וְהִיָּה בְּמַחְשָׁו מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וַיֹּאמְרוּ: מִי רֹאֵנוּ וּמִי יֹדְעֵנוּ? הַפְּכֶכֶם אִם כְּחֹמֶר הַיֵּצֵר יִחֲשָׁב. כִּי יֹאמֶר מַעֲשֵׂה לַעֲשֹׂהוּ לֹא עָשִׂנִי, וַיֵּצֵר אֹמֶר לַיֵּצֵר לֹא הָבִין?
- 28 But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.
- וְכֵן אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת: אֶרְאֶה לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כִּי עוֹד מְעַט מִזֶּמֶר, וְשֵׁב לְבָנוֹן לְכַרְמֵל; וְהַכַּרְמֵל לִיעֵר יִחֲשָׁב.
- 29 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.
- וְשָׁמְעוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא הַחֲרָשִׁים דְּבָרֵי סֵפֶר; וּמֵאֲפֹל וּמִחֹשֶׁךְ עֵינֵי עֹרְמִים תִּרְאֶינָה.
- 30 And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.
- וַיִּסְפּוּ עָנָוִים בִּיהוָה שְׂמִיחָה; וְאֶבְיוֹנֵי אָדָם בְּקִדּוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל יִגִּילוּ.
- 31 For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;
- חֵי יְהוָה כִּי יֵרְאוּ כִּי אָפֶס עָרִיצ וְכָלָה לֵץ; וְנִכְרְתוּ כָּל שֹׁקֵדֵי אָוֶן.
- 32 And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.
- מַחֲטִיאֵי אָדָם בְּדָבָר וּלְמוֹכִיחַ בִּשְׁעַר יִקְשׁוּ; וַיִּטּוּ בְּתוֹחוֹ צְדִיק.
- 33 Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.
- לְכֵן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר פָּדָה אֶת אַבְרָהָם: לֹא עֲתָה יִבּוֹשׁ יַעֲקֹב, וְלֹא עֲתָה פָּנָיו יִחְוֶרוּ.
- 34 But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.
- כִּי בִּרְאֹתוֹ יִלְדָּיו מַעֲשֵׂה יָדַי בְּקִרְבּוֹ יִקְדִּישׁוּ שְׁמִי; וְהִקְדִּישׁוּ אֶת קִדּוֹשׁ יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל יִירָאוּ.
- 35 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine.
- וַיִּדְעוּ תַעֲיֵי רוּחַ בִּינָה; וְרוֹגְגִים יִלְמְדוּ לָקַח.

כח

28

- 1 And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.
- 2 And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.
- 3 For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—
- 4 And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.
- 5 And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;
- 6 Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.
- 7 Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.
- 8 And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.
- 9 Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.
- 10 And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.
- ועתה, אחי, דברתי אליכם כפי אשר הציקתני הרוח; על כן אדע אשר בוא יבואו הדברים האלה.
- אכן, ערך רב יהיה לבני האדם בדברים אשר יכתבו בספר, ובפרט לזרענו, אשר הם שארית בית ישראל.
- וביום ההוא תבנינה כנסיות, אך לא לשם יהוה, וכה תאמר האחת לרעותה: הנה, אני, אני ליהוה; ותאמרנה זולתותיהן אף הן: אני, אני ליהוה; וכה יאמר כל המקים כנסיות ולא לשם יהוה.
- ותרבנה אשה באחותה; וכמריהן יתנכחו איש עם אחיו וילמדו בלמודם ויתפחשו לרוח הקדש אשר ממנה נוב שפתיים.
- והם שוללים את כח אלהים, קדוש ישראל; וכה יאמרו אל העם: שמעונו והאזינו למצוותינו; כי אין היום אלהים, כי בצע האדון והגואל את מעשהו, ונתן את כחו לאדם.
- הנה, שמעו אל מצותי; ואם יאמרו כי יש פלא מאת יהוה, אל תאמינו; כי היום הוא איננו אלהי פלאות; הוא בצע את מעשהו.
- ורבים יאמרו: אכול ושתו ועלז, כי מחר נמות, וטוב יהיה לנו.
- ואף רבים יאמרו: אכול ושתו ועלז, אך ירא את אלהים; מנקה הוא את העובר עברת חטא קטן; אכן, שקרו מעט; נצלו איש בדבר הנעתק מפיו; כרו שחת לרעכם, אין רע בזאת; אכן, עשו את כל הדברים האלה, כי מחר נמות; והיה אם אמןם נאשם, יכנו אלהים מלקות מעט ובאחרית נחשע במלכות אלהים.
- ורבים יהיו המלמדים בדרך זאת, שקר ושוא ותורות סכלות; ויתנפחו בגאות לבם ויבקשו להעמיק הסתיר את עצתם מיהוה; ובמחשף יהיו מעשיהם.
- ודם הקדושים יצעק עליהם מן האדמה.

- 11 אכן, הם כלם סרו מן הדרך; השחת נשחתו.
11 Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.
- 12 מפני גאונתם, ומפני מורי שקר ותורות כזב נשחתו כנסייתיהם, ומורמות הן, וגפוחות הן בגאותן.
12 Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.
- 13 גוזלים הם את העני מפני פאר מקדשיהם; גוזלים הם את העני מפני פאר לבושים; ורודפים הם את העני ואת רף הלבב, כי ברב גאותם התנפחו;
13 They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.
- 14 ומקשים הם ערף וגושאים ראש; ומפני גאותם ורשעתם ותועבותיהם וזנוניהם תעו כלם, זולת מעטים אשר הם העננים הנוהים אחר המשיח; אך מנהגים הם עד אשר טועים פעמים רבות, כי למודם מצוות אנשים.
14 They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.
- 15 הוי, חכמים, מלמדים ועשירים, הנפוחים בגאות לבם, וכל המטיפים תורות כזב וכל הזונים והמסלפים את דרך יהוה הישרה; הוי, הוי, הוי להם, נאום יהוה, אל שדי, כי ישלכו שאולה!
15 O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!
- 16 הוי למטים בתוהו צדיק, מגדפי הטוב האומרים אשר אין ערך לו! כי בוא יבוא היום אשר יפקד יהוה אלהים מהרה את כל יושבי תבל; וביום אשר מלאה תהיה סאת עוונם אבוד יאבדו.
16 Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.
- 17 אך אם ישובו יושבי תבל מרשעתם ומתועבותיהם, לא ישמדו, נאום יהוה צבאות.
17 But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 18 אולם הכנסייה הגדולה והנתעבת, זונת כל הארץ, נפול תפל אל העפר, וגדולה תהיה מפלתה.
18 But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.
- 19 כי רעוד תרעד מלכות השטן ואת שיכיה יש לעורר להנחם מחסא פן יאחזם השטן בזקי הנצח אשר לו, ויתעוררו הם אל כעס ויאבדו.
19 For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;
- 20 כי ביום ההוא יעלה השטן חמה בלב בני האדם, ויעורר זעמם על אשר טוב הוא.
20 For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.
- 21 ואחרים, אותם ירגיע וישככם אל בטחה בבשר, עד אשר יאמרו: הכל שלום בציון; אכן,
21 And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and

ציון מצלחת, הכל טוב. כִּי יוֹלִיף הַשֵּׁטָן אֶת
נַפְשָׁם שׁוֹלֵל יוֹבִילִם בְּרַב הַשְׁגָּחָתוֹ אֵלַי שַׁחַת.

thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully
down to hell.

וְאַחֲרֵים, אֲלֵיהֶם יְדַבֵּר חֲלָקוֹת בְּאָמְרוֹ לָהֶם
אֲשֶׁר אֵין שָׂאוֹל; וַיֹּאמֶר אֲלֵיהֶם: אֵינֶנִּי שֵׁטָן,
כִּי אֵין כָּל שֵׁטָן; כִּי יִלְחֹשׁ בְּאֲזִנֵּיהֶם,
עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵאָחֲזוּם בְּזָקָיו הַנּוֹרָאִים, אֲשֶׁר
מֵהֶם אֵין תְּקוּמָה.

22 And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell;
and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he
whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains,
from whence there is no deliverance.

אָכֵן, יֵאָחֲזוּם מָוֶת וּשְׂאוֹל; וּמָוֶת, וּשְׂאוֹל,
וְהַשֵּׁטָן וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִתְפָּשׁ בִּידָם, עֲמוּד יַעֲמֻדוּ
לִפְנֵי כֹס אֱלֹהִים לְהַשְׁפֵּט עַל פִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם;
וּמִשָּׁם יֵלְכוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם הַמוֹכֵן לָהֶם, מִקּוֹה
אֵשׁ וְגִפְרִית, אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֲנוּי אֵין קֵץ.

23 Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the
devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the
throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence
they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and
brimstone, which is endless torment.

עַל כֵּן, הוּא לְשָׁלוֹ בְּצִיּוֹן! 24 Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

הוּא לְקוֹרָא: הַכֹּל שְׁלוֹם! 25 Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

הוּא לְמַאֲזִין אֶל מִצְוֹת אֲנָשִׁים וְשׁוֹלֵל אֶת כֹּחַ
אֱלֹהִים וּמַתַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ!

26 Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and
denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

הוּא לְאוֹמֵר: קִבְּלָנוּ וְאֵינָנוּ צְרִיכִים עוֹד!

27 Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

אָכֵן, הוּא לְכָל הַרוֹעֲדִים וְהַזֹּעֲמִים מִפְּנֵי אֲמַת
אֱלֹהִים! כִּי הַבְּנוּי עַל סֵלַע יִקְבַּל זֹאת בְּשִׁמְחָה;
אֲךְ הַבְּנוּי עַל יְסוֹד חוֹל יִרְעַד פֶּן יִפֹּל.

28 And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of
the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it
with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth
lest he shall fall.

הוּא לְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמֶר: קִבְּלָנוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,
וְאֵינָנוּ צְרִיכִים עוֹד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כִּי דִּינוּ!

29 Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and
we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: אֶתֵּן לְבִנֵּי הָאָדָם
קוֹ לָקוֹ, צוֹ לָצוֹ, זְעִיר שָׁם, זְעִיר שָׁם; וּבְרוּכִים
הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶל מִצְוֹתַי וּמִשִּׁים אָזְן לְעֻצָּתִי,
כִּי הֵם יִלְמְדוּ חֲכָמָה; כִּי לְאֲשֶׁר יִקְבַּל אֶתֵּן עוֹד;
וּמִן הָאוֹמְרִים: דִּינוּ, יִלְקַח אִף אֶת אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.

30 For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men
line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and
blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto
my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth
I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from
them shall be taken away even that which they have.

אָרוּר הַבּוֹטֵחַ בְּאָדָם, וְשֵׁם אֶת הַבֶּשֶׂר זְרוֹעוֹ,
וַיִּשְׁמַע אֶל מִצְוֹת אֲנָשִׁים, בְּלֹתִי אִם נִתְּנוּ
מִצְוֹתֵיהֶם מִכֹּחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

31 Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or
shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be
given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

הוּא לְגוֹיִּים, אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צָבָאוֹת! אִף כִּי
אֲשַׁלַּח זְרוֹעֵי אֱלֹהִים יוֹם לְיוֹמוֹ, הֵם יִתְכַּחְשׁוּ
לִי; אוּלַּם, אִם יִנָּחֲמוּ מִחֲטָא וַיְבֹאוּ אֵלַי, רַחֵם

32 Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwith-
standing I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day,
they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith

אֲרַחֵם עֲלֵיהֶם, נְאוּם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים; כִּי וְרוּעִי
שְׁלוּחָה כָּל הַיּוֹם, אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי צְבָאוֹת.

the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is
lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

כֵּס

29

בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא רַבִּים יִהְיוּ אֲשֶׁר אוֹסִיף לַעֲשׂוֹת
מַעֲשֵׂה פֶלֶא בְּיַנְיָהֶם, לְמַעַן אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתוֹתַי
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהוֹסִיף שְׁנִית יְדִי
לְהָשִׁיב אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה;

1 But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a
marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which
I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again
the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

וּלְמַעַן אֶזְכֹּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי בְרִיתִי אֵלֶיךָ, נְפִי,
וְכֵן אֶל אָבִיךָ, לְפָקֵד אֶת זִרְעֶכֶם; וּבְעֵבֹר
יֵצְאוּ דְבָרֵי זִרְעֶכֶם מִפִּי אֶל זִרְעֶכֶם; וּדְבָרֵי
יִשְׂרָאֵל אֶל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ, נֹס לְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר
מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה;

2 And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto
thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed;
and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth
unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the
earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

וַיַּעַן כִּי יִשְׂרָקוּ דְּבָרֵי, יֹאמְרוּ רַבִּים מִן הַגּוֹיִם:
סֵפֶר מִקְרָא! סֵפֶר מִקְרָא! יֵשׁ לָנוּ סֵפֶר מִקְרָא
וְאֵין סֵפֶר מִקְרָא נֹסֶף עָלֵינוּ.

3 And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall
say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any
more Bible.

אָךְ כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים: הוּא, סְכָלִים,
יִהְיֶה לָהֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא; וְהוּא יֵצֵא מֵאֵת
הַיְּהוּדִים, עִם בְּרִיתִי מִקְדָּם. וְאִיזוֹ תוֹדָה נִתְּנָה
לְיְהוּדִים עַל סֵפֶר הַמִּקְרָא אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּהוּ
מִיָּדָם? וּמָה כּוֹנֵנֶת הַגּוֹיִם? הַזּוֹכְרִים הֵם אֶת
יְגִיעֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, אֶת עֲמָלָם וְאֶת מְכַאוֹבָם
וְשִׁקִּידָתָם לְמַעַן בְּהִבְיָאֵם יְשׁוּעָה לַגּוֹיִם?

4 But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it
shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And
what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them?
Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and
the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in
bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

הוּא, אַתֶּם הַגּוֹיִם, הַזּוֹכְרֶתֶם אֶת הַיְּהוּדִים,
עִם בְּרִיתִי מִקְדָּם? לֹא! וְאַתֶּם קִלְלֶתֶם אוֹתָם
בְּשִׁנְאָתְכֶם וְלֹא בְקִשְׁתֶּם לְהַשִּׁיבָם. אָךְ אֲנִכִּי
אֲשִׁיב אֶת כָּל אֱלֹהֵי עַל רֹאשְׁכֶם; כִּי אֲנִי,
יְהוָה, לֹא שָׁכַחְתִּי אֶת עַמִּי.

5 O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant
people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have
not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things
upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

סְכָל אַתָּה הָאוֹמֵר: סֵפֶר מִקְרָא, יֵשׁ לָנוּ
סֵפֶר מִקְרָא וְאֵין צָרָה לָנוּ בְּסֵפֶר מִקְרָא נֹסֶף.
הַקִּבְּלֶתֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא וְלֹא מִיַּד הַיְּהוּדִים?

6 Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no
more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי רַב מִסְפַּר הָאֲמֹת מֵאַחַת?
הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, יִצְרַתִּי אֶת
כָּל הָאָדָם וְכִי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת יוֹשְׁבֵי אֲרָצוֹת הַיָּם? וְכִי
שִׁלְטוֹנִי בַּשָּׁמַיִם מִמַּעַל וּבָאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת? וְאֲנִי
מוֹצִיא אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהֵי בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, אֵף עַל כָּל
אֲמֹת הָאָרֶץ.

7 Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that
I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those
who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above
and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children
of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

עַל מָה הִתְלוֹנְנֶתֶם, עַל אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ עוֹד

8 Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word?

מִדְבָּרִי? הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי עֵדוּת שְׁתֵּי אֲמֹת
הִיא עֵדוּת לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֶזְכֹּר אֲמֶה
אֶחָת כְּזֹכֵר אֶת מִשְׁנֶה? עַל כֵּן דִּבַּרְי אֶל אֲמֶה
אֶחָת הֵם כְּדִבָּרִי אֶל זִוְלָתָהּ. וּבְהִלָּךְ שְׁתֵּי
הָאֲמֹת יִחָדּוּ, כֵּן תִּלָּךְ עֵדוּתָן יִחָדּוּ.

וְזֹאת עוֹשָׂה אֲנִי לְמַעַן הוֹכֵחַ לְרַבִּים, כִּי אֶחָד
אֲנִכִּי אֶתְמוּל וְהַיּוֹם וּלְעוֹלָם, וְכִי אוֹצִיא אֶת
דִּבְרֵי כְּפִי רְצוֹנִי. וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי דִּבָּר אֶחָד,
אֵל לָכֶם לְחֹשֵׁב כִּי אֵין בִּי לְדַבֵּר שֵׁנִית; כִּי טָרֵם
כְּלָתָה מְלֹאכְתִּי; וְלֹא תִשָּׁלֵם הִיא עַד קֵץ
הָאָדָם, וְאִי לֹא מֵאֵז וְעַד עוֹלָם.

וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר בִּידְכֶם סֵפֶר מִקְרָא, אֵל לָכֶם
לְחֹשֵׁב כִּי יֵשׁ בּוֹ כָּל דִּבְרִי, וְכִי לֹא אֶצְוֶה
לְהוֹסִיף כְּתִיבָה.

כִּי הִנְנִי מְצַוֶּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם, בְּמִזְרָח
וּבִמְעָרָב, בְּצָפוֹן וּבִדְרוֹם וּבְאֵי הַיָּם, לְכַתֵּב
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם; כִּי עַל כֵּי
הַסְּפָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִכְתְּבוּ, אֲשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעוֹלָם,
כָּל אִישׁ כַּמַּעֲשֵׂיוֹ, עַל כֵּי הַכְּתוּב.

כִּי הִנֵּה אֲדַבֵּר אֶל הַיְּהוּדִים וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת;
וְכֵן אֲדַבֵּר אֶל הַנִּפְתִּיִם וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת; וְכֵן
אֲדַבֵּר אֶל שְׂאֵר שְׁבֵטֵי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר
הִגְלִיתִי, וְהֵם יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת; וְאִי אֲדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל
אֲמֹת הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵן יִכְתְּבוּ זֹאת.

וְיָבוֹא הַיּוֹם, וְיִהְיוּ דִבְרֵי הַנִּפְתִּיִם בְּיַד הַיְּהוּדִים,
וְיִהְיוּ דִבְרֵי הַיְּהוּדִים בְּיַד הַנִּפְתִּיִם; וְיִהְיוּ דִבְרֵי
שְׁבֵטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֹדִים בְּיַד הַנִּפְתִּיִם
וְהַיְּהוּדִים; וְיִהְיוּ דִבְרֵי הַנִּפְתִּיִם וְהַיְּהוּדִים
בְּיַד שְׁבֵטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֹדִים.

וְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה, יִקְבְּצוּ
אֶל בֵּיתָם, אֶל אֶרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם; וְאִי דִבְרֵי
יֹאסֵף לְאֶחָד. וְאֲנִכִּי אֶרְאֶה לְנִלְחָמִים עַל
דִּבְרֵי וְעַל עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה,
כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים וְאֲנִי כְּרָתִי בְרִית עִם אֲבְרָהָם
לְזָכֹר אֶת זִרְעוֹ לְעוֹלָם.

Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

9 And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

10 Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

11 For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

12 For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13 And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

14 And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

ל

30

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲדַבֵּר נָא אֵלֵיכֶם;
כִּי אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אֶנִּיחַ לָכֶם כִּי תִחָשְׁבוּ אֲשֶׁר

1 And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more

רַבָּה צְדָקְתְּכֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר תִּהְיֶה צְדָקַת הַגּוֹיִים.
כִּי הִנֵּה, אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים,
וְאִבְדֶּתֶם כָּלְכֶם כְּמוֹתָם; וּבְפָנַי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
נִאֲמָרוּ, אֵל נָא תִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי יֵאבְדוּ הַגּוֹיִים כָּלִיל.

כִּי הִנֵּה אוֹמֵר אֲנִי אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִנְחָמוּ
מִחֻטָּא מִן הַגּוֹיִים, עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה הֵמָּה; וְכָל
אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנְחָמוּ מִחֻטָּא מִן הַיְּהוּדִים, הִשְׁלַךְ
יִשְׁלָכֻהוּ; כִּי לֹא יִכְרֹת הָאֵב בְּרִית, כִּי אִם עִם
הַנִּחָמִים מִחֻטָּא וּמֵאֲמִינִים בְּבָנָו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

וְעַתָּה אֲנִיבֵא עוֹד מִקְצַת דְּבָרִים עַל הַיְּהוּדִים
וְעַל הַגּוֹיִים. כִּי הִיָּה אַחֵר צֵאת הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה
לְאוֹר, אָכֵן, אַחֵר הִכְתָּבוּ לְגוֹיִם וְהִתְחַמְּנוּ שְׁנֵית
לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, רַבִּים יִהְיוּ הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּדְבָרִים
הַכְתוּבִים; וְהֵם יוֹצִיאוּם אֶל שְׂאֵרֵית זֶרְעֵנוּ.

אֲזַי תִּדְעַ שְׂאֵרֵית זֶרְעֵנוּ עַל אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ,
מֵה הִבִּיאֵנוּ לְצֵאת מִירוּשָׁלַם, וְכִי זֶרְעֵנוּ
הוּא צֶאֱצָאֵי הַיְּהוּדִים.

וְתִכְרֹז בְּקִרְבָּם בְּשׁוֹרֵת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְכִן
יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶל יְדִיעַת יֵשׁוּעַ
הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בְּקִרְבָּם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

אֲזַי יִגִּילוּ, כִּי יִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר הִבְרַכָּה הַזֹּאת מִיַּד
אֱלֹהִים הַיָּא; וְכִסּוֹת הַחֹשֶׁכָה תִּחַל לְהִשָּׁמֵט
מֵעֵינֵיהֶם; וְלֹא יַעֲבְרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם דּוֹרוֹת רַבִּים עַד
אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ עִם טָהוֹר וְנָעִים.

וְאַף הַיְּהוּדִים הַנִּפְּוֹצִים יִחַלוּ לְהֵאֱמִין בְּמָשִׁיחַ,
וְהֵם יִחַלוּ לְהִקְבֹּץ יַחַד עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְכָכָל
אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּמָשִׁיחַ יִהְיוּ לְעַם נָעִים.

וְתִבּוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִבְצֹעַ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים
אֶת מַעֲשָׂהוּ בֵּין כָּל הָאֻמּוֹת, וְהַמִּשְׁפָּחוֹת,
וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת וְהָעַמִּים, לְהִבְיֵא אֶת הַשְּׁבִי
עִמּוֹ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.

וְשִׁפֵּט יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּצֶדֶק דְּלִים, וְהוֹכִיחַ
בְּמִישׁוֹר לְעַנּוֹי אָרֶץ; וְהִכָּה אָרֶץ בְּשֶׁבֶט פִּי,
וּבְרוּחַ שְׁפָתָיו יָמִית רָשָׁע.

righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

2 For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

3 And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

4 And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5 And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

6 And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and delightsome people.

7 And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people.

8 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

9 And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

- 10 For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.
- כִּי בְּמַהֲרָה יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יַפְרִיד יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים הַפָּרִד וְחָלַק בֵּין הָעַמִּים; אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים יִשְׁמִיד וְעַל עַמּוֹ יָחוּס, אִף אִם יִשְׁמִיד אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים בָּאֵשׁ.
- 11 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.
- וְהָיָה צְדָק אֲזוֹר מִתְּנָיו, וְהָאֱמוּנָה אֲזוֹר חֻלְצָיו.
- 12 And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.
- וְגַר זֶאֵב עִם כֶּבֶשׂ, וְנֹמֵר עִם גְּדִי יִרְבֹּץ; וְעֵגֶל וְכִפִּיר וּמִרְיָא יִחָדּוּ, וְנֹעַר קִטָּן נִהְגֵּם בָּם.
- 13 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
- וּפָרָה וְדֹב תִּרְעִינָה, יִחָדּוּ יִרְבְּצוּ יְלָדֵיהֶן; וְאַרְיֵה בִּבְקָר יֹאכַל תֶּבֶן.
- 14 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.
- וְשֹׁשֹׁעַ יוֹנֵק עַל חֹר פֶּתֶן, וְעַל מְאוֹרֵת צִפְּפוֹנִי גִמּוֹל יָדוֹ הִדָּה.
- 15 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.
- לֹא יָרְעוּ וְלֹא יִשְׁחִיתוּ בְּכָל הָר קֹדֶשִׁי: כִּי מְלֵאָה הָאָרֶץ דַּעַה אֶת יְהוָה, כַּמַּיִם לַיָּם מְכַסִּים.
- 16 Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.
- אֲזִי יוֹדְעוּ דְּבָרֵי כָּל הָעַמִּים; אָכֵן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים יוֹדְעוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 17 There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.
- כִּי אֵין סוֹד בְּלִתִּי אִם נִגְלָה; אֵין מַעֲשֵׂה מַחְשָׁן בְּלִתִּי אִם יוֹצֵא לְאוֹר וְאֵין דְּבַר חֲתוּם עַל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִפְתָּח.
- 18 Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.
- עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִגְלוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם יִתְגַּלוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא; וְלִשְׁטָן לֹא יִהְיֶה עוֹד שְׁלֹטוֹן עַל לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם עַת אֲרַכָּה. וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אַכְלָה אֶת דְּבָרֵי.

לֹא

31

- 1 And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אַכְלָה לְנִבְא אֲלֵיכֶם, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים. וְלֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב כִּי אִם דְּבָרִים אֲחָדִים, אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ; אִף מִדְּבָרֵי אַחֵי, יַעֲקֹב, לֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב כִּי אִם מֵעַט מֵהֶם.
- 2 Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficeth me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.
- לְכֹן דִּי לִי בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר פְּתַבְתִּי, וְרַק דְּבָרִים אֲחָדִים עָלִי לְהַגִּיד עַל תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ; עַל כֵּן אֲדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם בְּפִשְׁטוּת, כַּפִּי פִּשְׁטוּת נְבוּאָתִי.

- 3 כי נפְשִׁי מִתְעַנֶּגֶת בַּפִּשְׁטוּת; כִּי בְּאִפֹּן הַזֶּה פּוֹעֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אֲכֹן יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים נוֹתֵן אוֹר לְבִינָה; וְהוּא מְדַבֵּר אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם כְּפִי לְשׁוֹנָם אֶל בִּינָתָם.
- 4 Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.
- 5 וְאֲכֹן, אִם יִהְיֶה עַל שֵׁה אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר קָדוֹשׁ הוּא, לְהַטְבִּיל בְּמִים כְּדִי לְקַיֵּם אֶת כָּל הַצִּדְקָה, אַף רַב מוֹנִים צָרִיקִים אֲנַחְנוּ, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָנו קָדוֹשִׁים, לְהַטְבִּיל בְּמִים!
- 6 And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?
- 7 הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ כִּי קָדוֹשׁ הוּא? וְאִף אֲשֶׁר קָדוֹשׁ, מֵרָאָה הוּא לְבְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ כִּי הוּא מְכַנִּיעַ עֲצָמוֹ בַּבֶּשֶׁר לִפְנֵי הָאָב, וּמַעֲרִיד לִפְנֵיו כִּי יִכְנַע לוֹ בְּשִׁמְרוֹ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.
- 8 Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he sheweth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.
- 9 וְעוֹד, בְּתַתּוֹ מוֹפֵת לִפְנֵי בְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ, מֵרָאָה זֶה לָהֶם אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיְשָׁרָה וְאֶת הַשַּׁעַר הַצָּר אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יָבוֹאוּ.
- 10 And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straightness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.
- 11 וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ: לָכוּ אַחֲרַי! עַל כֵּן, אַחֲרֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, הַנוֹכַח לְלַכֵּת אַחֲרָיו בְּלִיתִי אֲשֶׁר נִרְצָה לְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת הָאָב?
- 12 And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?
- 13 וְאָמַר הָאָב: הִנֵּחֶמוּ מִחֻטָּא, הִנֵּחֶמוּ וְשׁוּבוּ וְהַטְבִּילוּ בְּשֵׁם בְּנֵי אֱהוּיָבִי.
- 14 And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.
- 15 וְהִיָּה אִף קוֹל הַבֶּן אֵלֵי לֵאמֹר: הַנִּטְבָּל בְּשָׁמִי, יִתֵּן לוֹ הָאָב אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ כְּפִי תַתּוֹ לִי; לָכוּ אַחֲרַי וַעֲשִׂיתֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר תִּרְאוּ כִּי עֲשִׂיתִים אֲנִי.
- 16 And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.
- 17 וְעַל כֵּן, אַחֲרֵי הָאֱהוּיָבִים, יִדְעִיתִי אֲשֶׁר אִם תִּלְכוּ אַחֲרַי, הֶבֶן, בְּכָל תַּכְלִית לְבַבְכֶּם, בְּלֹא חֲנִף וּבְלֹא כָזָב לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, בְּכוֹנֶת אֶמֶת, מִנְחָמִים מִחֻטָּא, בְּעֵדוּת לִפְנֵי הָאָב אֲשֶׁר חִפְצִים אֹתָם לְשֹׂאת אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ עַל יְדֵי טְבִילָה, לָרֶדֶת
- 18 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into

אַחַר אֲדוֹנֵכֶם וּמוֹשִׁיעֵכֶם אֶל הַמַּיִם עַל פִּי דְבָרוֹ,
אֲנִי תִקְבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; אֲנִי תִבּוֹא טְבִילַת
הָאֵשׁ וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; אֲנִי תוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר בְּלָשׁוֹן
מַלְאָכִים וְלִקְרֹא תְהִלּוֹת אֵל קְדוֹשׁ יִשְׂרָאֵל.

the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

אֲנִי הִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כֹּה הִיָּה אֵלַי קוֹל הַבֶּן
לְאִמִּר: אַחֲרָי אֲשֶׁר נִחַמְתֶּם מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם, וְאַחֲרָי
אֲשֶׁר הִעַדְתֶּם לִפְנֵי הָאֵב כִּי חָפְצְכֶם לְשֹׁמֵר
אֶת מִצְוֹתַי בְּטְבִילָה בַּמַּיִם, וְאַחֲרָי קְבַלְכֶם אֶת
הַטְבִּילָה בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְיִכּוּלִים אַתֶּם
דַּבֵּר בְּלָשׁוֹן חֲדָשָׁה, לָשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים, אִם
אַחֲרָי אֵלֶּה תִכְחָשׁוּ בִּי, הִנֵּה טוֹב הִיָּה לָכֶם לֹא
לֹא יִדְעַתֶּם אוֹתִי.

14 But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

וְשָׁמַעְתִּי קוֹל מִהָאֵב לְאִמִּר: אָכֵן, דְּבָרַי אֱהוּבֵי
אֱמֶת וְנֶאֱמָן; הַמְתִּמִּיד עַד הַקֵּץ, הוּא יִישָׁע.

15 And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יִדְעַתִּי מִן הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה כִּי אָדָם לֹא יִישָׁע בְּלִתִּי אִם יִתְמִיד עַד
הַקֵּץ, וְיִדְבֹק בְּמוֹפֶת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

16 And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

עַל כֵּן, עָשׂוּ נָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אִמַּרְתִּי
לָכֶם כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ אֲדוֹנֵכֶם
וְגוֹאֲלֵכֶם; כִּי בַעֲבוּר זֹאת הָרָאוּ הֵם לִי, לְמַעַן
תִּדְעוּ אֶת הַשַּׁעַר אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ תִבּוֹאוּ, וְהוּא
הַנְּחֻמָּה מִחַטָּא וְהַטְבִּילָה בַּמַּיִם; אֲנִי תִבּוֹא
מִחִילַת חַטָּאתֵיכֶם בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

17 Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

אֲנִי תִהְיֶה בְּשִׁבִּיל הַיָּשָׁר וְהַצָּר הַמוֹבִיל אֶל חַיֵּי
עוֹלָם. אָכֵן, נִכְנַסְתֶּם בַּשַּׁעַר; עָשִׂיתֶם כְּפִי
מִצְוֹת הָאֵב וְהַבֶּן; קְבַלְתֶּם אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ,
הַמְעִידָה עַל הָאֵב וְהַבֶּן וְבִזְאת יָקִים דְּבַר
הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יְהוָה, כִּי אִם תִּכְנָסוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ,
קְבַל תִּקְבְּלוּהוּ.

18 And then are ye in this straight and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אַחֲרָי אֲשֶׁר הִגַּעְתֶּם אֶל
הַשִּׁבִּיל הַיָּשָׁר וְהַצָּר הַזֶּה, אֲשִׁאלְכֶם: הֲאִם
עָשִׂיתֶם הַכֹּל? הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; כִּי לֹא
הִגַּעְתֶּם עַד הֵנָּה, כִּי אִם עַל פִּי דְבַר הַמְּשִׁיתִי,
בְּאִמּוּנָה בְּלִתִּי מַעֲרֶרֶת בּוֹ, סוֹמְכִים בְּכָל עַל
סִגְלוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר כָּחוּ רַב לוֹ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.

19 And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this straight and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

לָכֵן, עֲלֵיכֶם לָלֶכֶת קְדִימָה בַּדְּבָקוֹת בְּמִשְׁתִּיתִי,
בְּהִיוֹתְכֶם חֲדוּרֵי תִקְוָה מְזִהִירָה שְׁלֵמָה,
וְאַהֲבָה לְאֱלֹהִים וּלְכָל אָדָם. אָכֵן, אִם

20 Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ,

וְתִקְדְּמוּ, שְׂבָעִים נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ,
וְהַתְּמַדְתֶּם עַד הַקֵּץ, הִנֵּה כֹה אָמַר הָאֵב:
יְהִיו לָכֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.

and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, זֹאת הַדֶּרֶךְ; וְאִין דֶּרֶךְ
אַחֶרֶת וְאִין נָתַן שֵׁם אַחֵר תַּחַת הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר
בּוֹ יוּכַל אָדָם לְהוֹשִׁיעַ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. אָכֵן
זֹאת תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, תּוֹרַת הָאֱמֶת הָאֶחָת
אֲשֶׁר לְאֵב וְהֵבֵן וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם
אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד בְּלִי קוץ. אָמֵן.

21 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

לֵב

32

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, סְבוּרֵנִי כִּי מֵהֶרְרִים
אַתֶּם בְּדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אַחֵר
כְּנִיסַתְכֶם בְּדֶרֶךְ. אֵךְ מִדּוּעַ תִּהְיוּ בְּלִבְבְּכֶם
בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה?

1 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

הַאֵינְכֶם זֹכְרִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם, כִּי
אַחֵר קִבַּלְתֶּם אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תּוּכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר
בְּלִשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים? וְאָכֵן, אֵיךְ תּוּכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר
בְּלִשׁוֹן הַמַּלְאָכִים בְּלֹא רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ?

2 Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

מַלְאָכִים מְדַבְּרִים בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַל כֵּן הֵם
מְדַבְּרִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ. לָכֵן, אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם,
הַשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי הֵמָּה יֹאמְרוּ
לָכֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.

3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִם
לֹא תוּכְלוּ הִבִּינֶם, אִין זֹאת כִּי אִם לֹא בִקְשָׁתֶם
וְלֹא הִקְשַׁתֶּם; עַל כֵּן לֹא תוּבְאוּ אֶל הָאוֹר
וְאֶבֹד תֵּאבְדוּ בַּמַּחְשֶׁה.

4 Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

אֵךְ הִנֵּה, אוֹסִיף וְאָמַר לָכֶם, כִּי אִם תִּפְנְסוּ
בְּדֶרֶךְ וְתִקְבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תִּרְאֶה הִיא
לָכֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָלִיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת.

5 For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

הִנֵּה, זֹאת תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְלֹא תִנָּתֵן תּוֹרָה
נוֹסֶפֶת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֵּה הוּא לִפְנֵיכֶם בְּבָשָׂר.
וְאַחֵר הַתְּגַלּוּתוֹ אֵלֵיכֶם בְּבָשָׂר, תִּשְׁמְרוּ
לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר לָכֶם.

6 Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

וְעַתָּה אֲנִי, נְפִי, לֹא אוּכַל לְהוֹסִיף אֲמַר כִּי
הָרוּחַ תַּעֲצֹר נִיב שְׂפָתַי, וְאֲנִי נוֹתֵר לְהִתְאַבֵּל
עַל הָסֵר הָאֲמוּנָה וְהַרְשָׁעָה וְהַבּוֹרוּת וְקוֹשִׁי

7 And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not

הַעֲרֹף אֲשֶׁר לִבִּי הֶאֱנֹשׁ; כִּי הֵם לֹא יִחְפְּשׂוּ
דַּעַת וְלֹא יִבְיִנוּ דַּעַת רַבָּה כַּאֲשֶׁר זֶה תִּנָּתֵן לָהֶם
מִפְּרָשׁוֹת, כָּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל דָּבָר לִהְיוֹת בְּרוּר.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי עוֹדְכֶם
מִהֲרָהִים בְּלִבְכֶם; וְדָאֵב לִבִּי כִּי יֵשׁ עָלַי לְדַבֵּר
עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה; כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ לְרוּחַ הַמְּלִמְדֶּת
לְאָדָם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, תִּדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל;
כִּי הַרוּחַ הַרְעָה אֵינָה מְלִמְדֶּת אֶת הָאָדָם
לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, כִּי אִם לְחַדֵּל מִתְפַּלֵּה.

אֲךָ הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל
תָּמִיד לֹלֵא הַפּוֹנֶה; וְכִי לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ דְבָר לְשֵׁם
יְהוָה, בְּלִתִּי אִם הִתְפַּלְלֶתֶם תַּחֲלָה אֶל הָאֵב
בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי יִקְדֹּשׁ לָכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ;
בְּעִבּוֹר יִהְיֶה מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם לְטוֹבוֹת נַפְשְׁכֶם.

לג

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, נְפִי, אֵינֶנִּי יוֹכֵל לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִלְמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב עָמִי; אֲךָ חֲזָקִי
אֵינוֹ בְּכַתִּיבָה, כְּהִיּוֹתִי מִיִּטִּב דְּבָר; כִּי בְּדַבֵּר
אִישׁ בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ נוֹשָׂאֵת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֶת
דְּבָרוֹ אֶל לִבִּי הָאָדָם.

אֲךָ הִנֵּה רַבִּים הַמְּקַשִּׁים אֶת לִבִּי עַל רוּחַ
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֵין מְקוֹם לָהּ בְּקֶרֶב; עַל
כֵּן, מַשְׁלִיכִים הֵם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים
בְּהַחֲשִׁיבֵם דְּבָרֵי רִיק.

אֲךָ אֲנִי, נְפִי, כְּתַבְתִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי וּמַחֲשִׁיב
אֲנִי אֶת הַכְּתוּב כְּבַעַל עֶרֶךְ רַב וְבַעֲקֹר לְעָמִי;
כִּי מִתְפַּלֵּל אֲנִי עָלֵיהֶם תָּמִיד יוֹמָם, וּמִפְּנֵיהֶם
יִמְסוּ עֵינַי אֶת כָּרִי לִילָה; וְקָרָאתִי אֶל אֱלֹהֵי
בְּאֻמוֹנָה וְיִדְעָתִי כִּי יִשְׁמַע שְׁוֹעָתִי.

וְיִדְעָתִי כִּי יִקְדֹּשׁ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת תְּפִלָּתִי
לְטוֹבוֹת עָמִי; וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי בְּרַפְיוֹנִי,
יִגְבְּרוּ לָהֶם, כִּי יִמְשְׁכוּ הֵם אֶת לִבָּם לַעֲשׂוֹת
טוֹב; מוֹדִיעִים הֵם אוֹתָם עַל אוֹדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;
וּמְדַבְּרִים הֵם בִּישׁוּעַ וּמוֹשָׁכִים לִבָּם לְהֶאֱמִין
בּוֹ וּלְהִתְמַיֵּד עַד הַקֵּץ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא חַי עוֹלָם.

קָשִׁים עַל חֹטָא הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי, כִּפִּי
פִּשְׁטוֹת הָאָמֶת; עַל כֵּן לֹא יִכְעַס אִישׁ עָלֵיהֶם,
בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּהְיֶה בְּקֶרְבוֹ רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן.

search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given
unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8 And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your
hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For
if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray ye
would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to
pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

9 But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint;
that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first
place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will
consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be
for the welfare of thy soul.

33

1 And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught
among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking;
for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of
the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

2 But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy
Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things
away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

3 But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of
great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for
them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them;
and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

4 And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the
gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness
will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it
maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and
persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is
life eternal.

5 And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the
truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have
written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

- אֶפְאָר בְּפִשְׁטוּת; אֶפְאָר בְּאִמְתּוּת; אֶפְאָר בְּיִשׁוּעַ
אֲשֶׁר לִי, כִּי פָדָה הוּא אֶת נַפְשִׁי מִשְׁאֹל. 6 I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי חֶסֶד לְעַמִּי וְאִמּוּנָה רַבָּה בְּמַשִּׁיחַ
אֲשֶׁר אֶפְגֹּשׁ נִפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת וְזָכוֹת לֹא דָפִי
אֶצֶּל כֹּס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ. 7 I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי חֶסֶד לְיִהוּדִים; אֲכֹן, אֲדַבֵּר עַל
הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר מֵהֶם יָצֵאתִי. 8 I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.
- יֵשׁ עִמִּי אַף חֶסֶד לְגוֹיִים; אִף אֵין עִמִּי כָּל
תִּקְוָה עָלֵיהֶם, בְּלִיתִּי אִם יִתְרַצוּ לְמַשִּׁיחַ
וְיָבוֹאוּ דֶּרֶךְ הַשְּׁעָר הַצָּר, וְיֵלְכוּ בְּשִׁבִּיל הַיָּשָׁר
הַמּוֹבִיל אֶל הַחַיִּים וְיִמָּשִׁיכוּ דֶּרֶכְם בְּשִׁבִּיל
עַד קֵץ יוֹם הַמִּבְחָן. 9 I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the straight path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, וְאַף יְהוּדִים, וְכָל קְצוֹת
הָאָרֶץ, שִׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְהֶאֱמִינוּ
בְּמַשִּׁיחַ; וְאִם לֹא תֶאֱמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּמַשִּׁיחַ; וְאִם תֶּאֱמִינוּ בְּמַשִּׁיחַ, אֲכֹן
תֶּאֱמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי הֵם דְּבָרֵי הַמַּשִּׁיחַ,
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי אוֹתוֹת; וּמִלְמָדִים הֵם אֶת
כָּל הָאָדָם כִּי עָלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַטוֹב. 10 And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.
- וְאִם אֵין אֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי הַמַּשִּׁיחַ, שִׁפְטוּ אֹתָם,
כִּי יֵרָאֶה הַמַּשִּׁיחַ לָכֶם, בְּגִבּוֹרָה וּבְתַפָּאָרָה
רַבָּה בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרִית, כִּי דְבָרָיו הֵמָּה; אֲכֹן,
כֹּאֲשֶׁר אֹתָם וְאֲנִי נִעְמַד פָּנִים אֶל פָּנִים לִפְנֵי
כֹּס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ, אֲזִי תִדְעוּ כִּי צִוֵּנִי לְכַתֵּב אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל אֵף רַפְיוֹנִי. 11 And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.
- וְאֲנִי אֶתְחַנֵּן אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמַּשִּׁיחַ כִּי רַבִּים
מֵאֲתָנּוּ, אִם לֹא הִכֵּל, יִנָּשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ בְּיוֹם
הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן. 12 And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, כָּל אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית
יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה, וְכָלְכֶם, מִצְּוֵי אֶרֶץ, הִנְנִי מְדַבֵּר
אֵלֵיכֶם פְּקוּל הַקּוֹרָא מִן הָעֶפֶר: שְׁלוֹם עַד
בּוֹא הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל. 13 And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.
- וְאַתֶּם, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תֵאָבֹו לְטַעַם מִטוֹב אֱלֹהִים
וְלֹא תִכְבְּדוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, וְאַף אֶת דְּבָרֵי
וְאֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי שֶׁהֵם אֱלֹהִים,
לָכֶם הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר שְׁלוֹם עַד עוֹלָם, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה יֵאָשִׁימוּכֶם בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. 14 And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

15 כי את אשר אֶחַתְם בְּאַרְצָךְ, יוֹבֵא הוּא
עֲלֶיכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט; כִּי כֵן צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה
וְעָלִי לְשִׁמְעַת בְּקוֹלוֹ. אָמֵן.

15 For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

סֵפֶר יַעֲקֹב

THE BOOK OF JACOB

דְּבָרֵי יַעֲקֹב, אֶחָיו נְפִי. דְּבָרֵי הַשְּׁפָתוֹ אֶל אָחָיו. הוּא
מוֹכִיחַ אִישׁ הַמִּבְקֵשׁ לְהַדְיֹחַ אֶת תּוֹרַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ.
דְּבָרִים מְעַטִּים עַל אוֹדוֹת יָמָיו עִם נְפִי. (בְּעֶרְךָ
421–544 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi. An account of his preaching to his brethren. He confounds a man who seeks to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi. (About 544–421 B.C.)

א

1

וְהִיָּה כִּי חָלְפוּ חֲמִשִּׁים וְחֲמִשָּׁה שָׁנִים מֵעַתָּה
צֵאת לַחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם; וְנָפִי צִוֵּנִי, אוֹתִי, יַעֲקֹב,
עַל אוֹדוֹת הַלּוֹחוֹת הַקְּטַנִּים, אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיהֶם
נִחְרְטִים הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

1 For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

וְהוּא צִוֵּנִי, אוֹתִי, יַעֲקֹב, לִכְתֹּב עַל גְּבִי
הַלּוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְעַט מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
מִצְאָתִים יִקְרִים בְּיוֹתֵר; וְהוּא צִוֵּנִי אֲשֶׁר
לֹא אֶגַּע, כִּי אִם קְלוֹת, בְּדְבָרֵי הַיָּמִים אֲשֶׁר
לָעַם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ עִם נְפִי.

2 And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I consider to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי דְבָרֵי יָמָיו עֲמוּ יַחֲרֹטוּ עַל גְּבִי
לוֹחוֹתָיו הַנוֹסְפִים וְכִי אֲשֶׁמֶר נָא אֶת הַלּוֹחוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה וְאֶמְסֹר אוֹתָם לְזֶרְעִי, מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר.

3 For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

וְאִם תִּהְיֶה הַשְּׁפָת דְּבָרֵי קֹדֶשׁ, אוֹ הַתְּגִלּוֹת
גְּדוֹלָה, אוֹ נְבוּאָה, חֲרוּט אַחֲרֵי אֶת עֲקָרָם
עַל גְּבִי הַלּוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְתִאֲרָתִי אוֹתָם כָּכָל
הָאֲפֹשֶׁר, לְשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְלִמְעַן בְּנֵי עַמּוֹנוֹ.

4 And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

כִּי מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָה וַחֲרָדָה גְּדוֹלָה, גְּלָה לָנוּ
בְּאַמֻּת עַל אוֹדוֹת בְּנֵי עַמּוֹנוֹ, וְאֶת הָעֵתִיד
לְבוֹא עֲלֵיהֶם.

5 For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

אֶף הַתְּגִלּוֹת רַבּוֹת וְרוּחַ נְבוּאָה רַבָּה הָיוּ לָנוּ;
לְכֵן יָדַעְנוּ עַל הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְעַל מַלְכוּתוֹ אֲשֶׁר תָּבוֹא.

6 And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

עַל כֵּן שָׁקַדְנוּ עָמָל בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמּוֹנוֹ, לְשִׁכְנוֹעַם
לְבוֹא אֶל הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְלִטְעֵם מִטּוֹב אֱלֹהִים,
לִמְעַן יָבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ, כֹּן יִשְׁבַּע בְּכָל אֶפֶן

7 Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should

יעקב א:ח-יז

- בַּחֲמָתוֹ שְׁלֹא לְתַתֵּם לְבֹא שָׁמָּה, כְּמִרְיָבָה
בִּימֵי מִסָּה, בְּהֵיֹת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- 8 Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.
- וּמִי יִתֵּן וַיְכֹלִים הֵינֵנוּ, לְשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים, לְשַׁכְנֶעַ
אֶת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים לְחַדֵּל מִמְרֹדֶם בְּאֱלֹהִים
וּמִהֲכַעֲסוֹ, אֲלֵא יֵאֱמִינוּ כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם
בַּמָּשִׁיחַ וַיִּתְּבוּנָנוּ אֶל מוֹתוֹ, וַיֵּשְׂאוּ אֶת צִלְבוֹ
וְאֶת כָּל־מִת הָעוֹלָם; עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, מְקַבֵּל
עָלַי לְמַלֵּא אֶת מִצְוֹת אָחִי, נָפִי.
- 9 Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.
- וּנְפִי בָא בִּימֵיָם, וַרְאָה אֲשֶׁר קָרְבוּ יָמָיו לְמוֹת;
וְהוּא מָשַׁח אִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל עַל עַמּוֹ
אֲחֵרָיו, כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים.
- 10 The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—
- וּנְפִי אֶהוֹב הָיָה עַל הָעָם עַד מָאֵד, וְהוּא הָיָה
מִגִּנָּם הַגָּדוֹל, בְּנִשְׂאוֹ אֶת חֶרֶב לָבָן לְהַגְנָתָם
וּבְעִמְלֹו כָּל יָמָיו לְטוֹבָתָם.
- 11 Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.
- עַל כֵּן חָפֵץ הָעָם לְשָׁמֵר אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְזִכְרוֹנוֹ. וְכָל
אֲשֶׁר נוֹשָׂא אֶת מִשְׁרָתוֹ לְמִשְׁלֵ אֲחֵרָיו נִקְרָא
בְּפִי הָעָם, נְפִי הַשֵּׁנִי, נְפִי הַשְּׁלִישִׁי וְכוּן הֵיִתֵּר,
כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים; כִּךְ קִרְאָם הָעָם,
יְהִיָּה שְׁמָם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה.
- 12 And it came to pass that Nephi died.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מָת נְפִי.
- 13 Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.
- וְהָעָם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ לְמָנִים, הָיוּ נְפִיִּים;
וְאוּלָם נִקְרְאוּ הֵם אֲנָשֵׁי נְפִי, אֲנָשֵׁי יַעֲקֹב,
אֲנָשֵׁי יוֹסֵף, אֲנָשֵׁי זֹרָם, אֲנָשֵׁי לָמֹן, אֲנָשֵׁי
לְמוּאֵל וְאֲנָשֵׁי יִשְׁמָעֵאל.
- 14 But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.
- וְאֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, לֹא אַבְדִּיל בֵּינֵיהֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
בְּכַתְּבִי, כִּי אֶכְנֶה לְמָנִים אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִבְקֹשׁוּ
לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַם נְפִי, וְאֶת יְדִידֵי נְפִי אֶכְנֶה
נְפִיִּים, אוֹ עַם נְפִי, כְּמִשְׁפַּט שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים.
- 15 And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.
- וְהָיָה בִּימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַשֵּׁנִי, הִחֲלוּ בְנֵי עַם נְפִי
לְהַקְשׁוֹת אֶת לִבָּם וּלְהִתְעַנֵּג מֵעַט בַּמַּעֲשֵׂי
רָשָׁע, וּכְדֹד בִּימֵי קְדָם, וְכַשְׁלֵמָה בְּנוֹ,
בְּחַפְצָם לְקַחַת לָהֶם נָשִׁים וּפִילְגָּשִׁים רַבּוֹת.
- 16 Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.
- וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ רַב זָהָב וְכֶסֶף
וְהִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוּהָ.
- 17 Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.
- עַל כֵּן, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֲמַרְתִּי לָהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לְמִדְּתַי בְּבֵית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ,
אֲחֵר אֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתִּי אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוּתִי מִיְהוָה.

יעקב א:יח-ב:ז

- 18 For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.
- 19 And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.
- כִּי אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, וְאָחִי יוֹסֵף, קִדְּשָׁנוּ בְיַדֵּי נִפְתִּי לִהְיוֹת כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים לְבְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- וְרוֹמַמְנוּ אֶת מִשְׁמֵרֵתֵנוּ לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, בְּקִבְלָנוּ עָלֵינוּ אֶת הַחֹבֶה, לְהַסֵּב אֶת חֲטָאֵי הָעָם עַל רִאשֵׁנוּ אֱלֹהֵינוּ לֹא לְמַדְנוּ אוֹתָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּרַב שְׂקִידָתָנוּ; לָכֵן, בְּרַב עֲמָלָנוּ, לֹא יִכָּתְּבוּ דָמָם אֶת לְבוּשֵׁנוּ; וְאִלְמָלָא זֹאת, הִיָּה דָמָם מִכָּתְּבוּ אֶת לְבוּשֵׁנוּ וְלֹא הִיָּינוּ נִמְצָאִים לֵלֵא דְפִי בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.

ב

2

- 1 The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:
- 2 Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.
- 3 And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.
- 4 For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.
- 5 But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.
- 6 Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.
- 7 And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;
- דְּבָרֵי יַעֲקֹב, אָחִי נִפְתִּי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל עַם נִפְתִּי אַחֲרֵי מוֹת נִפְתִּי:
- הִנֵּה, אֲחִי הָאֱהֻבִּים, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, כְּפִי הַחֹבֶה הַרוֹבֵצַת עָלַי לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לְרוֹמֵם אֶת מִשְׁמֵרֵתִי בְּלֵב עֹר, וּלְרַחֵק אֶת חֲטָאֵיכֶם מִבְּגָדִי, הִנְנִי בָּא הַיּוֹם אֶל הַיֵּכָל הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְהַגִּיד לָכֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- יֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי שְׂקִידָתִי עַד הַיּוֹם לְעֵמֶד עַל מִשְׁמֵרֵת פִּקְדוֹתִי, אַךְ הַיּוֹם מְכַרִּיעָה אוֹתִי, מְרַבָּה מִלְּפָנִים, הַתְּשׁוּקָה לְטוֹבוֹת נַפְשְׁכֶם וְהַדְּאָגָה לָּהּ.
- הִנֵּה, עַד עַתָּה שְׁמַעְתֶּם לְדְבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הִבֵּאתִי לְפָנֵיכֶם.
- אֲךֹ שְׁמַעוּנִי וְדַעוּ אֲשֶׁר אוֹכֵל, בְּעִזְרַת אֵל שְׂדֵי הַבּוֹרָא שְׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ, לְהַגִּידְכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת מַחְשְׁבוֹתֵיכֶם, אִיכָּה תִחְלָו לַעֲמֹל בְּחַטָּא, וְהוּא חַטָּא נִתְעָב מְאֹד בְּעֵינֵי וּמֵאֵס לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- אֲכֹן, מִדְּאִיב הַדְּבַר אֶת לְבִי, וְהוּא מִרְתִּיעָנִי בְּבִשְׁת פָּנֵי לְפָנֵי יוֹצְרִי, כִּי שׁוֹמָה עָלַי לְהַעֲיד לְפָנֵיכֶם עַל רְשָׁעַת לְבַבְכֶם.
- וְאֵף דּוֹאֵב אֲנִי, כִּי שׁוֹמָה עָלַי דְּבַר עַלְכֶם קִשּׁוֹת, לְפָנֵי נְשׁוֹתֵיכֶם וְטַפְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר רְגִישוֹת רַבִּים מֵהֶם רַכִּים מְאֹד, אֵף צְנוּעִים וְעֲנֻגִים לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר זֹאת לְרָצוֹנוֹ.

וְסָבוֹר אֲנִי כִּי בָאוּ הֵם הִנֵּה לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַנִּרְצָה, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְרַפֵּא
לְנַפְשׁ פְּצוּעָה.

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

לְכֵן שָׁחָה נַפְשִׁי מֵאֲלוּצֵי, כִּי אֱלֹהִים צִוְּנִי
מִפְּרָשׁוֹת לְהוֹכִיחַ אֶתְכֶם כְּפִי פִּשְׁעֵיכֶם,
לְהַעֲמִיק אֶת פְּצָעֵי הַפְּצוּעִים, תַּחַת נְחוּמִים
וְרַפּוּי פְּצָעֵיהֶם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם פְּצוּעִים, תַּחַת
אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הַנִּרְצָה,
יִשְׂאוּ חֶרֶב לְדַקֵּר אֶת נַפְשָׁם וּלְפַצֵּעַ אֶת
לִבָּם הָעֵגֵג.

9 Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

וְעַל אִפְּי כְּבֹד הַמִּשְׁאֵל, שׁוֹמֵה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּפִי
אֲשֶׁר צִוְּנִי אֱלֹהִים מִפְּרָשׁוֹת, וּלְהַגִּידְכֶם עַל
אֲוֹדוֹת רָשָׁעֵתְכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, לִפְנֵי הַטְּהוֹרִים
בְּלִבָּם וּשְׁבוּרֵי הַלֵּב, וְתַחַת עֵינֵי הַחוֹדֶדֶת אֲשֶׁר
לֹאֵל שָׁדִי.

10 But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

עַל כֵּן, שׁוֹמֵה עָלַי לְהַגִּיד לְכֶם אֶת הָאֱמֶת עַל
פִּי פִּשְׁטוֹת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים. כִּי שָׁאַלְתִּי אֶת יְהוָה
וְהָיָה אֵלַי דְּבָרוֹ לֵאמֹר: יַעֲקֹב, בּוֹאָה נָא לְמַחֲרָה
אֶל הַיִּכָּל הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְהִגַּד לָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הַדְּבָר
אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן בְּפִי.

11 Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הִנֵּה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֲגִידְכֶם: אֲכֹן,
רַבִּים מִכֶּם הִחֲלוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל מִינֵי
עֲפָרוֹת יָקָרוֹת אֲשֶׁר הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא
אָרֶץ יְעוּדָה לְכֶם וּלְזֶרְעְכֶם, אֲכֹן עֲתִירָה בָּהֶן
עַד מָאֹד.

12 And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

וַיַּד הַהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה הָעֲלִיוֹנָה חִיכָה אֲלֵיכֶם
בְּכָל שְׁבִיעוֹת הָרָצוֹן וְהַעֲשִׁירָה אֶתְכֶם;
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ כְּמָה מִכֶּם שְׁפַע רַב מֵאֲחֵיכֶם,
הַתְּנַשְׂאוֹת בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם וְהַקְשִׁיתֶם עֲרֹף,
וְהִגְבַּהֲתֶם רֹאשׁ מִפְּנֵי יָקָר לְבוּשְׁכֶם, וְרוֹדְפִים
אֶתְכֶם אֶת אֲחֵיכֶם, בְּחָשְׁבְּכֶם אֲשֶׁר טוֹבִים
אִתְּכֶם מֵאֵלֶּה.

13 And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הַחוֹשְׁבִים אֶתְכֶם כִּי יַצְדִּיק אֶתְכֶם
אֱלֹהִים בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא, כִּי
אִם יִגָּנֶה אֶתְכֶם; וְאִם תּוֹסִיפוּ עֲשׂוֹת כְּדִבְרֵי
הָאֵלֶּה, עַד מְהֵרָה יָבוֹאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם שְׁפָטָיו.

14 And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

מִי יִתֵּן וַיִּרְאֶכֶם אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל הוּא לְדַקֵּר בְּכֶם,
וּבְמַבֵּט עֵינָיו לְמַחֵץ אֶתְכֶם אֶל הָעָפָר!

15 O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

יעקב ב:טז-כו

- 16 O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!
- מי יתן וינקה מן העוון הזה והתועבה. ומי יתן ושמעתם אל מצוותיו ולא תכחד גאות לבכם הזאת את נפשכם!
- 17 Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.
- חשבו על אחיכם כמוכם, והיו מידעים עם כל אחד ואחד ונדיבים בקניינכם, למען יעשירו הם כמוכם.
- 18 But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.
- וטרום בקשכם עשר, בקשו את מלכות אלהים.
- 19 And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.
- ואחר אשר תשיגו תקוה במשיח, תשיגו עשר, אם תבקשוהו; ואזי תבקשוהו בכונת עשות טוב, להלביש עירמים ולהאכיל רעבים, ולקרא דרור לאסירים ולהגיש סעד לחולים ולסובלים.
- 20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?
- והנה, אחי, דברתי אליכם על גאותכם: ואלה מכם אשר צררתם את שכונכם, ורדפתם אותו, מפני גאות לבכם מפני הדברים אשר העניק לכם אלהים, מה תאמרו על כך?
- 21 Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.
- האניכם סוברים כי בורא כל בשר יתעב מעשים אשר כאלה? כי כל אדם יקר בעיניו כזולתו, וכל הבשר יסודו בעפר; את כלם הוא ברא לתכלית האחת, למען ישמרו את מצוותיו ויפארוהו עד עולם.
- 22 And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.
- ועתה אכלה דברי אליכם על הגאווה; ואם לא היה עלי לדבר אליכם על פשע גדול יותר, שש היה לבי מפניכם עד מאוד.
- 23 But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.
- אף כבד דבר אלהים עלי מפני פשעיכם הגדולים. כי כה אמר יהוה: גברו עוונות העם הזה ואין הם מבינים בכתבי הקדש כי משאת נפשם היא לזכות עצמם מעברות זנות, מפני הכתוב על אודות דוד ושלמה בנו.
- 24 Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.
- אכן, דוד ושלמה הרבו לשאת נשים ופילגשים לרב, והדבר היה נתעב לפני, נאום יהוה.
- 25 Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.
- לכן, כה אמר יהוה, אנכי הוצאתי את העם הזה מארץ ירושלם בכח זרועי, למען אנגיד לי צמח צדקה מפרי חלצי יוסף.
- 26 Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.
- לכן, אני יהוה אלהים, לא אתן כי יעשה העם הזה כאשר עשו לפניהם.

יעקב ב:כז-ג:א

- 27 על כן, שמעוני, אחי, והאזינו לדבר יהוה:
איש מקרבכם לא ישא אשה, כי אם אחת,
וכל פילגש לא תהיה לו.
- 28 כי אני, יהוה אלהים, חפץ בצניעות הנשים;
וזנות תועבה היא לפני, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 29 לכן ישמר העם הזה את מצוותי, ולא, ארורה
תהיה הארץ בעבורם, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 30 כי כה אמר יהוה צבאות: אם ברצוני לגדל
לי זרע, אצוה את עמי, ולא, עליהם לשמע
אל הדברים האלה.
- 31 כי אני, יהוה, ראיתי את יגון בנות עמי,
ושמעתי את אנחתן בארץ ירושלם ובכל
ארצות עמי, מפני רשעת בעליהן
ותועבותיהם.
- 32 וכה אמר יהוה צבאות: לא אתן כי תעלינה
אלי זעקות בנות העם הזה, הנאות, על
אנשי עמי, אשר הוצאתיו מארץ ירושלם,
נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 33 כי לא יגלו את בנות עמי מפני עדנותן, בלתי
אם אפקדם קללה נמרצת, עד אבדן; כי לא
יזנו כאשר לפני, נאום יהוה צבאות.
- 34 ועתה, אחי, אתם ידעתם כי נתנו המצוות
האלה לאבינו, לחי, על כן ידעתם אותן
תמול שלשום; אכן, אשרם כבד רבץ עליכם,
כי עשיתם את אשר היה לכם לרחוק ממנו.
- 35 הנה הגדלתם עוון מן הלמנים, אחינו.
שברתם לב נשיכם הענגות ואבדתם את
אמון בניהם, כי דגמה רעה הייתם להם,
ואנקות לבם עולות אל אלהים להעיד עליכם.
ומפני דברי אלהים הנכוחים, הבאים עליכם,
מתו לבבות רבים, מקררים פצעים עמקים.
- 37 Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord:
For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and
concubines he shall have none;
- 38 For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms
are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 39 Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord
of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.
- 40 For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will
command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.
- 41 For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning
of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all
the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations
of their husbands.
- 42 And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair
daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem,
shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord
of Hosts.
- 43 For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because
of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto
destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of
old, saith the Lord of Hosts.
- 44 And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments
were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before;
and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these
things which ye ought not to have done.
- 45 Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our
brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost
the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before
them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you.
And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down
against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

ג

3

- 1 ואני, יעקב, חפץ לדבר אליכם, טהורי הלב.
הביטו בדעת איתנה אל אלהים והתפללו
- 1 But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look
unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding

אֱלֹוֹ בְּאַמוּנָה יִתְּרָה, וְהוּא יִנְחֶמְכֶם בְּצָר
לָכֶם, וְיָרִיב רִיבְכֶם, וְיֹרִיד מִשְׁפָּטוֹ עַל רֹאשׁ
מִבְקָשֵׁי כְּלִיּוֹנְכֶם.

faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

שָׂאוּ רֹאשְׁכֶם, כָּל טְהוֹרֵי הַלֵּב, וְקַבְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים הָרָצוּי, וְהִשְׁבִּיעוּ נֶפֶשׁ בְּאַהֲבָתוֹ, יַעַן
אֲשֶׁר יְכוּלִים אַתֶּם, תָּמִיד, אִם אַף דַּעַתְכֶם
אֵיתְנָה הִיא.

2 O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

אֶף אוֹי, אוֹי לָכֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם טְהוֹרֵי לֵב, כִּי
אִם טִמְאִים הַיּוֹם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים; אִם לֹא תִנְחֲמוּ
מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם, אַרְוֶרָה תִּהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם.
וְהַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם טִמְאִים כְּמוֹתְכֶם, אֶף
מִקְלָלִים הֵם קָלְלָה נִמְרָצָת, יִכּוּכֶם עַד אֲבָדוֹן.

3 But, woe, woe, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

וְעַד מְהֵרָה תָּבוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ, אִם לֹא תִשׁוּבוּ
מִרְעַתְכֶם, יִנְחֲלוּ הַלְמָנִים אֶת אֶרֶץ יִרְשְׁתְּכֶם
וַיהוֹה אֱלֹהִים יוֹצִיא אֶת הַצַּדִּיקִים מִקִּרְבְּכֶם.

4 And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

הֵן אַחֵיכֶם הַלְמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁנְאוּם מִפְּנֵי
טִמְאַתָּם וְהַקְלָלָה אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה עַל עוֹרָם,
צַדִּיקִים מִכֶּם; כִּי לֹא שָׁכַחוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוֹה
אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לְשִׂאת אֶף אִשָּׁה אַחַת
וְלִהְיוֹת מִפִּילְגָּשִׁים וּמִזְנוֹת.

5 Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

וְהֵם שׁוֹמְרִים לְקִים אֶת הַמִּצְוָה הַזֹּאת, לָכֵן,
מִפְּנֵי שְׂמֵרָם אֶת הַמִּצְוָה, לֹא יִשְׁמִידֵם יְהוֹה
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אִם יִרְחֲמֵם, וַיּוֹם יָבוֹא אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ
עִם מְבָרָךְ.

6 And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

הֵן בְּעֲלִיהֶן אוֹהֲבִים אֶת נְשֹׁתֵיהֶם, וְנְשֹׁתֵיהֶם
אוֹהֲבוֹת אֶת בְּעֲלֵיהֶן; וְהַבָּעִלִּים וְהַנָּשִׁים
אוֹהֲבִים אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם, וְחָסֵר אֱמוּנָתָם וְשִׁנְאָתָם
אֵלֵיכֶם הִיא מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹן אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; לָכֵן, כַּמָּה
טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מֵהֶם, בְּעֵינֵי בּוֹרְאֵכֶם הַגָּדוֹל?

7 Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

אָכֵן, אַחֵי, אִם לֹא תִנְחֲמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם,
יָרָא אֲנִי כֹן יִהְיֶה עוֹר הַלְמָנִים בְּהִיר מַעוֹרְכֶם
בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תּוֹבְאוּ עִמָּם לִפְנֵי כֵס אֱלֹהִים.

8 O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

עַל כֵּן, הִנְנִי מְצַוְכֶם בְּדַבַּר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר
לֹא תַחַרְפוּם עוֹד עַל דְּבַר עוֹרָם הַכָּהָה וְאֲשֶׁר
לֹא תִגְדְּפוּם עַל דְּבַר טִמְאַתָּם; אֶף אֶת
טִמְאַתְכֶם תִּזְכְּרוּ, וְחָכְרוּ כִּי טִמְאַתְכֶם בָּאָה
מִפְּנֵי אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

9 Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

- לכן, וזכרו את ילדיכם, כמה העצבתם את לבם בלקח אשר להתנהגותכם לפניכם; אף זכרו כי מפני טמאתכם עשויים אתם להביא כליון על ילדיכם, וחטאיכם יערמו על ראשכם ביום האחרון.
- 10 Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.
- אכן, אחי, שמעו אל דברי: עוררו נא את כחות נפשכם; התנערו למען תעורו מתנומת המות; התירו עצמכם ממכאובי שאול, למען לא תעשו מלאכים לשטן, ולא תשלוכו אל מקוה האש והגפרית אשר הוא המות השני.
- 11 O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.
- ואני, יעקב, דברתי עוד רבות אל בני עם נפי והזהרתיים מפני זנונים וזמה וכל מיני חטא בהגיד ילדיכם מה נוראות תוצאותיהם.
- 12 And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.
- ואף חלק אחד ממאמץ מקורות העם הזה, אשר החל עתה להתעצם במנינו, לא יוכל להכתב על גבי הלוחות האלה, אולם רבות מקורותיהם, וכן דברי מלחמותיהם, מריבותיהם ושלטון מלכיהם, כתובים על הלוחות הגדולים.
- 13 And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.
- הלוחות האלה נקראים בשם לוחות יעקב ונעשו הם ביד נפי. ואני מכלה לומר דברים אלה.
- 14 These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

ד

4

- ואני יעקב, שרתי רבות את עמי בדברי, ולא אוכל לכתב כי אם מעט מדברי מפני קשי חריטת דברינו על גבי לוחות, אף יודעים אנחנו כי אשר נכתב על הלוחות אכן ישאר.
- 1 Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;
- וכל אשר נכתב, והוא לא נחרט על גבי לוחות, אכן יכלה ויאבד; אף נתן לנו לכתב דברים מעטים על לוחות, אשר יתנו לבנינו וכן לאחינו האהובים ידיעה מעטה על אודותינו, או על אודות אבותיהם.
- 2 But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—
- הנה, בדבר הזה ישמח לבנו; ושוקדים אנחנו בעמלנו לחרט את הדברים האלה על לוחות, מקוים כי יקבלום אחינו האהובים וילדינו בתודת לבב ויביטו בהם למען ילמדו מהם בשמחה, ולא בצער או בבוז על אודות אבותיהם הראשונים.
- 3 Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

יעקב ד:ד-יא

כי בכונה זאת כתבנו את הדברים האלה, למען ידעו הם אשר ידענו אנחנו על המשיח והיתה לנו תקוה בתפארתו מאות שנים רבות לפני בואו; ולא רק לנו היתה תקוה בתפארתו, כי אם לכל הנביאים הקדושים אשר קדמונו.

הן אלה האמינו במשיח ועבדו את האב בשמו, ואף אנחנו עובדים את האב בשמו. ובכונה הזאת שומרים אנחנו את תורת משה כי מובילה היא את נפשנו אליו; ומפני שמירתנו מקדשת היא לנו לצדקה, כפי אשר נחשב לאברהם במדבר בהשמעו למצוות אלהים להקריב את בנו יצחק, אשר דומה הוא לאלהים ובנו הילוד היחיד.

על כן מחפשים אנחנו בדברי הנביאים ולנו רב התגליות ורוח הנבואה; ובהיות לנו כל העדיות האלה, מוצאים אנחנו תקוה ואמונתנו נהיית בלתי מערערת, עד כי אכן נוכל לצוות בשם ישוע וישמעו לנו אף העצים, ההרים וגלי הים.

אף עם זאת, מראה לנו יהוה אלהים את חלשתנו למען נדע כי על ידי חסדו ומחילת כבודו הגדולה לבני האדם, יש לנו כח לעשות את הדברים האלה.

הנה, גדולים ונפלאים מעשי יהוה. עד כמה נסתר חקר מעמקי מסתוריו. אין איש יכול לחקור את כל דרכיו; ולא ידע איש את דרכיו, בלתי אם יגלה לו; לכן, אחי, אל תבוזו לגלויי אלהים.

הן בכח דברו בא אדם על פני האדמה, והאדמה נבראה בכח דברו. לכן, אם יכול היה אלהים לדבר והעולם נהיה, ולדבר ונברא האדם, מדוע אפוא לא יוכל לצוות על האדמה או על יציר כפיו אשר על פניה, כפי חפצו ורצונו?

על כן, אחי, אל תבקשו יעץ ליהוה, כי אם בקשו עצת מידו. הן יודעים אתם כי הוא יועץ לכל ברואי בחכמה ובצדק וברחמים גדולים.

על כן, אחים אהובים, התרצו לפני אלהים על ידי כפרת המשיח, בנו הילוד היחיד, ותזכו בתחיה, כפי כח התחיה אשר במשיח,

4 For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

5 Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

7 Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

8 Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

9 For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

10 Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

11 Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in

יעקב ד:יב-יח

- והראו כפרי הבכורים אשר למשיח המובא
לאֱלֹהִים, ובהיות לָכֶם בוֹ תְקוּת פֶּאֶר טוֹבָה,
אִף טָרֵם יִתְגַּלֶּה בְּבָשָׁר.
- 12 And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?
- וְעַתָּה, אֲהוּבִים, אֵל תִּשְׁתַּמְּחוּ עַל אֲשֶׁר אוֹמַר
אֲנִי לָכֶם דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה; אֲכֹן, מִדּוּעַ לֹא נִדְבַר
עַל כְּפֹרֶת הַמִּשְׁחָה, לְהַשִּׁיג יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמֶת בוֹ,
כִּהְשִׁיג אֶת יְדִיעַת הַתְּחִיָּה וְהָעוֹלָם הַבָּא?
- 13 Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.
- הִנֵּה, אַחֵי, כֹּל הַמְתַּנְבֵּא, יִנְבֵּא נָא לְפִי הַבְנֵת
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; כִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ תִּדְבַּר אֶת הָאֱמֶת
וְלֹא תִשְׁקֹר. לָכֵן מִדְּבָרָתָהּ הִיא עַל דְּבָרִים כְּפִי
הַיּוֹתֵם בָּאֱמֶת וְעַל דְּבָרִים כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה
בָּאֱמֶת; וְדְבָרִים אֵלֶּה מִתְגַּלִּים לָנוּ בְּרוּרוֹת,
לְמַעַן יִשׁוּעַת נַפְשֵׁנוּ. וְהִנֵּה לֹא אֲנַחְנוּ לְבַדָּנוּ
עֲדִים לְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אֲכֹן דְּבָרָם אֱלֹהִים
אֵל נְבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר מִקֶּדֶם.
- 14 But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.
- אֲךָ הַיְּהוּדִים עִם קִשָּׁה עָרְף הָיוּ וּבָזוּ אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים הַבְּרוּרִים, וְהָרְגוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וּבִקְשׁוּ
דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר קָצְרָה בִּינְתָם מִהֲשִׁיג. עַל כֵּן,
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹם, אֲשֶׁר בָּא לָהֶם מִהִבְטֵם מֵעֵבֶר
לְמִטָּרָה, נָפֹל יָפֹלוּ. כִּי הִסִּיר אֱלֹהִים אֶת
פִּשְׁטוּתוֹ מֵהֶם וְשָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים
אֲשֶׁר אֵין יְכוּלִים הֵם לְהַבִּין, כִּי כֵן חָפְצוּ. וַיַּעַן
אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ כֵן, עָשָׂה אֱלֹהִים כְּדָבָר הַזֶּה,
לְמַעַן יִשְׁפָּלוּ.
- 15 And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.
- וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, מוּבָל עַל יְדֵי הָרוּחַ לְהִנְבֵּא;
כִּי מִבִּין אֲנִי אֶת אֲפֹן פְּעֻלַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר
בִּי, כִּי מִפְּנֵי כְשָׁלוֹם יִמָּאֲסוּ הַיְּהוּדִים אֶת
הָאֲבֹן אֲשֶׁר יְכוּלִים לִבְנוֹת עָלֶיהָ, לְהִיּוֹת
לָהֶם יְסוֹד אֵיתָן.
- 16 But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַל פִּי כְתוּבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, תִּהְיֶה הָאֲבֹן הַזֶּה
הַגָּדוֹלָה וְהָאַחֲרוֹנָה וְהַיְסוּד הַבְּטוּחַ הַיָּחִיד,
אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו יוּכְלוּ הַיְּהוּדִים לִבְנוֹת.
- 17 And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?
- וְעַתָּה, אֲהוּבִי, אֵיךְ יִתְכַּן אֲשֶׁר אֵלֶּה, אַחֵר
מֵאֲסָם אֶת הַיְסוּד הַבְּטוּחַ, וְיִכְלוּ בָּאִיזוֹ עַתָּה
לִבְנוֹת עָלָיו, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה לָהֶם לְרֹאשׁ פִּנָּה?
- 18 Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.
- רְאוּ, אַחֵי הָאֲהוּבִים, אֲגַלֶּה לָכֶם אֶת דְּבַר
הַמִּסְתֵּר הַזֶּה, אִם לֹא אֶטְלֹטֵל, בְּכָל אֲפֹן
שְׁהוּא, מִעַז מִבְּטָחִי בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְאִמְעַד
מִפְּנֵי עֲצָם דְּאֲגָתִי לָכֶם.

ה

5

- הִנֵּה, אָחִי, הֲלֹא תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי קִרְאתֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי
הַנָּבִיא זֶנוֹס אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל לֵאמֹר:
- שְׁמָעוּ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְהֶאֱזִינוּ לְדְבָרִי, וְאֲנִי
נָבִיא לַיהוָה.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר: הַנְּנִי מִמְשִׁיל אֶתְכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,
לְעֵץ זֵית מְשֻׁבַּח אֲשֶׁר לָקַחוּ אִישׁ וַגְּדֵלוּ בְּכַרְמוֹ;
וְהוּא גָדַל וְאָף הִזְקִין וְהַחֵל לִנְבֹּל.
- וְכֵא בַעַל הַכֶּרֶם וַרְאָה כִּי פָשָׁה הָרֶקֶב בָּעֵץ;
וְהוּא אָמַר: אֲזַמְרֶנּוּ וְאֶעְדֵּר סְבִיבוֹתָיו וְאֶדְשָׁנּוּ;
אוּלֵּי יִשָּׂא דְלִיּוֹת יִנְיָקוֹת וְלֹא יֵאָבֵד.
- וְהוּא זָמְרוּ וְעָדֵר סְבִיבוֹתָיו, וְדִשְׁנּוּ כַּאֲשֶׁר
דִּבֶּר.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הִחֵל הָעֵץ לִשְׁלַח
אַט־אַט דְלִיּוֹת יִנְיָקוֹת, אֲדָּה הִנֵּה הִחֵלָה צִמְחָתָהּ
הָעֵץ לִנְבֹּל.
- וַרְאָה בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם, וְאָמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ:
צֵר לִי אֲשֶׁר יֵאָבֵד לִי הָעֵץ הַזֶּה; לָכֵן, לֵךְ וְכָרַת
זְמוֹרוֹת מֵעֵץ זֵית הַגָּדֹל פָּרָא וְהִבִּיאוּ אֵלַי;
וְאֶנְחֶנּוּ נִכְרֹת אֶת הָעֲנָפִים הָרָאשִׁיִּים אֲשֶׁר
הִחֵלוּ לִנְבֹּל וְנִשְׁלִיכֶם בָּאֵשׁ וְהָיוּ לְכַעֲר.
- וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם: הַנְּנִי מִסִּיר רַבּוֹת מִן
הַדְלִיּוֹת הַיִּנְיָקוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְהִרְפַּבְתִּין בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר
אֶחָפֵץ; וְאַחַת הִיא לִי אִם אֶכֶן יֵאָבֵד שְׁרֵשׁ
הָעֵץ הַזֶּה, אִם אֶךְ אֶת פְּרִיו אוֹכֵל לִשְׁמֹר לִי.
לָכֵן אֶקַּח אֶת הַדְלִיּוֹת הַיִּנְיָקוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
וְאֶרְפִּיבֵן בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר אֶחָפֵץ.
- קַח אֶתָּה אֶת זְמוֹרוֹת זֵית הַכֶּרֶם וְהִרְפַּבְתָּ אוֹתָן
תַּחְתֵּיהֶן; וְאֲנִי אֲשַׁלֵּיךְ בָּאֵשׁ אֶת הָעֲנָפִים אֲשֶׁר
כָּרַתִּי לְכַעֲרָם, כִּי יִהְיוּ לְמַפְנֵעַ בְּאֶדְמַת כְּרָמִי.
- וַעֲשֵׂה עֹבֵד בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם כְּדִבְרֵי אֲדוֹנָיו, וְהִרְפִּיב
אֶת זְמוֹרוֹת זֵית הַכֶּרֶם עַל הָעֵץ.
- 1 Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of
the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:
- 2 Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of
the Lord.
- 3 For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel,
like unto a tame olive-tree, which a man took and nourished in his
vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.
- 4 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he
saw that his olive-tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and
dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and
tender branches, and it perish not.
- 5 And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and
nourished it according to his word.
- 6 And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat
a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof
began to perish.
- 7 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said
unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore,
go and pluck the branches from a wild olive-tree, and bring them
hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are
beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they
may be burned.
- 8 And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these
young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will;
and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I
may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these
young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.
- 9 Take thou the branches of the wild olive-tree, and graft them in, in the
stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire
and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.
- 10 And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did
according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the
branches of the wild olive-tree.

- 11 And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.
- ועל הכרם צוה לעדור סביבות העץ, לזמר אותו ולדשנו, ואמר אל עבדו: צר לי כי יאבד לי העץ הזה; לכן, בעבור אולי אציל את שרשיו לבל יאבדו, למען אשמרם לי, הן עשיתי זאת.
- 12 Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.
- על כן, לך לדרכך, ונצרת את העץ, וטפחתיו כדברי.
- 13 And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.
- ואת הנטישות האלה אניח בחלקת כרמי התחתונה; באשר אחפץ, אחת היא לך; זאת אעשה בעבור אשמר לי את ענפי העץ המשבחים, ולמען אקבץ לי מפריו עד בוא המועד; כי צר לי אשר יאבד לי העץ הזה ופריו.
- 14 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive-tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.
- ובעל הכרם הלך לדרכו והטמין את נטישות עץ הזית המשבח בחלקות הכרם התחתונות, במקום זה ובמקום אחר כחפצו וכרצונו.
- 15 And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.
- והיה לאחר עבר עת ארבה, ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נרדה אל הכרם לעבד בו.
- 16 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.
- וירד בעל הכרם, וכן עבדו, אל הכרם לעמל. ואמר העבד אל אדוניו: הבה נא; ראה את העץ!
- 17 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.
- ובעל הכרם הביט וראה את העץ אשר עליו הרקבו זמורות זית הבר, והנה צמח העץ והחל לעשות פרי. והוא ראה כי טוב, ופריו כפרי המשבח.
- 18 And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.
- והוא אמר אל עבדו: הנה, זמורות עץ הבר אֶחָזוּ בְלֶח שֶׁרֶשׁ הָעֵץ, וְהִשְׁרֵשׁ חֲזָקוֹ עַד מְאֹד, וּמִפְּנֵי רֹב כַּח הַשְׁרֵשׁ, הִבְשִׁילוּ זְמוּרוֹת הַבֵּר פְּרִי מִשְׁבַּח. הֵן לֹא הִרְכַּבְנוּ אֶת הָעֵנָפִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲבוֹד אֲבֵד הָעֵץ. וְעַתָּה אֶקְבֹּץ לִי פְרִי רֹב אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה הָעֵץ וְאַצְפִּינוּ לִי עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit
- ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נלכה אל חלקת הכרם התחתונה ונראה אם עשו ענפי העץ המשבחים פרי לרב אף המה,

- וְקִבַּצְתִּי לִי אֶת פְּרִיָם עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
 20 And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master of the vineyard had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.
- וְהֵם הִלְכוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר טָמַן בּוֹ בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶת נְטִישׁוֹת הָעֵץ הַמְּשֻׁבָּח. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: רְאֵה אֶת אֵלֶּה! וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת הָעֵץ הָרְאשׁוֹן וְהֵנָּה עֲשֹׂה פְּרִי רַב; וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי טוֹב. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: אֶסֶף מִפְּרִי הָעֵץ וְהִנִּיחֵהוּ עַד בּוֹא מוֹעֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲשַׁמְרֵהוּ לִי, כִּי עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה טַפְחָתִי אוֹתוֹ, וְעֲשֹׂה פְּרִי רַב.
- וְאָמַר הָעֶבֶד אֶל אֲדוֹנָיו: מִדּוּעַ בָּאתָ הֵנָּה לִטְעֵת אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה, אֲכֹן הַכֶּנָּה הַזֹּאת? הֵן הִיְתָה זֹאת הַדֹּלָה בְּכָל חֲלָקוֹת כְּרָמָךְ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם: אַל תִּיעָצְנִי יְדֻעָתִי אֲשֶׁר הִיְתָה זֹאת חֲלָקַת אֲדָמָה דֹּלָה; לָכֵן אָמַרְתִּי לָךְ כִּי טַפְחָתִי אוֹתָהּ עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה, וְהֵנָּה רוֹאָה כִּי הִרְבֵּתָהּ לַעֲשׂוֹת פְּרִי.
- וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּט נָא, הֵנָּה נִטְעָתִי עוֹד כֶּנָּה מִן הָעֵץ; וְאַתָּה יְדַעְתָּ אֲשֶׁר חֲלָקַת הָאֲדָמָה הַזֹּאת הִיְתָה דֹּלָה מִן הָרְאשׁוֹנָה. אַךְ רְאֵה אֶת הָעֵץ; עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה טַפְחָתִי אוֹתוֹ וְעֲשֹׂה פְּרִי רַב. לָכֵן, אֶסֶף אֶת פְּרִיָּו וְהִנִּיחֵהוּ עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲשַׁמְרֵהוּ לִי.
- וּבַעַל הַכֶּרֶם הוֹסִיף לֹאמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּט נָא וְרְאֵה כֶּנָּה נֹסְפֶת, אֲשֶׁר גַּם אוֹתָהּ נִטְעָתִי; הֵנָּה אַף אוֹתָהּ טַפְחָתִי וְעֲשֹׂתָהּ פְּרִיָּהּ.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הָעֶבֶד: הִבֵּט נָא וְרְאֵה אוֹתָהּ, הָאֲחֵרוֹנָה. הֵנָּה, נִטְעָתִי בְּחֲלָקַת אֲדָמָה טוֹבָה, וְטַפְחָתִי אוֹתָהּ זֶה עַתָּה אֶרְכֶּה, וְנִתְּנָה רַק מִחֲצִית הָעֵץ פְּרִי מְשֻׁבָּח, וּמִחֲצִיתוֹ הָאֲחֵרָת עֲשֹׂתָהּ פְּרִי בָר; הֵן טַפְחָתִי אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה כְּטַפְחִי אֶת שְׂאֵר הָעֲצִים.
- וְאָמַר בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: לָךְ וְכֹרֶת אֶת עֲנָפָיו אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָשׂוּ פְּרִי טוֹב וְהִשְׁלַכְתָּם בָּאֵשׁ.
- 21 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.
- 22 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.
- 23 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.
- 24 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.
- 25 And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.
- 26 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.
- 27 But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

- 28 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.
וְהָיָה כִּי עָשׂוּ כֵן, בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם וְעַבְדּוֹ, וְטָפְחוּ אֶת כָּל פְּרֵי הַכֶּרֶם.
- 29 And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.
וְהָיָה אַחֵר עָבַר עֵת אַרְכָּה, אָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הֵבֵה נִרְדָּה אֶל הַכֶּרֶם לְהוֹסִיף לַעֲמֹל בּוֹ. כִּי הִנֵּה, קִרְבָּה הָעֵת וְהַקֵּץ חָשׁ לְבֹא; עַל כֵּן, עָלִי לִקְבֹּץ לִי פְרִי עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- 30 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.
וּבָעַל הַכֶּרֶם וְעַבְדּוֹ יָרְדּוּ אֶל הַכֶּרֶם; וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עָנְפוּ הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים נִכְרְתוּ וְזִמּוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר הִרְכָּבוּ עָלָיו; וְהִנֵּה כָּל מִינֵי פְרִי מִכְבִּידִים עַל הָעֵץ.
- 31 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.
וּבָעַל הַכֶּרֶם טָעַם מִן הַפְּרִי, כָּל מִין כַּפִּי זֶנֶן, וְאָמַר: עֵת אַרְכָּה טָפְחֵנוּ אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה וְקִבְצָתִי לִי פְרִי רַב עַד בּוֹא הַמוֹעֵד.
- 32 But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.
וְהִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפֶּעַם עָשָׂה הָעֵץ פְּרִי רַב אֲף אֵין בּוֹ אֶף אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר טוֹב הוּא. הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ בּוֹ כָּל מִינֵי בָאוּשִׁים, וְאֵין בּוֹ כֵּל יִתְרוֹן לִי, עַל אֶף כָּל עֲמָלִנִי; וְעַתָּה צָר לִי כִּי יֵאבֹד לִי הָעֵץ הַזֶּה.
- 33 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?
וְאָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: מָה נַעֲשֶׂה לָעֵץ בְּעֵבֹר אֶקְבֹּץ לִי שְׁנִית מִפְּרִיו הַטּוֹב?
- 34 And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive-tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.
וְאָמַר הָעַבֵּד אֶל אֲדֹנָיו: יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְכַּבְתָּ אֶת זִמּוֹרוֹת זֵית הַבֵּר, נִזְוְנוּ שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ מִן הָעֲנָפִים הַמִּרְכָּבִים, וְחַיִּים הֵמָּה, לֹא אָבְדוּ; אֲכֹן רוֹאֶה אֶתָּה כִּי שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ עוֹדִם טוֹבִים.
- 35 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.
וְאָמַר בָּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: אֵין לִי כָּל תּוֹעֶלֶת בָּעֵץ, וְלֹא יוֹעִילוּנִי שְׂרָשָׁיו כָּל יְמֵי עֲשׂוֹת הָעֵץ בָּאוּשִׁים.
- 36 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.
אוֹלָם יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ טוֹבִים וְנִצְרָתִים לְתַכְלִיתִי; וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר כֹּחָם רַב, הֵמָּה עָשׂוּ עַד כֹּה פְרִי טוֹב מִזִּמּוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר.
- 37 But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to
אֲף עַתָּה, הִנֵּה צָמְחוּ זִמּוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר וּפָשְׁטוּ עַל שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ לְהַכְרִיעֵם; וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּשְׁטוּ זִמּוֹרוֹת הַבֵּר עַל שְׂרָשֵׁיהֶם, וְעָשׂוּ בָאוּשִׁים לָרַב, וְיֵעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְבָּה הָעֵץ לַעֲשׂוֹת בָּאוּשִׁים,

- הַנֶּדָּה רוּאָה כִּי הִחַל לְכַלּוֹת; עַד מְהֵרָה יִנְבֵּל
וְתִגַּע עֵתוֹ לִהְיוֹת מְשֻׁלָּךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ, בְּלֹא
אִם נַעֲשֶׂה דְבָר לְשָׁמְרוֹ.
- וְאָמַר בֶּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: הִבֵּה נִרְדָּה אֶל
חֲלָקוֹת הַכֶּרֶם הַתַּחְתּוֹנוֹת וְנִרְאָה אִם עָשׂוּ גַם
הַכִּנּוֹת הַמְּשֻׁבָּחוֹת בְּאוֹשִׁים.
- וְהֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל חֲלָקוֹת הַכֶּרֶם הַתַּחְתּוֹנוֹת,
וְרָאוּ אֲשֶׁר פְּרִי הַכִּנּוֹת הַמְּשֻׁבָּחוֹת נִשְׁחָתָה
גַּם הוּא. אָכֵן, פְּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְהַשְּׁנִיָּה וְאִף
הָאַחֲרוֹנָה; כָּלֶם נִשְׁחָתוּ.
- וּפְרִי הַבֵּר אֲשֶׁר לַכִּנָּה הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, אִף הוּא גָבַר
עַל חֲצִי הָעֵץ אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה פְּרִי טוֹב, עַד כִּי נָבֵל
וָמָת.
- וּבֶעַל הַכֶּרֶם בָּכָה וְאָמַר אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: מֶה יִכְלֹתִי
לַעֲשׂוֹת עוֹד לְכֶרְמִי?
- אָמַנְם יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּל תְּנוּבַת כֶּרְמִי, זֹלַת
אֵלֶּה, נִשְׁחָתָה, וְהִנֵּה אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ פֶּעַם
פְּרִי טוֹב, הִשְׁחִיתוּ אִף הֵן; וְעַתָּה, כָּל עֲצֵי
כֶּרְמִי לֹא יִצְלָחוּ לְהוֹשִׁיל, כִּי אִם לְגִדֵּם
וּלְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- וְהִנֵּה הָעֵץ הָאַחֲרוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָבֵל עֲנַפּוֹ, אוֹתוֹ
נִטְעַמְתִּי בְּחִלְקָת אֲדָמָה טוֹבָה; אָכֵן, חֲלָקְתוֹ
נִבְחָרְתָּ הֵיטֵב לִי מִכָּל חֲלָקוֹת אֲדָמַת כֶּרְמִי.
- וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי אִף כִּרְתִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר הָיָה
לְמַפְנֶע בְּחִלְקָת הָאֲדָמָה הַזֹּאת, בְּעִבּוֹר אֲשֶׁר
תַּחְתּוֹ אֶת הָעֵץ הַזֶּה.
- וְאַתָּה רָאִיתָ כִּי מִחֲצִית הָעֵץ הַזֹּאת נִתְּנָה פְּרִי
טוֹב וּמִחֲצִיתוֹ הָאַחֲרָת עָשָׂתָה פְּרִי בָר; וַיֵּעַן
אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִטַּפְתִּי אֶת עֲנַפּוֹ וְלֹא הִשְׁלַכְתִּים אֶל
הָאֵשׁ, גָּבְרוּ אֵלֶּה עַל הָעֵנָף הַטוֹב וְנָבֵל הוּא.
- וְעַתָּה, עַל אִף כָּל אֲשֶׁר טַפְחָנוּ בְּכֶרְמִי,
הִשְׁחִיתוּ עֲצָיו וְלֹא עָשׂוּ פְּרִי טוֹב, וְאֲנִי קוִיתִי
לְשָׁמְרָם, לְקַבֵּץ לִי פְּרִים עַד בּוֹא הַמּוֹעֵד.
וְהִנֵּה נִהְיוּ כְּזֵית הַבֵּר וְאִין בָּהֶם לְהוֹשִׁיל, כִּי
אִם לְגִדֵּם וּלְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ. צַר לִי כִּי
יֵאבְדוּ לִי.
- perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire,
except we should do something for it to preserve it.
- 38 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant:
Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold
if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.
- 39 And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of
the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the
natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second
and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.
- 40 And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which
brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and
died.
- 41 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto
the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?
- 42 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these,
had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth
good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my
vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into
the fire.
- 43 And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in
a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above
all other parts of the land of my vineyard.
- 44 And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot
of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.
- 45 And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and
a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not
the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have
overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.
- 46 And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of
my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring
forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up
fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they
have become like unto the wild olive-tree, and they are of no worth but
to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should
lose them.

מה יכלתי לעשות עוד בכרמי? הרפתה ידי
מטפח אותו? לא כן; כי טפחתי וגם עדרתי
סביבותיו ואזמרהו, ואף זבלתי, וכמעט כל
היום נטיתי יד; והקצ קרב ובא. צר לי כי עלי
לכרת את כל עצי כרמי ולהשליכם אל האש
לבשרה. מי הוא אשר שחת את כרמי?

47 But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it, Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

ואמר העבד אל אדוניו: האין מפני גבהות
כרמך באה זאת? הלא גברו ענפיו על
שרשיהם אשר טובים הם. ויען אשר גברו על
שרשיהם, הנה צמחו מהר מאשר כח
השרשים ולקחו כח למו. הנני אומר: האין
זאת סבת השחתת עצי כרמך?

48 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

ואמר בעל הכרם אל עבדו: הבה נרדה
ונכרתה את עצי הכרם ונשליכם אל האש,
לבל יהיו למפגע באדמת כרמי, כי עשיתי
הכל. מה יכלתי לעשות עוד לכרמי?

49 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

אף הנה, אמר העבד אל בעל הכרם: חוסה
נא על הכרם עוד מעט.

50 But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

ואמר האדון: אכן, אנכי אחוס על כרמי
עוד מעט, כי יצר לי באבד לי עציו.

51 And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

לכן, הבה נקחה מן הפנות אשר נטעתי
בחלקות כרמי התחתונות ונרביבן על העץ
אשר לקחו ממנו; ונכרתה מן העץ את ענפיו
אשר פרים מר מכל, ונרביב תחתיהם את
הענפים המשבחים.

52 Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

ואני אעשה זאת פן יאבד העץ; אולי אשמר
לי את שרשיו לתכלית אשר לי.

53 And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

והנה שרשי כנות העץ המשבחות, אשר
נטעתי באשר חפצתי, עודם חיים. לכן,
בעבור אשמר אף אותם לתכלית אשר לי,
אקח מענפי העץ הזה וארביב עליהם. אכן,
ארביב על הכנות ההן מענפי עץ מוצאן,
בעבור אשמר לי אף את שרשיהן; והיה אם
יחזקו דים, אולי יעשו לי פרי טוב ועוד אקנה
לי תפארה בפרי כרמי.

54 And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

והם לקחו מענפי העץ המשבחת, אשר הפך
לעץ בר, והרביבו על העצים המשבחים,
אשר הפכו אף הם גדולי בר.

55 And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

- 56 And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּ מֵעֵצֵי הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים, אֲשֶׁר הָפְכוּ גִדּוּלֵי בֵר, וְהִרְכִּיבום עַל עֵץ מוֹצָאם.
- 57 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.
- וְאָמַר בֶּעַל הַכֶּרֶם אֶל עַבְדּוֹ: אַל תִּכְרֹת אֶת עֵנְפֵי הַבֵּר מִן הָעֵצִים, כִּי אִם אֶת הַמְרִים בִּיּוֹתֵר, וְהִרְכַּבְתָּ תַּחְתֵּיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי.
- 58 And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.
- וְאֶנְחֲנוּ נוֹסִיף לְטַפֵּחַ בְּעֵצֵי הַכֶּרֶם, וְנִזְמַר אֶת עֵנְפֵיהֶם, וְנִכְרֹת אֶת עֵנְפֵי הָעֵצִים אֲשֶׁר נִבְלוּ וְאֲשֶׁר קִרְבָּה עַת כְּלִיּוֹנָם, וְנִשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- 59 And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.
- וְזֹאת אֲנִי אַעֲשֶׂה בְּעִבּוֹר יִתְחַזְּקוּ שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵצִים, עַל כִּי טוֹבִים הֵמָּה; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלָפוּ עֵנְפֵיהֶם, אוֹלֵי יִגְבְּרוּ הַטּוֹבִים עַל הָרָעִים.
- 60 And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—
- וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁמֹר אֶת הַכִּנּוֹת הַמִּשְׁבָּחוֹת וְאֶת שְׂרָשֵׁיהֶן וּמִפְנֵי הַשִּׁיבּוֹן בְּהִרְכִּיבִי אוֹתָם עַל עֵץ מוֹצָאָן, לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת שְׂרָשֵׁיו, אוֹלֵי יַעֲשׂוּ עֵצֵי כֶרְמִי שֵׁנִית פְּרִי טוֹב, וְאֲנִי אֶשְׂמַח שֵׁנִית בְּפְרִי כֶרְמִי, וְאֶשְׂשֵׁי מִשׁוֹשׁ: עַל כִּי שָׁמַרְתִּי אֶת שְׂרָשֵׁי הַפְּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹן וְעֵנְפָיו.
- 61 Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.
- לָכֵן, לֵךְ אַתָּה וְקִרְאֵת לְעֲבָדִים, לְמַעַן נִשְׁקֹד לְעַמֵּל בַּכֶּרֶם בְּכָל מְאֹדְנוּ לִפְנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ, בְּעִבּוֹר אוֹצִיא שֵׁנִית אֶת הַפְּרִי הַמִּשְׁבָּח, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַטּוֹב וְהַיָּקָר מִכָּל פְּרִי.
- 62 Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.
- עַל כֵּן, הִבֵּה נִלְכָּה וְנַעֲמַל, זֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, בְּכָל מְאֹדְנוּ, כִּי קָרֵב הַקֵּץ וּבָא, וְזֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֶזְמַר אֶת כֶּרְמִי.
- 63 Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.
- הִרְכַּב נָא אֶת הָעֵנְפִים, וְהִתְחַלֵּת בְּאַחֲרוֹנִים לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ רִאשׁוֹנִים, וְלִמְעַן יִהְיוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים אַחֲרוֹנִים. עֲדַר נָא סְבִיבוֹת הָעֵצִים, הַזָּקֵן כַּצֶּעִיר, רִאשׁוֹנִים כְּאַחֲרוֹנִים וְאַחֲרוֹנִים כְּרִאשׁוֹנִים, לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ כָּלֵם וְיִתְכַלְכְּלוּ בַּפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה.
- 64 Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.
- עַל כֵּן, עֲדַר סְבִיבוֹתָם, זָמַרם וְשׁוּב לְזַבֵּלם, בַּפֶּעַם הָאַחֲרוֹנָה, כִּי הַקֵּץ קָרֵב וּבָא. וְהִיָּה אִם יִצְמְחוּ הַרְכָּבִים הָאַחֲרוֹנִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְיַעֲשׂוּ פְּרִי מִשְׁבָּח, הֲכֵן תְּכִין אֶת דֶּרֶכָם לְמַעַן יִגְדְּלוּ.
- 65 And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the
- וּבִהְחֵלֵם לִגְדֹל, וְהִסְרֹת אֶת הָעֵנְפִים הָעוֹשִׂים פְּרִי מַר, כְּפִי כֹחַ הַטּוֹבִים וְגִדְלָם; אַכֵּן, אַל תִּסֵּר אֶת הָרָעִים בְּאַחַת, כֹּן יִהְיוּ הַשְּׂרָשִׁים

יעקב ה:סו-עד

חֲזָקִים מִרְכָּבֵיהֶם, וְהַמְרָכָבִים יָבִלוּ וַיֹּאבְדוּ לִי
עֲצֵי כַרְמִי.

roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

כִּי יֵצֵר לִי בְּאֵבֶד לִי עֲצֵי כַרְמִי; לָכֵן, הִסִּירָה נָא
אֶת הָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים בְּהִתְאֵם לְגִדִּילַת הַטּוֹבִים,
לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ שְׁוִים הַשָּׁרֵשׁ וְהַצִּמָּת זֶה לָזֶה
בְּכֹחַם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִגְבְּרוּ הַטּוֹבִים עַל הָרָעִים;
וְהָרָעִים יִגְדְּעוּ וְאֵל הָאֵשׁ יִשְׁלָכוּ, לְבָל יִהְיוּ
לְמַפְנֵעַ בְּאֲדַמַּת כַּרְמִי; כֹּךְ אֲטֹאטָא אֶת
הָרָעִים הַחוּצָה מִכַּרְמִי.

66 For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

אָכֵן, אֶת כְּנוֹת הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח אֶרְכִּיב שְׁנִית
עַל הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח;

67 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

וְאֶת עֲנָפֵי הָעֵץ הַמִּשְׁבָּח אֶרְכִּיב עַל הַכְּנוֹת
הַמִּשְׁבָּחוֹת, כֹּךְ שׁוּב הַבְּאֲתָיִם יִחדוּ, לְמַעַן
יַעֲשׂוּ פְרִי מִשְׁבָּח וְהָיוּ לְאֶחָד.

68 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

וְהָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים יִשְׁלָכוּ הַחוּצָה מִכָּל אֲדַמַּת
כַּרְמִי; כִּי רַק בְּפַעַם הַזֹּאת אֶזְמַר אֶת כַּרְמִי.

69 And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

וּבַעַל הַכֶּרֶם שָׁלַח אֶת עַבְדּוֹ; וְהָעֶבֶד הֵלֵךְ
וַעֲשָׂה כְּמִצְוֹת אֲדוֹנָיו, וְהֵבִיא עֲבָדִים נֹסְפִים;
וְהָיוּ אֵלֶּה מְעַטִּים.

70 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

וַאֲמַר אֲלֵיהֶם בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם: לָכוּ וְעִמְלֵתֶם
בַּכֶּרֶם בְּכָל מְאֹדְכֶם. כִּי הִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפַּעַם
הָאַחֲרוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֲטַפַּח אֶת כַּרְמִי; כִּי אָכֵן
קָרוֹב הַקֵּץ וְהַמוֹעֵד בְּמַהֲרָה יָבוֹא; וְהָיָה אִם
תִּאֲמָצוּ כְּחֹכְם בַּעֲבוּדָה עִמִּי, וְשִׂמְחָתֶם בְּפְרִי
אֲשֶׁר אֶאֱסֹף לִי לְמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר חֵשׁ הוּא לָבוֹא.

71 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

וְהָעֲבָדִים הֵלְכוּ וַאֲמָצוּ אֶת כָּחֶם בַּעֲבוּדָה;
וְאִף בַּעַל הַכֶּרֶם עָמַל עִמָּם; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּכֹל
אֲשֶׁר צִוּם.

72 And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

וְהַכֶּרֶם שָׁב וְנָתַן אֶת פְּרִיו הַמִּשְׁבָּח.
וְהָעֲנָפִים הַמִּשְׁבָּחִים הֵחֵלוּ לְצִמּוֹחַ וּלְשִׁגְשֹׁג
עַד מְאֹד; וְהִחֲלָה כְּרִיתַת זְמוּרוֹת הַבֵּר
וְהִשְׁלָכְתָּן; וְכֹךְ נִשְׁמְרוּ הַשָּׁרֵשׁ וְהַצִּמָּת
שְׁוִים, בְּהִתְאֵם לְכֹחֶם.

73 And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

וְהָעֲבָדִים שָׁקְדוּ בְּעִמְלָם, כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר צִוּם בַּעַל
הַכֶּרֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלָכוּ הַחוּצָה מִן הַכֶּרֶם
הָעֲנָפִים הָרָעִים; וְהָאֲדוֹן שָׁמַר לוֹ אֶת הָעֲצִים
לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַפְּרִי הַמִּשְׁבָּח;
וְהָעֲצִים נַעֲשׂוּ כְּאֵלוּ גוֹי אֶחָד; וּפְרוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ

74 And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard

יעקב ה:עה-ו:ד

שנים; ובעל הכרם שמר לו את הפרי המשבח, אשר הוא יקר לו עד מאד מראשיתו.

had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

והיה כראות בעל הכרם כי פריו טוב וכרמו חדל לשחת, והוא קרא אל עבדיו ואמר אליהם: הנה, זאת הפעם האחרונה אשר טפחנו את כרמי; ורואים אתם כי כפי חפצי עשיתי בשמרי את הפרי המשבח, וכי טוב הוא כפי שהיה בראשונה. ברוכים אתם, כי אחר שקידתכם בעמל עמי בכרמי, ושמירתכם את מצוותי, ואחר הביאתכם אלי שנית את הפרי המשבח, עד כי אין כרמי משחת עוד, והרע משלך ממנו החוצה, היה תהיה לכם שמחה עמדי, בעבור פרי כרמי.

75 And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

כי עת ארכה אקבץ לי מפרי כרמי עד בוא המועד, אשר קרב ובא; וזאת הפעם האחרונה אשר טפחתי ומרתי את כרמי ועדרתי את סביבותיו וזבלתי. לכן אקבץ לי מן הפרי לארץ ימים, באשר דברתי.

76 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

ובבוא העת אשר ישוב כרמי לעשות פרי רע, אזי אצוה לאסוף את הפרי הטוב והרע; את הפרי הטוב שמור אשמר לי, ואת הרע אשליך החוצה אל מקומו. אזי בוא המועד ויגיע הקץ, ואצוה אשר יהיה כרמי לבערה באש.

77 And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

1

6

ועתה, אחי, הן אמרתי לכם כי אתנבא, והנה זאת נבואתי: הדברים אשר דבר הנביא זנוס על בית ישראל, אשר בהם המשילם לעץ זית משבח, קום יקומו.

1 And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive-tree, must surely come to pass.

והיום אשר יוסיף יהוה שנית ידו לקנות את עמו להשיבם, הוא, אכן, הפעם האחרונה אשר יצאו עבדי יהוה בכחו לטפל בכרמו ולזמר אותו; ואחר זאת, במהרה יבוא הקץ.

2 And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

ומה ברוכים הם אלה אשר שקדו לעמל בכרם, ומה ארורים אלה אשר ישלכו החוצה אל מקומם! והעולם ישרף באש.

3 And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

מה רבים רחמי אלהינו עלינו, כי זוכר הוא את בית ישראל, שרשים וענפים, והוא כל היום שולח את ידיו אליהם; והם עם קשה

4 And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying

יעקב ו:ה-יג

- עֲרֵף וְסוֹרְרִים; אֲךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְשֶׁה אֶת לְבוֹ, יִישָׁע בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- עַל כֵּן, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנְנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם בְּדִבְרִים מִפְּכָחִים, לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֹטָא וּלְבֹאֵא אֶל אֱלֹהִים בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם, וּלְדַבֵּק בּוֹ כְּפִי הַדְּבָקוֹ בָּכֶם. וּבְעוֹד זָרוּעַ רַחֲמָיו שְׁלוּחָה אֲלֵיכֶם בְּאוֹר הַיּוֹם, אֵל תִּקְשׁוּ לְבַבְכֶּם.
- אֲכֹן, הַיּוֹם, אִם תִּשְׁמְעוּ בְּקוֹלוֹ, אֵל תִּקְשׁוּ לְבַבְכֶּם; כִּי לָמָּה תָּמוּתוּ?
- הִנֵּה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּלְכַל אֶתְכֶם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַטּוֹב כָּל הַיּוֹם, הַתְּשֹׂאוּ פְּרִי רֵעַ לְהַגְדֵּעַ וּלְהַיִּית מִשְׁלָכִים בְּאֵשׁ?
- הַתְּמַאֲסוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַתְּשִׁיבוּ פְּנֵיכֶם מִדְּבַרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים? הַתְּדַחוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִאֲמָרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כֹּה רַבִּים דְּבָרוּ עָלָיו? הַתְּשַׁלְּלוּ אֶת בְּשׁוֹרְתוֹ הַטּוֹבָה שֶׁל הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְאֶת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים, וְאֶת מַתַּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ? הַתְּכַבּוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְתִשְׁמְיֻהוּ לְלַעַג אֶת תְּכֵנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה הַגְּדוּלָּה, אֲשֶׁר נִעְרְכָה בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם?
- הֲלֹא תִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר בְּעִשְׂוֹתְכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה יְבִיאְכֶם כֹּחַ הַגְּאֻלָּה וְהַתְּחִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר בַּמְּשִׁיחַ, לַעֲמֹד בְּבוּשָׁה וּבְאִשְׁמָה נוֹרָאָה לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים?
- וְעַל פִּי כֹחַ מִשְׁפָּטוֹ, כִּי לֹא יוּפָר צִדְקוֹ, שׁוּמָה עָלֵיכֶם לָרֶדֶת אֶל מְקוֹה הָאֵשׁ וְהַגְּפָרִית, אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֵהֲבֵתוֹ לֹא תִכָּבֶה, וְעִשְׁנוֹ עוֹלָה לְעַד, וְהוּא יְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ.
- אֲנֹא, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנָּחֵמוּ מִחֹטָא וְהִכָּנְסוּ בְּשַׁעַר הַצָּר, וּלְכוּ בַּמִּשְׁעוֹל הַצָּר עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- אֲנֹא, הַשְׁכִּילוּ. מָה אוֹסִיף דְּבַר?
- וּכְכֹלֹתִי אֶת דְּבָרִי, הִנְנִי מִבְּרָךְ אֶתְכֶם לְשָׁלוֹם, עַד אֲשֶׁר אֶפְגְּשְׁכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס מִשְׁפָּטוֹ הַנִּרְצָה אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, הַמִּכָּה אֶת הַרְשָׁעִים בְּפַחַד אִים וּבְמוֹרָא. אָמֵן.
- 5 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.
- 6 Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?
- 7 For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?
- 8 Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?
- 9 Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?
- 10 And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.
- 11 O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.
- 12 O be wise; what can I say more?
- 13 Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

ז

7

- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שָׁנִים מִסְפָּר, קָם אִישׁ בְּקֶרֶב עָם
נָפִי, וְשָׁמוֹ נִקְרָא שֶׁרֶם.
- וְהוּא הֵחֵל לְהִטִּיף בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם וְהַשְׁמִיעֵם כִּי
לֹא יִהְיֶה מָשִׁיחַ. וְהִרְבֵּה הוּא לְהִטִּיף אֶל הָעָם
חֲלָקוֹת, לְמַעַן יָדִיחַ אֶת תּוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְהוּא שָׁקַד בְּעִמְלּוֹ לְמַשּׁוֹף אֶת לֵב הָעָם, עַד
אֲשֶׁר עָלָה בִּידּוֹ לְמַשּׁוֹף לֵב רַבִּים. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר
יָדַע כִּי אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, הָאֵמֵנָתִי בַּמָּשִׁיחַ הַעֲתִיד
לְבוֹא, הִרְבֵּה לְבַקֵּשׁ עֵת לְבוֹא אֵלַי.
- וְהוּא הָיָה מְלָמֵד, וַיָּדַע הֵיטֵב אֶת שְׁפַת הָעָם;
עַל כֵּן יָכֹל הָיָה לְהִרְבּוֹת חֲלָקוֹת לְשׁוֹן וּלְפַעַל
בְּכַח הַדְּבֹר, כְּכִי כַח הַשָּׁטָן.
- וְהוּא קָנָה לְהַדִּיחַנִי מִן הָאֵמֻנָה, עַל אֲף
הַהִתְגַּלִּיּוֹת הָרַבּוֹת וְהַדְּבָרִים הָרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר
רָאִיתִי עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרִים אֵלֶּה; כִּי אֵמֵנָם
רָאִיתִי מִלְּאֲכִים וְהֵם אֶבֶן שְׂרֵתוֹנִי. אֲף
שָׁמַעְתִּי, כְּפַעַם בְּפַעַם, אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה מְדַבֵּר
אֵלַי מִלִּים בְּרוּרוֹת; לָכֵן לֹא נָתַן הָיָה לְהַדִּיחַנִי.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא בָּא אֵלַי, וַדְּבַר אֵלַי בְּזֶה הָאָפֹן.
לֵאמֹר: אַחִי יַעֲקֹב, בְּקִשְׁתִּי הִרְבֵּה לְדַבֵּר אֵלֶיךָ
כִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי, וְאֲף יָדַע לִי, אֲשֶׁר מְרַבֵּה אֶתָּה
לְלַכֵּת בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם וּלְהִטִּיף עַל הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר
אַתָּם קוֹרְאִים הַבְּשׂוּרָה, אוֹ תּוֹרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְאַתָּה הוֹבֵלֶת רַבִּים מִן הָעָם הַזֶּה לַעֲוֹת אֶת דֶּרֶךְ
אֱלֹהִים הַיִּשְׁרָה, וּלְחַדֵּל מִשְׁמִירַת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה,
אֲשֶׁר הִיא דֶּרֶךְ הַיִּשְׁרָה, וּלְהַחֲלִיף אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה
בְּעִבּוֹדֹת מִי אֲשֶׁר לְדְבָרֶיךָ יָבוֹא בְּעוֹד מֵאוֹת
שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת. וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, שֶׁרֶם, אוֹמֵר לָךְ אֲשֶׁר
זֶה גְדוּף, כִּי אֵין אִישׁ יוֹדֵעַ דְּבָרִים כְּאַלֶּה וְלֹא
יֻכַּל אָדָם לְסַפֵּר עַל הַבְּאוֹת. כֹּף רֶב עִמִּי שֶׁרֶם.
- אֲף הִנֵּה שָׁפַף יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶל נַפְשִׁי אֶת רוּחוֹ
עַד כִּי הִכְלַמְתִּיו בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו.
- 1 And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.
- 2 And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.
- 3 And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.
- 4 And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.
- 5 And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.
- 6 And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.
- 7 And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.
- 8 But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: הַתַּכְחַשׁ בְּמֹשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא?
וְהוּא אָמַר: אִם אָכֵן יִהְיֶה מָשִׁיחַ, לֹא אֶכְחַשׁ
בוֹ; אֲבָל אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֵין מָשִׁיחַ, וְאִף לֹא הָיָה,
וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לְעוֹלָם.

9 And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּכַתְבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ?
וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן.

10 And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: אִם כֵּן אַפּוֹא אֵינָהּ מִבֵּינֵם, כִּי
אֵלֶּה מַעֲיִדִים נִאֻמָּנָה עַל הַמָּשִׁיחַ, הֲנִי אוֹמֵר
לְךָ אֲשֶׁר אִף אֶחָד מִן הַנְּבִיאִים לֹא כָּתַב וְלֹא
נִבֵּא, כִּי אִם דְּבַר עַל אֲדוּת הַמָּשִׁיחַ הַזֶּה.

11 And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, אָכֵן נִגְלָה לִי הַדְּבַר, כִּי רָאִיתִי
וְגַם שָׁמַעְתִּי; וְאִף נֹדַע לִי בְכַח רוּחַ הַקִּדְשׁ;
עַל כֵּן יוֹדֵעַ אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה,
אֲבוֹד יֵאבֹד כָּל הָאָדָם.

12 And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: הֲרָאִנִּי אוֹת מֵאֵת כֹּחַ רוּחַ
הַקִּדְשׁ הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר כֹּה רַבָּה יְדִיעָתְךָ עָלָי.

13 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

וְאָמַרְתִּי אֵלָיו: מָה אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר אֲנֹסֶה אֶת אֱלֹהִים
לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה אוֹת בְּדִבְרֵי הַנֶּהּ יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֲמַת
הוּא? עַל אִף זֹאת הַתְּנַכֵּר תִּתְנַכֵּר, כִּי מֵאֵת
הַשֵּׁטֶן הֵנָּה. וְאוֹלָם לֹא כְרֻצוֹנִי יַעֲשֶׂה; אִף אִם
יִכָּרֶה אֱלֹהִים, יִהְיֶה זֶה אוֹת לְךָ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ הַכֹּחַ,
בְּשָׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ, וְאִף כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
אֲנִי, יְהוָה, יַעֲשֶׂה נָא רְצוֹנְךָ וְלֹא רְצוֹנִי.

14 And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

וּבְאֶמְרִי, אֲנִי, יַעֲקֹב, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
בָּא עָלָיו כֹּחַ יְהוָה, עַד כִּי נָפַל אֶרְצָה. וְאַחֲרֵי
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא הִתְכַּלְכֵּל יָמִים רַבִּים.

15 And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

יוֹם בָּא וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: הֲאִסְפוּ
מָחָר, כִּי עֵת מוֹתִי בָּאָה; עַל כֵּן חֲפָצְתִּי לְדַבֵּר
אֶל הָעָם לִפְנֵי מוֹתִי.

16 And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

וְהָיָה לַמָּחָרָת, וְנִאֲסַף הָמוֹן הָעָם; וְהוּא דִּבֶּר
אֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּרֹשׁוֹת וְכַחֵשׁ בְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר הוֹרָה
אוֹתָם; וְהוּא הִתְנַדָּה עַל הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְכַח רוּחַ
הַקִּדְשׁ וְשֵׁרוֹת הַמַּלְאָכִים.

17 And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, עַל כִּי מִכַּח הַשֵּׁטֶן
רָמָה. וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עַל שְׂאוֹל וְעַל חַי עוֹלָם וְעַל
עֲנֹשׁ נֶצַח.

18 And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

- 19 והוא אמר: יראתי פן חטאתי חטא בל יסלח, כי כזבתי לאלהים; כי כחשתי במשיח ואמרתי כי האמנתי בכתבי הקדש; ואלה אכן מעידים עליי. ויען אשר כזבתי כף לאלהים, גדולה יראתי פן נורא יהיה משפטי; אך הנני מתודה לפני אלהים.
- 20 And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.
- 21 וככלותו לומר את הדברים האלה, לא יכול היה לדבר עוד, והשיב את נשמתו.
- 22 And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.
- 23 והנה כאשר שמע ההמון את הדברים האלה מפיו, בעמדו להשיב את נשמתו, השתוממו מאוד, עד כי ירד עליהם כח אלהים, וגבר עליהם, והם נפלו ארצה.
- 24 And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.
- 25 והדבר הזה לרצון היה לי, כי אני, יעקב, בקשתי אותו מאת אבי אשר בשמים; כי הוא שמע צעקתי וענה לתפילתי.
- 26 Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.
- 27 והשלוש ואהבת אלהים שבו אל העם; והם התבוננו בכתבי הקדש ולא האזינו עוד לדברי הרשע ההוא.
- 28 And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.
- 29 ותחבולות רבות נמצאו למען תקן את דעת הלמנים ולהשיבם אל האמת; אך הכל לשוא היה כי הם ששו אלי קרב ושפיכת דמים, ושנאת עולם שנאו אותנו, אחיהם. והם בקשו תמיד להשמידנו בכח נשקם.
- 30 And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.
- 31 על פן התבצרו הנפיים עליהם בכלי נשקם ובכל כחם, בבטחם באלהים, צור ישועתם; לכן כבשו את אויביהם, עד היום הזה.
- 32 Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.
- 33 ואני, יעקב, קרבתי לשיבה. ויען אשר כתובים דברי ימי העם הזה על הלוחות הנוספים אשר לנפי, הנני חותם את כתב הזכרון הזה בהגדי כי כתבתי כפי מיטב ידיעתי, וכי חלף הזמן עמנו וגם חיינו חלפו עלינו כבחלום, בהיותנו עם בודד ושוקט, נודדים, מדחים מירושלם, לילידי עת צרה, במדבר, שנאי אחינו אשר הסבו מלחמות וריב; על פן עברו עלינו ימינו ביגון.
- 34 And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.
- 35 ואני, יעקב, ראיתי אשר קרב ובא יום רדתי אלי קבר; על פן אמרתי לבני אנש: קח נא את הלוחות האלה. ואמרתי לו את אשר צוני אחי נפי, והוא אמר כי ישמע אל מצוותי.
- 36 And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing

וְאֲנִי שָׁם קִץ לְכַתִּיבָתִי עַל הַלִּיחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,
וּכְתַבְתִּי מַעֲשִׂים; וְאֵת הַקּוֹרָא אֲבָרֶךְ לְשָׁלוֹם;
הֵן תִּקְנוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר רַבִּים מֵאֲחֵי יִקְרְאוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי.
הָיָה שָׁלוֹם, אֲחִים!

upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I
bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words.
Brethren, adieu.

סֵפֶר אֲנוֹשׁ

THE BOOK OF ENOS

אֲנוֹשׁ מִתְפַּלֵּל וְשׁוֹמָע לְקוֹל יְהוָה. הוּא שָׁשׁ בְּשֵׁל
הָאֲפָשְׁרוֹת לְמִצָּא מְנוּחָה עִם גּוֹאֲלוֹ. (בְּעֶרְךָ 420
לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

*Enos prays and hears the voice of the Lord. He rejoices in the prospect of
finding rest with his Redeemer. (About 420 B.C.)*

אֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי אָבִי הָיָה אִישׁ
צַדִּיק, עַל כֵּי לְמַדְנִי בְּשִׁפְתּוֹ וּבְתוֹרַת יְהוָה
וּתוֹכַחְתּוֹ, לָכֵן אֲבָרֶךְ עַל כָּךְ אֶת שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי:

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a
just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and
admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

וְאֲנִי אֶסְפָּר לָכֶם עַל מַאֲבָקִי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים,
בְּטָרָם נִמְחַלוּ לִי חַטָּאִי.

2 And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I
received a remission of my sins.

וְהָיָה כִּי יֵצְאֵתִי לְצוֹד חַיּוֹת בְּיַעְרוֹת; וְהַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתִּי מִפִּי אָבִי לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת עַל
אוֹדוֹת חַיֵּי עוֹלָם וְעַל שְׁמִיחַת הַקְדוּשִׁים שֶׁקָּעוּ
עִמָּךְ אֶל תוֹךְ לִבִּי.

3 Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had
often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the
saints, sunk deep into my heart.

וּנְפָשִׁי רָעְבָה; וְאֲנִי כָרַעְתִּי בָרֶךְ לִפְנֵי יוֹצְרִי,
וְקָרָאתִי אֵלָיו בְּתַפִּלַּת עֹז וּתְחִנּוּנִים לְמַעַן
נִפְשִׁי; אָכֵן, כָּל הַיּוֹם שׁוֹעֵתִי אֵלָיו, וּבִבּוֹא
הַלֵּילָה עוֹד נִשְׁאָתִי קוֹלִי עַד הַגִּיעוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם.

4 And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I
cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul;
and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I
did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

וְקוֹל בָּאֵנִי לֵאמֹר: אֲנוֹשׁ, נִמְחַלוּ לָךְ חַטָּאֶיךָ
וְאֵתָה תִּבְרָךְ.

5 And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven
thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

וְאֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְזֹּב אֱלֹהִים; עַל
כֵּן נִמְחַתָּה אֲשָׁמְתִּי.

6 And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was
swept away.

וְאֲנִי אָמַרְתִּי: יְהוָה, אֵיךְ נַעֲשֶׂתָה זֹאת?

7 And I said: Lord, how is it done?

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָי: בְּעִבּוֹר אֲמוֹנָתְךָ בְּמִשְׁחִית,
אוֹתוֹ לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ, אַף לֹא רָאִיתָ מַעֲדוֹךְ. וְעוֹד
תִּחְלַפְנָה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֶּה בְּגוֹף;
לָכֵן לָךְ; אֲמוֹנָתְךָ עֲשֶׂתָה אוֹתְךָ שָׁלֵם.

8 And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast
never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall
manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee
whole.

וּכְשֶׁמָּעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִתְעוֹרַרָה
בִּי תְשׁוּקָה בְּדַבַּר טוֹבַת אֲחֵי הַנִּפְתִּים; עַל כֵּן
שִׁפַּכְתִּי אֶת כָּל נִפְשִׁי אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְמַעַנָם.

9 Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel
a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did
pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

אֲנוֹשׁ א:י-יח

וּבְעוֹדִי מִתְאַמֵּץ כִּי בְרוּחִי, וְהָנָה קוֹל יְהוָה
דִּבֶּר שֵׁנִית אֶל לְבִי, לֵאמֹר: אֲנִי אֶפְקֹד אֶת
אֲחִיד כְּפִי שְׁקִידָתָם לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי. נִתְּנָה
לָהֶם אֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְהִיא אֶרֶץ קֹדֶשׁ; אָרֶר
לֹא אֶאֱרֹא אוֹתָהּ, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי עוֹן; וְאֲנִי אֶפְקֹד
אֶת אֲחִיד כְּאֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי; וְאֶת פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם
אוֹרִיד בִּיגּוֹן עַל רִאשָׁם.

וּכְשִׁמְעִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
נַעֲשֶׂתָה אֲמוּנָתִי בִיהוּה בְּלִתִּי מִעֲרַעְרָת;
וְאֲנִי הִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי אֵלָיו וְהִתְאַמַּצְתִּי רַבּוֹת
וְאַרְכּוֹת לְמַעַן אַחֲזִי הַלְּמָנִים.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שְׁקִדְתִּי רַבּוֹת בְּתַפְלָה וּבַעֲמָל,
אָמַר אֵלַי יְהוָה: הִנְנִי נוֹתֵן לְךָ כְּחָפְצְךָ בַּעֲבוּר
אֲמוּנָתְךָ.

וְזֶה הָיָה חֲפָצִי מִמֶּנּוּ: אֲשֶׁר אִם אֲמַנְסָם וְפָלוּ
עַמִּי, הַנִּפְיִים, אֶל פֶּשַׁע וּבִאֲפֹן שֶׁהוּא יִשְׁמְדוּ,
וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא יִשְׁמְדוּ, יִשְׁמֹר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם אֶת
כְּתָב זִכְרוֹן עַמִּי, הַנִּפְיִים; אִף אִם בְּכַח זְרוּעַ
קֹדֶשׁוֹ, בַּעֲבוּר יֵצֵא לְאוֹר בָּיוֹם יְבוּא, וְיִלָּךְ לִידֵי
הַלְּמָנִים, וְאוֹלֵי יְבוּאוּ הֵם אֶל הַיְּשׁוּעָה.

כִּי בִימֵינוּ, כָּל מֵאֲמַצֵּינוּ לְהִשְׁיבָם אֶל אֲמוּנָת
אֲמֵת, לִשְׂוֹא הָיוּ; וּבְחַמְתָּם נִשְׁבָּעוּ, אֲשֶׁר אִלּוּ
נָתַן הַדְּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת, יִשְׁחִיתוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵינוּ,
וְאוֹתֵנוּ, וְאֶת כָּל מְסֻרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתִּי כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים יָכוֹל לְשֹׁמֵר
אֶת כְּתָבֵינוּ, קָרָאתִי אֵלָיו חֲזוֹר וְקָרָא, כִּי אָמַר
אֵלַי: כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֹשׁ בְּאֲמוּנָה, בְּהֶאֱמִינָה כִּי
תִקְבֹּל בְּשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, קִבֵּל תִּקְבָּלֵנָה.

וְאֲנִי הֶאֱמַנְתִּי, וְקָרָאתִי אֶל אֱלֹהִים כִּי יִשְׁמֹר אֶת
הַכְּתָבִים; וְהוּא כָּרַת לִי בְרִית אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיאָם
לְאוֹר לִידֵי הַלְּמָנִים בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר תִּישַׁר בְּעֵינָיו.

וְאֲנִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, יָדַעְתִּי כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה, כַּדָּבָר בְּרִיתוֹ;
וְלָכֵן תִּנּוּחַ נַפְשִׁי.

וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֵלַי: גַּם אֲבוֹתֶיךָ דָּרָשׁוּ זֹאת מִמֶּנִּי;
וְהַדְּבָר יַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם כְּפִי אֲמוּנָתָם; כִּי אֲמוּנָתָם
הָיְתָה כְּאֲמוּנָתְךָ.

10 And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

11 And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

12 And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

13 And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

14 For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

15 Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

16 And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

17 And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

18 And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

- 19 ואֲנִי, אֵנוֹשׁ, הִלְכְּתִי בְּקֶרֶב עַם נְפִי, וְנִבֵּאתִי
עַל הַבָּאוֹת וְהַעֲדָתִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
שָׁמַעְתִּי וְרָאִיתִי.
- 20 And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.
- וְהִנְנִי מַעֲיִד כִּי בָנִי עִם נְפִי שָׁקְדוּ לְהָשִׁיב אֶת
הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֱמוּנַת הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּאֱלֹהִים.
אֲדָּרָא לְשׂוֹא הָיָה עִמָּלְנוּ. שְׂנֵאָתָם הָיְתָה חֲרוּצָה,
וְהֵם הָלְכוּ אַחֵר יִצְרָם הָרַע וְהָיוּ לְעַם פָּרָא
וְאֶכְזָר, צִמְאֵי דָם, עוֹבְדֵי פְסִילִים וְטִמְאִים;
מִשְׁבִּיעִים נַפְשָׁם בְּבֶשֶׂר חַיּוֹת טָרֶף, שׁוֹכְנִים
בְּאֹהֲלִים וְנוֹדְדִים בְּיַעְרוֹת, וְלִמְתַּנִּיהֶם חֲגוּרֵי
עוֹרוֹת וְרָאשֵׁיהֶם מְגֻלָּחִים; כֹּשֶׁר מַעֲשֶׂה הָיָה
לָהֶם בְּקִשְׁת׃ וּבַפְּגִיז׃ וּבַגִּרְזֵל׃ רַבִּים מֵהֶם אָכְלוּ
אֶת בֶּשֶׂר נֶאֱדָר, וְתַמִּיד הָיוּ מִבְּקָשִׁים לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ.
- 20 And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a bloodthirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.
- וְעַם נְפִי הָיוּ עוֹבְדֵי אֲדָמָה וְגִדְלוּ כָּל מִינֵי דָגָן
וּפְרִי, וְעֲדָרֵי בָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי צֹאן, וְעִזִּים וְיַעֲלִים
וְכֵן סוֹסִים לָרֶב.
- 21 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.
- וְהָיוּ בְּקֶרְבָּנוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים מְאֹד, וְהָעָם הָיוּ
קָשִׁי עֵרָף, וְקָשִׁי הִבְנָה.
- 22 And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.
- וְלֹא נָתַן הָיָה לַעֲשׂוֹת דְּבָר, בְּלֹתִי אִם בְּדַבּוֹר
קֹשֶׁה מְאֹד, וְדְבָרֵי הַטָּפָה וְהַתְּנַבְּאוֹת עַל
מִלְחָמוֹת, וְעַל מְרִיבוֹת וְעַל חֲרָבָה, וְהַזְכָּרָה
מִתְמַדֶּדֶת עַל הַמָּוֶת וְעַל אֶרֶץ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם,
וּמִשְׁפָּטֵי אֱלֹהִים וְכַח, וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
לְמַעַן עוֹרֶרֶם תִּמְיֵד וּלְשַׁמְרֶם בִּירְאַת יְהוָה.
הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּלִבִּי, אֲכַן
דְּבָרִים בְּרוּרִים וּמִפְרָשִׁים מְאֹד, יִכְלוּ לְשַׁמֹּר
עֲלֵיהֶם מִרְדַּת מִהֲרָה אֵלַי אֲבִדּוּ. וְכִדְרֹף
הַזֹּאת כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 23 And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.
- וּבִימֵי חַיֵּי רִאִיתִי מִלְחָמוֹת בֵּין
הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִים.
- 24 And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.
- וְהָיָה כִּי זָקַנְתִּי; וּמִיּוֹם צֵאת אָבִינוּ, לְחִי,
מִירוּשָׁלַם חָלְפוּ מֵאָה וְשִׁבְעִים וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנִים.
- 25 And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.
- וְאֲנִי רִאִיתִי אֲשֶׁר קָרוֹב לְבֹא יוֹם רְדָתִי אֵלַי
קָבֵר, כִּי כֹה פָּעַל עָלַי כַּח אֱלֹהִים בְּעֶבְרוֹ אֲטִיף
וְאֶנְבֵּא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבָר
אֱלֹהִים עַל כִּי הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁחִי. כָּל יְמֵי
הַשְׁמַעְתִּיו, וְשִׁמְחָתִי בּוֹ מִכָּל אֲשֶׁר בְּעוֹלָם.
- 26 And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

אנוש א:כז – ירום א:ה

קרוב לְכִתִּי אֶל מְקוֹם מְנוּחָתִי, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
עִם גּוֹאֲלִי; כִּי יִדְעֵתִי אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ מְנוּחָתִי וְאֲנִי
אֶשְׂמַח לְקִרְאָת יוֹם חֲלֹף מוֹתִי בְּאַלְמָנוֹת,
וְאֶשְׂמַד לְפָנָיו; אֲזִי אֶחְזֶה פָּנָיו בְּעֵנֶג לִבִּי, וְהוּא
יֹאמֶר אֵלַי: בּוֹאָה אֵלַי, אֶתָּה הַמְּבָרֵךְ; מְקוֹם
מוֹכֵן לְךָ בְּמִשְׁכָּנוֹת אָבִי. אָמֵן.

27 And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

סֵפֶר יְרוֹם

עַם נֶפְחִי שׁוֹמֵר אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה. הֵם מַצְלִיחִים
בְּאַרְצָם. נְבִיאֵיהֶם, כְּהֹנֵיהֶם וּמוֹרִיָּהֶם מְלַמְּדִים
אוֹתָם לְצִפּוֹת לְבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ. (בְּעֵרֶךְ 399–361
לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.)

THE BOOK OF JAROM

The people of Nephi observe the Law of Moses. They prosper in the land. Their prophets, priests, and teachers teach them to look forward to the coming of Messiah. (About 399–361 B.C.)

אֲנִי, יְרוֹם, כּוֹתֵב דְּבָרִים מְעֻטִּים, עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת
אָבִי, אֲנוֹשׁ, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ דְּבָרֵי תוֹלְדוֹתֵינוּ.

1 Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה קְטַנִּים, וַיַּעַן
אֲשֶׁר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִכְתָּבִים בְּכֹנֶה לְהִיטִיב
לְאַחֲיָנוּ הַלְּמָנִים, עַל כֵּן הִכְרַח הוּא כִּי אֶכְתָּב
מְעֻט; וְאוֹלָם לֹא אֶכְתָּב אֶת דְּבָרֵי נְבוּאָתִי, אִם
לֹא אֶת חֲזִיוֹנוֹתִי. כִּי מָה אוֹכֵל לְהוֹסִיף עַל
אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבוּ אֲבוֹתַי? הֲלֹא גָלוּ הֵם אֶת תְּכֵנֶת
הַיְשׁוּעָה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם: אֲכֹן, וְיָדִי לִי בְּזֹאת.

2 And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

הִנֵּה, הִכְרַח הוּא לַפְּעֹל רַב פְּעֻלָּה בְּקִרְבִּי
הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם וְכִבְדֹּת אָזְנוֹם, וְעִוְרוֹן
שִׁכְלָם וְקָשִׁי עֲרָפָם. וְאוֹלָם מְרִבָּה אֱלֹהִים
לְרַחֲמָם עַד מָאֵד וְעוֹד לֹא מָחָה אוֹתָם מֵעַל
פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.

3 Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

אִם לְרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּנוּ חֲזִיוֹנוֹת רַבִּים, כִּי
לֹא הִכַּל קָשִׁי עֲרָף. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם קָשִׁי עֲרָף
וְאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם אֲמוּנָה, הִמָּה בָּאִים בְּסוּד רוּחַ
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הַמְתַּגַּלָּה לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כְּפִי אֲמוּנָתָם.

4 And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

וְהִנֵּה מֵאֲתָתִים שָׁנָה חָלְפוּ וְעַם נֶפְחִי הִתְעַצֵּם
מְאֹד בְּאַרְצָם. וְהֵם הִשִּׁיתוּ לִבָּם לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וְאֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת, קֹדֶשׁ לַיהוָה.
וְהֵם לֹא חָלְלוּ וְלֹא גִדְּפוּ אֶת הַקֹּדֶשׁ; וְחֻמוֹרִים
מְאֹד הָיוּ חֻקֵּי הָאָרֶץ.

5 And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

יְרוֹם א:ו-יג

- וְהַנְּפִיִּים, וְאִף הַלְּמָנִים, נִפְּצוּ בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ. וְהַלְּמָנִים רַבּוּ מִהַנְּפִיִּים עֲשָׂרָה מוֹנִים; וְהֵם אָהָבוּ רֵצַח וְשָׂוִי דַם חַיּוֹת.
- וְהֵם קָמוּ עָלֵינוּ, הַנְּפִיִּים, פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ; אִף מְלָכֵינוּ וּמְנַהֲיֵינוּ אֲנָשֵׁי חֵיל הָיוּ בְּאַמּוֹנֵת יְהוָה, וְלָמְדוּ הֵם אֶת הָעָם אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה; עַל כֵּן עָמְדָנוּ בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וְגִרְשָׁנוּ אוֹתָם מֵאֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ, וְנִגְשָׁנוּ לְבַצֵּר אֶת עָרֵינוּ וְאֶת כָּל מְקוֹמוֹת נַחֲלָתָנוּ.
- וְהִרְבִּינוּ מְאֹד בְּאָרֶץ וּנְפֻצוֹנוּ עַל פָּנֶיהָ, וְהִתְעַשְׂרָנוּ עַד מְאֹד בְּזָהָב וּבְכֶסֶף וּבְחַפְצֵי יָקָרוֹת, וּבְמַעֲשֵׂה מַחֲשָׁבֶת מְלָאכַת חָרָשֵׁי עֵץ, בְּבָתִּים וּבְמַכּוֹנוֹת, וְכֵן בְּבָרָזֹל וּנְחָשֶׁת, וּנְחָשֶׁת קָלִל וּפְלִדָּה, וְעֵשִׂינוּ מִיָּנִי כְּלִים לְעַבֹּדֶת הָאֲדָמָה, לְסוּגִיָּהֶם הַשּׁוֹנִים, וְכָלִי מְלָחָמָה. וְנִשְׁקָנוּ הָיָה חֵץ חֵד רֹאשׁ וְאַשְׁפַּת חֲצִים, וְשִׁלַּח וְחִנִּית וְכָל הַכְּנוֹת הַמְּלָחָמָה.
- וַעֲנֵן אֲשֶׁר הָיִינוּ נִכּוֹנִים לְעַמֹּד אֶל מוֹל הַלְּמָנִים, לֹא עָלָה בְּיָדֵם לְגַבֵּר עָלֵינוּ. וְאֵכֶן הִתְקַים דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לֵאמֹר: אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, תִּצְלִיחוּ בְּאָרֶץ.
- וּבִנְיָאֵי יְהוָה הִזְהִירוּ אֶת עַם נָפִי עַל פִּי דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, וְיָפְלוּ אֶל פֶּשַׁע, אֲכֵן אָבוֹד יֵאבְדוּ מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- עַל כֵּן שָׁקְדוּ הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַמּוֹרִים בְּעִמְלָם לְעוֹרֵר אֶת הָעָם, בְּכָל אֶרֶץ אֲפֹס, לְעַמֹּד עַל מִשְׁמָרָם. וְלָמְדוּ הֵם אוֹתָם אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה וְהַפְּנוּהָ אֲשֶׁר בְּנִתְיָנָהּ; וְהֵם שִׁכְנְעוּ אֶת הָעָם לְהִבִּיט קְדִימָה אֶל הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וּלְהֶאֱמִין בּוֹ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, כְּאֵלוֹ כְּבָר בָּא. בְּדֶרֶךְ זֹאת לָמְדוּם.
- וּבְעֲשׂוֹתָם כֵּן, הִצִּילוּם מִכְּלִיָּה מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; כִּי בְּדִבְרֵי יְהוָה דָּקְרוּ אֶת לֵב הָעָם, וְעוֹרְרוּם תָּמִיד לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא.
- וְחָלְפוּ מְאֻתִּים וּשְׁלָשִׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה שָׁנִים, בְּמִלְחָמוֹת וּבְמִרְיבוֹת וּבְמַחֲלּוֹקוֹת אֲשֶׁר אָרְכוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בְּמִשְׁךְ הָעֵת הַזֶּה.
- 6 And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.
- 7 And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.
- 8 And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.
- 9 And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.
- 10 And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.
- 11 Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.
- 12 And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.
- 13 And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

יְרוֹם א:י"ד – אוֹמְנִי א:ו

- וְאֲנִי, יְרוֹם, לֹא אוֹסִיף לְכַתֵּב, כִּי קִטְנִים הַלּוּחוֹת. אַךְ הִנֵּה, אַחִי, תּוֹכְלוּ לִפְנוֹת אֶל לּוּחוֹת נְפִי הַנוֹסְפִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם חֲרוּטִים כְּתָבֵי זִכְרוֹן מַלְחָמוֹתֵינוּ, כְּפִי כְּתִיבַת הַמְּלָכִים, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ הֵם לְכַתְּבָם.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מוֹסֵר אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה לְיָדֵי בְנִי אוֹמְנִי, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרוּ כְּמִצְוֹת אֲבוֹתַי.
- 14 And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.
- 15 And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

סֵפֶר אוֹמְנִי

נְבִיאֵי הָעָם שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת הַכְּתָבִים. הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ מְגַלֵּה אֲנָשֵׁי זֶרַע־חֶמְלָה שֶׁבָּאוּ מִירוּשָׁלַם בִּימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ צְדָקְיָהוּ. הוּא מִתְמַנֶּה לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם. בְּנִימִין, בְּנוֹ שֶׁל מוֹשִׁיעַ, יוֹרֵשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. (בְּעֶרְךָ 323–130 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.)

THE BOOK OF OMNI

The people's prophets keep the records. King Mosiah discovers the people of Zarahemla, who came from Jerusalem in the days of King Zedekiah. He is appointed king over them. Mosiah's son Benjamin succeeds him as king. (About 323–130 B.C.)

- אֲנִי, אוֹמְנִי, אֲשֶׁר אָבִי, יְרוֹם, צִוֵּנִי לְכַתֵּב מַעֲט עַל הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת דְּבָרֵי תוֹלְדוֹתֵינוּ.
- הִנֵּנִי חֹפֵץ כִּי תִדְעוּ אֲשֶׁר רַבּוֹת נִלְחַמְתִּי בְּיָמַי בַּחֶרֶב לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיִּים, מִנִּפֹל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, הַלָּמָנִים. וְאֲשֶׁר לִי, הִנֵּנִי אִישׁ אָוֹן וְלֹא שִׁמְרָתִי אֶת חֻקֹּת יְהוָה וּמִצְוֹתָיו, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת.
- מֵאִתִּים וְשִׁבְעִים וְשֵׁשׁ שָׁנִים חָלַפּוּ, וְהָיוּ לָנוּ עֵתוֹת שְׁלוֹם רַבּוֹת, וְכֵן עֵתוֹת רַבּוֹת שֶׁל מַלְחָמָה כְּבִדָּה וְשִׁפְכַת דָּם. וּבִקְצָרָהּ: מֵאִתִּים וְשִׁמּוֹנִים וְשָׁתִּים שָׁנִים חָלַפּוּ, וְאֲנִי שִׁמְרָתִי אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה כְּמִצְוֹת אֲבוֹתַי; וּמִסְרָתִים לְבְנִי אַמְרוֹן. וּבִזְאת אֲשִׁים קֵץ לְדִבְרִי.
- אֲנִי, אַמְרוֹן, אֶכְתֹּב דְּבַר־מָה, אֲשֶׁר מַעֲט הוּא, בְּסֵפֶר אָבִי.
- וְעַתָּה, וְחָלַפּוּ שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה, וְהִרְשָׁעִים בְּיוֹתֵר בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים נִשְׁמְדוּ.
- כִּי יְהוָה, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם וְשִׁמְרָם וּנְצָרָם מִנִּפֹל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, לֹא הִתִּיר אֶת הַכְּתָבִים דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, לֵאמֹר: אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, לֹא תִצְלִיחוּ בָאָרֶץ.
- 1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy.
- 2 Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.
- 3 And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.
- 4 And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.
- 5 Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.
- 6 For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

- 7 Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.
- על כן פקדם יהוה במשפט גדול; ואולם, חס על הצדיקים לבל יאבדו, והצילם מידי אויביהם.
- 8 And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.
- ואני מסרתי את הלוחות לאחי חמיש.
- 9 Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.
- אני, חמיש, כותב את הדברים המעטים הבאים, בספר אחד עם אחי; כי ראיתי את אחרית דבריו הכתובים בעצם ידו; והוא כתבם ביום אשר מסרם לי, ובאפן הזה אנחנו שומרים את הכתבים כמצות אבותינו. וזה קץ דברי.
- 10 Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.
- אני אבינדום בן חמיש. מלחמות ומריבות לרב ראיתי בין בני עמי, הנפיים, ובין הלמנים; ואני, בחרבי הרגתי רבים מן הלמנים בהגנני על אחי.
- 11 And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.
- וכתבי הזכרונות אשר לעם הזה חרוטים על גבי לוחות אשר למלכים, לפי דורותיהם; לא אדע על דברי חזות, ואף לא על נבואה, זולת אשר נכתב; לכן מספיק הוא אשר נכתב. ובזאת אשים קץ לדברי.
- 12 Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—
- אני אמלקי בן אבינדום, אדבר אליכם מעט על מושיע, אשר המלך על ארץ זרעהמלה; כי הזהירו יהוה אשר יברח מארץ נפי, ואשר יברחו עמו המדברה כל השומעים בקול יהוה.
- 13 And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesying. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness, until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.
- ומושיע עשה כמצות יהוה, וכל השומעים בקול יהוה יצאו מן הארץ אל היערות; דברי הטפה ונבואה לרב הנהיגום, ודבר אלהים הזהירם כל העת; וזרוע עזו הובילה אותם דרך היערות, עד אשר ירדו אל הארץ אשר שמה נקרא ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 14 And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.
- והם גלו שם עם, אשר שמו נקרא עם זרעהמלה. ובקרב אנשי זרעהמלה הייתה שמחה רבה; וגם זרעהמלה שמח עד מאד כי יהוה שלח את אנשי מושיע עם לוחות נחשת הקלל, אשר בהם היה כתב זכרון היהודים.

- 15 Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.
- 16 And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.
- 17 And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.
- 18 But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.
- 19 And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.
- 20 And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.
- 21 And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.
- 22 It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.
- 23 Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.
- 24 And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.
- וּלְמוֹשִׁיעַ נִגְלָה כִּי עִם זְרַעְחָמְלָה יָצְאוּ
מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הִגְלָה צְדֻקְיָהוּ, מֶלֶךְ
יְהוּדָה, בְּבָבֶלָה.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר, וַיֵּד יְהוָה הֵעֲבִירָה אוֹתָם
בְּתוֹךְ הַיָּמִים הָרַבִּים אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ גָּלָה
אוֹתָם מוֹשִׁיעַ; וּמֵאָז הֵם שָׁכְנוּ שָׁם.
- וּבְעֵת אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה אוֹתָם מוֹשִׁיעַ, מִסְפָּרָם הָיָה
רַב מְאֹד. וְאוֹלָם, רַבּוֹת הָיוּ מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם,
וּמְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ גְדוּלוֹת וְהֵם לָעֵתִים נָפְלוּ
בַּחֶרֶב; אֵף שְׁפָתָם נִשְׁחָתָה וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּיאוּ
עִמָּם כְּתָבֵי זְכוּנוֹת; וְהֵם כִּחְשׁוּ בְּבוֹרָאָם,
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ וְאַנְשֵׁיוֹ לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִבִּינָם.
- אֵף מוֹשִׁיעַ הוֹרָה לְלַמְּדָם אֶת שְׁפָתוֹ. וְהָיָה
אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּ אֶת שְׁפַת מוֹשִׁיעַ, נָתַן
זְרַעְחָמְלָה, עַל פִּי זְכוּנוֹ, אֶת דּוֹרוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו;
וְהַדְּבָרִים כְּתוּבִים, אֵף לֹא בְּלוֹחוֹת אֵלֶּה.
- וְאַנְשֵׁי זְרַעְחָמְלָה וְאַנְשֵׁי מוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְאָחְדוּ.
וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְמַנָּה לְמֶלֶכָם.
- וּבִימֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הוּבָאָה אֵלָיו אֶבֶן גְּדוֹלָה, אֲשֶׁר
עָלֶיהָ חֲרִיטוֹת; וְהוּא פָּעַנָח אֶת הַחֲרִיטוֹת עַל
יְדֵי מַתַּת אֱלֹהִים וְכֹחוֹ.
- וְסִפֵּר שָׁם עַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ קוֹרִיאֲנִטוּמְרַה,
וְעַל הָרֶג עֲמוֹ. וְאַנְשֵׁי זְרַעְחָמְלָה גָּלוּ אֶת
קוֹרִיאֲנִטוּמְרַה, וְהוּא גָר עִמָּם תִּשְׁעָה יָרֵחִים.
- וְעוֹד סִפֵּר שָׁם מְעַט עַל אֲדוֹת אֲבוֹתָיו.
וְאַבּוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר מִקֵּדָם יָצְאוּ מִהַמִּגְדֵּל, בְּעֵת
אֲשֶׁר בָּלַל יְהוָה אֶת שְׁפַת הָעַמִּים; וַיְהוֶה
הָרָאָה אֶת נַחַת דִּינֹה הַחֲמוּר עֲלֵיהֶם כְּפִי צֶדֶק
מִשְׁפָּטוֹ; וַעֲצַמוֹתֵיהֶם פִּזְרוּת בָּאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
לְפָאֵת צָפוֹן.
- וְאַנִּי, עַמְלֵקִי, נוֹלַדְתִּי בִימֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ; אֵף רֵאִיתִי
אֶת מוֹתוֹ; וּבִנְיָמִין בְּנוֹ מִשְׁלַח תַּחְתָּיו.
- וּבִימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ בִּנְיָמִין, רֵאִיתִי מִלְחָמָה כְּבֹדָה
וּשְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים רַבָּה בֵּין הַנְּפִיטִים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִיתִים.
אֵף הַנְּפִיטִים הִשְׁיִגוּ יִתְרוֹן רַב עַל אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, עַד
כִּי גָרְשָׁם הַמֶּלֶךְ בִּנְיָמִין מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַעְחָמְלָה.

אומני א:כה – דברי מורמון א:א

- 25 ואני זקנתי: ונען אשר אין לי זרע, ואשר אדע כי המלך בנימין איש צדיק לפני יהוה, הנני מוסר לו את הלוחות האלה. ואני מפציר בכל בני האדם לבוא אל אלהים, קדוש ישראל, ולהאמין בנבואה ו בדברי חזות ובשרות מלאכים, ובמתת הדבור בלשונות ובמתת תרגום הלשונות ובכל דבר אשר טוב הוא; כי אין דבר טוב בלתי אם בא הוא מאת יהוה. ואשר רע, בא הוא מאת השטן.
- 26 And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord; and that which is evil cometh from the devil.
- 26 והנה, אחי האהובים, חפצי כי תבואו אל המשיח, אשר הוא קדוש ישראל, ותקחו חלק בישועתו ובכח גאלתו. אכן, בואו אליו והקריבו את כל נפשכם קרבן לו, והמשיכו בצום ובתפלה והתמידו עד הקץ. חי יהוה כי אכן תושעו.
- 27 And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.
- 27 והנה אספר מעט על כמה אנשים אשר עלו אל היערות, בדרפם לשוב אל ארץ נפִי; כי רב היה מספר החפצים להתנחל בארץ ירשתם.
- 28 Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.
- 28 לכן עלו הם אל היערות; ומנהיגם היה איש חיל וגבור, וקשה ערף, והוא הסב ריב ביניהם עד כי יהרגו כלם ביער, וזולת חמשים איש, ואלה שבו אל ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 29 And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.
- 29 ואף הם לקחו עמם אנשים נוספים ומספרם גדול, והם שבו ונסעו ביער.
- 30 And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.
- 30 ולִי, עמלקי, היה אח אשר הלך אִי הוא עִמָּם, וימָאָז לא נודע לִי דָּבָר עַל אֲדוּתֵיהֶם. וְהִנֵּה קִרְבָּה עִתִּי לִשְׁכַּב בְּקִבְרִי; וְהַלּוּחֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְלֵאִים; וְאֲנִי שֹׁם קֵץ לְדִבְרִי.

דברי מורמון

מורמון מקצר את תולדות עמו על גבי לוחות מורמון. הוא כולל בקצור את לוחות נפִי. (בערך 385 לספירה.)

WORDS OF MORMON

Mormon abridges his people's history on the plates of Mormon. He includes the plates of Nephi in his abridgment. (About A.D. 385.)

- 1 And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.
- 1 הנה אני, מורמון, עומד למסר את כתב הזכרון אשר כתבתי, לידי בני מורוני; עד הייתי לחרבן כמעט כל עמי, הנפִיים.

דְּבָרֵי מוֹרְמוֹן א:ב-ט

- וְעַתָּה, מֵאוֹת שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת אַחֵר בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ
הַנִּנִּי מוֹסֵר אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה לְיָדִי בְּנִי;
וְסָבוֹר אֲנִי כִּי הוּא יַחְזֶה בְּחֻרְבָּן עַמִּי כְּתוּמָה.
יְהִי רָצוֹן מִלְּפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי יוֹתֵר בְּאַרְצָ הַחַיִּים
אַחֲרֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יוּכַל לְכַתֵּב מַעַט עַל
אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם וְכֵן עַל הַמְּשִׁיחַ. אוֹלֵי יוֹעִילִם זֶה
בְּאַחַד הַיָּמִים.
- וְאֲנִי אֲדַבֵּר מַעַט עַל אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי; כִּי אַחֵר
הַכִּינוֹתִי קִצּוֹר מִן הַכְּתוּב עַל לוחות נְפִי, עַד
עַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזֶּה, בְּנִימִין, עָלָיו דְּבַר
עֲמֶלְקִי, חֻקְרָתִי בְּכַתְבֵי הַזְכֵּרוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר
נִמְסְרוּ לְיָדִי, וּמִצָּאֹתִי אֶת הַלוחות הָאֵלֶּה,
אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בָּהֶם אֶת הַסְּפּוֹר הַקָּטָן הַזֶּה עַל
הַנְּבִיאִים, מִיָּמֵי יַעֲקֹב עַד שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזֶּה,
בְּנִימִין, וְכֵן רַבִּים מִדְּבָרֵי נְפִי.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עַל גְּבֵי הַלוחות הָאֵלֶּה טוֹבִים
בְּעֵינַי, מִפְּנֵי הַנְּבוּאוֹת עַל בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ, וְעַל כִּי
יָדְעוּ אֲבוֹתַי אֲשֶׁר רַבּוֹת מֵהֵן הַתְּקִימוּ; וְאִף
יֹדְעֵי אֲנִי כִּי דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ עַל
אוֹדוֹתֵינוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה הַתְּקִימוּ, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר
נִבְּאוּהוּ עַל הָעֵתִיד לְבוֹא, אֲכֹן, קוֹם יָקוֹם.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּחֻרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן
הַשְׁלֵם אֶת כְּתָבִי עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם, וְאֶת שְׂאֵר כְּתָבִי
אֶקַּח מִלוחות נְפִי; וְלֹא אוּכַל לְכַתֵּב אִף חֵלֶק
אֶחָד מִמָּאָה מִדְּבָרֵי עַמִּי.
- אֲכֹן, הַנִּנִּי לִזְכֹּר אֶת הַלוחות הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
כְּתוּבִים בָּהֶם דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבוּאוֹת וְדְּבָרֵי הַהִתְנַגְּלוּת
הָאֵלֶּה וּמִנִּיחָם עִם יֵתֵר כְּתָבִי, כִּי מִבְּחֹר הֵם
בְּעֵינַי; וְאֲנִי יֹדֵעַ כִּי יִהְיוּ מִבְּחֹרִים לְאַחֵי.
- וְאֲנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת לְתַכְלִית חֻקְמָה; כִּי כֵן נִלְחַשׁ
לִי, כִּפִּי פְּעֻלוֹת רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בִּי. הֵן אֵינִנִּי
יֹדֵעַ הַכֹּל, אִף יְהוָה יֹדֵעַ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹא;
לְכֵן, הוּא פּוֹעֵל בְּקִרְבִּי בְּעִבּוֹר אֲעֲשֶׂה כְּחֻצּוֹ.
- תְּפִלָּתִי הִיא אֶל אֱלֹהִים עֲבוֹר אַחֵי, לְמַעַן
יָשׁוּבוּ לְדַעַת אֶת אֱלֹהִים, אֲכֹן, אֶת גְּאֻלַּת
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לְמַעַן יָשׁוּבוּ שְׂנִית לַהֲיוֹת עִם עֲנִי.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אוֹסִיף לְהַשְׁלִים אֶת כְּתָב
הַזְכֵּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי, אֲשֶׁר אֶת דְּבָרָיו אֶקַּח
מִלוחות נְפִי; וְאֲנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת עַל פִּי דְּעָתִי
וּבִינָתִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי אֱלֹהִים.
- 2 And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.
- 3 And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.
- 4 And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—
- 5 Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.
- 6 But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.
- 7 And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.
- 8 And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.
- 9 And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

דְּבָרֵי מוֹרְמוֹן א:י-יח

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר מָסַר עַמְלֵקִי אֶת הַלוּחוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה לְיַד הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, לְקַחֵם בְּנִימִין
וְהַנִּיחָם עִם שְׂאֵר הַלוּחוֹת, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם כְּתָבִי
זְכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מִיַּד הַמְּלָכִים, מִדּוֹר
לְדּוֹר עַד יְמֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין.
- וְהֵם נִמְסְרוּ מִיַּד הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, מִדּוֹר לְדּוֹר,
עַד אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ לְיָדִי. וְאֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, מִתְפַּלֵּל
אֶל אֱלֹהִים כִּי יִשְׁמְרוּ מֵעַתָּה וְאִילָּה. וְיֻדַּע אֲנִי
כִּי יִשְׁמְרוּ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים עַל גְּבִיָּהֶם
גְּדוּלוֹת, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיהֶן יִשְׁפְּטוּ עַמִּי וְאֶחָיָהֶם
בְּיוֹם הַגְּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן, כְּדָבָר אֱלֹהִים הַכָּתוּב.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְמֶלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, הִנֵּה הָיוּ לוֹ כְּמָה
מְרִיבוֹת בֵּין בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ.
- וְהָיָה גַם כִּי חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ מֵאֶרֶץ נֶפִי
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעַמּוֹ. אַךְ הִנֵּה אָסַף הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין
אֶת צְבָאוֹתָיו וְעָמַד נֶגְדָם; וְלָחֵם הוּא בְּכַח
זְרוֹעוֹ, וְחָרַב לָבָן בְּיָדוֹ.
- וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בְּעֹז יְהוָה בְּאוֹיְבֵיהֶם,
עַד אֲשֶׁר הָרְגוּ אֲלָפִים רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים.
וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בַלְּמָנִים עַד אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּם מִכָּל
אֶרְצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם.
- וְקָמוּ אֲזַי מְשִׁיחֵי שָׁקֶר, אֲךָ נִסְכַּר פִּיהֶם וְהֵם
נִעְנְשׁוּ כַּפְשֵׁיָהֶם.
- וּבְקוֹם בְּעָם נְבִיאֵי הַשָּׁקֶר וּמְשִׁיפֵי כָזָב וּמוֹרֵי
מִרְמָה, וְהֵם נִעְנְשׁוּ כָּלָם כַּפְשֵׁיָהֶם; וּבָבֹא אֲזַי
מְרִיבוֹת וּמַחְלּוֹקוֹת רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִסְבּוּ פְּלוּגִים
אֶל הַלְּמָנִים, נִעְזַר הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין בְּנְבִיאִים
הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
- כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין אִישׁ קְדוֹשׁ הָיָה, אֲשֶׁר מָשַׁל
בְּעַמּוֹ בְּצֶדֶק; וְאִף הָיוּ בְּאֶרֶץ קְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים
אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ בְּעֹז וּבְחֹקֶף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,
וּדְבָרֵיהֶם קָשִׁים, כִּי קָשָׁה עֲרֵף הָיָה הָעָם.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּעֶזְרַת אֱלֹהִים, וּבְעֶמֶל כָּל כֹּחַ גּוֹפִי
וּכְשָׁרוֹן כָּל נַפְשִׁי, הִצַּלְתִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, עִם
הַנְּבִיאִים, לְהַשִּׁיב אֶת הַשָּׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ עַל כָּנּוֹ.
- 10 Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.
- 11 And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.
- 12 And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.
- 13 And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.
- 14 And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.
- 15 And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;
- 16 And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—
- 17 For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—
- 18 Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

ספר מושיע

המלך בנמיין מלמד את עמו. הם מקבלים מחילה על חטאיהם. מושיע בנו מולך תחתיו. (בערך 130–121 לפני הספירה). נכלל בפרקים א–ח.

א

והנה חדל מדון בכל ארץ זרחמלה, בקרב כל העם אשר למלך בנמיין; והיתה שלוה בכל שארית ימי המלך.

והיו לבנמיין שלשה בנים; והוא קרא את שמותם: מושיע, הילורום והילמן. והוא הורה ללמדם את כל שפת אבותיו, למען יהיו אנשי בינה, ובעבור ידעו את דברי הנבואות אשר יצאו מפי אבותם, אשר נמסרו להם מיד יהוה.

אף הוא למד אותם את דברי הזכרונות החרוטים על גבי לוחות נחשת הקלל, ואמר אליהם: בני, חפצני כי תזכרו, כי לולא הלוחות האלה, אשר כתובים בהם הזכרונות והמצוות האלה, היינו סובלים בבורות, גם בעת הזאת, מבלי הבין את נסתרות אלהים.

כי בלא עזרת הלוחות האלה, לא יכול היה אבינו, לחי, לזכר את כל הדברים האלה וללמדם את בניו. ויען אשר למד את שפת המצרים יכול היה לקרא את החריטות האלה וללמדן את בניו, וכך יכלו הם ללמדן את בניהם, ובה קימו את מצוות אלהים, עד היום הזה.

הנני אומר לכם, בני, כי לולא הדברים האלה, אשר יד אלהים שמרתם ונצרתם, בעבור נוכל לקרא את נסתרותיו ולהבין אותן, ולמען תהיינה מצוותיו לנגד עינינו תמיד, היו גם אבותינו שוקעים בחסר אמונה, והיינו דומים לאחינו הלמנים, אשר אינם יודעים מאומה על אודות הדברים האלה, אף אינם מאמינים בהם כאשר ילמדום, מפני מסורות אבותם אשר אינן נכונות.

אכן, בני, חפצתי כי תזכרו כי הדברים האלה אמת הם, וכן כי כתבי הזכרון האלה, אמת

THE BOOK OF MOSIAH

King Benjamin teaches his people. They receive a remission of their sins. His son Mosiah reigns after him. (About 130–121 B.C.) Comprising chapters 1–8.

1

1 And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

2 And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

3 And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

4 For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

5 I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

6 O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of

מושיע א:ז-יד

הם. והנה, גם לוחות נפִי, אשר בהם זכרונות
אבותינו ואמרותיהם מעת צאתם מירושלם
ועד היום הזה, אמת הם; ואנחנו יכולים
להפִיר באמתם, כי הנם לנגד עינינו.

ועתה, בני, רצוני כי תזכרו לחקֹרם בשקִידה,
למען יועילו לָכֶם; אף חפִצִי אֲנִי כי תשמְרוּ
את מצוות אֱלֹהִים, למען תצליחו בארֶץ,
כְּדַבֵּר בְּרִית יהוה אֵל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

ודברים נוספים רבים למד המלֹךְ בְּנִימִין את
בָּנָיו, ואֵין הם כתובים בסֵפֶר הַזֶּה.

והיה ככלותו ללמד את בָּנָיו, זָקֵן המֶלֶךְ
בְּנִימִין, והוא רָאָה כי קָרֹב יוֹם לָכוֹתוֹ בְּדֶרֶךְ
כָּל הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן, רָאָה כי יִיטֵב עֲשׂוֹת
בְּהַעֲבִירוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֶל אֶחָד מִבָּנָיו.

לִכֵּן הוּא בִקֵּשׁ כי יוֹבֵא מוֹשִׁיעַ לְפָנָיו; וְאַלְהָה
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר: בְּנִי, רִצּוֹנִי כי
תוֹדִיעַ בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעָם
הַזֶּה, עִם זִרְעֹתֶיךָ וְעִם מוֹשִׁיעַ הַשּׁוֹכֵנִים
בָּאָרֶץ, לְהֵאסֹף יַחַד, כי לְמַחֲרָת אוֹדִיעַ לְעַמִּי,
בְּמוֹ פִי, כי אֶתָּה מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה,
אֲשֶׁר יהוה אֱלֹהֵינוּ נָתַן לָנוּ.

וְאֲנִי אֵף אֶתֵּן לָעָם הַזֶּה שֵׁם, אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדִיו
יִבָּדְלוּ מִכָּל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם יהוה אֱלֹהִים
מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם; וְהִנְנִי עוֹשֶׂה זֹאת כי הָיוּ הֵם
עַם שׁוֹקֵד עַל שְׁמִירַת מִצְוֹת יהוה.

וְאֲנִי אֶתֵּן לָהֶם שֵׁם אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִמָּחֶה עַד עוֹלָם,
בְּלֹתִי אִם מִפְּנֵי פֶשַׁע.

וְעוֹד אֵמַר אֵלֶיךָ, כי אִם יִפְשַׁע הָעָם הַזֶּה,
אֲשֶׁר יהוה נָטָה לוֹ חֶסֶד כֹּה רַב, וַיְהִי עִם
רִשְׁעָה וְנִאֲוֹן, וַיִּשְׁלַח יהוה וַיְהִי חֲלָשִׁים
כְּאֲחֵיהֶם; וְהוּא לֹא יוֹסִיף לְשִׁמְרָם בְּכַחוֹ
הָעֲלִיוֹן וְהַנִּפְלָא, כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר אֶת
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כי לוֹלֵא שְׁלַח יהוה אֶת זְרֻעוֹ
לְנַצֵּר אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אֲזִי נָפְלוּ לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים
וְהָיוּ קָרְבָּנוֹת לְשִׁנְאָתָם.

Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from
the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can
know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

7 And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them
diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep
the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according
to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

8 And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are
not written in this book.

9 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of
teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very
soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that
he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

10 Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words
which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a
proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the peo-
ple of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that
thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall pro-
claim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king
and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

11 And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be
distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought
out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a
diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

12 And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it
be through transgression.

13 Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of
the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an
adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they
become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve
them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto
preserved our fathers.

14 For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the
preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the
Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

- 15 והיה ככלות המלך בנימין את הנאום הזה לבנו, הוא פקדו לקבל לידי אֶת כל עניני הממלכה.
- 16 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.
- והוא אף פקד אותו עוד על כתבי הזכרונות החרוטים על גבי לוחות נחשת הקלל, וכן על לוחות נפי; ואף על חרב לבן ועל הפדור, או המורה, אשר הוביל את אבותינו במדבר, ואשר הכינה יד יהוה למען יובילם, כל אחד כפי מסירותו ושקיפתו ליהוה.
- 16 And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.
- 17 על כן, כאשר לא היו נאמנים לו, לא האירה להם ההצלחה פנים, והם לא התקדמו במסעם; אף נסוגו אחור ועוררו את חמת אלהים עליהם; לכן הכו ברעב ובמכות נמרצות, למען יעורו לזכר את חובתם.
- 17 Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.
- ואכן קם מושיע ועשה ככל אשר צוהו אביו, והוא הודיע לכל העם היושב בארץ זרעהמלה כי יאספם יחד, לעלות אל בית המקדש לשמע את הדברים אשר ידבר אליהם אביו.
- 18 And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

ב

2

- 1 והיה כעשות מושיע כמצות אביו וכקראו בכל הארץ, נאסף העם מפל רחבי הארץ לעלות אל בית המקדש לשמע את הדברים אשר ידבר אליהם המלך בנימין.
- 1 And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.
- 2 אז בא עם רב, כה עצום עד כי לא נמנה מספרם; כי רבו מאוד ונעצמו בקרב הארץ.
- 2 And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.
- 3 והם אף הביאו מבכורות צאנם, להקריב קרבן ועולה על פי תורת משה;
- 3 And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;
- 4 וכן לתת תודה ליהוה אלהיהם, אשר הוציאם מארץ ירושלם, ואשר הצילם מידי אויביהם ומנה אנשי צדק להיות מוריהם וכן איש צדיק להיות מלכם, אשר כונן שלום בארץ זרעהמלה, ואשר למדם לשמר את מצוות אלהים למען ישמחו וימלאו אהבה לאלהים ולכל האדם.
- 4 And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

- 5 And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.
- וּבְבוֹאֵם אֶל הַמִּקְדָּשׁ הָיוּ אֵת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב, כָּל אִישׁ לְמִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ, עִם אִשְׁתּוֹ, בָּנָיו וּבָנוֹתָיו, וּבְנֵיהֶם וּבָנוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַגְדּוֹל וְעַד קָטָן; כָּל מִשְׁפָּחָה נִפְרָדֶת מִרְעוּתָהּ.
- 6 And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;
- וְהֵם הָיוּ אֵת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם סָבִיב בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ, כָּל אִישׁ וּפְתָחוֹ אֶהְלוּ פָנָה אֶל הַהִיכָל, לְמַעַן יֻכְלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים לִשְׁמָע בְּשִׁמְעָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין.
- 7 For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.
- אֲךָ כֹּה רַב הָיָה הָהֶמוֹן עַד כִּי לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין לְלַמֵּד אֶת כָּלֶם בֵּין כְּתָלֵי הַמִּקְדָּשׁ; לָכֵן הָיָה הוֹרָה לְהָקִים מִגְדָּל, לְמַעַן יֻכְלוּ עַמּוֹ לִשְׁמָע אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִדְבֹר אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 8 And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.
- וְאוּלָם בְּדַבְרוֹ מִן הַמִּגְדָּל, לֹא יָכוֹל כָּל הָעָם לִשְׁמָע אֶת דְּבָרָיו מִפְּנֵי גְדֹל הָהֶמוֹן. עַל כֵּן הָיָה הוֹרָה לְכַתֵּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר וּלְשַׁלַּח אֶת הַכְּתוּב בֵּין אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָגִיעָם קוֹלוֹ, לְמַעַן יִקְבְּלוּ אֹף הֵם אֶת דְּבָרָיו.
- 9 And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.
- וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, וְגַם הוֹרָה לְכַתֵּבָם, לֵאמֹר: אַחֵי, כָּלְכֶם אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם יַחַד, הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר בְּאַזְנוֹיְכֶם הַיּוֹם. לֹא צִוִּיתִיכֶם לָבוֹא הֵנָּה לְהַקְל בְּדַבָּרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר, כִּי אִם בְּעֵבֹר תִּקְשִׁיבוּ לִי וּתִפְקְחוּ אַזְנוֹיְכֶם לִשְׁמָע וּלְבָבְכֶם לְהִבִּין, וְכִי תִכְנִינוּ דַּעְתְּכֶם בְּעֵבֹר יִתְגַּלוּ נִסְתָּרוֹת אֱלֹהִים לְמַרְאֵה עֵינֵיכֶם.
- 10 I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.
- אֹף לֹא צִוִּיתִיכֶם לָבוֹא הֵנָּה לִירֵא מִפָּנַי, אוֹ בְּעֵבֹר תִּדְמוּ בְּנַפְשְׁכֶם כִּי יִתְרוֹן לִי עַל כֵּן תִּמּוּתָהּ.
- 11 But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.
- כִּי כְמוֹנִי כְמוֹכֶם, נָתַן לְכָל מִיַּי חֲלָשׁוֹת הַגּוּף וְהָרוּחַ; וְאוּלָם נִבְחַרְתִּי עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְאַבִּי קִדְּשָׁנִי, וְיָד יְהוָה הֵנִיחָנִי לְהִיּוֹת מוֹשֵׁל וּמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה; כַּחוֹ הָעֲלִיוֹן שָׁמְרָנִי וּנְצָרָנִי לְשִׁרְתְּכֶם בְּכָל מְאֹדִי וּבְכָל נַפְשִׁי וּבְכָל כֹּחִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי יְהוָה.
- 12 I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי בִּהְיִיתִי לִי יְהוָה לְהַעֲבִיר אֶת יָמַי בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה, לֹא בִקְשָׁתִי מִכֶּם זָהָב וְכֶסֶף, אָכֵן לֹא כָל עֶשֶׂר;

מוֹשִׁיעַ בִּיג-כֹּא

- 13 Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—
- אִף לֹא הִנַּחְתִּי כִּי תִכְלְאוּ בְּבוֹר, אוֹ כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לְעֶבֶד אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, וְכִי תִרְצְחוּ, וְתִשָּׁדְדוּ, וְתִגְנְבוּ וְתִנָּאֲפוּ. גַּם לֹא הִנַּחְתִּי כִּי תִבְאוּ לַיָּדִי כָּל רָשָׁעָה, כִּי אִם לְמִדְּתֵיכֶם כִּי שׁוּמָה עָלֵיכֶם לְשׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֶתְכֶם.
- 14 And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.
- אִף אֲנִכִּי, עָמַלְתִּי בְּמִו יָדִי לְשָׁרְתְּכֶם, לְמַעַן לֹא תִכְרְעוּ תַּחַת כְּבֹד מַסִּים וּבְעָבָר לֹא יָבֹא עָלֵיכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּקְשׁוּ לְשִׂאתוֹ; וּלְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי, הִנֵּכֶם עֲדִים הַיּוֹם.
- 15 Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.
- וְאוֹלָם, אַחִי, לֹא לְהִתְפָּאֵר עָשִׂיתִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִף אֲנִי מְסַפֵּר אוֹתָם לְמַעַן הָאֲשִׁימְכֶם; אֲךָ הִנֵּנִי מְסַפֵּר לָכֶם לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ כִּי יָכוֹל אֲנִי לַעֲנוֹת הַיּוֹם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי מִצְפוֹנִי טָהוֹר.
- 16 Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.
- אֲכֹן, זֶה דְּבָרִי אֲלֵיכֶם: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֶמְרַתִּי לָכֶם כִּי יָמֵי עֲבָרִי עָלִי בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם, אֲנִינִי רוֹצֶה לְהִתְפָּאֵר, כִּי בְּשִׁרְוֹת אֱלֹהִים בְּלִבִּי פָעַלְתִּי.
- 17 And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְמַעַן תִּלְמְדוּ חִכְמָה; בְּעָבָר תִּדְעוּ כִּי בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם אֶת חֲבֵרֵיכֶם, אֲךָ בְּשִׁרְוֹת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם אַתֶּם פּוֹעֲלִים.
- 18 Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?
- הִנֵּה, קָרָאתֶם אוֹתִי מִלְּכְכֶם; וְאִם אֲנִי, אֲשֶׁר קוֹרְאִים אֶתֶם מִלְּכְכֶם, עָמַל לְשָׁרְתְּכֶם, הֲאִין עָלֵיכֶם לַעֲמֹל לְשָׁרֵת אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ?
- 19 And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!
- וְאִף זֹאת: אִם אֲנִי, אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרְאוּנִי מִלְּכְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱבִיר אֶת יָמָיו בְּשִׁרְוֹתְכֶם, וּבְזֹאת פָּעַל בְּשִׁרְוֹת לֵאלֹהִים, רְאוּ לַתּוֹדָה מֵאֲתָכֶם, עַד כַּמָּה עָלֵיכֶם לַהֲוֹדוֹת לְמִלְכְּכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם!
- 20 I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אַחִי, כִּי אִלּוּ נִתַּתֶּם אֶת תּוֹדַתְכֶם וְשִׁבְחְכֶם, כָּפִי כָּל כְּחוֹת נַפְשְׁכֶם, לֵאלֹהִים, בּוֹרְאֵכֶם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַרְכֶם וּנְצָרְכֶם, וְשִׁמְחָכֶם, וְהֶעֱנִיק לָכֶם חַיֵּי שְׁלוֹם אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ,
- 21 I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִלּוּ שָׁרְתֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר בָּרָא אֶתְכֶם בְּתַחֲלָה, הַמְּשִׁימְר אֶתְכֶם מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם בְּנִפְחוֹ בְּאַפְכֶם נְשִׁמַת חַיִּים, בְּעָבָר תַּחֲיוּ וְתִגְוִעוּ וְתַעֲשׂוּ כְּחַפְצְכֶם, וְהַתּוֹמָךְ בְּכֶם מִרְגַע לְרָגַע, הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר: אִף אִלּוּ שָׁרְתֶם אוֹתוֹ בְּכָל נַפְשְׁכֶם, אִף כֹּךְ לֹא הֵייתֶם לוֹ עֲבָדִים נוֹשְׂאֵי רוּחַ.

- 22 And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.
- הן כל אשר יבקש מכם אלהים הוא לשמור את מצוותיו; ואמר הוא לכם כי אם תשמרו את מצוותיו תעשו חיל בארץ ולעולם לא ימיר דברתו. על כן, אם אכן תשמרו את מצוותיו, הוא יברך אתכם ויפליחכם.
- 23 And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.
- הנה, ראשית, הוא בראכם והעניק לכם את חייכם אשר על כך הנכם בעלי חובו.
- 24 And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?
- ושנית, הוא דורש כי תעשו כאשר צוה אתכם; ובעשותכם כן, במהרה יברך אתכם, ויברך גמל לכם. אך אתם עודכם חבים לו, כעת ובעתיד, לעולמי עולמים; לכן, מה לכם להתפאר?
- 25 And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.
- ועתה אשאאלכם: התוכלו לומר דבר בשבחכם? ואני אענכם: לא! אי לא תוכלו לומר כי כעפר הארץ אתם; הן מעפר הארץ נוצרתם; ואין הוא כי אם לאשר יצרכם.
- 26 And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.
- ואף אני, אשר תקראוני מלכם, אינני טוב מכם; כי גם אני מן העפר. והנכם רואים כי זקן אני ועומד להשיב את הגוף בן התמותה לאמו, האדמה.
- 27 Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.
- על כן, כפי אמרי לכם כי שרתי אתכם, בהתהלכי לפני אלהים ומצפוני טהור, הנה גם היום הוריתי כי תתכנסו יחדו, למען אמצא ללא אשמה ולא יחול דמכם על ראשי בעמדי להשפט לפני אלהים על אשר צוני בעבורכם.
- 28 I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.
- הנני אומר לכם אשר צויתי כי תתכנסו למען אפטר את בגדי מדמכם בעת הזאת, בעמדי לרדת אלי קבר, בעבור ארד בשלום, ורוחי בת האלמות תדבק במקהלות מרום לשרי תהלות לאלהי צדק.
- 29 And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;
- ועוד אני אומר לכם: צויתי על התאספותכם להגידכם כי אינני יכול עוד להיות מורכם ומלכם.
- 30 For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.
- אף כעת, כל גופי מרעיד מאד, בנסותי לדבר אליכם; אך יהוה אלהים תומכני והוא הניחני לדבר אליכם וצוני להגידכם היום כי בני מושיע הוא מלך ומושל עליכם.

- ועתה, אחי, רצוני כי תעשו כאשר עשיתם עד כה. כפי אשר שמרתם את מצוותי, וכן את מצוות אבי, והצלחתם ונשמרתם מנפל בידי אויביכם, כן יהיה בשמרתם את מצוות בני, או את מצוות אלהים אשר ינתנו לכם מפי בני. אז תצליחו בארץ ולא יהיה לאויביכם כח לגבר עליכם.
- אף, עמי, הזהרו פן יקומו מריבות ביניכם ותטו להשמע לרוח הרע, אשר אבי מושיע דבר עליו.
- כי הנה, נחרצה צרה לאשר יטה לשמע לרוח ההוא; כי אם יטה לשמע לו, ויוסיף וימות בעודו אוהו בחטאיו, מארת חרם לנפשו ישטה; כי שכר פשעו הוא ענש נצחי, יען אשר עבר על חק אלהים למרות ידיעתו.
- הנני אומר לכם כי אין אחד בכם, זולת ילדיכם הקטנים, אשר לא למד על אודות הדברים האלה ואשר לא ידע כי חבים אתם חוב עולם לאביכם אשר בשמים להשיבו את כל אשר לכם ואשר הנכם; ואף למדתם על כתבי הזכרון המכילים את דברי הנבואה אשר דברו הנביאים הקדושים, עד יום צאת אבינו, לחי, מירושלם;
- וכן כל אשר דברו אבותינו עד היום הזה. הנה, אף הם דברו את אשר צנן יהוה; לכן דברי צדק ואמת הם.
- והנני אומר לכם, אחי, כי אחר אשר ידעתם ולמדתם את כל הדברים האלה, אם תפשעו ותלכו להפך מאשר נאמר אם תסוגו מעם רוח יהוה עד כי לא תשפן בכם להנהיגם בנתיבות חכמה, ותתנכם ברך והצלחה ושלום,
- אני אומר לכם, כי האיש אשר יעשה כן, מורד הוא בגלוי באלהים; נוטה הוא לשמע לרוח הרע, ונהפך אויב לכל צדק; על כן, אין ליהוה מקום בקרבו, כי לא ישפן יהוה בהיכלי טמאה.
- לכן, אם לא ישוב האיש ההוא מרעתו, ואף ימות בעודו אויב לאלהים, תעוררנה תביעות דינו, אשר מאת אלהים, את רוחו בת האלמות לחוש בלי הרף את אשמתו, אשר
- 31 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.
- 32 But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.
- 33 For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.
- 34 I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;
- 35 And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.
- 36 And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—
- 37 I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.
- 38 Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and

תִּרְתִּיעוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה וּתְמַלֵּא אֶת חִיקוֹ
בְּאַשְׁמָה וּבִכְאָב וּבְמִצּוּקָה, אֲשֶׁר הֵנִם כְּאֵשׁ
אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִכָּבֶה וְשִׁלְהִבְתָּה עוֹלָה עַד־עַד.

anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵין הַרְחָמִים
נוֹגְעִים לְאִישׁ הַזֶּה; עַל כֵּן דִּינוֹ הוּא לְסִבֵּל
עֲנּוֹי עוֹלָמִי עַד.

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

שְׁמַעוּ כָּל זָקֵן וְצֶעִיר וְיֶלֶד קָטָן, אַתֶּם הַיְּכֹלִים
לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבָרִי, כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת
לְמַעַן תִּבְיִנוּ: הִנְנִי מִבְקֵשׁ כִּי תִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְזָכֹר
אֶת אֵימַת מִצַּב הַנוֹפְלִים אֵלַי פֶּשַׁע.

40 O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

וְעוֹד, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִתְבּוֹנְנוּ בְּכִרְפַּת הַשּׁוֹמְרִים
אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּבְשִׁמְחָתָם. כִּי הִמָּה
מִבְרָכִים בְּכָל, בְּגוֹף וּבְרוּחַ; וְאִם יִתְמַיֵּדוּ
בְּאַמוּנָתָם עַד הַקֵּץ, יִתְקַבְּלוּ בְּשָׁמַיִם לְשֹׁכְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׁמְחַת עוֹלָם. זָכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר אָלַה
דְּבָרִי אֲמַת, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים דִּבֶּר זֹאת.

41 And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

ג

3

וְשׁוּב, אַחִי, הֶאֱזִינוּ, כִּי יֵשׁ לִי עוֹד לְדַבֵּר
אֵלֵיכֶם; הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה לְסַפֵּר לָכֶם עַל
הָעִתִּיד לָבוֹא.

1 And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

וְאֲשֶׁר אֶסְפֹּר לָכֶם, נֹדַע לִי מֵאֵת מַלְאָךְ
אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: עוֹרָה! נָא! וְאֲנִי
הִתְעוֹרַרְתִּי, וְהִנֵּה הוּא עוֹמֵד לִפְנֵי.

2 And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: עוֹרָה וּשְׁמַע אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר אֶגִּיד לָךְ. הִנֵּה בָאתִי לְהוֹדִיעַךְ בְּשׂוֹרֵת
שְׁשׁוֹן וְרַב שְׂמֵחָה.

3 And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

כִּי יְהוָה שָׁמַע אֶת תְּפִלּוֹתֶיךָ וּשְׁפֹט בְּצִדְקָתָךְ,
וְהוּא שָׁלַח אוֹתִי לְהוֹדִיעַךְ כִּי יֵשׁ לָךְ לְשִׂמְחָה;
וְכִי תֻּכַּל לְהוֹדִיעַ לְעַמְּךָ, בְּעִבּוֹר יִתְמַלְאוּ
שְׂמֵחָה אַף הֵם.

4 For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

כִּי הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת, וְלֹא רַחוּקָה הִיא, אֲשֶׁר
יְהוָה אֵל־יְשִׁדִּי, הַמוֹלֵךְ אֲשֶׁר הָיָה וְאֲשֶׁר הוּוֹה
מִעוֹלָם וְלְעוֹלָמֵי עוֹלָמִים, יֵרֵד מִשְׁמַיִם אֶל בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם, וְיִשְׁכֵּן בְּמִשְׁכַּן חָמֵר וְיִלְךָ בִּינֵיהֶם,
וְיַעֲשֶׂה נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת, כְּרַפּוֹי חוֹלִים וְהַקְמַת

5 For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead,

מוֹשִׁיעַ ג:ו-טו

- מתים, ומידו פסחים יהלכו, ועורים יראו,
וחרשים ישמעו, וכל מיני תחלואים ירפאו.
- והוא יגרש שדים, או רוחות רעות, השוכנים
בלב בני האדם.
- והנה, הוא יסבל פתויים ומכאובי גוף,
רעב, צמא ויגיעה יותר מאשר יוכל אדם
לסבל מבלי למות; כי הנה נגר הדם מכל
נקבובית; כה גדולה תהיה מצוקתו מפני
רשעת עמו ותועבותיהם.
- ושמו יקרא ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אבי
שמים וארץ, בורא הכל מבראשית, ושם
אמו יקרא מרים.
- והנה, הוא בא אל אשר לו, למען תבוא
הישועה אל בני האדם על ידי האמונה בשמו.
ואף אחר כל זאת, יחשבוהו אדם ויאמרו כי
יש בו שד ויכוהו בשוטים ויצלבוהו.
- וביום השלישי יקום מן המתים; והוא יעמד
לשפט את העולם; והנה כל הדברים האלה
נעשים למען יבוא על בני האדם משפט צדק.
- ואף דמו מכפר על עונות אלה אשר
נפלו בעברת אדם הראשון, אשר מתו מבלי
ידעת רצון אלהים לגביהם, או אלה אשר
חטאו בשגגה.
- אף אוי, אוי לאשר יודע כי מורד הוא
באלהים! כי אין הישועה בזה לאשר
קמוהו, בלתי אם ינחם מחטא ויאמין
באדון ישוע המשיח.
- ויהוה אלהים שלח את נביאיו הקדושים
בקרב כל בני האדם להודיע את הדברים
האלה לכל משפחה, אמה ולשון, בעבור
יוכל כל המאמין אשר יבוא המשיח לקבל
מחילה על חטאיו ולשמח שמחה רבה מאד,
כאלו בא הוא כבר בקרבם.
- ואולם ראה יהוה אלהים כי עם קשה ערף
עמו והוא מנה להם תורה, היא תורת משה.
- והוא הראה להם אותות ונפלאות, מופתים
ותבניות הנוגעים לבואו; וגם הנביאים
- causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf
to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.
- 6 And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts
of the children of men.
- 7 And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst,
and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for
behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for
the wickedness and the abominations of his people.
- 8 And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of
heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his
mother shall be called Mary.
- 9 And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the
children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this
they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall
scourge him, and shall crucify him.
- 10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth
to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous
judgment might come upon the children of men.
- 11 For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have
fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the
will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.
- 12 But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For
salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and
faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- 13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children
of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue,
that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the
same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly
great joy, even as though he had already come among them.
- 14 Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he
appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.
- 15 And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he
unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto

הַקְדוּשִׁים דָּבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם עַל אֲדוּת בּוֹאוֹ; אֲף
הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי אֵין מוֹעִילָה
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה דָּבָר, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי כַּפֶּרֶת דָּמוֹ.

them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

אֲף אֱלוֹי יִכְלוּ יְלָדִים קְטָנִים לַחֲטָא, לֹא הָיָה
נוֹשָׁעִים; אֲף אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי בְרוּכִים הֵם; כִּי
מִפְּנֵי אָדָם הָרָאשׁוֹן, עַל יְדֵי הַטִּבֵּעַ, יִפְּלוּ, וְדָם
הַמְּשִׁיחַ יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטְאֵיהֶם.

16 And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, כִּי לֹא יִנָּתֵן שֵׁם אֲחֵר וְלֹא
דֶּרֶךְ אַחֶרֶת וְלֹא פְּלִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם תָּבוֹא
הַיְשׁוּעָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם, כִּי אִם בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ,
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי שָׁדַי, וְעַל יְדֵיו בְּלִבָּב.

17 And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

כִּי הִנֵּה הוּא שׁוֹפֵט, וּמִשְׁפָּטוֹ צָדִיק; וְהַעוֹלָל
אֲשֶׁר מֵת בְּיָנְקוּתוֹ, לֹא יֵאבֹד, אֲף אֲנָשִׁים
שׁוֹתִים מֵאֶרֶת חֶרֶם לְנַפְשָׁם, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשְׁפִּילוּ
וַיְהִיו כִּילָדִים קְטָנִים, וַיֵּאֱמִינוּ כִּי הַיְשׁוּעָה
הַיְתָה וְהוּנָה וְתִהְיֶה בְּדָם הַכַּפֶּרָה אֲשֶׁר
לַמְּשִׁיחַ, יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי שָׁדַי, וְעַל יְדֵיו.

18 For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

כִּי הָאָדָם הַטִּבֵּעִי הוּא אוֹיֵב לֵאלֹהִים וְכֵן הָיָה
מִיּוֹם נִפְלִית אָדָם הָרָאשׁוֹן, וְכֵן יְהִי לְעַד־עַד,
בְּלִתִּי אִם יַעֲנֶה לַמְּשִׁיכַת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וַיִּסִּיר
אֶת הָאָדָם הַטִּבֵּעִי וַיַּעֲשֶׂה קְדוֹשׁ עַל יְדֵי כַּפֶּרֶת
אֲדוֹן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְהוָה, וַיַּעֲשֶׂה כְּיֶלֶד,
נִכְנָע, עָנָו, שָׂפֵל רוּחַ, סִבְלָן, מְלֵא אֲהָבָה, נָכוֹן
לְהַכְנִיעַ לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵרָאֶה יְהוָה מִתְאַיֵּם לְהַטִּיל
בוֹ, כְּהַכְנִיעַ בֶּן לְאָבִיו.

19 For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

וְעוֹד אֲמַר לָךְ כִּי יוֹם יָבוֹא וַיְדִיעַת הַמּוֹשִׁיעַ
תִּפְּוֹץ בְּכָל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעָם.

20 And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of the Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּבוֹא הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, לֹא יִמָּצֵא אִישׁ
נָקִי מֵאֲשֶׁם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וּזְלֹת יְלָדִים קְטָנִים,
בְּלִתִּי אִם יִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא וַיֵּאֱמִין בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה
אֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹהֵי שָׁדַי.

21 And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

וְאִף עַתָּה, בְּלִמְדָּךְ אֶת עַמְּךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר צִוָּךְ יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֵין הֵם נָקִיִּים בְּעֵינֵי
אֱלֹהִים, בְּלִתִּי אִם עַל פִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ.

22 And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּנִי יְהוָה
אֱלֹהִים לְהַגִּידָם.

23 And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

מושיע ג:כד-ד:ד

- וְכֵן אָמַר יְהוָה: עֲמוּד יַעֲמֵדוּ הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה כְּעֵדוּת בְּרוּרָה עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּיוֹם
הַדִּין; כִּי עַל פִּיָּהֶם יִשְׁפָּטוּ, אִישׁ כְּמַעֲשָׁיו,
אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.
- וְאִם רָעִים יִהְיוּ, יִפְקְדוּ לְרֹאוֹת אֶת מַרְאֵה
אֲשָׁמָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הַנּוֹרָא, וְהוּא יִרְתִּיעֵם
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה אֶל עֲנוֹת וַיְסוּרֵי אֵין קֵץ אֲשֶׁר
מֵהֶם אֵין חוֹרָה; כִּי הִנֵּה שְׁתּוֹ מֵאֶרֶץ חָרָם
אֶל תּוֹךְ נַפְשָׁם.
- אָכֵן, הֵם שְׁתּוֹ מִכּוֹס חֶמֶת אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר לֹא
יָכַל הַדִּין לְמַנֵּעַ מֵהֶם כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכַל לְמַנֵּעַ
מִן הָאָדָם אֶת נִפְלִיתוֹ מִפְּנֵי טַעֲמוֹ מִן הַפֶּרִי
הָאָסוּר; עַל כֵּן, לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִהְיֶה עֲלֵיהֶם
תְּבִיעֵת זְכוֹת לְרַחֲמִים.
- וַיְסוּרֵיהֶם כְּמִקְוֵה אֵשׁ וְנֹפֶרֶת, אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֹהֶבְתּוֹ
לֹא תִכָּבֵּה וְעֵשָׁנוֹ עוֹלָה לְעַד־עַד. כֹּה צִוִּי
יְהוָה לְדַבֵּר. אָמֵן.
- 24 And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.
- 25 And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.
- 26 Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.
- 27 And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

ד

4

- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת הַמִּלָּךְ בְּנֵימִין לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא אֵלָיו מִלְאָךְ יְהוָה, הוּא נִשָּׂא אֶת
עֵינָיו אֶל הָעָמוֹן אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב וְהִנֵּה הֵם נוֹפְלִים
אֶרְצָה כִּי נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם פָּחַד יְהוָה.
- וְהֵם הִבִּיטוּ אֶל מַצָּבָם בְּבֶשֶׁר וְחָשְׁבוּ עֲצָמָם
פָּחוֹת מֵעָפָר הָאָרֶץ. וְהֵם צָעֲקוּ כָלָם בְּקוֹל
אֶחָד: הוֹ רַחֵם נָא וּזְכֹר לְזִכּוֹתֵנוּ אֶת דָּם
הַכִּפּוּרָה אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ בְּעֶבֶר וּמַחְלוּ חַטָּאֵינוּ
וְלִבֵּנוּ יִשְׁהַר; אֲנַחְנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בִּישׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ,
בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, בּוֹרֵא שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ וְאֶת הַכֹּל,
וְאֲשֶׁר יֵרֵד אֶל קֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ.
- וּכְדַבְּרָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, בָּא עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ
יְהוָה וְהֵם מָלְאוּ שִׂמְחָה, כִּי קִבְּלוּ מַחֲיִלָּה עַל
חַטָּאֵיהֶם וּמַצְפּוֹנָם שָׁלוֹ, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם הַרְבֵּה
בִּישׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר
אֵלֵיהֶם הַמִּלָּךְ בְּנֵימִין.
- וְהַמִּלָּךְ בְּנֵימִין פָּתַח אֶת פִּיו שֵׁנִית, וְדִבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם
לֵאמֹר: יְדִידֵי וְאֶחָי, מִשְׁפַּחְתִּי וְעַמִּי, הִנְנִי מִבְּקָשׁ
- 1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.
- 2 And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.
- 3 And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.
- 4 And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people,

מוֹשִׁיעַ דָּה-יֵא

כִּי שׁוּב תִּשְׁמְעוּ לְבָבְכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמְעוּ וְתִבְיִנוּ
אֶת שְׂאִרֵּית דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם.

I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אִם עֲזָרָה אֶתְכֶם הַיּוֹם דַּעַת טוֹב
אֱלֹהִים, לְחוּשׁ אֶת אִפְסוּתְכֶם וְאֶת חֹסֶר
עֲרֻכְכֶם וּנְפִילְתְּכֶם,

5 For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אִם הִשְׁגַּתֶּם בְּדַעְתְּכֶם אֶת
טוֹב אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת כְּחוֹ הָעֶלְיוֹן, וְאֶת חֲכָמָתוֹ,
אֶת אֶרְךְ רוּחוֹ וְאֶת כֹּחַ סִבְלוֹ אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם,
וְאִף אֶת הַכִּפְּרָה הַמוֹכֶנֶה מִסִּדּוּר הָעוֹלָם,
לְמַעַן יִוָּשַׁע כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִשִּׁים אֶת מִבְטָחוֹ בִּיהוָה,
וְאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁקַד עַל שְׁמִירַת מִצְוֹתָיו, וְיִתְמַד
בְּאֲמוּנָתוֹ עַד קֵץ יְמֵי חַיָּו, כְּלוּמֹר, הִיא חַיִּי
הַגּוֹי אֲשֶׁר הוּא בֶן תְּמוּתָה,

6 I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי זֶה הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יִוָּשַׁע עַל יָדֵי
הַכִּפְּרָה הַמוֹכֶנֶה מִסִּדּוּר הָעוֹלָם לְמַעַן כָּל
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר חַיִּי מִימֵי נְפִילַת אָדָם
הָרָאוּשׁוֹן, וְאֲשֶׁר חַיִּים עַתָּה, וְאֲשֶׁר יִחְיֶי
בְּעַתִּיד, עַד קֵץ הָעוֹלָם.

7 I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

זֶה הָאִפֶּן אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיו תְּבוֹא הַיְשׁוּעָה, וְאִין
יְשׁוּעָה אַחֲרֵת בְּלֹתִי זֹאת אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ מְדַבֵּר;
אִף אִין כָּל תְּנָאִים אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם יִוָּשַׁע אִישׁ,
זוֹלַת הַתְּנָאִים אֲשֶׁר הִזְכַּרְתִּי בְּדִבְרֵי.

8 And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

הָאֲמִינוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים; הָאֲמִינוּ כִּי הוּא קִים וְכִי הוּא
בָּרָא אֶת הַכֹּל, בְּשִׁמְיִם וּבְאֶרֶץ. הָאֲמִינוּ כִּי לוֹ
כָּל הַחֲקִמָה וְכָל הַכֹּחַ, בְּשִׁמְיִם וּבְאֶרֶץ. הָאֲמִינוּ
כִּי אִין הָאָדָם מִבִּין אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר מִבִּין יְהוָה.

9 Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

וְעוֹד, הָאֲמִינוּ כִּי עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטְאֵיכֶם
וּלְנָטֵשׁ אוֹתָם, וּלְהִקְנַע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וּלְבַקֵּשׁ
בְּתֵם לִבְבְּכֶם כִּי יִסְלַח לָכֶם; וְאִם תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּכָל
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, שִׁיתוּ לְבָבְכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹתָם.

10 And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

וְעוֹד אֹמֵר לָכֶם, כְּאֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לִפְנֵים, כִּי אִם
הִשְׁגַּתֶּם בְּדַעְתְּכֶם אֶת תְּפָאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְיִדְעַתֶּם
אֶת טוֹבוֹ וּשְׂעִמְתֶּם מֵאַהֲבָתוֹ, וּקְבַלְתֶּם מִחִילָה
עַל חַטְאֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר מִבִּיאָה שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה מְאֹד
בְּנַפְשְׁכֶם, כֵּן אִף חֲפָצִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, וְתִשְׁמְרוּ
בְּזִכְרוֹנְכֶם תְּמִיד, אֶת גְּדֻלַּת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת
אִפְסוּתְכֶם, אֶת טוֹבוֹ וְאֶת אֶרְךְ רוּחוֹ כְּלִפְיָכֶם,
בְּרִיּוֹת בְּלֹתִי רְאוּיּוֹת, וְתִקְנְעוּ בְּמַעֲמַקֵּי עֲנוּה

11 And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the

מושיע ד:יב-כ

בְּקִרְאָכֶם בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה יוֹמָם, וּבַעֲמֻדְכֶם אֵיתָנִים
בְּאַמְוִנָה בְּאִשֶּׁר עֲתִיד לָבוֹא, עַל פִּי דְבַר הַמַּלְאָךְ.

Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם תַּעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, לְעוֹלָם
תִּשְׁמְחוּ וְתִמְלְאוּ אֶהְבֶּת אֱלֹהִים, וְתִדְבְּקוּ תְּמִיד
בְּמַחִילַת חַטָּאֵיכֶם; וְתִגְדְּלוּ בִידֵיעַת הַתַּפְּאֶרֶת
אֲשֶׁר לְבוֹרְאֵכֶם, בִּידֵיעָה אֲשֶׁר הוּא צָדֵק וְאַמֶּת.

12 And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

וְלֹא תִשְׁתִּיתוּ דַּעַתְכֶם לְהַרְעַת אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ, כִּי אִם
לְחַיּוֹת בְּשָׁלוֹם וְלָתֵת לְכָל אִישׁ כְּפִי הָרָאוּ לוֹ.

13 And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

וְלֹא תִנְיָחוּ לְבַנְיֵכֶם לָלֶכֶת רַעֲבִים אוֹ עִרְמִים;
אִף לֹא תִנְיָחוּם לַעֲבֹר עַל חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהִים וּלְהִלָּחֵם
וְלָרִיב אִישׁ בְּאָחִיו, וּלְשָׂרֵת אֶת הַשָּׁטָן, בַּעַל
הַחַטָּא, הוּא הָרוּחַ הָרַע, אוֹיֵב כָּל הַצְדָּקָה,
אֲשֶׁר אֲבוֹתֵינוּ דִּבְּרוּ עָלָיו.

14 And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

אִךְ תִּלְמְדוּם לָלֶכֶת בְּדַרְכֵי אֱמֶת וּפְנִחוֹת;
תִּלְמְדוּם לָאֱהָב וּלְשָׂרֵת אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ.

15 But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

אִף אַתֶּם תִּתְמַכּוּ בְּאַלֶּה הַצָּרִיכִים אֶת
תְּמִיכַתְכֶם וְתִגִּישׁוּ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לְאִשֶּׁר הוּא
נֶצְרָךְ; לֹא תִנְיָחוּ לְאֲבִיוֹן לְשֹׁטֵחַ אֶת בְּקִשְׁתּוֹ
לִפְנֵיכֶם לָרִיק וּלְשַׁלְחוֹ לְכָלִיּוֹן.

16 And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

וְאוּלִי תֹאמַר: הֵן הָאִישׁ הֵבִיא עַל עַצְמוֹ אֶת
עָנְיוֹ, לָכֵן אֲשִׁיב יָדִי מִתֵּת לוֹ מִלַּחֲמִי וּמִחֶלֶק
לוֹ מִקְנֵינִי לְמַנְעוֹ מִסָּבֵל, כִּי בְּצָדֵק נִעֲנֶשׁ.

17 Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, בֶּן אָדָם, כִּי הָעוֹשֶׂה כֵּן, עַל
אַחַת כְּמָה וְכְמָה עָלָיו לְהִנָּחֵם מֵאִשֶּׁר עָשָׂה;
וְאִם לֹא יִנָּחֵם, יֵאָבֵד לָעַד, וְאִין לוֹ חֶלֶק
בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

18 But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

הֲכִי אֵין כָּלָנוּ אֲבִיוֹנִים? הֲאֵין כָּלָנוּ נִסְמָכִים
עַל אוֹתוֹ הַקָּדֵם, הוּא אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ כָּל
קִנְיָנֵנוּ, הַמְּזוֹן וְהַלְבוּשׁ, הַזָּהָב וְהַכֶּסֶף וְכָל
עֲשָׂרֵנוּ לְמִינֵהוּ?

19 For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

הִנֵּה, אִף עַתָּה, קִרְאתֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹ וּבִקְשַׁתֶּם
מַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם. הֲאִם הִנֵּחְכֶם לְבַקֵּשׁ
לְשׂוֹא? לֹא; כִּי הוּא שָׁפַךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עָלֵיכֶם,
לְמַלֵּא אֶת לְבָבְכֶם שִׂמְחָה עַד אֲשֶׁר חִדְלַתֶם
מִדְּבַר, כִּי לֹא נוֹתֵר דְּבַר בְּפִיכֶם בְּעֶצְמַת
שִׂמְחַתְכֶם הַגְּדוֹלָה.

20 And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

וְהִנֵּה, אִם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר בְּרָאֲכֶם, אֲשֶׁר
עָלִיו אַתֶּם נִסְמָכִים לְחַיֵּיכֶם וְלָכֹל אֲשֶׁר הֵנֶכֶם
וְלָכֶם, מִעֲנִיֵּק לָכֶם אֶת כָּל מִבְקֶשְׁכֶם הַצֹּדֵק,
בְּאִמּוֹנְתְכֶם בּוֹ, וּבְהֶאֱמִינְכֶם כִּי תַעֲנוּ, אֲזִי,
עַל אַחַת כַּמָּה וְכַמָּה חַיִּים אַתֶּם לְחַלֵּק
מִקְנֵינְכֶם זֶה לָזֶה.

21 And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

וְאִם תִּשְׁפָּטוּ וְתִרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ הַמִּבְקֵשׁ
אֶתְכֶם לְתַתּוֹ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לְמַעַן לֹא יֵאבֹד, עַל
אַחַת כַּמָּה וְכַמָּה תַּצְדִּיק הַרְשַׁעְתְּכֶם בְּמִשְׁפָּט
בְּעִבּוֹר מִנִּיעֵת קִנְיֹנְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שִׂיף לָכֶם,
כִּי אִם לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ שִׂיכִים גַּם חַיִּים;
וְאַתֶּם אַף אֵינְכֶם מִבְקָשִׁים וְאֵינְכֶם נְחָמִים עַל
הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם.

22 And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אוֹי לָאִישׁ הַהוּא, כִּי קִנְיֹנוֹ
יֵאבֹד עִמּוֹ; וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֶל הָעֹשִׂירִים, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְחֶפְצֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה.

23 I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

וְעוֹד, אֹמֵר אֶל הָעֲנִיִּים: אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר אֵין לָכֶם,
וְנוֹתֵר עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִתְקִים יוֹם-יוֹם; כְּלוּמֹר, אֶל
כָּלֶכֶם, הַמְּסָרְבִים לְאֲבִיּוֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵין
בְּיַדְכֶם דָּבָר רְצוֹנִי כִּי זֶה תֹאמְרוּ בְּלִבְכֶם:
אֵינְנִי נוֹתֵן, כִּי אֵין לִי דָבָר, אַךְ אֱלֹהֵי הַיָּה
בְּיָדִי, נוֹתֵן הֵייתִי.

24 And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

אִם תֹּאמְרוּ זֹאת בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, אֵין בָּכֶם אֲשָׁם,
וְאִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵן, אֲשָׁמִים אַתֶּם; וְאֲשַׁמְכֶם
נִכּוֹן, כִּי חִמְדְּתֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִבַּלְתֶּם.

25 And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

וְעַתָּה, לְמַעַן הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי
אֵלֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּדְּבְקוּ מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם בְּמַחֲלֵלַת
חַטָּאתֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן תּוֹכְלוּ לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים
בְּלֹא אֲשָׁם, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַחֲלִקוּ מִקְנֵינְכֶם לָעֲנִיִּים,
כָּל אֶחָד כְּפִי יִכְלָתוֹ, כְּגוֹן הַשֹּׁבַעַת רְעֵבִים,
הַלְבִּישַׁת עִרְמִים, בְּקוֹר חוֹלִים וְשֵׁרוֹת
לְרוֹחָתָם, בְּרוּחַ וּבַחֲמֶר, כְּפִי צָרֵכֵיהֶם.

26 And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

הִשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
בְּחָכְמָה וּבִסְדֵּר; הֵן אֵין נִדְרֵשׁ מֵאִישׁ לָרוֹץ
מִהֵר מִכְּפִי כּוֹחוֹ. וְאוּלָם רְאוּי לְאָדָם לְהִיֹּת
חָרוֹץ, כִּי בְּכֹף יִשְׁגִּי רוּחַ. עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים
צָרִיכִים לְהִתְנַהֵל כְּסִדְרָם.

27 And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

וְרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, כִּי הַשּׁוֹאֵל בָּכֶם דָּבָר מִשְׁכָּנוֹ,
יָשִׁיב אֶת אֲשֶׁר שָׁאל כְּאֲשֶׁר הִסְפִּים. וְאִם לֹא

27 And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth,

מוֹשִׁיעַ דְּכַט-ה:ה

יַעֲשֶׂה כֵן, חַטָּא הוּא חוֹטֵא וְאוֹלִי אִף אֶת
שְׂכֵנוֹ יַחֲטִיא.

according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps
thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

וְכַלּוֹתִי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אִמְרֵי כִי אֵינֶנִּי יָכוֹל
לְהַגִּידְכֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם תַּחֲטְאוּ,
כִּי שׁוֹנִים הַדְּרָכִים וְנִבְדָּל הָאָפָן, וְכֵן רַבִּים הֵם
עַד כִּי לֹא אוּכַל לְמַנוֹתָם.

29 And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit
sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot
number them.

אִךְ זֹאת אוּכַל לְהַגִּידְכֶם: אִם לֹא תִשְׁגִּיחוּ
עַל נַפְשְׁכֶם וְעַל מַחְשְׁבוֹתֵיכֶם וְעַל דְּבָרֵיכֶם
וְעַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם, וְלֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים, וְלֹא תִמְשִׁיכוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּאֲמוֹנְתְּכֶם
בְּאֲשֶׁר שְׁמַעְתֶּם עַל בּוֹא אֲדוֹנֵנוּ עַד סוֹף יְמֵי
חַיֵּיכֶם, אֲבוֹד תִּאֲבָדוּ. וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי אָדָם,
זָכְרוּ לִבֵּל תִּאֲבָדוּ.

30 But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and
your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the
commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have
heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your
lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

ה

5

וְכַלּוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין לְהַגִּיד זֹאת אֶל עַמּוֹ,
הוּא שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם שְׁלִיחִים, כִּי רָצָה לְהוֹדֵעַ
אִם מֵאֲמִינִים הֵם בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם.

1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to
his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they
believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

וְהֵם קָרְאוּ כָּלֵם פֶּה אֶחָד: אָכֵן, מֵאֲמִינִים
אֲנַחְנוּ בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ אֵלֵינוּ; אִךְ
נִדַּע כִּי נֶאֱמַנִים וְאִמְתָּ הֵם, יְעַן אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ
יְהוָה, אֵל שֵׁדִי, עָשָׂה בָּנוּ וּבִלְבָּנוּ שְׁנוֹי כְּבִיר,
עַד כִּי לֹא חִפְצִים אֲנַחְנוּ עוֹד לְהִרְעֵ, כִּי אִם
לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד.

2 And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words
which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety
and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has
wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more
disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

וְאִף לָנוּ, עַצְמָנוּ, עַל יְדֵי טוֹב אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר
לֹא קָץ, וְעַל יְדֵי הַתְּגַלּוּת רוּחוֹ, יֵשׁ מִרְאוֹת
גְּדוּלִים עַל אֲשֶׁר עָתִיד לְבוֹא; וְאֵלֵינוּ הָיָה זֶה
לְהוֹעִיל, יְכַלְנוּ לִנְבֵּא עַל הַכֹּל.

3 And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the
manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come;
and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

וְאֵין זֹאת כִּי אִם אֲמוֹנָתֵנוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר
אֱלֹהֵינוּ מִלְּכֵנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאָתָנוּ אֶל הַדַּעַת
הַגְּדוּלָּה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ אֲנַחְנוּ שְׂמֵחִים
שְׂמִיחָה יִתְּרָה כָּל כּוֹן.

4 And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has
spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby
we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

וְרָצוֹנָנוּ לְבוֹא בְּבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהֵינוּ, לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת
רְצוֹנוֹ וּלְהִשְׁמַע לְמִצְוֹתָיו בְּכָל דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר
יֵצִיאוּ, כָּל שְׂאִירֵי יְמֵי חַיֵּינוּ, לְמַעַן לֹא נָבִיא
עָלֵינוּ יְסוּרֵי אֵין קָץ, כְּדִבַּר הַמֶּלֶךְ, לְכָל
נִשְׁתָּה מִכּוֹס חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים.

5 And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will,
and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall
command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring
upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the
angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

מושיע ה:ו-יד

- וְהִנֵּה, אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ מֵהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ
בְּנִימִין. עַל כֵּן אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתֶּם אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר חָפַצְתִּי, וְהַבְרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתֶּם,
בְּרִית צֶדֶק הִיא.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתֶּם אֶת הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת, תִּקְרְאוּ
בְּשֵׁם יְלָדֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בְּנָיו וּבָנוֹתָיו; כִּי הִנֵּה הַיּוֹם
הוּא יִלְדְּכֶם בְּרוּחַ, כִּי אֲמַרְתֶּם: לְבָנו הִשְׁתַּנָּה
עַל יְדֵי הָאֱמוּנָה בְּשֵׁמוֹ. לָכֵן מִמֶּנּוּ נוֹלַדְתֶּם,
וְנַעֲשִׂיתֶם בְּנָיו וּבָנוֹתָיו.
- וְתַחַת הָרֹאשׁ הַזֶּה אַתֶּם מִשְׁתַּחֲרָרִים, וְאֵין
רֹאשׁ אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו אַתֶּם יְכוּלִים
לְהִשְׁתַּחֲרָר; לֹא נָתַן שֵׁם אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו
תָּבוֹא הִישׁוּעָה. עַל כֵּן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִשְׁאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם
אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כְּלָכֶם אֲשֶׁר בָּאתֶם בְּבְרִית
עִם אֱלֹהִים, לְהִשְׁמָע לוֹ עַד קֵץ יְמֵי חַיֵּיכֶם.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה זֹאת, יִמָּצֵא לִימִין
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי הוּא יֵדַע אֶת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר הוּא
נִקְרָא בוֹ; כִּי בְּשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִקְרָא.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשָּׂא עָלָיו אֶת שֵׁם
הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִקְרְאוּהוּ בְּשֵׁם אַחֵר; לָכֵן, הוּא יִמָּצֵא
עֹצְמוֹ לְשִׁמְאֹל אֱלֹהִים.
- רְצוֹנִי גַם כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי זֶה הַשֵּׁם, אֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי
כִּי אֶתֵּנֶנּוּ לָכֶם, לֹא יִמָּחָה לְעוֹלָם בְּלֹתִי אִם עַל
יְדֵי עֲבָרָה; עַל כֵּן, תִּנְּנוּ לְבָבְכֶם לְרֹחַק מִפְּשָׁע,
לִמְעַן לֹא יִמָּחָה הַשֵּׁם מִלְּבָבְכֶם.
- וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ לְשִׂאת אֶת
כְּתוּבַת הַשֵּׁם בְּלִבְכֶם תָּמִיד, וְלֹא תִמָּצְאוּ לְשִׁמְאֹל
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי תִשְׁמְעוּ וְתִדְעוּ אֶת הַקּוֹל אֲשֶׁר
יִקְרָאכֶם, וְאֵף אֶת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָאכֶם בוֹ.
- כִּי אֵיךְ יֵדַע אִישׁ אֶת אֲדוֹנָיו אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָבְדוּ,
וְהוּא זֶר לוֹ וְרָחוֹק מִמִּתְשַׁבּוֹת לִבּוֹ וְעֵצָתוֹ?
- וְעוֹד, הֵיכָּה אִישׁ חֲמוֹר שֶׁכֵּנוּ לְטַפֵּל בוֹ? אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; אֵף לֹא יֵנִיחַ כִּי יִרְעָה בְּתוֹךְ
עֲדָרוֹ; הֵן שִׁלַּח יִשְׁלַחֻהוּ וְגָרֵשׁ יִגְרֹשֻׁהוּ. אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: כִּי יִהְיֶה בְּקִרְבְּכֶם, אִם לֹא תִדְעוּ
אֶת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָאכֶם בוֹ.
- 6 And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.
- 7 And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.
- 8 And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.
- 9 And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.
- 10 And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.
- 11 And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.
- 12 I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.
- 13 For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?
- 14 And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

- 15 Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.
- על כן, רצוני כי תהיו יציבים ואיתנים, מרבים תמיד במעשים טובים, בעבור יתן בכם המשיח, יהוה אל שדי, את חותמו, למען תובאו השמימה, להיות לכם ישועת עולם וחי נצח על פי החכמה והגבורה, והדין והרחמים אשר לבוֹרָא הַכֹּל, בשמים ובארץ, אשר הוא אֱלֹהֵי מְרוֹמִים. אָמֵן.

1

והיה בכלותו לדבר אל העם, ראה המלך בנימין כי טוב יהיה לפקד את שמות כל הבאים בברית עם אלהים לשמר את מצוותיו.

והיה כי לא נעדרה מהם אף נפש אחת; אכן, הכל באו בברית אלהים, וזלת ילדים קטנים, לקבל עליהם את שם המשיח.

והיה כי אחר אשר פלה המלך בנימין לעשות את כל הדברים האלה, ואחר קדשו את בנו מושיע להיות מושל ומלך על עמו, ואחר מסרו לו את כל פקדות הממלכה, ואחר אשר מנה גם בהנים ללמד את העם, למען ישמעו האנשים את מצוות אלהים וידעו, ולמען עוררם לזכר את השבועה אשר נשבעו, הוא שלח את הקהל, והם שבו, איש ומשפחתו, לביתם.

ומושיע מלך תחת אביו. בן שלשים שנה היה במלכו, וראשית מלכותו כארבע מאות ושבעים ושש שנים מיום צאת לחי מירושלם.

והמלך בנימין חי שלש שנים ומת.

והמלך מושיע הלך בדרכי יהוה, ושמר את משפטי ואת חקיו ומצוותיו, ועשה ככל אשר צוהו יהוה.

והמלך מושיע הורה לעמו לעבד את האדמה. ואף הוא עצמו עבד את האדמה למען לא יפל למשא על עמו ולמען עשות כמעשה אביו בכל דבר. ולא היה כל ריב בקרב עמו שלש שנים.

6

1 And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

2 And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

3 And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

4 And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

5 And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

6 And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

7 And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

ז

7

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָרְכוּ יְמֵי הַשָּׁלוֹם לְמֶלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים, הוּא חָפֵץ לָדַעַת עַל אֲדוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ לָאָרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי אוֹ לְעִיר לְחִי-נֶפְחִי לְגֹר שָׁם, כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֲנָשָׁיו דְּבַר עֲלֵיהֶם מֵעַתָּה עַד יִבְתָּם אֶת אָרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה; וְלָכֵן הָלְאוּ אֶת מוֹשִׁיעַ בְּהַפְצָרוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהָיָה מוֹשִׁיעַ הַתִּיר לְשֹׁשֶׁה עָשָׂר מַגְבוּרֵיהֶם לַעֲלוֹת אֶל אָרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי לְחַקֵּר עַל אֲדוֹת חֲבֵרֵיהֶם.
- וּלְמַחֲרַת הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה הֵחִלּוּ לַעֲלוֹת בְּמַסְעָם וּבָהֶם אִישׁ גִּבּוֹר וְכֹחַ חֵיל וְשִׁמוּ עֲמוֹן, הוּא צֶאֱצָא לְזְרַחֲמֵלָה; וְהוּא הָיָה לָהֶם לְמִנְהִיג.
- וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ אֶת מַסְלֹל מַסְעָם בְּיַעַר אֲשֶׁר יַעֲלוּ בוֹ אֶל אָרֶץ לְחִי-נֶפְחִי; עַל כֵּן נָדְדוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בְּיַעַר; אַרְבָּעִים יוֹם הָיוּ נִדְוִיָּהֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אַרְבָּעִים יְמֵי נִדְוִיָּהֶם, הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל גִּבְעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מִצְפּוֹן לְאָרֶץ שִׁילוֹם, וְהֵם הִטּוּ שָׁם אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְעֲמוֹן לָקַח שְׁלֹשָׁה מֵעַמִּיתָיו וְשִׁמּוֹתֵיהֶם עַמְלֵקִי, חֵלֶם וְחֵם, וְהֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל אָרֶץ נֶפְחִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאָם הֵם פָּגְשׁוּ בְּמֶלֶךְ הָעָם הַשּׁוֹכֵן בְּאָרֶץ נֶפְחִי וּבְאָרֶץ שִׁילוֹם; וְהִקִּיפּוּם שׁוֹמְרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וּלְקַחוּם וְאַסְרוּם וּנְתָנוּם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהָר.
- וְאַחֵר הָיוּתָם בְּבֵית הַסֵּהָר יוֹמִים, הֵם הוֹבֵאוּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ שְׁנֵית וְכַבְלֵיהֶם הוֹסְרוּ; וּבָעוֹדָם עוֹמְדִים לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הִתֵּר לָהֶם, אִף צֹוָה עֲלֵיהֶם, לְהָשִׁיב עַל הַשְּׁאֵלוֹת אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁאַלֵם.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנְנִי לְמַחִי בֶן נֹחַ, וְהוּא בֶן צִנְיָה, אֲשֶׁר עָלָה מֵאָרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה לְרִשְׁתָּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אָרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ עָלָהּ פִּי דְבַר הָעָם.
- 1 And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.
- 2 And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi to inquire concerning their brethren.
- 3 And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.
- 4 And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.
- 5 And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.
- 6 And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.
- 7 And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.
- 8 And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.
- 9 And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

- ועתה, רצוני לדעת מדוע הרהבתם עז
בנפשכם לקרב אל חומות העיר, בעת היותי,
אני, עם שומרי מחוץ לשער?
- 10 And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?
- ואני הנחתי כי תחיו למען אחקר את דבר
בואכם, ולולא זאת הייתי מצוה על שומרי
להמיתכם. עתה, מתר לכם לדבר.
- 11 And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.
- וכראות עמון כי התר לו לדבר, הוא צעד
קדימה והשתחוה לפני המלך; ובקומו אמר:
אדוני המלך, הנני מודה מאד היום לפני
אלהים כי עודני חי והרשות נתונה לי לדבר;
ואני אתאמץ לדבר בבטחון.
- 12 And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;
- בטוח אני כי אלו הפרת אותי, לא הנחתני
להכביל בכבלים האלה. הנני עמון, צאצא
לזרעחמלה; באתי מארץ זרעחמלה לשאל
על אודות חברינו, אשר צניף העלה מן
הארץ ההיא.
- 13 For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.
- וכשמע למחי את דברי עמון, הוא שמח
מאד, ואמר: עתה ידוע ידעתי כי חברי אשר
היו בארץ זרעחמלה עודם חיים. ועתה
אשמחה, ומחר אשמח אף את עמי.
- 14 And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.
- כי הננו משעבדים ללמנים ומעלים אנחנו
מס להם, אשר הוא כבד מנשא. ועתה,
יצילנו חברינו מן השעבוד מידי הלמנים,
ואנחנו נהיה עבדיהם, כי טוב היותנו עבדי
הנפיים מהעלות מס למלך הלמנים.
- 15 For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.
- והמלך למחי צוה את שומריו לכל יוסיפו
לכבול את עמון ואת עמיתיו, והורה להם
ללכת אל הגבעה אשר מצפון לשילום
ולהביא את אחיהם אל העיר, בעבור יאכלו
וישתו וינוחו מעמל מסעם, כי רבות סבלו
האנשים, רעב וצמא ויגיעה.
- 16 And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.
- ולמחרת היום שלח המלך למחי הודעה בכל
עמו, להתאסף יחדו אל בית המקדש לשמע
את הדברים אשר ידבר אליהם.
- 17 And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them.
- והיה כאשר התאספו, דבר אליהם המלך
כדברים האלה: עמי, שאו ראש והנחמו, כי
הנה קרבה העת, לא רחוק היום אשר לא
- 18 And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not

נִהְיָה עוֹד נִכְנָעִים לְאוֹיְבֵינוּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לִשְׂוֹא
הָיוּ מִאֲבָקֵינוּ הַרְבֵּים. אַךְ יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי עוֹד
עֲתִיד לָבוֹא מִאֲבָק מְכָרִיעַ.

far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

עַל כֵּן, שָׂאוּ רֹאשׁ וְגִילוּ, וְשִׂימוּ אֶת מִבְטְחְכֶם
בְּאֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם וְיִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב, הָאֱלֹהִים
אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם
וְהוֹלִיכֶם בִּיבְשָׁה בְּתוֹךְ יָם סוּף וְהֶאֱכִילֶם
מֶן, לִבְל יֵאבְדוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר; וְעוֹד רַבּוֹת
עֲשֵׂה בַּעֲבוּרְכֶם.

19 Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

וְאֵכֵן, הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ
מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְשָׁמַר אֶת עַמּוֹ וַיִּנְצֶרֶם עַד
הַיּוֹם; הֵן מִפְּנֵי עוֹנוֹתֵינוּ וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵינוּ הִכְנִסָנוּ
אֶל הַשְׁעָבוֹד.

20 And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

וְעֵדִים כָּלְכֶם הַיּוֹם כִּי צִנִּיף, אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ עַל הָעָם
הַזֶּה, בְּלִהִיטוֹת יִתֵּר לָרֶשֶׁת אֶת אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתָיו,
רָמָה עַל יְדֵי עֲרֻמַּת הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֶן וְתַחֲבוּלוֹתָיו.
וּבַעֲשׂוֹתוֹ בְּרִית עִם הַמֶּלֶךְ צִנִּיף, מָסַר לְיָדוֹ
אֶת קִנְיָיו חֵלֶק הָאֶרֶץ, אֶת הָעִיר לְחִי־נֶפִי, וְאֶת
הָעִיר שִׁילוֹם וְאֶת הַמְּגִרָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב;

21 And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

וְאֶת כָּל זֹאת עָשָׂה אַךְ לְמַעַן הִכְנִיעַ אֶת הָעָם
הַזֶּה לְשִׁעְבָדוֹ. וְהִנֵּנוּ מַעֲלִים הַיּוֹם מִסַּלְמָה
הַלְּמָנִים בְּשַׁעֲוֹר מַחְצִית מִיבּוֹלָנוּ, מִן הַתִּירָס
וְהַשְׁעוּרָה וְכָל דִּגְנָנוּ לְמִינָהּ, וּמַחְצִית שֹׁגֵר עֲדָרֵי
צֹאנָנוּ וּבָקָרָנוּ; אֵכֵן מַחְצִית כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ נוֹשָׂה
מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים מֵאֲתָנוּ, וְלֹא, אֶת חַיֵּינוּ יָקָח.

22 And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

הֲאִין זֶה כְּבֵד מִנְשָׂא? הֲאִין צָרְתָנוּ הַזֹּאת גְּדוֹלָה?
אֵכֵן, רְאוּ נָא, מִה גְּדוֹלָה סִבְתָנוּ לְהִתְאַבֵּל.

23 And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

אֵכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כַּמָּה רַבּוֹת סְבוּתֵינוּ
לְהִתְאַבֵּל; כִּי הִנֵּה מִה רַבִּים מֵאֲחֵינוּ הוּמָתוּ
וְדָמָם נִשְׁפָּף לִשְׂוֹא, וְהַכֹּל מִפְּנֵי עוֹן.

24 Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

כִּי אִלוּלֹא פָּשְׁעוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה, לֹא הָיָה מִנִּיחַ
יְהוָה לָרָעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת לָבוֹא עֲלֵיהֶם.
אֲךָ הֵם לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרָיו, וַיִּתְּגַלְעוּ שָׁם
מְרִיבוֹת בֵּינֵיהֶם; כֹּה רַבּוֹת הָיוּ עַד כִּי שִׁפְכוּ
אִישׁ אֶת דַּם אָחִיו.

25 For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

וְהֵם הִמִּיתוּ נְבִיא יְהוָה, אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים נִבְחָר,
אֲשֶׁר הִגִּידָם עַל רְשָׁעֵתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְהִרְבָּה
לְנִבְאָה עַל אֲשֶׁר תְּבוֹאֵנָה, אֵכֵן, עַל בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

26 And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

מושיע ז:כז-ח:ב

- וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לָהֶם כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ הוּא אֱלֹהִים, אָבִי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים; וְכִי הוּא יִקַּח לוֹ אֶת דְּמוּת הָאָדָם, וְתִהְיֶה זֶה הַדְּמוּת אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיהָ נִבְרָא הָאָדָם בְּרֹאשִׁית; וּבְמַלְּאִים אַחֲרוֹת: הוּא אָמַר כִּי הָאָדָם נִבְרָא עַל פִּי צֶלֶם אֱלֹהִים, וְכִי אֱלֹהִים יֵרֵד אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְיִשִּׁית עָלָיו בָּשָׂר וָדָם, וְיִתְהַלֵּךְ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ;
- וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר זֹאת, הִמְתִּירוּהוּ, וַעֲשׂוּ עוֹד מַעֲשִׂים רַבִּים נֹסְפִים אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאוּ אֶת חֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיהֶם. עַל כֵּן, מִי יִתְמַה עַל שְׁעִבּוּדָם וְעַל אֲשֶׁר הֵם מִכִּים בְּצָרוֹת וּבְמִכָּאוֹב.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֶעֱזֹר לַעֲמִי בְיוֹם פְּשָׁעָם, כִּי אֲגַדֵּר אֶת דֶּרֶכָם לְבָל יִצְלִיחוּ, וְהָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם מִכְשׁוֹל לִפְנֵיהֶם.
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אִם טָמְאָה יִזְרְעוּ עֲמִי, מוֹץ בְּסוּפָה יִקְצְרוּ וּפְעֻלָּתָהּ תִּרְעַלָּה הִיא.
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אִם טָמְאָה יִזְרְעוּ עֲמִי, רוּחַ קָדִים יִקְצְרוּ, אֲשֶׁר תִּבּוֹאָתָהּ כָּלִיוֹן מִהִיר.
- הִנֵּה קָם דְּבַר יְהוָה וּמִכּוֹת וְיִסּוּרִים בָּאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אֲךָ אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְהוָה בְּכָל פִּנְיַת לִבְבְּכֶם, וְתַשְׁיִמוּ בוֹ אֶת מִבְּטַחְכֶם, וְתַעֲבְדוּהוּ בְּכָל שִׁקְיֹדֶת דַּעְתְּכֶם, אַכֵּן אִם תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, הוּא יִגְאֹלְכֶם מִן הַשְׁעָבוּד, כְּחֻפְצוֹ וְכִרְצוֹנוֹ.
- 27 And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—
- 28 And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?
- 29 For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.
- 30 And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.
- 31 And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.
- 32 And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.
- 33 But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

ח

8

- וּכְכֹלּוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי לְדַבֵּר אֶל עַמּוֹ, כִּי רַבּוֹת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וְרַק מְעַט מִדְּבָרָיו כְּתִבְתִּי בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה, הוּא סֵפֶר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אוֹדוֹת אַחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרֶץ יִזְרְעֵמֶלָה.
- וְהוּא הוֹרָה לַעֲמֻן לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי הַקָּהָל וּלְסַפֵּר בְּאָזְנֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל הַקּוֹרוֹת אֶת אַחֵיהֶם מִיּוֹם עֲלוֹת צִנִּיף מִן הָאָרֶץ, עַד אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֲצָמוֹ יֵצֵא לַעֲלוֹת מִמֶּנָּה.
- 1 And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.
- 2 And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

- 3 And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.
- וְעִמּוֹן אֵף הִגָּה בְּאַזְנוֹיהֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ
בְּנִימִין הָאֲחֵרוֹנִים אֲשֶׁר לְמֶדֶם, וְהוּא בְּאֶרֶם
לְאִנְשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי, לְמַעַן יָבִינוּ אֶת כָּל
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 4 And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתוֹ אֶת כָּל זֹאת, שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ
לְמַחִי אֶת הַקָּהָל אִישׁ לְבֵיתוֹ.
- 5 And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.
- וְהוּא הוֹרָה לְהָבִיא לִפְנֵי עִמּוֹן אֶת הַלּוּחוֹת
אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים בָּהֶם זְכוֹנוֹת עַמּוֹ מִיּוֹם עָזְבָם
אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה, לְמַעַן יִקְרָא בָהֶם.
- 6 Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.
- וּכְכֹלֹת עִמּוֹן לִקְרֹא אֶת הַכְּתוּב, שָׁאָלוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ
אִם יָכוֹל הוּא לְתַרְגֵּם לְשׁוֹנוֹת, וְעִמּוֹן הֵשִׁיבוּ
כִּי אֵינוּ יָכוֹל.
- 7 And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: בְּהִתְעַצֵּב לִבִּי עַל סִבְלוֹת
עַמִּי פָקַדְתִּי כִּי יַעֲרְכוּ אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה מֵאֲנָשֵׁי
מִסָּע בְּיַעְרוֹת לְמַצֵּא אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה,
לְבַקֵּשׁ מֵאֲחֵינוּ לְהַצִּילֵנוּ מִן הַשְׁעָבֹד.
- 8 And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.
- וְהֵם תְּעוּ בְּיַעְרוֹת יָמִים רַבִּים, וְאֵף כִּי
הִתְאֲמָצוּ, לֹא מָצְאוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ זִרְעֵהֶמְלָה
וְשָׁבוּ אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת. וּבְמִסָּעָם בְּאֶרֶץ
עֲתִירַת מְקוֹי מִים הֵם גָּלוּ אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר כְּסוּיָהּ
עֲצָמוֹת אָדָם וּבְהֵמָה, וְאֲשֶׁר מְלֵאוּיָהּ חֲרֻבוֹת
כָּל מִינֵי בְּנִינִים, וְאֵף אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר תּוֹשְׁבֶיהָ
הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּצִבְאוֹת יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 9 And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.
- וּלְעֵדוּת עַל אֱמֻתַּת דְּבָרֵיהֶם, הֵם הָבִיאוּ
עִמָּהֶם עֲשָׂרִים וָאַרְבָּעָה לּוּחוֹת זָהָב טָהוֹר,
אֲשֶׁר הֵם מְלֵאִים חֲרִיטוֹת.
- 10 And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם אֵף הָבִיאוּ מְגִי חֹזֶה רַבִּי
מְדוּת, עֲשׂוּיִים נְחֹשֶׁת וְנְחָשֶׁת קָלֵל,
וְהֵם שְׁלֵמִים וְטוֹבִים.
- 11 And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?
- וְהֵם הָבִיאוּ חֲרָבוֹת, אֲשֶׁר נִצְבְּיָהֶן נִשְׁחָתוּ
וְלְהִבֵּיָהֶן אָכְלוּ בְּחִלְדָּה; וְאֵין אִישׁ בְּאֶרֶץ הַמִּבְרִין
אֶת שְׁפַת הַלּוּחוֹת אוֹ אֶת הַחֲרִיטוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל
גִּבֵּיהֶם. לָכֵן שְׁאֵלְתִּיךָ: הֲתוּכַל לְתַרְגֵּם?
- 12 And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the
- וְאֹסִיף וְאֲשַׁאֲלֶךָ: הֲתֵדַע אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל
לְתַרְגֵּם? כִּי חֲפֹץ אֲנִי בְּתַרְגוּם הָרְשׁוּמוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
לְלִשׁוֹנֵנוּ; אוּלַּי יוֹדַע לָנוּ מֵהֶם עַל שְׂרִיד מִן

מושיע ח:יג-כ

הָעַם הַנִּשְׁמָד אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ בָּאוּ הַלוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה;
אוֹ, אוֹלִי, יִלְמְדוּנִי עַל הָעַם הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמָד;
וְאֲנִי חֲפִץ לְדַעַת מֶה הֵבִיא לְכָלִּיּוֹנָם.

people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲמוֹן: אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אֲכֹן
אוֹכַל לְהַגִּידָךְ מִי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל לְתַרְגֵּם
אֶת הַכְּתָבִים, כִּי יֵשׁ לוֹ בְּאֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל לְהִבִּיט
וּלְתַרְגֵּם אֶת כָּל הַרְשׁוּמוֹת הַקְּדוּמוֹת,
וְזֹאת מִתַּת אֱלֹהִים. וְהַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בִּידֹ
נִקְרָאִים מִבְּאָרִים, וְאִין אִישׁ יָכוֹל לְהִבִּיט
בָּהֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם צָוָה, פֶּן יִבִּיט בְּאֲשֶׁר אִסּוּר
לוֹ וְאָבֹד יֵאבֹד. וְהָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר מְצָוָה לְהִבִּיט
בָּהֶם, חוֹזֶה נִקְרָא.

13 Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

הִנֵּה כִּי מֶלֶךְ הָעַם אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה הוּא
הָאִישׁ הַמְּצָוָה לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשִׂים הָאֵלֶּה,
וְלוֹ מִתַּת אֱלֹהִים הַמְרוֹמָמָה הַזֹּאת.

14 And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר כִּי חוֹזֶה גָּדוֹל מִנְּבִיא.

15 And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

וְעֲמוֹן אָמַר כִּי חוֹזֶה הוּא מְגַלֵּה נִסְתָּרוֹת וְאִף
הוּא נְבִיא, וְאִין אָדָם יָכוֹל לְקַבֵּל מִתַּת גְּדוּלָּה
מִזֹּאת, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִהְיֶה לוֹ כַּחַ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר
הוּא מַעֲבֵר לִיכְלֹת הָאָדָם; וְאוּלָם יִתְּכֶן כִּי
יִהְיֶה לְאִישׁ כַּח רַב, אֲשֶׁר נָתַן מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים.

16 And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

וְחוֹזֶה יָכוֹל לְדַעַת דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּעָבֶר וְכֵן
דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יִבְאוּ בְּעָתִיד; וְעַל יְדֵי הַחוֹזִים
נִגְלִים כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, אוֹ, בְּיָתֵר דִּיּוֹק, נִסְתָּרוֹת
הוֹפְכוֹת נִגְלוֹת, וְדְבָרֵי סִתְרִים יוֹצְאִים לְאוֹר.
וְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם יְדוּעִים, נוֹדְעִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם;
וְכֵן דְּבָרִים יַעֲשׂוּ נוֹדְעִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר
בְּלַעֲדֵיהֶם לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְהוֹדֹעַ.

17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

כֹּה הִכִּין אֱלֹהִים דֶּרֶךְ לְמַעַן יוֹכַל הָאָדָם, עַל
יְדֵי אֱמוּנָתוֹ, לַעֲשׂוֹת נִפְלְאוֹת; וְכֹה הוּא נַעֲשֶׂה
לְמוֹעִיל וּמִיטִּיב לְשֹׂאֵר בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

18 Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת עֲמוֹן לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, שָׂמַח
הַמֶּלֶךְ עַד מְאֹד וְהוּא הוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים לֵאמֹר:
אֲכֹן דְּבַר סֵתֶר גָּדוֹל רָשׁוּם בְּלוּחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,
וְהַמְּבָאָרִים אֲכֹן הוֹכֵנוּ לְתַכְלִית גְּלוּי כָּל
נִסְתָּרוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

19 And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

מֶה נִפְלְאִים מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה, וּמֶה רַבָּה סִבְלָנוֹתוֹ
אֵל עֲמוֹ; אֲכֹן, מֶה עֲנִירָת וְאִסְטוּמָה הִבְנֵת בְּנֵי

20 O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the

מושיע ח:כא-ט:ה

הָאֲדָם, כִּי אֵינָם מְבַקְשִׁים חֲכָמָה, וְאֵינָם
חֹפְצִים כִּי תִמְשָׁל בָּהֶם!

understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

אָכֵן, הֵם כְּעֶדֶר פָּרָא הַבוֹרֵחַ מִן הָרוּעָה וְנִפְוִץ;
תִּגְרָשׁם חִיתוֹ יַעַר וְתִטְרַפֵּם.

21 Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

כְּתָבִי צִנִּיף. סְפּוֹר עֲמוֹ מֵעַתָּה עֵזְבְּכֶם אֶת אֶרֶץ
זֶרַעְהֶמְלָה עַד אֲשֶׁר שְׁחָרְרוּ מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים.
(בְּעֶרְךָ 200–120 לִפְנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.) נִכְלָל
בְּפָרָקִים ט–כב.

The record of Zeniff. An account of his people from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites. (About 200–120 B.C.) Comprising chapters 9–22.

ט

9

אֲנִי צִנִּיף לְמַדְתִּי בְּכָל לְשׁוֹן הַנִּפְיִים, וְאֶף
הַכְּרִיתִי אֶת אֶרֶץ נֶפִי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ יִרְשָׁת
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאֲנִי נִשְׁלַחְתִּי לְרַגֵּל בְּקֶרֶב
הַלְּמָנִים, לְצַפּוֹת בְּחִילוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יוּכַל
צָבָאֵנוּ לְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם וּלְהַשְׁמִידָם. אֲךָ
בְּרֹאוֹתֵי אֶת הַטּוֹב אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם, חִפְצָתִי
כִּי לֹא יִשְׁמָדוּ.

1 I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

לָכֵן הִתְוַפַּחְתִּי עִם חֲבֵרֵי בִיעֵרוֹת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
רָצִיתִי כִּי יִכְרַת מוֹשְׁלָנוּ בְּרִית עִמָּהֶם; אוּלָם
מוֹשְׁלָנוּ, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ קָשָׁה וְצָמָא דָם צָוָה
לְהִרְגֵנִי; אֲךָ אֲנִי נִצַּלְתִּי מִפְּנֵי שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים
גְּדוֹלָה; אֲבוֹת נִלְחָמוּ בְּאֲבוֹת וְאֲחִים בְּאֲחֵיהֶם,
עַד כִּי הִשְׁמַד מִרְבִּית מִנֵּן צָבָאֵנוּ בִּיעֵרוֹת,
וְאֲנַחְנוּ, הַנִּשְׁאָרִים בַּחַיִּים, שָׁבָנוּ אֶל
אֶרֶץ זֶרַעְהֶמְלָה לְסַפֵּר אֶת הַסְּפּוֹר
לְנַשְׁיָהֶם וּלְיִלְדֵיהֶם.

2 Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

אֲךָ אֲנִי, בְּהִיּוֹתִי לְהוֹט לְרִשְׁתָּהּ אֶת אֶרֶץ
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, קִבַּצְתִּי אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר חִפְצוֹ לַעֲלוֹת
אֵלֶיהָ וּלְנַחֲלָהּ, וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ שָׁנִית בְּמַסְעֵנוּ בִּיעֵרוֹת
לַעֲלוֹת אֶרְצָה; אֲךָ הִכִּינוּ בְּרָעָב וּבִישׁוּרִים
קָשִׁים כִּי נִלְאִינוּ לְזָכֵר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

3 And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

וְאוּלָם, אַחֵר יְמֵי נְדוּדִים רַבִּים בִּיעֵרוֹת, נָסִינוּ
אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִהְרְגוּ אֲחֵינוּ,
וְהוּא לֵיד אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

4 Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

וְאֲנִי הִלַּכְתִּי שָׁנִית, וְעַמִּי אֶרְבָּעָה מֵאָנָשִׁי,
אֶל הָעִיר, אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ, לְדַעַת אֶת לֵב
הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְאִם אוּכַל לְבוֹא עִם אָנָשִׁי וּלְנַחֵל
אֶת הָאֶרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם.

5 And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

- 6 And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.
- וַנִּכְנַסְתִּי אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְהוּא כָרַת עִמִּי בְרִית לְתִתְּנִי לִי, אֶת אֶרֶץ לְחֵי-נֶפְחִי וְאֶת אֶרֶץ שִׁילֹם, לְנַחֲלָה.
- 7 And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.
- וְהוּא אַף צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לְצֵאת מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְאֲנִי וְאֲנָשֵׁי בָּאֲנִי אֶל הָאָרֶץ לְנַחֲלָה אוֹתָהּ.
- 8 And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.
- וְאֲנַחְנוּ הֵחֵלּוּנוּ לְבָנוֹת בְּנִינִים, וּלְתַקֵּן אֶת חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר, אֲכֹן, חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר לְחֵי-נֶפְחִי וְהָעִיר שִׁילֹם.
- 9 And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.
- וְאֲנַחְנוּ הֵחֵלּוּנוּ לְעַבֵּד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה בְּכָל מִינֵי זֵרְעִים, וְזֵרְעֵי תֵירָס, וְחֻטָּה וּשְׁעוֹרָה, וְנֶאֱס וְשֵׁאֻם, וְזֵרְעֵי כָּל פְּרִי לְמִינָהּ. אֹז הֵחֵלּוּנוּ לְרַבּוֹת בָּאָרֶץ וּלְהַצְלִיחַ בָּהּ.
- 10 Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.
- כֹּה, בְּעֶרְמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן וְתַחְבּוּלָתוֹ, לְמַעַן שְׁעַבְדּוּ אֶת עַמִּי, הוּא וְתָר עַל הָאָרֶץ לְתִתְּנָהּ לָנוּ לְנַחֲלָה.
- 11 Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁתֵּים עָשָׂר שָׁנָה מִיּוֹם יָשְׁבֵנוּ בָּאָרֶץ, הֵחֵל הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן לְחַשֵּׁשׁ פֶּן יִתְחַזֵּק עַמִּי בָּאָרֶץ, וְלֹא יוֹכֵל עַמּוֹ לְגַבֵּר עָלָיו וּלְשַׁעְבְּדוֹ.
- 12 Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.
- וְהִלְמָנִים הָיוּ עִם עֲצָל וְעוֹבְדֵי פְסִילִים; לָכֵן חָפְצוּ לְשַׁעְבְּדָנוּ, לְמַעַן יִזְלְלוּ בְעַמְל יְדֵינוּ, לְמַעַן יַעֲשׂוּ לָהֶם סְעֻדוֹת מִעֲדָרֵי שְׂדוֹתֵינוּ.
- 13 Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.
- עַל כֵּן הֵחֵל הַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֹן לְהָסִית אֶת עַמּוֹ לְרִיב עִם עַמִּי; לָכֵן פָּשְׂטוּ בָּאָרֶץ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמִדִּינִים.
- 14 For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.
- כִּי בִשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עָשָׂרָה לְמַלְכוּתִי בָּאָרֶץ נֶפְחִי, הָרְחַק בְּדָרוֹם אֶרֶץ שִׁילֹם, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הָשְׁקוּ עַמִּי אֶת עֲדָרֵיהֶם וְרָעוּם, וּבְעֵת עֲבָדָם אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם, נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם חֵיל גָּדוֹל מִן הַלְּמָנִים, וְהֵחֵל לְהָרֵג אוֹתָם וּלְגַזֵּל אֶת עֲדָרֵיהֶם וְאֶת דָּגַן שְׂדוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 15 Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.
- וּבְנֵי עַמִּי, כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִשְׁיִגוּם הַלְּמָנִים, נִמְלָטוּ אֶל הָעִיר נֶפְחִי, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֵלַי לְהִגֹּן עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 16 And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and
- וְאֲנִי חִמְשָׁתִּי אוֹתָם בְּקִשְׁתוֹת וּבַחֲצִים, בַּחֲרָבוֹת וּבַפְּגִיוֹנוֹת, וּבַאֲלֹת וּבַמִּמְגָּמוֹת וּבַאֲבִי קֶלַע,

מוֹשִׁיָּה ט:יז–י:ה

וּבְכָל סוּג נֶשֶׁק אֲשֶׁר יָכֻלְנוּ לְהַמְצִיא;
וְאֲנִי יִצְאָתִי עִם אַנְשֵׁי לְקָרֵב עַל הַלְּמָנִים.

with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ לְקָרֵב עַל הַלְּמָנִים לְבוֹשִׁים עֹז יְהוָה,
כִּי אֲנִי וְאַנְשֵׁי צִעְקָנוּ צִעְקָה גְדוֹלָה לַיהוָה
לְהַצִּילֵנוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ, כִּי הִתְעוֹרְרָנוּ לְזָכֹר
הַצִּלּוֹת אוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.

17 Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

וְאֱלֹהִים שָׁמַע אוֹת צִעְקוֹתֵינוּ וְאֵל תְּפִלּוֹתֵינוּ
שָׁעָה; וַיֵּצְאוּנוּ בְּגִבּוֹרָתוֹ, וְנִפְלְנוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים;
שְׁלֹשָׁת אֲלָפִים וְאַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה מֵהֶם הָרַגְנוּ
בְּיוֹם אֶחָד וּבְלַיְלָה. אַכֵּן, הָרַגְנוּ בָּהֶם עַד אֲשֶׁר
גָּרְשׁוּם מֵאַרְצֵנוּ.

18 And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

וְאֲנִי, בְּמוֹ יָדִי, עֲזַרְתִּי לְקַבֵּר אוֹת מֵתֵיהֶם.
וְהִנֵּה, לְרֹב יְגוֹנֵנוּ וּמִסְפָּדָנוּ, מֵאַתִּים וּשְׁבַעִים
וּתְשַׁעַה מֵאַחֵינוּ נָהָרְגוּ.

19 And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

י

10

וַשְׁבָּנוּ לְכוֹנוֹן אוֹת הַמַּמְלָכָה, וְהַחֲלוֹנוּ שְׁנִית
לְנַחֵל אוֹת הָאָרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם. וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי כִּי
יַעֲשֶׂה לָנוּ נֶשֶׁק לְמַלְחָמָה מִכָּל מִין, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה
לִי נֶשֶׁק בְּעֵבּוֹר עַמִּי לְעַת אֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ הַלְּמָנִים
שְׁנִית לְמַלְחָמָה עַל עַמִּי.

1 And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

וְאֲנִי הִצַּבְתִּי שׁוּמְרִים מִסָּבִיב הָאָרֶץ, לְכָל
יִפְתִּיעוֹנוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית בְּהִתְנַפֵּלֶם עָלֵינוּ
וַיִּשְׁמִידוּנוּ; כִּךְ שָׁמַרְתִּי אוֹת עַמִּי וְאוֹת עַדְרִי
וּמִנְעָתִים מִנִּפְּל לַיָּד אוֹיְבֵינוּ.

2 And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

וְהִיְתָה אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לִירֵשָׁה לָנוּ עַת אַרְבָּה,
עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.

3 And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי כִּי הַגִּבָּרִים יַעֲבְדוּ אוֹת הָאֲדָמָה
וַיַּגְדִּלוּ כָּל מִינֵי דָגָן וְכָל פְּרִי לְמִינָהּ.

4 And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

וְלִנְשִׁים הוֹרִיתִי לְסוּת וְלַעֲמֹל וְלַעֲבֹד,
וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מִינֵי אֲרִיגֵי פֶשֶׁתָּן הַדּוּרִים וּבָדִים
מִכָּל סוּג לְהַלְבִּישׁ אוֹת מַעֲרַמֵּינוּ; כִּךְ הִצַּלְחָנוּ
בְּאֶרֶץ, וְשִׁרְרָה בָּהּ שְׁלוֹה אַרְבָּה, עֶשְׂרִים
וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.

5 And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

- והמלך למן מת, ובנו מלך תחתיו. והוא החל להקטיר את עמו למרד בעמי; לכן התכוננו הלמנים למלחמה, ולקום לקרב על עמי.
- 6 And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.
- אך אני שלחתי מרגלים מסביב לארץ שמלון, לגלות את הכנותיהם ולהשמר מפניהם, לבל יתנפלו על עמי וישמידונו.
- 7 But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.
- והם עלו עלינו בצפון ארץ שילום בחילותיהם הרבים, מזינים בקשת וחץ, חרב ופגיון, אבני קלע ומרגמות. והם מגלחי ראש לקרחה, וחגורים חגורות עור על מתניהם.
- 8 And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.
- ואני הוריתי להחביא את נשי עמי וילדינו ביער; ואף הוריתי כי כל הזקנים, וכן הנערים, אשר כח בהם לשאת נשק, יתקבצו ליצאת למלחמה על הלמנים; והעבתי אותם במערכותיהם, כל גבר כפי שנותיו.
- 9 And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.
- ועלינו לקרב על הלמנים; וגם אני, אף כי זקן הייתי, עליתי להלחם בהם; אכן, עלינו לקרב לבושים בעז יהוה.
- 10 And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.
- והלמנים לא ידעו דבר על יהוה ועל עז יהוה; על כן נשענו על כחם בלבד. אולם הם היו עם חזק, כפי מדת כח גברים.
- 11 Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.
- והם היו עם פראים, עזי פנים וצמאי דם, מחזיקים במסורת אבותיהם, והיא האמונה כי גרשו מארץ ירושלים מפני עוונות אבותיהם, וכי אחיהם הרעו להם במדבר, ואף הרעו להם בעת עברם את הים.
- 12 They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;
- והם אף האמינו כי אחיהם הרעו להם בימיהם בארץ ירשתם הראשונה, אחר חצותם את הים; וכל זאת על כי שמר נפי את מצוות יהוה בנאמנות רבה מהם. לכן מצא חן בעיני יהוה, אשר שמע את תפלותיו וענה לו, והיה נפי מנהיג מסעם במדבר.
- 13 And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.
- ואחיו רגזו עלי, יען אשר לא הבינו את פעלות יהוה; ואף רגזו עלי על פני הים, כי הקשו את לבם על יהוה.
- 14 And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

- 15 And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.
- 16 And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.
- 17 And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.
- 18 For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.
- 19 And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.
- 20 And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.
- 21 And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.
- 22 And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.
- ושוב, הם רגזו עליו בהגיעם אל הארץ
היעודה, ואמרו כי לקח מידיהם את השלטון
על העם, והם בקשו את נפשו.
- ועוד הם רגזו עליו, כי יצא אל היער, כמצות
יהוה, ולקח את כתבי הזכרונות, החרוטים
על לוחות נחשת קלל, ואמרו כי גזל אותם.
- וכה למדו את בניהם לשנא את בני נפי,
לרצחם, לשדוד ולגזל אותם, ולעשות כל
אשר לא ידם להשמידם; לכן יש בלבם
שנאת עולם לבני נפי.
- וזאת הסבה אשר המלך למן, בערמתו
ובנכליו ובדברי חלקות, רמני להעלות את
עמי לארץ הזאת, להשמידם. אכן, בשנים
הרבות האלה סבלנו סבל בארץ הזאת.
- ואני, צניף, אחר ספרי לעמי את כל הדברים
האלה על אודות הלמנים, עוררתים לצאת
לקרב בגבורתם, ולשים את מבטחם ביהוה.
לכן נלחמנו בהם פנים אל פנים.
- ואנחנו גרשנו אותם שנית מארצנו. והרגנו
בהם הרג רב, עד כי לא מנינו אותם.
- ושבנו אל ארצנו, ועמי שבו לרעות את
עדריהם ולעבד את אדמתם.
- והנה אני, בזקנתי, העברתי את המלוכה אל
אחד מבני ולכן לא אדבר עוד. יברך נא יהוה
את עמי. אמן.

יֵאבֵב

11

- 1 And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.
- 2 For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.
- וצניף העביר את המלוכה לנח, אחד מבניו;
ונח מלך תחתיו; והוא לא הלך בדרכי אביו.
- אכן, הוא לא שמר את מצוות אלהים כי
הלך אחר משאלות לבו. והוא הרבה נשים
ופילגשים. והוא החטיא את עמו להתעב
עלילה לפני יהוה. אכן, הם הלכו בנתיבי זנות
ובכל דרכי רשע.

- והוא הטיל עליהם מס אשר הוא חמישית מערך כל רכושם, חמישית מזהבם וכסףם, חמישית מן הברז, מן הנחשת, מן הנחשת הקלל ומן הברזל אשר להם, וחמישית מעגלי המרבק, וכן חמישית מכל דגנם.
- וְכָל זֹאת לָקַח לְכַלְכֵּל אֶת עַצְמוֹ וְאֶת נָשָׁיו וְאֶת פִּילְגָשָׁיו וְאֶת כְּהֲנָיו, וְאֶת נָשֵׁיהֶם וּפִילְגָשֵׁיהֶם; כִּי שָׁנָה הִמְלִיךְ אֶת עֲנִיֵּי הַמְּלוּכָה.
- כִּי הִסִּיר מִמִּשְׁמֶרֶתָם אֶת כָּל הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר קִדֵּשׁ אָבִיו, וְהוּא קִדֵּשׁ אַחֲרֵיהֶם תַּחֲתָם, וְהָיוּ הֵם כְּמִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִאוֹת לָבָם.
- כִּי הִתְכַּלְּכוּ כָּל אֵלֶּה בְּעַצְלוּתָם, בְּעִבּוֹדֶת אֱלִילֵיהֶם וּבִתְזוּנוֹתָם, מִן הַמַּסִּים אֲשֶׁר הִטִּיל הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח עַל עַמּוֹ; וְכִי רִבְתָּה מְאֹד עֲבֹדֶת הָעָם לְכַלְכֵּל אֶת מַעֲשֵׂה הָעוֹן.
- וְהָעָם פָּנָה לְעִבּוֹדֶת אֱלִילִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ וְהַכֹּהֲנִים רְמוּם בְּדִבְרֵי הַשָּׁוְא וּבַחֲלָקוֹת, כִּי כִּאֲלֵה הָיוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם אֶל הָעָם.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נָח בָּנָה בָתִּים רַבִּים, בָּתֵּי מִדּוֹת יָפִים לְמֶרְאָה, מְקֻשָּׁטִים בָּעֵץ, מַעֲשֵׂה חֶרֶשׁ וְיָדֵי צוּרִי בְּכָל מִינֵי יָקָר, מִזָּהָב וּמִכֶּסֶף וּמִבְּרָזֶל וּמִנְחָשֶׁת קָלִל וּמִזִּיף וּמִנְחָשֶׁת.
- וְהוּא אָף בָּנָה לוֹ אַרְמוֹן נֶרְחָב וּבִתּוֹכּוֹ כֶּסֶם מְלָכוֹת, אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ עַץ הַדּוֹר, מִשְׁבָּץ זָהָב, כֶּסֶף וְיָקָר.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ חֶרֶשָׁיו כָּל מְלָאכָה מִחֻשְׁבֵּת בְּקִירוֹת הַהִיכָל בָּעֵץ יָקָר, בְּנִחָשֶׁת וּבְנִחָשֶׁת קָלִל.
- וְהַמּוֹשְׁבִים, אֲשֶׁר יָחֲדוּ לַכֹּהֲנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים, הָיוּ גְבוּהִים מֵעַל כָּל שְׂאֵר הַמּוֹשְׁבִים, וְהוּא קִשְׁטָם בְּזָהָב טָהוֹר; וְהוּא צִוָּה לִבְנוֹת בְּחִזִּיתָם מִסְעָדִים, לְמַעַן יִשְׁעִינוּ הַכֹּהֲנִים אֶת גּוֹפֵם וְאֶת זְרוּעוֹתֵיהֶם, בְּעֵת נִשְׁאֵם אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַשִּׁקָּר וְהַשָּׁוְא אֶל עַמּוֹ.
- וְהוּא בָּנָה מִגְדָּל רָם וְנִשְׂא לִיד בֵּית הַמִּקְדָּשׁ; כֹּה גְבוּהָ הָיָה, עַד כִּי בַעֲלוֹתוֹ אֶל רֹאשׁוֹ, יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהִשְׁקִיף עַל כָּל אֶרֶץ שִׁילוֹם וְכֵן עַל אֶרֶץ
- 3 And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.
- 4 And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.
- 5 For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.
- 6 Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.
- 7 Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.
- 8 And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;
- 9 And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.
- 10 And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.
- 11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.
- 12 And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was

מוֹשִׁיעַ יֵאָמֵר: כ

שְׁמִלּוֹן, אֲשֶׁר לְלִמְנִים, וְאֵף יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהִשְׁקִיף
עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב.

possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

וְהוּא צִוָּה לְבָנוֹת בָּתִּים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ שִׁילּוֹם,
וְאֵף לְבָנוֹת מִגְדָּל גָּדוֹל עַל גִּבְעָה מִצְפוֹן לְאֶרֶץ
שִׁילּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה מִפְּלֹט לְבָנֵי נְפִי בְּעֵת
בְּרַחֲם מִן הָאֲדָמָה; וְזֹאת עָשָׂה בְּעֶשֶׂר אֲשֶׁר
קָבַל מִמָּסִי עִמּוֹ.

13 And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

וְהוּא שָׁת אֶת לְבוֹ בְּעֶשֶׂר וּבָלָה אֶת יָמָיו בְּחַיֵּי
פְּרִיצוֹת עִם נָשָׁיו וּפִילִגְשָׁיו; וְאֵף כִּהְנִיּוּ בְּלוּ
אֶת יְמֵיהֶם עִם זֹנוֹת.

14 And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

וְהוּא נָטַע כְּרָמִים בְּאֶזְרוֹרֵי הָאָרֶץ; וּבָנָה
יָקָבִים וְעָשָׂה יַיִן לְמִכְבִּיר; לָכֵן הָיָה סוֹבֵא יַיִן,
וְכָךְ גַּם עִמּוֹ.

15 And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

וְהַלְמָנִים הֵחִלוּ לְבֹא בְּאֶרֶץ וּלְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם,
עַל מְתֵי מִסְפָּר מֵהֶם, לְהָרֹגם בְּשָׂדֵיהֶם
וּבְרִעוֹתָם אֶת צֹאנָם.

16 And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ שָׁלַח אֲנָשִׁי מִשְׁמֶר לִסָּב בְּאֶרֶץ
לְהִגֹּן מִפְּנֵיהֶם; אֲף יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁלַח דָּיִם,
הִתְנַפְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם הַלְמָנִים וְהָרְגוּם, וְנִהְגוּ רַבִּים
מִצֹּאנָם מִן הָאָרֶץ; כִּךָּ הֵחִלוּ הַלְמָנִים
לְהַשְׁמִידם וּלְעֲשׂוֹת פְּעֻלוֹת אִיבָה בְּקִרְבָּם.

17 And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ שָׁלַח אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, וְהַלְמָנִים
נִסּוּגוּ אַחֲוֹר מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְהֵם הִרְחִקוּ לְזָמַן מָה;
לָכֵן שָׁבוּ אֲנָשֵׁי נֹחַ שְׂמִחִים עַל שְׁלָלָם.

18 And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

וּמִפְּנֵי הַנִּצָּחוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, הֵם הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ
בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּם; וְהֵם הִתְפָּאְרוּ בְּגִבוּרָתָם, וְאָמְרוּ
כִּי חֲמִשִּׁים מֵהֶם יָכוֹלִים לַעֲמֹד מוֹל אֶלְפֵי
לְמָנִים; כֹּה הִתְפָּאְרוּ וְהִתְעַנְּנוּ עַל דָּם וְעַל
שְׂפִיכַת דָּמֵי אֲחֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת
מֶלֶכָם וְכֹהֲנֵיהֶם.

19 And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

וְהָיָה אִישׁ אֶחָד בָּהֶם, אַבִּינָדִי שְׁמוֹ; וְהוּא
הִתְהַלֵּךְ בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְהֵחֵל לְנַבֵּא לֵאמֹר: כֹּה אָמַר
יְהוָה, וְכֹה צִוִּי לֵאמֹר: לֵךְ וְאָמַרְתָּ אֶל הָעָם
הַזֶּה, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: אוֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי רָאִיתִי
אֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת רָשָׁעָתָם וְאֶת תְּזוּנוֹתָם;
אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִחֲטָאָם, פֶּקוֹד אֶפְקְדֵם בְּעָזְמִי.

20 And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

מוֹשִׁיעַ יֵאָכָא–יב:א

- וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִחַטָּאתָם וְלֹא יִפְנוּ אֶל
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, נָתַן אֶתְנָם בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
אָכֵן, וְהֵם יִשְׁעַבְדּוּ וְיִעֲנוּ תַּחַת יַד שׁוֹנְאֵיהֶם.
- וְיָדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֵל קַנָּא, פּוֹקֵד
עֲוֹן עַמִּי.
- וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה מִחַטָּאתָם, וְלֹא
יִפְנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, הֵם יִשְׁתַּעַבְדּוּ; וְהָצֵל
לֹא יֵצִילָם אִישׁ, בְּלֹתִי אִם יְהוָה, אֵל שְׂדֵי.
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר יִצְעֲקוּ אֵלַי, לֹא אֶמְהַר לִשְׁמָעַ אֶל
צַעֲקָתָם; הִנֵּחַ אֲנִי לְאוֹיְבֵיהֶם לְהַכּוֹתָם.
- וּבְלֹתִי אִם יִשְׁוּבוּ מִחַטָּא בִּשְׂקַ וּבָאָפָר, וְיִצְעֲקוּ
צַעֲקָה גְדוֹלָה אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לֹא אֶשְׁמָע
אֶל תִּפְלוּתֵיהֶם וְלֹא אֶצִּילָם מִצָּרוֹתֵיהֶם; כִּי
אָמַר יְהוָה וְכִי צִוֵּנִי לְדַבֵּר.
- וְהָיָה כְּדַבֵּר אַבִּינָדִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֵלֵיהֶם, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו, וּבִקְשׁוּ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ; אִךְ
יְהוָה הִצִּילוֹ מִיָּדָם.
- וְכַשְׁמַע הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי אֶל הָעָם,
רָגַז אָף הוּא; וְאָמַר: מִי הוּא אַבִּינָדִי, אֲשֶׁר
יִשְׁפֹּט אוֹתִי וְאֶת עַמִּי, וּמִי הוּא יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר
יָבִיא עַל עַמִּי צָרָה גְדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר כְּזֹאת?
- אֲנִי מְצֹנְכֶם לְהָבִיא אֶת אַבִּינָדִי הֵנָּה וְאֶהְרָגֶהוּ,
כִּי אָמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעוֹרֵר אֶת עַמִּי
לְכַעַס אִישׁ עַל אַחִיו וּלְחַרְחֹר רִיב בְּקִרְבָּם;
לְכוּ אֶהְרָגֶהוּ.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר עָוְרוּ עֵינֵי הָעָם, הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבָם
עַל דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי, וּבִקְשׁוּ לְתַפְשׁוֹ מִן הַיּוֹם
הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ הִכְבִּיד אֶת לְבוֹ עַל
דְּבַר יְהוָה וְלֹא נָחַם מִרַעְתּוֹ.
- 21 And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.
- 22 And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.
- 23 And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.
- 24 Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.
- 25 And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.
- 26 Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.
- 27 Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?
- 28 I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.
- 29 Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

יב

12

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר שְׁנָתִים יָמִים, בָּא אֵלֵיהֶם אַבִּינָדִי
וְהוּא מְחַפֵּשׁ, וְהֵם לֹא הִכִּירוּהוּ. וְהוּא הִחֵל
לְהִנְבֵּא בְּקִרְבָּם לֵאמֹר: כֹּה צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה לֵאמֹר:
אַבִּינָדִי, לֵךְ נָא וְהִנְבֵּא אֶל עַמִּי זֶה, כִּי הִכְבִּידוּ
- 1 And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have

מושיע יב:ב-יא

- את לבם על דברי, ולא שבו מרעם; לכן
אפקדם בזעמי, אכן, פקוד אפקדם בחמת
זעמי על פשעיהם ותועבותיהם.
- אכן, הוי לדור הזה! ואמר יהוה אלי: נטה ידך
והנבא לאמר: כה אמר יהוה, יען אשר פשע
הדור הזה, הנה ימים באים והם ישתעבדו
ויכּו על הלחי; אכן, ידחפּוּם בני האדם
וימיתו; ודית השמים והכלבים וחית
השדה יאכלו את בשרם.
- וחיי המלך נח ישקלו במחיר בגד אשר
בלהט כבשן; והוא ידע כי אני יהוה.
- ואני אכה את עמי זה ביסורים קשים,
רעב ודבר; עד אשר ייללו כל היום.
- ואני אכביד את גבם במשאות;
והם יובלו כחמור אלם.
- ואני אשלח ברד בתוכם, ויהלם אותם;
ותכּם רוח קדים; וחרקים יגפּוּ את ארצם
ויאכלו את דגנם;
- ויכּם דבר כבד. כל זאת אעשה מפני
פשעיהם ותועבותיהם.
- והיה אם לא ישוּבו מחטאם, השמד
אשמידם כליל מעל פני האדמה; ואולם הם
יותירו אחריהם כתבי זכרון, ואני אשמרם
לעמים אחרים אשר יירשו את הארץ; אכן,
אף זאת אעשה, למען אגלה את תועבות
העם הזה לעמים אחרים. ועוד רבות נבא
אבינדי על העם הזה.
- ורגזו עליו האנשים; והם לקחוהו והביאוהו
כבול לפני המלך, ואמרו אליו: הנה, הבאנו
לפניך איש אשר מנבא רע על עמך ואומר כי
אלהים ישמידם.
- ואף הוא מנבא רע על חייך, ואמר כי חייך
יהיו כבגד באש כבשן.
- ועוד אמר כי כקנה תהיה, כקנה יבש בשדה
אשר חית השדה תדרסנו ותחת רגלים ירמס.
- 2 Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.
- 3 And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.
- 4 And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.
- 5 Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.
- 6 And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.
- 7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.
- 9 And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.
- 10 And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.
- 11 And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

- 12 ועוד אמר כי תהיה כפרח הדדור אשר בהבשילו, בנשב הרוח, הוא נשא למרחקים, על פני הארץ. והוא מתרצה בשוא באמרו כי דבר יהוה בפיו. והוא אומר כי אם לא תנחם מחטא, יבואו עליך כל אלה מפני עונותיה.
- 13 והנה, אדוני המלך, מה הרעה הגדולה אשר עשית, ומה החטאים הגדולים אשר חטא עמך, כי ירשיענו אלהים וישפטנו האיש הזה?
- 14 הנה, אדוני המלך, אין בנו אשם, ואתה, המלך, לא חטאת; לכן שקר טפל האיש עליך, ושוא נבא.
- 15 הן חזקים אנחנו, לא נכבש לעבדים ולא נלך בשבי אויבנו; אכן, עשית חיל בארץ והוסף תוסיף להצליח.
- 16 הנה האיש, מוסרים אנחנו אותו לידך; ותעשה בו כטוב בעיניך.
- 17 והמלך נח צוה להשליך את אבינדי לבית הסהר, ולכהנים קרא למועצה להועץ עמם מה יעשה אתו.
- 18 והם אמרו אל המלך: הביאנו אלנו ונחקר אותו; והמלך צוה להביאו לפניהם.
- 19 והם החלו לחקור אותו שתי וערב, למען ימצאו דבר להאשימו; אולם הוא השיבם באמץ לב ועמד בכל שאלותיהם למרבה פליאתם; כי עמד עליהם בכל שאלותיהם והכלימם בכל דבריהם.
- 20 ואמר אליו אחד מהם: מה פונת הדברים הכתובים אשר למדו אבותינו לאמר:
- 21 מה נאוו על ההרים רגלי מבשר; משמיע שלום מבשר טוב; משמיע ישועה; אמר לציון: מלך אלהיך.
- 22 קול צפוף נשאו קול, יחדו ירננו; כי עין בעין יראו בשוב יהוה ציון. פצחו רננו יחדו,
- 12 And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.
- 13 And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?
- 14 And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.
- 15 And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.
- 16 Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.
- 17 And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.
- 18 And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.
- 19 And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.
- 20 And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:
- 21 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;
- 22 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

- 23 Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;
 חֲרִבּוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם: כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עַמּוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 24 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?
 חֲשָׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָּל הַגּוֹיִם, וְרָאוּ כָּל אֶפְסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 25 And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?
 וְאָמַר אַבִּינָדִי אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲאַתֶּם כֹּהֲנִים, הַמְתַּרְאִים לְלַמֵּד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְהָבִין אֶת רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה, וְאוֹלָם חֲפָצִים אִתָּם לָדַעַת מִמֶּנִּי מָה פִּנְתַּת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 26 I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.
 אָנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הוּא לָכֶם כִּי תַעֲוֹתוּ דִּרְכֵי יְהוָה! כִּי אֵלּוּ הַבִּינֹתֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, לֹא לַמְדַּתֶּם אוֹתָם; לָכֵן עֹוֹתֶם אֶת דִּרְכֵי יְהוָה.
- 27 Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?
 לֹא שִׁתֶּם לְבָבְכֶם לְהָבִין; עַל כֵּן לֹא חֲכַמְתֶּם. וּמָה תִּלְמְדוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה?
- 28 And they said: We teach the law of Moses.
 וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה אֲנַחְנוּ מְלַמְּדִים.
- 29 And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?
 וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם שֵׁנִית: אִם אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה אִתָּם מְלַמְּדִים, מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם שׁוֹמְרִים לַעֲשׂוֹתָהּ? מַדּוּעַ תַּשְׁתִּיתוּ לְבָבְכֶם לְעֶשְׂרָה? מַדּוּעַ תִּזְנֶוּ וּתִכְלּוּ אֶת כֹּחְכֶם עִם זֹנוֹת, וּתַחֲטִיאוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה, עַד כִּי שְׁלַחְנִי יְהוָה לְהַנְבִּיאַ עֲלֵיהֶם, לְהַגִּיד לָהֶם כִּי רָעָה גְדוֹלָה בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 30 Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.
 הֲאֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי אֹמֵר אָנִי מִגִּיד? אָכֵן, הֵנִיכֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי אֹמֵר בְּכִי, וְעַלְיֶכֶם לַחֲרֹד מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 31 And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?
 וּבּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּכּוּ עַל פְּשָׁעֵיכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתֶּם כִּי אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה תִּלְמְדוּ. וּמָה יוֹדְעִים אִתָּם עַל תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה? הַמְתּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה תֵּצֵא יְשׁוּעָה? מָה תֹאמְרוּ?
- 32 And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.
 וְהֵם עָנוּ וְאָמְרוּ, כִּי הַיְשׁוּעָה אָכֵן תֵּצֵא מִתּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 33 But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:
 וְאַבִּינָדִי אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: יוֹדַע אָנִי כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אָכֵן תִּשְׁשָׁעוּ; אָכֵן, אִם תִּשְׁמְרוּ אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יְהוָה לְמֹשֶׁה בְּהַר סִינַי לֵאמֹר:
- 34 I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.
 אֲנִיכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצֵאתִיךָ מֵאֶרֶץ מִצְרַיִם מִבֵּית עֲבָדִים:

- 35 Thou shalt have no other God before me. לא יהיה לך אלהים אחרים על פני.
- 36 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath. לא תעשה לך פסל וכל תמונה, אשר בשמים ממעל, ואשר בארץ מתחת.
- 37 Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. ואמר אליהם אבינדי: העשיתם כל אלה? אני אומר לכם: לא, לא עשיתם כן. והלמדתם את העם הזה כי עליהם לעשות כל אלה? אני אומר לכם: לא, לא עשיתם כן.

יג

13

- 1 And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad. וכשמע המלך את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אל כהניו: הוציאו את הפוחז הזה והרגוהו; כי מה לנו לעשות עמו, הן משגע הוא.
- 2 And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them: והם קמו ובקשו לשלח ידם אליו; אך הוא עמד כנגדם ואמר אליהם:
- 3 Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time. אל תגעו בי, כי אלהים יככם אם תשלחו ידכם אלי, כי לא פליתי להגיד את ההודעה אשר שלחני יהוה למסרה. אך לא אמרתי לכם את אשר בקשתם ממני להגידו; לכן, לא יניח אלהים כי אבד כעת.
- 4 But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad. כי שומה עלי לקיים את המצוות אשר צוני אלהים; ויען אשר אמת דברתי, הנכם רוגזים עלי. ויען אשר דברתי את דבר אלהים, שפטתם אותי כמשגע.
- 5 Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord. וכדבר אבינדי את הדברים האלה, לא העזו אנשי המלך נח לשלח ידם אליו, כי נחה עליו רוח יהוה; ופניו האירו בזיו זוהר מאד, כפני משה בהר סיני, בדברו עם יהוה.
- 6 And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying: והוא דבר בעז ובתקף אשר מאלהים, והוסיף דבר לאמר:
- 7 Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities. הן ראייתם כי אין בכם כח להרגני, לכן אכלה את הודעתי. הנני רואה כי נדקר לבכם כי אומר אני אמת על עוונותיכם.
- 8 Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger. אכן, דברי ממלאים אתכם תמיהה ופליאה, ואף רגז.

- 9 But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.
- וְהִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה אֶת הַדְּעָתִי: וְאַחֵר כֵּן, אֵין חֲשִׁיבוֹת לְאֵן אֵלַי, אִם אֵף תִּהְיֶה לִי הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- 10 But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.
- וְאִלֵּים זֹאת אֲגִידְכֶם: אֶת אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ בִי, אַחֲרֵי כֵן, כְּתִבְנִית יִהְיֶה וְכֶצֶל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.
- 11 And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.
- וְעַתָּה, אֶקְרָא לְפָנֶיכֶם אֶת שְׁאָר מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי נֹכַחְתִּי אֲשֶׁר אֵין כְּתוּבוֹת עַל לִבְכֶם; נֹכַחְתִּי כִּי לְמַדְתֶּם פֶּשַׁע וְכֵן לְמַדְתֶּם אוֹתוֹ מִרְבִּית יְמֵי חַיֵּיכֶם.
- 12 And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.
- הֵן תִּזְכְּרוּ כִּי אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם: לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה לָּךְ פֶּסֶל וְכָל תְּמוּנָה, אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם מִמַּעַל, וְאֲשֶׁר בְּאָרֶץ מִתַּחַת, וְאֲשֶׁר בַּמַּיִם מִתַּחַת לָאָרֶץ.
- 13 And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;
- וְעוֹד: לֹא תִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לָהֶם, וְלֹא תַעֲבֹדֵם: כִּי אֲנֹכִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ, אֵל קַנָּא פֶקֶד עוֹן אֲבֹת עַל בָּנִים, עַל שְׁלִשִׁים וְעַל רְבָעִים, לְשֹׂנְאֵי;
- 14 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.
- וְעֹשֶׂה חֶסֶד לְאַלְפִים, לְאַהֲבֵי וּלְשֹׁמְרֵי מִצְוֹתַי.
- 15 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.
- לֹא תִשָּׂא אֶת שֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ לְשׁוֹא; כִּי לֹא יִנָּקֶה יְהוָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר יִשָּׂא אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְשׁוֹא.
- 16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.
- זְכוֹר אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת לְקֹדֶשׁוֹ.
- 17 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
- שֵׁשֶׁת יָמִים תַּעֲבֹד, וְעָשִׂיתָ כָּל מְלָאכָתְךָ;
- 18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;
- וְיוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי, שַׁבָּת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ; לֹא תַעֲשֶׂה כָּל מְלָאכָה, אַתָּה וּבִנְךָ וּבִתְךָ, עַבְדְּךָ וַאֲמָתְךָ וּבְהֶמְתְּךָ וְגֵרְךָ אֲשֶׁר בְּשַׁעְרֶיךָ.
- 19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.
- כִּי שֵׁשֶׁת יָמִים עָשָׂה יְהוָה אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ, אֶת הַיָּם וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר בָּם, וַיְנַח בְּיוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי; עַל כֵּן, בֵּרַךְ יְהוָה אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת וַיְקַדְּשֶׁהוּ.
- 20 Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.
- כְּבֹד אֶת אָבִיךָ וְאֶת אִמְךָ, לְמַעַן יָאָרְכוּ יָמֶיךָ עַל הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ נָתַן לָּךְ.
- 21 Thou shalt not kill.
- לֹא תִרְצַח.
- 22 Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.
- לֹא תִנָּאֵף. לֹא תִגְנוֹב.

- 23 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.
לא תענה ברעך עד שקר.
- 24 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.
לא תחמד בית רעך; לא תחמד אשת רעך ועבדו ואמתו ושורו וחמרו, וכל אשר לרעך.
- 25 And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?
ובכללות אבינדי להגיד את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אליהם: הלמדתם את העם הזה לקיים את כל הדברים האלה בעבור ישמרו את המצוות האלה?
- 26 I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.
אני אומר לכם: לא; כי אלו עשיתם כן, אזי לא שלחני יהוה לבוא ולהתנבא רעה על העם הזה.
- 27 And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.
הנה אמרתם כי הישועה תצא מתורת משה. ואני אומר לכם כי שמירת תורת משה מתאימה לכם כעת; אך אמר לכם כי בוא יבוא היום ושמירת תורת משה לא תתאים עוד.
- 28 And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.
והנה אמר לכם: אין הישועה יוצאת מן התורה בלבד; ואלמלא הכפרה, אשר אלהים עצמו יעשה לחטאי עמו ולעוונותיהם, אבוד יאבדו, על אף תורת משה.
- 29 And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;
הנני אומר לכם, כי היה זה מועיל לתת תורה לבני ישראל, אכן, לתת להם תורה חמורה מאוד, כי היו עם קשה ערף, מהירים לעול ואטיים לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם.
- 30 Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.
על כן נתנה להם תורה, תורת הלכות ומשפטים, תורה אשר הצטוו לקיים במפרש, יום-יום, לשמורם לזכר את אלהים וחובתם כלפיו.
- 31 But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.
ואולם, אני אומר לכם, כי כל הדברים האלה היו תבנית הדברים אשר יבואו.
- 32 And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.
והנה, ההבינו את התורה? אני אומר לכם: לא. לא כלם הבינו את התורה; וזאת מפני קשי לבם כי הם לא הבינו כי לא יוכל אף אדם אחד להושע בלתי אם על ידי גאלת אלהים.
- 33 For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even
כי הלא נבא להם משה על בוא המשיח, ועל כי אלהים יגאל את עמו? אכן, אף כל

הַנְּבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ מֵאֶזְרַחַת הָעוֹלָם,
הֲאֵם לֹא דִבְּרוּ, פְּחוּת אוֹ יוֹתֵר, עַל אוֹדוֹת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?

all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—
have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

הֲאֵם לֹא אָמְרוּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים עֲצֻמוֹ יֵרֵד בְּקֶרֶב
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְיִלְבֹּשׁ צוּרַת אָדָם, וְיֵלֶךְ בִּכְחַת אֲדִיר
עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ?

34 Have they not said that God himself should come down among the
children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in
mighty power upon the face of the earth?

הֲאֵם גַּם לֹא אָמְרוּ כִּי יָבִיא אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים
וְכִי הוּא עֲצֻמוֹ יִנְגַּשׁ וְיַעֲנֶה?

35 Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the
resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed
and afflicted?

יד

14

אָכֵן, הֲאֵם לֹא אָמַר יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ: מִי הָאָמִין
לְשִׁמְעָתָנוּ, וְזָרַע יִהְיֶה עַל מִי נִגְלָתָה?

1 Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to
whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

וַיַּעַל כִּיּוֹנָק לִפְנֵי, וְכַשְׂרֵשׁ מֵאֶרֶץ צִיָּה;
לֹא תֵאָר לוֹ וְלֹא הָדָר; וְנִרְאָהוּ וְלֹא
מִרְאָה וְנִחְמְדָהוּ.

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of
dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see
him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

נִבְזָה וְחֹדֵל אִישִׁים; אִישׁ מְכַאֲבוֹת וַיְדוּעַ חֲלִי,
וְכִמְסֹתֵר פָּנִים מִמֶּנּוּ; נִבְזָה וְלֹא חֲשַׁבְנָהוּ.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted
with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised,
and we esteemed him not.

אָכֵן חָלִינוּ הוּא נֶשָׂא, וּמְכַאֲבֵינוּ סִבָּלָם;
וְאֶנְחָנוּ חֲשַׁבְנָהוּ נִגּוּעַ מִפְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים וּמַעֲנָה.

4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did
esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

וְהוּא מַחְלָל מִפְּשָׁעֵנוּ, מִדְּכַא מַעֲוֹנוֹתֵינוּ; מוֹסֵר
שְׁלוֹמֵנוּ עָלָיו, וּבְחֻבְרָתוֹ נִרְפָּא לָנוּ.

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our
iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his
stripes we are healed.

כָּלָנוּ כְּצֹאן תַּעֲיִינוּ, אִישׁ לְדֶרֶךְ פָּנִינוּ; וַיְהִי
הַפְּגִיעַ בּוֹ אֶת עֲוֹן כָּלָנוּ.

6 All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned everyone to his
own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

נִגַּשׁ וְהוּא נַעֲנֶה, וְלֹא יִפְתַּח פִּי; כִּשֶּׁה
לְטֹבַח יוֹבֵל, וְכִרְחֵל לִפְנֵי גֹזְזִיהָ נֶאֱלָמָה,
וְלֹא יִפְתַּח פִּי.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth;
he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her
shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

מַעֲצָר וּמִמְשָׁפֶט לָקַח, וְאֵת דּוֹרוֹ מִיִּשׁוּחָח?
כִּי נִגְזַר מֵאֶרֶץ חַיִּים; מִפְּשָׁע עַמִּי נִגַּע לָמוֹ.

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare
his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the
transgressions of my people was he stricken.

וַיַּתֵּן אֶת רֶשְׁעִים קִבְּרוֹ, וְאֵת עֲשִׂיר בְּמִתּוֹ; עַל
לֹא חָמַס עָשָׂה, וְלֹא מִרְמָה בִּפְּיוֹ.

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death;
because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

- ויהוה חפץ דכאֵו; הִחֲלִי אִם תִּשָּׂא אֶשֶׁם
נִפְשׁוֹ, יִרְאֶה זֶרַע יִאֲרִיךְ יָמִים, וְחַפֵּץ יִהְיֶה
בְּיָדוֹ יִצְלַח.
- מִעֲמַל נִפְשׁוֹ יִרְאֶה יִשְׁבֵּעַ; בְּדַעְתּוֹ יִצְדִּיק צַדִּיק
עֲבָדֵי לְרָבִים; וְעֹנֹתָם הוּא יִסְבֹּל.
- לְכֹן אֲחַלֵּק לוֹ בְּרָבִים, וְאֵת עֲצוּמִים יַחְלֹק
שָׁלָל; תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱרָה לַמָּוֶת נִפְשׁוֹ, וְאֵת
פְּשָׁעִים נִמְנָה; וְהוּא חָטָא רַבִּים נָשָׂא,
וְלִפְשָׁעִים יִפְגִּיעַ.
- 10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.
- 11 He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.
- 12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

טו

15

- וְאָמַר אַבִּינָדִי אֱלֹהִים: מִי יֵתֵן וְתִבְנִינוּ כִּי
אֱלֹהִים עֲצָמוֹ יֵרֵד בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וְיִגְאֹל
אֶת עַמּוֹ.
- וַיֵּן אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁכֹּן בְּבָשָׂר, יִקְרָא בֶן אֱלֹהִים, וַיֵּן
אֲשֶׁר נִכְנַע הַבָּשָׂר לְרָצוֹן הָאָב, הִרְיָהּ אָב וּבֶן.
- הָאָב, כִּי הוּא הוֹרָה בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים; וְהַבֶּן, מִפְּנֵי
הַבָּשָׂר; כִּךְ הָיָה לָאָב וּלְבֶן.
- וְהֵם אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד, אָבִי שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ הַנִּצְחָנִי.
- כִּךְ נִכְנַע הַבָּשָׂר לְרוּחַ, אוֹ הַבֶּן לָאָב, בְּהִיוֹתָם
אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד, וְהוּא סוֹבֵל פְּתוּיִים, אִף אֵינוֹ
נִכְנַע לָהֶם; וְהוּא מִנִּיחַ עֲצָמוֹ לְלַעַג, לְמַכּוֹת
וּלְהִדְחָה וּלְדִחְיָה מֵעַמּוֹ.
- וְאַחֵר כָּל זֹאת, אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתוֹ נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת
וְרִבּוֹת בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, הוּא יוֹבֵל, כְּפִי דְבַר
יִשְׁעִיָּהוּ, כִּרְחֹל נֶאֱלָמָה לִפְנֵי הַגּוֹזֵז, וְלֹא
יִפְתַּח פִּיו.
- אֲכֹן, הוּא יוֹבֵל, אִף יִצְלַב וַיִּהָרַג, וְהַבָּשָׂר יִכְנַע
אִף לַמָּוֶת, כְּאֲשֶׁר רָצוֹן הַבֶּן נִבְלַע בְּרָצוֹן הָאָב.
- 1 And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.
- 2 And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—
- 3 The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—
- 4 And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.
- 5 And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.
- 6 And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.
- 7 Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

מוֹשִׁיעַ טו:ח-יח

כֹּה נֹתֵק אֱלֹהִים אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, בְּהַשְׁיִגוֹ
נִצְחוֹן עַל הַמָּוֶת, בְּנִתְּנוֹ לְבֶן כַּח לְהִיּוֹת מְלִיץ
יֵשׁוּעַ לְבְנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ;

8 And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

אָכֵן, בְּעֲלִיתוֹ הַשְׁמִימָה, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ מְלֵא רַחֲמִים,
בְּהִתְמַלְאוֹ חֶמְלָה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ, הוּא יַעֲמֹד
בֵּינָם לְבִין הַדִּין; בְּנִתְּקוֹ אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת,
כְּאֲשֶׁר הוּא מְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת עֲוֹנוֹם וְאֶת פְּשָׁעָם,
בְּנִצְלוֹ אוֹתָם וּבְסִפְקוֹ אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת הַדִּין.

9 Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

הַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אֶת דּוֹרוֹ מִי יְשׁוּחָח? אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כְּאֲשֶׁר תּוֹשֵׁם אִשָּׁם נִפְשׁוֹ, יֵרָאֶה
זְרַעוֹ. וְעַתָּה מֶה תֹּאמְרוּ? וּמִי יִהְיֶה זְרַעוֹ?

10 And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

הַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרֵי
הַנְּבִיאִים, כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ
עַל בּוֹא יְהוָה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר
שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵיהֶם, וְהֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יְהוָה יִגְאֹל אֶת
עַמּוֹ, וְקִוּוּ לַיּוֹם הַהוּא, לְמַחֲלַת חַטָּאֵיהֶם, אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם זְרַעוֹ, וְאֵלֶּה הֵם יוֹרְשֵׁי
מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

11 Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are heirs of the kingdom of God.

כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר אֶת חַטָּאֵיהֶם נִשָּׂא; אֵלֶּה
הֵם אֲשֶׁר לְמַעַנָם מֵת, לְגַאֲלָם מִפְּשָׁעֵיהֶם.
וְעַתָּה, הֲאִין הֵם זְרַעוֹ?

12 For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

וְכִי אֵין הַנְּבִיאִים, כָּל אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר פָּתַח פִּי
בְּנִבְיָאָה וְלֹא נָפַל אֵלָי פֶּשַׁע? כִּנְיָחִי לְכָל
הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵז רֵאשִׁית
הָעוֹלָם. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵם זְרַעוֹ.

13 Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

וְאֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִיעוּ שְׁלוֹם, בְּשָׂרוֹ טוֹב,
הִשְׁמִיעוּ יְשׁוּעָה וְאָמְרוּ לְצִיּוֹן: מֶלֶךְ אֱלֹהֶיךָ.

14 And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵיהֶם!

15 And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

וְעוֹד, מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
עוֹדִם מְשִׁמִּיעִים שְׁלוֹם!

16 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

וְעוֹד, מֶה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
יְשִׁמִּיעוּ שְׁלוֹם בְּיָמִים אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאוּ, אָכֵן,
מִעַתָּה וְהָלָאָה, וְעַד עוֹלָם.

17 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

וְהַנִּנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין זֶה הַכֹּל כִּי מֶה נָּאוּ עַל
הַהָרִים רַגְלֵי מְבַשֵּׂר טוֹב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְהוָה,

18 And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the

- הַמְּסֹד שְׁלוֹם, הַגּוֹאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ; הוּא הַנוֹתֵן
אֶת עַמּוֹ יְשׁוּעָה.
- founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people;
yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;
- 19 For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people,
which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you,
were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.
- כִּי לֹא הָאֵלָה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לְעַמּוֹ, הָעֲרוּכָה
מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי לֹא זֹאת,
הָיוּ אוֹבְדִים כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 20 But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth,
and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the
resurrection of the dead.
- אֲךְ הִנֵּה יִנְתְּקוּ מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְהֵבִן יִמְלֹךְ
וְיִהְיֶה לוֹ הַשְׁלֵטוֹן בַּמָּתִים; עַל כֵּן יָבִיא אֶת
תַּחֲיַת הַמָּתִים.
- 21 And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a
resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be,
even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.
- וְבוֹא תָבוֹא תַחֲיָה, וְהִיא תַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה;
אֲכֹן, זֹאת תַּחֲיַת אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ וְאֵלָה אֲשֶׁר
עוֹדִם וְאֵלָה הַעֲתִידִים לְהִיּוֹת, עַד תַּחֲיַת
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי כֹךָ הוּא יִקְרָא.
- 22 And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have
believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments
of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the
first resurrection.
- וְתַחֲיַת כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ
בְּדַבְרֵיהֶם, כָּל אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים, תִּהְיֶה בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; עַל כֵּן, הֵם
הַתַּחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- 23 They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they
have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.
- וְהֵם קָמִים לִשְׁכֹּן עִם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר גָּאֵלָם; כֹּךָ
יֵשׁ לָהֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר נָתַק
אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת.
- 24 And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these
are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not
having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about
the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or
have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.
- וְהֵם אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָהֶם חֵלֶק בְּתַחֲיָה
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהֵם אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר מָתוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בְּהִיוֹתָם בְּבִלִי דַעַת, וְלֹא הִשְׁמָעָה
לָהֶם הַיְשׁוּעָה. כֹּךָ מִבִּיא יְהוָה אֶת תְּקוּנָם; וְיֵשׁ
לָהֶם חֵלֶק בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; אֲכֹן, חַיֵּי עוֹלָם
יֵשׁ לָהֶם כִּי גָאֵלָם יְהוָה.
- 25 And little children also have eternal life.
- וְכֹן לִילְדִים קְטַנִּים יֵשׁ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- 26 But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble;
for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in
their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since
the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have
known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these
are they that have no part in the first resurrection.
- וְאִוֵּלִים הִנֵּה, יִרְאוּ וְחִרְדוּ מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי
עָלֵיכֶם לְחַרֵּד; כִּי אֵין יְהוָה גּוֹאֵל אֶף אֶחָד מִן
הַמוֹרְדִים בּוֹ וְהַמְתִּים בְּחַטָּאִים. אֲכֹן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר
אָבְדוּ בְּחַטָּאִים מֵאֶזְרַשִּׁית הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר
מָרְדוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים בְּזִדּוֹן לָבָם, אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ אֶת
מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא שָׁמְרוּ, לֹאֵלָה אֵין חֵלֶק
בְּתַחֲיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- עַל כֵּן, הֲאֵין עָלֵיכֶם לְחַרֵּד? כִּי אֵין יְשׁוּעָה בָּאָה
גַּם לְאֶחָד מֵאֵלָה; כִּי לֹא יִגָּאֵל יְהוָה אֶף אֶחָד
אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה; אֲף לֹא יוֹכֵל יְהוָה לְגַאֵל כְּמוֹתָם;
כִּי אֵין הוּא יָכוֹל לְכַחַשׁ בְּעַצְמוֹ; כִּי אֵינוּ יָכוֹל
לְכַחַשׁ אֶת צִדְקוֹ לְעַמֶּת תְּבִיעֵת הַדִּין.

- 28 And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יוֹם יָבוֹא וְתִשְׁמַע יִשְׁוֹעַת יְהוָה לְכָל אָמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעַם.
- 29 Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.
- אָכֵן יְהוָה, קוֹל צִפְיָד נִשְׁאוּ קוֹל, יַחְדּוֹ יִרְנְנוּ: כִּי עֵין בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ, בְּשׁוּב יְהוָה צִיּוֹן.
- 30 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- פָּצְחוּ רִנְנוּ יַחְדּוֹ, חֲרָבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם; כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עֲמוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- 31 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.
- חֲשָׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם; וְרָאוּ כָל אֲפָסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יִשְׁוֹעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

16

טז

- 1 And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.
- וּבְדַבֵּר אַבִּינָדִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ וְאָמַר: בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הַכֹּל יִרְאוּ אֶת יִשְׁוֹעַת יְהוָה, וְכָל אָמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לָשׁוֹן וְעַם יִרְאוּ עֵין בְּעֵין וְיִוְדוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי צָדִק מִשְׁפָּטָיו.
- 2 And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.
- אָז יִשְׁלַחוּ הָרָשָׁעִים, וְיִהְיֶה לָהֶם עַל מַה לְהִילֵּל וּלְבָכּוֹת וּלְזַעַק וּלְחַרֵּק שׁוֹן; וְזֹאת כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְקוֹל יְהוָה; לָכֵן לֹא גֹאֲלָם יְהוָה.
- 3 For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.
- כִּי בְּעֲלֵי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרִים הֵם וּשְׂטָנִים וְשׁוֹלֵט עֲלֵיהֶם הַשֵּׁטָן; אָכֵן, הוּא הַנָּחֶשׁ הַקְּדֻמוֹנִי אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁיֵא אֶת הוֹרֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים וְהִסֵּב אֶת הַשְּׁפָלָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא עַל כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיּוֹת בְּעֲלֵי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרִים, חוֹשְׁנִים, שְׂטָנִים, יוֹדְעֵי טוֹב וָרָע, בְּהִכְנָעַם לַשֵּׁטָן.
- 4 Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.
- כֹּה אָבְדוּ כָל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהִנֵּה כֹה הָיוּ אָבוֹדִים לְעוֹלָם, לוֹלֵא גָאֹל אֱלֹהִים אֶת עַמּוֹ מִכְּלִיוָנָם וּכְשֻׁלּוֹנָם.
- 5 But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore, he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.
- אֲךָ זָכְרוּ נָא כִּי כָל הַדְּבָק בְּטִבְעוֹ תָאֵב הַבָּשָׂר וְיִלֵּךְ בְּדַרְכֵי חַטָּא וּמִרֵּי בְּאַלְהִים, בְּכַשְׁלוֹנוֹ יִשְׁאַר, וְלִשְׁטָן יִהְיֶה שְׁלֹטוֹן מַחְלָט עָלָיו. עַל כֵּן הוּא כְּאִלוֹ חֶסֶר גָּאֹלָה וְאוֹיֵב הוּא לְאַלְהִים, כְּאֲשֶׁר הַשֵּׁטָן אוֹיֵב לְאַלְהִים.
- 6 And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.
- אָכֵן, לוֹלֵא בָּא הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, וְהִנֵּנִי מְדַבֵּר עַל הַבָּאוֹת כְּאִלוֹ בָּאוּ כְּבָר, לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל גָּאֹלָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם.

מושיע טז:ז-יז:ב

- 7 And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.
- 8 But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.
- 9 He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.
- 10 Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—
- 11 If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—
- 12 Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.
- 13 And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?
- 14 Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—
- 15 Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.
- וְלֹא־אִם הָיָה מְשִׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים, אוֹ לֹא־נָתַק אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְלֹקֵבֶר לֹא יִהְיֶה נִצָּחוֹן וְלַמָּוֶת לֹא יִהְיֶה עֶקֶץ, לֹא יִכְלֶה לְחַוֵּל תְּחִיָּה.
- אִם יֵשׁ תְּחִיָּה, וְלָכֵן אֵין לִקְבֵר נִצָּחוֹן, וְעֶקֶץ הַמָּוֶת נִבְלָע בְּמִשְׁיחַ.
- הוּא אוֹר תָּבֵל וְחַיִּיָּה; אַכֵּן, הוּא אוֹר אֵין קֵץ, אֲשֶׁר לְעוֹלָם לֹא יִחָשֵׁךְ; וְאַף הוּא חַי אֵין קֵץ, אֲשֶׁר אֵין בָּהֶם עוֹד מוֹת.
- אֲף לָכֵן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה יִנָּתֵן אִלְמוּת, וְהַבֶּן הַמְּשֻׁחַת הַזֶּה יִהְיֶה לְבִלְתִּי מְשֻׁחַת, וְיִבָּא לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לְאַלְהִים, לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל יָדָיו עַל פִּי מַעֲשָׂיו, אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים;
- אִם טוֹבִים, יִקוּמוּ לְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם וְלֹא־אֲשֶׁר נִצָּחִי; וְאִם רָעִים, יִקוּמוּ לְחָרֶם עוֹלָם, לְהַמָּסֵר לְשָׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הִכְנִיעָם, וְזֹאת מֵאֲרַת חָרֶם.
- כִּי הָלְכוּ עַל פִּי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרָם וְחַמְדָּתָם, מִבְּלִי לִקְרֹא מֵעוֹלָם אֶל יְהוָה, בְּעוֹד זְרוּעוֹת הַרְחָמִים פְּשׁוּטוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם; כִּי זְרוּעוֹת הַרְחָמִים הָיוּ פְּשׁוּטוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם וְלֹא אָבוּ; אֲף כִּי הִזְהָרוּ עַל פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם, הֵם לֹא חָדְלוּ מֵעֲשׂוֹתָם. וְאַף כִּי הִצְטִווּ לָשׁוּב מִרְעָתָם, שׁוֹב לֹא שָׁבוּ.
- וְעַתָּה, הֲאֵין עֲלֵיכֶם לְחָרֵד וּלְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטֵאֵיכֶם, וְלִזְכֹּר כִּי רַק עַל יְדֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ תִּשְׁלָשׁוּ?
- לָכֵן, אִם תִּלְמְדוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, לְמַדּוּ גַם כִּי צֶל הָיָא לְדִבְרִים אֲשֶׁר עֲתִידִים לָבוֹא.
- לְמַדּוּ אֶת הָעָם כִּי גֹאֲלָהּ בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי אֲדֹנָי הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הֵנוּ אֲבֵי הָעוֹלָמִים. אָמֵן.

יז

17

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.
- 2 But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi has testified against them; therefore he began to plead
- וּכְכִלּוֹת אַבִּינָדִי לֵאמֹר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, צִוָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ עַל הַכֹּהֲנִים לְקַחְתּוֹ וּלְהוֹצִיאָו לְהוֹרֵג.
- אֲף הָיָה בִּינְיָהֶם אִישׁ אֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עַלְמָא, וְהוּא מִצֵּאֲצָאִי נְפִי. וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ צָעִיר הוּא הָאֵמִין בְּדִבְרֵי אַבִּינָדִי, כִּי יָדָע עַל אֲדוּת הַפְּשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר הָעִיד עֲלֵיהֶם אַבִּינָדִי.

מוֹשִׁיעַ יִזְג-יג

- לְכֵן הוּא הִפְצִיר בְּמֶלֶךְ לְבַל יִרְגֹז עַל אַבִּינָדִי,
וְכִי יִנְיַחְהוּ לְלֶכֶת לְשָׁלוֹם.
- אֲךָ תַעֲלֵ חֲמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְהוּא צָוָה לְגֶרֶשׁ
אֶת עַלְמָא מִקְּרֹבָם, וְשָׁלַח אֶת עַבְדָּיו
אַחֲרָיו לְהִרְגוֹ.
- אִוְלָם עָלְמָא בָּרַח מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְהִתְחַבֵּא,
וְהֵם לֹא מִצְאוּהוּ. וּבִימֵי הַסֵּתֶר הָרַבִּים הוּא
כָּתַב אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אַבִּינָדִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צָוָה אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו לְהַקִּיף אֶת
אַבִּינָדִי וּלְקַחְתּוֹ; וְהֵם אֶסְרוּהוּ, וְהִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ
אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהֶר.
- וְכַעֲבֹר שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים, אַחֵר הוֹעִץ הַמֶּלֶךְ עִם
כְּהֲנָיו, הוּא צָוָה לְהַבִּיא אֶת אַבִּינָדִי שְׁנִית לְפָנָיו.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אַבִּינָדִי, מִצְאָנוּךְ אֲשֶׁם,
עֲלִידָךְ לָמוֹת.
- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתָּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים עֲצֻמוֹ יֵרֵד בְּקִרְבִּי
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. עַל זֹאת תּוֹצֵא לְהוֹרֵג אִם לֹא
תָשׁוּב בְּךָ מִכָּל הָרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ עָלַי וְעַל
עַמִּי.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אַבִּינָדִי: אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, לֹא אָשׁוּב
מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת
הָעַם הַזֶּה, כִּי אָמַתְּ הֵם; וְלִמְעַן אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ
בְּאַמְתָּם, נָתַתִּי עֲצָמִי לְנַפְל בְּיַדְכֶם.
- הֲנִי מוֹכֵן לְסָבֵל עַד מוֹת, וְלֹא אָשׁוּב מִדְּבָרִי,
וְהֵם יַעֲמְדוּ לְעֵדוֹת עֲלֵיכֶם. וְאִם תִּהְרֹגוּנִי, דָּם
נָקִי תִשְׁפְּכוּ, וְגַם זֹאת תַעֲמֹד לְהָעִיד עֲלֵיכֶם
בְּיוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח בָּא לְשַׁחֵר אֶת אַבִּינָדִי, כִּי
יֵרָא אֶת דְּבָרוֹ וַיֵּרָא פֶּן יִבְאֲנוּ מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים.
- אֲךָ הַכֹּהֲנִים הִרִימוּ קוֹלָם עָלָיו וְהִרְשִׁיעוּהוּ
לֵאמֹר: הֵן אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ חָרַף. לְכֵן הִתְעוֹרְרָה
חֲמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ עַל אַבִּינָדִי וְהוּא שָׁלַחוֹ לְהוֹרֵג.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ וְאֶסְרוּהוּ וְהָכּוּ אוֹתוֹ בְּעֶקְרָבִים
מְכוֹת מָוֶת.
- with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that
he might depart in peace.
- 3 But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast
out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might
slay him.
- 4 But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not.
And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which
Abinadi had spoken.
- 5 And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should sur-
round Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him
into prison.
- 6 And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that
he should again be brought before him.
- 7 And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against
thee, and thou art worthy of death.
- 8 For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the
children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death
unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil
concerning me and my people.
- 9 Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words
which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true;
and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have
fallen into your hands.
- 10 Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words,
and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me
ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony
against you at the last day.
- 11 And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word;
for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.
- 12 But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse
him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up
in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.
- 13 And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged
his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

- 14 And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:
- 15 Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.
- 16 And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.
- 17 Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.
- 18 And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.
- 19 Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.
- 20 And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.
- ובחֲרֹד לְהַבּוֹת הָאֵשׁ אֶת בְּשָׂרוֹ הוּא קָרָא
אֵלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר:
- רְאוּ, כַּמַּעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִם לִי, יִסֹּב זֶרְעֵכֶם
סָבָל לְרַבִּים כְּסָבָלִי, עֲנֻי מוֹת בָּאֵשׁ, וְזֹאת
עַל אֱמוּנָתָם בִּישׁוּעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וַיְבֹאוּכֶם תְּלָאוֹת וְכָל מִינֵי חֲלָאִים
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם.
- וְאַתֶּם תִּכּוּ מִכָּל עֵבֶר, וּתִגְרָשׁוּ וּתִפְזָרוּ
הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה, כְּצֹאן פֹּרֶץ, הִנָּדֹף עַל יְדֵי
חַיּוֹת פְּרָא אַכְזָרִיּוֹת.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִצְוּדוּ אֶתְכֶם, וְתִתְּפָשׁוּ
בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיכֶם; אַזְ תִּסָּבְלוּ עֲנֻי מוֹת בָּאֵשׁ
כְּסָבָלִי עַתָּה.
- כֹּה יִנָּקֵם אֱלֹהִים בְּמַאֲבִידֵי עַמּוֹ.
אֱלֹהֵי, קַבֵּל אֶת נַשְׁמָתִי.
- וַיִּכְדְּבוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נָפַל אַבְינָדִי,
מוֹמֶת בָּאֵשׁ; וְהוּא הוֹצֵא לְהוֹרֵג כִּי לֹא
הִכְחִישׁ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, וּבְמוֹתוֹ
חִתָּם אֶת אֱמֻנָתוֹ דְּבָרָיו.

יח

18

- 1 And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—
- 2 Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.
- 3 And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.
- 4 And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.
- וְעַלְמָא, אֲשֶׁר בָּרַח מִפְּנֵי עַבְדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ, נִחַם
עַל חַטָּאָיו וְעַל עֲוֹנוֹתָיו; וְהָלַךְ בְּסֵתֶר בְּקֶרֶב
הָעָם וְהֵחֵל לְלַמֵּד אֶת דְּבָרֵי אַבְינָדִי.
- וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עַל הָעֵתִיד לְבֹא וְעַל תַּחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים
וְעַל גְּאֻלַּת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, אֲשֶׁר תָּבוֹא עַל יְדֵי כֹחַ
הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְסָבְלוֹ וּמוֹתוֹ וְתַחֲיָתוֹ מִן הַמֵּתִים
וְעֲלִיתוֹ הַשְּׁמַיִמָּה.
- וְהוּא לָמַד אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הִקְשִׁיב לְדִבְרָיו. וְהוּא
לָמַדָם בְּסֵתֶר, לְמַעַן לֹא יֵדַע הַמֶּלֶךְ הַדְּבָר לְמַלְכָּה.
וְרַבִּים הֶאֱמִינוּ לְדִבְרָיו.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ לְדִבְרָיו הֵלְכוּ אֶל מְקוֹם
אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא מוֹרְמוֹן; וְשָׂמוּ נֶתַן לוֹ מֵאֵת
הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְהוּא בְּגִבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ, וְאֲשֶׁר חַיּוֹת פְּרָא
שָׂרְצוּ בוֹ לְפַעְעִמִּים לְפִי עֲוֹנוֹת הַשָּׂנָה.

- 5 Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.
- 6 And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.
- 7 And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.
- 8 And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;
- 9 Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—
- 10 Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?
- 11 And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.
- 12 And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.
- 13 And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.
- וּבְמִוְרְמוֹן הָיָה מַעְיֵן מַיִם, וְעַלְמָא הִלֵּךְ שָׁמָּה, כִּי בִקְרִבְתָּהּ הַמַּיִם הָיָה חֲרָשׁ עֲצִים נְמוּכִים, וּבֹה הִתְחַבֵּא בַּיּוֹם מִמְּחַפְּשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִינוּ לוֹ הִלְכוּ שָׁמָּה לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרָיו.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הָרַב מִסְפַּר הַנֶּאֱסָפִים אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרֵי עַלְמָא. אֲכֹן, כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּדְבָרָיו הִתְאַסְפוּ יַחְדָּו לִשְׁמָעוֹ. וְהוּא לְמַדֵּם וְהִסִּיף בְּאַזְנוֹתָם עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל נִצְלָה וְעַל אֲמוּנָה בַּיהוָה.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה מִי מוֹרְמוֹן, כִּי כֹן נִקְרָא, וְעַתָּה אִם חֲשַׁקְכֶם נִפְשְׁכֶם לְבֹא אֶל צִאֵן אֱלֹהִים וְלִהְיוֹת עִמּוֹ, וְאִם חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם לִשְׂאת אִישׁ אֶת מִשְׁאֵל אָחִיו בְּעִבּוֹר הַקָּל לָהֶם;
- אֲכֹן, אִם תִּאֲוֹתוֹ לְקוֹנוֹ עִם הַמְּקוֹנְנִים, וּלְנַחֵם אֶת הַצָּרִיכִים נַחֲמָה, וְלַעֲמֹד כְּעַדֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל עֵת וּבְכָל דָּבָר וּבְכָל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיוּ בּוֹ, אֲפֹלוּ עַד מוֹתְכֶם, לְמַעַן יִנָּצְלְכֶם אֱלֹהִים, וְתִמְנֶנּוּ עַל הַקָּמִים בַּתְּחִיָּה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה, וְיִהְיוּ לָכֶם חַיֵּי עוֹלָם;
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: אִם זֹאת מִשְׁאֵת לְבַבְכֶם, מִה יֵשׁ לָכֶם נֶגֶד הַטְּבָלְכֶם בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה, כְּעִדּוֹת לִפְנֵי עַל כְּנִיסַתְכֶם עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית, כִּי תִשְׁתַּחֲוּ וְתִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו, לְמַעַן יִשְׁפֹּךְ רוּחוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם בְּשֹׁפַע רַב יוֹתֵר?
- וְכִשְׁמַע הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם מִחֲאוּ כַף מִשְׁמַחָה וְקִרְאוּ: זֶה חֲפָצֵנוּ לְבָנוּ.
- וְעַלְמָא לָקַח אֶת חֵילָם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מִן הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, וְהִלֵּךְ וְעָמַד בַּמַּיִם וְקִרָא לֵאמֹר: אֲנִי, יְהוָה, שֹׁפֵךְ נָא אֶת רוּחְךָ עַל עַבְדְּךָ לְמַעַן אֲעֲשֶׂה אֶת הָעֲבוּדָה הַזֹּאת בְּקִדְשֵׁת הַלֵּב.
- וּכְדִבְרֹו אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִיָּתָה עָלָיו רוּחַ יְהוָה וְהוּא אָמַר: חֵילָם, הֲנִי מְטַבֵּילְךָ, בְּהִיּוֹת לִי תִקְוָה מֵאֵת אֵל שֶׁדִּי, כְּעִדּוֹת עַל כְּנִיסַתְךָ בְּבְרִית לְעַבְדּוֹ עַד מוֹתָהּ, מוֹת הַגּוּי בֶן הַתְּמוּתָה; וְהִי רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה כִּי יִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עָלֶיךָ וְכִי יִתֵּן לְךָ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי גִאֲלַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹכֵן מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם.

מוֹשִׁיעַ יח:יד-כה

- 14 And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נִקְבְּרוּ עֲלֵמָא וְחֵילָם בַּמַּיִם; וְהֵם קָמוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ מִן הַמַּיִם שְׂמִיחִים, כִּי מָלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 15 And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.
- וְעֲלֵמָא שָׁב וְלָקַח אִישׁ אֲחֵר, וְהִלָּךְ שְׁנִית אֶל הַמַּיִם, וְטָבַל אוֹתוֹ כְּרִאשֹׁן, וְזֹלַת אֲשֶׁר לֹא קָבַר עַצְמוֹ שְׁנִית בַּמַּיִם.
- 16 And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.
- וְבִאֲפֶן הַזֶּה הוּא הִטְבִּיל כָּל אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר בָּא אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן; וְהָיָה מִסְפָּרָם כְּמֵאתִים וְאַרְבַּע נַפְשוֹת. וְהֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּמֵי מוֹרְמוֹן וּמָלְאוּ חֶסֶד אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.
- וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְאִילָנָה הֵם נִקְרָאוּ כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ כְּנִסְיַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְבֵּל בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבִסְמִכוּתוֹ נוֹסֵף אֶל כְּנִסְיָתוֹ.
- 18 And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.
- וְעֲלֵמָא, בְּהִיּוֹת לוֹ תִּקְוָה מֵאֱלֹהִים, הִסְמִיךְ כֹּהֲנִים, כִּהְיוּ אֶחָד לְכָל חֲמִשִּׁים נֶפֶשׁ הַסְמִיךְ, לְהַשְׁיִיף לָהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם עַל אוֹדוֹת דְּבָרֵי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 19 And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם לְהַמְנִיעַ מִהוֹרָאת דְּבָרִים, בְּלֹתֵי אֵם הוּא לְמַדָּם, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים.
- 20 Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.
- אִף הוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִשְׁיפוּ דְּבַר, בְּלֹתֵי אֵם דְּבָרֵי נְחֻמָּה מִחֻטָּא וְאִמּוּנָה בִּיהוּה, אֲשֶׁר גָּאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ.
- 21 And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִרְיבוּ אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, כִּי אֵם יִבִּיטוּ קְדִימָה בְּעֵין אַחַת, בְּאִמּוּנָה אַחַת וּבִטְבִּילָה אַחַת, וּבְלִבְבוֹת קְשׁוּרִים יַחַד כְּאֶחָד בְּאַהֲבַת אִישׁ אֶת אָחִיו.
- 22 And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.
- כֵּן צִוָּם לְהַשְׁיִיף. וְכֵן הֵם הָיוּ לְבָנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 23 And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.
- וְהוּא צִוָּם לְשַׁמֵּר אֶת יוֹם הַשַּׁבָּת וּלְקַדְּשׁוֹ וְכֵן לְהוֹדוֹת לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם בְּכָל יוֹם.
- 24 And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.
- וְעוֹד צִוָּם, כִּי הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר הִסְמִיכָם, יִתְכַּלְכְּלוּ בִּיגִיעַ כִּפְיָהֶם.
- 25 And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the
- וְנִקְבַּע יוֹם אֶחָד בְּכָל שָׁבוּעַ לְהִקָּבֵץ יַחַד לְלַמּוֹד הָעָם, וְלַעֲבוֹדַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם;

- ואף כי יתאספו יחד בכל עת אשר היתה
לאל ידם.
- 26 And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.
- 27 And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.
- 28 And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.
- 29 And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.
- 30 And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.
- 31 And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.
- 32 But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.
- 33 And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.
- 34 And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.
- 35 And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.
- וְנִקְבַּע כִּי הַכֹּהֲנִים לֹא יִתְּלוּ אֶת כָּל־כֻּלָּתָם עַל הָעָם, כִּי אִם יִקְבְּלוּ בְעִבּוּר עֲמָלָם אֶת חֶסֶד אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִתְחַזְּקוּ בְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ בַּהֲיִיּוֹת לָהֶם דַּעַת אֱלֹהִים, וְיִוְכְּלוּ לְלַמֵּד בְּעַז אֱלֹהִים וּבִתְקַף סִמְכוּתוֹ.
- וְעַלְמָא צִוָּה עוֹד כִּי יִחְלְקוּ אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסָּה מִרְכּוּשָׁם בִּינִיָּהֶם, כָּל אֶחָד כְּפִי קִנְיָנוֹ; אִם רַב לוֹ, יִרְבֶּה לָתֵת; וְאִשֶּׁר מְעֻט לוֹ, יִמְעֻט לָתֵת; וְיִנָּתֶן לְזֶה אֲשֶׁר אֵין לוֹ כָּל.
- כֹּה יִחְלְקוּ מִרְכּוּשָׁם בְּרִצּוֹן חֲפָזִי וּבְטוֹב לִבָּם לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְלִכְהֻנֵּים הַנֶּצְרָכִים וּלְנַפֵּשׁ כָּל אָבִיוֹן וְעִירָם.
- זֹאת אָמַר לָהֶם עַלְמָא, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּהוּ אֱלֹהִים. וְהֵם הָלְכוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁר לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִחְלְקוּ אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, בַּחֲמֵר וּבְרוּחַ, כְּפִי צִרְכָּם וְהַנְּחוּץ לָהֶם.
- כָּל זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂה בְּמוֹרְמוֹן, עַל מֵי מוֹרְמוֹן, בְּיַעַר אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּת מֵי מוֹרְמוֹן. אָכֵן, מְקוֹם מוֹרְמוֹן, מֵי מוֹרְמוֹן, יַעַר מוֹרְמוֹן, מֵה נְאוֹו אֵלֶּה בְּעֵינֵי הַמִּתְוַדְּעִים שָׁם אֶל גּוֹאֲלָם; מֵה בְּרוּכִים הֵם, כִּי יִרְנְנוּ לְתִהְלֹתוֹ לְעַד.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְּגִבּוֹל הָאָרֶץ, לְמַעַן לֹא יוֹדְעוּ לַמֶּלֶךְ.
- אֲךָ הָיָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר גָּלָה הַמֶּלֶךְ תְּנוּעָה בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם, הוּא שָׁלַח אֶת עֲבָדָיו לְהִתְחַקֹּת אַחֲרֵיהֶם. לָכֵן נִתְגַּלְּוּ עַל יְדֵיו בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסְפוּ יַחַד לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה.
- אָז אָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי עַלְמָא מְעוֹרֵר אֶת הָעָם לְמַרְדּ בּוֹ; לָכֵן שָׁלַח אֶת צְבָאוֹ לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- וְאוּלַם נֹודַע דְּבַר בּוֹא צְבָא הַמֶּלֶךְ לְעַלְמָא וּלְעַם יְהוָה; לָכֵן הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם וְיִצְאוּ עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- וְהָיָה מִסְפָּרָם כְּאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת וְחֲמִשִּׁים נַפְשׁ.

יט

19

- 1 And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.
- 2 And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.
- 3 And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.
- 4 And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.
- 5 And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.
- 6 And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.
- 7 And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.
- 8 And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.
- 9 And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.
- 10 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.
- 11 Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.
- 12 Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.
- וְהָיָה כִּי שָׁבוּ חֵילֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר חָפְשׁוּ לִשְׂאֹא אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי יְהוָה.
- וְחֵיל הַמֶּלֶךְ הָיָה קָטָן, כִּי הִפְחַת, וּבֵין שְׂאָר הָעָם קָם פְּלוּג.
- וּפְלֹג הָעָם הַקָּטָן הֵחֵל לִנְשֹׂף אִיוֹמִים עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ, וּמְרִיבָה גְדוֹלָה הִתְפַּתְּחָה בֵּינֵיהֶם.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בֵּינֵיהֶם, גִּדְעוֹן שְׁמוֹ; וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ חֲזָק וְאוֹיֵב לַמֶּלֶךְ, הוּא שָׁלַף אֶת חֶרְבּוֹ, וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּחִמּוֹ כִּי יַהַרֵּג אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְהוּא לָחֵם בַּמֶּלֶךְ; וּבְרָאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי גִדְעוֹן גּוֹבֵר עָלָיו, הוּא בָּרַח וָרָץ וְעָלָה עַל הַמִּגְדָּל אֲשֶׁר אֶצֶל הַהֵיכָל.
- וְגִדְעוֹן רָדַף אַחֵר הַמֶּלֶךְ, וּבָא לַעֲלוֹת עַל הַמִּגְדָּל לַהַרְגוֹ; וּבִנְשָׂאוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת עֵינָיו סָבִיב נֹכַח אֶרֶץ שְׁמֶלּוֹן, וְהִנֵּה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּגִבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ קָרָא בְּמַצּוֹקַת נַפְשׁוֹ לֵאמֹר: גִּדְעוֹן, חוּסָה עָלַי כִּי בָּאִים הַלְּמָנִיתִים עָלֵינוּ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ; אַכֵּן, הֵם יִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת עַמִּי.
- אֲךָ דָּאֲגַת הַמֶּלֶךְ הִרְבָּה לֹא הִיָּתָה לַעֲמוֹ כִּי אִם לְחַיָּיו. וְאוֹלָם, חָס גִּדְעוֹן עַל חַיָּיו.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּה אֶת הָעָם לָנוֹס מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וְהוּא עָצְמוֹ הָלַךְ בְּרֹאשָׁם; וְהֵם נָסוּ לַיַּעְרוֹת עִם נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִיתִים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם, וְהִשְׁיִגוּם וְהֵחֵלוּ לַהַרֵּג בָּהֶם.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּם לַעֲזֹב אֶת נְשֹׂותֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם וּלְנוֹס מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים.
- אֲךָ הָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָזְבוּם, כִּי בָחֲרוּ לְהִשָּׂאֵר וּלְמוֹת עִמָּהֶם. וְהַשְּׂאָר עָזְבוּ אֶת נְשֹׂותֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם וְנִמְלָטוּ.

- 13 והנשארים עם נשותיהם וטפם הורו לבנותיהם היפות לעמוד לפני הלמנים ולהתחנן כי לא יהרגום.
- 14 And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.
- 14 והלמנים חמלו עליהם, כי הקסמו מיפי נשיהם.
- 14 And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.
- 15 לכן חסו הלמנים על חייהם, ולקחו בשבוי ונשאום אל ארץ נפי; והם התירו להם להחזיק בארץ בתנאי אשר יסגירו את המלך נח לידיהם, וימסרו את רכושם, מחצית מכל קנינם; והיא מחצית מזהבם ומכסףם ומכל יקרותיהם; וכך יעלו מס למלך הלמנים, מדי שנה בשנה.
- 15 Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.
- 16 ובין הנשבים היה אחד מבני המלך, ושמו למחי.
- 16 And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.
- 17 ולמחי חפץ כי לא יומת אביו; ואף כי לא נעלמו ממנו עוונות אביו, היה הוא איש ישר.
- 17 And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.
- 18 וגדעון שלח בסתר אנשים אל היערות, לחפש את המלך ואת ההולכים עמו. והם פגשו את האנשים ביערות, את כלם, זולת המלך וכהניו.
- 18 And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.
- 19 והאנשים נשבעו בלפם לשוב אל ארץ נפי; וכי אם הומתו נשותיהם וילדיהם וגם אלה אשר נשארו עם משפחתם, נקום ונקמו את דמם וימותו עמקם.
- 19 Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.
- 20 והמלך צוה כי לא ישובו; והם רגזו עליו והמיתוהו באש.
- 20 And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.
- 21 והם אמרו לתפוש גם את הכהנים ולהוציאם להורג, אף הם ברחו מפניהם.
- 21 And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.
- 22 והיה כי בעמדם לשוב אל ארץ נפי, הם פגשו את אנשי גדעון. ואנשי גדעון ספרו להם את כל אשר קרה לנשותיהם ולטפם; וכי הלמנים התירו להם להחזיק בארץ תמורת מס ללמנים בגבה מחצית כל קנינם.
- 22 And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.
- 23 והאנשים ספרו לאנשי גדעון כי הרגו את המלך וכי כהניו נמלטו מהם הרחק אל היערות.
- 23 And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

מוֹשִׁיעַ יִטְכֹּד-כ:ה

- 24 And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.
- 25 And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.
- 26 And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.
- 27 And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.
- 28 And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.
- 29 And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ אֶת הַטֶּקֶס, שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי בְשִׂמְחָה, כִּי נִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם לֹא הוּמָתוּ; וְהֵם סִפְּרוּ לְגִדְעוֹן מָה עָשׂוּ לַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים נִשְׁבַּע לָהֶם, כִּי אֲנִשְׁוֵי לֹא יִהְרָגוּם.
- וְלִמְחִי, בֶּן הַמֶּלֶךְ נָח, בִּקְבֻלוֹ מִן הָעָם אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, נִשְׁבַּע לַמֶּלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים כִּי עִמּוֹ יִשְׁלַם לוֹ אֶת הַמַּס, אֶת מִחְצִית כָּל קִנְיָנָם.
- וְלִמְחִי הֵחֵל לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה וּלְהַשְׁכִּין שָׁלוֹם בְּקִרְבָּם עִמּוֹ.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים הִפְקִיד שׁוּמְרִים סָבִיב הָאָרֶץ, לְשָׁמֹר אֶת עַם לִמְחִי בָּאָרֶץ, לְמַעַן לֹא יֵצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת; וְהוּא כָּלְכַל אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו בַּמַּס אֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל מִן הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים.
- וְהָיָה שָׁלוֹם בַּמְּלָכוּת לִמְחִי בְּמִשְׁךָ שְׁנַתַּיִם יָמִים, וְלֹא הִצִּיקוּ לָהֶם הַלְּמָנִים וְלֹא בִקְשׁוּ לְהַשְׁמִידָם.

כ

20

- 1 Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.
- 2 And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.
- 3 And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.
- 4 And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;
- 5 And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.
- וּמְקוֹם הָיָה בָּאָרֶץ שֶׁמְלוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ בוֹ בָנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים לְשִׁיר וּלְרֹקֵד וּלְעֵלֹז.
- וְהָיָה הַיּוֹם וּמִקְצֵתוֹ נִקְבְּצוּ לְשִׁיר וּלְרֹקֵד.
- וְכַהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר בּוֹשׁוּ לָשׁוּב אֶל הָעִיר נְפִי, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּחְדוּ כִּי יִהְרָגֵם הָעָם, לֹא הֵעֲזוּ לָשׁוּב אֶל נִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם.
- וּבְשׁוֹטְטָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת הֵם גָּלוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, וְשָׁכְבוּ וְחָזוּ בָהֶן.
- וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר רַק נִקְבְּצוּ מֵעֵטָן לְרֹקֵד, יֵצְאוּ הַכַּהֲנִים מִמְּסֻתֵיהֶם וְלָקְחוּ וְנָשְׂאוּ אוֹתָן אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת; אַכֵּן, עֲשָׂרִים וָאַרְבַּע מִבָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים נָשְׂאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.

- 6 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.
- וַהֲנִדְעוּ לְלַמְנִים כִּי נִפְקְדוּ בְּנוֹתֵיהֶם הֵם רָגְזוּ עַל עַם לְמַחִי, כִּי שָׁעְרוּ בְּנַפְשָׁם כִּי יָדָם בַּמַּעֲשֶׂה.
- 7 Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.
- וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאִף מֶלֶכָם בְּרֹאשָׁם; וְהֵם עָלוּ עַל אֶרֶץ נְפִי לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַם לְמַחִי.
- 8 And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.
- וְלַמְּחִי גִלָּה אוֹתָם מִן הַמִּגְדָּל, אֶת כָּל תְּכוּנָתָם לְמַלְחָמָה גִּלָּה; וְהוּא אָסַף אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם שָׁכְבוּ בַּמְּאָרֶב בַּשָּׂדוֹת וּבַיַּעֲרוֹת.
- 9 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.
- וּבַעֲלוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, נָפְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם אַנְשֵׁי לְמַחִי מִמְּאָרְבֵּיהֶם וְהֵחִלוּ לְהַרְגֵם בָּהֶם.
- 10 And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.
- וְהִקְרֵב הָיָה קָשָׁה מְאֹד, כִּי נִלְחְמוּ כְּהִלָּחֶם אַרְיֹת עַל טְרֶפֶם.
- 11 And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵחִלוּ אַנְשֵׁי לְמַחִי לְגַרֵּשׁ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים מִעֲלֵיהֶם, אִף כִּי לֹא הָיוּ עֲדָה לְמַחֲצִית מִמֶּסְפָּרָם. אִךְ הֵם נִלְחְמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם, עַל נְשֹׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְעַל יְלָדֵיהֶם; לְכֹן הִתְאַמְּצוּ מְאֹד וְנִלְחְמוּ כְּתַנִּינִים.
- 12 And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.
- וְהֵם מְצְאוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַהַרוּגִים אֶת מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים; אוֹלָם הוּא לֹא מֵת, כִּי אִם נִפְצַע וְנִעָזַב עַל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי נִחְפְּזוּ מְאֹד אַנְשָׁיו לְבָרַח.
- 13 And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ, וְחָבְשׁוּ אֶת פְּצָעָיו, וְהֵבִיאוּהוּ לְפָנֵי לְמַחִי, וְאָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים; נִפְצַע הוּא וְנָפַל בֵּין הַרוּגִים, וְהֵם עָזְבוּהוּ; הִנֵּה, הֵבֵאנוּ אוֹתוֹ לְפָנֶיךָ, הִבֵּה נִהַרְגֵהוּ.
- 14 But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?
- אָךְ לְמַחִי אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: לֹא תַהַרְגוּהוּ, כִּי אֵלֵי תֵבִיאוּהוּ לְמַעַן אֶרְאֶהוּ. וּבִהְבִּיאָם אוֹתוֹ אָמַר אֵלָיו לְמַחִי: מַה זֶה הֵבִיאָכֶם לָצֵאת לְמַלְחָמָה עָלֵינוּ? הֵן לֹא הִפַּר עַמִּי אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי לָךְ. עַל כֵּן, מַדּוּעַ הִפַּרְתֶּם אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתֶּם לְעַמִּי?
- 15 And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: הִפַּרְתִּי אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה כִּי אֲנִישֶׁךְ חָטַפְנוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת עַמִּי; לְכֹן צִוִּיתִי, בְּחֻמָּתִי, עַל עַמִּי לָצֵאת לְמַלְחָמָה עַל עַמְּךָ.
- 16 And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this
- וְלַמְּחִי לֹא שָׁמַע מֵאוּמָה עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה; לְכֹן אָמַר: אֲנִי אַחְקֹר בְּקֶרֶב עַמִּי וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה

מוֹשִׁיעַ כ:יז–כו

- זאת מות יומת. והוא צִוָּה לְעֶרֶךְ חֲקִירָה
בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
17 Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.
- וְכַשְׁמַע גִּדְעוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה שָׂר צָבָא הַמֶּלֶךְ,
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא נָגַשׁ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר
אֵלָיו: אֲנִי, הַתְּאַפֵּק וְאַל תַּחְקֹר בְּעַם הַזֶּה,
וְאַל תִּשֶׂים עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת הָאָשָׁם הַזֶּה.
18 For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?
- הַאִינֶךָ זֹכֵר אֶת כֹּהֲנֵי אָבִיךָ, אֲשֶׁר בִּקֵּשׁ הָעָם
הַזֶּה לְהָרְגָם? הֲאִין הֵם בִּיעֲרוֹת? הֲאִין הֵם
הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר גָּזְלוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים?
19 And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.
- הִנֵּה, סֹפֵר נָא לְמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, לְמַעַן יִסְפְּרֶם לְעַמּוֹ וְיִרְגִיעַ אֶת רוּחָם
עָלֵינוּ. כִּי הִנֵּה הֵם נֹעְרָכִים כְּבָר לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ;
וְהֵן רַק מְעַשִּׂים אֲנַחְנוּ.
20 And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.
- הִנֵּה בָּאִים הֵם בְּחִילוּתֵיהֶם הַרְבֵּים; וְאִם לֹא
יִשְׁכַּף הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת רוּחָם עָלֵינוּ, אָבוֹד אֲבָדְנוּ.
21 For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?
- הֲאִין דְּבָרֵי אֲבִינָדִי אֲשֶׁר נִבֵּא עָלֵינוּ
מִתְקַיָּמִים? וְכָל זֹאת כִּי לֹא שָׁמַעְנוּ לְדְבָרֵי
יְהוָה וְלֹא שָׁבְנוּ מִמְּעוֹנוֹתֵינוּ?
22 And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.
- הֲבֵה נִשְׁקִיט אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְנִקְנִים אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעָה
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְנוּ לוֹ; כִּי טוֹב הָיִיתָנוּ מִשְׁעֲבָדִים
מֵאֲבִד אֶת חַיֵּינוּ; עַל כֵּן, הֲבֵה נָשִׂים קֵץ
לְשִׁפְכוֹת הַדָּמִים הַגְּדוֹלָה.
23 And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.
- וְלִמְחִי סֹפֵר לְמֶלֶךְ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים עַל אֲדוֹת
אָבִיו וְעַל הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר נָסוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת;
וְהוּא תָּלָה בָּהֶם אֶת חֲטִיפַת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים.
24 And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.
- אִז שָׁכַף כַּעַס הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי וְהוּא
אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הֲבֵה נֵלֶךְ לִקְרֹאת אָנְשֵׁי בְּלִי כְּלִי
נֶשֶׁק, וְאֲנִי נִשְׁבַּע לָכֶם שְׁבוּעָה כִּי לֹא יִהְרַג
עַמִּי אֶת עַמְּךָ.
25 And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.
- אִז הָלְכוּ אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי אַחֵר הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּלִי כְּלִי
נֶשֶׁק לִקְרֹאת הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וּבִפְגֻשָּׁם אֶת הַלְּמָנִיתִים
הַשְׁתַּחֲוָה לִפְנֵיהֶם מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים וְהִעֲתִיר דְּבָרוֹ
בְּזָכוֹת עִם לְמַחֵי.
26 And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים אֶת אָנְשֵׁי לְמַחֵי כִּי אֵין
חַמוּשִׁים, נִכְמְרוּ רַחֲמֵיהֶם וְלָבָם שָׁקֵט. אִז
שָׁבוּ עִם מֶלְכָּם בְּשָׁלוֹם אֶל אֶרְצָם.

כא

21

- וְלִמְחִי וְאֶנְשָׁיו שָׁבוּ אֶל הָעִיר נְפִי, וַהֲחֵלוּ
לְשֹׁכֵן שְׁנִית בְּאֶרֶץ בְּשָׁלוֹם. 1 And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, הֵחֵלוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית
לְהִתְעוֹרֵר בְּרָגֶז עַל הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהֵם בָּאוּ בְּגִבּוֹל
הָאֶרֶץ סָבִיב. 2 And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.
- וְלֹא הָעִזּוּ הַלְּמָנִים לְהָרְגֵם מִפְּנֵי הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר
נִשְׁבַּע מֶלֶכָם לְלִמְחִי; אֲךָ הֵם הָכּוּ עַל לְחֵיֵיהֶם
וְהִשְׁתַּרְרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם; וְהֵם שָׂמוּ עַל גֻּבֵם מִשְׁאוֹת
כְּבָדִים וַנִּהְיֶה כְּנֶהְגָּה חֲמוֹר אֲלֵם. 3 Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—
- כָּל זֹאת נַעֲשָׂה כְּדִי לְהַקִּים אֵת דְּבַר יְהוָה. 4 Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.
- וְרַבּוּ עֲנֻיֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, וְלֹא עָלָה בְּיָדָם לְהַחֲלֹץ
מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הִקִּיפוּם מִכָּל עֵבֶר. 5 And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְלַוֵּן לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ
עַל עֲנֻיֵּיהֶם; וְהֵם בִּקְשׁוּ לְצֵאתָ עַל מַעֲנֵיהֶם
לְמַלְחָמָה וְהֵם הִצִּיקוּ מְאֹד לְמֶלֶךְ בְּתִלְוֹתֵיהֶם,
עַד כִּי נָעֲתַר לָהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת כַּחפְצָם. 6 And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.
- וְהֵם הִתְקַבְּצוּ שְׁנִית יַחְדוֹ וַחֲגֹרוּ אֵת כָּלִי
נִשְׁקָם וַיֵּצְאוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים לְגָרֶשׁם מֵאֶרֶצָם. 7 And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים הִכּוּם וַגִּרְשׁוּם לְאַחֹר וַהֲרִגוּ
רַבִּים מֵהֶם. 8 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.
- אֲזִי הָיָה אֶבֶל וּמִסְפַּד גָּדוֹל בְּעַם לִמְחִי, אֵלְמָנָה
הַתְּאֵבֵלָה עַל בַּעֲלָהּ, בֵּן וּבַת הַתְּאֵבֵלָה עַל
אֲבִיהֶם וְאֶחָיוּ עַל אֲחֵיהֶם. 9 And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.
- וְהָאֵלְמָנוֹת רַבּוּ בְּאֶרֶץ וַיַּעֲקוּ יוֹסִיּוֹם, כִּי גָבַר
עֲלֵיהֶן פַּחַד גָּדוֹל מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִים. 10 Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.
- וַיַּעֲקוּתֵיהֶן בְּלֹא הַפּוֹגָה עוֹרְרוּ בְּשִׂאֲרֵית
עַם לִמְחִי כַּעַס עַל הַלְּמָנִים; וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ שְׁנִית
לְקָרֵב, אֲךָ גַּם הַפַּעַם נִסּוּגוּ אַחֹר וַיִּלְהֶם
אֲבֹדוֹת קְבֻדּוֹת. 11 And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

מוֹשִׁיעַ כֹּא:יב-כא

- 12 והם הוסיפו לַצָּאת בַּפֶּעַם הַשְּׁלִישִׁית, וְסָבְלוּ כְּלָפְנִים; וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא נִהָרְגוּ שָׁבוּ אֶל הָעִיר נֶפִּי.
- 13 והם הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם עַד עָפָר וְנִכְנְעוּ תַּחַת עַל הַשְׁעָבוֹד וְנָתְנוּ עַצְמָם לְמַכּוֹת, נִדְּחִים הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה, וְסוֹבְלִים מִמַּעֲמָסוֹת כְּחָפֶץ לֵב אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- 14 והם נִכְנְעוּ עַד מַעֲמָקֵי הָעֲנוּהָ, וְזָעְקוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים; כָּל הַיּוֹם שָׁעוּ אֶל אֱלֹהֵיהֶם כִּי יַחֲלָצֵם מִיָּסוּרֵיהֶם.
- 15 And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.
- 16 ואִי-אֵס הֵם הִחֲלוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת חֵיל בְּאַרְצָם, וְהִגְבִּירוּ אֶת יְבוֹל הָגֶנֶס, וְגִדֹל צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם, וְלֹא סָבְלוּ רָעָב.
- 17 ומִסְפַּר הַנָּשִׁים רַב הָיָה מִמִּסְפַּר הַגָּבָרִים; עַל כֵּן צִוָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי כִּי יַחֲלֹק כָּל גָּבֵר מִמְּזוֹנוֹ בְּאַלְמָנוֹת וּבְיָלְדֵיהֶן, לְמַעַן לֹא יָמוּתוּ בָרָעָב. וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כֵן, כִּי גִדֹּל הָיָה מִסְפַּר הַגָּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ.
- 18 וְאֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ הִתְחַבְּרוּ לְחֻבָּר מֵאַחַד וְשִׁמְרוּ הַיֵּטֵב אֶת גִּרְעֵינֵי תְּבוּאַתָּם וְאֶת צֹאנָם.
- 19 And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.
- 20 והוא צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לִקְיָם תְּצִפִּית מִסְבִּיב לְאַרְצָם, לְמַעַן יִיכָלוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל־שֹׁהֵי לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת הַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, וְאֲשֶׁר חֲטְפוּ אֶת בָּנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים וְהִסְבוּ חֲרָבָן רַב כָּל כֹּךְ לְעַמּוֹ.
- 21 כִּי הֵם חָפְצוּ לְתַפֵּשׂ אוֹתָם וּלְהַעֲנִיֵּשׁ; כִּי נִכְנְסוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפִּי בַּלַּיְלָה וְגִזְלוּ אֶת תְּבוּאַת גִּרְעֵינֵיהֶם וְרַבִּים מִיְּקָרוֹתֵיהֶם; לָכֵן אָרְבוּ לָהֶם.

- 22 And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.
- וְלֹא הָיְתָה עוֹד הַפְּרָעָה בֵּין הַלְּמָנִים וּבֵין עַם לְמַחִי, עַד עֵת בּוֹא עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשֵׁיוֹ אֶל הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.
- וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר גָּלָה הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו, הוּא הָיָה עִם שׁוּמְרָיו מִחוּץ לְשַׁעְרֵי הָעִיר; וּבִסְבָּרוֹ כִּי הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ צִוָּה לְתַפְשָׁם וּלְאַסְרָם וּלְהַשְׁלִיכָם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהַר. וְאִלוּ הָיוּ הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ, הָיָה מְצִוָּה לְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג.
- 24 But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.
- אֲךָ כְּאֲשֶׁר נֹכַח כִּי אֵין הֵם כֹּהֲנֵי נֹחַ, כִּי אִם חֻבְרָיו אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, נִמְלָא לְבוֹ שִׂמְחָה רַבָּה מְאֹד.
- 25 Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.
- כִּי עוֹד לִפְנֵי בּוֹא עַמּוֹן, שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי מִסְפָּר אֲנָשִׁים לְחַפֵּשׂ אֶת אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, אֲךָ הֵם לֹא מְצְאוּהָ וְתָעוּ בִּיעָרוֹת.
- 26 Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.
- אוּלָּם הֵם מְצְאוּ אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּה פֶּעַם, אֶרֶץ מְכֻסָּה עֲצָמוֹת יְבִשׁוֹת; אֲכֹן, אֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁכָּה וְנִחָרְבָה. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמוּ כִּי אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה לִפְנֵיהֶם, שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי, וּבָאוּ בְּגִבּוּלָה יָמִים אַחֲדִים לִפְנֵי הוֹפְעַת עַמּוֹן.
- 27 And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.
- וְהֵם הֵבִיאוּ עִמָּהֶם כְּתָב זִכְרוֹנוֹת, וְהוּא מֵאֵת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר אֶת עֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם מְצְאוּ; וְהַכְּתוּבִים הָיוּ חֲרוּטִים עַל לוחות מתכת.
- 28 And now Limhi was again filled with joy in learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.
- וּלְמַחִי הוֹסִיף לִשְׂמֹחַ בְּהִנָּדַע לוֹ מִפִּי עַמּוֹן כִּי לְמוֹשִׁיָּע מֵמַת אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדִיהָ יוֹכֵל לְפָרֵשׁ חֲרִיטוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה; וְאַף עַמּוֹן עָלָז בְּזֹאת.
- 29 Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;
- וְאוּלָּם מָה עָגְמָה נָפֶשׁ עַמּוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו עַל כִּי רַבִּים כָּל כֶּף מֵאֲנָשֵׁי לְמַחִי נִהָרְגוּ.
- 30 And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.
- וְהֵם גַּם נִעְצְבוּ עַל כִּי הִחֲטִיאוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ וְכֹהֲנָיו אֶת הָעָם לַעֲשׂוֹת חֲטָא רַב וּפָשַׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים. וְהֵם אַף הִתְאַבְּלוּ עַל מוֹת אַבִּינָדִי וְעַל עֲזִיבַת עֲלְמָא וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָלְכוּ אִתּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר יָסְדּוּ כְּנִסְיָת אֱלֹהִים בְּגִבּוּרַת אֱלֹהִים וּכְחוֹ, וּבְאַמּוּנָה בְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אַבִּינָדִי.
- 31 Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.
- אֲכֹן, הֵם אֲבָלוּ עַל עֲזִיבָתָם, כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ לָאֵן נִמְלְטוּ; וְהֵם הָיוּ מִתְחַבְּרִים לָהֶם בְּחֻפְזָם לָב, כִּי הֵם עֲצָמָם נִכְסּוּ בְּבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים לְשָׁרְתוֹ וּלְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.

וּמַעַתָּה בּוֹא עִמּוֹן, גַּם הַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי, וְכֵן רַבִּים מֵעִמּוֹן, נִכְנְסוּ לְבְרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים, לְשֵׁרֵת אוֹתוֹ וּלְשָׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי וְרַבִּים מֵעִמּוֹן חָפְצוּ לְהִטָּבֵל; אֲךָ לֹא הָיָה אִף אִישׁ אֶחָד בְּאַרְץ אֲשֶׁר קָבַל לְכַד סְמִכוֹת מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים. וְעִמּוֹן נִמְנַע מֵעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, כִּי הִחְשִׁיב עִצְמוֹ עֶבֶד בְּלֹתִי רְאוּי.

לְכֵן לֹא עָרְכוּ עִצְמָם לְכִנְסִיָּה בְּעֵת הַהִיא, וַחֲכוּ לְקַבֵּלֹת רוּחַ יְהוָה. אֲךָ חָפְצוּ לְשׁוֹת לְעֵלְמָא וּלְאַחִיו, אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.

אֲכֹן, חָפְצָם הָיָה לְהִטָּבֵל כְּרֹאֲיָה וּכְעִדּוֹת עַל רִצּוֹנָם לְשֵׁרֵת אֶת אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל לֵב; אוּלָם הֵם הֶאֱרִיכוּ אֶת הָעֵת; וְעוֹד יִסְפָּר בְּהַמְשָׁךְ הַדְּבָרִים עַל טְבִילָתָם.

וּמַעַתָּה הָיְתָה כָּל דְּאֵגַת עִמּוֹן וְאַנְשָׁיו, וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי וְעִמּוֹן, לְחַלֵּץ עִצְמָם מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים וּמִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד.

32 And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

33 And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

34 Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

35 They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

36 And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

22

כב

וְעִמּוֹן וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לִמְחִי הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְעֵץ עִם הָעָם בְּאִיזָה אֲפֹן עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַלֵּץ עִצְמָם מִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד; וְהֵם הוֹרִו לְכָל הָעָם לְהִתְקַבֵּץ יַחַד; וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמַע בְּאֻזְנֵיהֶם דְּעַת הָעָם בַּדְּבָר הַזֶּה.

וְהֵם לֹא יָכוּלִים הָיוּ לְמַצֵּא אִף דֶּרֶךְ אַחֶרֶת לְהַשְׁתַּחֲרֵר מִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד, בְּלֹתִי אִם לְקַחֵת אֶת נְשֵׂיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם וְאֶהֱלֵיהֶם וּלְצֹאֵת אֹתָם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. כִּי כֹה רַבִּים הָיוּ הַלְּמָנִים, עַד כִּי נִמְנַע מֵעַם לִמְחִי לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם בַּחֶרֶב כְּדִי לְהַחֲלִץ מִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד.

אֲזִי הָלַךְ גִּדְעוֹן, וְעָמַד לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת עַד כֹּה שָׁמַעְתָּ לְדַבְּרִי, בְּעֵת מֵאֲבָקִינוּ בְּאַחִינוּ הַלְּמָנִים.

וְעַתָּה, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם לֹא מִצְאָתָנִי עֶבֶד לֹא יִצְלַח, וְאִם הִקְשַׁבְתָּ אֶל דְּבָרִי לְפַעְמִים, וְהֵם

1 And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

2 And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

3 Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

4 And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst

מושיע כב:ה-יד

היו לו לתועלת, חפצי כי תקשיב לדברי
עתה, ואני אהיה עבדך להציל את העם הזה
מן השעבוד.

והמלך נתן לו לדבר, וגדעון אמר אליו:

ראה נא את המעבר האחורי אשר בחומה
המערבית, מאחורי העיר. הלמנים, או
שומרי הלמנים, שותים לשכרה בלילה; הבה
נכריז בקרב כל העם הזה כי יקבצו את צאנם
ובקרים ובלילה ינהגום אל היערות.

ואני אלה, כפי פקדנתך, ואשלם את מס
ייננו האחרון ללמנים. והם ישתוהו וישכרו,
ואנחנו נצא דרך מעבר הסתרים משמאל
למחנה, בעודם שכורים וישנים.

כך נצא עם נשינו וילדינו, צאננו ובקרנו אל
היערות; ובמסענו נסב את ארץ שילום.

והמלך שמע לדברי גדעון.

והמלך למחי צוה את עמו לקבץ את עדריהם.
והוא שלח אל הלמנים את מס היין, ואף שלח
יין נוסף, תשורה להם. והלמנים שתו כמות
נפוש מן היין אשר שלח להם המלך למחי.

והיה בלילה ועם למחי אכן יצאו אל היערות
ועמם עדרים צאנם ובקרים; והם הקיפו את
ארץ שילום ביערות, ופנו אל עבר ארץ
זרעהמלה, ועמון ואחיו נוהגים אותם.

והם לקחו עמם אל היערות את כל זהבם
ובספסם ויקרותיהם אשר יכלו לשאת ואף את
צידתם, ויצאו למסעם.

וכעבר ימי מסע רבים ביערות הם הגיעו
אל ארץ זרעהמלה, ודבקו בעם מושיע
והיו לנתיניו.

ומושיע קבלם בשמחה. והוא קבל את כתבי
הזכרון אשר להם וכן את הכתבים אשר
מצאום אנשי למחי.

listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this
people out of bondage.

5 And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said
unto him:

6 Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city.
The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken;
therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they
gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into
the wilderness by night.

7 And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine
to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through
the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and
asleep.

8 Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks,
and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land
of Shilom.

9 And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

10 And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks
together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also
sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the
wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

11 And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night
into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went
round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course
towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

12 And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things,
which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the
wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

13 And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land
of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

14 And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also
received their records, and also the records which had been found by
the people of Limhi.

- 15 וְכִרְאוֹת הַלָּמָנִים כִּי עִם לִמְחִי יָצָא בַּלַּיְלָה מִן הָאָרֶץ, הֵם שָׁלְחוּ צָבָא אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת לְרֹדֶף אַחֲרֵיהֶם.
- 16 And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;
- וְאַחֵר רָדְפָם אַחֲרֵיהֶם יוֹמִים, לֹא יָכְלוּ עוֹד לִמְצֹא עֲקֻבוֹתֵיהֶם וְהֵם תָּעוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 16 And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

סְפוֹר עֲלֵמָא וְעַם יְהוָה, אֲשֶׁר הִמְלִיךְ נֹחַ גִּרְשָׁם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. (בְּעֵרֶךְ 145–121 לִפְנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.) נִכְלָל בַּפָּרְקִים כג-כד.

An account of Alma and the people of the Lord who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah. (About 145–121 B.C.) Comprising chapters 23–24.

כג

23

- בְּהֵיּוֹת דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל עֲלֵמָא לְהַזְהִירוֹ מִפְּנֵי צָבָא הִמְלִיךְ נֹחַ הָבָא עָלָיו, וּבְהוֹדִיעַ עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבַר לְאֲנָשָׁיו, הֵם קִבְּצוּ אֶת עֲדֵרֵיהֶם, וְלָקְחוּ אֶת דְּגָנָם וַיֵּצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, בְּטָרֶם בּוֹא צָבָא הִמְלִיךְ נֹחַ.
- 1 Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.
- וַיְהִי וַיַּחֲזֶק, וְלֹא יָכְלוּ אֲנָשֵׁי הִמְלִיךְ נֹחַ לְהַשִּׁיגֵם וּלְהַשְׁמִידֵם.
- 2 And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.
- וְהֵם נָסוּ דֶרֶךְ שְׁמוֹנֶת יָמִים בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 3 And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.
- וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ חֲמֻדָּה זָפָה מְאֹד, אֶרֶץ מִים זָפִים.
- 4 And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.
- וְהֵם הִטּוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם, וַהֲחִלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה וּלְבָנוֹת בָּתִּים; וּבְחָרִיצוֹתָם עֲמָלוּ עֲמֵל רַב.
- 5 And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים חָפְצוּ כִּי עֲלֵמָא יִמְלֹךְ עֲלֵיהֶם, כִּי הָיָה אֲהוּב עַל עַמּוֹ.
- 6 And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.
- אָף הוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנֵּה, לֹא מוֹעִיל כִּי יִהְיֶה לָנוּ מֶלֶךְ, כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא תַחְשִׁיבוּ בִּשְׂרָא אֶחָד עַל פְּנֵי אֲחֵר; אוֹ, לֹא יַחְשִׁיב אִישׁ כִּי רֶם הוּא מֵעַל רֵעֵהוּ; לָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא מוֹעִיל כִּי יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ.
- 7 But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.
- וְאוֹלָם, אִלּוּ נָתַן כִּי יִהְיוּ לָכֶם תְּמִיד אֲנָשֵׁי צֶדֶק לְמַלְכִּים, אֲזִי טוֹב בְּהֵיּוֹת לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ.
- 8 Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.
- אָף זָכְרוּ אֶת עֲוֹן הִמְלִיךְ נֹחַ וְכֹהֲנָיו; הֵן אִף אֲנִי נֶאֱחָזְתִּי בַּפֶּחַ, וְעִשִּׂיתִי רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר הֵן תּוֹעֵבָה בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, וְעַל זֹאת סָבַלְתִּי יְסוּרֵי חֲרָטָה.
- 9 But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

מושיע כג:י-כא

- 10 אַךְ, אַחַר תְּלָאָה רַבָּה, שָׁמַע יְהוָה אֶת קְרִיאָתִי וַתִּפְלְתִי עִנָּה. וְהוּא עָשָׂנִי כְּלִי בְיָדוֹ בְּהִבְיֵאוֹ כֹּה רַבִּים מִכֶּם לִידְעַת אֱמֻתּוֹ.
- 11 וְאוֹלָם, אֵינִנִּי מִתְפָּאֵר בְּכֶךָ כִּי אֵינִנִּי רְאוּי לְהִתְהַלֵּל.
- 12 וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ נִגַּשׁ אֶתְכֶם, וְאַתֶּם הֵייתֶם מִשְׁעֲבָדִים לוֹ וּלְכַהֲנָיו וְהֵם הִבְיֵאוּכֶם לְיָדֵי עוֹוֹן; עַל כֵּן הֵייתֶם אֲסוּרִים בְּמוֹסְרוֹת עוֹוֹן.
- 13 אַכֵּן, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִצַּלְתֶּם מִן הַמוֹסְרוֹת הָאֵלֶּה בְּכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר נִחַלְצַתֶּם מִיַּד הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ וְאֶנְשָׁיו וְאֶף מִמוֹסְרוֹת הָעוֹוֹן, חֲפָצִי כִּי תַעֲמְדוּ אֵיתָנִים בַּחֲרוּת הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר דָּרוּר נִקְרָא לָכֶם בָּהּ, וְלֹא תִשְׁיִמוּ מִבְּטַחְכֶּם בְּאִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיכֶם.
- 14 וְאֶף לֹא תִשְׁיִמוּ מִבְּטַחְכֶּם בְּאִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרֶכֶם, אוֹ שֹׁרֶתְכֶם, בְּלֹתִי אִם יְהִיֶּה אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, הוֹלֵךְ בְּדַרְכֵּיו וְשׁוֹמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו.
- 15 אַכֵּן כֵּן לָמַד עֲלֵמָא אֶת אֶנְשָׁיו, כִּי עַל כָּל אָדָם לֵאָהֵב אֶת רֵעֵהוּ כְּמוֹהוּ, וְכִי לֹא יִהְיֶה מִדּוֹן בְּקֶרֶבָם.
- 16 וְהָיָה עֲלֵמָא כְּהֵנָּם הַגָּדוֹל, וְהוּא מִיֵּסֵד כְּנִסְיָתָם.
- 17 וְאֶף אִישׁ אֶחָד לֹא קִבֵּל סְמֻכוֹת לְהִטִּיף אוֹ לְלַמֵּד, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי עֲלֵמָא מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים. עַל כֵּן קִדַּשׁ עֲלֵמָא אֶת כָּל כְּהִנֵּיהֶם וְאֶת כָּל מוֹרֵיהֶם; וְלֹא קִדְּשׁוּ כִּי אִם אֶנְשֵׁי צָדִיק.
- 18 לְכֵן הֵם הִשְׁגִּיחוּ עַל אֶנְשֵׁיהֶם וּכְלָלָוּם בְּדַבְּרֵי צָדִיק.
- 19 וְהִצְלַחַה גְּדוּלָּה הִחֲלָה לְהֵאִיר לָהֶם פָּנִים בְּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת הָאֶרֶץ חֵילָם.
- 20 וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ מְאֹד בְּאֶרֶץ חֵילָם; וְהֵם בָּנוּ עִיר, וּקְרָאוּהָ חֵילָם.
- 21 נִעְלָם לָהֶם לִפְנֵי יְהוָה לְהוֹכִיחַ אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהוּא נָסָה אֶת אֶרֶץ רִיחָם וְאֶת אֲמוֹנָתָם.
- 10 Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.
- 11 Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.
- 12 And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.
- 13 And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.
- 14 And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.
- 15 Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.
- 16 And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.
- 17 And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.
- 18 Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.
- 19 And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.
- 20 And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.
- 21 Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

- 22 אֲכֹן, כֹּל אֲשֶׁר שָׂם אֶת מִבְּטָחוֹ בִּיהוּה יִנָּשָׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. וְכֵן הָיָה הַדָּבָר בָּעָם הַזֶּה.
- 23 כִּי הִנֵּה אֶרְאָה לָכֶם, כִּי עַל שְׁעָבוֹד נָתַן עַל צִוְּאָרְם, וְאִף אֶחָד לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה לְהַצִּילָם, כִּי אִם יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב.
- 24 וְהוּא הִצִּילָם, וְהוּא הֶרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת עֲצָם כָּחוֹ, וְהֵם שָׂמְחוּ שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה.
- 25 וּבְשָׁבָתָם בְּאֶרֶץ חֵילָם, בְּעִיר חֵילָם, בְּעֶבְדָּם אֶת אֲדָמָתָם אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, וְהִנֵּה חֵיל לְמָנִים בְּגִבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 26 נֹאנְסָפוּ בְּעִיר חֵילָם; וְהֵם נִפְחָדוּ מְאֹד מִהוֹפְעַת הַלְּמָנִים.
- 27 וְעַלְמָא יָצָא, וְעָמַד בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְעוֹרָרָם לְגִבּוֹר עַל פְּחָדָם, וְאָמַר לָהֶם כִּי עָלֵיהֶם לִזְכֹּר אֶת יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְהוּא יִצִּילָם.
- 28 אֲזַי הֵם הִשְׁקִיטוּ פְּחָדָם, וְקִרְאוּ אֶל יְהוּה כִּי יִרְכֹּף אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים, וְכִי הֵם יַחוּסוּ עָלֵיהֶם וְעַל נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְטַפָּם.
- 29 וַיְהוּה הִרְךָ אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים. וְעַלְמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָצְאוּ לְהִתְמַסֵּר לַיְדֵיהֶם; וְהַלְּמָנִים לָקְחוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ חֵילָם לְנַחֲלָתָם.
- 30 וַצָּבָא הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר רָדְף אַחֲרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמַחִי וְאֲנָשָׁיו, תָּעָה בְּיַעְרוֹת יָמִים רַבִּים.
- 31 וְהִנֵּה הֵם מְצָאוּ אֶת כֹּהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּ אֹתוֹ עַמּוּלוֹן; וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הֵחִלּוּ לַרְשֹׁת אֶת אֶרֶץ עַמּוּלוֹן וּלְעַבֵּד אֶת אֲדָמָתָהּ.
- 32 וְשֵׁם רֹאשׁ הַכֹּהֲנִים הָהֵם הָיָה עַמּוּלוֹן.
- 33 וְעַמּוּלוֹן הִתְחַנֵּן לִפְנֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִף שָׁלַח אֶת נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָנוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, לְהִתְחַנֵּן לִפְנֵי אֲחֵיהֶן כִּי לֹא יָמִיתוּ אֶת בְּעֻלֵּיהֶן.
- 34 וְהַלְּמָנִים חָמְלוּ עַל עַמּוּלוֹן וְאֲנָשָׁיו, וְלֹא הָמִיתוּם מִפְּנֵי נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 22 Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.
- 23 For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.
- 24 And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.
- 25 For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.
- 26 Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.
- 27 But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.
- 28 Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.
- 29 And it came to pass the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.
- 30 Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.
- 31 And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.
- 32 Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.
- 33 And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.
- 34 And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

- 35 ועמולון ואנשיו התחברו אל הלמנים, ובנסעם ביערות לגלות את ארץ נפי, הם גלו את ארץ חילם, אשר הייתה נחלת עלמא ואנשיו. And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.
- 36 והלמנים אמרו לעלמא ולאנשיו כי אם יראו את הדרך המוליכה אל ארץ נפי, יתנו להם את חייהם ואת חרותם. And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.
- 37 ואולם אחר אשר הראה להם עלמא את הדרך המוליכה אל ארץ נפי, לא קימו הלמנים את דברם, כי אם הפקידו שומרים סביב ארץ חילם, על עלמא ועל אנשיו. But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.
- 38 ושאריתם הלכו לארץ נפי; וקצתם שבו אל ארץ חילם והביאו עמם את נשות השומרים אשר השארו בארץ חילם ואת ילדיהם. And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.
- 39 ומלך הלמנים המליך את עמולון למלך ומושל על בני עמו אשר בארץ חילם; ואולם לא התיר לו לעשות דבר אשר לא כרצונו. And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

כד

24

- 1 ועמולון מצא חן בעיני מלך הלמנים. על כן נתן מלך הלמנים ביד עמולון ועמיתיו להמנות למורים בעמו, אכן, בקרב העם אשר בארץ שמלון, בארץ שילום ובארץ עמולון. And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.
- 2 כי הלמנים החזיקו בכל הארצות האלה; על כן מנה מלך הלמנים מלכים על כל הארצות ההן. For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.
- 3 ושם מלך הלמנים נקרא למן על שם אביו; על כן נקרא המלך למן. והוא מלך על עם רב. And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.
- 4 והוא מנה מורים מעמיתיו עמולון בכל ארצות נחלת עמו; כך נלמדה שפת נפי בקרב כל עם הלמנים. And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.
- 5 והם היו עם אשר בגיו הלכו בדרכי נעם זה עם זה; אך לא ידעו הם את אלהים. ועמיתיו עמולון לא למדו דבר על יהוה אלהיהם, גם לא את תורת משה; ואף לא למדו את דברי אבינדי; And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

- 6 But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.
- 7 And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.
- 8 And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.
- 9 For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.
- 10 And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.
- 11 And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.
- 12 And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.
- 13 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.
- 14 And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.
- 15 And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.
- אָף הֵם לְמִדּוּם לְנַהֵל אֶת רִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעִבּוּר יִכְתְּבוּ אִישׁ אֶל אָחִיו.
- וְכֵן הַלְּמָנִיתִים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְעַשֵּׂר, לְסַחֵר אִישׁ עִם אָחִיו וּלְגָדֵל, וְהָיוּ עִם עָרוֹם וְחָכָם בְּחָכְמַת הָעוֹלָם, אַכֵּן, עִם רַב תְּחַבּוּלוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ חֶפֶץ בְּכָל מִינֵי רָשָׁע וְגִזְלֵי אַנְשִׁים זֹלָת בְּנָיו.
- וְעַמּוּלוֹן הֵחֵל לְהִשְׁתַּרֵּר עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו, וּלְרַדֹּף אוֹתָם, וְאָף הִסָּב לְבָנָיו כִּי יִרְדְּפוּ אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם.
- כִּי עַמּוּלוֹן הִכִּיר אֶת עֲלָמָא, וְכִי הוּא הָיָה אֶחָד מִכֹּהֲנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְזֶה אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱמִין בְּדַבְרֵי אַבְינָדִי וְגִרַּשׁ מִלְפָּנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. עַל כֵּן יָצָא קֶצְפוֹ עַל עֲלָמָא; וְאָף כִּי הָיָה נָתִין לַמֶּלֶךְ לָמֶן הוּא שָׁרָר עַל אַנְשֵׁי עֲלָמָא בְּהִטְּיָלוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם עֲבוּדָה וּבִשְׁמִימוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם נוֹגְשִׁים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָה רַבּוּ יְסוּרֵיהֶם עַד כִּי צָעָקוּ אֶל אֱלֹהִים.
- וְעַמּוּלוֹן צִוָּה עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַדֵּל מִצַּעֲקָתָם, וְהוּא שָׁם עֲלֵיהֶם שׁוֹמְרִים לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר יִמָּצָא קוֹרֵא לְאֱלֹהִים מוֹת יוֹמָת.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו לֹא הִרִימוּ אֶת קוֹלָם אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אָף הֵם שִׁפְכוּ אֶת לִבָּם לִפְנָיו, וְהוּא יָדַע אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹת לִבָּם.
- וְהָיָה קוֹל יְהוָה אֲלֵיהֶם בְּסִבְלָם לֵאמֹר: שְׂאוּ רֹאשְׁכֶם וְיִיטֵב לְבַבְכֶם נַחֲמָה, כִּי יוֹדַע אֲנִי עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתָּם לִי; וְאֲנִי אֶכְרַת בְּרִית עִם עַמִּי וְאֶצִּילָהוּ מִן הַשְּׁעָבוֹד.
- גַּם אֶת הַמִּשְׁאָלוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִעֲמִסוּ עַל שִׁכְמְכֶם אֶקַּל, עַד כִּי לֹא תִחוּשׁוּ בָהֶם עַל גִּבְכֶּם, אֲף כִּי מִשְׁעָבָדִים אַתֶּם, וְזֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה לָמַעַן תַּעֲמְדוּ לִי אַחֲרַי כֵּן לְעֵדִים. וְלָמַעַן יָדוּעַ תִּדְּעוּ כִּי אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, פּוֹקֵד עַמִּי בְּסִבְלָם.
- אֲזִי הוֹקְלוּ הַמִּשְׁאָלוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו; אַכֵּן, יְהוָה חִזְקָם בְּעִבּוּר יִשְׂאוּ בְּנַחַת אֶת מִשְׁאָלוֹתֵיהֶם, וְהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לְכָל חֶפֶץ יְהוָה בְּאֶרֶץ רִיחַ.

- 16 And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.
- וְכֵן רַבָּה הָיְתָה אֱמוּנָתָם וְאַרְךָ רוּחָם, עַד כִּי הָיָה אֲלֵיהֶם קוֹל יְהוָה שֵׁנִית, לֵאמֹר: יִיטֵב לְבַבְכֶּם נַחֲמָה, כִּי מָחָר אֶצִּילְכֶם מִשְׁעָבֹד.
- 17 And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל עֲלְמָא: תֵּצֵא לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְאֲנִי אֵלַיךְ עִמָּךְ וְאֶצִּיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה מִשְׁעָבֹד.
- 18 Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering the flocks together.
- וְהָיָה בַּלַּיְלָה, וְעֲלְמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו קִבְּצוּ אֶת צֹאֲנָם וְלֶקְחוּ מִדָּגָנָם; אַכֵּן, כָּל הַלַּיְלָה קִבְּצוּ אֶת עֲדָרֵיהֶם.
- 19 And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.
- וּבֹבֹא הַבֹּקֶר, הִפִּיל יְהוָה תִּרְדֵּמָה עַמְקָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, וְכָל נוֹגְשֵׁיהֶם שָׁקְעוּ בְּשֵׁנָה כְּבֹדָה.
- 20 And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.
- וְעֲלְמָא וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְאַחֵר נִסְעוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת כָּל הַיּוֹם הָם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵמֶק; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמוֹ עֵמֶק עֲלְמָא, כִּי הוּא הִנְהִיגָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 21 Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.
- וּבְעֵמֶק עֲלְמָא הֵם שָׁפְכוּ אֶת תּוֹדָתָם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, עַל רַחֲמָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, וְעַל כִּי הִקָּל אֶת מִשָּׁאָם וְהִצִּילָם מִן הַשְׁעָבֹד; יֵשֶׁן אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִשְׁעָבָדִים, וְאִם אִישׁ אֶחָד לֹא יָכַל לְהִצִּילָם, כִּי אִם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 22 And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.
- וְהֵם נָתְנוּ תּוֹדָה לֵאלֹהִים, אַכֵּן, כָּל אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל נְשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל יְלָדֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ לְדַבֵּר הִרְיָמוּ קוֹלָם וְהִלְלוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 23 And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.
- וְאַמֵּר יְהוָה אֶל עֲלְמָא: מַהֵר וְצֵא, אֶתָּה וְהָעָם הַזֶּה, מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, כִּי הִתְעוֹרְרוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וְהֵם רוֹדְפִים אַחֲרֶיךָ; לָכֵן צֵא מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאֲנִי אֶעְצֹר אֶת הַלְּמָנִים בְּעֵמֶק הַזֶּה לְבַל יוֹסִיפוּ לָרֹדֵף אַחֵר הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- 24 And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.
- וְהֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הָעֵמֶק וְנִסְעוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- 25 And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.
- וְאַחֵר הָיוּתָם שְׁנָיִם עָשָׂר יוֹם בַּיַּעְרוֹת, הֵם הִגִּיעוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה; וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קִבַּל גַּם אוֹתָם בְּשִׂמְחָה.

מוֹשִׁיעַ כה:א-י

עֲלָמָא מִיִּסְד אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַמֵּאֲחָד
שֶׁל הַנְּפִיִּים וּמוֹלֵקִים. הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אוֹסֵר רְדִיפָה
שֶׁל חֲסֵרֵי אֲמוּנָה. בְּנָיו יוֹצֵאִים לְהַטִּיף לְלִמְנִים.
עִם הַנְּפִיִּים בּוֹחֵר שׁוֹפְטִים. (בְּעֶרְךָ 91–120
לִפְנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.) נִכְלָל בַּפָּרָקִים כה–כט.

Alma establishes the church among the united people of the Nephites and Mulekites. King Mosiah forbids persecution by non-believers. His sons depart to preach to the Lamanites. The people of the Nephites elect judges. (About 120–91 B.C.) Comprising chapters 25–29.

כה

25

וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קָרָא אֶת כָּל עַמּוֹ לְהִתְאַסֵּף יַחַד.

1 And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

וּבְנֵי נְפִי, אוֹ צֶאֱצָאֵי נְפִי, לֹא הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּמִסְפַּר
אֲנָשֵׁי זֶרַחְמֶלָה, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִזֶּרַע מוֹלֵק, וּמִן
הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.

2 Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

וְעַם נְפִי עִם עַם זֶרַחְמֶלָה לֹא הָיוּ כֹּה רַבִּים
כְּמִסְפַּר הַלְּמָנִים, אִף לֹא כְּדִי מִחֲצִית מֵהֶם.

3 And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

וְכָל עַם נְפִי וְכֵן כָּל עַם זֶרַחְמֶלָה נֶאֱסְפוּ
וְנִקְבְּצוּ בְּשְׁנֵי מַחֲנוֹת.

4 And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

וּמוֹשִׁיעַ קָרָא אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְצִנִּיף
וְאִף הוֹרָה לְקֶרְאֵם לְעִמּוֹ; אַכֵּן, הוּא קָרָא אֶת
כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְעַם צִנִּיף מֵעַת עַד
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה וְעַד שׁוּבָם אֵלֶיהָ.

5 And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

וְהוּא קָרָא גַם אֶת סִפּוּר עֲלָמָא וְעִמִּיתָיו וְכָל
יְסוּרֵיהֶם, מֵעַת עַד שׁוּבָם אֶת אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה וְעַד
עַת שׁוּבָם.

6 And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ לְקֶרָא אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הַכּוּ בְּנֵי
הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאָרוּ בָּאֶרֶץ בְּפִלְאָה וּבִתְמָהוּן.

7 And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ מַה לַּחֲשֹׁב; וּבִרְאוֹתָם אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
נִצְּלוּ מִן הַשְּׁעָבֹד, נִמְלְאוּ שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה עַד מְאֹד.

8 For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

וְאוֹלָם, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם עַל אַחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נִהָרְגוּ בְּיַד
הַלְּמָנִים, נִמְלְאוּ צֹעַר, וְעֵינֵיהֶם דָּמְעוּ דְּמָעוֹת
רַבּוֹת בִּיגוֹנָם.

9 And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

וְעוֹד, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם עַל טוֹב אֱלֹהִים הַמִּידִי,
וּגְבוּרָתוֹ בְּהַצֵּלָת עֲלָמָא וְעִמִּיתָיו מִיַּד
הַלְּמָנִים וּמִשְׁעָבֹדָם, הֵם נִשְׁאָאוּ קוֹלָם
וְנִתְּנוּ תוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים.

10 And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

מוֹשִׁיעַ כה:יא-כא

- 11 And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.
- 12 And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.
- 13 And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.
- 14 And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.
- 15 And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.
- 16 And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.
- 17 And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.
- 18 Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.
- 19 And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.
- 20 Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;
- 21 Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teach-
- ועוד, בחשבכם על הלמנים, אשר הם אחיהם, על מצבכם השמא, נמלאו מכאוב ומצוק על דבר שלום נפשותיהם.
- והבנים אשר לעמולון ולעמיתיו, אשר אבותיהם לקחו את בנות הלמנים להם לנשים, לא מצאו חפץ בהתנהגות אבותיהם, ולא חפצו להקרא עוד בשמם; על כן קראו עצמם בשם נפי, בעבור יקראו בני נפי ויחשבו במספר הנקראים נפיים.
- וכל עם זרעהמלה נחשבו עם הנפיים, יען אשר לא ישב איש על כס המלוכה, בלתי אם יוצאי חלצו נפי.
- והיה ככלות מושיע לדבר אל העם ולקרא לפניו, הוא חפץ כי גם עלמא ידבר אל העם.
- ועלמא דבר אליהם, והם מכנסים במחנות; והוא הלך מן המחנה האחד אל משנהו, והטיף באזני העם דבר תשובה ואמונה ביהוה.
- והוא הוכיח את עם למחי ואת עמיתיו, ואת כל הנצלים משעבוד, כי יזכרו כי יהוה הוא אשר הצילם.
- ואחר אשר למד עלמא את העם דברים רבים, וככלותו לדבר אליהם, חפץ המלך למחי להטבל וגם כל עמו חפץ להטבל.
- לכן נכנס עלמא אל המים והטבילם. אכן, הוא הטבילם בדרך אשר הטביל את עמיתיו במי מורמון. וכל אשר הטבילם היו לחברי כנסיית אלהים, והם המאמינים בדברי עלמא.
- והמלך מושיע נתן לעלמא לייסד כנסיות בכל ארץ זרעהמלה; והוא נתן בידו להסמיך כהנים ומורים לכל כנסייה.
- והדבר הזה נעשה, מרב מספר האנשים, כי לא יכל מורה אחד ללמדם; ואף לא יכלו הכל לשמע את דבר אלהים באספת עם אחת.
- על כן התאספו באספות נפרדות, אשר נקראו כנסיות; בכל כנסייה היו להם כהנים

מוֹשִׁיעַ כה:כב-כו:ז

- ומורִים, וְכָל כֹּהֵן הִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים
כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ מִפִּי עֲלְמָא.
- וְכֹה, אִף כִּי רַבּוֹת הָיוּ כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם,
הָיוּ הַכֹּל כְּנִסְיָה אַחַת, כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים;
וְלֹא הִטִּיפוּ דְּבַר בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיֹת, כִּי אִם
תְּשׁוּבָה וְאִמּוּנָה בָּאֱלֹהִים.
- שִׁבְעַת כְּנִסְיֹת הָיוּ בְּאַרְצָא זֶרַחְהִמְלָה; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר
הִפְצָא לְקַרְא עָלֵיו אֶת שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ אוֹ אֶת שֵׁם
אֱלֹהִים, הִסְתַּפַּח לְכְנִסְיֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם נִקְרְאוּ עִם אֱלֹהִים: וַיְהוּה שָׁפַר עֲלֵיהֶם
אֶת רוּחוֹ, וְהֵם בִּרְכוּ וַיְהַלִּיחוּ בְּאַרְצָא.
- 22 And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.
- 23 And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;
- 24 And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

כו

26

- וְהָיוּ רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי הַדּוֹר הַצֶּעִיר אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכְלוּ
לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבַר הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין, כִּי הָיוּ יְלָדִים
קְטַנִּים בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵל עֲמוֹ; וְהֵם לֹא קִבְּלוּ
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִסְרַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;
- וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר עַל תְּחִיַּת
הַמֵּתִים וְאִף לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ בְּבֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ.
- וּמִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אִמּוּנָתָם לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִבִּין אֶת דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים, וְהֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לְבָם.
- וְהֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִטְבִּיל, וְאִף לֹא לְהִסְתַּפַּח
אֶל הַכְּנִסְיָה. וְהֵם הָיוּ עִם נִבְדָּל בְּאִמּוּנָתָם,
וְכֵן נִשְׁאָרוּ לְעַד, בְּבִשָּׁר וּבְחַטָּא, כִּי לֹא
קָרְאוּ אֵל יְהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וּבִימֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן מוֹשִׁיעַ, לֹא הִגִּיעַ מִסְפָּרָם
אִף לְמִחְצִית מִסְפָּר עִם אֱלֹהִים. אִף מִפְּנֵי
הַמַּחְלֻקוֹת בֵּין חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה גָּדַל מִסְפָּרָם.
- כִּי הֵם רַמּוּ רַבִּים מִן הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּדִבְרֵי חֲלָקוֹת
וְהַחֲטִיאוּם בְּחַטָּאִים רַבִּים; לָכֵן הִכְרַח הָיָה כִּי
תִנָּזֵר הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּחַטָּאִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ חֲבֵרֶיהָ.
- וְהֵם הוּבְּאוּ לִפְנֵי הַכֹּהֲנִים. אָכֵן, הַמּוֹרִים
מִסְרוּם אֶל הַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הֵבִיאוּם לִפְנֵי
עֲלְמָא, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל.
- 1 Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.
- 2 They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.
- 3 And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.
- 4 And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.
- 5 And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.
- 6 For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.
- 7 And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

מוֹשִׁיעַ כּוֹחַ-כ

- 8 Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ נָתַן לְעֹלְמָא אֶת הַסְמְכוֹת
עַל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ.
- 9 And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.
וְעֹלְמָא לֹא יָדַע עַל אֲדוּתֵיהֶם, אֶף רַבִּים הָיוּ
הַמַּעֲיִדִים עֲלֵיהֶם; אַכֵּן אַנְשִׁים הָרַבּוּ לְעַמּוֹד
וּלְהָעִיד עַל עֲוֹנָם.
- 10 Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.
דָּבָר אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה לֹא קָרָה בַּכְּנִסְיָהּ מֵעוֹדָה; לָכֵן
הָיָה עֹלְמָא שָׂרוּי בַּמְצוּקַת רוּחַ וְהוּא הוֹרָה
לְהַבִּיאֵם לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- 11 And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ: הִנֵּה, רַבִּים הָאֲנָשִׁים
אֲשֶׁר הֵבֵאנוּ לְפָנֶיךָ, הַמֵּאֲשָׁמִים בְּיַדִּי אֲחֵיהֶם
וְהֵם נִמְצְאוּ אֲשָׁמִים בַּמַּעֲשֵׂי עוֹן שׁוֹנִים,
וְאֵינָם נִחָמִים מֵעֲוֹנָם; לָכֵן הֵבֵאנוּם לְפָנֶיךָ
לְמַעַן תִּשְׁפֹּטֵם כַּפִּשְׁעָם.
- 12 But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.
אֶף הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אָמַר אֶל עֹלְמָא: לֹא
אֲשַׁפֵּטֶם, כִּי הִנְנִי מוֹסְרָם לְיָדֶיךָ לְשִׁפְטָם.
- 13 And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.
וְהָיָה עֹלְמָא שָׂרוּי בַּמְצוּקַת רוּחַ שֵׁנִית; וְהוּא
הִלָּךְ לְשָׂאֵל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה מָה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו
לַעֲשׂוֹת, כִּי יֵרָא לַעֲשׂוֹת הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 14 And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַף אֶת כָּל נַפְשׁוֹ לַפָּנִי
אֱלֹהִים, דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו קוֹל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר:
- 15 Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.
בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה, עֹלְמָא, וּבְרוּכִים הַמְטַבָּלִים בְּמִי
מוֹרְמוֹן. בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה עַל אֱמוּנָתְךָ הָרַבָּה בְּדִבְרֵי
עַבְדִּי אַבִּינָדִי לְבָדֵם.
- 16 And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.
וּבְרוּכִים הֵם, עַל אֱמוּנָתָם הָרַבָּה בְּדִבְרֶיךָ
לְבָדֵם, אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה דִּבַּרְתָּ אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 17 And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.
וּבְרוּךְ אַתָּה עַל אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵנְתָּ כְּנִסְיָהּ בְּקֶרֶב
הָעָם הַזֶּה; וְהֵם יִכּוֹנְנוּ וְיִהְיוּ עַמִּי.
- 18 Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.
אָכֵן, בָּרוּךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה הַחֹפֵץ לְשֵׂאת אֶת שְׁמִי,
כִּי בְשִׁמִּי יִקְרָאוּ; וְלִי הֵמָּה.
- 19 And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.
וְעַן אֲשֶׁר שְׁאֲלַתְנִי עַל אֲדוּת הַפּוֹשְׁעִים,
מִבְּרַךְ אַתָּה.
- 20 Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.
עַבְדִּי אַתָּה; וּבְרִיתִי עִמָּךְ אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ לְךָ
חַיֵּי עוֹלָם. הִנֵּה, תַּעֲבֹדְנִי וְתִלָּךְ בְּשִׁמִּי וְתִקְבֹּץ
אֶת צֹאנִי.

- 21 And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.
 וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמֵעַ בְּקוֹלִי יִהְיֶה; אוֹתוֹ תִּקְבֹּל אֶל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ, וְגַם אֲנִי אֶקְבֹּלֶנּוּ.
- 22 For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.
 כִּי הִנֵּה זֹאת כְּנִסְיָתִי; כָּל הַמִּטְבָּל, יִטְבַּל לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּקְבְּלוּ יֵאֱמִין בְּשִׁמִּי, וְלוֹ מִרְצוֹנִי אֶתֶן אֶת סְלִיחָתִי.
- 23 For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.
 כִּי אֲנֹכִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר מִקְבֵּל עָלַי אֶת חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם; כִּי אֲנִי בְּרָאֲתִים; וְאֲנִי הוּא הַמּוֹשִׁיעַ לִימִינִי אֶת אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין עַד הַקֵּץ.
- 24 For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.
 כִּי הִנֵּה, בְּשִׁמִּי הֵם נִקְרָאִים, וְאִם הֵם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתִי, הֵם יָבוֹאוּ, וְלִימִינִי מוֹשֵׁב נִכּוֹן לָהֶם עַד עוֹלָם.
- 25 And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.
 וּבְהִשְׁמַע קוֹל הַשּׁוֹפָר הַשֵּׁנִי, יָבוֹאוּ לְעַמּוּד לִפְנֵי כָל אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹדָם לֹא יָדְעוּנִי.
- 26 And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.
 אָז יֵדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, כִּי אֲנִי גּוֹאֲלָם, אֲךֹּ הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִנָּצֵל.
- 27 And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.
 אָז אוֹדִיעֵם כִּי מֵעוֹלָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּים. וְהֵם יִבְדְּלוּ אֶל אֵשׁ הַתִּמְדִּיד אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה לְשָׂטָן וּלְמַלְאָכָיו.
- 28 Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.
 לָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע בְּקוֹלִי לֹא תִקְבְּלוּ אֶל כְּנִסְיָתִי, כִּי לֹא אֶקְבֹּלֶנּוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 29 Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.
 לָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֵךְ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יִפְשַׁע בִּי, אוֹתוֹ תִשְׁפֹּט כְּפִי חַטָּאֵיו אֲשֶׁר חָטָא; וְאִם יִתְוַדֶּה עַל חַטָּאֵיו לִפְנֵיךְ וּלְפָנַי, וַיִּנָּחֵם בְּתֵם לְבוֹ, סְלוּחַ תִּסְלַח לוֹ, וְכֵן אֶסְלַח לוֹ אֲנִי.
- 30 Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.
 וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ עִמִּי בְּתְשׁוּבָה, אֶסְלַח לָהֶם עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם בִּי.
- 31 And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.
 וְגַם אַתֶּם תִּסְלְחוּ אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם; אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִסְלַח לְרֵעֵהוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיו בְּעֵת אֲמָרוֹ כִּי נָחַם עָלֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁם הוּא מְבִיא עַל עַצְמוֹ.
- 32 Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.
 וְעַתָּה הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֵךְ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִנָּחֵם עַל חַטָּאֵיו, לֹא יִמְנָה בְּמִסְפַּר עַמִּי; זֹאת תִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מִן הַיּוֹם וְהַלָּאָה.

- 33 And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.
- וְכָשֶׁמֶעַ עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא כָּתַבָם לֹא לְזִכְרוֹן, וְלִמְעַן יִשְׁפֹּט אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 34 And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.
- וְהָלַךְ עֲלָמָא וְשִׁפֹּט אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִמְצְאוּ פְּוַעֲלֵי אָוֶן, כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה.
- 35 And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִחְמוּ מִחַטֹּאתֵיהֶם וְהִתְוֹדוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, אוֹתָם מִנֵּה בְּאֲנָשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה;
- 36 And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא הִתְוֹדוּ עַל חַטֹּאתֵיהֶם וְלֹא נִחְמוּ מִעֲוֹנָם, לֹא נִמְנוּ בְּקִרְבֵּי אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְשִׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִמְחוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.
- וְעֲלָמָא הָיָה מְסַדֵּר אֶת כָּל עֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ לְחַיִּית בְּשָׁלוֹם וּלְהַצְלִיחַ מְאֹד בְּעֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה. וְהֵם הָלְכוּ בְּזִהְרִיּוֹת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְקִבְּלוּ רַבִּים וְהִטְבִּילוּ רַבִּים.
- 38 And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.
- כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ בְיַד עֲלָמָא וּבְיַד הָעֹמְלִים עִמּוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מְפַקְדִּים עַל הַכְּנִסְיָה, בְּהִלָּכָם בְּרַב שְׂקִידָה, וּבְהוֹרָאָה אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל, בְּהִתְיַסָּרָם בְּכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים בְּהִרְדָּפָם בְּיַד כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 39 And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, everyone by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.
- וְהֵם הוֹכִיחוּ אֶת חֲבֵרֵיהֶם בְּכְנִסְיָה, אִם גַּם קִבְּלוּ תוֹכַחָה, כָּל אֶחָד מֵהֶם, בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים, אִישׁ כְּפִי חַטֹּאתָיו אוֹ הָרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה; וְהֵם צִוּוּ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּלֹא לְחַדֵּל וּלְתַת תּוֹדָה בְּכָל.

כז

27

- 1 And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִרְדִּיפוֹת אֲשֶׁר רָדְפוּ חֲסְרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה גָּבְרוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלָה הַכְּנִסְיָה לְהִתְלוֹנֵן וּלְהִתְאָוֶן עַל כֵּךְ בָּאֲזִנֵּי מְנַהֲיָיָהּ וְאֵלֶּה הִתְלוֹנְנָה בָּאֲזִנֵּי עֲלָמָא; וְעֲלָמָא הֵבִיא אֶת עֲנִינָם לִפְנֵי מֶלֶכָם, מוֹשִׁיעַ; וּמוֹשִׁיעַ נֹעֵץ עִם כֹּהֲנָיו.
- 2 And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.
- אִז שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ קוֹל בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ סְבִיב וְאָסַר עַל כָּל חֲסְרֵי הָאֱמוּנָה לְרַדֹּף אֶת כָּל חֲבֵרֵי כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.

- וְהָיָה צו חֲמור בְּכָל הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִהְיֶינָה רְדִיפּוֹת בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְכִי שְׂוִיוֹן יִשְׁרָר בֵּין כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים;
- וְכִי לֹא יִתְנוּ לְגָאוֹה וּלְהִרְהָרָה לְהַפְרִיעַ אֶת שְׁלוֹמָם, וְכִי יִכְבֵּד כָּל אָדָם אֶת רֵעֵהוּ כְּאֶת עַצְמוֹ, וַיַּעֲבֹד בְּמוֹ יָדָיו לְכַלְכֶּלְתָּו.
- אָכֵן, כִּי כָל כֹּהֲנֵיהֶם וּמוֹרִיָּהֶם יַעֲבֹדוּ בְּמוֹ יְדֵיהֶם לְכַלְכֶּלְתָּם, בְּכָל מִקְרָה, זֹלַת בְּמַצְבֵּי מַחְלָה אוּ מַחְסוֹר גָּדוֹל. וּבַעֲשׂוֹתָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הֵם הִתְבָּרְכוּ בַּחֲסָדֵי אֱלֹהִים הַרְבֵּים.
- אֲזַי שָׁב שְׁלוֹם רַב אֶל הָאָרֶץ; וּמִסְפַּר הָאָנָשִׁים גָּדָל וַעֲצָם, וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לַפּוֹץ הַחוּצָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, אָכֵן, צָפוֹנָה, דְּרוֹמָה, מְזָרְחָה וּמַעֲרָבָה, וּלְבָנוֹת עָרִים גְּדוֹלוֹת וּכְפָרִים בְּכָל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ.
- וַיְהוֶה פָּקֵד אוֹתָם וַהֲצִלֵּיהֶם, וְהָיוּ לְעַם גָּדוֹל וְעָשִׁיר.
- וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ נִמְנוּ עִם חֲסָרֵי הָאֲמוּנָה; וְכֵן אָחַד מִבְּנֵי עֲלָמָא, וְשֵׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עֲלָמָא, כִּשֶׁם אָבִיו, נִמְנָה עִמָּם. אוֹלָם הוּא הָיָה לְאִישׁ רָשָׁע מְאֹד וְעוֹבֵד גִּלּוּלִים. וְהוּא הִרְבָּה מְלִים וְהִרְבָּה דִּבָּר חֲלָקוֹת אֶל הָאָנָשִׁים; לָכֵן מִשּׁוֹר רַבִּים לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּעוֹנוֹתָיו.
- וְהוּא הָיָה לְמַכְשׁוֹל גָּדוֹל לְהַצִּלְחַת כְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים, בִּגְנֹבֹו אֶת לֵב הָאָנָשִׁים, וְעוֹרֵר מְדוֹן רַב בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְנָתַן פֶּתַח לְאוֹיֵב אֱלֹהִים לְהַפְעִיל אֶת כּוֹחוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהָיָה בְּצִאתוֹ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא הוֹלֵךְ בְּסִטְרָה עִם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת הַכְּנִסִּיָּה, וּלְהַטּוֹת מִדְרָךְ הַיִּשָּׁר אֶת עִם יְהוָה, וְזֹאת נִגַּד מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֵף מִצְוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ,
- וּכְפִי אֲמַרִי לָכֵם, בְּהִלָּכְכֶם מִתְקוֹמָמִים עַל אֱלֹהִים, וְהִנֵּה מֵלֶאֱד יְהוָה הוֹפִיעַ לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא יָרַד, כְּאִלּוּ בְּעָנָן, וְדִבָּר כְּאִלּוּ בְּקוֹל רָעַם, אֲשֶׁר הִחְרִיד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ עָלֶיהָ.
- וְכֵן גְּדוֹלָה הָיְתָה פְּלִיאָתָם, עַד כִּי נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה וְלֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבָּר אֱלֹהִים.
- 3 And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;
- 4 That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.
- 5 Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.
- 6 And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.
- 7 And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.
- 8 Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.
- 9 And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.
- 10 And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—
- 11 And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;
- 12 And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

- 13 And he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.
- 14 And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.
- 15 And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.
- 16 Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.
- 17 And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.
- 18 And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.
- 19 And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.
- 20 And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.
- 21 And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.
- אך הוא קרא שנית לאמר: עלמא, קום ועמד על רגליך; למא תרדף את כנסיית אלהים? כי כה אמר יהוה: זאת כנסייתי, ואני אכוננה; לא יהרסנה דבר, בלתי חטאי עמי.
- והמלאך הוסיף לאמר: הנה, שמע יהוה את תפלות עמו, אף שמע את תפלות עבדו, עלמא, הוא אביך, כי הוא התפלל עליך באמונה רבה, למען תתודע אל דעת האמת. לכן, לתכלית הזאת באתי לשכנעך כי לאלהים העז והמשרה, למען יענו תפלות עבדיו, כפי אמונתם.
- והנה, התוכל לסתר את כח אלהים? האין קולי מחריד את האדמה? האין יכול אף לראותני לפניך? ומאת אלהים אני נשלחתי.
- והנני אומר אליך: לך, וזכר את גלות אבותיך בארץ חילם ובארץ נפי; וזכר כי גדולות עשה למענם; כי הם היו משעבדים והוא גאלם. והנני אומר אליך, עלמא: לך לדרךך ואל תבקש עוד לאבד את הכנסייה, יען אשר יענו תפלותיהם, אף אם חפצך כי תנדה.
- והיו אלה דברי המלאך האחרונים אשר דבר אל עלמא בסתרם לכתו ממנו.
- ועלמא והאנשים אשר עמו נפלו ארצה שנית, כי גדולה היתה פליאתם, יען אשר במו עיניהם ראו מלאך יהוה, וקולו כקול הרעם אשר החריד את האדמה; והם ידעו כי אין דבר, מלבד כח אלהים, היכול להחריד את האדמה ולהרעידנה כאלו תבקע.
- וכה רבה היתה פליאת עלמא, עד כי נאלם ולא יכל לפתח את פיו. והוא נחלש, עד כי לא יכול היה להניע את ידיו. על כן לקחוהו האנשים אשר עמו, ונשאווהו חסר אונים, והניחוהו לפני אביו.
- והם ספרו לאביו את כל הקורות אותם; ואביו שמח כי ידע כי כח אלהים היה זה.
- והוא הורה לאסוף המון רב למען יחזו באשר עשה יהוה בעבור בנו ובעבור אלה אשר היו עמו.

- והוא קרא את הכהנים להאסף יחדו. והם צמו והתפללו אל יהוה אלהיהם, כי יפתח את פי עלמא וידבר, וכי ישוב אונו אל איברי גופו, ולמען יפקחו עיני האנשים לראות ולהבין את טוב אלהים ואת תפארתו.
- 22 And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.
- והיה אחר אשר צמו והתפללו שני ימים ושני לילות, שב כח עלמא אל איבריו, והוא קם ופתח את פיו ודבר אליהם דברי נחמה.
- 23 And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:
- והוא אמר אליהם: נחמתי על חטאי ויהוה גאלני; הנה נולדתי ברוח הקדש.
- 24 For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.
- ויהוה אמר לי: אל תשתומם על פי כל בני האדם צריכים להולד שנית; אכן, על כל איש ואשה, אמה משפחה, לשון ועם להולד מאלהים; אכן, להנאל מאלהים, ממצבם בבשר והיותם נכשלים, ולהפך להיות צדיקים, בניו ובנותיו.
- 25 And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;
- כה הם הופכים בריות חדשות, אך אם לא יעשו כן, לא יוכלו בשום אופן לרשת את מלכות אלהים.
- 26 And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.
- אני אומר לכם, כי אם לא יהיה כדבר הזה, נגזר עליהם להיות מנדים. זאת ידוע ידעתי, כי אף אני כמעט נדיתי.
- 27 I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.
- ואולם, אחר עברי במצוקה רבה, אחר הנחמי על חטאי, כמעט עד מות, ראה יהוה לנכון, ברב רחמי, לחטפני משרפת תמיד, ומאלהים אני נולד.
- 28 Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulations, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.
- נפשי נגאלה מראש התרעלה ומפבלי העוון. הייתי במעמקי חשכת תהום, ועתה אור אלהים הנפלא לנגד עיני. נפשי נלחצה בענויי נצח; אך אני נחטפתי ואין עוד מכאוב לנפשי.
- 29 My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.
- מאסתי בגואלי וכחשתי בדברי אבותינו; אך למען יראו כי בוא יבוא, וכי הוא זוכר כל בריה מבריאתו, הוא יודע לכל.
- 30 I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.
- אכן, כל ברך תכרע וכל לשון תתודה לפניו. אכן, ביום האחרון, בעמד כל האדם להשפט לפניו, אז יתודו כי הוא האלהים; אז יתודו
- 31 Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who

החיים בעולם בלא האלהים, כי צודק דינם
להענש ענש אין קץ; והם יזדעזעו וירעדו
וירתעו ממבט עינו החוקרת כל.

live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting
punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and
shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

ומן היום ההוא והלאה החל עלמא, וכן אלה
אשר היו עמו בעת הופיע המלאך לפניהם,
ללמד את העם; והם סובבו בכל הארץ
והפיצו בכל העם את הדברים אשר שמעו
וראו, והטיפו את דבר אלהים ברב מצוקה,
כי רדפום קשות חסרי האמונה ואף הכום
רבים מהם.

32 And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward
to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the
angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land,
publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen,
and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly
persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many
of them.

על אף זאת, הם חלקו נחמה רבה לחברי
הכנסייה, חזקו את אמונתם, והוכיחו בסבלנות
ובעמל רב לשמירת מצוות אלהים.

33 But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the
church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering
and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

וארבעה מהם היו בני משיע; ושמותיהם:
עמון, אהרן, אומנר וחמני: אלה שמות
בני משיע.

34 And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were
Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of
the sons of Mosiah.

הם עברו בכל ארץ זרחמלה ובקרב
כל העם אשר תחת שלטון המלך משיע,
והתאמצו בקנאותם לתקן את כל הפגע אשר
הביאו על הכנסייה, והתודו על כל חטאייהם,
והשמיעו את כל אשר ראו עיניהם, ובארו
את הנבואות ואת כתבי הקדש לכל אשר
הפצו לשמעם.

35 And they traveled throughout all the lands of Zarahemla, and among
all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously
striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church,
confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had
seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who
desired to hear them.

כה הם היו לכלי שרת ביד אלהים להביא
רבים לידיעת האמת, אכן, לידיעת גואלים.

36 And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many
to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

מה ברוכים הם! כי השמיעו שלום, השמיעו
בשורה טובה, והגידו לעם כי מלך יהוה.

37 And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish
good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the
Lord reigneth.

כח

28

והיה אחר אשר עשו בני משיע את כל
הדברים האלה, הם לקחו עמם מעטים ושבּו
אל אביהם המלך, ובקשו ממנו כי יתיר להם
לעלות אל ארץ נפי עם אלה אשר בחרם,
למען יטיפו את הדברים אשר שמעו, ולמען
יחלקו את דבר אלהים עם אחיהם הלמנים;

1 Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these
things, they took a small number with them and returned to their
father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that
they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of
Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that
they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

אולי יביאום אל ידיעת יהוה אלהיהם
וישכנעם בדבר עוון אבותיהם; ואולי

2 That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord
their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that

- יִרְפְּאוּם מִשִּׂנְאָתָם לְנֶפְתִּים, וְיִכְלוּ אִף הֵם לְשִׂמְחָה בִּיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לְהִיטֵר רַעִים זֶה לָזֶה, וְלִחְדֹל מִרִיב בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם חָפְצוּ כִּי הִישׁוּעָה תִּשְׁמַע בְּאַנְיָ כָּל בְּרִיָּה. יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהִנִּיחַ כִּי תֵאבֹד כָּל נֶפֶשׁ אָדָם; אֲכֹן, אִף הַמַּחְשְׁבָה לְבָדָה, כִּי תִסְבֵּל נֶפֶשׁ כָּל־שֶׁהִי עֲנִי אִין קֶץ, הַסִּבָּה לָהֶם חֵיל וְרַעְדָּה.
- כֹּה פָּעַל עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ יְהוָה כִּי לִפְנֵי כֵן הָיוּ מִן הַמְרָשָׁעִים אֲשֶׁר בְּחוֹטָאִים וִיהוּה, בְּרַחֲמָיו אִין קֶץ, רָאָה לְנַכּוֹן לְחוֹס עֲלֵיהֶם; וְאוֹלָם הֵם סָבְלוּ יְסוּרֵי נֶפֶשׁ רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, וּבְרַב סָבָלָם פָּחְדוּ כִּי יִגְדּוּ עַד עוֹלָם.
- וְהֵם הִפְצִירוּ בְּאֲבֵיהֶם יָמִים רַבִּים כִּי יֵנִיחַ לָהֶם לַעֲלוֹת לְאֶרֶץ נָפִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ הָלַךְ וַשְּׂאֵל אֶת יְהוָה אִם עָלָיו לְהִנִּיחַ לְבָנָיו לַעֲלוֹת אֶל הַלְּמָנִים לְהִטִּיר בְּקִרְבָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וִיהוָה אָמַר אֶל מוֹשִׁיעַ: תִּגַּם לַעֲלוֹת, כִּי רַבִּים יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרָם וְיִנְחֻלוּ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם; וְאֲנִי אֲצִיל אֶת בְּנֵי מִיַּד הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמוֹשִׁיעַ הִתִּיר לָהֶם לָלֶכֶת וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כַּבְּקִשָׁתָם.
- וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ אֶת מִסְעָם בַּיַּעְרוֹת לַעֲלוֹת לְהִטִּיר אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקִרְבַּ הַלְּמָנִים; וְאֲנִי אֲסַפֵּר אֶת הַקּוּרוֹת אוֹתָם בְּהַמְשָׁךְ.
- וְלַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ לֹא הָיָה אִישׁ לְהַעֲבִיר אֵלָיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, כִּי אִף אֶחָד מִבְּנָיו לֹא רָצָה לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת הַמְּמֻלָּכָה.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא לָקַח אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹנוֹת הַחֲרוּטִים עַל גְּבֵי לוחות נְהֻשֶׁת הַקָּלֶל, וְגַם אֶת לוחות נָפִי, וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר וְנָצַר כְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תִּרְגַּם אֶת לוחות הַזָּהָב, אֲשֶׁר מִצָּאוּם אֲנָשִׁי לְמַחִי וְאֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ לוֹ בְּיַד לְמַחִי, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לְכַתְּבָם;
- perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.
- 3 Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.
- 4 And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.
- 5 And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.
- 6 And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.
- 7 And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.
- 8 And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.
- 9 And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.
- 10 Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.
- 11 Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

מושיע כח:יב-כ

- 12 וְזֹאת עָשָׂה מִפְּנֵי דַאֲגַת עַמּוֹ הָרְבָה, כִּי הֵם חָשְׁקוּ עַד בְּלִי דֵי לְדַעַת עַל אֲדוּת הָאֲנָשִׁים הָהֵם אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמְדוּ; And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.
- 13 וּמוֹשִׁיעַ תִּרְגַּם אֶת הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות הַזֶּהָב עַל יְדֵי שְׁתֵּי הָאֲבָנִים הָהֵן אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּעוּ בְּשְׁנֵי שׁוּלֵי קֶשֶׁת; And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.
- 14 וְהָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ מוֹכֵנוֹת מִיָּמֵי קָדָם וְנִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר לְתַכְלִית תִּרְגוּם לְשׁוֹנוֹת; Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;
- 15 וְהֵן נִשְׁמְרוּ וְנִנְצְרוּ בְּיַד יְהוָה, לְגִלּוֹת לְכָל יְצוֹר הַנוֹחַל אֶת הָאָרֶץ אֶת עֲוֹנוֹת עַמּוֹ וְתוֹעֲבוֹתָיו; And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;
- 16 וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיק בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נִקְרָא חוֹזֶה, כְּבִימֵי קָדָם; And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.
- 17 וּכְכֹלּוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ לְתִרְגָּם אֶת הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה הֵם סִפְרוּ עַל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמַד, אַחֲרִיתוֹ בְּהִשְׁמָדָם וְרֵאשִׁיתוֹ בְּבִנְיָן הַמְּגִדֵּל הַגְּבוּהָ, בַּעַת אֲשֶׁר בָּלַבֵּל יְהוָה אֶת לְשׁוֹנוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְהֵם נִפְּצוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְאֵף לְפָנָי כֹּן, מֵעַתָּה בְּרִיאַת אָדָם; Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.
- 18 וְהָיָה כִּי הִסְפּוֹר הָזֶה הִסֵּב לָעָם מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲבָל כְּבֵד, וְלָבָם נִמְלָא יָגוֹן; וְאוֹלָם, הוּא לְמָדָם רַב דַּעַת, וּבְזֹאת שִׂמְחוּ. Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.
- 19 וְהִסְפּוֹר הָזֶה יִכְתָּב בְּהִמְשׁוֹ הַדְּבָרִים, כִּי רָאוּ אֲשֶׁר כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים יָדְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַכְּתוּב בִּסְפּוֹר הָזֶה. And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.
- 20 וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אָמַרְי לָכֶם, אַחֵר עָשׂוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא לָקַח אֶת לוחות נְחֹשֶׁת הַקָּלֵל, וְאֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַר, וְהַפְּקִידָם בְּיַד עֲלְמָא בֶן עֲלְמָא; אֲכֹן, אֶת כָּל הַכְּתָבִים וְכֹן אֶת הַמְּבַאָרִים הוּא הַפְּקִיד בְּיָדוֹ וְצִוָּהוּ לְשָׁמַר אוֹתָם וּלְנַצְרָם, וְאֵף לְכַתֵּב סֵפֶר זְכוֹרֹן לָעָם, וּלְהַעֲבִיר אֶת הַכְּתָבִים מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מֵעַתָּה צֵאת לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם. And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

כט

29

וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹת מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת כָּל אֶלֶה, הוּא
שָׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אֶל כָּל הָעָם, כִּי חָפֵץ
לִדְעַת אֶת רְצוֹנָם בְּאִשֶּׁר לָמִי יְהִי מֶלֶךְם.

וְהָיָה אֵלָיו קוֹל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: רְצוֹנָנוּ כִּי אֶהְרֹן
בֶּנְךָ יְהִי לָנוּ מֶלֶךְ וּמוֹשֵׁל.

וַיַּעַן כִּי אֶהְרֹן הָיָה אֲזִי בְּעוֹלָם אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי, לֹא
יָכַל הַמֶּלֶךְ לְהַעֲבִיר אֵלָיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה; וְאֶהְרֹן
לֹא רָצָה לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה; וְכֵן שָׁאָר
בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ, אֵף הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִתְמַלֵּךְ.

עַל כֵּן שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ שְׁנֵית אֶת דְּבָרוֹ
אֶל הָעָם, דְּבָר כְּתוּב. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
נִכְתְּבוּ, לֵאמֹר:

הַקְשִׁיבוּ, עַמִּי, אַחִי, כִּי אֲנִי מְכַבְּדְכֶם כְּאַחִי,
חָפְצִי כִּי תִתְּנוּ אֶת לִבְכֶם אֶל הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר
נִקְרָאתֶם לְחֹשֵׁב עָלָיו; כִּי הִנֵּכֶם חָפְצִים בְּמֶלֶךְ.

הִנְנִי מוֹדִיעְכֶם כִּי לְאִשֶּׁר יֵאָתֶה הַמְּלוּכָה
כְּמִשְׁפָּט נִמְנָע לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת הַמִּשְׁרָה.

וְאֲנִי יִרְאֵתִי אִם יִמְנָה תַּחְתָּיו אִישׁ אַחֵר כֵּן
יִפְרְצוּ בֵּינֵיכֶם מִדְּנִים. מִי יוֹדַע, אוֹלֵי יִרְגֹּז בְּנִי,
אֲשֶׁר לוֹ הַמְּלוּכָה, וַיִּמְשֹׁךְ אַחֲרָיו חֶלֶק מִן הָעָם
הַזֶּה, וְתַחֲלִנָה מַלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בֵּינֵיכֶם,
אֲשֶׁר תוֹצֵאוֹתֵיהֶן שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים רַבִּים וְעוֹת
דֶּרֶךְ יִהְיוּ וְאִבּוּד נַפְשׁוֹת אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הִבֵּה נִתְחַכְּמָה וְנִחְשָׁב
עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אֵין לָנוּ הִזְכוּת לְהֶאֱבִיד
אֶת בְּנֵי, אֵף לֹא לְהֶאֱבִיד אִישׁ אַחֵר, אִם
יִמְנָה בְּמִקוֹמוֹ.

וְאִם יָשׁוּב בְּנִי אֶל גְּאוֹתוֹ וְהִבְלִי, וַיִּתְחַרֵּט עַל
שְׂאֵמֹר, וַיִּדְרֹשׁ אֶת זְכוּתוֹ לְכֶס הַמְּלוּכָה, יִחְסֵא
הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה אוֹתוֹ וְאֵת הָעָם הַזֶּה רַב חֲסָאָה.

וְעַתָּה, הִבֵּה נִתְחַכְּמָה לְצַפּוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵף לַעֲשׂוֹת לְמַעַן שְׁלוֹם הָעָם הַזֶּה.

1 Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

2 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

3 Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

4 Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

5 Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

6 Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

7 And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

8 Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

9 And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

10 And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

מוֹשִׁיעַ כֹּטִיא-כ

- 11 לָכֵן אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה מַלְכְּכֶם עַד קֵץ יְמֵי חַיִּי. וְאוֹלָם, הִבֵּה נִמְנָה שׁוֹפְטִים לְשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי חֻקֵּינוּ; וְנַעֲרֹךְ מִחֻדָּשׁ אֶת עֲנִינֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְנִמְנָה אֲנָשִׁים חֲכָמִים לְשׁוֹפְטִים לְמַעַן יִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 12 הֵן טוֹב לְאָדָם כִּי יִשְׁפָּטֵהוּ אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא אָדָם, כִּי מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים צוֹדֵק תָּמִיד, וּמִשְׁפָּט אָדָם לֹא תָמִיד יִצְדָּק.
- 13 לָכֵן אֵלֹו אֶפְשָׁר הִיָּה כִּי מַלְכִּיכֶם יִהְיוּ אֲנָשִׁים צַדִּיקִים, אֲשֶׁר יִכּוֹנְנוּ אֶת חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהִים וְיִשְׁפְּטוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל פִּי מִצְוֹתָיו, אַכֵּן, אֵלֹו הִיוּ מַלְכִּיכֶם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִיוּ פּוֹעֲלִים כְּאָבִי בְנִימִין, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלֹו כֹּף הִיָּה הַדְּבָר תָּמִיד, רָצִי הִיָּה כִּי מַלְכִּים יִמְשְׁלוּ עֲלֵיכֶם תָּמִיד.
- 14 וְאִף אֲנִי עֲצָמִי, עֲמַלְתִּי בְּכָל כּוֹחַ וַיְכַלְתִּי לְלַמְּדְכֶם אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּלְכוֹנֵן שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, לְהַרְחִיק מִלְחָמָה וּמִדּוֹן, גְּנֵבָה וְגִזְלָה, וְרָצַח וְכָל פְּשָׁע.
- 15 וְכָל עוֹשֶׂה עָוֹן, אוֹתוֹ הֶעֱנַשְׁתִּי כַּפְשָׁעוֹ, עַל פִּי הַחֹק אֲשֶׁר מְסֻר לָנוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ.
- 16 הֲנִנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר כָּל הָאָדָם אֵינֶם צַדִּיקִים, אִין זֶה רָצִי כִּי יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ, אוֹ מַלְכִּים, לְמִשְׁלָל בָּכֶם.
- 17 כִּי הִנֵּה, מֶה רַב הָעוֹוֹן אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה מֶלֶךְ רָשָׁע, וּמֶה רַב הַחֲרָבָן!
- 18 זָכְרוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ נֹחַ, אֶת רְשָׁעָתוֹ וְאֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתָיו וְכֵן אֶת רְשָׁעַת אֲנָשָׁיו וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. רְאוּ מֶה רַב הַחֲרָבָן אֲשֶׁר בָּא עֲלֵיהֶם; וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עוֹנָם הִשְׁתַּעֲבְדוּ.
- 19 וְלוֹלֵא הִתְעַרְב בּוֹרְאֵם הַיּוֹדֵעַ כָּל, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נִחְמוּ מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם בְּתַשׁבּוּחַ שְׁלָמָה, הִיָּה הִיוּ נֹתָרִים בְּשִׁעְבּוֹדָם עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- 20 אַךְ הִנֵּה, הִצִּילָם אֱלֹהִים, כִּי נִכְנְעוּ לְפָנָיו. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַמְצוּ לְזַעַק אֵלָיו, הוּא חָלַצָם מִשִּׁעְבּוֹד. כֹּף פּוֹעֵל יִהְיֶה בְּכֹחוֹ בְּקִרְבֵּי בְנֵי
- Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.
- Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.
- Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.
- And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;
- And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.
- Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.
- For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!
- Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.
- And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.
- But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power

מוֹשִׁיעַ כֹּס:כא-כט

- הָאָדָם בְּכָל הַמִּקְרִים, בְּהוֹשִׁיטוֹ זְרוּעַ רַחֲמִים
אֶל הַבּוֹטְחִים בּוֹ.
in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy
towards them that put their trust in him.
- 21 And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king
save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.
- 22 For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards
about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned
in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the
commandments of God;
- 23 And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea,
laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not
obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel
against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can
he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the
ways of all righteousness.
- 24 And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abomin-
ations should come upon you.
- 25 Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may
be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our
fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of
the Lord.
- 26 Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything
contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part
of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye
observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the
people.
- 27 And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity,
then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea,
then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has
hitherto visited this land.
- 28 And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the
law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a
higher judge.
- 29 If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause
that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered togeth-
er, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of
the people.
- כִּי הִנֵּה יֵשׁ לוֹ חֲבֵרִים לְעוֹן וְהוּא מַחֲזִיק
שׁוֹמְרִים סְבִיבוֹ; וְהוּא מִפָּר אֶת חֻקֵּי הַמִּלְכִּים
אֲשֶׁר מִשְׁלּוֹ בְּצֶדֶק לִפְנֵי וְרוֹמֵם בְּרִגְלָיו אֶת
מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהוּא מַחֲזֵק חֻקִּים וּמוֹדִיעֵם בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ,
וְהֵם חֻקִּים הַעֲשׂוּיִים עַל פִּי דִרְכֵי רְשָׁעִתּוֹ;
וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ מִצִּית לְחֻקָּיו מוֹצֵא לְהוֹרֵג
בְּפִקְדָתוֹ. וְאֵל כָּל הַמּוֹרְדִים בּוֹ הוּא שׁוֹלַח אֶת
צְבָאוֹ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם, וַיִּשְׁמִידֵם אִם אֵף עוֹלָה
בִּידּוֹ. כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה מֶלֶךְ רְשָׁעִי אֶת כָּל דִּרְכֵי צֶדֶק.
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין הֶכְרֵחַ כִּי יִבֹּאוּכֶם
תּוֹעֲבוֹת כָּאֵלֶּה.
- עַל כֵּן, שִׂאֲלוּ אֶת פִּי הָעָם וּבַחֲרוּ לָכֶם שׁוֹפְטִים
אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפֹּטוּכֶם עַל פִּי הַחֻקִּים אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּכֶם
אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁרִים הֵם, וְאֲשֶׁר נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם
מִיַּד יְהוָה.
- וְאֵין זֶה דְּבַר רְגִיל כִּי יִבְקֹשׁ פִּי הָעָם אֶת אֲשֶׁר
הוּא הַפֶּךְ הַצֶּדֶק; אֵף דְּבַר רְגִיל הוּא כִּי מַעֲוֹת
מִן הָעָם יִבְקֹשׁ אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ צֶדֶק; עַל כֵּן
שִׁמְרוּ אֶת זֹאת וַעֲשִׂיהֶם חֻק לָכֶם, לִנְהַל אֶת
עֲנִינֵיכֶם עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם.
- וְהִיזָה אִם יִבֹּא יוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִבְחַר פִּי הָעָם בְּעוֹן,
אָז יִבֹּא אֲלֵיכֶם דִּין אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, אִזּוֹ יִפְקְדְּכֶם
אֱלֹהִים בְּחִרְבֹּן גָּדוֹל, כִּפְקֻדּוֹ אֶת הָאָרֶץ.
הַזֹּאת לִפְנֵים.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִם יִהְיוּ לָכֶם שׁוֹפְטִים, וְאֵין הֵם
שׁוֹפְטִים אֲתֶכֶם עַל פִּי הַחֻק הַנָּתֵן לָכֶם, תּוֹכְלוּ
לְהִבְיֵאֵם בְּמִשְׁפָּט לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט גָּבוֹה יוֹתֵר.
- וְאִם שׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הָעֲלִיּוֹנִים לֹא יִשְׁפֹּטוּכֶם
בְּצֶדֶק, אַתֶּם תִּקְרְאוּ אֶז מַעֲטִים מִשׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם
הַנְּמוּכִים וְהֵם יִשְׁפֹּטוּ אֶת שׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הָעֲלִיּוֹנִים
עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם.

- 30 And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.
- הִנְנִי מְצַוְכֶם כִּי בִירְאֵת יְהוָה תַּעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֲנִי מְצַוְכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְבֹל יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ; וְהָיָה כִּי יַחֲטְאוּ הָעָם הַזֶּה וַיַּפְשְׁעוּ, נָשׂוּא יִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֲוֹנָם.
- 31 For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: חֲטָאֵי אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים הוּסְבוּ בְּעִוְוֹן מַלְכֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן יָשׁוּב עֲוֹנָם בְּרֹאשׁ מַלְכֵיהֶם.
- 32 And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.
- וְאֲנִי חֹפֵץ כִּי הָעֵדֶר הַשְּׂוִיוֹן הַזֶּה יִחְדַּל מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וּבִפְרֹט מִקְרָב עַמִּי. חֹפֵצִי כִּי תִהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת אֶרֶץ חֲרוּת, וְכָל אָדָם יוּכַל לְהֵנוֹת כְּרַעְהוּ מִזְכִּיּוֹתָיו וּמִיִּתְרוֹנוֹתָיו, כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִמְצָא יְהוָה לִנְכוֹן לְתַתֵּנוּ חַיִּים וְנִחְלָה בְּאֶרֶץ, אוֹ כָּל עוֹד יִחְיֶה אִישׁ מִצֵּאֲצָאֵינוּ עַל פְּנֵיהָ.
- 33 And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.
- וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כָּתַב לָהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ, וּבָהֶם שָׁטַח לְפָנֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל הַנִּסְיוֹנוֹת וְהַצָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְמֶלֶךְ צָדִיק, כָּל עֵמֶל נַפְשׁוֹ לְמַעַן עֲמוֹ וְכָל תַּלְנוֹת הָעָם אֶל מַלְכָם; אֶת הַכֹּל בָּאֵר לָהֶם.
- 34 And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם, כִּי לֹא נִכּוֹן אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי עַל הַמִּשָּׂא לְנַפֵּל עַל כָּל הָעָם, לְמַעַן יִשָּׂא כָּל אִישׁ אֶת חֶלְקוֹ.
- 35 And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;
- וְהוּא אַף תָּאֵר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַמַּעְפָּס אֲשֶׁר בָּעָלוּ עֲמָלוֹ בְּמִשְׁלַל בָּהֶם מֶלֶךְ רָשָׁע.
- 36 Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם עַל כָּל הָעוֹנוֹת וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת, וְעַל כָּל הַמַּלְחָמוֹת, הַמְּרִיבוֹת, שְׂפִיכוֹת הַדָּמִים, הַגִּנְבָּה, הַגָּזֵל, הַהֲנוֹת וְכָל מִינֵי עוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִסְפְּרוּ מֵרֶב; וְכִי אֵין לְאֵלֶּה לְקִרּוֹת, כִּי מִבִּזִּים הֵם בְּמִפְרָשׁ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 37 And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל עַמּוֹ, נִזְכְּחוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים לְדַעַת כִּי אֱמֶת דְּבַר.
- 38 Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.
- לָכֵן הֵם נָטְשׁוּ אֶת חֲפָצָם בְּמֶלֶךְ, וְנִפְשָׁם חֲשָׁקָה מְאֹד כִּי תִהְיֶה לְכָל אָדָם הַזְדַּמְנוֹת שׁוֹה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ; וְכָל אִישׁ הִבִּיעַ אֶת חֲפָצוֹ לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אַחֲרִיּוֹת לְחֲטָאָיו.
- 39 Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who
- עַל כֵּן הִתְאָסְפוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, מִחֲנוֹת, מִחֲנוֹת, לְבַחֵר מִי יִהְיֶה שׁוֹפֵטֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר

וְשִׁפְטוּם עַל פִּי הַחֹק הַמְסוּר לָהֶם; וְרָבְתָה
עַל־יִצּוֹתָם עַל הַחֲרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַנָּה לָהֶם.

should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

וְאַהֲבָתָם לְמוֹשִׁיעַ גְּבָרָה; וְהֵם כִּבְדוּהוּ מִכָּל
אִישׁ אֲחֵר, כִּי לֹא הִבִּיטוּ עָלָיו כְּעַל עָרִיץ
הַרֹדֵף בְּצַע וְשִׁלְמוֹנִים, הַמְשַׁחֲיִתִּים אֶת נַפְשׁ
הָאָדָם, כִּי הוּא לֹא דִרַשׁ מֵהֶם הוֹן וְאֵף לֹא
הִתְעַנֵּג מִשְׁפִּיכַת דָּם, אֲלָא כּוֹנֵן שְׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ
וּפַעַל לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה עִמּוֹ חֲפָשִׁי מִכָּל שְׁעָבוֹד;
לְכֹן כִּבְדוּהוּ עַד מְאֹד, בְּלֹא גְבוּל.

40 And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

וְהֵם מִנּוּ שׁוֹפְטִים לְמִשְׁלַב בָּהֶם, לְשִׁפְטָם כְּחֹק,
וְעָשׂוּ כֵן בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.

41 And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

וְהֵם מִנּוּ אֶת עֲלְמָא לְשׁוֹפֵט הָעֵלְיוֹן הָרָאשׁוֹן,
וְהוּא גַם הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל, כִּי אָבִיו נָתַן אֶת הַמְשָׁרָה
בְּיָדָיו וְהַפְקִידוֹ עַל כָּל עֲנִינֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה.

42 And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

וְעֲלְמָא הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי יְהוָה, וְשָׁמַר אֶת
מִצְוֹתָיו וְשִׁפֵּט מִשְׁפַּט צְדָק; וְהָיָה שְׁלוֹם
בְּאֶרֶץ יָמִים רַבִּים.

43 And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

כֹּךְ הֵחַל שְׁלִטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּכָל אֶרֶץ
זֶרַח־מְלָה, בְּקִרְבִּי כָּל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ נִפְיִים.
וְעֲלְמָא הָיָה הַשׁוֹפֵט הָרָאשׁוֹן וְהָעֵלְיוֹן.

44 And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

וְאַבְיו מָת, וְהוּא בֶן שְׁמוֹנִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנִים;
וְהוּא קִים בְּחַיָּו אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

45 And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

וְגַם מוֹשִׁיעַ מָת בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלִשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ
לְמַלְכוֹ, וְהוּא בֶן שְׁשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים.
וּבִסְף הַכֹּל חָלְפוּ חֲמִשׁ מֵאוֹת וְתִשְׁעַ
שָׁנִים מִיּוֹם צֵאת לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם.

46 And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

כֹּךְ הִגִּיעַ קֶץ שְׁלִטוֹן הַמְּלָכִים עַל עַם נִפִּי;
וְכֹךְ הִגִּיעַ קֶץ יְמֵי עֲלְמָא, מִיַּסַּד כְּנִסְיָתָם.

47 And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

ספר עלמא

THE BOOK OF ALMA

דברי ימי עלמא בן עלמא, אשר היה השופט הראשון והעליון לעם נפי וגם הכהן הגדול בכנסייה. ספור שלטון השופטים, המלחמות והמריבות בקרב העם. וגם ספור על מלחמה בין הנפיים והלמנים, על פי כתבי עלמא, השופט הראשון והעליון. (בערך 91-52 לפני הספירה.)

The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. Also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge. (About 91-52 B.C.)

א

1

והיה בשנה הראשונה לשלטון השופטים על עם נפי, מן העת ההיא והלאה, התחילו העם לקיים את החקים אשר קבלו עליהם אשר חוקק להם המלך מושיע. ומושיע, אחר אשר נלחם בהצלחה והלך וקורא לפני אלהים, הלך בדרך כל הארץ. ועל אף כי הוא לא הניח אחריו יושב על כסאו, הוא חוקק להם את חקיהם ואותם הם שמרו.

1 Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

והיה בשנה הראשונה לשבת עלמא על כס המשפט, הובא לפניו איש להשפט, איש גדול ונודע בכחו הרב.

2 And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

והוא התהלך בקרב העם, והשיף להם דברים אשר הוא כנה דבר אלהים, בגדפו את הכנסייה; והוא השמע את העם כי על כל כהן ומוזרה להיות חביב על העם, וכי אין להם לעבד מלאכת כפפים, כי ראוי לעם לתמוך בהם.

3 And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

והוא אף העיד בפני העם כי כל האדם אכן יושעו ביום האחרון. ואין להם לירא ולחרד, וכי יכולים הם לשאת את ראשיהם ולעלו; כי יהוה ברא את כל האדם והוא גם גאל את כל האדם; ובקץ עתידים כל האדם לנחל חיי עולם.

4 And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

והיה כי הרבה ללמד את הדברים האלה, עד כי האמינו לדבריו אנשים רבים; אכן, כה רבים היו עד כי החלו לתמוך בו ולתת לו כסף.

5 And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

והוא החל להתנשא בגאות לבו וללבוש בגדים יקרים מאד, ואף החל ליסד כנסייה על פי תורתו.

6 And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

וְהָיָה בְּלָכְתּוֹ לְחַטִּיף בְּקֶרֶב הַמַּאֲמִינִים בְּדִבְרוֹ,
הוּא פָּגַשׁ אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הָיָה חֹבֵר וּמִוֹרָה בְּכִנְסִית
אֱלֹהִים; וְהוּא הֵחֵל לָרִיב עִמּוֹ בְּחִזְקָה, בְּחִפְצוֹ
לְהַדְיֵחַ אֶת אַנְשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה; אַף הַמִּוֹרָה יָכַל לוֹ,
וְהוֹכִיחוֹ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים.

וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ גִּדְעוֹן; וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה כָּלִי שֵׁרֶת
בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לְהַצִּיל אֶת אַנְשֵׁי לְמַחִי מִן הַשְׁעָבוֹד.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יָכֹחַ הָיָה גִדְעוֹן לְאִישׁ הַהוּא, כִּי הָיָה
דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּפִיו, הוּא חָרָה בְּגִדְעוֹן, וְשָׁלַף
אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וְהִכָּהוּ. וְגִדְעוֹן לֹא יָכֹחַ הָיָה לְמַכּוֹת
כִּי זָקֵן וְשָׁבַע יָמִים הָיָה, וְהוּא מֵת בְּחֶרֶב.

וְאַנְשֵׁי הַכִּנְסִיָּה הוֹבִילוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר
רָצַח אוֹתוֹ, וְהִבִּיאֻהוּ לִפְנֵי עֲלִמָּא לְהַשְׁפִּט
כְּפִי פְשָׁעָיו.

וְהוּא עָמַד לִפְנֵי עֲלִמָּא וְשָׁעַן לְעַצְמוֹ
בְּרַב עֲזוּת.

אֶף עֲלִמָּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: הִנֵּה, זֹאת הַפַּעַם
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר הוֹבָאָה תְּרִמִּית כְּמָרִים בְּקֶרֶב
הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְהִנֵּה, לֹא בְּתִרְמִית כְּמָרִים בְּלִבָּד
אֶתָּה אִשָּׁם, כִּי אִף בְּחֶרֶב הָתַאמַּצְתָּ
לְהַשְׁלִיטָה. הֵן אֵלֹהֵי הַשְׁלִטָּה תְּרִמִּית כְּמָרִים
בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה, הִיתָה זֹאת מְבִיאָה עֲלֵיהֶם
חֶרֶב עַד תָּם.

וְאַתָּה שִׁפַּכְתָּ דָם אִישׁ צַדִּיק, אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה
רַב טוֹבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה; אֵלֹהֵי חַסְדּוֹ עָלֶיךָ
הָיָה דָמוֹ קָם עֲלֵינוּ לְהִנָּקָם.

לָכֵן נָדוֹן אֶתָּה לְמוֹת, עַל כִּי חָק אֲשֶׁר
מָסַר לָנוּ מוֹשִׁיעַ, מִלְּכֵנוּ הָאֲחֵרוֹן, וְאֲשֶׁר
הִתְקַבֵּל עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. לָכֵן חַיֵּב הָעָם
הַזֶּה לְהִגָּח בְּחָק.

וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ נְחוֹר. וְהֵם לָקְחוּהוּ וּנְשָׂאוּהוּ
אֶל רֹאשׁ גִּבְעַת מְנַטִּי שָׁם, בֵּין שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ,
נֶאֱלָץ לְהוֹדוֹת, וְאָכֵן הוֹדָה, כִּי אֲשֶׁר לָמַד
אֶת הָעָם הַכֹּף הָיָה מְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים, וְשֵׁם
מֵת מָוֶת בְּזוֹי.

וְאוֹלָם, לֹא שָׁם כָּל זֶה קָץ לְהַתְּפָשׁוֹת
תַּחְבּוּלוֹת כְּמָרִים בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי רַבִּים הָיוּ

7 And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

8 Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

9 Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

10 And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

11 And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pleaded for himself with much boldness.

12 But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

13 And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

14 Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

15 And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

16 Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the

- אשר אהבו את הבלי העולם ויצאו להטיף תורות כזב. וזאת עשו למען עשר וכבוד.
- אף על זאת, הם לא העזו לשקר, פן יתגלה הדבר, מיראתם את החק, כי רמאים נענשו; לכן העמידו פנים כאלו הם מטיפים על פי אמונתם, כי לחק לא היה כל תקף על אדם באשר לאמונתו.
- והם לא העזו לגנב, מפחד החק, כי גנבים באו על ענשם. וכן לא העזו לשלח ידם בשד וברצח, כי הרוצח נדון למות.
- והיה כי כל אשר לא נמנה עם חברי כנסית אלהים החל לרדף את חברי הכנסיה אשר קבלו עליהם את שם המשיח.
- אכן, הם רדפו וענו אותם בכל מיני דבורים, וזאת מפני ענותם כי לא רמו בעיני עצמם, וחקו את דבר אלהים איש עם אחיו, בלא כסף ובלא מחיר.
- וחק חמור היה לאנשי הכנסיה, אשר לא יקום איש, חבר בכנסיה, לרדף את אשר אינו חבר בה, וכי לא תהיינה כל רדיפות בקרבם.
- ואולם, היו ביניהם רבים אשר החלו להתנאות ולרוב בחמה עם בעלי ריבם ולהכותם. אכן, הם הלמו זה בזה באגרוף.
- והדבר היה בשנה השנייה למלוך עלמא, והוא הסב צרות רבות לכנסיה ולנסיונות רבים בתוכה.
- כי רבים הקשו את לבם, ושמותיהם נמחו ולא נזכרו עוד בקרב עם אלהים. אף רבים היו אשר רחקו מעליהם.
- והדבר היה נסיון גדול לדבקים באמונה; אף הם היו חזקים ואיתנים בשמירת מצוות אלהים ונשאו באגרף רוח את הרדיפות אשר הכבדו עליהם.
- ובהנח הכהנים את מלאכתם למען חלק את דבר אלהים לעם, היו גם האנשים מניחים את מלאכתם למען שמע את דבר אלהים.
- 17 Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.
- 18 And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.
- 19 But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.
- 20 Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.
- 21 Now there was a strict law among the people of the church that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.
- 22 Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.
- 23 Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.
- 24 For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.
- 25 Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.
- 26 And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they

וּכְכָלוֹת הַכֹּהֵן לְחַלֵּק לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים
שָׁבוּ הַכֹּל לִשְׁקֹד עַל עֲבוֹדָתָם; וְהַכֹּהֵן לֹא
הִתְנַשָּׂא עַל שׁוֹמְעָיו, כִּי הַמְּסִיף לֹא הָיָה טוֹב
מִהַשּׁוֹמֵעַ, וְהַמּוֹרֶה לֹא הָיָה טוֹב מִן הַתִּלְמִיד;
הַכֹּל הָיוּ שְׁוִים, הַכֹּל עָמְלוּ, אִישׁ כְּפִי כחו.

all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים חָלְקוּ מִרְכּוּשָׁם, אִישׁ כְּפִי שֶׁהָיָה
בְּיָדוֹ, לְעָנִי וּלְנֹצֵרָה, לְחוֹלָה וּלְנִגְוָע. וְהֵם לֹא
לָבָשׁוּ בְּגָדֵי יָקָר, אֶךְ לְבוּשָׁם נָקִי וְנֹאָה הָיָה.

27 And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

כִּךְ הֵם כּוֹנְנוּ אֶת עֲנִיֵּי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְכִךְ שָׁב
הַשְּׁלוֹם וְהַיִּתְהָ לָהֶם שְׁלוֹה מִמִּשְׁכָּת, עַל אִף
כָּל רִדְיוֹתֵיהֶם.

28 And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה הַכְּנִסְיָה יְצִיבָה וְאִיִּתְנָה,
הֵחֵלוּ אֲנָשֶׁיהָ לְרִבּוֹת עֶשֶׂר רַב מְאֹד, כִּי רָאוּ
שֶׁפַע בָּכֹל אֲשֶׁר הֵצִטְרְכוּ, רַב צֵאן וּבָקָר, וְעִגְלֵי
מִרְבָּק לְמִינֵיהֶם וְרַב דָּגָן, וְזָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְחִפְצֵי
יָקָר, וְרַב מָשִׁי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֻׁזָּר וְכָל מִינֵי אֶרֶץ טוֹב,
מְלֹאכֶת בֵּית.

29 And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

וּבַהֲצִלְחָתָם הֵם לֹא שָׁלְחוּ מֵעֲלֵיהֶם כָּל עִירִים
וְרַעֲב, צָמָא וְחוֹלָה וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא הִתְפַּלְּל; וְהֵם
לֹא שָׁתוּ לָבֶם לְעֶשֶׂר; עַל כֵּן פָּתְחוּ יָדָם
לְהַעֲנִיק לְכָל, זָקֵן וְצָעִיר, חֵיב וְחֹפֶשִׁי, אִישׁ
וְאִשָּׁה, חֵבֵר בְּכִנְסִיָּה וְאֲשֶׁר מִחוּץ לָהּ, בְּלֹא
מִשׁוֹא פָּנִים לְכָל הַנֹּצֵרָה.

30 And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

כִּךְ רִבְתָּה הַצִּלְחָתָם, וְהֵם עָשְׂרוּ מְאֹד
מִזּוֹלָתָם אֲשֶׁר לֹא חָבְרוּ לְכִנְסִיָּתָם.

31 And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲבֵרִים בְּכִנְסִיָּתָם
הִתְעַנְּגוּ בְּכִשְׁפִּים, וּבַעֲבֹדַת אֱלִילִים
וּבַעֲצָלוֹת, בְּפִטְפוּטִים וּבַקְנָאָה וּמִדְּנִים;
וְהֵם לָבָשׁוּ בְּגָדֵי יָקָר, וְהִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם
בְּנֹאֲוֹת לֵב וּדְבָקוּ בְּרִדְיוֹת וּבִשְׁקָר, בְּגִנְיָה
וּבִשְׁדָּה, וּבִזְנוּת, וּבְרִצְחָה וּבְכָל דְּרָכֵי רָשָׁע.
וְאוֹלָם, הִפְעֵל הַחֹק עַל כָּל הָעוֹבְרִים עָלָיו,
כָּל אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הַדְּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת.

32 For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

וְהָיָה עַל יְדֵי הַפְּעֻלַת הַחֹק עֲלֵיהֶם, נִעְנְשׁוּ
הָאֲנָשִׁים כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וְלָכֵן שָׁקְטוּ וְלֹא הָיוּ
לְהָרַע, כֹּן יוֹדַע פְּשָׁעָם. עַל כֵּן רוּחָה הַשְּׁלוֹה
בְּקֶרֶב עַם נָפִי עַד הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית
לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

33 And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

ב

2

- 1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—
- 2 Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be king over the people.
- 3 Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.
- 4 Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.
- 5 And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.
- 6 And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.
- 7 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.
- 8 Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.
- 9 And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.
- 10 Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.
- וּבְרֵאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטֹנָם
פְּרִצָּה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה
שֵׁם, עַמְלִיקִי שְׁמוֹ וְהוּא עָרוּם מְאֹד, מְבִין
בְּחֻכְמַת הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי הָאִישׁ
אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת גִּדְעוֹן בְּחֶרֶבוֹ וְאֲשֶׁר הוּצָא
לְהוֹרֵג כְּחֹק.
- וְעַמְלִיקִי, בְּעֶרְמָתוֹ, הֵסֵךְ אֵלָיו אֲנָשִׁים
רַבִּים; וּבְרַבּוּת מְסַפָּרָם גָּדַל כְּחֹם מְאֹד עַד
כִּי הִתְאַמְּצוּ לְהַמְלִיךְ אֶת עַמְלִיקִי עַל הָעָם.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַטֵּיִל אִימָה עַל אֲנָשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה וְגַם
עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִמְשְׁכוּ אַחֵר מִדּוּחֵי עַמְלִיקִי;
יָעֵן אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ כִּי עַל פִּי הַחֹק, דְּעַת הָעָם
הִיא הַקּוֹבֵעַת בְּדִבְרֵים כָּאלֵהָ.
- עַל כֵּן, אֵלּוּ יָכַל עַמְלִיקִי לְהַשִּׁיג אֶת תְּמִיכַת
הָעָם, הָיָה, בְּרָשָׁעָתוֹ, מוֹנֵעַ מֵהֶם אֶת
זְכוּתֵיהֶם וְאֶת יִתְרוֹנָם בְּכְנִסְיָה; כִּי כְּוִנָּתוֹ
הָיְתָה לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- אִזּוֹ הִתְאַסְּפוּ הָעָם יַחְדָּו בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, כָּל אִישׁ
כְּדַעְתּוֹ, בְּעַד עַמְלִיקִי אוֹ נֶגְדּוֹ, וְהִתּוֹכַחוּ זֶה עִם
זֶה, וְרַבּוּ מְרִיבוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת.
- וְכָךְ הֵם נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחְדָּו לְהַשְׁמִיעַ קוֹלָם בְּדִבְרָ
הַזֶּה, וְהִבִּיאוּ אֶת דִּבְרָם לִפְנֵי הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וְהִנֵּה יָצָא קוֹל הָעָם עַל עַמְלִיקִי, וְהוּא לֹא
הִמְלִיךְ עַל הָעָם.
- וְהַדְּבָר הַסֵּב שְׂמֵחָה רַבָּה בְּלִב מִתְנַגְּדָיו;
אֲךָ עַמְלִיקִי שָׁסָה אֶת תּוֹמְכָיו בְּאַלְהָ אֲשֶׁר
לֹא חָפְצוּ בוֹ.
- אִזּוֹ הֵם נֶאֱסָפוּ וְקִדְּשׁוּ אֶת עַמְלִיקִי לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וּבְהִמְלִיךְ עַמְלִיקִי עֲלֵיהֶם הוּא צִוָּם לְצִיאת
וּלְהִלָּחֵם בְּאַחֵיהֶם; וְזֹאת עָשָׂה לְמַעַן הַכְּנִיעַ
אוֹתָם תַּחְתָּיו.

- 11 ואנשי עמלקי נודעו בשם עמלקי ונקראו עמלקיים. וחולתם נקראו בשם נפיים, או עם אלהים.
- 12 Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.
- 13 And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.
- 14 And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.
- 15 And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.
- 16 Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.
- 17 And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.
- 18 Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.
- 20 And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of
- והנה עם הנפיים שתו לבם לכונות העמלקיים והתכוננו לפגשם, והם התחמשו בחרבות ובפגיונות, בקשתות ובחצאים, באבנים ובקלעים ובכל כלי נשק למיניהם.
- כך הם נערכו לפגש את העמלקיים בבואם. והם שמו להם מפקדים נמוכים וגבוהים ועליונים כמספרם.
- ועמלקי חמש את אנשיו בכל מיני כלי מלחמה, ואף מנה מושלים ומנהיגים על אנשיו להנהיגם אלי קרב על אחיהם.
- והעמלקיים עלו על הר אמניהו, אשר ממזרח נהר צידון, ההולך על יד ארץ זרעהמלה, ושם הם החלו ללחם בנפיים.
- ועלמא, בהיותו השופט העליון ומושל עם נפי, עלה עם עמו, עם מפקדיו הנמוכים והגבוהים, בראש חילותיו, להלחם בעמלקיים.
- והנפיים החלו להרג בעמלקיים על ההר אשר ממזרח לצידון. והעמלקיים השיבו מלחמה ברב עצמה ורבים מן הנפיים נפלו חללים לפני העמלקיים.
- אף יהוה אמן את יד הנפיים, והם הרגו בעמלקיים הרג רב, עד כי החלו לנוס מפניהם.
- והנפיים רדפו אחר העמלקיים כל היום ההוא, והרגו בהם הרג רב, עד כי מספר הרוגי העמלקיים היה שנים עשר אלף וחמש מאות ושלושים ושתים נפש. ומספר חללי הנפיים היה ששת אלפים וחמש מאות וששים ושתים נפש.
- והיה כאשר נלאה עלמא מרדף אחר העמלקיים, הוא צוה את עמו לנטות את

אֶהְלִיחֶם בְּעֶמְקַ גִּדְעוֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא עַל שֵׁם
גִּדְעוֹן, הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר נִהְרַג בְּיַד נְחוֹר. בְּעֶמְקַ
הַהוּא נָטוּ הַנְּפִיִּים אֶת אֶהְלִיחֶם לַלַּיְלָה.

Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

וְעַלְמָא שְׁלַח מְרַגְלִים לַעֲקֹב אַחֵר שְׂאֲרִית
הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים, לְדַעַת אֶת תַּכְנִיּוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת
תַּחְבּוּלוֹתֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן הִגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְיִשְׁמְרוּ
אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו מִהִשָּׁמָד.

21 And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

וְאֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שְׁלָחם לַפֶּקֶחַ
עֵין עַל מַחֲנֵה הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים: זֶרַם, אַמְנוֹר, מַנְטִי
וְלִמְהֵר; אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִלְכוּ עִם אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם
לְרַגֵּל אַחֵר מַחֲנֵה הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים.

22 Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

וְהָיָה כִּי לַמָּחָרָת הֵם שָׁבוּ בְּרַב מִהִירוֹת
אֶל מַחֲנֵה הַנְּפִיִּים, כִּי הָיוּ בְּתַדְהֻמָּה וּבְאִימָה
רַבָּה, וְאָמְרוּ:

23 And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

הִנֵּה בְּעַקְבֵּנוּ אַחֵר חֵיל הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים מִה גְּדֹלָה
הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹתֵנוּ בְּרֹאוֹתֵנוּ צָבָא לְמִנּוֹן גְּדוֹל בְּאַרְצֵי
מִינוֹן, מִמַּעַל לְאַרְצֵי זֶרַחְמֶלָה, עַל דֶּרֶךְ אֲרָץ
נֶפִי. וְהִנֵּה גַם הָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים הַתַּחֲבָרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם.

24 Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

הִנֵּה הֵם עוֹלִים עַל אַחֵינוּ בְּאַרְצֵי הַהִיא
וְאַחֵינוּ נָסִים מִפְּנֵיהֶם עִם עֲדְרֵיהֶם, נְשֵׁיהֶם
וְיִלְדֵיהֶם אֶל עִירֵנוּ; וְאֵם לֹא נִמְהָר יִשִּׁימוּ הֵם
אֶת יָדָם עַל עִירֵנוּ וְיִהְרֹגוּ אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ וְאֶת
נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶת יִלְדֵינוּ.

25 And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

אִזְ אֶסְפּוּ בְּנֵי עַם נֶפִי אֶת אֶהְלִיחֶם וְנָסְעוּ
מִעֶמְקַ גִּדְעוֹן אֶל עִירָם, הָעִיר זֶרַחְמֶלָה.

26 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

וְהָיָה כְּעֹבְרָם אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְהִנֵּה הַלְּמָנִים
וְהָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים עוֹלִים עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַשְׁמִידָם,
וּמִסְפָּרָם רַב כְּחוֹל הַיָּם.

27 And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

אֲךָ יְדִי יְהוָה חֲזָקָה אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
הִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֵלָיו בְּעֵז כִּי יַצִּילֵם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
וְיְהוָה שָׁמַע אֶת שׁוֹעֲתָם וְחֻזָּקָם, וְהִלְמִינִם
וְהָעַמְּלִיקִיִּים נָפְלוּ לַפְּנֵיהֶם.

28 Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

וְעַלְמָא נִלְחַם בְּעַמְּלִיקִי פָּנִים אֶל
פָּנִים בְּחֶרֶב; וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ זֶה בְּזֶה בְּעֵז.

29 And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

עֲלֵמָא ב:ל-ג:א

- וְעֵלְמָא, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר אֲמִינָה רַבָּה הִפְעִילָה אוֹתוֹ, קָרָא לֵאמֹר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה, רַחֵם נָא וְחֹסֶה עַל חַיִּי, לְמַעַן אֶהְיֶה כְּלִי שְׁרֵת בְּיָדְךָ לְהַצִּיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְנַצֵּרוֹ.
- וּכְכֹלוֹת עֲלֵמָא לֹמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעַמְלִיקִי וְהִתְחַזַּק וְהָרַג אֶת עַמְלִיקִי בַחֶרֶב.
- וְהוּא אַף נִלָּחֵם בְּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים, אִךְ מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים נִסּוּג מִלְפָּנָיו עֲלֵמָא וְשָׁלַח אֶת שׁוּמְרָיו לְהִלָּחֵם בּוֹ.
- וְעֵלְמָא וְשׁוּמְרָיו נִלָּחְמוּ בְּשׁוּמְרֵי מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר הוּא הָרַג בָּהֶם וְגָרְשָׁם.
- כֹּה פָּנָה אֶת הַשָּׂטֶח, אַכֵּן, אֶת הַשְּׂפָה הַמַּעֲרִבִית אֲשֶׁר לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן, בְּהַשְׁלִיכוֹ אֶת גּוֹיֹת הַלְּמָנִים הַהוּגִים אֶל מִי צִידוֹן; וּבִזְזָת הַתַּפְּנָה מְקוֹם לְאִנְשָׁיו לְעֹבֵר אֶת הַנָּהָר וּלְהִלָּחֵם בְּלְמָנִים וּבְעַמְלִיקִים בְּגִדַת נֹהַר צִידוֹן הַמַּעֲרִבִית.
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּל הַנִּפְתִּיִם אֶת נֹהַר צִידוֹן, הִחֲלוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְהַעַמְלִיקִים לָנוּס מִפְּנֵיהֶם, אַף כִּי רַב מִסְפָּרָם עַד כִּי לֹא יִמְנּוּ.
- וְהֵם נָסוּ מִפְּנֵי הַנִּפְתִּיִם אֶל הַיַּעַר, אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּרַע מִמַּעַרְבָּה וְצִפּוֹנָה, מִעַבֵּר לְגִבּוֹלוֹת אֶרֶץ. וְהַנִּפְתִּיִם רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם בְּרַב כֹּחַם וְהָרְגוּם.
- אַכֵּן, בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר פָּנוּ הֵם נִתְקְלוּ בְּרֹדְפֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָרְגוּ בָּהֶם וְגָרְשׁוּם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפְזוּ בַּמַּעַרְב וּבַצִּפּוֹן, וְהִגִּיעוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ חֶרְמוֹנָאִי; זֶה הָיָה חֶלֶק הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר שְׂרָץ חַיּוֹת פָּרָא מִשְׁחָרוֹת לְטָרֵף.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים מֵהֶם מָתוּ בַּיַּעַר מִפְּצַעֵיהֶם, וְהָיוּ טָרֵף לַחַיּוֹת הָהֵן, וְגַם דְּיוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם עָטוּ עֲלֵיהֶם; וְעֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם נִמְצְאוּ שָׁם וְנִעְרְמוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 30 And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.
- 31 Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.
- 32 And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.
- 33 But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.
- 34 And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.
- 36 And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.
- 37 Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.
- 38 And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

- וְהַנִּפְתִּיִם אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב קָבְרוּ אֶת הַרוּגֵי הַמִּלְחָמָה, וְהֵם לֹא סָפְרוּ אֶת הַחֲלָלִים, כִּי רַב
- 1 And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now

מֵאֲד מִסְפָּרָם. וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר קָבְרוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם,
שָׁבוּ כָּלם אֶל אֲדֻמּוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם, אֶל
נְשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶל יִלְדֵיהֶם.

the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

וְנָשִׁים וְיִלְדִים רַבִּים נֶהָרְגוּ בַחֶרֶב, וְכֹן רַבִּים
מִצֹּאנָם וּבִקְרָם; גַּם שְׂדוֹת דָּגָן רַבִּים אָבְדוּ כִּי
נִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵי הַצָּבָאוֹת.

2 Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

וְכָל הַלְּמָנִים וְהָעֲמֻלְקִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נֶהָרְגוּ עַל
שֹׁפֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן הִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל מִי צִידוֹן; הִנֵּה
עֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם שְׂקוּעוֹת בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם וְהֵן רַבּוֹת.

3 And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

וְהָעֲמֻלְקִיִּים נִכְרוּ מִן הַנִּפְיִים בְּתוֹ אָדָם אֲשֶׁר
נָתְנוּ עַל מִצְחָם, כְּמִשְׁפֹּט הַלְּמָנִים; אֲךָ הֵם לֹא
גִזְּזוּ כְּמוֹתָם אֶת שְׂעָרָם רִאשִׁים.

4 And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

וְהַלְּמָנִים הָיוּ גִזְּזֵי רֹאשׁ וְהָלְכוּ עִרְמִים, וְזֹלַת
עוֹר אֲשֶׁר חָגְרוּ עַל מְתֵינֵיהֶם, וְנִשְׁקָם אֲשֶׁר
חָגְרוּ עַל גּוֹפָם וְקִשְׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְחֻצֵיהֶם וְאַבְנֵי
קֶלַע וּמִקְלָעִים וְיֵתֶר נִשְׁקָם.

5 Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

וְהַלְּמָנִים הָיוּ כְּהֵי עוֹר, עַל כִּי הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִתְּנוּ
עַל אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם קֶלְלָה, מִפְּנֵי
פְּשָׁעָם וּמִרְדָּם בְּאַחֵיהֶם, בְּנָפִי, יַעֲקֹב, יוֹסֵף
וְשָׁם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים צַדִּיקִים וְקַדוֹשִׁים.

6 And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

וְאַחֵיהֶם בִּקְשׁוּ לְהֶאֱבִידָם; עַל כֵּן קֶלְלוּ, וַיְהִי
אֱלֹהִים הַתְּוָה עֲלֵיהֶם תּוֹ, עַל לָמָן וְלִמְוֶאל וְעַל
בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֲאֵל וְעַל נְשׂוֹת בֵּית יִשְׁמַעֲאֵל.

7 And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

וְהַדְּבָר נַעֲשֶׂה לְמַעַן יִבְדֹּל זֶרַע מִזֶּרַע אֲחֵיהֶם,
כִּי בָזְאוּ יִשְׁמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת עַמּוֹ, לְבָל
יִתְבּוֹלְלוּ בְּזוֹלָתָם, וּלְבָל יֶאֱמִינוּ בְּמִסּוּרוֹת
בְּלֹתֵי נְכוֹנוֹת אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרִיתָן כָּלִיוֹן.

8 And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָרַב אֶת זֶרְעוֹ בְּזֶרַע הַלְּמָנִים הִבִּיא
אֶת הַקֶּלְלָה הַזֹּאת עַל זֶרְעוֹ.

9 And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

עַל כֵּן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר סָר בְּרִצּוֹנוֹ אֶל דְּרָכֵי הַלְּמָנִים
נִקְרָא עַל שְׁמָם, וְתוֹ הַתְּוָה עָלָיו.

10 Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הֶאֱמִין בְּמִסְכַּרְתְּ הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי
הֶאֱמִין בְּכַתְּבִים אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ מֵאַרְצֵי יְרוּשָׁלַם,

11 And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out

וְגַם בְּמִסְכֵּרֵת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר נִכְוְנָה הִיא,
וְאֲשֶׁר הָאָמִין בְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּשְׁמָרוּ, נִקְרְאוּ
נֶפְתִּיִים, אוֹ עִם נֶפִי, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה.

of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

כִּי אֱלֹהֵי הֵם אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְרוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרֹנוֹת,
אֲשֶׁר אָמַת הֵם, עַל אִידוֹת עִמָּם וְכֵן עַל
אִידוֹת עִם הַלְּמָנִיתִים.

12 And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

וְעַתָּה נָשׁוּב אֶל הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים, כִּי גַם עֲלֵיהֶם
הִתְּוָה תָּו, אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְּוָהוּ עַל עֲצָמָם, תָּו
אָדָם עַל מִצְחָם.

13 Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

כֹּךְ קָם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֱלֹהֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
אָמַר אֶל נֶפִי: הִנֵּה אֶת הַלְּמָנִיתִים קָלַלְתִּי וְתוֹ
אֲתוֹהָ עֲלֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יִבְדְּלוּ, הֵם וְזֶרְעָם, מִמָּךְ
וּמִזֶּרְעָךְ, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם, זֹלַת אִם יִשׁוּבוּ
מִרְשָׁעָתָם וַיִּפְּנוּ אֵלַי בְּעִבּוֹר אַרְחָם עֲלֵיהֶם.

14 Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

וְעוֹד אָמַר: תָּו אֲתוֹהָ עַל כָּל הַמַּעֲרָב אֶת
זֶרְעוֹ בְּאַחִיָּה, בְּעִבּוֹר יְהוֹי אַרְוִירִים אִף הֵם.

15 And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

וְאָמַר: תָּו אֲתוֹהָ עַל כָּל הַנִּלְחָם בָּךְ וּבִזְרָעָךְ.

16 And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

וְשׁוּב, אָנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִפְרֹד מִמָּךְ, לֹא
יִקְרָא עוֹד זֶרְעָךְ; וְאִנִּי אֲבָרַךְ אוֹתָךְ וְאֶת כָּל
אֲשֶׁר יִקְרָא זֶרְעָךְ, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם; אֵלֶּה
דְּבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה לְנֶפִי וּלְזֶרְעוֹ.

17 And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי בְּהִתּוֹוֹתָם אֶת
מִצְחָם, אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הֵם מְקַיְמִים; בְּכָל
זֹאת, בְּגִלּוֹי הֵם מְרִדּוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן רָאוּ
הֵיכָּה כִּי תַחּוֹל הַקָּלָלָה עֲלֵיהֶם.

18 Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

וְהִנֵּה רְצוּנִי הוּא כִּי תִרְאוּ כִּי עַל עֲצָמָם הֵם
הִבִּיאוּ אֶת הַקָּלָלָה; וְכֵן, כָּל אִישׁ מְקַלֵּל, הוּא
הַחוּרֵץ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ.

19 Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

וְהָיָה בְּטָרֶם יַעֲבְרוּ יָמִים רַבִּים מִיּוֹם קָרַב
הַלְּמָנִיתִים וְהָעַמְלִיקִיִּים בְּאַרְצָן זֶרַחְמִלָּה, וְהִנֵּה,
חֵיל לְמָנִיתִים נֹסֵף עָלָה עַל עִם נֶפִי בְּמָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר
פָּגַשׁ הַצָּבָא הָרִאשׁוֹן אֶת הָעַמְלִיקִיִּים.

20 Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

אִזּוֹ נִשְׁלַח צָבָא לְגָרְשָׁם מִן הָאָרֶץ.

21 And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

- 22 Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;
וְעֲלָמָא, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה פְּצוּעַ, לֹא יָצָא הַפֶּעַם לְהִלָּחֵם בַּלְמָנִיטִּים;
- 23 But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.
אֲדָּהּ הוּא שָׁלַח צָבָא רַב לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם; וְהֵם עָלוּ לְקָרֵב וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַלְמָנִיטִּים, וְאֵת הַנּוֹתָרִים גָּרְשׁוּ מֵעֵבֶר לְגְבוּלוֹת אֶרְצָם.
- 24 And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.
וְהֵם שָׁבוּ וַהֲחֵלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בָּאֶרֶץ, בְּאֵין אוֹיֵב מְטָרִידִם זְמַן מָה.
- 25 Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְלָחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת, הַחֲלוּ וְכָלוּ בִּשְׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 26 And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.
וּבְתוֹךְ שָׁנָה אַחַת נִשְׁלָחוּ לְעוֹלָם הַנֶּצַחִי אֲלָפִים וְרַבּוֹת נַפְשׁ, לְמַעַן יִקְצְרוּ שְׂכָרָם כַּפְּעֵלָם, אִם טוֹב וְאִם רָע; שְׂכָר אֲשֶׁר נָצַחִי, אוֹ יְסוּרֵי עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי הָרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר לָהּ נָטוּ לְהִשְׁמַע, אִם טוֹב וְאִם רָע.
- 27 For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus ended the fifth year of the reign of the judges.
כִּי כָּל אָדָם מְקַבֵּל אֶת שְׂכָרוֹ מִמֶּנּוּ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ יֵטֶה לְהִשְׁמַע. וְזֹאת עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה; עַל כֵּן תִּהְיֶה זֹאת עַל פִּי הָאֱמֻנָה. כֹּךְ כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַחֲמִישִׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

ד

4

- 1 Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;
וּבִשְׁנָה הַשִּׁשִּׁית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים עַל עַם נְפִי לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל מְרִיבָה וּמְלָחָמָה בָּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה.
- 2 But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.
אֲדָּהּ גְּדוּל הָיָה שְׂכָר הָעָם עַל אֲבִדוֹן אֲחֵיהֶם, וְעַל אֲבִדוֹן צֹאנָם וּבְקָרָם וְעַל הַשְׁחָתַת שְׂדוֹת דִּגְנָם, אֲשֶׁר נִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵי הַלְמָנִיטִּים וְאֲבִדוּ.
- 3 And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.
כֹּה רַבָּה הָיְתָה מַצּוֹקָתָם, עַד כִּי אֲבָלָה כָּל נַפְשׁ; וְהֵם הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי אֱלֹהִים גִּזַּר מִשְׁפָּטוֹ עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעֻתָם וְתוֹעֲבוּתֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְזָכֹר אֶת חוּבָתָם.
- 4 And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.
וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת הַכְּנֶסֶיָּה בְּיָתֵר שְׂאֵת; רַבִּים הִטְבְּלוּ בְּמֵי צִידוֹן וַהֲתַחֲבְרוּ אֶל כְּנֶסֶת אֱלֹהִים. אֲכֹן, הֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּיַד עֲלָמָא אֲשֶׁר אָבִיו עֲלָמָא קִדְּשׁוּ לָכֶּהן גְּדוּל לְאֻנְשֵׁי הַכְּנֶסֶיָּה.

ובשנה השביעית לשלטון השופטים, התחברו לכנסית אלהים והטבלו בשלש אֶלְפִים וחמש מאות נפש. כה כִּלְתָה השנה השביעית לשלטון השופטים על עם נְפִי. וְכָל הַעֵת הָיָא לָהֶם שָׁלוֹם.

5 And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

ובשנה השמינית לשלטון השופטים, החלו אנשי הכנסיה להתנשא מפני עשרם העצום, משים הטוב וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֹׁר, מפני רב צאנם ובקָרם, וְהֶבֶם וְכֶסֶףם וְכָל חֲפָצֵי יָקָר אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לָהֶם בְּמַלְאכָתָם. ומפני כל הדברים האלה הם התנשאו בגאות עיניהם והחלו ללבוש בגדי יְקָרוֹת מְאֹד.

6 And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

והדבר הזה יסר את עלמא עד מאד וגם את רבים מן האנשים אשר הוא קדשם להיות מורים וכהנים וזקנים על הכנסיה. אכן, רבים מהם נעצבו מאד לראות את הרשעה אשר קמה בקרב אנשיהם.

7 Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

כי ראו ברב יגון והביטו כי אנשי הכנסיה החלו להתנשא בגאות עיניהם ולשית לבם לעשר ולהבלי העולם וללעג איש לרעהו, ולרדף את כל אשר לא האמין כחפצם וכרצונם.

8 For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

הנה כי כן, בשנה השמינית לשלטון השופטים פָּרְצוּ מריבות גדולות בין אנשי הכנסיה; והיו ביניהם קנאה ומדון ודון, רדיפות וגאווה אשר עלתה על גאות אלה אשר הם לא חבְּרִי כְּנִסִּית אֱלֹהִים.

9 And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

ובזאת כִּלְתָה השנה השמינית לשלטון השופטים; וְרָשַׁעַת הכנסיה היתה אֲכֹן נֶגֶד גדולה לאלה אשר הם לא חבְּרִים בָּהּ. כֹּךְ החלה הכנסיה להפשל בהתקדמותה.

10 And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

ובראשית השנה התשיעית ראה עלמא את רשעת הכנסיה, ואף ראה כי דגמת הכנסיה שמשה מופת לחסרי האמונה, להובילם מעוון אל פֶּשַׁע, וכך הביאה את העם עדי אֲבִדוֹן.

11 And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

אכן, הוא ראה כי רב האִישִׁיּוֹן בין האנשים; יש המתנשאים בגאווה, והם בזים לזולתם ופונים עֵרֶף לנצרך ולעירם, לרעב ולצמא, לחולה ולסובל.

12 Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

- 13 Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;
- עַל זֹאת רַבּוֹ הַמְקוֹנְנִים בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; וְהָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם, בְּהוֹשִׁיעַם עֲזָרָה לְאִשְׁרֵי נִצְרָכוֹ לְעֲזָרָתָם, בְּהַתְחַלֵּקֵם עִם הָעֲנִי וְהָאֲבִיּוֹן בְּרִכּוּשָׁם, בְּכֻלָּלָם אֶת הָרָעִב וּבְנִשְׂאָם כָּל מִיָּנִי תִלְאַה, לְמַעַן הַמְּשִׁיחַ, הָעֵתִיד לָבוֹא עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.
- 14 Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.
- הֵם צָפוּ לַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְכָךְ שָׁמְרוּ עַל מַחֲלַת חֲטָאֵיהֶם; וְהֵם מְלֵאִים שְׂמֵחָה רַבָּה, מִפְּנֵי תַחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי רְצוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְכֹחוֹ וְיִשׁוּעָתוֹ מִכַּבְּלֵי הַמָּוֶת.
- 15 And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת עֲלֵמָא אֶת עֲנוּת נַאֲמָנֵי אֱלֹהִים הָעֲנֻנִים וְאֶת הִרְדִּיפוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִתְּבוּ עֲלֵיהֶם מִיַּד יִתְרֵי עַמּוֹ, וּבְרֹאוֹתָו אֶת כָּל הָאֵי־שְׁוִיוֹן אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם, נִפְלָה עָלָיו עֲצוּבוֹת גְּדוֹלָה. וְאוֹלָם לֹא עֲזָבָה אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ יְהוָה.
- 16 And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.
- אִזּוּ בָחַר עֲלֵמָא אִישׁ חָכָם, אֶחָד מִזִּקְנֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְנָתַן לוֹ, עַל דְּעַת הָעָם, סְמֻכוֹת לְחֻקֵּי חֻקִּים עַל פִּי הַחֻקִּים אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, וּלְהַפְעִילָם כְּפִי רְשָׁעַת הָאֲנָשִׁים וּפְשָׁעֵיהֶם.
- 17 Now this man's name was Nephihah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.
- וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ נִפְיָהָ, וְהוּא מְנָה לְשׁוֹפֵט עָלֵיוֹ; וְהוּא יָשָׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת הָעָם וּלְמַשֵּׁל עָלָיו.
- 18 Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephihah.
- וְעֲלֵמָא לֹא מָסַר לוֹ אֶת מִשְׁרַת הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל בְּכְנִסְיָהּ, כִּי שָׁמַר אוֹתָהּ לְעַצְמוֹ; אֲךָ אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט הוּא מָסַר לְנִפְיָהָ.
- 19 And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.
- וְזֹאת עָשָׂה לְמַעַן יֻכַּל לָלֶכֶת בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ, בְּתוֹךְ עַם נְפִי, וְיֻכַּל לְהִטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וְיַעְזְרוֹרֵם לְזִכֹּר אֶת חוּבָתָם, וּלְמַעַן הִשְׁפִּיל, בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים, אֶת כָּל הַגָּאוּה וְהַתְרַמִּיט וְאֶת כָּל הַמְרִיבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ, כִּי לֹא רָאָה כָּל דֶּרֶךְ לְהַחְזִירָם לְמוֹטָב, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִכְרִיעַם בְּעֵדוֹת בְּרוּרָה לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- 20 And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.
- וְכָךְ, בְּרֹאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הַתְּשִׁיעִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, מָסַר עֲלֵמָא אֶת מוֹשְׁבוֹ בְּכִסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְנִפְיָהָ וְהִתְמַסֵּר כָּלִיל לְכִהּנָה הָרֹאשִׁית אֲשֶׁר לְפִי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, לְעֵדוֹת עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוֹת וְהַנְּבוּאָה.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלָמָא, הִכְהִין הָרֹאשִׁי לְפִי סֵדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ
אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל הָעָם הַיּוֹשְׁבִים
בְּעָרֵיהֶם וּבְכִפְרֵיהֶם בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ. (בְּעֶרְךָ 83
לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה) נִכְלַל בְּפֶרֶק ה'.

The words which Alma, the high priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land. (About 83 B.C.) Comprising chapter 5.

ה

5

- 1 וְעַלְמָא הִחֵל לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם,
רֹאשִׁית בָּאָרֶץ זְרַחֶמְלָה, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן בְּכָל
רַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ.
- 2 וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה,
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעִיר זְרַחֶמְלָה, עַל פִּי כְּתָב
זְכוֹנוֹתָיו, לֵאמֹר:
- 3 אֲנִי עֲלָמָא, אֲשֶׁר קִדְשִׁיתִי בְיַדִּי אָבִי, עֲלָמָא,
לְהִיּוֹת הִכְהִין הַגְּדוֹל בְּכִנְסִית אֱלֹהִים. וְלוֹ הָיוּ
כַּח וְתִקְוָה מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר
לָכֶם כִּי הוּא הִחֵל לְכוֹנֵן כְּנִסְיָה בָּאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
בְּגִבּוֹלוֹת נָפִי, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאָה אָרֶץ מֹרְמוֹן;
וְהוּא הִטְבִּיל אֶת אָחָיו בְּמֵי מֹרְמוֹן.
- 4 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵם נִצְלוּ מִיַּד אַנְשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ
נֹחַ בְּרַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים וּבְכֹחוֹ.
- 5 וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן, הֵם הִשְׁתַּעֲבְדוּ בְיַדִּי הַלָּמָנִים
בְּעִירָוֹת; אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הֵם הָיוּ שְׁבוּיִים
וַיְהִי הוֹצִיאֵם מִשְׁעָבֹד בְּכַח דְּבָרֹ. וְאַנְחֵנוּ
הוֹבֵאֵנוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְגַם פֹּה הִחֲלוֹנוּ
לִיסֵד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל רַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ.
- 6 וְעַתָּה, אָחִי, חֲבָרִי הַכְּנִסְיָה, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם:
הֲאֵם דִּבְקַתְּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכְרֵי שְׁעָבֹד אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם?
הַדְּבַקְתֶּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכְרֵי רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה וְאֶרְךְ אֲפִיו
לָהֶם? נוֹסֶף עַל כֵּן, הַדְּבַקְתֶּם דִּיכֶם בְּזִכְרֵי
הַצִּילוֹ אֶת נַפְשָׁם מִשַּׁחַת?
- 7 בְּהוֹלֵה הוּא הִמְרִי אֶת לְבָבָם וְהִעִירָם מִתַּרְדֵּמָה
עֲמֻקָּה, וְהֵם הִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְאֱלֹהִים. הִנֵּה, בְּתוֹךְ
אֲפֹלָה הָיוּ, אַךְ דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים נִצְחִי הָאֵיר אֶת
נַפְשָׁם; אָכֵן, הֵם הָיוּ מְקֻפָּסִים מִסִּרְתוֹת מָוֶת,
חֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל סָבוּם וְאַבְדוֹן עוֹלָם
אָרַב לְפָתְחָם.
- 8 וְהִנֵּה אֲשַׁאלְכֶם, אָחִי: הֲאָבֹד אָבְדוּ? הִנְנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא, לֹא אָבְדוּ.
- 1 Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.
- 2 And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:
- 3 I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.
- 4 And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.
- 5 And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.
- 6 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?
- 7 Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.
- 8 And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

עלמא ה:ט-יח

- ועוד אֲשָׁאֵל: הִנָּתְקוּ מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְנִפְתָּחוּ חֲרָצְבוֹת שְׂאוֹל אֲשֶׁר סְבֹוּם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: כֵּן! הֵן נִפְתָּחוּ, וְנִפְשָׁם רָחְבָּה וּלְשׁוֹנָם רִנְּנָה עַל אֲהָבָה פֹּדָה. וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי נִשְׁעוּ.
- 9 And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשָׁאֵלְכֶם: מֵהֶם תִּנָּאִי יִשׁוּעַתֶּם? עַל מֵה סָמְכוּ אֶת תִּקְוַתְכֶם לִישׁוּעָה? מִדּוּעַ הִתְרוּ מִמוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת וְאֵף מִחֲרָצְבוֹת שְׂאוֹל?
- 10 And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?
- הִנֵּה אוֹכַל לְהַגִּידְכֶם: הָאֵם לֹא הָאֲמִין עַלְמָא אָבִי בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי אַבְינָדִי? הָאֵם לֹא הָיָה אַבְינָדִי נְבִיא קְדוֹשׁ? הָאֵם לֹא דִבֵּר אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים? הָאֵם עַלְמָא אָבִי לֹא הָאֲמִין בַּדְּבָרוֹ?
- 11 Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the word of God, and my father Alma believe it?
- וְכַפִּי אֲמוּנָתוֹ חָלָה בְּלִבּוֹ תְּמוּרָה עָזָה. הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָּל זֹאת אֱמֶת.
- 12 And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא הִסִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְאַבּוֹתֵיכֶם, וְתְּמוּרָה עָזָה חָלָה גַּם בְּלִבָּם, וְהֵם נִכְנָעוּ בַּעֲנָוָה וְשָׂמוּ אֶת מִבְטָחָם בְּאֱלֹהֵי אֱמֶת חַי. אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁמְרוּ לוֹ אֲמוּנָה עַד הַקֵּץ; עַל כֵּן נִשְׁעוּ.
- 13 And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי בְּכִנְסִיָּה, אֲשָׁאֵלְכֶם: הִנּוּלְדִיתֶם בְּרוּחַ מַאֲלֵהִים? הָאֵם קִבַּלְתֶּם אֶת דְּמוּתוֹ בְּתֹאֵר פְּנִיכֶם? הָאֵם רָאִיתֶם תְּמוּרָה עָזָה זֹאת בְּלִבְכֶם?
- 14 And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?
- הֵישׁ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אֲמוּנָה בְּגִאֲלָה אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת בּוֹרְאֵכֶם? הִתִּישִׁירוּ מִבְטָחְכֶם בְּאֲמוּנָה, וְתִחְזוּ בְּגוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּרָה מִתְּעֵלָה בְּאַלְמוּנוֹת, וְהַבְלִיָּה מִתְּעֵלָה בְּבִלְתִּי בְלִיָּה, לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַשְׁפֵּט כְּפִי הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּגוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּרָה?
- 15 Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הִתְדַּמּוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי בַיּוֹם הַהוּא תִשְׁמַעְנָה אֲזִנֵּיכֶם אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: בּוֹאוּ נָא אֵלַי, הַבְּרוּכִים, כִּי הִנֵּה מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם מַעֲשֵׂי צֶדֶק הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ?
- 16 I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?
- אוֹ, הִתְדַּמּוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי תוֹכְלוּ בַיּוֹם הַהוּא לִכְזֹּב לִיהוָה בְּאִמְרָכֶם: יְהוָה, מַעֲשֵׂינוּ מַעֲשֵׂי צֶדֶק הָיוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְהוּא יוֹשִׁיעֲכֶם?
- 17 Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?
- אוֹ, בְּלִשׁוֹן אַחֵר, הִתְדַּמּוּ בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי תוֹבֵאוּ לִפְנֵי פֶס מִשְׁפֵּט אֱלֹהִים וְנִפְשְׁכֶם מִלֵּאָה אֲשֶׁם וְחִרְטָה, בְּזִכְרְכֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁמְכֶם, אָכֵן,
- 18 Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wicked-

- בְּזָכְרְכֶם אֶת כָּל רִשְׁעֵיכֶם כְּתִמָּה, זְכָרוֹן עַל
כִּי מִרְדָּתֶם בְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים?
- 19 I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הֲתוּכְלוּ לְהִבִּיט בְּיוֹם הַהוּא
אֶל אֱלֹהִים בְּלֵב טָהוֹר וּבְנִקְיוֹן כַּפַּיִם? אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הֲתוּכְלוּ לְהִבִּיט מֵעֵלָה וּדְמוּת
אֱלֹהִים חֲקוּקָה בְּתֵאֵר פָּנֵיכֶם?
- 20 I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: הֲתִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּעַת
אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַסְרְתֶם לְהַכְנֹעַ לְשָׂטָן?
- 21 I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, בְּיוֹם הַהוּא תֵדְעוּ כִּי אֵין
לָכֶם יְשׁוּעָה; כִּי לֹא יוֹשַׁע אִישׁ בְּלֹא רִחְצוֹ
בַּגָּדָיו וְהַלְבִּינוֹ; אָכֵן, שׁוּמָה עַל בַּגְדָּיו כִּי
יִטְהַרוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נִקְיִים יִהְיוּ מִכָּל כֶּתֶם,
עַל יְדֵי דָם מִי שְׁאֲבוּתֵינוּ דָּבְרוּ עָלָיו כִּי
יָבוֹא לְגָאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ מִחַטָּאתָם.
- 22 And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם: אֵיכָה תִרְגִּישׁוּ,
אִישׁ-אִישׁ מִכֶּם, אִם תַּעֲמִדוּ לִפְנֵי כֵס
מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים, וּבְגְדֵיכֶם מְכֻתְמִים בְּדָם
וְכָל מִינֵי טִנְפָה? הִנֵּה, מָה יַעֲיִדוּ עָלֵיכֶם
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 23 Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?
- הֲלֹא יַעֲיִדוּ כִּי מְרַצְחִים הֵנֶכֶם וְכִי אָכֵן
אֲשַׁמְתֶּם בְּכָל מִינֵי רִשְׁעָה?
- 24 Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?
- רְאוּ, אַחֵי, הֲתִחְשְׁבוּ כִּי לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר כָּזָה
יִהְיֶה מוֹשֵׁב בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים, עִם אַבְרָהָם,
עִם יִצְחָק וְעִם יַעֲקֹב וְכֵן עִם כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים
הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּגְדֵיהֶם נִקְיִים, לְלֹא רָבָב,
טְהוֹרִים וְצַהֲרִים?
- 25 I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.
- אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! רַק בְּתִתְּכֶם אֶת בּוֹרְאָנוּ
כְּשֶׁקֶרן מֵאֲזוּ וּמַעֲוֹלָם, אוֹ כִּי תִחְשְׁבוּוֹהוּ שֶׁקֶרן
מֵאֲזוּ וּמַעֲוֹלָם, לֹא תוּכְלוּ לַחֲשֹׁב כִּי לְכֻמוֹת
אֱלֹהִים יֵשׁ מוֹשֵׁב בְּמַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם; וְהֵם אָכֵן
יִדְחוּ כִּי בְנֵי מַלְכוּת הַשָּׂטָן הֵם.
- 26 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אִם אָכֵן רָאִיתֶם
תְּמוּרַת לֵב, וְחָפֵץ לְבָבְכֶם לְשִׁיר אֶת שִׁיר הָאֱהָבָה
הַפִּזְדָּה, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם, הֲתוּכְלוּ לַחוֹשׁ כֹּךָ עַתָּה?
- 27 Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and
- הֲאִם הִתְהַלַּכְתֶּם נִשְׁמְרִים מִפְּשַׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים?
הֲתוּכְלוּ לומר לְבַבְכֶם, אֵלּוּ נִקְרַאתֶם עַתָּה
לְמוֹת, כִּי הִיִּיתֶם נִכְנָעִים דִּיקָם? וְכִי בְּגְדֵיכֶם

made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

28 Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

29 Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

30 And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

31 Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

32 Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

33 Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

34 Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

35 Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

36 For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

37 O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

- 38 Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.
- הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הָרוּעָה הַטוֹב קוֹרָא לָכֶם; אַכֵּן, בְּשִׁמוֹ הוּא קוֹרָא לָכֶם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁמָעוּ לְקוֹל הָרוּעָה הַטוֹב, וְלֹא תִקְשְׁבוּ לְשֵׁם אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם נִקְרָאִים בּוֹ, אֵינֶכֶם צֹאן הָרוּעָה הַטוֹב.
- 39 And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.
- וְאִם אֵין אַתֶּם צֹאן הָרוּעָה הַטוֹב, מֵאִיזָה עֵדֶר אַתֶּם? הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַשָּׂטָן רוּעֶכֶם וּמַעֲדָרוֹ אַתֶּם; מִי יוֹכֵל לִכְחַשׁ בְּזֹאת? הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל הַמְּכַחֵשׁ בְּזֹאת שֶׁקֶר הוּא וְכֵן הַשָּׂטָן.
- 40 For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.
- וְאֵנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כָל טוֹב, מֵאֱלֹהִים מוֹצֵאוֹ, וְכָל רָע, מֵהַשָּׂטָן מוֹצֵאוֹ.
- 41 Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.
- לָכֵן, אִם בֶּיַד אִישׁ מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים, אֵין זֹאת כִּי לְקוֹל הָרוּעָה הַטוֹב הוּא שׁוֹמֵעַ וְבִעֲקֻבוֹתָיו הוּא הוֹלֵךְ; אֲךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר בִּידוֹ מַעֲשִׂים רָעִים, בֶּן הַשָּׂטָן הוּא נֶעֱשֶׂה, כִּי לְקוֹלוֹ הוּא שׁוֹמֵעַ וּבִעֲקֻבוֹתָיו הוּא הוֹלֵךְ.
- 42 And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.
- וְכָל הַעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת, מֵאֵת הַשָּׂטָן יִקְבַּל אֵת שְׂכָרוֹ; עַל כֵּן שְׂכָרוֹ מוֹת, בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְרֵי צֶדֶק, כִּי מֵת הוּא לְכָל מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים.
- 43 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, חֲפָצִי כִּי תִשְׁמָעוּ אֵלַי, כִּי בְּתַעֲצוּמַת נַפְשִׁי אֵנִי מְדַבֵּר. הֵן דִּבְרֹתַי אֵלֵיכֶם בְּרוּרוֹת, לְמַעַן לֹא תִטְעוּ, כִּי כְּמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים דִּבְרֹתַי.
- 44 For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.
- כִּי נִקְרָאתִי לְדַבֵּר בְּאִפְּן הַזֶּה, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁחֵי יֵשׁוּעַ; הַנְּנִי מְצֻוֶּה לָקוּם וּלְהִעָד לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַבָּאוֹת.
- 45 And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?
- וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל. הֲאֵינֶכֶם סוֹבְרִים כִּי אֵנִי עֹצְמִי יוֹדֵעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַנְּנִי מַעֲדִיד לְפָנֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרֹתִי עֲלֵיהֶם אֱמֶת הֵנּוּ. וְכֵן סוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם, כִּי צֶדֶק נִדְּעָה לִּי אֲמַתְתֶּם?
- 46 Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.
- הַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הֵם נִדְּעוּ לִי עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים. הִנֵּה, צִמְתִּי וְהִתְפַּלֵּלְתִּי יָמִים רַבִּים לְמַעַן אֲדַע אֵין אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְעַתָּה, אֵנִי עֹצְמִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֱמֶת הֵם; כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים גָּלָה אוֹתָם לִי בְּרוּחַ קְדֹשׁ; וְאֵין זֹאת כִּי אִם רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי.

וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה הִתְגַּלָּה לִּי, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ אֱמֶת הֵם, וְזֹאת עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי, אֲשֶׁר אִף הֵיא עַל יְדֵי הִתְגַּלוּת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים.

47 And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אֲנִי עֲצָמִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר אֲגִיד לָכֶם עַל הָעֵתִיד לְבוֹא, אֱמֶת הוּא, וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי בּוֹא יְבוֹא יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְהוּא הֵבִן, הֵילוֹד הַיְחִיד אֲשֶׁר לְאָב, מְלֵא חֶסֶד וְרַחֲמִים וְאֱמֶת. הִנֵּה, הוּא אֲשֶׁר בָּא לְהַסִּיר אֶת חַטָּאת הָעוֹלָם, חַטָּאת כָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר אֵיתָן בְּאֵמוּנָתוֹ בְּשִׁמוֹ.

48 I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי זֶה הַסֵּדֶר אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו נִקְרָאתִי, לְהַטִּיף אֶל אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, וְאִף אֶל כָּל תּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ; אֲכֹן, לְהַטִּיף לְכָל, לְזָקֵן וְלַצֶּעִיר, לְחַיִּב וְלַחֲפָשִׁי; אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לְזָקֵן, לְבוֹגֵר וְלְדוֹר הַצֵּעִיר, לְקַרֵּא אֲלֵיהֶם כִּי יִנְחָמוּ מִרְעַתָּם וְיִוָּלְדוּ שֵׁנִית.

49 And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

כִּי כֹה אֶמְרָה הָרוּחַ: הִנְחָמוּ כָל קִצְצֵי אֶרֶץ, כִּי מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם קְרוּבָה לְבוֹא; אֲכֹן, בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים בָּא בְּתַפְאֲרָתוֹ, בְּגִבּוּרָתוֹ, בְּהוֹדוֹ, בְּכֹחוֹ וּבְמִמְשָׁלָתוֹ. הִנֵּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה אֶמְרָה הָרוּחַ: רְאוּ הַדָּר מְלֹךְ כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, וְאִף יִזְרַח מְלֹךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם עַד מִהֲרָה בְּקִרְבְּכֶם כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.

50 Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

וְכֹן אֶמְרָה לִי הָרוּחַ, וְהֵיא קוֹרֵאת אֵלַי בְּקוֹל אֲדִיר לֵאמֹר: צֵא וְאָמַר אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה: הִנְחָמוּ מִחַטָּא! כִּי אִם לֹא תִנְחָמוּ, לֹא תִנְחַלּוּ בְּשׁוּם אִפֹּן אֶת מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם.

51 And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

וְעוֹד אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּה אֶמְרָה הָרוּחַ: הִנֵּה מוֹנֵף הַגֶּרֶן עַל שְׂרָשֵׁי הָעֵץ. כָּל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ נוֹשֵׂא פְרִי טוֹב יִגְדַּע וְיִשְׁלַף אֶל הָאֵשׁ, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִתְחַדֵּל, אֲשֶׁר בַּל תִּכָּבֵּה. רְאוּ וְזָכְרוּ כִּי הָאֵל הַקְּדוֹשׁ דִּבֶּר זֹאת.

52 And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הַתּוֹכְלוּ לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְדַחוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִפְּנֵיכֶם, וְלִרְמֹס אֶת הָאֵל הַקְּדוֹשׁ תַּחַת רִגְלֵיכֶם? אֲכֹן, הַתְּהִיּוּ נְפוּחִים בְּגִזְאוֹת לְבָבָם? הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְלִבֵּשׁ בְּגָדֵי יָקָר וְלִשִׁית לְבָבָם לְהַבְלִי הָעוֹלָם וּלְעֲשׂוֹרָתָם?

53 And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

- 54 Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—
- הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּדַעְתְּכֶם כִּי טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מִרַעְיֵכֶם? אָכֵן, הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְרֹדֹף אֶת אֶחְיֵיכֶם, הַמְצַנִּיעִים עִצְמָם בְּעֵנֻוֹת לָלֶכֶת עַל פִּי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהִים, עַל יְדֵיו הַכִּנְסוּ לְכִנְסִיָּהּ הַזֹּאת, וְאֲשֶׁר קָדְשׁוּ עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבִידֵיהֶם מַעֲשִׂים הַהוֹלָמִים תְּשׁוּבָה?
- 55 Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?
- הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לִפְנוֹת עֲרֵף לְעִנִּי וְלְאֶבְיוֹן וְלִמְנַע מֵהֶם אֶת קִנְיָנְכֶם?
- 56 And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.
- וּלְבַסּוֹף, כָּלְכֶם הַמְתַּמִּידִים בְּרַשָׁעֵתְכֶם, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ הַגְּדוּעִים וְהַמְשָׁלְכִים אֶל הָאֵשׁ, בְּלֹתִי אִם יִנְחָמוּ מִהֵרָה מִרַעְיָתָם.
- 57 And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;
- וְהַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כָּלְכֶם הַחֹפְצִים לָלֶכֶת אַחֵר קוֹל הַרוֹעֶה הַטוֹב, צֵאוּ מִן הַרְשָׁעִים וְהַבְּדִלוּ וְאַל תִּגְעוּ בְּטִמְאוֹתֵיהֶם; הֵן שְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם יִמָּחוּ, לְבַל יִמְנוּ שְׁמוֹת הַרְשָׁעִים עִם שְׁמוֹת הַצְּדִיקִים, לְמַעַן יִקּוּם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הָאוֹמֵר: לֹא יִתְעַרְבוּ שְׁמוֹת הַרְשָׁעִים בְּשְׁמוֹת עַמִּי.
- 58 For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.
- כִּי שְׁמוֹת הַצְּדִיקִים יִכְתָּבוּ בְּסֵפֶר הַחַיִּים, וְלָהֶם אֶתֵּן נַחֲלָה לְיְמִינִי. וְעַתָּה, אֶחְיִי, מֶה תֹּאמְרוּ נֹגֵד זֹאת? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אִם תִּדְּבְרוּ נֹגֵד זֹאת, אֵין בְּכֶךָ חֲשִׁיבוֹת, כִּי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים קוֹם יִקּוּם.
- 59 For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.
- הֵיזָשׁ בְּכֶם רוֹעֶה, אֲשֶׁר לוֹ צֹאן רַבּוֹת, וְאֵינְנוּ נוֹטֵר אוֹתָן, לְבַל יִכְנָסוּ זְאֵבִים וַיִּטְרְפוּ אֶת צֹאנֵנוּ? הֵן אִם יִכְנָס זְאֵב לְתוֹךְ עֶדְרוֹ, הֲלֹא יִגְרֹשֵׁנוּ? וְהִנֵּה, אִם יוּכַל לוֹ, יִשְׁמִידֵהוּ.
- 60 And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.
- וְהַנְּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַרוֹעֶה הַטוֹב קוֹרֵא אַחֲרֵיכֶם, וְאִם תִּשְׁמָעוּ בְּקוֹלוֹ, יְבִיאֲכֶם אֶל עֶדְרוֹ וְתִהְיוּ צֹאנֵו. וְהוּא מְצַוְכֶם כִּי לֹא תִתְּרוּ לְשׁוּם זְאֵב טוֹרֵף לְהִכָּנֵס אֵלֵיכֶם, לְבַל תִּשְׁמָדוּ.
- 61 And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, עֲלָמָא, מְצַוְכֶם בְּלָשׁוֹן זֶה אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי כִּי תִשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם.
- 62 I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.
- וְאֵלֵיכֶם, חֲבֵרֵי הַכִּנְסִיָּהּ, אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר דֶּרֶךְ פְּקָדָה; וְלְאֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם חֲבֵרֵי הַכִּנְסִיָּהּ מְדַבֵּר אֲנִי בְּדֶרֶךְ הַזְמָנָה לֵאמֹר: בּוֹאוּ וְהִשְׁתַּבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תִּהְיוּ אַף אַתֶּם טוֹעֲמֵי פְרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים.

ו

6

וְהָיָה כְּכָלוֹת עֲלָמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶל אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנִסְיָה
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעִיר זְרַעְחֶמְלָה, הוּא הַסְמִיךְ כְּהֻנִּים
וְזִקְנִים בְּסִמְכֵית יָדָיו עַל פִּי סֵדֶר אֱלֹהִים,
לְמַעַן יַעֲמִדוּ בְּרָאשׁ הַכְּנִסְיָה וְיִשְׁמְרוּהָ.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיָה חֵבֶר בְּכְנִסְיָה וְנָחַס
מִחֻטְאָיו, הִטְבֵּל לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וְהִתְקַבֵּל
לְתוֹךְ הַכְּנִסְיָה.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ חֵבֶרִים בְּכְנִסְיָה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָחֲמוּ
מִרְעָתָם וְלֹא הִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמָם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים,
כְּלוּמֵר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹת לָבָם, נִדְחוּ וְשִׁמָּם
נִמְחָה לְמַעַן לֹא יִמָּנָה עִם הַצַּדִּיקִים.

כֹּךְ הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְכוֹנֵן אֶת סִדְרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה
בְּעִיר זְרַעְחֶמְלָה.

וְחִפְצִי כִּי תִבְיֵנוּ כִּי דִבֵּר אֱלֹהִים הָיָה חֻפְשִׁי
לְכָל, וּמֵאִישׁ לֹא נִמְנָעָה זְכוּת הַהִתְכַּנְּסוֹת
יַחְדּוֹ לְשִׁמְעַת אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְאוֹלָם בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים הִצְטִווּ לְהִתְכַּנֵּס לַעֲתִים
קְרוֹבוֹת, וְלִהְיוֹת חֵבֶר בְּצוּם וּבִתְפִלָּה אֲדִירָה
בְּעִבּוֹר נְשָׁמוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדְעוּ
אֶת אֱלֹהִים.

וְאַחֵר עָשׂוֹתוֹ אֶת הַתְּקִנּוֹת הָאֵלֶּה נִפְרַד מֵהֶם
עֲלָמָא, אָכֵן, מִהַכְּנִסְיָה אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר זְרַעְחֶמְלָה,
וְהָלַךְ מִמְּזֶרֶח לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן אֶל עֵמֶק גִּדְעוֹן; שָׁם
נִבְנְתָה עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמָהּ גִּדְעוֹן, וְהָיָה
בְּעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ גִּדְעוֹן, עַל שֵׁם הָאִישׁ
אֲשֶׁר נִרְצַח בְּחֶרֶב נְחוֹר.

וְעֲלָמָא הָלַךְ וְהִחֵל לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים לְכְנִסְיָהּ אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנְנָה בְּעֵמֶק גִּדְעוֹן,
כְּפִי הַתְּגִלוֹת דְּבַר הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ אֲבוֹתָיו,
וְכִפִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקֶרְבוֹ, וְהָיָה עַל פִּי
עֲדוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹא
לְגַאֲלָתָא עִמּוֹ מִחֻטְאֵיהֶם, וְכִפִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ
אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נִקְרָא. וְכֹךְ כְּתוּב הַדָּבָר. אָמֵן.

1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

2 And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

3 And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

4 And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

5 Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

6 Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

7 And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלָמָא אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִיעַם לְאֲנָשִׁי גִדְעוֹן, עַל פִּי סֵפֶר הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לוֹ. (בְּעֶרְךָ 83 לְפָנֵי הַסְפִּירָה.) וְכָלֵל בְּפָרֶק ז'.

The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record. (About 83 B.C.) Comprising chapter 7.

ז

7

הִנֵּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי לְבֹא אֵלֵיכֶם, הִנֵּי מִבְּקֵשׁ לְפָנוֹת אֵלֵיכֶם בְּשִׁפְתַי. אֲכֹן, בְּמוֹ פִי אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, וְזֹאת הַפֶּעַם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם בְּדִבְרֵי פִי, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַסְרֹתִי כָּלִי לְכֶסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כִּי רַבָּה הָיְתָה עָלַי הָעֲבוּדָה וְלֹא יָכַלְתִּי לְבֹא עֲדֵיכֶם.

וְגַם הַיּוֹם לֹא יָכַלְתִּי לְבֹא הִנֵּה לֹאֵל נִמְסַר כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְאִישׁ אֲחֵר לְמִשְׁלַב בְּמִקְוָמִי, וַיְהוּה בְּרַחֲמָיו הָרַבִּים נִתְּנִי לְבֹא אֵלֵיכֶם.

אֲכֹן, בְּאֵתִי וּבְלִבִּי תִקְוָה גְדוֹלָה וְחֹפֶץ רַב לְמִצָּא אֶתְכֶם נִכְנָעִים לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים, שׁוֹקְדִים תָּמִיד לְהַעֲתִיר לְחֶסֶדּוֹ, לְמִצָּא אֶתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֲשָׁם לְפָנָיו, וּבְלֹא הַבְרָרָה הַנוֹרָאָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְאֲחֵינוּ בְּזִרְעַחְמָלָה.

בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעָנִי, אֲכֹן, אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנִי שִׂמְחָה רַבָּה מְאֹד בְּיָדִיעָה כִּי שָׁבוּ לְהִישִׁיר דְּרָכָם בְּצִדְקוֹ.

וְכִפִּי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי תִהְיֶה לִי שִׂמְחָה אַף עַלֵיכֶם. וְאִנִּלֶם, אֲיִנְנִי רוּצָה כִּי שִׁמְחָתִי עֲלֵיכֶם תִּגְעִינִי בְּיִסּוּרִים רַבִּים וָצֶעַר, כִּפִּי שֶׁסִּבַּלְתִּי מִפָּנֵי אֲחֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּזִרְעַחְמָלָה כִּי הָיְתָה לִי שִׁמְחָה עֲלֵיהֶם רַק אַחֵר רַב יִסּוּרִים וָצֶעַר.

הִנֵּנִי מֵאֲמִין כִּי אֵין אֶתֶם שְׂרוּיִים בַּחֲסָר אֲמוּנָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הָיוּ אֲחֵיכֶם; אֲנִי מֵאֲמִין כִּי אֵינְכֶם מִתְנַשְּׂאִים בְּגִאוֹת לֵב; וּמֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי לֹא שִׂתֶּם לְבַבְכֶם לְעֹשֶׁר וּלְהַבְלֵי הָעוֹלָם, אֲכֹן, כִּי אֵינְכֶם עוֹבְדִים פְּסִילִים, כִּי אִם אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֱמֶת וְחַיִּים, וְכִי צוֹפִים אֶתֶם לְמַחֲלַת חַטָּאֵיכֶם, בְּאֲמוּנָת עֵד, לְקִרְאָת הָעֵתִיד לְבֹא.

הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לְכֶם כִּי רַבִּים הַדְּבָרִים הָעֹתִידִים לְבֹא, אֶף דְּבָר אֶחָד חָשׁוּב מִכֻּלָּם, הִנֵּה כִּי אֵין הָעֵת רְחוּקָה וְחִי הַגּוֹאֵל וְכָא בְּקֶרֶב עִמּוֹ.

1 Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

2 And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

3 And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

4 But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

5 And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

7 For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

- 8 Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.
- 9 But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.
- 10 And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.
- 11 And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.
- 12 And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.
- 13 Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.
- 14 Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.
- 15 Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.
- הִנֵּה, לֹא אָמַרְתִּי כִּי יָבוֹא בְּתוֹכֵנוּ בְּעֵת דּוֹרוֹ
בְּמִשְׁכְּנוֹ בֵּן הַתְּמוֹנָה, כִּי לֹא אָמַרְהָ לִּי הָרוּחַ
כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה הַדְּבָר; וּבִדְבַר הַזֶּה אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ. אֲךָ
זֹאת יָדַעְתִּי, כִּי לַיהוָה אֱלֹהִים הַכֹּחַ לַעֲשׂוֹת
אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם כֹּדְבָרוֹ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִגִּידָה לִּי הָרוּחַ
לֵאמֹר: קְרֹא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר: שׁוּבוּ נָא
וּפְנוּ אֶת דְּרֹךְ יְהוָה, וּלְכוּ בְּאַרְחוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר
יִשְׁרִים הֵם; כִּי הִנֵּה קְרוֹבָה לְבֹא מַלְכוּת
שָׁמַיִם וּבֶן אֱלֹהִים בָּא עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהִנֵּה הוּא יוֹלֵד לְמָרְיָם, בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר הִיא
אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; וְהִיא בְּתוֹלָה, כְּלִי יָקָר וְנִבְחָר,
אֲשֶׁר תִּחְסֶה בְּצֶל רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וּבְכֹחַ תְּהִלָּתָהּ,
וְתֵלֵד בּוֹ, הוּא בֶן אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהוּא יֵלֵךְ וְיִסְבֵּל מִכְּאוֹבִים, יְסוּרִים וְכָל מִינֵי
מִבְחָנִים. וְזֹאת לְמַלֵּא אֶת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר,
כִּי הוּא יִשָּׂא אֶת מִכְאוֹבֵי עַמּוֹ וְאֶת חֲלָאֵיו.
- וְהוּא יִקְבֹּל עָלָיו מוֹת, לְמַעַן יַתִּיר אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת
הַמּוֹת הָאוֹסְרוֹת אֶת עַמּוֹ. וְהוּא יִקְבֹּל עָלָיו
אֶת חֲלָאֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יִמְלֹא מִעֵי רַחֲמִים, כְּפִי
הַבָּשָׂר, לְמַעַן יָדַע, כְּפִי הַבָּשָׂר, כִּיצַד לְהִינִיק
אֶת עַמּוֹ, כְּפִי חֲלָאֵיהֶם.
- וְהָרוּחַ יוֹדַעַת הַכֹּל; וְאוֹלָם יִסְבֹּל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים
כְּפִי הַבָּשָׂר, לְמַעַן יִשָּׂא עָלָיו אֶת חַטָּאת עַמּוֹ,
לְמַחֲוֹת אֶת פְּשָׁעֵיהֶם כְּפִי כַח גְּאֻלָּתוֹ; הִנֵּה
זֹאת הָעֵדוּת אֲשֶׁר בִּי.
- וְהֵנִנִּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם
וּלְהוֹלִיד שְׁנִית; כִּי כֹה אוֹמַרְתָּ הָרוּחַ: אִם לֹא
תִּוְלְדוּ שְׁנִית, לֹא תוּכְלוּ לָרֶשֶׁת אֶת מַלְכוּת
שָׁמַיִם. עַל כֵּן בּוֹאוּ וְהִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה,
לְמַעַן תִּרְחֲצוּ, וְתִהְיֶה לָכֶם אִמּוּנָה בְּשֵׁם
אֱלֹהִים, הַמְסִיר אֶת חַטָּאת הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר
לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ וּלְסַהֵר מִכָּל עוֹלָה.
- הִנֵּה אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, בּוֹאוּ וְאֵל תִּירְאוּ; הִסִּירוּ
כָּל חַטָּא, אֲשֶׁר עַל נַפְלָה מִטְרִידְכֶם וְאֲשֶׁר אוֹסֵר
אֶתְכֶם אֵלֵי כְלָיוֹ; אָכֵן, בּוֹאוּ וְצִאוּ לְהִרְאוֹת
לְאֱלֹהֵיכֶם כִּי רוֹצִים אַתֶּם לְשׁוּב מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם
וּלְבֹא עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו וּלְהַעֲדִיד
עַל כֹּךָ הַיּוֹם בְּהִלְכַתְכֶם אֶל מֵי הַטְּבִילָה.

- 16 And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.
- 17 And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.
- 18 For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.
- 19 For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.
- 20 I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.
- 21 And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.
- 22 And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.
- 23 And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה זֹאת וְיִשְׁמֹר מִהַיּוֹם וְהַלָּאָה אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, הוּא יִזְכֹּר אֶת אִמְרֵי אֱלִי, אָכֵן, הוּא יִזְכֹּר כִּי אָמַרְתִּי לוֹ כִּי חַי עוֹלָם יִנְחַל, כִּפִּי עֵדוּת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר מְעִידָה בְּקִרְבִּי.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הֲתֵאֱמִינוּ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: כֵּן! יָדַעְתִּי כִּי מֵאֱמִינִים אַתֶּם; וְאֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ זֹאת עַל פִּי הַתְּגִלּוֹת הַרוּחַ אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי. וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר אֵיתָנָה אֱמוּנַתְכֶם בַּדְּבָר הַזֶּה, בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי, רַבָּה שְׂמֵחָתִי.
- כִּי כִּפִּי תַחֲלַת דְּבָרֵי אֱלִיכֶם, בְּאִמְרֵי כִי רַב חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תִהְיוּ כְּאַחֵיכֶם הַפּוֹסְחִים עַל שְׁתֵּי הַסְּעָפִים, הִנֵּה מִצְאָתִי כִּי חֲפָצִי הִתְמַלֵּא.
- כִּי רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי אַתֶּם הוֹלְכִים בְּאַרְחוֹת צְדָקָה; אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי דֶרֶכְכֶם מוֹלִיכָה אֶל מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, אֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי אַתֶּם מִיְּשָׁרִים בְּדֶרֶכְכִּי.
- וְאֲנִי רוֹאֶה כִּי נוֹדַע לָכֶם, עַל יְדֵי עֵדוּת דְּבָרִי, כִּי אֵין הוּא יָכוֹל לָלֶכֶת בְּדֶרֶכִּים עֲקָלְקָלוֹת; גַּם אֵין הוּא מִמִּיר מִהַדְבֵּר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר; אִף אֵינְנוּ סוּטָה כְּחוֹט הַשְׁעָרָה מִן הַיָּמִין אֶל הַשְּׂמָאל, וְלֹא מִן הַצּוּדֶק אֶל הַלֵּא צוּדֶק. עַל כֵּן מִהֲלָכוֹ מַעְגָּל נִצְחִי אֶחָד.
- וְאֵין הוּא שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת טְמֵאָה. וְכֵן לֹא תִתְקַבֵּל בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים כָּל טִנְפָת, אוֹ כָּל דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֵינְנוּ נְקִי; לָכֵן הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעַתָּה, וְהִיא תִּהְיֶה בַּיּוֹם הָאֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר הִטְמֵא יִשְׂאָר בְּטִמְאָתוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אִמְרְתִּי לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּעֵבֹר אַעֲוֹר אֶתְכֶם לְחוּשׁ אֶת חוֹבַתְכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֲשֶׁם וּלְהִתְהַלֵּךְ עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו הוּא קִבֵּל אֶתְכֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִהְיוּ עֲנוּיִם, וְכִי תִהְיוּ נִכְנָעִים וְאִדְיָבִים, נוֹחִים לְהַתְרַצוֹת, מְלֵאִים אֶרְפוֹ רוּחַ וְכַח סֶבֶל, מֵתוּנִים בְּכָל, שׁוֹקְדִים עַל שְׁמִירַת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים כְּכָל עֵת, מְבַקְשִׁים מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת כָּל צְרֻכְכֶם, בְּרוּחַ וּבַחֲמֹר, וּמַשְׁיָבִים תַּמִּיד דְּבָרֵי תוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם מְקַבְּלִים.

- 24 And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.
- וְהִשְׁמְרוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּאֵמוּנָה, בְּתִקְוָה, וּבְחֶסֶד כִּי אֲזִי תִהְיוּ תָמִיד עֹתִירֵי מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים.
- 25 And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.
- יְבָרְכְּכֶם יְהוָה וְיִשְׁמֶר אֶת בְּגָדֵיכֶם לֵלֵא רָבָב, לְמַעַן תּוּבְאוּ לְבִסּוּף לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּמַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם עִם אֲבֹרָהֶם, יִצְחָק וְיַעֲקֹב וְעִם הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵאֲזִי רֵאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם, בְּהִיּוֹת בְּגָדֵיכֶם לֵלֵא רָבָב כְּבְּגָדֵיהֶם, וּלְלֵא לְצֵאת עוֹד.
- 26 And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, דִּבַּרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּפִי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְעִידָה בְּקִרְבִּי; נַפְשִׁי תִשְׂמַח מְאֹד עַל שְׂקִידְתְּכֶם וְתִשׁוּמַת הַלֵּב אֲשֶׁר נָתַתֶּם לְדִבְרִי.
- 27 And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.
- וְעַתָּה, יְהִי שְׁלוֹם אֱלֹהִים עֲלֵיכֶם וְעַל בְּתֵיכֶם וְעַל אֲדָמוֹתֵיכֶם, עַל צֹאנְכֶם וּבְקִרְכֶם, וְעַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָכֶם, נְשִׁיכֶם וְיֻלְדֵיכֶם, כְּפִי אֱמוּנַתְכֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂיכֶם הַטוֹבִים, מֵעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. זֹאת דִּבַּרְתִּי. אָמֵן.

ח

8

- 1 And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.
- וְעַלְמָא שָׁב מֵאֶרֶץ גִּדְעוֹן, שֶׁם לָמַד אֶת אַנְשֵׁי גִדְעוֹן דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא אוּכַל לְכַתְּבָם, וְכוּנֵן אֶת סִדְרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לִפְנֵי כֵן בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה: אָכֵן, הוּא שָׁב אֶל בֵּיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בְּזֶרַחְמֶלָה לְנוּחַ מֵעֲמָלוֹ אֲשֶׁר עָמַל.
- 2 And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- כֹּה כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַתְּשִׁיעִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- 3 And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׂירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, עָזַב עַלְמָא אֶת בֵּיתוֹ וְנָסַע אֶל אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ, אֲשֶׁר בְּמַעְרֵב נְהַר צִידוֹן, בְּמַעְרֵב, בְּגִבּוֹל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- 4 And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.
- וְהוּא הֵחֵל לְלַמֵּד אֶת אַנְשֵׁי אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ עַל פִּי סֵדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִקְרָא לְשִׁלְחוֹתוֹ; וְהוּא לָמַד אֶת הָעָם בְּכָל רַחְבֵּי אֶרֶץ מֶלֶךְ.
- 5 And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;
- וְהָיָה כִּי בָּאוּ אֵלָיו הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל גִּבּוֹל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר לִיד הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְהֵם הִטְבְּלוּ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.

- 6 So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.
- 7 Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.
- 8 And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.
- 9 Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.
- 10 Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.
- 11 Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.
- 12 And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.
- 13 Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.
- 14 And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:
- 15 Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the
- וּכְכֹלֹתוֹ אֶת עֲבֹדָתוֹ בְּמֶלֶק הוּא הֵלַךְ מִשָּׁם
וְנָסַע דֶּרֶךְ שְׁלֹשַׁת יָמִים לְצָפוֹן אֶרֶץ מֶלֶק;
וְהוּא בָּא אֶל עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמָהּ עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ.
- וּמִנְהֵג עִם נָפִי הָיָה לִקְרֹא אֶת אֲרָצוֹתֵיהֶם,
עָרֵיהֶם וּכְפָרֵיהֶם, וְאֵף אֶת הַכְּפָרִים הַקְּטָנִים,
עַל שֵׁם הָאִישׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָחֲלָם וְכֵן הָיָה
דְּבַר אֶרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ.
- וּבְבוֹא עֲלֵמָא אֶל הָעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ הוּא הֵחֵל
לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַשְׁטָן קָנָה לוֹ שְׁבִיתָה בְּלִב אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר
עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ; לְכֵן לֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדְבָרֵי עֲלֵמָא.
- אוּלָּם עֲלֵמָא עָמַל בְּרוּחוֹ עִמָּל רַב, וְנֶאֱבַק עִם
אֱלֹהִים בְּתַעֲצוּמוֹת תְּפִלָּה, בְּתַחֲנֹה אֵלָיו כִּי
יִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עַל אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר, וְכִי יוֹאִיל
לְתַתּוֹ לְהִטְבִּילָם בְּתַשׁוּבָתָם מִחַטָּאתֵיהֶם.
- אֲף הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: הִנֵּה יָדַעְנוּ
כִּי אַתָּה עֲלֵמָא וְכִי אַתָּה כֹּהֵן גָּדוֹל בְּכִנְסִיָּה
אֲשֶׁר כּוֹנֵנָתָ, עַל פִּי הַמִּסְרָת אֲשֶׁר בִּידָךְ,
בְּאֲזוּרִים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ; אֲף לָנוּ אֵין חֵלֶק
בְּכִנְסִיָּתְךָ, וְאָנוּ לֹא מֵאֲמִינִים בְּמִסֹּרוֹת
אֵינְלִיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר כְּאֵלָה.
- וְאֵף יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי אֵין לָךְ כֹּחַ עָלֵינוּ, כִּי
אֵינְנוּ חֲבָרֵי כְּנִסְיָתְךָ; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר מִסְרָתָ אֶת כֹּס
הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְנִפְיָהָ, אֵינְךָ הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיּוֹן
לְמִשְׁל בָּנוּ.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ זֵאת הָאֲנָשִׁים וְהִתְנַגְּדוּ לְכָל
דְּבָרָיו, וְחָרְפוּהוּ וְיָרְקוּ עָלָיו וְגִרְשׁוּהוּ מֵעִירָם,
הוּא יָצָא מִשָּׁם וְנָסַע אֶל עִיר אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא
שְׁמָהּ אֶהְרֹן.
- וּבְנִסְעוֹ שְׁמָהּ בְּהִיּוֹת לְבוֹ כְּבֵד מִצָּעַר וְהוּא
שָׂרוּי בְּיָגוֹן עָז וּבְמִצְוֹקָת נֶפֶשׁ עַל רִשְׁעַת
אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּהָ, וְהִנֵּה מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה
נִגְלָה אֵלָיו וְאָמַר:
- בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה, עֲלֵמָא; לְכֵן, שֵׂא רֹאשְׁךָ וְשִׂישָׂה,
כִּי חֵלֶקְךָ לְשִׂמְחָה עַד מָאֵד; כִּי שָׁמַרְתָּ אֲמוּנִים

עֲלָמָא ח:טז-כד

לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים מִיּוֹם קִבַּלְךָ מִמֶּנּוּ
אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ הָרִאשׁוֹן; וְאַנִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר
שָׁלַחְתִּיו אֵלֶיךָ.

commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

וְהִנְנִי שָׁלּוּחַ לְצוּרְתָךְ לָשׁוּב אֶל הָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ
וּלְהַטִּיף שֵׁנִית דְּבָרִי תוֹכָחָה לְאַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר;
אָכֵן, אֲמַר לָהֶם כִּי אִם לֹא יִנְחָמוּ מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם
כָּלָה יִכְלֹם יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים.

16 And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

כִּי הֵנָּה זֹמָמִים עֹתָה לְאַבֵּד אֶת חֲרוּת עֲמֻךְ,
אֲמַר יְהוָה, וְזֹאת הִפָּךְ מִן הַחֻקִּים וְהַמִּשְׁפָּטִים
וְהַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָתַן לְעַמּוֹ.

17 For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קִבַּל עֲלָמָא אֶת דְּבַר שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ
מֵאֵת מַלְאָךְ יְהוָה הוּא מָהֵר לָשׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ
עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ. וְהוּא נִכְנַס הָעִירָה בְּדֶרֶךְ אַחֲרֵת,
וְהָיָה הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם לָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָ.

18 Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

וּבְבוֹאוֹ הָעִירָה הִצִּיקוּ הָרָעֵב, וְהוּא אָמַר
אֶל אִישׁ אֶחָד: הֲתִתֵּן לְעַבְדְּךָ אֱלֹהִים עֲנֹ מַעֲט
אֶכֶל לְאָכְלִי?

19 And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הָאִישׁ: אִישׁ נָפִיִּי אָנִי, וְאַנִּי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי
נָבִיא אֱלֹהִים קָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה, כִּי הִנֵּה הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר
עָלִיו אָמַר לִי מַלְאָךְ בְּחֻזּוֹן: קִבַּל אוֹתוֹ! לָכֵן
בוֹאָה עָמִי אֶל בֵּיתִי וְאֶחְלַק עִמָּךְ אֶת לֶחֶמִי;
הֵן יָדַעְתִּי כִּי תִהְיֶה בִּרְכָה לִי וּלְבֵיתִי.

20 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

וְהָאִישׁ הִכְנִיסוֹ אֶל בֵּיתוֹ; וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ עֲמוּלֵק;
וְהוּא לָקַח לֶחֶם וּמֶזֶן וּנְתַנֵּם לִפְנֵי עֲלָמָא.

21 And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

וְעֲלָמָא אָכַל לֶחֶם וְשִׁבַּע. וְהוּא בִּרְךָ אֶת
עֲמוּלֵק וְאֶת בֵּיתוֹ וְנָתַן תּוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים.

22 And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

וְאַחֵר אָכְלוּ לְשִׁבְעָה הוּא אָמַר אֶל עֲמוּלֵק:
אֲנִכִּי עֲלָמָא, הִכְהֵן הַגָּדוֹל לְכִנְסִית אֱלֹהִים
בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.

23 And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

הִנְנִי קְרוּא לְהַגִּיד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶב כָּל
הָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּפִּי רוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְהַנְּבוּאָה;
הֵייתִי בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְלֹא אָבוּ אֲנִשְׁיָהּ לְקַבֵּלִנִי,
כִּי אִם גִּרְשׁוּנִי, וְאַנִּי אָמַרְתִּי בְּלִבִּי לִפְנוֹת עֹרֶךְ
לְאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת וּלְסוּר מִמֶּנָּה לָעַד.

24 And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

עֲלֵמָא ח:כה–ט:א

- 25 But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.
- 26 And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.
- 27 And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.
- 28 And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.
- 29 And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.
- 30 And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.
- 31 And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.
- 32 And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

אך הנה צויתי לשוב ולנבא אל העם הזה, אך להעיד בהם על עוונותיהם.

ועתה, עמולק, יען אשר האכלתני והכנסתני בצל קורתך, ברוך אתה, כי רעבתי מפני צומי ימים רבים.

ועלמא ישב ימים רבים עם עמולק בטרום החל להטיף אל העם.

והעם הוסיפו להגדיל עוון.

והיה דבר אלהים אל עלמא לאמר: לך, ואף תאמר אל עבדי עמולק, לך והנבא אל העם הזה לאמר: הנחמו מחטאיכם, כי כה אמר יהוה, אם לא תנחמו, פקוד אפקד את העם הזה בחמתי ולא אשיב מהם חרון אפי.

ועלמא יצא אל העם ועמולק עמו, להשימיעם את דבר אלהים, והם מלאים רוח הקדש.

וכח נתן להם, עד כי לא יכלו אויביהם לכלואם בבור ולא יכל איש להרגם; ואולם הם לא השתמשו בכחם עד אשר נקבלו והשליכו אל בית הכלא. והיה זאת למען הראות יהוה כחו בהם.

והם יצאו והחלו לקרא אל העם ולהתנבא אליו, כפי הכח אשר נתנם יהוה ורוחו.

דברי עלמא וכן דברי עמולק, אשר הטיפוס אל העם אשר בארץ עמוניהה. ספור השלכתם אל בית הכלא והצלתם על ידי כח אלהים הנפלא אשר היה בהם, על פי כתבי עלמא. (בערך 82 לפני הספירה.) נכלל בפרקים ט–יד.

The words of Alma, and also of Amulek, which were declared to the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. They are cast into prison and delivered by the miraculous power of God that was in them, according to the record of Alma. (About 82 B.C.) Comprising chapters 9–14.

ט

9

- 1 And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

ואני, עלמא, אחר אשר צוני אלהים לקחת את עמולק ולצאת להטיף שנית אל העם הזה, אשר הם אנשי העיר עמוניהה, החליתי להטיף להם, והם רבו עמי לאמר:

- 2 מי אתה? התחשב כי נאמין לעדות איש אחד, אף כי יטיף לנו כי הארץ תחלף?
- 3 והם לא הבינו את הדברים אשר דברו, כי לא ידעו כי הארץ אכן תחלף.
- 4 ועוד אמרו: לא נאמין לדבריך אם תנבא על העיר הגדולה הזאת כי תחרב ביום אחד.
- 5 והם לא ידעו כי ביד אלהים לעשות נפלאות כאלה, כי היו עם קשה לב וקשה ערף.
- 6 והם אמרו: מי הוא אלהים, השולח רק איש בן סמכות אחד אל בני העם הזה להשימיע בקרבם אמתת דברים כה גדולים ונפלאים?
- 7 והם עמדו לשלח בי את ידם, אך הנה חדלו. ואני עמדתי באמץ לב להשימיעם; אכן, באמץ העידותי לפניהם לאמר:
- 8 הוי, דור רשע ועקש, איכה שכחתם את מסורת אבותיכם; איכה מהרתם לשכח את מצוות אלהים.
- 9 האינכם זוכרים כי אבינו, לחי, הוצא מירושלם ביד אלהים? האינכם זוכרים כי הוליתם כלם במדבר?
- 10 השכחתם כבר כמה פעמים הציל את אבותינו מידי אויביהם, ושמרם מפליון, אף מידי אחיהם?
- 11 ולילי כחו, אשר אין שוה לו, ורחמיו וארפו אפיו לנו, אזי נכרתנו. בלא מניעה, מעל פני האדמה, לפני זמן רב, ואולי היינו גדונים לסבל ועונות התמיד.
- 12 הנני אומר לכם כי אלהים מצוכם להנחם מחטאיכם; ואם לא תעשו כן, לא תוכלו בשום אופן לרשת את מלכותו. אף אין זאת הכל, הוא אף מצוכם להנחם פן ימחה אתכם כליל מעל פני האדמה; אכן, פקוד ופקדכם בחמתו ולא ישיב מכם חרון אפו.
- 13 האינכם זוכרים את דברו אל לחי לאמר: והיה אם תשמרו את מצוותי, והצלחתם
- 2 Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?
- 3 Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.
- 4 And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.
- 5 Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.
- 6 And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?
- 7 And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:
- 8 Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.
- 9 Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?
- 10 And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?
- 11 Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.
- 12 Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.
- 13 Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall

- בְּאַרְצִי? וְעוֹד נֶאֱמַר: אִם לֹא תִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת
מִצְוֹתַי, תִּכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- 14 Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.
- 15 Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.
- 16 For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.
- 17 And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.
- 18 But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.
- 19 For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;
- 20 Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;
- 21 Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתִזְכְּרוּ, כִּי בְּכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא שִׁמְרוּ
הַלְּמָנִים אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי
יְהוָה. וְעַתָּה רֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי בָזָה קֶם וְהָיָה
דְּבַר יְהוָה, וְהַלְּמָנִים אֲכָלוּ נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי מֶאֱזָז
הַחֲלוּ לִפְשָׁע בְּאַרְצִי.
- וְאֹלֶם הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בַיּוֹם הַדִּין יִהְיֶה
לָיִנְסָם קָל מִדִּינְכֶם, אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לַחֲטֹא, וְאַף קָל
יוֹתֵר בְּעִבְרוֹם בְּעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, אִם לֹא תִנָּחֲמוּ.
- כִּי יֵשׁ דְּבָרֵי בְרִית רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר מוֹשְׁטִים
לְלָמָנִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הֵן אֲשֶׁר
הִסְבוּ לָהֶם לְהִשָּׂאֵר בְּבַעֲרוֹתָם; לָכֵן יִרְחַמֵם
יְהוָה וְיִאֲרִיד אֶת קִיּוֹמָם עַל הָאָרֶץ.
- וַיּוֹם יָבֹא אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶכּוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בְּדַבְּרוֹ
וְיִדְעוּ כִּי מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מִשּׁוּגָה. אֲזַי יִשְׁעוּ
רַבִּים מֵהֶם, כִּי יְהוָה יִרְחַם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר
יִקְרָא בְּשִׁמוֹ.
- אֲדָּה הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לְהִרְשִׁיעַ,
לֹא תִאֲרִיכוּ יָמִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, כִּי הַלְּמָנִים
יִשְׁלְחוּ בָכֶם; וְאִם לֹא תִנָּחֲמוּ מִחֲטֹאֵיכֶם,
יָבֹאוּ בְּמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִדְעוּ וּבְכִלְיוֹן מַחֲלָט
תִּפָּקְדוּ; כִּפִּי חֲרוֹן אַף יִהְיֶה זֹאת.
- כִּי הוּא לֹא יִתְּנֶכֶם כִּי תַחֲיוּ בְּפַעֲלֵכֶם אֲנֹן
לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת עַמּוֹ. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! אִם
כֵּן, הוּא יִבְכֶּר לְהַנִּיחַ לְלָמָנִים לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת
עַמּוֹ כֹּל, הַנִּקְרָאִים עִם נָפִי, אִם אֲמִנִם יִשְׁקַעוּ
בְּחֹטֵא וּפְשָׁע, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִיָּתָה לָהֶם שְׁפָעַת
אוֹר כֹּה רַבָּה וְאַחֵר נִתְּנָה לָהֶם יְדַעַת כֹּה רַבָּה
מֵאֵת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם;
- אֲכֹן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִם סִגְלָה לַיהוָה, אַחֵר
בְּרַכָּם יְהוָה עַל פְּנֵי כָּל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן
וְעַם; אַחֵר נִודְעוּ לָהֶם כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כִּפִּי חֲפָצָם
וְאֲמוֹנָתָם וְתַפְלָתָם עַל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה, וְקִיָּם עֲתָה,
וְאַשְׁרֵי עֲתִיד לָבֹא;
- אַחֵר פָּקַד אוֹתָם רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים; אַחֵר שִׁיחָם עִם
מַלְאָכִים, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהִים קוֹל יְהוָה;
וּבִהְנִיתָ לָהֶם רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְרוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְגַם

מתנות רבות: מתת הדבור בלשונות, מתת ההשפעה, מתת רוח הקדש ומתת התרגום;

gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

אכן, אחר אשר הוציאם אלהים מארץ ירושלים ביד יהוה, ואחר נצלו מרעב ומחלי ומכל מיני תחלואים; ואחר התעצמו במלחמה למען לא יאבדו; אחר הוצאו פעם בפעם משעבוד וננצרו ונשמרו עד היום הזה, ואחר הצליחם, עד כי התעשרו בכל.

22 Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

הנני אומר לכם, אם יפשעו בני העם הזה, אשר יד יהוה ברכתם הרבה מאד, אכן אם יפשעו על האור והדעת אשר בקרבם, אני אומר לכם, כי אם כה יעשו, יהיה דין הלמנים קל מדינם.

23 And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

כי הנה, דברי ברית יהוה מושטים ללמנים, אך לכם לא ינתנו אם תפשעו. האם לא דבר יהוה מפורשות ונזר בתקף כי אם תמרדו בו, תמחו עד תמכם מעל פני האדמה?

24 For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

לכן, בעבור זאת, למען לא תאבדו, שלח יהוה את מלאכו לפקד רבים מעמו, להשמיעם כי יצאו ויקראו בעז אל העם הזה לאמר: הנחמו מרעתכם, כי קרובה לבוא מלכות השמים;

25 And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

ולא יעברו ימים רבים וכן אלהים יבוא בתפארתו. והיתה תפארתו תפארת הבן הילוד היחיד אשר לאב. והוא מלא חסד וישר ואמת, ולו רב סבלנות ורחמים וארף אפים, מהיר לשמע את קריאות עמו ולענות לתפלותיהם.

26 And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

והנהו בא לגאל את אשר ישבילו לשם תשובה, על ידי אמונתם בשמו.

27 And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

לכן פנו דרך יהוה, כי קרוב היום אשר כל האדם יקצרו את פרי עמלם, איש כפי מעלליו; הצדיק יקצר את ישועת נפשו, כפי כח ישוע המשיח וגאלתו; והרשע יקצר את קללת נפשו, כפי כח השטן ושעבודו.

28 Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

והנה, זה קול המלאך הקורא אל העם.

29 Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

- ועתה, אחי האהובים, כי אחי אתם, ועליכם להיות אהובים; ועליכם לעשות מעשים הכוללים תשובה, כי קשה מאד לבכם על דבר אלהים, ואמנם בני כליון וכשלוני הנכם.
- 30 And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.
- וכדברי, עלמא, את הדברים האלה, והנה עלתה חמת העם עלי, על אשר אמרתי להם כי עם קשה לב וקשה ערף הם.
- 31 Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.
- ואף על אמרי להם כי הם בני כליון וכשלוני, רגזו עלי ובקשו לשלח ידם בי, להשליכני אל בית הכלא.
- 32 And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.
- אך יהוה לא הניחם לתפשני בעת ההיא להשליכני אל בית הכלא.
- 33 But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.
- אז קם עמולק ועמד לפניו והחל להשיף להם אף הוא. הנה, אין כל דברי עמולק כתובים, אולם חלקם כתובים בספר הזה.
- 34 And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

י

10

- אלה דברי עמולק אשר קרא אל העם אשר בארץ עמוניה לאמר:
- 1 Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:
- אני עמולק בן גדונה בן ישמעאל, צאצא לעמינדי, הוא עמינדי אשר פתר את הכתוב על קיר בית המקדש, אשר נכתב באצבע אלהים.
- 2 I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was the same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.
- ועמינדי היה צאצא לנפי בן לחי, אשר יצא מארץ ירושלם, הוא צאצא למנשה בן יוסף אשר אחיו מכרוהו למצרים.
- 3 And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.
- ולי שם בין כל יודעי; אכן, משפחתי גדולה ורבים חברי, ואף התעשרתי ממלאכת כפי.
- 4 And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.
- ואולם, אחר כל זאת, מעודי לא קניתי רב דעת על דרכי יהוה ועל נסתרותיו ועל כוח הנפלא. אמרתי כי מעודי לא ידעתי הרבה על הדברים האלה, אך טעות היא בידי, כי ראיתי רבות מנסתרותיו ומכוחו הנפלא; אכן, את שמירת העם בחיים.
- 5 Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

- בְּכָל זֹאת, הִקְשִׁיתִי אֶת לְבִי, כִּי פַעַמִּים רַבּוֹת נִקְרָאתִי, אֲךָ מֵאַנְתִּי לִשְׁמַע. עַל כֵּן יָדַעְתִּי עַל אוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲךָ מֵאַנְתִּי לִדְעוֹתָם; לְכֵן הוֹסַפְתִּי לְמַרְד בְּאֱלֹהִים, בְּרָשָׁעַת לְבִי, עַד הַיּוֹם הָרְבִיעִי לַחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁבִיעִי הַזֶּה, בִּשְׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וּבַעֲת נִסִּיעָתִי לְבַקֵּר קְרוֹב מִשְׁפָּחָה, הוֹפִיעַ מִלֵּאָף יְהוּה לִפְנֵי וְכֵה אָמַר: עֲמוּלֶךָ, שׁוּב אֶל בֵּיתְךָ כִּי תִכְלֹל נְבִיא יְהוּה, אִישׁ קָדוֹשׁ אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהִים בָּחַר; כִּי הוּא צָם יָמִים רַבִּים מִפְּנֵי חֲטָאֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְרָעַב. וְאַתָּה, הַבִּיֵּאֵהוּ אֶל בֵּיתְךָ וְכִלְכְּלֵהוּ, וְהוּא יִבְרַךְ אוֹתְךָ וְאֶת בֵּיתְךָ; וְנַחַה בְּרַכַּת יְהוּה עָלֶיךָ וְעַל בֵּיתְךָ.
- וְאַנִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי בְּקוֹל הַמִּלְאָךְ, וּפָנִיתִי לְשׁוּב אֶל בֵּיתִי. וּבִלְכָתִּי שָׁמָּה, מִצָּאתִי אֶת הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר הַמִּלְאָךְ לֵאמֹר: הַבִּיֵּאֵהוּ אֶל בֵּיתְךָ, וְהִנֵּה, הוּא הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֵלַיְכֶם עַל דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי הַמִּלְאָךְ: אִישׁ קָדוֹשׁ הוּא; עַל כֵּן יוֹדַע אָנִי כִּי קָדוֹשׁ הָאִישׁ, כִּי מִפִּי מִלֵּאָף אֱלֹהִים יֵצֵא הַדְּבָר.
- וַיּוֹדַע אָנִי כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָעִיד עָלֵיהֶם, אֲמַת הֵם; הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: חֵי יְהוּה כִּי שָׁלַח אֶת מִלְאָכּוֹ לְהוֹדִיעַנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; וְזֹאת הוּא עֲשֵׂה בְּעַת מְגוּרֵי עֲלָמָא זֶה בְּבֵיתִי.
- הִנֵּה, הוּא בֵּרַךְ אֶת בֵּיתִי; הוּא בֵּרַךְ אוֹתִי וְאֶת נְשׁוֹתַי וְאֶת יְלָדָי, וְאֶת אֲבִי וְאֶת קְרוֹבֵי מִשְׁפָּחָתִי; אַכֵּן, אֶת כָּל מִשְׁפָּחָתִי הוּא בֵּרַךְ, וּבְרַכַּת יְהוּה נָחָה עָלֵינוּ כְּפִי דְבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲמוּלֶךָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּרֹאוֹתָם כִּי יֵשׁ יוֹתֵר מֵעַד אֶחָד הַמַּעֲיִד עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָאֲשִׁמּוּס, וְאֵף עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאוּ, כְּפִי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.
- וְאוֹלָם הָיוּ שֵׁם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר זָמְמוּ לְשַׂאֵל אֶת עֲמוּלֶךָ וְאֶת עֲלָמָא שְׂאֵלוֹת, וְלַתְּפֹשׁ אוֹתָם בְּדְבָרֵיהֶם, בְּתַחבּוּלוֹת עֲרַמְתָּם, לְמַצֵּא עָלֵיהֶם רָאִיָּה וּלְשַׁלַּח אֶל שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם, לְשַׁפֵּט כְּפִי
- 6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.
- 7 As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.
- 8 And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.
- 9 And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.
- 10 And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.
- 11 For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.
- 12 And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.
- 13 Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the

- החוק, ולהרגם או לכלואם, ככל אשר יוכלו להציגם כפושעים כפי העדות אשר יעידו עליהם.
- 14 Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.
- 15 Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.
- 16 And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.
- 17 Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundation of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.
- 18 Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.
- 19 Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.
- 20 And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.
- 21 Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.
- 22 Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.
- והאנשים אשר בקשו להשמידם היו עורכי דין אשר נשכרו, או מנו על ידי העם, לקים את החוק בעת משפטיהם או בהשפט העם לפני השופטים על פשעיהם.
- ועורכי הדין האלה היו מלמדים בכל ארחות אדם ותחבולותיהם; וזאת למען ישפילו במלוי תפקידם.
- והם החלו לחקור את עמולק, למען יכשילוהו בדבריו, או יפילוהו בסתירת דבריו אשר ידבר.
- והם לא ידעו כי עמולק מבין את מזמרתם. והיה בהחלם לחקור אותו, ידע עמולק את מחשבותיהם ואמר אליהם: הוי, דור רשע ועקש, עורכי דין וחנפים, הן מניחים אתם את יסודות השטן; הנכם שמים פח ומוקש ללכוד את קדושי אלהים.
- הנכם מחשבים לעות את דרך הצדיקים ולהביא את חמת אלהים על ראשכם, אכן, כליון מחלט על העם הזה.
- צדק מושיע, מלכנו האחרון, אשר בקש למסור את המלוכה ולא מצא איש למסרה לו, וכך כונן ממשל על ידי קול העם; צדק הוא באמרו כי אם יבוא יום וקול העם יבחר עון, אשר היא שקיעה בפשיעה, אזי תגיע עתם לאבדון.
- והנני אומר לכם כי מיטיב יהוה לשפט אתכם על עוונותיכם; מיטיב הוא עשות בקראו אל עמו בקול מלאכיו: הנחמו, הנחמו מחטאיכם, כי קרובה לבוא מלכות שמים.
- אכן, טוב קראו בקול מלאכיו: ארדה אל עמי ובדי משפט ומישרים.
- ואני אומר לכם כי לולי תפלות הצדיקים אשר בארץ עתה, נפקדים הייתם היום בכליון מחלט, אף לא במבול כבימי נח, כי אם ברעב ובמגפה ובחרב.

- 23 But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.
- וּמִפְּנֵי תַפְלוֹת הַצְדִּיקִים חָסִים עֲלֵיכֶם; עַל כֵּן, אִם תִּדְּחוּ מִקִּרְבְּכֶם אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים, לֹא יִמָּנַע יְהוָה מִנִּטּוֹת יָדוֹ עֲלֵיכֶם, כִּי בַחֲרוֹן אַפּוֹ יֵצֵא עֲלֵיכֶם, וַיִּכֶּה אֶתְכֶם בָּרָעַב וּבִמְגֹפָה וּבַחֶרֶב; וְקִרְבֹּב הַיּוֹם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנְחַמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם.
- 24 And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.
- וְחִמַּת הָעָם עָלְתָה עַל עֲמוּלֵק, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ לֵאמֹר: הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה מְגַדֵּף אֶת חֻקֵּינוּ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֻקֵּי צֶדֶק, וְאֵת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין הַחֲכָמִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרְנוּ.
- 25 But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?
- אֲזַי הוֹשִׁיט עֲמוּלֵק אֶת יָדוֹ וְקָרָא אֲלֵיהֶם בְּקוֹל אֲדִיר לֵאמֹר: הֵי, דּוֹר רָשָׁע וְעָקֹשׁ. מַדּוּעַ קָנָה הַשָּׂטָן שְׁבִיטָה כֹּה רַבָּה בְּלִבְכֶם? מַדּוּעַ תִּכְנְעוּ לוֹ עַד כִּי יִשְׁלִיט עֲלֵיכֶם כּוֹחַ לַעְוֹר אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן לֹא תִבְיִנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֲמֻרִים עַל פִּי אֲמִתָּתָם?
- 26 For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.
- הֲאִם נִגַּד חֻקְתְּכֶם הַעִידוֹתִי? אֵינְכֶם מְבִינִים; אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי נֶגֶד חֻקְתְּכֶם, וְלֹא כֵן הַדְּבָר, כִּי בַעַד חֻקְתְּכֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי לְגֹזֵר דִּינְכֶם לְחֻבָּה.
- 27 And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.
- וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עוֹלַת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְשׁוֹפְטֵיכֶם הִיא הַמְּנִיחָה אֶת יְסוֹד חֲרָבֹן הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- 28 And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.
- וּכְדִבַּר עֲמוּלֵק אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, קָרְאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עָלָיו לֵאמֹר: עַתָּה יָדַעְנוּ כִּי הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה בֶּן הַשָּׂטָן, כִּי כָזָב לָנוּ; כִּי דִבַּר נֶגֶד חֻקְתָּנוּ וְהִנֵּה אוֹמֵר הוּא כִּי לֹא דִבַּר נִגַּדָה.
- 29 And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.
- וְעוֹד, אֶת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְאֵת שׁוֹפְטֵינוּ גָדַף.
- 30 And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.
- וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין שָׂמוּ אֶל לִבָּם לִזְכֹּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עָלָיו.
- 31 And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בְּתוֹכָם וּשְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא זִיזְרוֹם. וְהוּא עֶמֶד בְּרֹאשׁ הַמַּאֲשִׁימִים אֶת עֲמוּלֵק וְאֶת עֲלֵמָא, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ אֶחָד הַמְּמַחִים בֵּינֵיהֶם, וְרַב עֲסָקוֹ בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם.
- 32 Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.
- וְתַכְלִית עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין הָאֵלֶּה הָיְתָה בְּצַעַ; וְזֹאת הֵם הִשִּׁיגוּ כְּפִי תַעֲסוֹקָתָם.

יֵא

11

וְחָק הָיָה בְּחֻקֵּי מוֹשִׁיָּע, אֲשֶׁר כָּל אִישׁ שׁוֹפֵט
עַל פִּי הַחֹק, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר מָנָה לְשֹׁפֵט, יִקְבַּל אֶת
מִשְׁכָּרְתּוֹ כְּפִי הַזְּמַן אֲשֶׁר עָמַל לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת
אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵי לְמִשְׁפָּט.

אִם חָב אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ וְלֹא שָׁלַם אֶת חוּבוֹ,
הוּא נִתְּבַע לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט, וְזֶה הִפְעִיל אֶת
סְמִכוּתוֹ וְשָׁלַח פְּקִידִים לְהֵבִיא אֶת הָאִישׁ
לִפְנָיו. וְהוּא שָׁפֵט אוֹתוֹ לְפִי הַחֹק וּלְפִי
הָעֵדוּת אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ עָלָיו; וְכֵן הִכְרִחַ
הָאִישׁ לְשַׁלֵּם אֶת חוּבוֹ, וְלֹא, הִפְשֵׁט
אוֹ נָדָה מִקֶּרֶב עַמּוֹ כְּגַנֵּב וְכַשּׁוּדָר.

וּמִשְׁכָּרְתָּ הַשׁוֹפֵט הִיְתָה כְּפִי זְמָנוֹ, סִנִּין זָהָב
אֶחָד לְיוֹם אוֹ סְנוֹם כֶּסֶף, הַשְּׁוֶה לְסִנִּין זָהָב;
וְזֹאת עַל פִּי הַחֹק הַמָּסוּר.

וְאֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת מִטְּבְּעוֹתֵיהֶם הַשּׁוֹנִים, זָהָב
וְכֶסֶף, כְּפִי עֶרְכָם. וּשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִקְרְאוּ עַל
פִּי הַנְּפִיִּים. כִּי הֵם לֹא חֲשָׁבוּ אֶת עֶרְכָם וְאֶת
מִדּוֹתֵיהֶם כְּדֶרֶךְ הַיְּהוּדִים אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם;
כִּי הֵם שָׁנוּ אֶת מַעְרְכָתָם חֲשׁוֹב עֶרְכָם
וּמִדּוֹתֵיהֶם עַל פִּי דַעַת הָעָם וְנִסְבּוֹתֵיהֶם
בְּכָל דּוֹר, עַד תַּחֲלַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים, וְהֵם
נִכְוֶנוּ אֶז בְּיַד הַמֶּלֶךְ מוֹשִׁיָּע.

וְזֹאת מַעְרְכַת הַמִּטְּבְּעוֹת: סִנִּין זָהָב,
סְאוֹן זָהָב, שׁוֹם זָהָב וְלִמְנָה זָהָב.

סְנוֹם כֶּסֶף, אֲמִנּוֹר כֶּסֶף, אֶזְרוֹם כֶּסֶף
וְאוֹנְטִי כֶסֶף.

עֶרֶךְ סְנוֹם כֶּסֶף שְׁוֶה לְסִנִּין זָהָב, וּבְמַחִיר
כָּל אֶחָד מֵאֵלֶּה נִקְנְתָה מִנֵּת שְׁעוּרִים,
אוֹ מִנֵּת כָּל דָּגָן.

עֶרֶךְ סְאוֹן זָהָב כְּפָלִים מֵעֶרֶךְ סִנִּין.

עֶרֶךְ שׁוֹם זָהָב כְּפָלִים מֵעֶרֶךְ סְאוֹן.

וְעֶרֶךְ לִמְנָה זָהָב כְּעֶרֶךְ כָּל הַמִּטְּבְּעוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.

עֶרֶךְ אֲמִנּוֹר כֶּסֶף שְׁנֵי סְנוֹמִים.

1 Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

2 Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

3 And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

4 Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

5 Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

6 A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

7 A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

8 Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

9 And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

10 And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

- 12 And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.
עֲרֹם אֶזְרוֹם כֶּסֶף אֶרְבָּעָה סֵנוּמִים.
- 13 And an onti was as great as them all.
וְעֲרֹם אוֹנְטִי כְּעֲרֹם כָּל הַמִּטְבָּעוֹת הָאֵלֶּה.
- 14 Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—
וְזֶה עֲרֹם הַמִּטְבָּעוֹת הַקְּטָנִים בְּמַעְרַכְתָּ כִּסְפָם:
- 15 A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.
שִׁבְלוֹן הוּא חֲצִי סֵנוּם; עַל כֵּן נִקְנְתָה מִחֲצִית מִנֵּת שְׁעוּרִים בְּעֵד שִׁבְלוֹן אֶחָד.
- 16 And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.
שִׁבְלוּם הוּא חֲצִי שִׁבְלוֹן.
- 17 And a leah is the half of a shiblum.
לֵאָה הִיא מִחֲצִית שִׁבְלוּם.
- 18 Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.
זֶה מִנְיָנָם לְפִי מַעְרַכְתָּ מְדוּתֵיהֶם.
- 19 Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.
עֲרֹם אַנְטִיוֹן זָהָב שָׁוֶה לְשִׁלְשָׁה שִׁבְלוֹנִים.
- 20 Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.
וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין רַק לְתַכְלִית בְּצַע כֶּסֶף פָּעִלּוּ, כִּי קִבְּלוּ אֶת מַשְׁכָּרְתָּם כְּפִי תַעֲסוּקָתָם. עַל כֵּן עוֹרְרוּ אֶת הָעָם לְמַהוּמוֹת וּלְאֵי סִדְרִים וְרִשְׁעָה לְהַרְבוֹת לָהֶם תַעֲסוּקָה, לְמַעַן הִגְדִּיל שְׂכָרָם כְּרִבּוֹת הַתְּבִיעוֹת לְמִשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר הוּבְאוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם; לְכֵן שָׂסוּ אֶת הָעָם בְּעֲלָמָא וּבְעַמּוּלֶק.
- 21 And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?
וְזֵאֶזְרוֹם הֵחֵל לְחַקֵּר אֶת עַמּוּלֶק, לֵאמֹר: הַתַּעֲנֶה עַל שְׁאֵלוֹת אַחַדוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶשְׁאַלְךָ? וְזֵאֶזְרוֹם הָיָה מֵמָחָה בְּתַחְבּוּלוֹת הַשָּׁטָן, לְאַבֵּד אֶת אֲשֶׁר טוֹב הוּא; לְכֵן אָמַר אֶל עַמּוּלֶק: הַתַּעֲנֶה עַל הַשְׁאֵלוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן לְפָנֶיךָ?
- 22 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.
וְאָמַר לוֹ עַמּוּלֶק: כֵּן, אִם תְּהִיֵּינָה כְּפִי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבִּי; כִּי לֹא אֶמַר דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַפֶּךְ רוּחַ יְהוָה. וְאָמַר אֵלָיו זֵאֶזְרוֹם: הִנֵּה שֵׁשׁ אוֹנְטִיִּים כֶּסֶף, וְאֵת כָּלֶם אֶתֵּן לְךָ אִם תִּכְחֹשׁ אֶת מְצִיאוֹת הַקִּיָּם הָעֶלְיוֹן.
- 23 Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?
וְעַמּוּלֶק אָמַר: הוּי, בֶּן שְׂאוּל, מַדּוּעַ תִּנְסֶה אוֹתִי? הֲלֹא יָדַעְתָּ כִּי אֵין הַצַּדִּיק נִכְנָע לְפִתּוּיִים אֲשֶׁר בָּאֵלֶּה?
- 24 Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.
הַתְּאֲמִין כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים? אָנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ: לֹא! אַתָּה יוֹדַע כִּי אֵכֵן יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲךָ בְּצַע כֶּסֶף אֶהוּב עָלֶיךָ יוֹתֵר מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 25 And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto
וְאַתָּה כַּחֲשֵׁת לִי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים; אָמַרְתָּ לִּי, הִנֵּה שֵׁשׁ אוֹנְטִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר רַב עֶרְכָּם, לְךָ אֶתֵּנָם,

בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר בִּלְבָבְךָ אָמַרְתָּ לְמִנְעָם מִמֶּנִּי. הֵן
אֲךָ רָצִיתָ כִּי אֶכְחַשׁ בְּאֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמֶת, אֵל חַי,
לְמַעַן תִּזְכַּח לְאַבְדָּנִי. וְעַתָּה, רְאֵה כִּי עַל רָעַתְךָ
הַגְדוֹלָה יִשְׁלַם לְךָ כְּגִמּוּלָּהּ.

thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and
it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that
thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great
evil thou shalt have thy reward.

26 And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?
וְאָמַר אֱלִיזָארוֹם: הֲתֹאמַר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים
אֱמֶת, אֵל חַי?

27 And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.
וְאָמַר עֲמוּלֵק: אָכֵן, יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים אֱמֶת, אֵל חַי.

28 Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?
וְאָמַר זְעִזְרוֹם: הֲיֵשׁ יוֹתֵר מֵאֱלֹהִים אֶחָד?

29 And he answered, No.
וְהוּא עָנָהוּ: לֹא.

30 Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֱלִיזָארוֹם: אֵיךְ יָדַעְתָּ אֵת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה?

31 And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.
וְהוּא אָמַר: מִלְּאֵךְ הוֹדִיעַנִי אוֹתָם.

32 And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of
God?
וְזִעְזְרוֹם הוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר: מִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא?
הָאֵם הוּא בֶן אֱלֹהִים?

33 And he said unto him, Yea.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אָכֵן.

34 And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And
Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it
is impossible for him to deny his word.
וְעוֹד אָמַר זְעִזְרוֹם: הֲיִשְׁעֶה אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם
חוֹטְאִים? וְעֲמוּלֵק עָנָה וְאָמַר לוֹ: אֲנִי אוֹמֵר
לְךָ: לֹא, כִּי לֹא יוּכַל לְכַחַשׁ בְּדַבָּרוֹ.

35 Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things;
for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall
come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to
command God.
וְזִעְזְרוֹם אָמַר אֶל הָעָם: שִׁמְרוּ וְזָכְרוּ אֵת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; הֵן הוּא אָמַר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים
אֶחָד בִּלְבָד, וְאוֹלָם, הוּא אוֹמֵר, כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים
יָבוֹא, אֲךָ הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת עַמּוֹ, כְּאִלּוּ בִידְיוֹ
סְמִכוֹת לְצִוּוֹת עַל אֱלֹהִים.

36 Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou
sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because
I said he shall not save his people in their sins.
וְעוֹד אָמַר אֱלִיזָארוֹם: הִנֵּה שָׁקַרְתָּ,
אָמַרְתָּ כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי כְּאִלּוּ בִידִי סְמִכוֹת לְצִוּוֹת
עַל אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי אֲמַרְי כִּי הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעַ
אֶת עַמּוֹ וְהֵם חוֹטְאִים.

37 And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for
I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can
inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except
ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in
your sins.
וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ שֵׁנִית כִּי הוֹשִׁיעַ לֹא יוֹשִׁיעֵם בְּעוֹדָם
חוֹטְאִים; כִּי אֲנִי יוֹכֵחַ לְכַחַשׁ בְּדַבָּרוֹ, וְהוּא אָכֵן
אָמַר כִּי כָּל טָמֵא לֹא יִירֶשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם;
לָכֵן, אֵיךְ תִּהְיֶה וְלֹא תִירֶשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם?
לָכֵן אֲנִי יוֹכֵחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ בְּעוֹדָם חוֹטְאִים.

38 Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal
Father?
וְזִעְזְרוֹם הוֹסִיף וְאָמַר לוֹ: הָאֵם בֶּן אֱלֹהִים הוּא
עֲצָמוֹ אֲב הָעוֹלָמִים?

- 39 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;
- וְאָמַר לוֹ עֲמוּלֵק: אָכֵן, הוּא עֲצֵמוֹ אֲב הָעוֹלָמִים, אָבִי שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ וְכָל מְלָאִים, הוּא רֵאשִׁית וְהוּא אַחֲרִית, הוּא הָרֵאשׁוֹן וְהוּא הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 40 And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.
- וְהוּא יָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת עַמּוֹ; וְהוּא יִקְבֹּל עָלָיו אֶת פְּשָׁעֵי הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשֵׁמוֹ; אֵלֶּה הֵם אֲשֶׁר יַחֲיוּ חַיֵּי עוֹלָם, וְלִזְוִלָתָם לֹא תִהְיֶה יְשׁוּעָה.
- 41 Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.
- לְכֵן יִשָּׂאֲרוּ הָרָשָׁעִים כְּאִלּוּ לֹא בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה, זִוִּילַת הַתֵּרֶת חֲבֻלֵי הַמָּוֶת; כִּי הִנֵּה בָּא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַמֵּתִים יָקוּמוּ לְתַחִיָּה וְיַעֲמָדוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִשְׁפָּטוּ כְּמַעֲשֵׂיהֶם;
- 42 Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.
- כִּי יֵשׁ מָוֶת הַנִּקְרָא מָוֶת חֲמָרִי; וּמוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחִי יַתִּיר אֶת חֲבֻלֵי הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמָרִי לְמַעַן יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה.
- 43 The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.
- אֲנִי יִתְאַחֲדוּ שְׁנֵי הָרוּחַ וְהַגּוּף בְּצוּרַת הַגּוּף הַמְּשֻׁלְמָת; אֵיבָרִים וּמַפְרָקִים יִשְׁוּבוּ לְמִקְוָם כְּפִי הַיּוֹתָנוּ כַּעַת; וְאֶנְחִנוּ נֹבָא לְעֵמָד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְיִדְעֵתְנוּ תִּהְיֶה כִּידְעֵתְנוּ עַתָּה, וְיִזְכְּרֻנָּנוּ יִהְיֶה בְּהִיר עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֲשַׁמְנוּ;
- 44 Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but everything shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.
- וְהַשִּׁיבָה הַזֹּאת תָּבוֹא עַל הַכֹּל, זָקֵן וְצֶעִיר, חָיִב וְחָפְזִי, זָכָר וְנִקְבָּה, רָשָׁע וְצַדִּיק, וְלֹא תִחָסֵר מֵהֶם שְׂעָרָה מִרְאָשָׁם. הַכֹּל יִשְׁוּבֶה אֶל צוּרְתוֹ הַמְּשֻׁלְמָת, כְּמוֹ הַיּוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא בְּגוּף. וְהוּא יִבָּא וְיַעֲמֵד לְמִשְׁפָּט לִפְנֵי כָּס הַמְּשִׁיחִי הַבֵּן, וְאֱלֹהִים הָאָב, וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֱלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים אֶחָד, לְהַשְׁפֵּט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.
- 45 Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.
- הִנֵּה דִבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם עַל מוֹת הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה וְכֵן עַל תְּחִית הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַגּוּף בֶּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה קָם לְגוּף אֱלִמּוּת; אָכֵן זֹאת מִן הַמָּוֶת, מִן הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמָרִי, קָם אֶל הַחַיִּים לְמַעַן לֹא יָמוּתוּ עוֹד. וְרוּחַם תִּתְאַחֵד עִם גּוּפָם וְלֹא יִפְרְדּוּ עוֹד לְעוֹלָם. כֹּךְ הוּפָה הַכֹּל רוּחָנִי וְאֱלִמּוּת, לְמַעַן לֹא יָרְאוּ עוֹד שַׁחַת.
- 46 Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.
- וּכְכֹלּוֹת עֲמוּלֵק אֶת דִּבְרָיו אֵלֶּה הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ הָעָם שְׁנֵי, וְגַם זִעְזְרוֹם הֵחֵל מְרַעֵד. כֹּה כָּלוּ דִבְרֵי עֲמוּלֵק, וְאָכֵן זֶה כָּל אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי.

יב

12

וּבִרְאוֹת עֲלָמָא כִּי הִשְׁתִּיקוּ דְּבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק
אֶת זְאִזְרוֹם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נֹכַח כִּי תִפְשׂוּ עֲמוּלֵק
בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁקֵר וְתִרְמִית לְמַעַן הִשְׁמִידוֹ; וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ
כִּי הִחַל זְאִזְרוֹם מִרְעִיד מִפְּנֵי הַכֶּרֶת אֲשֶׁמְתּוֹ,
הוּא פָתַח אֶת פִּי וְדִבֵּר אֵלָיו, לֵאשֶׁר אֶת דְּבָרֵי
עֲמוּלֵק, וּלְבָאֵר דְּבָרִים נֹסְפִים, וּלְגַלּוֹת אֶת
כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵעֵבֶר לְדְבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק.

וְהָיָה כִּי הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסָפוּ מִסְבִּיב שְׁמַעְיוֹ אֶת
דְּבָרֵי עֲלָמָא אֶל זְאִזְרוֹם, כִּי רַב הָיָה שָׁם
הַהֶמוֹן. וְכִדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה דִּבֶּר:

הִנֵּה זְאִזְרוֹם, נִתְפָּשֶׁת בְּתִרְמִיתוֹ וּבִמְזֻמָּתוֹ, כִּי
לֹא רַק לְאִנָּשִׁים שִׁקְרָתָהּ, כִּי אִם גַּם לְאֱלֹהִים;
הֵן יוֹדֵעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל מַחְשְׁבוֹתֶיהָ, וְהִנֵּה
רוֹאֶה כִּי מַחְשְׁבוֹתֶיהָ נֹדְעוֹת לָנוּ עַל יְדֵי רוּחוֹ.

הִנֵּה נֹכַחְתָּ כִּי יָדַעְנוּ כִּי מְזֻמָּתָהּ עֲרוּמָהּ מְאֹד,
כְּעֲרֻמַּת הַשָּׁטָן, לְרִמּוֹת וּלְשִׁקָּר לְעַם הַזֶּה
לְמַעַן תִּקְוִימָם אוֹתוֹ עָלֵינוּ, לְגַדְּפָנוּ וּלְגַרְשָׁנוּ.

וְזֹאת מְזֻמַּת הַשָּׁטָן, וְהוּא הַפְעִיל אֶת כָּחוֹ
בָּךְ. מִי יִתֵּן וְתִזְכֹּר כִּי דְבָרֵי אֱלִידָהּ הוּא מִפְּנֵה
אֶל הַכָּל.

הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לְכָלְכֶם, כִּי פֹחַ יְקוֹשׁ מִן הַשָּׁטָן
הָיָה זֶה, וְהוּא הִנִּיחוֹ לְלַכְּדָהּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,
לְשַׁעְבְּדָכֶם אֵלָיו, לְאַסֹּר אֶתְכֶם בְּזִקּוֹ וּלְכַבֵּל
אֶתְכֶם לְאַבְדּוֹן עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי כֹחַ שְׁבָתוֹ.

וּכְדִבְרֵי עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִחַל
זְאִזְרוֹם מִרְעִיד בְּחֻזְקָה, כִּי שָׁכַנְעַי יוֹתֵר וְיוֹתֵר
כִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים אֵמֶת, וְאֵף שָׁכַנְעַי כִּי לְעֲלָמָא
וּלְעֲמוּלֵק הָיְתָה יְדִיעָה עָלָיו, מִפְּנֵי שָׁכַנְעוֹ כִּי
הֵם יָדְעוּ אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹתָיו וְאֶת כּוֹנְנוֹת לְבוֹ; כִּי
כֹחַ נָתַן לָהֶם לְדַעַת עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כִּפִּי
רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.

אֲזַי הִחַל זְאִזְרוֹם לְחַקֵּר אוֹתָם בְּשִׂקְיָהּ,
בְּעִבּוֹר יָדַע יוֹתֵר עַל מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא
אָמַר אֶל עֲלָמָא: מַה פֶּשֶׁר דְּבָרֵי עֲמוּלֵק עַל
תַּחֲתֵי הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר הַכָּל יִקְוִימוּ מִן הַמֵּתִים,

1 Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

2 Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

3 Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

4 And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

5 Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

6 And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

7 Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

8 And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the

הַצָּדִיק וְאִשֶּׁר אֵינוֹ צָדִיק, וְיֻבְּאוּ לְעֹמֵד לִפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים וְלִהְשָׁפֵט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם?

unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

וְעֲלָמָא הֵחֵל לְבָאֵר לוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
וְאָמַר: יָדִיעַת הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים נְתֻנָּה
לְרַבִּים, אֲךָ מִצְוִים הֵם חֲמוּרוֹת שֶׁלֹּא לְהַתְחַלֵּק
בָּהֶן, כִּי אִם רַק כְּפִי חֵלֶק דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֹתֵן
לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם; וְזֹאת עַל פִּי הַתְּמַסְרוֹתָם אֵלָיו
וְשִׁקְיָתָם עַל דְּבָרוֹ.

9 And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

לָכֵן, כָּל מִקְשָׁה לְבֹו יִקְבַּל חֵלֶק מִצֶּעֶר מִדְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים; וְאִשֶּׁר לֹא יִקְשֶׁה אֶת לְבֹו, יִקְבַּל מִנָּה
גְּדוּלָּה יוֹתֵר מִדְּבָרוֹ, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִנָּתֵן לוֹ לְדַעַת
אֶת נִסְתָּרוֹת אֱלֹהִים, וְיִדְעוּ בְּמֵלֶאךָן.

10 And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

וְאִשֶּׁר יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, מִנָּה קִטְנָה מִדְּבָרוֹ תִּתֵּן
לָהֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ מֵאוּמָה עַל נִסְתָּרוֹתָיו;
אֲזִי נִשְׁבִּים הֵם בְּיַד הַשָּׁטָן, וּבְרָצוֹנוֹ הֵם
מוֹבְלִים אֵלָיו כְּלִיּוֹן. זֶה פֶּשֶׁר חֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל.

11 And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

וְעַמּוּלֶק דִּבֶּר בְּרוּרוֹת עַל הַמָּוֶת, וְעַל עֲלִיָּה
מִכֵּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה לְכֵן אֱלֻמוֹת וְעַל הַהִבָּאָה
לִפְנֵי כֹס אֱלֹהִים לְהִשְׁפֵּט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם.

12 And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

אֲזִי, אִם הִקְשָׁה לְבִנּוֹ, אָכֵן, אִם הִקְשִׁינוּ אֶת
לְבָנוֹ עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, עַד כִּי הוּא לֹא יִמָּצָא בָנוּ,
אֲזִי אֵינִי יִהְיֶה מִצָּבָנוּ, כִּי אֲזִי יִגְזַר דִּינֵנוּ לְחוּבָה.

13 Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

כִּי יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ דְּבָרֵינוּ; אָכֵן, כָּל מַעֲשֵׂינוּ
יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ וְלֹא נִמָּצָא זִכָּר; גַּם מִחֲשַׁבּוֹתֵינוּ
יִרְשִׁיעוּנוּ. וּבִמִּצָּב הָאֵים הַזֶּה לֹא נָעַז לְהִבִּיט
מִעֲלֵה אֵל אֱלֹהֵינוּ; וְאֵלּוּ הֵיךְ בִּידְנוּ, בְּרָצוֹן
הֵינּוּ מִצְוִים עַל הַסְּלָעִים וְעַל הַהָרִים לְנַפֵּל
עָלֵינוּ לְהַסְתִּירֵנוּ מִפָּנָיו.

14 For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

אֲךָ כְּזֹאת לֹא תִהְיֶה; בּוֹא נִבְּאֵם וְנִנְעֵמֵם
לִפְנֵי וְהוּא בְּתַפְאָרְתּוֹ וּבְכֹחוֹ וּבְגִבּוּרְתּוֹ
וּבְהוֹדוֹ וּבְשִׁלְטוֹנוֹ, וְנוֹדָה, לְבוֹשֶׁתְּנוּ הַנִּצָּחִית,
כִּי כָל מִשְׁפָּטָיו צָדִיק; כִּי יִשָּׁר הוּא בְּכָל פְּעֻלָּיו,
וְכִי רַחוּם הוּא לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם, וְכִי לוֹ הַכֹּחַ לְגָאֵל
כָּל אָדָם הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּשֵׁמוֹ וְהַנּוֹתֵן פְּרִי הַמַּעֲד
עַל תְּשׁוּבָתוֹ.

15 But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם, אֲזִי בָּא הַמָּוֶת, הַמָּוֶת הַשֵּׁנִי,
אֲשֶׁר הוּא מָוֶת רוּחָנִי; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר מֵת וְהוּא

16 And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in

חוּטָא, וּמוֹתוֹ מוֹת הַגּוֹף, אֲזִי תָבוֹא עִתּוֹ לְמוֹת
גַּם מְוֹת רוּחָנִי; אַכֵּן, הוּא יְמוֹת מְוֹת בְּאִשְׁרֵי
לְדַבְּרֵי צֶדֶק.

his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

אֲזִי תָבוֹא הָעֵת וְיִסְוִרִיהֶם יִהְיוּ כִּיִּם אֵשׁ וְנִפְרִית
אֲשֶׁר שְׁלֵהֲבָתוֹ עוֹלָה לְנֶצַח נֶצְחִים; וְאֲזִי תָבוֹא
עֵת הָאֶסְרָם בְּזֻקִים לְאֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי כֹחַ
שְׁבִית הַשָּׁטָן אֲשֶׁר שֶׁעֲבָדָם כְּרָצוֹנוֹ.

17 Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם, יִהְיֶה אֲזִי מִצְבְּכֶם כְּאֵלּוֹ
לֹא בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה; כִּי הֵם לֹא יוּכְלוּ לְהַגְאֹל עַל
פִּי צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים, אֲפִי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לְמוֹת, כִּי אֵין
עוֹד הַשְּׁחָתָה.

18 Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת עֲלֵמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
הַשְּׁתוּמְמוֹ הָאֲנָשִׁים עוֹד יוֹתֵר.

19 Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

וְהָיָה שֵׁם אִישׁ אֶחָד, אַנְטִיוֹנָה שְׁמוֹ, וְהוּא
מוֹשֵׁל רָאשֵׁי בִינִיָּהֶם. וְהוּא בָּא וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:
מָה הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ, כִּי הָאָדָם יָקוּם
מִן הַמָּתִים וְיִשְׁתַּנֶּה מִכֵּן הַתְּמוּתָה הַזֶּה לְכֵן
אֲלֵמּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ לֹא תְּמוּת הַנֶּפֶשׁ לְעוֹלָם?

20 But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state that the soul can never die?

מָה כְּוִנַּת הַכְּתוּב בְּכֹתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ כִּי אֱלֹהִים
הַשְּׁכִין כְּרוּבִים וְלֵהֵט הַחֶרֶב מִקֶּדֶם לְגַן עֵדֶן,
כֵּן יָבוֹאוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרָאשׁוֹנִים וְאָכְלוּ מִפְּרֵי עֵץ
הַחַיִּים וַחֲיוּ לְעוֹלָם? וְכֵן רוֹאִים אֲנִיחָנוּ כִּי לֹא
נִתְּנָה לָהֶם כָּל אֲפֻשְׁרוֹת לַחַיּוֹת לְעוֹלָם.

21 What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלֵמָא: זֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר עֲמַדְתִּי
לְבַאֵר. רְאִינוּ כִּי אָדָם נָפַל מִמְּרוֹמָיִם, מִפְּנֵי
אֲכִילַת הַפֵּרִי הָאֲסוּר, כְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים. וְכֵן
רוֹאִים אֲנִיחָנוּ כִּי עַל יְדֵי נְפִילָתוֹ הָיָה כָּל בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם לִבְנֵי כָלִיוֹן וְכִשְׁלוֹן.

22 Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain, now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֵלּוֹ יָכַל אָדָם בַּיּוֹם
הַהוּא לֶאֱכֹל מִפְּרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים, לֹא הָיָה כָּל
מָוֶת, וְדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הָיָה בָּטֵל, וְאֱלֹהִים הָיָה
כְּמַכְזֵב כִּי הוּא אַכֵּן אָמַר: בַּיּוֹם אֲכָלְךָ
מִהַפְּרִי הָאֲסוּר מוֹת תָּמוּת.

23 And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

וְאֲנִיחָנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי הַמָּוֶת בָּא עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם,
וְהוּא הַמָּוֶת הַחֲמִירִי אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר עֲמוּלֵק.
וְאוּלָּם נָתַן לָאָדָם מִרְחֵב פֶּעֶלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּתַחֲמוֹ
הוּא יָכֹל לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֻטָּא, עַל כֵּן נִהְפְּכוּ הַחַיִּים

24 And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a

עֲלָמָא יב:כה–לב

עֲתָה לְתַקּוּפַת נְסִיּוֹן, תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת לְעַמּוֹד
לְקִרְאָת אֱלֹהִים. תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת לְמַצֵּב
הַנִּצְחִי הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַרְנוּ, הַחֵל אַחֵר
תַּחֲיִית הַמֵּתִים.

time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us,
which is after the resurrection of the dead.

וְאִלּוּלִי תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּכְנָה מִסּוּד
הָעוֹלָם, לֹא יִכָּלֶה לִּהְיוֹת תַּחֲיִית מֵתִים. אֲךָ
תִּכְנִית גָּאֻלָּה אֶכֶן הוּכְנָה, וְהִיא אֲשֶׁר תָּבִיא
אֶת תַּחֲיִית הַמֵּתִים אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ דִּבֵּר.

25 Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from
the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of
the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to
pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

וְהִנֵּה, אִלּוּ יָכֻלוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים לָבוֹא
וּלְאָכַל מֵעֵץ הַחַיִּים, הָיוּ הֵם אֲמֻלִּים לְעוֹלָם,
כִּי לֹא הָיְתָה לָהֶם תְּקוּפַת הַתְּכּוֹנְנוֹת; וְאִזּוֹ
הָיְתָה מוֹפְרַת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, וְדִבֵּר אֱלֹהִים
הָיָה דְּבַר בָּטָל, חֲסֵר תִּקְוָה.

26 And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have
gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been
forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of
redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would
have been void, taking none effect.

אֲךָ לֹא כֵן הָיָה; כִּי הִכְרַח הַמּוֹת לְבְנֵי אָדָם;
וְאַחֵר מוֹתָם מִכְּרַחֲמֵם הֵם לָבוֹא לְהִשְׁפֹּט בְּאוֹתוֹ
הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר דְּבַרְנוּ עָלָיו, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַקֵּץ.

27 But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they
must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same
judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר מָנָה אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַחֲוּלוּ הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה לְאָדָם, הוּא רָאָה לְנִכּוֹן לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת
הָאָדָם עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיהֶם.

28 And after God had appointed that these things should come unto
man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know
concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

עַל כֵּן שְׁלַח מַלְאָכִים לְדַבֵּר אִתָּם; וְאֵלֶּה נָתַנוּ
לְבְנֵי אָדָם לְחַזוֹת אֶת תִּפְאָרְתּוֹ.

29 Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to
behold of his glory.

וּמִן הָעֵת הַהִיא וְהִלָּאָה הֵם הַחֲלוּ לְקִרְאָה
בְּשֵׁמוֹ. עַל כֵּן, דִּבֵּר אֱלֹהִים עִם בְּנֵי אָדָם
וְהוֹדִיעָם אֶת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּכְנָה
מִסּוּד הָעוֹלָם; וְהוּא הוֹדִיעָם אוֹתָהּ כְּפִי
אֲמוּנָתָם וְתִשּׁוּבָתָם וּמַעֲשֵׂי קֳדָשָׁם.

30 And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore
God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of
redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the
world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and
repentance and their holy works.

לְכֵן הוּא נָתַן מִצְוֹת לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם. תַּחֲלָה
עָבְרוּ הֵם עַל הַמִּצְוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנוֹת, בְּאֲשֶׁר
לְעֵנֵינוּ הַחֲמֵר, וְהָיוּ כְּאֱלֹהִים, לְדַעַת טוֹב וְרָע,
וְשָׂמוּ עֲצָמָם בְּמַצֵּב פְּעֻלָּה, אוֹ הוֹשְׂמוּ בְּמַצֵּב
אֲשֶׁר יוֹכֵלוּ לַפְּעֵל כְּפִי חֲפָצָם וּרְצוֹנָם, אִם
לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת וְאִם לְהָרַע;

31 Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first
transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal,
and becoming as Gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in
a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills
and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

לְכֵן נָתַן לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים מִצְוֹת, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעָם
אֶת תִּכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה, לְבַל יַרְעוּ, וְהוֹדִיעָם אֶת
הָעֲנֹשׁ לְעוֹשֵׂי רָעָה, וְהוּא הַמּוֹת הַשֵּׁנִי, מוֹת
נִצְחִי בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְּרֵי צֶדֶק; כִּי לְבְנֵי כְּאֵלֶּה אֵין
לְתִכְנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה כָּל תִּקְוָה, כִּי מַעֲשֵׂי הַצֶּדֶק לֹא
יּוֹפְרוּ, לְפִי הַטּוֹב הָעוֹלָיוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים.

32 Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made
known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil,
the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting
death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan
of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not
be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

- אך אלהים קרא לבני האדם בשם בנו, כי זאת תכנית הגאולה אשר הוכנה, לאמר: אם תנחמו מחטא ולא תקשו את לבכם, רחם ארחמכם על ידי בני הילוד היחיד.
- לכן, כל השב מחטאיו ואינו מקשה לבו, זכאי הוא לרחמים על ידי בני הילוד היחיד, למחילת חטאיו. אלה יבואו למנוחתו.
- וכל אשר יקשה לבו ויפעל און, הנני נשבע באפי כי לא יבוא אל מנוחתו.
- ועתה, אחי, הנני אומר לכם כי אם תקשו את לבכם, לא תבואו אל מנוחת יהוה, ועוונתכם יכעיסנו עד אשר ישפך בכם את חמתו, כבמריבה הראשונה; אכן, כדברו במריבה האחרונה כבראשונה, ותאבד נפשכם אבדן עולם, וזאת על פי דברו על המות האחרון כעל המות הראשון.
- ועתה, אחי, יען אשר ידענו את הדברים האלה, ואמת הם, הבה ננחם מחטאינו ולא נקשה את לבנו, ולא נכעיס את יהוה אלהינו לשפך עלינו את חמתו אחר אשר נתן לנו את מצוותיו השניות האלה, כי אם נבוא נא אל מנוחת אלהים, אשר הוכנה על פי דברו.
- 33 But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;
- 34 Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.
- 35 And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.
- 36 And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.
- 37 And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

יג

13

- ועוד, אחי, אעזר את תשומת לבכם לעת אשר נתן יהוה אלהים את המצוות האלה לבניו. חפצי כי תזכרו כי יהוה אלהים הסמין כהנים, כפי סדר קדשו, אשר הוא כפי סדר בנו, ללמד את הדברים האלה לאנשים.
- והכהנים ההם הסמכו כפי סדר בנו, באפן אשר על ידיו יוכלו האנשים לצפות לבנו בעבור גאולה.
- וזה האפן אשר לפיו הם הסמכו: אחר אשר נקראו והוכנו מיסוד העולם, על פי הידיעה מראש אשר לאלהים בעבור שפע אמונתם וטוב מעשיהם; ותחלה הם היו חפשיים לבחור טוב ורע; ויען אשר בחרו בטוב והחזיקו
- 1 And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.
- 2 And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.
- 3 And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called

בְּאִמּוּנָה רַבָּה מְאֹד, הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁלְיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ,
אֲכֹן, לְאוֹתָהּ שְׁלִיחוֹת קֹדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה עִם
גְּאֻלָּה מְכִינָה לְאֲשֶׁר כָּאֵלָה וְעַל פִּיהָ;

with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with,
and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

וְכֵן הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁלְיחוֹת הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת בְּעֵבוֹר
אֲמוּנָתָם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרִים מֵאֲסוּ בְּרוּחַ
אֱלֹהִים מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לִבָּם וְעוֹרוֹן דִּעְתָּם, אֲשֶׁר
אִם לֹא כֵן, הִיְתָה לָהֶם זְכוּת רַבָּה כְּלוּלָתָם.

4 And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their
faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the
hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not
been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

וּבְקִצְרָה: תְּחִלָּה עָמְדוּ הֵם עִם אַחֵיהֶם בְּאוֹתוֹ
מִעֲמָד; כֵּן הוֹכְנָה שְׁלִיחוֹת הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת
מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם לְמַעַן אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת
לִבָּם, בְּזְכוּת הַכִּפָּרָה אֲשֶׁר לְכֵן אֱלֹהִים הֵילֹד
הַיְחִיד, אֲשֶׁר הוֹכֵן, וְעַל יְדִיָּהּ.

5 Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their
brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation
of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and
through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

וְכֵן הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁלְיחוֹת הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַזֹּאת
וְהִסְמְכוּ לְכַהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּסֹדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ
אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִלְמְדוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו לְבְנֵי
הָאָדָם, בְּעֵבוֹר יְבוֹאוּ גַם הֵם אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ.

6 And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high
priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto
the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

וְהַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת הִיא עַל פִּי סֹדֶר בְּנוֹ,
אֲשֶׁר הַסֹּדֶר הַזֶּה הִיָּה מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם; אוֹ,
בְּמִלִּים אַחֲרוֹת, הוּא לֹא רֵאשִׁית בְּיָמִים
וּלְאֵל אַחֲרִית בְּשָׁנִים, וְהוּא הוֹכֵן מִעוֹלָם וְעַד
עוֹלָם, כִּפִּי יְדִיעָתוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים מִרֵּאשִׁי.

7 This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was
from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being prepared from
beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all
eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

וְכֵן הֵם הִסְמְכוּ לְכַהֲנָה: הֵם נִקְרְאוּ לְשִׁלְיחוֹת
קֹדֶשׁ וְהִסְמְכוּ בְּסִמְכָה קְדוּשָׁה וְקִבְּלוּ עָלֵיהֶם
אֶת הַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּסֹדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר
שְׁלִיחוֹתָהּ וְסִמְכָתָהּ וְהַכְהֵנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הִיא בְּלִי
רֵאשִׁית וּבְלִי אַחֲרִית.

8 Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy
calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the
high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and
high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

כֹּה הֵם נָהִיו כְּהֹנִים גְּדוֹלִים לְעוֹלָם, עַל פִּי הַסֹּדֶר
אֲשֶׁר לְבֵן, הֵילֹד הַיְחִיד אֲשֶׁר לְאָב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
בְּלִי רֵאשִׁית בְּיָמִים וּבְלִי קֵץ בְּשָׁנִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
מִלֵּא חֶסֶד וְיֵשֶׁר וְאַמֶּת. כֵּן הַדְּבָר. אָמֵן.

9 Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the
Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end
of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי שֶׁאֶמְרִיתִי עַל סֹדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר
לְכַהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, רַבִּים הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִסְמְכוּ
וְהָיוּ לְכַהֲנִים גְּדוֹלִים לְאֱלֹהִים; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבוֹר
שִׁפְעָה אֲמוּנָתָם וְחִשְׁבֹּתָם וְצִדְקָתָם לִפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים, כִּי הֵם בָּחֲרוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאִים וּלְפַעַל
בְּמִישָׁרִים וְלֹא לְהִסְפּוֹת.

10 Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood,
there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God;
and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and
their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work
righteousness rather than to perish;

לְכֵן נִקְרְאוּ עַל פִּי סֹדֶר הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַזֶּה, וְנִקְדְּשׁוּ,
וּבִגְדֵיהֶם רָחְצוּ וְהִלְבִּינוּ עַל יְדֵי דַם הַשֶּׁה.

11 Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified,
and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

- 12 Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.
- וְאַחַר הָיוּתָם נִקְדָּשִׁים בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבִגְדֵיהֶם רָחְצוּ עַד זֶה בַּהִיוּתָם טְהוֹרִים לֹלֵא רֻבָּב לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהַבִּיט עַל חַטָּא, בְּלִית בְּגִעַל נַפְשׁ. וְרַבִּים הָיוּ, אַכֵּן, רַבִּים וְעֲצוּמִים אֲשֶׁר נִטְהָרוּ וּבָאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 13 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, חַפְצָתִי כִּי תִשְׁפִּילוּ עַצְמְכֶם לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְתִתְּנוּ פְּרִי הַהוֹלֵם תְּשׁוּבָה, בְּעֵבֹר תְּבוֹאוּ גַם אַתֶּם אֶל הַמְּנוּחָה הַהִיא.
- 14 Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.
- הַכְּנֻעוּ נָא כְּעַם בִּימֵי מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק, אֲשֶׁר גַּם הוּא הָיָה כֹהֵן גָּדוֹל עַל פִּי הַסֹּדֵר הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר עָלְיוֹ דְּבַרְתִּי, וְאֲשֶׁר קָבַל עָלָיו אֶת הַכֹּהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה עַד עוֹלָם.
- 15 And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.
- הָיָה זֶה אוֹתוֹ מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק אֲשֶׁר אֲבְרָהָם הֵבִיא לוֹ מַעֲשֵׂרוֹת; אַכֵּן, אֲבְרָהָם אָבִינוּ עָשָׂר מַעֲשֵׂר מִכָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לוֹ.
- 16 Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.
- וְהַמְשָׁפְטִים הָאֵלֶּה נִתְּנוּ בְּאִפְּן הַזֶּה, בְּעֵבֹר יִצְפָּה הָעָם עַל יְדִיהֶם לְבֵן אֱלֹהִים; זֹאת תְּכִנִּית סֹדֵרוֹ, אוֹ זֶה סֹדֵרוֹ, וְזֹאת בְּעֵבֹר יִצְפָּה לוֹ הָעָם לְמַחִילָה עַל חַטְאֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן יָבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה.
- 17 Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;
- וּמֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק הָיָה מֶלֶךְ אֶרֶץ שָׁלֵם, וְעַמּוֹ הִרְבּוּ עָווֹן וְתוֹעֵבָה; אַכֵּן, כָּלֶם תָּעוּ וְהִרְבּוּ כָּל מִינֵי רָשָׁעָה.
- 18 But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.
- אֲךָ מֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק, אֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיק בְּאִמּוּנָה גְּדוֹלָה וְקָבַל אֶת מַשְׁרֵת הַכֹּהֲנָה הַגְּדוֹלָה כְּפִי סֹדֵר הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים, הִסִּיר לְעַמּוֹ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחַטָּא. וְהִנֵּה, הֵם שָׁבוּ מִרְעֵתָם; וּמֶלְכִּיצֶדֶק כֹּנֵן שָׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ בְּיָמָיו, עַל כֵּן נִקְרָא שׁוֹר שָׁלוֹם, כִּי הָיָה מֶלֶךְ שָׁלֵם וְהוּא מָשַׁל תַּחַת אָבִיו.
- 19 Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.
- רַבִּים הָיוּ לִפְנָיו וְרַבִּים הָיוּ אַחֲרָיו, אֲךָ לֹא הָיוּ גְּדוֹלִים מִמֶּנּוּ; עַל כֵּן אוֹתוֹ צִיָּנוּ וְהִזְכִּירוּ.
- 20 Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.
- אִין לִי צָרָךְ לְחַזֵּר וּלְסַפֵּר עַל כֵּן, דִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר אֶמְרָתִי. הִנֵּה כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לִפְנֵיכֶם, אִם תַּעֲזוּתוֹם אֶת אֲבִדְנֶכֶם תְּבִיאֻ:
- 21 And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty
- וּבְאֶמְרוֹ לָהֶם עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ אֲלֵיהֶם וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל

- לֹאמֹר: הִנֵּה הַעֵת לְתַשׁוּבָה, כִּי קָרוֹב לְבֹא
יּוֹם הַיְשׁוּעָה.
- 22 Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.
- וְקוֹל יְהוָה מְשַׁמֵּיעַ זֹאת לְכָל הָאֻמוֹת בְּפִי
מַלְאָכִים. וְהוּא מְשַׁמֵּיעַ זֹאת לְמַעַן יִתְבַּשְּׂרוּ
בְּשׂוֹרֵת שְׂמִיחָה וְשִׂשׂוֹן. וְהוּא מְבַשֵּׂר אֶת
בְּשׂוֹרֵת הַשְּׂמִיחָה הַזֹּאת בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַמּוֹ, גַּם
בְּאֲזֵנֵי הָרְחוֹקִים הַנְּפוּצִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. עַל
כֵּן הִיא הַגִּיעָה עֲדֵינוּ.
- 23 And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.
- וְהִיא נִדְעָה לָנוּ בְּמַלְשֵׁי בְּרוּרוֹת, לְמַעַן נִבְיִן
וְלֹא נִטְעָה; וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי נְדוּדֵינוּ בָּאָרֶץ נִכְרִיָּה;
הִנֵּה רַבָּה הַבְּכוּרָה אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱנָקָה לָנוּ, כִּי
הַבְּשׂוֹרָה הַמְּשֻׁמָּחַת הַזֹּאת מְשַׁמַּעַת לָנוּ
בְּכָל חֻלְקֵי כְּרִמְנוֹ.
- 24 For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.
- כִּי הִנֵּה מְשַׁמֵּיעִים אוֹתָהּ עֲתָה מַלְאָכִים לְרַבִּים
אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרְצֵנוּ; וְזֹאת בַּעֲבוּר הַכִּין אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ בְּתִפְאָרְתּוֹ.
- 25 And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.
- וְעַתָּה אֲנִי מַחְכִּים אֲנַחְנוּ לְשִׁמְעַת מִפִּי מַלְאָכִים
אֶת הַחֲדָשׁוֹת בּוֹאוֹ הַמְּשֻׁמָּחֹת; כִּי קָרֵב הַיּוֹם
אֲנִי אֵינְנוּ יוֹדְעִים אֶת מוֹעֲדוֹ. יְהִי רָצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים כִּי יָבוֹא בְּיָמֵי, וְאִם יִקְדִּים אוֹ יִאָּחֶר,
אֲשַׁמְּחָה בּוֹ.
- 26 And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.
- וְיִוָּדַע הַדָּבָר לְצַדִּיקִים וְלְקָדוֹשִׁים מִפִּי
מַלְאָכִים בְּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ, לְקִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ
אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ עָלָיו, עַל פִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה.
- 27 And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, הִנְנִי מִבְּקֵשׁ מֵעֵמֶק לִבִּי,
בְּחִרְדָּה רַבָּה עַד כְּאֵב, כִּי תִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי
וְתִשְׁלִיכוּ חַטָּאֵיכֶם הֵלָאָה מִכֶּם וְלֹא תִדְחוּ
אֶת יוֹם תְּשׁוּבַתְכֶם;
- 28 But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;
- כִּי תִכְנַעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה וְתִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם קָדְשׁוֹ
וְתִשְׁגִּיחוּ וְתִתְפַּלְלוּ תָמִיד, לְבַל יְבוֹאֲכֶם פְּתוּי
גָּדוֹל מִיִּכְלָתְכֶם לְשֹׂאת; וְכֹךְ תּוֹלִיכְכֶם רוּחַ
הַקָּדֵשׁ וְתִהְיוּ שְׂפָלִים וְעֲנָוִים וְנִכְנָעִים וְסָבְלָנִים,
מִלֵּאִים אֲהֶבָה וּמֵאֲרִיכִים אֶת אַפְכֶם;
- 29 Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.
- בְּהִיּוֹת לָכֶם אֲמוּנָה בִּיהוָה, וְתִקְוָה כִּי תִנְחַלּוּ
חַיֵּי עוֹלָם, וּבְלִבְכֶם תָּמִיד אֲהַבַת אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן
תִּתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן וְתִבּוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחָתּוֹ.

וְיִהְיֶה רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה לָתֵת בְּלִבְכֶם נְחֵמָה
עַל רְעִיתְכֶם, לְמַעַן לֹא תִבְיֹאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת חֲרוֹן
אַפּוֹ, וְלֹא תִאָּסְרוּ בַּחֲרָצְבוֹת שָׂאוֹל וְלֹא
תִבּוֹאָכֶם מִיַּתֵּה שְׁנִיָּה.

וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים דִּבֶּר עֲלֵמָא אֶל
הָעָם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם כְּתוּבִים בַּסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה.

30 And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

31 And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

י

14

וַיְכַלּוּתוֹ לְדַבֵּר אֶל הָעָם, הֶאֱמִינוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם
לְדַבְּרֵי וְהִחֲלוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם וּלְחַקֵּר
בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

אֶף רַבִּים חָפְצוּ לְכַלּוֹת אֶת עֲלֵמָא וְאֶת
עֲמוּלֵק, כִּי רָגְזוּ עַל עֲלֵמָא, עַל דְּבָרָיו
הַבְּרוּרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל זְעִזְרוֹם; וְאִף אָמְרוּ
כִּי עֲמוּלֵק שָׁקַר לָהֶם וַגְּדִף אֶת חֻקֵּיהֶם וְאֶת
עוֹרְכֵי דִינָם וְאֶת שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם.

וְהֵם רָגְזוּ עַל עֲלֵמָא וְעַל עֲמוּלֵק. וַיַּעַן
אֲשֶׁר הִעֲדוּ גְלוּיּוֹת עַל רְשָׁעָתָם, בְּקִשּׁוֹ
לְכַלּוֹתָם בַּסֵּתֶר.

אֶף הֵם לֹא עָשׂוּ כֵן, כִּי אִם לָקְחוּ אוֹתָם
וְאָסְרוּם בַּעֲבוּתָם וְהִבִּיאוּם לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט
אֶרֶץ הָעֵלְיוֹן.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים נָגְשׁוּ וְהִעֲדוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּאֶמְרָם כִּי
גָדְפוּ אֶת הָרוֹק, אֶת עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְאֶת שׁוֹפְטֵי
הָאֶרֶץ, וְכֵן אֶת כָּל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בָּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם אִף
הִעֲדוּ עַל דְּבָרֵיהֶם כִּי יֵשׁ רֶק אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד, וְכִי
יִשְׁלַח אֶת בְּנוֹ אֶל הָעָם, אֶף הוּא לֹא יוֹשִׁיעֵם.
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה הִעֲדוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עַל עֲלֵמָא
וְעַל עֲמוּלֵק; וְכָל זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂה לִפְנֵי שׁוֹפֵט
אֶרֶץ הָעֵלְיוֹן.

וְזִאזְרוֹם הִשְׁתּוֹמֵם עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
נֶאֱמָרוּ; וְהוּא אִף יָדַע עַל עוֹרוֹן הַדַּעַת אֲשֶׁר
הִסֵּב לָעָם בְּדַבְּרֵי הַכָּזָב אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר; וּבְהִפְרִיז
אֶת אִשְׁמֹתוֹ הַחֲלָה נִפְשׁוֹ לְהִצִּיקוֹ; אָכֵן,
יִסּוּרֵי שָׂאוֹל סְבוּהוּ.

וְהוּא קָרָא אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: הִנְנִי אָשִׁם,
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה נְקִיִּים מֵעוֹן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהָלָא הָיָה מִלְּמַד עֲלֵיהֶם

1 And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

2 But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

3 And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

4 But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

5 And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

6 And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him,

זכות; ואולם העם גִּדְפוּהוּ וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: הֲגַם
אֶתְּהָ אֲחֻזָּה בְּרוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן? וְהֵם יָרְקוּ בְּפָנָיו
וְהִדְיָחוּהוּ מִקִּרְבָּם, וְכֵן עָשׂוּ לְכָל אֲשֶׁר
הָאָמִינוּ לְדִבְרֵי עֲלָמָא וְעִמּוּלֵק. וְהֵם גִּרְשׁוּם
וְשָׁלְחוּ בָהֶם אֲנָשִׁים לְרִגְמָם אֲבָן.

וְהֵם אָסְפוּ יַחַד אֶת נְשֵׁי הַמִּגְרָשִׁים וְאֶת
יְלָדֵיהֶם, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָאָמִין אוֹ לְמַד לְהָאָמִין
בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הַשְׁלֹךְ בָּאֵשׁ עַל פִּי פְקֻדָּתָם; וְכֵן
עָשׂוּ לְכַתְּבֵי זְכוּנוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם כְּתִבִּי
הַקֹּדֶשׁ; לְאֵשׁ הַשְּׁלִיכֻם, לְהַשְׂרֹף וּלְכַלּוֹת בָּהֶם.

וְהֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת עֲלָמָא וְאֶת עִמּוּלֵק וְנִשְׂאוּם אֶל
מְקוֹם הַהוּצָאָה לְהוֹרֵג, לְמַעַן יֵרְאוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם
אֶת כְּלִיּוֹן הָעוֹלָם עַל הַמוֹקֵד.

וּבִרְאוֹת עִמּוּלֵק אֶת יְסוּרֵי הַנְּשִׁים וְהַטָּף
הַנִּשְׂרָפִים בָּאֵשׁ, הֵצִר לוֹ מַאֵד; וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל
עֲלָמָא: אֵיכָה נִחְזֶה בְּמִרְאֵה הַנוֹרָא הַזֶּה?
הֲבָה נִטֶּה אֶת יָדֵינוּ וְנַפְעִיל אֶת כַּח אֱלֹהִים
אֲשֶׁר בָּנוּ וְנַצִּילָם מִן הַלֵּהָבוֹת.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלָמָא: רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ עוֹצָרַת אוֹתִי
מִפְּשֹׁט יָדִי; כִּי הִנֵּה מִקְבָּלָם יְהוָה אֵלָיו
בְּתַפְאָרָה; וְהוּא מַתִּיר אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַזֶּה, אֶת
מַעֲשֶׂה הָעָם לְנִשְׂרָפִים, כְּפִי קִשִּׁי לָבָם, לְמַעַן
יִהְיֶה דִּינָם, אֲשֶׁר יִחְרָץ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֶבְרָתוֹ,
מִשְׁפַּט צֶדֶק. וְדָם הַזָּכָאִים יִהְיֶה לְעֵד עֲלֵיהֶם,
וְצִעוֹק יִצְעַק עֲלֵיהֶם בְּיוֹם הַאֲחִירוֹן.

וְעִמּוּלֵק אָמַר אֶל עֲלָמָא: אוֹלִי אַף אוֹתֵנוּ יִשְׂרָפוּ.

וְאָמַר עֲלָמָא: כִּרְצוֹן יְהוָה יִהְיֶה; אַף מִלֹּאכְתָּנוּ
לֹא תִמָּה; לָכֵן לֹא יִשְׂרָפוּנוּ.

וּבָעִת אֲשֶׁר אָכְלוּ גִּוְיוֹת הַמִּשְׁלָכִים בָּאֵשׁ,
וְעִמָּהֶם הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלָכוּ לְשַׂרְפָּה, בָּא
שׁוֹפֵט הָאָרֶץ הָעֲלִיּוֹן, וְעָמַד לִפְנֵי עֲלָמָא
וְעִמּוּלֵק, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ כְּבוֹלִים, וְסָטַר בְּיָדוֹ עַל
לְחֵייהֶם, וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אַחֵר הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
רָאִיתֶם, הַתּוֹסִיפוּ לְהַטִּיף לָעָם הַזֶּה כִּי יִשְׁלָכוּ
אֶל אֲגַם אֵשׁ וְגַפְרִית?

הִנֵּה רָאִיתֶם כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָכֶם כַּח לְהַצִּיל אֶת
הַמִּשְׁלָכִים בָּאֵשׁ; אַף אֱלֹהִים לֹא הִצִּילָם עַל
הַיּוֹתָם בְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתְכֶם. וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט סָטַר עַל
לְחֵייהֶם שְׁנִית וְשָׂאֵל: מַה תֹּאמְרוּ בְּעֶדְכֶם?

saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

8 And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire, and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

9 And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

10 And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

12 Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

13 And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

14 Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

15 Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

- 16 Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הַזֶּה הָלַךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ תּוֹרַת נְחוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת גִּדְעוֹן וְכַאֲמוֹנָתוֹ.
- 17 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.
וְעֲלָמָא וְעַמְלֵק לֹא עָנוּהוּ דְבָר; וְהוּא הוֹסִיף לְסַטֵּר עַל לַחְיֵיהֶם, וַיַּתֵּן בְּיַד הַפְּקִידִים לְכַלְאֵם בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא.
- 18 And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.
וְאַחַר שְׁלוֹשָׁה יָמִים לְהַכְלָאֵם, בָּאוּ עוֹרְכֵי דִין רַבִּים, וְשׁוֹפְטִים וְכֹהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִבְּנֵי אֲמוֹנַת נְחוֹר, אֵל בֵּית הַכְּלָא לְרְאוֹתָם. וְהֵם שְׁאַלוּם עַל דְּבָרִים רַבִּים, אַךְ הֵם לֹא עָנוּם.
- 19 And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְאָמַר: מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם עֹנִים עַל דְּבָרֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה? הֲיֵיתֶם יוֹדְעִים כִּי יֵשׁ לִי יָד לְשַׁלְחֶכֶם אֶל הַלֶּהָבוֹת? וְהוּא צִוָּם לְדַבֵּר, אַךְ הֵם לֹא עָנוּהוּ.
- 20 And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?
וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וְהָלְכוּ לְדַרְכָּם וּבָאוּ שֵׁנִית לַמַּחֲרָת. וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט שׁוּב הִכָּה אֶת לַחְיֵיהֶם, וְכֹן רַבִּים אַחֲרֵיהֶם בָּאוּ וְהִכּוּם וְאָמְרוּ לָהֶם: הֲתוֹסִיפוּ לַעֲמֹד וּלְשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וּלְגַנוֹת אֶת חֻקֵּינוּ? אִם כֹּה רַב כֹּחְכֶם, מַדּוּעַ אֵינְכֶם מַחְלִיצִים עַצְמְכֶם?
- 21 And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?
וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה אָמְרוּ לָהֶם, וְחָרְקוּ עֲלֵיהֶם שֵׁן וַיִּרְקוּ בִּפְנֵיהֶם וְאָמְרוּ: מַה יִּהְיֶה מִרְאֵנוּ בְּבוֹא עָלֵינוּ חֲרָמָה?
- 22 And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.
וְעוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים כְּאֵלֶּה, אַכֹּן, כָּל מִינֵי דְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כְּאֵלֶּה אָמְרוּ לָהֶם; וְכֹה לָעָגוּ לָהֶם יָמִים רַבִּים; וּמָנְעוּ מֵהֶם מֵאֲכָל בַּעֲבוּר הָרַעֲבָם וּמִשֶּׁתָּה בַּעֲבוּר הַצְמִיאָם; וְהִפְשִׁיטוּ אֶת בְּגָדֵיהֶם לְתַתָּם עִרְמִים. כֹּה הֵם הָיוּ אֲסוּרִים בַּעֲבוּתִים, כְּלוּאִים בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא.
- 23 And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.
וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנִים עָשָׂר לַחֹדֶשׁ הָעֲשִׁירִי, בַּשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר סָבְלוּ כֹךְ עֲלָמָא וְעַמְלֵק יָמִים רַבִּים, וּבְעוֹדָם כְּבוֹלִים בְּבֵית כְּלָאֵם, בָּא אֶלְיֵהֶם הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן לְאַרְצָא עַמּוֹנִיָּה, וְעַמּוֹ רַבִּים מִמוֹרֵי הָעָם וְעוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין.
- 24 And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.
וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְהִכָּם עוֹד פַּעַם וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אִם בְּיָדְכֶם כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים, חֲלִצוּ עַצְמְכֶם מִן הַכְּבָלִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאַז נֶאֱמִין כִּי יִהְיֶה יִשְׁמִיד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה כְּדְבָרֵיכֶם.

25 And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

26 And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27 And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

28 And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

29 Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

טו

15

1 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

2 And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

- וְזֶזְרוֹם שָׁכַב חוֹלָה בְּצִידוֹם וְהָיָה קוֹדֶחַ
בְּחַמוֹ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִתְיַסֵּר מְאֹד בְּלִבּוֹ עַל
רִשְׁעָתוֹ בְּדַמּוֹתוֹ בְּנַפְשׁוֹ כִּי עֲלֵמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק
אֵינָם עוֹד; וְהוּא דָּמָה כִּי הֵם נִהְרְגוּ מִפְּנֵי
עֲוֹנוֹ. וְהַחֲטָא הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה וְשָׂרָר חֲטָאֵי
הָרַבִּים הִצִּיקוּ לְנַפְשׁוֹ, עַד כִּי גָבַר עָלָיו חֲלָיו
לֹא מִרְפָּא; לָכֵן הֵחַל גּוֹפּוֹ לְצַרְבַּ בְּחַם לוֹהֵט.
- וְהָיָה בְּשִׁמְעוֹ כִּי עֲלֵמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ
צִידוֹם, הֵחַל לִבּוֹ לְהִתְגַּבֵּר, וּמִיַּד שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם
הוֹדָעָה לְהַפְצִירָם כִּי יָבוֹאוּ אֵלָיו.
- וְהֵם נִעְנֶוּ מִיַּד לְבִקְשָׁתוֹ אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם,
וּבָאוּ אֶל הַבַּיִת, אֶל זֶזְרוֹם. וְהֵם מְצָאוּהוּ
חוֹלָה, שׁוֹכֵב עַל מִטָּתוֹ, חֲלָשׁ מְאֹד וְהָחַם
קוֹדֶחַ בּוֹ, וְנַפְשׁוֹ כּוֹאֶבֶת עָלָיו מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי
עֲוֹנוֹתָיו; וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה אוֹתָם הוּא פָּשַׁט אֶת
יָדוֹ לִפְנֵיו וּבִקְשָׁם לְרַפָּא.
- וְעֲלֵמָא לָקַח אֶת זֶזְרוֹם בְּיָדוֹ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:
הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּכֹחַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ לְהוֹשִׁיעַ?
- וְהוּא עָנָה וְאָמַר: כֵּן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר לִמַּדְתָּ.
- וְאָמַר עֲלֵמָא: אִם מֵאֲמִין אַתָּה בְּגִאֲלַת
הַמְּשִׁיחַ, תּוּכַל לְהִרְפָּא.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי בְּדְבָרֶיךָ.
- אָז קָרָא עֲלֵמָא אֶל יְהוָה לֵאמֹר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה
אֱלֹהֵינוּ, רַחֵם עַל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וְרַפְּאֵהוּ כְּפִי
אֱמוּנָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר בַּמְּשִׁיחַ.
- וְכַאֲמֹר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קִפֵּץ
זֶזְרוֹם עַל רַגְלָיו וְהֵחַל לָלֶכֶת. הַדְּבָר נַעֲשֶׂה
לְמַרְבֵּה הַשְׁתוּמְמוֹת כָּל הָעָם, וְשִׁמּוּעָתוֹ
פָּשְׁטָה בְּכָל אֶרֶץ צִידוֹם.
- וְעֲלֵמָא הִטְבִּיל אֶת זֶזְרוֹם אֶל יְהוָה; וּמִן הַיּוֹם
הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה הוּא הַטִּיף לָעָם.
- וְעֲלֵמָא יָסַד כְּנִסְיָהּ בְּאֶרֶץ צִידוֹם, וְקִדֵּשׁ
כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים בְּאֶרֶץ, לְהִטְבִּיל אֶל יְהוָה כָּל
אָדָם הַחֲפֵץ לְהִטְבֵּל.
- 3 And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.
- 4 Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.
- 5 And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.
- 6 And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?
- 7 And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.
- 8 And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.
- 9 And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.
- 10 And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.
- 11 And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.
- 12 And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.
- 13 And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

- 14 והם היו רבים, כי מכל סביבות צידום נהרו ונטבלו. And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.
- 15 ואולם אנשי ארץ עמוניה נשאר קשי לב וקשי ערף; והם לא שבו מחטאתיהם באמרם כי כל כח עלמא ועמולק מאת השטן הוא, כי הם היו בני תורת נחור ולא האמינו בתשובה מחטאתיהם. But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.
- 16 ועמולק עזב את כל זהבו וכספו ויקרותיו אשר בארץ עמוניה, בעבור דבר אלהים, כי רחקו ממנו חביריו אשר היו רעים לו וכן עשו אביו ומשפחתו. And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;
- 17 ועלמא, אחר כוננו את הכנסייה בצידום, ובראותו בלימה גדולה, כי האנשים נבלמו מהתנשא בגאות לבם ונכנעו לפני אלהים, והחלו להתכנס במקדשיהם לעבד את אלהים לפני המזבח, והשגיחו והתפללו תמיד למען ינצלו מן השטן וממנות ומאבדון; Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—
- 18 אכן, בראות עלמא את כל אלה, הוא לקח את עמולק עמו ויבא אל ארץ זרעהמלה, והביאו אל ביתו, ונחמהו בצרתו, וחקו ביהוה. Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.
- 19 כה כלתה השנה העשירית לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי. And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

טז

16

- 1 והיה בשנת אחת עשרה לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי, ביום החמישי לחודש השני, אחר אשר היה שלום רב בארץ זרעהמלה, בלא מלחמה ובלא ריב שנים אחדות, עד היום ההוא, נשמעה זעקת מלחמה בכל הארץ. And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.
- 2 כי הנה חילות הלמנים פלשו אל עבר היער אשר בגבול הארץ, ובאו על היער עמוניה והחלו להרג את יושביה ולהחריבה. For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.
- 3 ובטרם יכלו הנפיים למנות חיל לגרשם מן הארץ, השמידו הלמנים את העם אשר בעיר עמוניה, והרגו אנשים בסביבת גבולות נח, ואף שבו אחרים ולקחום אל היער. And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

- וְהַנְּפִיטִים חָפְצוּ לְהִשִּׁיב אֶת הַשְּׁבוּיִים אֲשֶׁר
הוּבְלוּ בַשָּׂבִי אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד מִנֵּה לִהְיוֹת הַמְּפַקֵּד הָרָאשִׁי
לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים. וְשֵׁמוֹ נְקָרָא זֹרָם, וְשְׁמוֹת
שְׁנֵי בָנָיו לְחִי וְאַחָא. וְזֹרָם וּשְׁנֵי בָנָיו הָלְכוּ אֶל
עֲלָמָא, כִּי יָדְעוּ כִּי הוּא הִכְהֵן הַגָּדוֹל בְּכִנְיָהּ,
וְאִף שָׁמְעוּ כִּי רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה בְּקִרְבּוֹ; לָכֵן הֵם
בִּקְשׁוּ לָדַעַת מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת רְצוֹן יְהוָה, אֲנֵה יֵלְכוּ
בַּיַּעַר וַיַּחְפְּשׂוּ אֶת עַמִּיתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נִלְקְחוּ
בַשָּׂבִי הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְעֲלָמָא שָׁאַל אֶת יְהוָה עַל הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה, וַיַּשְׁוֹבוּ
אֵלָיוֹתָם אָמַר: הִנֵּה יַחְצוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן
בַּיַּעַר הַדְּרוֹמִי הַרְחֵק מֵעֵבֶר לְגִבּוֹל אֶרֶץ מְנַטִּי;
שָׁם תִּפְגְּשׁוּם, בְּמִזְרַח נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְשָׁם יִמְסֹר
יְהוָה לְיָדְכֶם אֶת עַמִּיתֵיכֶם שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְזֹרָם וּבָנָיו חָצוּ בְּרָאשׁ צָבָאָם אֶת נְהַר צִידוֹן
וַיִּסְעוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר הַדְּרוֹמִי אֲשֶׁר מִמִּזְרַח לְגִדַּת
נְהַר צִידוֹן, מֵעֵבֶר לְגִבּוֹל מְנַטִּי.
- וַיָּבֹאוּם עַל חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, נִפְּצוּ הַלְּמָנִים
וַיִּנְסֻגּוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר. וְהֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת עַמִּיתֵיהֶם,
שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים, וַיְהִיבוּם אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.
וּמִן הַשְּׁבוּיִים לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל אַבְדָּה בַּנֶּפֶשׁ.
- כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת אַחַת עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, וְכֹה גָּרְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִן הָאָרֶץ
וְאֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹנִיָּה הַשְּׁמָדוּ; אֲכֹן, כָּל נֶפֶשׁ חִיָּה
מִן הָעַמּוֹנִיָּהִים אַבְדָּה וְשִׁירָם הַגָּדוֹלָה חָרְבָה,
אֲשֶׁר אֲנָשִׁיהָ אָמְרוּ כִּי לֹא יוּכַל אֱלֹהִים
לְאַבְדָּהּ, כִּי גְדוֹלָה הִיא.
- הִנֵּה, בְּיוֹם אֶחָד שָׁמְמָה עַמּוֹנִיָּה וּפְגָרֵי
יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ הָיוּ טָרֶף לְכָלְבִּים וּלְחִיתֵי הַשָּׂדֶה.
- וְאוֹלָם, אַחֵר יָמִים רַבִּים, נֶעְרְמוּ גְוִיֹּתֵיהֶם עַל
פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה וַיִּכְסּוּ בַשְּׂכֶבֶת עֶפְרָ דָּקָה. וְלֹא
בָּאוּ אֲנָשִׁים לְהִתְנַחֵל בָּאָרֶץ עַמּוֹנִיָּה שְׁנִים
רַבּוֹת מִפְּנֵי צַחֲנַת הַפְּגָרִים הָעֵזָה. וְהִיא
נִקְרָאָה חֶרְבַת הַנְּחֹרִים. כִּי הָיוּ הַמֵּתִים בְּנֵי
אֶמּוֹנַת נְחֹר, וְאֶרֶץ נְשָׂאָה שְׁמָמָה.
- 4 Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.
- 5 Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.
- 6 And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.
- 7 And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.
- 8 And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.
- 9 And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.
- 10 But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.
- 11 Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

- 12 And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.
- וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ לַצָּאת עוֹד לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַנְּפִיִּים עַד שְׁנַת אַרְבַּע עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעַם נְפִי. כִּךָּ הָיָה לַנְּפִיִּים שָׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁנִים.
- 13 And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.
- וְעַלְמָא וְעַמּוּלֶק הֵלְכוּ אֶל הָעָם לְקַרְאָם לְתַשׁוּבָה, בְּמִקְדָּשֵׁיהֶם וּגְם בְּבֵתֵי הַכְּנָסָה אֲשֶׁר נִבְנוּ כְּדֶרֶךְ הַיְּהוּדִים.
- 14 And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.
- וְהֵם חִלְקוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים עִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לִשְׁמָע אֶת דְּבָרֵיהֶם, בְּלֹא מִשׁוֹא פָנִים לְאִישׁ, כָּל הַעֵת הַהִיא.
- 15 And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.
- כֹּה הִתְהַלְכוּ עַלְמָא וְעַמּוּלֶק וְעוֹד רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְמַלְאכָה, לְהַשִּׁיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּכָל רֹחְבֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְכִנּוּן הַכְּנִסְיָה נִהְיָה דָּבָר כְּלָלִי בְּרֹחְבֵי הָאָרֶץ, בְּכָל הָאֲזוּר אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 16 And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—
- וְלֹא הָיָה הַעֲדָר שְׁוִיוֹן בֵּינֵיהֶם; וַיְהוֹה שֹׁפֵךְ אֶת רוּחוֹ עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ לְהַכִּין אֶת דַּעַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וְאֶת לִבָּם לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר יִלְמְדוּהוּ בְּקֶרְבָּם בַּעֵת בּוֹאוֹ;
- 17 That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.
- לְמַעַן לֹא יִהְיוּ קָשִׁים עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וּבַעֲבוּר לֹא יִהְיוּ חֲסָרֵי אֱמוּנָה, וְיִלְכוּ לְכַלְיוֹן; כִּי אִם יוּכְלוּ לְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׂמְחָה וַיְהִיו כְּכֹנֶה אֲשֶׁר מִרְכַּבֶּת עַל גֶּפֶן הָאֱמֶת לְמַעַן יְבוֹאוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- 18 Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—
- וְהַכֹּהֲנִים אֲשֶׁר הֵלְכוּ אֶל הָעָם הִסִּיפוּ נֹגֵד כָּל קֶזֶב וּמִרְמָה, קִנְאָה וּמְדַנִּים, אִיבָה וּגְדוּף, גִּנְבָה, שָׂד וְגֵזֶל, רִצָּח, נָאוּף וְכָל מִינֵי זִמָּה, וְקִרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל כִּי אֲסוּרִים הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 19 Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.
- וְהֵם נֹאמְרוּ עַל דְּבָרִים הַקְּרָבִים לְבּוֹא; אָכֵן, עַל בּוֹא בֶן אֱלֹהִים, סְבִלּוֹתָיו וּמוֹתוֹ, וְכֵן עַל תַּחֲיַת הַמֵּתִים.
- 20 And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.
- וְרַבִּים מִן הָעָם שָׁאֲלוּ עַל מְקוֹם בּוֹא שֶׁל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; וְהֵם לְמַדּוּ כִּי הוּא יוֹפִיעַ אֲלֵיהֶם אַחֵר תַּחֲיָתוֹ; וְהַדְּבָר הַסֵּב לָהֶם רַב שִׂשׂוֹן וְשִׂמְחָה.
- 21 And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being
- כֹּה כּוֹנְנָה הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִשֵּׁג הַנִּצְחוֹן עַל הַשָּׂטָן, וְדְבַר אֱלֹהִים

בְּטַהֲרָתוֹ נִקְרָא בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, וַיְהוּה עֲרָה אֶת
בְּרָכָתוֹ עַל הָעָם. וּבִזְמַת כְּלָתָה שְׁנַת אַרְבַּע
עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעָם נָפִי.

preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his
blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

מַעֲשֵׂה בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲשֶׁר מָאָסוּ בְּזִכּוֹתָם לְמֶלֶךְ,
לְמַעַן דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וַעֲלוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי לְהַטִּיף
בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים; סִפּוּר סִבְלוֹתֵיהֶם וְהַצֵּלָתָם, עַל
פִּי כְּתָבִי עֲלֵמָא. (בְּעֶרְךָ 91–77 לִפְנֵי הַסְּפִירָה).
נִכְלָל בַּפָּרְקִים יז–כז.

*An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom
for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the
Lamanites. Their sufferings and deliverance, according to the record of
Alma. (About 91–77 B.C.) Comprising chapters 17–27.*

יז

17

וַהֲיָה בְּנִסְעָה עֲלֵמָא מֵאֶרֶץ גִּדְעוֹן דְּרוּמָה
לְעֵבֶר אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי, וַהֲנִה, לְמַרְבֵּה פְּלִיאָתוֹ,
הוּא פָּגַשׁ אֶת בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֲשֶׁר נָסְעוּ לְעֵבֶר
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה.

1 And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the
land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his
astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the
land of Zarahemla.

וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ עִם עֲלֵמָא בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר
הוֹפִיעַ לִפְנָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּרָאוּנוֹהָ. לָכֵן שָׂמַח
עֲלֵמָא עַד מְאֹד בְּרָאוּתוֹ אוֹתָם; וְשִׂמְחָתוֹ
גָּדְלָה שְׁבַעֲתִים בְּרָאוּתוֹ כִּי הֵם נִשְׁאָרוּ אִתּוֹ
לְאַמּוּנָה בִּיהוּה. וְהֵם הִתְחַזְּקוּ בִּידְעִית
הָאֱמֶת; כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים נְבוֹנִים וְהִתְבּוֹנְנוּ
בְּשִׁקְיָדָתָם לַחֲקֹר בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, בַּעֲבוּר
יָדְעוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

2 Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first
appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his
brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in
the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth;
for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the
scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל; הֵם הִתְמַסְּרוּ לְתַפְלָה רַבָּה
וּלְצוּם. לָכֵן שָׂרוּ עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְרוּחַ
הַהִתְגַּלּוּת וְכַאֲשֶׁר לְמַדּוֹ, הָיָה זֶה בַּעַז מֵאֵת
אֱלֹהִים וּבְסִמְכוּתוֹ.

3 But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting;
therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation,
and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

וְהֵם לְמַדּוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּמִשְׁוֹף אַרְבַּע
עֶשְׂרֵה שָׁנָה בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים; וְהָיְתָה לָהֶם
הַצִּלְחָה מְרִבָּה בְּהַבִּיאֵם רַבִּים לִידְעִית
הָאֱמֶת; אֲכֹן, בְּכַח דְּבָרֵיהֶם בָּאוּ רַבִּים לִפְנֵי
מִזְבֵּחַ אֱלֹהִים, לְקַרֵּא בְּשִׁמּוֹ וּלְהִתְנוּדוֹת לִפְנֵי
עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.

4 And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen
years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing
many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words
many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and
confess their sins before him.

וְאֵלֶּה הַמִּאֲרָעוֹת אֲשֶׁר קָרוּ בְּמִסְעֵיהֶם,
כִּי רַבָּה הָיְתָה תְּלָאָתָם. וְהֵם סִבְּלוּ רַבּוֹת
בְּגוּף וּבְנַפְשׁ, רָעָב, צָמָא וְיָגַע, וְנַפְשָׁם
רָאָתָה עֲמַל רַב.

5 Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their
journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both
in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much
labor in the spirit.

וְאֵלֶּה מִסְעֵיהֶם: הֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת אֲבֵיהֶם, מוֹשִׁיעַ,
בְּשָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, כִּי סָרְבוּ

6 Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father,
Mosiah, in the first year of the reign of the judges; having refused the

לְקַבֵּל אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אֲבִיהֶם
לְהַנְחִילָם, וְאֵף בְּדַעַת הָעָם הָיָה לְהַמְלִיכָם.

וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, וְעִמָּהֶם
חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִנִּיתוֹתֵיהֶם, קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִצֵּיהֶם
וְכָלֵי קֶלֶעַם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹכְלוֹ לְסַפֵּק
אֶת מִזּוֹנָם בַּיַּעַר.

וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר עִם מִתֵּי מִסְפָּר אֲשֶׁר
בָּחָרוּ לַעֲלוֹת אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְי, לְמַעַן הִטִּיף אֶת
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְלָמְנִים.

וְהֵם נִסְעוּ יָמִים רַבִּים בַּיַּעֲרוֹת וְהִרְבוּ לְצוֹם
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל יְהוָה כִּי יִתֵּן לָהֶם מְרוּחוֹ לְהִיּוֹת
עִמָּהֶם וּלְשָׁכֵן בָּם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ כְּלֵי
שָׂרָת בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים לְהַבִּיא, כָּלֵל הָאֲפָשָׁר, אֶת
אֲחֵיהֶם, הַלְּמָנִים, לִידְעֵת הָאֱמֻנָה לִידְעֵת
קְלוֹן מִסִּרְתָּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָה נְכוֹנָה.

וַיְהִי וּפָקַדָם בְּרוּחוֹ וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּחְמוּ.
וְהֵם נִחְמוּ.

וְעוֹד אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם יְהוָה: לָכוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים,
אֲחֵיהֶם, וְכוֹנְנוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי; וְהִתְאַוְּרֶתֶם אֲרָוֶה
רוּחַ בְּסִבְלָכֶם וּבְמִצּוֹקְכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמְשׁוּ
לָהֶם בִּי דִגְמָה טוֹבָה, וְאֲנִי אֶעֱשֶׂכֶם כְּלֵי
שָׂרָת בְּיַדִּי לְהוֹשִׁיעַ נַפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת.

וּבְנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ הִתְאַוְּרוּ עַד בִּלְבָם,
וְכֵן הִהוּלְכִים עִמָּם, לְלַכֵּת אֶל הַלְּמָנִים
וּלְהַשְׁמִיעַם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאָם אֶל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ הַלְּמָנִים, הֵם
נִפְרְדוּ אִישׁ מֵעַל אֲחִיו בְּשִׂמָּה מִבְּטָחָם
בִּיהוּהוּ כִּי יִשׁוּבוּ וְיִפְגְּשׁוּ לַעֲת הַקֶּצֶר, כִּי הֵבִינוּ
אֶת גֹּדֶל הַמַּעֲשֶׂה אֲשֶׁר קָבְלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם לְבַצֵּעַ.

וְאִמְנָם גְּדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַמְּשִׁימָה, כִּי הֵם קָבְלוּ
עֲלֵיהֶם לְהִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם פָּרָא,
קִשָּׁה וְאִבְזָר; עִם אֲשֶׁר עָלָץ לְהַרְגֹּת אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים,
לְגוֹל מֵהֶם וּלְבָזֵם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁתוּ לָבָם אֶל הַבָּצֵעַ,
אֶל זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְאִבְנֵי יָקָר; וְאֵת אֵלֶּה בִקְשׁוּ
לְתַפֵּשׁ בְּרִצָּח וּבְבָזָה, בְּעִבּוֹר יִנְחָלוּם בְּלֹא
עֲמַל כְּפִים.

kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and
also this was the minds of the people;

7 Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their
swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their
slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves
while in the wilderness.

8 And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which
they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of
God unto the Lamanites.

9 And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness,
and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto
them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that
they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were
possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth,
to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers,
which were not correct.

10 And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and
said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

11 And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites,
thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-
suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto
them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto
the salvation of many souls.

12 And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those
who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to
declare unto them the word of God.

13 And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of
the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from
another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close
of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they
had undertaken.

14 And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the
word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a
people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and
plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold
and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things
by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with
their own hands.

- 15 וְהֵם הָיוּ עִם אוֹהֵב בְּטָלָה, וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם עָבְדוּ פְּסִילִים. וְקָלַלְתָּ אֱלֹהִים הָיְתָה עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי מִסֵּרְתָּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וְאוֹלָם דְּבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם בְּתִנָּאִי שִׁינְחָמוּ מִרְעַתָּם.
- 16 Therefore they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.
- מִפְּנֵי זֹאת קִבְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַמְּלָאכָה; אוֹלֵי יִסְבוּם לָשׁוּב מִרְעַתָּם; אוֹלֵי יִסְבוּם לָדַעַת אֶת תְּכֵנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה.
- 16 Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.
- עַל כֵּן נִפְרְדּוּ אִישׁ מֵעַל אָחִיו וּבָאוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים, אִישׁ-אִישׁ לְבָדּוֹ, כְּפִי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים וְכַחוֹ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לוֹ.
- 17 Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.
- וְעִמּוֹן הָיָה רֹאשׁ לָהֶם; אָכֵן, הוּא שָׂרְתָם; וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר בָּרַכְם, כָּל אִישׁ כְּמִשְׁמֶרְתּוֹ, וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, הוּא נִפְרַד מֵעֲלֵיהֶם. אָכֵן, אַחַר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַשׁ עִמּוֹן לִפְנֵיהֶם יָצָא כָּל אֶחָד לְמַסְעֵו בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ.
- 18 Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.
- וְעִמּוֹן הָלַךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאָה עַל שֵׁם בְּנֵי יִשְׁמַעֵאל, אֲשֶׁר נָהִיּוּ גַם הֵם לְמָנִים.
- 19 And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.
- וּבָבֹא עִמּוֹן אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל, תִּפְּשׂוּהוּ הַלְּמָנִים וְאַסְרוּהוּ, כְּמִנְהֻגָם בְּכָל הַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בְּיָדֵיהֶם; לְאַסֹּר אוֹתָם וּלְהַבִּיאֵם לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. כִּי נִקְבַּע כְּחָפֵץ הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם לְהַרְגֵם, אוֹ לְהַנִּיחֵם בְּשִׁבְיָה, אוֹ לְהַשְׁלִיכֵם אֶל בֵּית הַסֵּהָר, אוֹ לְגַרְשָׁם מִן הָאָרֶץ, כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲלֶה בְּרָצוֹנוֹ וּכְחָפְצּוֹ.
- 20 And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.
- לָכֵן הוּבָא עִמּוֹן לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַמוֹלֵךְ עַל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמַעֵאל. וְשֵׁם הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי, וְהוּא הָיָה צֶאֱצָא לִישְׁמַעֵאל.
- 21 And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שָׁאַל אֶת עִמּוֹן אִם חָפֵץ הוּא לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּאֶרֶץ בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים, אוֹ בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
- 22 And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עִמּוֹן: חָפֵצִי לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה זְמַן מָה; אוֹלֵי אֶף עַד יוֹם מוֹתִי.
- 23 And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.
- וְעִמּוֹן מָצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ צִוָּה לְהַתִּיר אֶת חֲבָלָיו; וְהוּא בִקֵּשׁ כִּי יִקַּח עִמּוֹן אֶת אַחַת מִבְּנוֹתָיו לוֹ לְאִשָּׁה.
- 24 And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.
- אֹלָם עִמּוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: לֹא, כִּי עָבָדְךָ אֶהְיֶה. וְהָיָה עִמּוֹן עֹבֵד הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי, וְהוּא
- 25 But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he

הפקד עם עבדים אחרים על שמירת עדרי
למוני כמנהג הלמניים.

was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

והיה אחר שלשה ימים בשרות המלך,
בהיות עמון עם עבדי המלך בלמניים, בעת
הובילם את צאנם אל מקום המים אשר
נקרא מי שבוי, אשר אליו נהגו כל
הלמניים את עדריהם להשקותם,

26 And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

אכו, בעת אשר נהגו עמון ועבדי המלך
את צאנם אל מקום המים הזה, והנה קמו
למניי מספר אשר השקו את צאנם,
והפיצו את צאן עמון ועבדי המלך
עד כי נסו בשבע דרכים.

27 Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

והנה החלו עבדי המלך להתלונן, ואמרו:
עתה יהרגנו המלך, כאשר עשה לעמיתינו
על פזור עדריהם מפני רשעת האנשים
האלה. והם כבו רבות ואמרו: הנה, כבר
נפוצו צאננו.

28 Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

והם כבו מראתם כי ימותו. וכראות עמון
זאת רחב לבו בקרבו מגיל; ואמר: אראה את
כחי לחברי, עבדי המלך, וראו את הכח אשר
בי להשיב את הצאן האלה למלך, למען
אקנה את לבם, ואנהגם להאמין בדברי.

29 Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

אלה מחשבות עמון בראותו את יסורי
האנשים אשר היו בעיניו כאחים.

30 And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

אז הנעימם עמון בדבריו ואמר: אחי,
אל תפל רוחכם; נלכה נא לבקש את הצאן;
הבה נקבצו, ונשיבו אל מקום המים, ובזאת
נציל את עדרי המלך ולא יהרגנו.

31 And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

והם הלכו לבקש את צאנם ועמון בראשם,
והם רצו מהר והשיגו את צאן המלך וקבצו
שנית והביאו אל מקום המים.

32 And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

והאנשים ההם קמו שנית להפיץ את צאנם;
ועמון אמר אל אחיו: הקיפו את העדרים
סביב לכל יברחו, ואני אלך לריב עם האנשים
האלה המפיצים את צאננו.

33 And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

- 34 Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.
- 35 Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.
- 36 But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.
- 37 But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.
- 38 Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.
- 39 And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.
- וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּם עֲמוֹן; וְהוּא יָצָא וְעָמַד לְרִיב עִם הָעוֹמְדִים לִיד מֵי שֶׁבוּץ, וּמִסְפָּרָם לֹא הָיָה מְעַט.
- עַל כֵּן לֹא יָרְאוּ אֶת עֲמוֹן, בְּחָשְׁבָם כִּי אֶחָד אֲנָשִׁיהֶם יוּכַל לְהָרְגוֹ כְּאֻתָּת נַפְשׁוֹ, כִּי לֹא יָדְעוּ עַל דְּבַר יְהוָה לְמוֹשִׁיעַ לְהַצִּיל אֶת בְּנָיו מִיָּדֵיהֶם; וְאִף לֹא יָדְעוּ מְאוּמָה עַל יְהוָה. אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְעַנְּגוּ בְּהַשְׁמֵדֵת בְּנֵי עַמָּם וּמִפְּנֵי זֹאת קָמוּ לְפָזֵר אֶת צֹאן הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- אִף עֲמוֹן עָמַד לִפְנֵיהֶם וְהֵחֵל לָרֶגֶם אוֹתָם אֶבֶן בְּמִקְלָעוֹ; אָכֵן, בְּכַח רַב רָגַם אוֹתָם בְּאַבְנֵים; וְהוּא הָרַג אֶחָדִים מֵהֶם עַד כִּי נִדְּהָמוּ מִעֲצָמָת כָּחוֹ. אִף הֵם קָעְסוּ עַל הָרַג עַמִּיתֵיהֶם, וְנִקְמְרוּ אִמָּר לְהַכּוֹתוֹ. וּבְרָאוּתָם כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לוֹ בְּאַבְנֵיהֶם, בָּאוּ לְהָרְגוֹ בְּאַלּוּתֵיהֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיף אֶת אַלְתּוֹ לְהַכּוֹת אֶת עֲמוֹן, כָּרַת עֲמוֹן אֶת זְרוּעוֹ בְּחֶרֶבוֹ. אָכֵן, הוּא עָמַד בְּפָנָיו מִהִלְמוּתֵיהֶם בְּכַרְתּוֹ אֶת זְרוּעוֹתֵיהֶם בְּקִצֵּה חֶרֶבוֹ עַד כִּי הִשְׁתַּוְּמוּ וְהֵחֵלוּ לָנוּס מִפְּנָיו. וְאִף כִּי מִסְפָּרָם לֹא הָיָה מְעַט הוּא הֵנִיסָם בְּכַח זְרוּעוֹ.
- שִׁשָּׁה מֵהֶם נָפְלוּ מֵאַבְנֵי הַקֶּלֶעַ, וְהוּא לֹא הָרַג בְּחֶרֶבוֹ אִישׁ, זֹלַת מְנַהִיגָם; וְהוּא כָרַת מִזְרוּעוֹתֵיהֶם כְּמִסְפָּר אֲשֶׁר הוֹרְמוּ עָלָיו, וְלֹא הָיוּ הֵן מְעֻטּוֹת.
- וְאַחַר גָּרְשׁוּ אוֹתָם הָרַחֵק מִמֶּנּוּ, שָׁב וְהִשְׁקָה, עִם אֶחָיו, אֶת עֲדָרֵיהֶם, וְהִשִּׁיבָם אֶל מְרֻעַ הַמֶּלֶךְ. אִזּוֹ הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהֵם נוֹשְׂאִים אֶת זְרוּעוֹת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהָרַג אֶת עֲמוֹן, וְנִכְרְתוּ בְּחֶרֶבוֹ לְמַעַן יִהְיוּ עֵדוּת עַל הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ.

יח

18

- 1 And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.
- 2 And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks,
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לָמוֹנִי צִוָּה עַל עֲבָדָיו לַעֲמֹד לִפְנָיו וּלְהָעִיד עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ בְּעֵינָיו הַזֶּה.
- וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר הִעִידוּ כֻלָּם עַל אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ, וְאַחַר אֲשֶׁר הוּא לָמַד עַל נְאֻמָּנוֹת עֲמוֹן בְּהַצִּילוֹ אֶת

עלמא יח-ג-י

צאנו, ומה רב כחו במלחמה על מבקשי נפשו, הוא השתומם מאד ואמר: אכן, גדול זה מאד. האין זה הרוח הגדול השולח שפטים כה גדולים בעם הזה, על רציחותיהם?

והם ענו למלך ואמרו: איננו יודעים אם הרוח הגדול הוא או אדם, אף זאת ידענו, כי אין אויבי המלך יכולים להרגו; אף אינם יכולים לפזר את צאן המלך בהיותו עמנו, מפני ממחיותו ורב כחו; לכן, ידענו כי הוא ידיד למלך. הנה, אדונינו המלך, לא נאמין כי יש לאדם כח רב כזה; הן ידוע נדע כי איש לא יוכל להרגו.

וכשמע המלך את הדברים האלה, הוא אמר אליהם: עתה ידעתי כי זה הרוח הגדול; הוא ירד לעת הזאת להציל את חייכם, למנעני מהריגתכם, כהרגי את עמיתים. הנה, זה הרוח הגדול אשר עליו דברו אבותינו.

ובידי למוני היתה מסורת על קיום רוח גדול, והוא קבלה מאביו. ואף כי האמינו עמו ברוח גדול, חשבו כי כל מעשיהם ישרו. ואולם למוני החל לירא מאד פן עוה בהרגו את עבדיו.

יען אשר רבים מהם הרג כי הפיצו בני עמם את העדרים ליד מקום המים; וכך, מפני פזור צאנם, הומתו.

והנה היה זה מנהג הלמנים האלה לעמד ליד מי שבוץ למען פזר את עדרי האנשים בעבור ינהגו רבים מהפזורים אל אדמותיהם, כי היה זה נהג מעשה הבזה בקרבם.

והמלך למוני שאל את עבדיו לאמר: איפה האיש הזה אשר לו כח רב כזה?

והם אמרו לו: הנהו נותן מספוא אל סוסיו. כי עוד בטרם עת השקות הצאן, צוה המלך את עבדיו להכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו למען יובל אל ארץ נפי, כי אבי למוני, אשר הוא מלך כל הארץ, יעד לעשות שם משתה גדול.

וכשמע המלך למוני כי היה עמון מכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו, רבתה השתוממותו

and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

3 And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

4 And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

5 Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

6 For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

7 Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

8 And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

9 And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

10 Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness

עֲלָמָא יח:יא-כ

- על נַאֲמָנוֹת עֲמוֹן, וְהוּא אָמַר: אֲכֹן, לֹא הָיָה
בְּכָל עֲבָדֵי מְשָׁרַת נַאֲמָן כָּאִישׁ הַזֶּה, כִּי זֹכֵר
הוּא אֶת כָּל מִצְוֹתַי לְקַיְמָן.
- עַתָּה יָדוּעַ יָדַעְתִּי כִּי זֶה הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל וְרִצּוֹנִי
כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלַי, אֲךָ לֹא אֶרְהִיב עוֹ בְּנַפְשִׁי.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר כָּלָה עֲמוֹן לְהַכִּין אֶת הַסּוּסִים וְאֶת
הַמְּרֻכְבוֹת לְמַסַּע הַמֶּלֶךְ וְעַבְדָּיו, הוּא בָּא לִפְנֵי
מוֹשֵׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ וְרָאָה כִּי שֵׁנָה מְרָאָה הַמֶּלֶךְ,
וְהוּא עָמַד לָשׁוּב וּלְצֵאת מִפָּנָיו.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אֶחָד עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ: רַבְּנָה,
אֲשֶׁר פִּשְׁרוֹ מֶלֶךְ גָּבוֹר וָרֵב, כִּי מַלְכֵיהֶם
נִחְשְׁבוּ אֲדִירִים. וְכֵה אָמַר אֵלָיו: רַבְּנָה,
הַמֶּלֶךְ חָפֵץ כִּי תִשָּׂאֵר.
- וְעֲמוֹן סָב וּפָנָה אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:
מָה חָפֵצְךָ כִּי אַעֲשֶׂה לְמַעֲנֶךָ, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ?
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ לֹא עָנָהוּ בַתּוֹךְ שְׁעָה תְּמִימָה עַל פִּי
חֲשָׁבוֹן זְמַנִּים, כִּי לֹא יָדַע מָה יֹאמַר לוֹ.
- וְעֲמוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו שֵׁנִית: מָה רִצּוֹנְךָ מִפָּנָי?
וְלֹא עָנָהוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר מָלֵא עֲמוֹן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, יָדַע אֶת
מַחְשְׁבוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: הֲאֵם כִּי שָׁמַעְתָּ
כִּי הִגַּנְתִּי עַל עֲבָדֶיךָ וְעַל צֹאנְךָ, וְהִרְגַּתִּי שִׁבְעָה
מֵעַמִּיתֵיהֶם בְּמִקְלַע וּבַחֶרֶב, וְלֹאֲחֵרִים כְּרַתִּי
אֶת הַזְּרוּעוֹת לְמַעַן הִגֵּן עַל צֹאנְךָ וְעַל עֲבָדֶיךָ?
הֲזֹאת סִבַּת פְּלִיאָתְךָ?
- אֲשָׁאֵל נָא אוֹתְךָ: מָה זֹאת כִּי כֹה גָדוֹלָה
פְּלִיאָתְךָ? הֵן גָּבַר אֲנִי וְעַבְדְּךָ. לָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר
יִשָּׂר וְתִחַפְּצֶהוּ, אוֹתוֹ אֶעֱשֶׂה.
- וְכַשְׁמַע הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוֹסִיף
לְהִשְׁתַּוּמָם, כִּי נֹכַח כִּי יָכוֹל עֲמוֹן לָדַעַת אֶת
מַחְשְׁבוֹתָיו. וְאוֹלָם הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנֵי פֶתַח אֶת פִּי
וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: מִי אַתָּה? הַאֲתָה הוּא הָרוּחַ
הַגָּדוֹל, הַיּוֹדֵעַ הַכֹּל?
- וְהִשִּׁיבוּ עֲמוֹן וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינְנִי.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: אֵיךְ תִּדְעַת אֶת מַחְשְׁבוֹת לִבִּי?
דַּבֵּר גְּלוּיּוֹת וְסַפֵּר לִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; סַפֵּר
- of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all
my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth
remember all my commandments to execute them.
- 11 Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him
that he come in unto me, but I durst not.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and
the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and
he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was
about to return out of his presence.
- 13 And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is,
being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to
be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth
thee to stay.
- 14 Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him:
What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king
answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for
he knew not what he should say unto him.
- 15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest
thou of me? But the king answered him not.
- 16 And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God,
therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto
him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and
thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the
sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks
and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?
- 17 I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am
a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which
is right, that will I do.
- 18 Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he
beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding
this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art
thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?
- 19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.
- 20 And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou
mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell

לי גם באיזה כח הרגת וקרפת את זרועות בני עמי אשר הפיצו את צאני.

me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

הנה, אם תספר לי על הדברים האלה, כל אשר תאנה נפשך, לך אתננו, ואם יהיה צורך אשמור עליך בחילי; אך יודע אני כי חזק אתה מכלם; ואולם, כל אשר תבקש ממני, אתננו לך.

21 And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

ועמון, בהיותו חכם אך תמים, אמר אל למוני: התקשיב לדברי אם אספר לך באיזה כח אני עושה את הדברים האלה? זה הדבר אשר אני מבקש.

22 Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

והמלך ענה לו ואמר: אכן, אאמין לכל דבריך. כה נתפש המלך בתחבולה.

23 And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

ועמון החל לדבר אליו גליות ואמר: המאמין אתה כי יש אלהים?

24 And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

והוא ענה ואמר: אינני יודע מה פשר זה.

25 And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

אז אמר עמון: המאמין אתה כי יש רוח גדול?

26 And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

והוא ענה: אכן.

27 And he said, Yea.

ועמון אמר: זה הוא אלהים. ועמון הוסיף לאמר: המאמין אתה כי הרוח הגדול הזה, אשר הוא אלהים, ברא את כל הדברים אשר בשמים ובארץ?

28 And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

והוא אמר: אכן, מאמין אני כי הוא ברא את כל אשר בארץ; אך אינני יודע את השמים.

29 And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

ואמר אליו עמון: השמים הם מקום משכן אלהים וכל מלאכי קדשו.

30 And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

והמלך למוני אמר: האם הוא מעל הארץ?

31 And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

ועמון אמר: אכן, והוא משקיף משמים על כל בני אדם; והוא יודע את כל מחשבות הלב וכונותיו; כי בידו נבראו הכל מבראשית.

32 And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

והמלך למוני אמר: אני מאמין בכל הדברים האלה אשר דברת. השלוח אתה מעם אלהים?

33 And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

- 34 ואמר אליו עמון: בן אדם אני; ואדם נברא בראשית בצלם אלהים. ואני קרוא מאת רוח קדשו ללמד את הדברים האלה לעם הזה, למען יתודעו אל הצדק והאמת.
- 35 And Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;
- והלך מהרוח ההיא שוכן בי, והוא אשר נותן לי ידיעה ואף כח כפי אמונותי באלהים ויתשוקתי לו.
- 36 And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.
- ובאמר עמון את הדברים האלה, הוא פתח בספור בריאת העולם ובריאת אדם. והוא ספר את כל הדברים על נפילת אדם ותאר לפניו את כתבי הזכרון אשר לעם ואת כתבי קדשו אשר נאמרו מפי הנביאים, עד עת צאת אביהם לחי מירושלם.
- 37 Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.
- והוא אף שגן באזניהם, אכן, באזני המלך ועבדיו, את דברי כל מסעי אבותיהם במדבר וכל סבלותיהם ברעב ובצמא ואת יגיעתם ועוד כדברים האלה.
- 38 And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.
- והוא שגן לפניהם גם את מעשי מרד למן ולמואל ובני ישמעאל, אכן, על כל מרידותיהם ספר להם; והוא באר להם את כל כתבי הזכרון וכתבי הקדש אשר מעת צאת לחי מירושלם ועד עצם היום ההוא.
- 39 And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.
- ואין זאת הכל, כי הוא באר להם את תכנית הנאֵלה, אשר הוכנה מיסוד העולם; ואף הודיעם על בוא המשיח ועל כל מעשי יהוה.
- 40 But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.
- והיה אחר אשר הוא אמר את כל הדברים האלה ובאֵרם למלך, האמין המלך לכל דבריו.
- 41 And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.
- והוא החל לזעק אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, רחם נא! חוסה עלי ועל עמי כרב רחמיך על עם נפי.
- 42 And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.
- ויכבלותו לומר זאת הוא נפל ארצה כמת.
- 43 And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.
- ועבדיו לקחוהו ונשאו אותו פנימה אל אשתו, והניחוהו על מטה; והוא שכב כמת במשך שני ימים ושני לילות; ואשתו ובניו ובנותיו ספדו לו מספד גדול, כמשפט הלמנים, על אבדתם.

יט

19

- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁנֵי יָמִים וּשְׁנֵי לַיְלוֹת הֵם עָמְדוּ
לְקַחַת אֶת גּוֹיָתוֹ וּלְהַנִּיחָהּ בַּקֶּבֶר אֲשֶׁר כָּרוּ
לְקַבֹּרֶת מֵתֵיהֶם.
- וְהַמַּלְכָּה, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע עֲמוֹן הַגִּיעַ לְאַזְנוֹתֶיהָ,
שָׁלְחָה לְקָרָא לוֹ וְחָפְצָה כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלֶיהָ.
- וְעֲמוֹן עָשָׂה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִצְטִוָהּ, וּבָא אֶל הַמַּלְכָּה
וּבִקֵּשׁ לָדַעַת מָה הִיא תַּחֲפֹץ כִּי יַעֲשֶׂהָ.
- וְהִיא אָמְרָה אֵלָיו: מִפִּי עֲבָדֵי אִישִׁי נֹדַע
לִי כִּי נָבִיא לֹאלֹהִים קָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה, וְכִי בִידְךָ כֹחַ
לַעֲשׂוֹת רַב מִעֲשֵׂי עֹז בְּשִׁמּוֹ.
- לָכֵן, אִם נִכּוֹן הַדָּבָר, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תֵלֶךְ וְתִרְאֶה
אֶת אִישִׁי, כִּי זֶה שְׁנֵי יָמִים וּשְׁנֵי לַיְלוֹת מוֹטָל
הוּא עַל מִסְתּוֹ. יֵשׁ הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי לֹא מָת, וְיֵשׁ
הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי מָת וְהַצְחָנָה עָלֶיהָ מִמֶּנּוּ וְצָרִיד
לְהַנִּיחוֹ בַּקֶּבֶר; אֲךָ בְּאִפִּי לֹא עָלְתָה מִמֶּנּוּ
כָּל צַחְחָנָה.
- הִנֵּה, זֹאת חָפֵץ עֲמוֹן בִּידְעוֹ כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ
לְמוֹנֵי שָׂרָיו תַּחַת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים; וּבִידְעוֹ כִּי
הוֹסֵר מִדַּעַת הַמֶּלֶךְ לֹוֹס חֹסֶר הָאֵמוּנָה הָאֶפְלָל,
וְהָאוֹר אֲשֶׁר הָאִיר אֶת דַּעַתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אוֹר
תַּפְאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא אוֹר נִפְלָא אֲשֶׁר
לְטוֹבוֹ, הַכֵּנִס רַב גִּיל אֶל נַפְשׁוֹ, עַד כִּי נִמּוֹג
עָנָן הַקִּדְרוֹת וְאוֹר חַי עוֹלָם הִצֵּת בְּנַפְשׁוֹ.
אָכֵן, הוּא יָדַע כִּי הָאוֹר הַזֶּה הִתְגַּבֵּר עַל גּוֹ
וְהוּא הִתְנַשָּׂא בְּאֱלֹהִים.
- וְהִנֵּה, חָפֵץ הַמַּלְכָּה הָיָה חָפְצוֹ הַיָּחִיד. לָכֵן
הוּא נִכְנָס לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּבִקְשַׁת הַמַּלְכָּה;
וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וַיֵּדַע כִּי לֹא מָת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל הַמַּלְכָּה: לֹא מָת הוּא,
כִּי תִרְדַּמְתָּ אֱלֹהִים נִפְלָה עָלָיו וּמָחָר תִּקְיֹץ
וְיָקוּם; לָכֵן, אֵל תִּקְבְּרוּהוּ.
- וְאָמַר לָהּ עֲמוֹן: הֲתֵאֱמִינִי בְּזֹאת? וְהִיא אָמְרָה
לוֹ: אֵינִי לִי עֵדוּת כִּי אִם דְּבָרְךָ וּדְבַר עֲבָדֶינִי. עַל
אֵף זֹאת, מֵאֲמִינָה אֲנִי כִּי כְּדָבְרְךָ יִהְיֶה.
- 1 And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.
- 2 Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.
- 3 And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.
- 4 And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;
- 5 Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.
- 6 Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—
- 7 Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.
- 8 And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.
- 9 And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

- 10 And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.
- 11 And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.
- 12 And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.
- 13 For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.
- 14 Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.
- 15 Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.
- 16 And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—
- 17 Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene
- וַאֲמַר אֱלִיָּה עִמּוֹן: בְּרוּכָה אַתְּ עַל גְּדֹלַת אֱמוּנָתְךָ. אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, אִשָּׁה, כִּי לֹא נִמְצְאָה אֱמוּנָה רַבָּה כְּזֹאת בְּכָל עַם הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהָאִשָּׁה שָׁמְרָה אֶת מִטַּת בַּעְלָהּ מִן הַשָּׁעָה הַהִיא עַד לַמָּחָרֶת בַּשָּׁעָה אֲשֶׁר יַעֲד עִמּוֹן לָקוּמוֹ.
- וְהוּא קָם כַּדְּבַר עִמּוֹן; וּבְקוּמוֹ פָּשַׁט אֶת יָדוֹ לְקִרְאֵת הָאִשָּׁה וְאָמַר: בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהִים וּבְרוּכָה אַתְּ.
- כִּי כְהִיֹּתָךְ חַיָּה, הִנֵּה רָאִיתִי אֶת גּוֹאֲלִי; וְהוּא יָבוֹא, וְיֵלֵד מֵאִשָּׁה וְיִגְאֹל אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי אָנוּשׁ הַמֵּאֲמַנִּים בְּשִׁמּוֹ. וּבְאָמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, מָלָא לִבּוֹ בְּקִרְבּוֹ וְהוּא נָפַל עוֹד פַּעַם מִשְׁמִיחָה; וְכֵן נָפְלָה הַמַּלְכָּה, כִּי גָבַר עָלֶיהָ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה עִמּוֹן כִּי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים נִשְׁפָּכָה בְּכָפִי תַפְלוּתִי, עַל אֶחָיו הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מְקוֹר אֲבָל כֹּה רַב בְּקִרְבָּם הַנְּפִיטִים, אוֹ בְּקִרְבָּם כָּל עַם אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי עוֹנֹוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִסּוּרוֹתֵיהֶם, הוּא נָפַל עַל בְּרָכְיוֹ וְשָׁפַךְ אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ בַּתְּפִלָּה וּבַהוֹדָיָה לְאֱלֹהִים עַל מַעֲשָׂהוּ לְמַעַן אֶחָיו, וְאֵף עָלָיו גְּבֻרַת הַשְׁמִיחָה; וְכֹה נָפְלוּ שְׁלֹשָׁתָם אַרְצָה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ עַבְדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי נָפְלוּ אֵלֶּה, הִחֲלוּ גַם הֵם לְקִרְאֵי אֱלֹהִים, כִּי אֵף עָלֵיהֶם הָיְתָה יְרֵאָת יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵמָּה הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהִעִידוּ עַל הַכֹּחַ הָרַב אֲשֶׁר לְעִמּוֹן.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה בְּרַב כֹּחַם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ כָּלָם אַרְצָה, זֹלַת אַחַת הַנָּשִׁים הַלְּמָנִיתִית, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאָה שְׁמָהּ אַבִּישׁ, וְהִיא הִפְכָּה לְהֶאֱמִין בִּיהוָה לִפְנֵי שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אַחֵר חֲזִיוֹן נִפְלֵא אֲשֶׁר לְאִבֶּיהָ.
- וְכֵן, אַחֵר הִפְכָּה מֵאֲמִינָה בִּיהוָה, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הוֹדִיעָה בְּרַבִּים אֶת הַדְּבָר מֵעוֹלָם, בְּרִאיוֹתָהּ אֶת כָּל עַבְדֵי לְמוֹנֵי נוֹפְלִים אַרְצָה וְאֵף אֶת גְּבֻרָתָהּ, הַמֶּלֶכָה, וְאֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאֶת עִמּוֹן שְׂרוּעִים עַל הָאָרֶץ, יְדוּעַ יְדוּעָה כִּי הָיָה כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים. וְסִבְרָה הִיא כִּי זֹאת שְׁעַת

כִּשְׁר, בְּהוֹדִיעַ לָעַם אֶת אֲשֶׁר קָרָה בְּתוֹכָם,
כִּי בְרָאִיתֶם אֶת הַמֶּלֶכָה הַזֶּה, הֵם יוֹסִיבוּ
לְהֵאָמִין בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים. לָכֵן הִיא רָצָה מִבֵּית
אֶל בֵּית וְהוֹדִיעָה לְאֲנָשִׁים אֶת הַדָּבָר.

it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְקַבֵּץ אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ.
וּבָאוּ הַמְּוֹנִים וְחִזּוּ, לְמַרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתָם,
בְּמַלְכוֹ וּבַמֶּלֶכָה וּבַעֲבָדֵיהֶם שׁוֹכְבִים עַל
הָאָרֶץ, כָּלֵם מִטָּלִים כְּמֵתִים; וְהֵם אַף
רָאוּ אֶת עֲמוֹן וְהִנֵּהוּ אִישׁ עִם נָפִי.

18 And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

וְהָעַם הִחֵל לְהִתְלַוֵּן בֵּינֵיהֶם; וְחָלַק אֶמְרוּ כִּי
רָעָה גְדוֹלָה בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם, עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְעַל בֵּיתוֹ,
כִּי הִתִּיר לְאִישׁ מֵעַם נָפִי לְהִשָּׂאֵר בְּאַרְצָם.

19 And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

וְאַחֲרֵים גָּעְרוּ בָהֶם וְאָמְרוּ כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ הֵבִיא אֶת
הָרָעָה הַזֹּאת עַל בֵּיתוֹ, יֵשֶׁן אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת
עֲבָדָיו, אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ לְצֹאֲנֵנוּ לְפוֹץ עַל מֵי שִׁבּוּץ.

20 But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ עַל מֵי שִׁבּוּץ וְאֲשֶׁר
פָּזְרוּ אֶת צֹאן הַמֶּלֶךְ גָּעְרוּ בְּאַלְהָם, כִּי הֵם רָגְזוּ
עַל עֲמוֹן מִפְּנֵי הַהָרַג אֲשֶׁר הָרַג בְּעַמִּיתֵיהֶם
עַל מֵי שִׁבּוּץ, בְּהִגָּנוֹ עַל עֲדָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ.

21 And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

וְאַחַד מֵהֶם, אֲשֶׁר אָחִיו נָפַל בְּחֶרֶב עֲמוֹן
וְאֲשֶׁר חָמְתּוֹ עַל עֲמוֹן בְּעָרָהּ בּוֹ, שָׁלַח אֶת
חֶרְבּוֹ וְקָרַב אֶל עֲמוֹן לְהִטִּיל בּוֹ אֶת חֶרְבּוֹ
וּלְהָרְגוֹ; וְהִנֵּה, כִּהְנִיפוֹ אֶת הַחֶרֶב לְהַכּוֹתוֹ,
הוּא נָפַל אַרְצָה מֵת.

22 Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

וְהִנֵּנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי לֹא נָתַן ה' לְהָרַג אֶת עֲמוֹן,
וְזֹאת עַל פִּי דְבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל מֹשִׁיעַ
אֲבִיו לֵאמֹר: חוֹס אַחוֹס עָלָיו וְיַעֲשֶׂה לוֹ כְּפִי
אֲמוֹנָתָדָה. לָכֵן הִפְקִידוֹ מֹשִׁיעַ בְּיַד יְהוָה.

23 Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת הָעֲמוֹן כִּי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיף אֶת
חֶרְבּוֹ לְהָרַג אֶת עֲמוֹן, נָפַל מֵת, יָרַד פָּחַד עַל
כָּלֵם וְהֵם לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָדָם לְגַעַת בְּעֲמוֹן
אוּ בְּאַחַד הַנוֹפְלִים; וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְתַמְהָהּ
אֶל זֶה מֵה מְקוֹר הַכַּח הַגְּדוֹל הַזֶּה, וּמֵה
מִשְׁמַע כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

24 And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

וְרַבִּים מִן הַקָּהָל אָמְרוּ כִּי עֲמוֹן הוּא הָרוֹחַ
הַגְּדוֹל, וְאַחֲרֵים אָמְרוּ כִּי הָרוֹחַ הַגְּדוֹל שְׁלָחוֹ;

25 And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

- 26 But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.
- 27 And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.
- 28 And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.
- 29 And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!
- 30 And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.
- 31 And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.
- 32 But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.
- 33 And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.
- 34 And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.
- אף אחרים גערו בְּכָל אֶלֶה וְאָמְרוּ כִּי עֲמוֹן הוּא מִפְּלֶצֶת אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלַחָה מִן הַנְּפִיטִים לְעֹנֹתָם.
- וְהָיוּ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ כִּי עֲמוֹן נִשְׁלַח מֵאֵת הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל לְהַצִּיקָם מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְכִי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל עָמַד תָּמִיד לְנַפְיִים וְהָצִיל אוֹתָם מִיָּדֵיהֶם. וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ כִּי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, הוּא אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִיד כָּה רַבִּים מִן הַלָּמָנִים אֲחֵיהֶם.
- כֹּה הִחֲלָה הַמְּרִיבָה בֵּינֵיהֶם לְהַחֲרִיף עַד מְאֹד. וּבְהִיּוֹתָם מְרִיבִים כֵּן, בָּאָה הָאִשָּׁה הַמְּשָׁרְתָת, אֲשֶׁר גָּרְמָה לְהַמּוֹן לְהֵאסֹף, וּבְרֹאוֹתָהּ אֶת הַמְּרִיבָה אֲשֶׁר בִּקְרֵב הַקְּהָל, גָּדַל צַעֲרָה מְאֹד, עַד דְּמְעוֹת.
- וְהָיָה הִלְכָה וְלָקְחָה אֶת הַמַּלְכָּה בְּיָדָהּ, כִּי אוֹלִי תוּכַל לְהַקִּימָה מִן הָאָרֶץ; וּכְנִגְעָה בְּיָדָהּ, הָיָה קָמָה וְעָמְדָה עַל רַגְלֶיהָ, וְקָרָאָה בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּךְ יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר הוֹשִׁיעַנִי מִשְׁאוֹל הָאֵימָה! בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה, אֱלֹהִים, רַחֵם נָא עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה!
- וּבְאֲמָרָהּ זֹאת, סָפְקָה כַּפֶּיהָ וְהִשְׁמַחָה מִמַּלְאָה אֶת לִבָּהּ וּשְׁפָתֶיהָ דּוֹבְרוֹת מִלִּים רַבּוֹת בְּלִמִּי מוֹבִנּוֹת. וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתָהּ כֹּה, הָיָה לָקְחָה אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמוֹנִי בְּיָדוֹ, וְהִנֵּה הוּא קָם וְעָמַד עַל רַגְלָיו.
- וּמִיָּד, בְּרֹאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת מְרִיבַת עֲמוֹן, הוּא קָרַב אֲלֵיהֶם וְהִחֲלָה לְגַעֵר בָּהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע מִפִּי עֲמוֹן; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הֶאֱזִינוּ לְדַבְּרֵי הָאֲמִינִי הָיוּ.
- אף רַבִּים מִן הָאֲנָשִׁים לֹא הֶאֱזִינוּ לְדַבְּרָיו; עַל כֵּן הֵם הִלְכוּ אִישׁ בְּדַרְכּוֹ.
- וְעֲמוֹן, אַחֵר קוֹמָה, הָיָה מְשַׁמֵּשׁ לְפָנֵיהֶם אֵף הוּא, וְכֵן עָשׂוּ כָּל עַבְדֵי לְמוֹנִי; וְכָל־ם הִגִּידוּ אֶל הָעָם דְּבַר אֶחָד: כִּי לִבָּם הִשְׁתַּנָּה, וְכִי אֵין הֵם חֹפְצִים עוֹד לַהֲרַע.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הִגִּידוּ בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם כִּי רָאוּ מַלְאָכִים וְדִבְּרוּ עִמָּהֶם; וּבְכֵן סִפְּרוּ לָהֶם הַמַּלְאָכִים דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְדְבָרֵי צִדְקָתוֹ.

- 35 והיו שם רבים אשר האמינו בדבריהם; כל אשר האמינו נטבלו, והם היו לעם צדיק ויסדו כנסיה בקרבם.
- 36 And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.
- כה החלה פעלת יהוה בקרב הלמנים. וכה החל יהוה לשפוך את רוחו עליהם. ואנחנו רואים כי זרועו מושטת לכל השבים מרתם ומאמינים בשמו.
- 36 And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

כ

20

- והיה אחר יסדם כנסיה בארץ ההיא, חפץ המלך למוני כי ילך עמו אל ארץ נפי בעבור יציגהו לפני אביו.
- 1 And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.
- וקול יהוה היה אל עמון לאמר: לא תעלה אל ארץ נפי, כי המלך יבקש להרגך; אך אל ארץ מדוני תלך, כי אחיך אהרן ואף מולוקי ועמה אסורים שם בית הכלא.
- 2 And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.
- וכשמע עמון את הדבר הזה, הוא אמר אל למוני: הנה אחי ועמיתי אסורים בבית הכלא במדוני, ואני הולך לחלצם.
- 3 Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.
- ואמר למוני אל עמון: ידעתי כי בלתי יהוה תוכל לעשות הכל, אולם הנני הולך עמך אל ארץ מדוני; כי מלך ארץ מדוני, אשר שמו אנטיאומנו, הוא רעי; לכן אלך אל ארץ מדוני, למען אדבר חלקות אל מלך הארץ והוא יוציא את עמיתיך מבית הכלא. ואמר למוני אל עמון: מי הגיד לך כי עמיתיך אסורים?
- 4 Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?
- ואמר לו עמון: איש לא הגיד לי, בלתי אלהים; והוא אמר לי: לך וחלץ את עמיתיך, כי אסורים הם בארץ מדוני.
- 5 And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.
- וכשמע זאת למוני, הוא צוה את עבדיו להכין את סוסיו ואת מרכבותיו.
- 6 Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.
- והוא אמר אל עמון: בוא נא, הנני יורד עמך אל ארץ מדוני ושם אפציר במלך לשחרר את עמיתיך האסורים.
- 7 And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.
- והיה בצאת עמון ולמוני למסעם שמה, הם פגשו את אבי למוני, אשר היה מלך על כל הארץ.
- 8 And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

- 9 And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?
- 10 And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?
- 11 And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.
- 12 And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.
- 13 And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.
- 14 Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.
- 15 But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.
- 16 Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.
- 17 But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.
- 18 And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.
- וְאָבִי לְמוֹנִי אָמַר אֵלָיו: מַדּוּעַ לֹא בָאתָם אֵלַי הַמִּשְׁתֶּה בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי בּוֹ מִשְׁתֶּה לְבָנָי וּלְעַמִּי?
- וְעוֹד אָמַר: אַנְהָ מוֹעֵדוֹת פָּנֶיךָ עִם הַנִּפְיִי הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אֶחָד בְּנֵי אִישׁ כִּזְבִּים.
- וְלְמוֹנִי, בְּחֻשְׁשׁוֹ לְהַעֲלִיב אוֹתוֹ, סָפַר לוֹ לָאֵן הוּא הוֹלֵךְ.
- וְהוּא אָף סָפַר לוֹ אֶת כָּל סִבַּת שְׁהִיטוֹ בְּאַרְצָ מַלְכוּתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר מָנְעָה אוֹתוֹ מִלָּכֶת אֶל אָבִיו לַמִּשְׁתֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר סָפַר לְמוֹנִי לְאָבִיו אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה, לְמַרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתוֹ, כַּעַס עָלָיו אָבִיו וְאָמַר: לְמוֹנִי, הִנֵּה הוֹלֵךְ לְחַלֵּץ אֶת הַנִּפְיִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי אִישׁ כִּזְבִּים הֵם. הוּא גָזַל אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וְעַתָּה גַם בְּנֵינוּ בָּאִים בְּתוֹכֵנוּ, לְמַעַן יִרְמֹנוּ בְּנִכְלִיָּהֶם וּבְכִזְבֵּיהֶם, בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹסִיפוּ לְנַשְׁלָנוּ מִכְּרוּשָׁנוּ.
- וְאָבִי לְמוֹנִי צִוָּהוּ לְהָרֹג אֶת עַמּוֹן בַּחֶרֶב, וְאֵף צִוָּהוּ כִּי לֹא יֵלֶךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי, וְכִי יָשׁוּב עִמּוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל.
- אֵף לְמוֹנִי אָמַר אֵלָיו: לֹא אֶהְרֹג אֶת עַמּוֹן וְלֹא אָשׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל, כִּי לְאֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ, לְמַעַן חַלֵּץ אֶת עַמִּיתִי עַמּוֹן, כִּי יוֹדַעְתִּי אֲנִי אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֲנָשִׁי צַדִּיק לֹאֵלֶּהִי הָאֱמֶת וְנִבִּיאֵי קִדְשׁוֹ.
- וְכַשְׁמַע אָבִיו אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חָרָה אַפּוֹ בְּבָנּוֹ, וְהוּא שָׁלַף אֶת חֶרְבּוֹ לְהַכּוֹתוֹ אֶרְצָה.
- אֵף עַמּוֹן עָמַד לְפָנָיו וְאָמַר לוֹ: לֹא תִהְרֹג אֶת בְּנִי! וְאוֹלָם, טוֹב הִיָּה כִּי יָפֹל הוּא וְלֹא אַתָּה, כִּי שָׁב מִחֻטְאֵי; וְאִלּוּ נָפַלְתָּ אֶתָּה כְּעַתָּה הַזֹּאת, בְּהִוִּיתְךָ בְּחַמָּתְךָ, לֹא יָכֹלָה נַפְשְׁךָ לְהִנָּצֵל.
- וְעוֹד: רָאוּ כִּי תִתְאַפֵּק, כִּי אַם תִּהְרֹג אֶת בְּנִי, אֲשֶׁר נָקִי כָּפִים הוּא, תִּעָלֶה צַעֲקַת דָּמָיו מִן הָאֲדָמָה אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו בְּתַבִּיעֵת נִקְמָה מִמֶּךָ; וְאוֹלֵי תִאָּבֵד אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ.

עֲלֵמָא כ:יט-כח

- 19 Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.
- וְכַבְּלוֹת עֲמוֹן לוֹמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, עֲנָהּ אָבִי לְמוֹנִי לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי כִּי בְּהָרְגִי אֶת בְּנִי, דָּם נָקִי אֲשַׁפֵּךְ; כִּי אַתָּה הוּא אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשָׁתָּ לְכַלּוֹתוֹ.
- 20 And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.
- וְהוּא שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ לְהַרְגֵּ אֶת עֲמוֹן; וְאוֹלָם עֲמוֹן נָשָׂא אֶת מַהְלְמוֹתָיו וְאֵף הִכָּה אֶת זְרוּעוֹ עַד כִּי לֹא יָכַל לַפְעֵל בָּהּ.
- 21 Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּרְאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי יָכוֹל עֲמוֹן לְהָרְגוֹ, הֵחֵל לְהַפְצִיר בּוֹ כִּי יַחֲסוּס עַל חַיָּיו.
- 22 But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.
- אָף עֲמוֹן הִנִּיף אֶת חֶרְבוֹ וְאָמַר לוֹ: הִנְנִי מִכָּה בָּךְ, אִם לֹא תוֹרָה בְּעֵבֹרִי עַל שְׁחִירוֹר עַמִּיתִי מִכְּלָאִם.
- 23 Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ, אֲשֶׁר חָשַׁשׁ לֵאבֹד אֶת חַיָּיו, אָמַר: אִם תַּחֲסוּס עָלַי, אֶתֶּן לְךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקֹשׁ, עַד חֲצִי הַמַּמְלָכּוֹת.
- 24 Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.
- וְכַרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן כִּי פָעַל עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ הַזָּקֵן כְּכִי חָפְצוֹ, אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם תוֹרָה עַל שְׁחִירוֹר עַמִּיתִי מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא, וְאֵף תִּרְשָׁה כִּי לְמוֹנִי יוֹסִיף לְהַחֲזִיק אֶת מַמְלָכּוֹתוֹ, וְלֹא יִרַע זֶה בְּעֵינָיָהּ, כִּי תִרְשָׁה לוֹ לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּחָפְצוֹ בְּכָל דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר יַחֲשַׁב לִנְכוֹן, חוּס אַחוּס עָלֶיךָ. וְלֹא, לְאַרְצִי אֶכְפֶּה.
- 25 Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.
- וְכַבְּלוֹת עֲמוֹן לוֹמַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵחֵל הַמֶּלֶךְ לְשִׂמְחָה עַל הַצֵּלָת נַפְשׁוֹ.
- 26 And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—
- וְתִמְהוֹנוֹ גָּדַל מְאֹד כִּאֲשֶׁר רָאָה כִּי אֵין עֲמוֹן חָפֵץ לְהָרְגוֹ וְגַם כִּרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת גָּדַל אֶהְבֵּת עֲמוֹן לְבָנוֹ לְמוֹנִי. וְהוּא אָמַר: יֵעָן כִּי כָּל אֲשֶׁר חָפְצָתָּ מִמֹּנִי הוּא שְׁחִירוֹר עַמִּיתֶיךָ וְכִי אֶנִּיחַ כִּי בְנִי לְמוֹנִי יַחֲזִיק אֶת מַמְלָכּוֹתוֹ, הִנְנִי נִעְנָה לְךָ כִּי בְנִי יַחֲזִיק בְּמַמְלָכּוֹתוֹ מִן הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה וְעַד עוֹלָם. לֹא אוֹסִיף עוֹד לְמַשֵּׁל בּוֹ.
- 27 And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.
- וְהִנְנִי אֵף מוֹרָה בְּעֵבֹרֶךָ אֶת שְׁחִירוֹר עַמִּיתֶיךָ מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא, וְאַתָּה וְעַמִּיתֶיךָ תוֹכְלוּ לָבוֹא אֵלַי, אֶל מַמְלַכְתִּי; כִּי עַז חָפְצִי לִקְבֹּל אֶת פְּנִיכֶם. כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ הָיָה מִפְתָּע מְאֹד מִדְּבָרֵי עֲמוֹן וְכֵן מִדְּבָרֵי בְּנוֹ לְמוֹנִי; לָכֵן רָצָה מְאֹד לְלַמְּדָם.
- 28 And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the
- וְעֲמוֹן וְלְמוֹנִי הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמִסְעָם אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. וְלְמוֹנִי מָצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי מֶלֶךְ הָאֶרֶץ;

עֲלֵמָא כ:כט–כא:ה

על כן שחררו עמיתי עמון מבית הכלא.

eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

ובראותו אותם עמון הוא התעצב מאד כי היו עירמים, ועורם נשחת מאד, כי נאסרו בעבדותים. והם סבלו ברעב ובצמא ובכל מיני יסורים. ועל אף זאת, את כל יסוריהם הם סבלו בארף רוח.

29 And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

ובמקרה היה זה גורלם לכל בידי עם קשה לב וקשה ערף ביותר; על כן לא שמעו לדבריהם, והם גרשום והכום, ושלחום מבית אל בית וממקום אל מקום, עד בואם אל ארץ מדוני; שם הם נלקחו והשלכו לבית הכלא ונאסרו בעבדותים ונשארו כלואים ימים רבים, עד אשר חלצו בידי למוני ועמון.

30 And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiffnecked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

כא

21

והיה בהפרד עמון ועמיתיו בגבול ארץ הלמנים, פנה אהרן לנסע אל הארץ אשר הלמנים קראוה ירושלם, על שם ארץ מולדת אבותיהם; והיא הרחק, בגבול ארץ מורמון.

1 Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

והלמנים והעמלקיים ועם עמולון בנו עיר גדולה, אשר שמה נקרא ירושלם.

2 Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

והלמנים עצמם היו קשים דים, ואולם העמלקיים והעמולונים היו אף קשים מהם; לכן הם הטו את הלמנים להקשות את לבם, להתחזק ברשעה ובתועבותיהם.

3 Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

ואהרן בא אל העיר ירושלם, והחל להטיף אל העמלקיים. אכן, הוא החל להטיף להם בבתי הכנסת אשר להם, כי הם בנו בתי כנסת כמשפט הנחורים; כי רבים מן העמלקיים והעמולונים הלכו בדרך מאמיני תורת נחור.

4 And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

לכן, בבוא אהרן אל אחד בתי הכנסת להטיף אל העם, וכאשר דבר אליהם, והנה קם איש עמלקי והחל לריב עמו, ואמר: מה הוא הדבר אשר העדת עליו? האתה ראית מלאך? מדוע אין מלאכים מופיעים לפנינו? האין העם הזה טוב כעמך?

5 Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

עֲלָמָא כּא:ו-יֵד

- הִנֵּה גַם אֲמַרְתָּ כִּי אִם לֹא נִנָּחַם עַל חַטָּאֵינוּ, אֲבֹד נֶאֱבֹד. אֵיכְכָּה תִדַּע אֶת מַחְשַׁבְתָּ לִבְנוֹ וְכִנְיָנוּ? אִיךָ תִדַּע כִּי יֵשׁ לָנוּ עַל מַה לְהִנָּחֵם? אִיךָ תִדַּע כִּי אֵינָנוּ עִם צְדִיק? הִנֵּה, בְּנִינוּ מִקְדָּשִׁים וְאִנְחָנוּ מִתְכַּנְסִים לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים. מֵאֲמִינִים אִנְחָנוּ כִּי יוֹשִׁיעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אֶהְרֹן: הֲתֵאֱמִין כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים יָבֹא וְיִגָּאֵל אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִחַטְאוֹתֵיהֶם?
- וְאָמַר לוֹ הָאִישׁ: אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כִּי יוֹדַע אֶתְּהָ דְבַר שְׂכָנָה. אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים בְּמִסֹּרוֹת אֲוִילִיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים. אֵינָנוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כִּי יוֹדַע אֶתְּהָ אֶשֶׁר יָבֹא, אוֹ כִּי אֲבֹתֵינוּ, וְאִף אֲבֹתֵינוּ, יָדְעוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ בְּאֲשֶׁר לְעִתִּיד לָבֹא.
- אִז הִחַל אֶהְרֹן לִבְאֹר לִפְנֵיהֶם אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ עַל אוֹדוֹת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְעַל תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, וְכִי לֹא תִתְּכֵן גְּאֻלָּה לְאִנּוּשׁוֹת, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי מוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְסִבְלוֹתָיו, וְהַכִּפָּרָה אֲשֶׁר בְּדָמָו.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הוּא בָּאָר לָהֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם רָגְזוּ עָלָיו וְהִחֲלוּ לִלְעֹג לוֹ וְלֹא הִאֲזִינוּ לְדְבָרָיו.
- וּבְרֵאוֹתָו כִּי אֵינֶם חִפְצִים לִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרָיו, הוּא יָצָא מִבֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת וְהָלַךְ אֶל כְּפָר אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא אַנִּיאַנְטִי. שָׁם מָצָא אֶת מוּלוּקִי מְשִׁיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, וְכֵן אֶת עַמָּה וְאֶת עַמִּיתָיו. וְהֵם הִתְוַכַּחוּ עִם רַבִּים עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאוֹתָם כִּי הִאֲזִנּוּ יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, הֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הַמָּקוֹם וְהָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. וְהֵם הִטִּיפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְרַבִּים, וְאִחָדִים הִאֲמִינוּ לְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּם.
- עַל אֵף זֹאת, נִתְפָּשׂוּ אֶהְרֹן וּמִסְפָּר מֵעַמִּיתָיו, וְהֵם הִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא; וְשְׂאִרֵיהֶם בָּרָחוּ מֵאֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי אֶל סְבִיבוֹתֶיהָ.
- וְהָאֲסוּרִים בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא סָבְלוּ יְסוּרִים רַבִּים, וְהֵם חָלְצוּ בְּיַד לָמוֹנִי וְעַמּוֹנִי וְקִבְּלוּ מֵאִכָּל וּמִלְבוּשׁ.
- 6 Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.
- 7 Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?
- 8 And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spoke, of that which is to come.
- 9 Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.
- 10 And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.
- 11 Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.
- 12 And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.
- 13 Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.
- 14 And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

- 15 והם הוסיפו ללכת להשמיע את דבר אלהים. וכך הם שחררו בפעם הראשונה מבית הפלא, וכך סבלו. And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.
- 16 והם הלכו לכל אשר הוליכה אותם רוח יהוה, והשיפו את דבר אלהים בכל בית כנסת אשר לעמלקיים ובכל אספה אשר לעמנים, אם נתן להם להכנס. And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.
- 17 ויהוה ברכם, ועלה בידם להביא רבים לידיעת האמת. אכן, הם שכנעו רבים על חטאיהם ועל מסורות אבותיהם אשר הן לא נכונות. And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.
- 18 ועמון ולמוני שבו מארץ מדוני אל ארץ ישמעאל, ארץ ירשתם. And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.
- 19 ולא חפץ המלך למוני כי עמון ישרתהו או יהיה עבדו. And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.
- 20 ואולם הוא צוה לבנות בתי כנסת בארץ ישמעאל ואף הורה לעמו, או לנתיניו, להאסף יחדו. But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.
- 21 והוא שמח עליהם ולמדם דברים רבים. והוא אף השמיעם כי הם עם הנתון לשלטונו, וכי הם עם חפשי, חפשיים מדכוי המלך, אביו; יען אשר נתן אביו את הסכמתו כי מלך על העם אשר בארץ ישמעאל ובכל הארץ אשר סביב. And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.
- 22 והוא אף השמיעם כי חפשיים הם לעבד את יהוה אלהיהם כרצונם בכל מקום מושבם, אם הוא בארץ אשר תחת שלטון המלך למוני. And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.
- 23 ועמון היה מטיף לעם אשר למלך למוני. והוא למדם את כל הדברים הנוגעים לצדק ושמד להזהירם מדי יום ביומו; והם הקשיבו לדברו לשמר בדבקות ובעז רוחם את מצוות אלהים. And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

כב

22

- ובְעוֹד עֲמוֹן מְלַמֵּד כִּי אֶת עַם לְמוֹנִי לֹא
הִפְסֵק, נָשׁוּב אֶל סִפּוֹר אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו; כִּי
אַחֵר עָזְבוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי, הוֹלִיכָתָהּ רוּחַ
אֱלֹהִים אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפְחִי, אֶל בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר
מֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ, זוֹלַת אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל;
וְהוּא אָבִי לְמוֹנִי.
- וְהוּא בָּא וְנִכְנַס אֶל אֲרָמוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ עִם
עַמִּיתָיו, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה לְפָנָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאָמַר אֵלָיו:
אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, הִנֵּנוּ עַמִּיתֵי עֲמוֹן אֲשֶׁר חִלַּצְתָּ
מִבֵּית הַכְּלָא.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אִם תְּחוּס עַל חַיֵּינוּ,
עֲבָדֶיךָ נִהְיָה. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: קוֹמוּ כִּי
הִנֵּנִי נוֹתֵן לָכֶם אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם. וְאִין חֲפָצִי כִּי
תִּהְיֶוּ לִי לְעֲבָדִים, אֲךָ עַז חֲפָצִי כִּי תִשְׁמְשׁוּ
לְפָנַי, כִּי טְרוּדָה דַּעֲתִי מִפָּנֵי נְדִיבוֹת אַחִיד
עֲמוֹן וְגִדְלַת דְּבָרָיו; וּמִשְׁתַּוְּקָק אֲנִי לְדַעַת
מִדּוּעַ לֹא בָּא עִמָּכֶם מִמִּדּוֹנִי.
- וְאֶהְרֹן אָמַר אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ: רוּחַ יְהוָה קָרָאָה לוֹ
לְלַכֵּת בְּדֶרֶךְ אַחֲרָת, וְהוּא הִלָּךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ
יִשְׁמָעֵאל לְלַמֵּד אֶת עַם לְמוֹנִי.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם הַמֶּלֶךְ: מָה הוּא הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר
אֲמַרְתֶּם עַל רוּחַ יְהוָה? הִנֵּה, זֶה הַדָּבָר
הַמְּטָרִיד אֶת דַּעֲתִי.
- וְעוֹד, מָה הוּא הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר עֲמוֹן אִם
תִּנָּחֲמוּ מִחַטָּא, תִּנְשְׁעוּ, וְאִם לֹא תִנָּחֲמוּ
תִנָּדְחוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן?
- וְאֶהְרֹן עָנָה וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶתָּה כִּי יֵשׁ
אֱלֹהִים? וְהַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר: אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי הָעַמְּלֻקִּים
אוֹמְרִים כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, וְאֲנִי נִתְתִּי לָהֶם כִּי יִבְנוּ
מִקְדָּשִׁים לְמַעַן יִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו לְעַבֵּד אוֹתָם;
וְאִם אֶתָּה אוֹמֵר כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, הֲאֵין אֲנִי.
- וְכַשְׁמַע זֹאת אֶהְרֹן, שָׂמַח לְבֹו וְהוּא אָמַר: הִנֵּה,
כְּנִכּוֹן הָיִיתִיךָ חִי, אֲדוֹנִי הַמֶּלֶךְ, אֲכֹן יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים.
- וְאָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: הֲאִם אֱלֹהִים הוּא הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל
אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם?
- 1 Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.
- 2 And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.
- 3 And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.
- 4 And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.
- 5 Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.
- 6 And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?
- 7 And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.
- 8 And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.
- 9 And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

- 10 And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?
- וְאָמַר אֶלָּיו אֶהְרֹן: אַכֵּן, הוּא אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ גָּדוֹל, וְהוּא בָּרָא אֶת הַכֹּל אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם וּבָאָרֶץ. הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּזֹאת?
- 11 And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: אַכֵּן, מֵאֲמִין אֲנִי כִּי הָרוּחַ הַגָּדוֹל בָּרָא הַכֹּל, וּמִבְקֵשׁ אֲנִי כִּי תִסְפֹּר לִי עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֲנִי אֲאֱמִין לְדִבְרֶיךָ.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאָה אֶהְרֹן כִּי יֵאֱמִין הַמֶּלֶךְ לְדִבְרָיו, הוּא הֵחֵל לְסַפֵּר מִמַּעֲשֵׂה בְרִיאַת אָדָם, וּלְקַרֵּא בְּאָזְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְּסֻפָּרִים כִּי בָרָא אֱלֹהִים אָדָם בְּדְמוּתוֹ, וְצָוָהוּ מִצְוֹת וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עֲבָרָה נָפַל הָאָדָם.
- 13 And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.
- וְאֶהְרֹן בָּאָר לוֹ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַחֵל בְּבְרִיאַת אָדָם; וְתֹאֵר לִפְנָיו אֶת נְפִילַת הָאָדָם, אֶת מִצְבָּם בְּבִשּׁוּר וְאֶת תְּכֵנִית הַנִּגְאָלָה אֲשֶׁר הוֹכְנָה מֵעַתָּה יֵסוּד הָעוֹלָם, בְּזִכּוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בְּעִבּוּר כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין בִּשְׁמוֹ.
- 14 And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר נָפַל הָאָדָם, הוּא לֹא יָכוֹל לְזַכּוֹת בְּדִבְרֵי מֵאֵת עַצְמוֹ; אֲךָ סְבִלּוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ וּמוֹתוֹ מְכַפְּרִים עַל חַטָּאֵי בְנֵי הָאָדָם עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה וְתִשְׁבּוּהָ וְכֵן הִלָּאָה. וְהוּא שׁוֹבֵר אֶת מוֹסְרוֹת הַמָּוֶת, וְלִקְבֹּר לֹא יִהְיֶה נִצְחוֹן וְנִשְׁכִּית הַמָּוֶת תִּבְלַע בְּתִקְוָה לְנַחַל תְּפָאֲרֶת. וְאֶהְרֹן אָכֵן בָּאָר לַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 15 And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר לוֹ אֶהְרֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אָמַר הַמֶּלֶךְ: מָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת בְּעִבּוּר אֲנַחְלֵי חַיֵּי עוֹלָם, כַּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתָּ? מָה עָלַי לַעֲשׂוֹת לְמַעַן אוֹלֵד לֵאלֹהִים, לַעֲקֹר מִחֲוִי אֶת יֵצֶר הָרַע הַזֶּה, וּלְקַבֵּל אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן אֲמַלֵּא חַדְוָה וְלֹא אֲנַדַּח בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן? וְהוּא אָמַר: הֲנִנִי נֹתֵן אֶת כָּל רְכוּשִׁי, הֲנִנִי נוֹטֵשׁ אֶת מַלְכוּתִי, לְמַעַן אֲזַכֶּה בְּחַדְוָה הַגָּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת.
- 16 But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.
- וְאוּלָּם אֶהְרֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם בְּזֹאת חֲשָׁקְךָ, אִם תִּשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, אַכֵּן, אִם תִּנָּחַם מִכָּל חַטָּאֶיךָ, וְתִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְתִקְרָא בִּשְׁמוֹ בְּאֱמוּנָה, בְּאִמּוּנָתְךָ כִּי תִקַּבֵּל, אֲנִי תִזְכֶּה בְּתוֹחֲלֶתְךָ אֲשֶׁר תִּאֲבָה נִפְשֶׁךָ.
- 17 And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:
- וְכִכְלּוֹת אֶהְרֹן לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כָּרַע הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּרֶךְ וְתִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, הוּא הִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה אַפָּיִם אֶרְצָה וּבִעֲזָ רוּחוֹ קָרָא לֵאמֹר:

- 18 O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.
- 19 And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.
- 20 Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.
- 21 Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.
- 22 Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.
- 23 Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.
- 24 Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.
- 25 But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.
- אֲנִי, אֱלֹהִים! הִנֵּה אָמַר לִי אֶהְרֹן כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים;
וְאִם יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, וְאִם אַתָּה אֱלֹהִים, אֲנִי,
הַתּוֹדֶעַ אֵלַי וְאֲנִי אֲשַׁלֵּךְ מִמֶּנִּי אֶת כָּל חַטָּאתִי
לְמַעַן דַּעַת אוֹתְךָ וּלְמַעַן אֶקוּם לַתְּחִיָּה מִן
הַמָּתִים וְאֶנְשֶׁע בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן. וּכְכֹלֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ
לְדַבֵּר זֹאת, הוּא הִכָּה בְּהֶלֶם, כְּאִלּוּ מֵת.
- אֲזַרְצוּ מִשְׁרָתָיו וְאָמְרוּ לְמַלְכָּה אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר
קָרָה לְמֶלֶךְ. וְהִיא בָּאָה אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ, וְכִרְאוּתָהּ
אוֹתוֹ וְהוּא כַּמֵּת, וְאֶת אֶהְרֹן וְאֶת עַמִּיתָיו
עוֹמְדִים כְּאִלּוּ הֵם הִסְבוּ אֶת נְפִילָתוֹ, הִיא
רָגְזָה עֲלֵיהֶם וְצִוְתָה עַל מִשְׁרָתֶיהָ, וְהֵם
מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, לְתַפְּשֵׁם וּלְהַרְגֵם.
- וְאוֹלָם הַמִּשְׁרָתִים רָאוּ אֶת סִבַּת נְפִילַת הַמֶּלֶךְ
וְלֹא הִעֲזוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָדָם אֶל אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו; וְהֵם
הִפְצִירוּ בַּמֶּלֶכָה וְאָמְרוּ: מַדּוּעַ צִוִּית עֲלֵינוּ
לְהַרֵג אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר אֶחָד מֵהֶם
חֲזָק מִכָּלֵנוּ? הֵן נָפַל לִפְנֵיהֶם.
- וְכִרְאוּת הַמֶּלֶכָה אֶת אֵימַת הַמִּשְׁרָתִים, הִחֵל
פַּחַד גָּדוֹל לִקְנוֹן בָּהּ פֶּן תֵּבֹאוּ עָלֶיהָ רָעָה גְדוֹלָה;
וְהִיא צִוְתָה אֶת מִשְׁרָתֶיהָ לְלָקֵת וּלְקַרֵּא אֶל
הָעָם כִּי יִהְיֶה אֶת אֶהְרֹן וְאֶת עַמִּיתָיו.
- וְכִרְאוּת אֶהְרֹן אֶת עֲקֻשְׁנוֹת הַמֶּלֶכָה, וּבִידְעוֹ
אֶת קָשִׁי לֵב הָעָם, הוּא יָרָא פֶּן יִתְקַבֵּץ הָעָמוֹן
וְתִפְרֹץ בְּקִרְבּוֹ מְרִיבָה גְדוֹלָה וְהִתְפָּרְעוּת.
לְכֵן שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְהִקִּים אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִן הָאָרֶץ
וְאָמַר אֵלָיו: קוּם! וְהוּא עָמַד עַל רַגְלָיו וְכָחוּ
שָׁב אֵלָיו.
- כָּל זֹאת הָיְתָה לְעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶכָה וּרְבִים מִן
הַמִּשְׁרָתִים. וְכִרְאוּתָם זֹאת הֵם הִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּ
מְאֹד וְיָרְאוּ. וְהַמֶּלֶךְ עָמַד וְהִחֵל לְשִׁמֵּשׁ
לִפְנֵיהֶם. וְכֵה שָׁמַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם עַד כִּי הִפְכוּ כָּל
אֲנָשֵׁי בֵיתוֹ מֵאֲמִינִים בִּיהוָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי נִקְבֹּץ הָעָמוֹן רַב בְּדַבֵּר הַמֶּלֶכָה, וְהֵם
הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְלוֹנֵן קְשׁוֹת מִפְּנֵי אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו.
- אֲךָ הַמֶּלֶךְ עָמַד בֵּינֵיהֶם וְשִׁמֵּשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְשָׁכַף
אֶת זַעֲמָם עַל אֶהְרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו.

- 26 And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.
- 27 And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.
- 28 Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.
- 29 And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.
- 30 And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.
- 31 And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.
- 32 And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ כִּי רָגַע הָעָם, הוּא הוֹרָה
כִּי אֶהְרֶן וְעַמִּיתָיו יַעֲמִידוּ בְּתוֹךְ הָהָמוֹן וְיִשְׁיפוּ
אֵלֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שָׁלַח קוֹל בְּרַחְבֵּי הָאָרֶץ, לְכָל עַמּוֹ
אֲשֶׁר בְּכָל אֶרֶצוֹ, בְּכָל חֲבְלֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
סָבִיב, עַד גְּבוּל הַיָּם, בְּמִזְרָח וּבִמְעַרְבּוֹ, בְּשֵׁטַח
הַנִּפְרָד מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה עַל יְדֵי רְצוּעַת יַעַר
צָרָה אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּרְעָה מִן הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמִזְרָח
וְעַד הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, וּמִסָּבִיב, בְּגִבּוֹל בְּצִפּוֹן
חוּף הַיָּם וּבְגִבּוֹל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר מִצִּפּוֹן, לִיד אֶרֶץ
זֶרַחֵמְלָה, דֶּרֶךְ גְּבוּל מְנָטִי לִיד מְקוֹרוֹת נְהַר
צִידוֹן, בּוֹאֶכָה מִן הַמִּזְרָח מַעַרְבָּה. כֹּה נִחְלְקוּ
הַלְּמָנִים וְהַנְּפִיתִים זֶה מִזֶּה.
- וְהִנֵּה כִּי אֵלֶּה מֵעַם הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר חָיו חַיִּי
בְּטִלָּה, שָׁכְנוּ בַּיַּעַר בְּאַהֲלִים; וְהֵם נָפְצוּ עַל
פְּנֵי הַיַּעַר בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי; וְכֵן מִמַּעַרְב
לְאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, בְּגִבּוֹל חוּף הַיָּם, וּבִמַּעַרְבּוֹ,
בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי, בְּמָקוֹם נִחְלַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה,
וְכָךְ הִשְׁתַּרְעוּ שְׁטָחָם לְאֶרֶץ חוּף הַיָּם.
- וְאִף לְמָנִים רַבִּים שָׁכְנוּ לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמִּזְרָחִי,
כִּי שָׁמָּה גִּרְשׁוּם הַנְּפִיתִים. כֹּךְ הָיוּ הַנְּפִיתִים כְּמַעַט
מְקִפִּים עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִים; וְאוֹלָם הַנְּפִיתִים הִתְנַחֲלוּ
בְּכָל חֲבְלֵי הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצִפּוֹן הַגּוֹבָלִים בַּיַּעַר,
לִיד מְקוֹרוֹת נְהַר צִידוֹן, מִמִּזְרָח וְעַד לְמַעַרְבּוֹ,
וּמִסָּבִיב, עַל עֵבֶר הַיַּעַר; וּבְצִפּוֹן, עַד בּוֹאֵם
אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהָ רִבְשָׁפֶע.
- וְהִיא גְּבֻלָּה בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהָ חֲרָבָה, אֲשֶׁר
הִשְׁתַּרְעָה הָרַחֵק צִפּוֹנָה, עַד הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
נוֹשְׁבָה פֶּעַם וְהַחֲרָבָה, אֲשֶׁר עַל עֲצֻמוֹתֶיהָ
דִּבְרָנוּ, וְגִלּוּהָ אֲנִשִּׁי זֶרַחֵמְלָה; וְהִיא הַמָּקוֹם
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הִצִּיגוּ אֶת כָּף רִגְלָם לְרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- מִשָּׁם הָם עָלוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם. עַל
כֵּן נִקְרָאָה הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִצִּפּוֹן לְהֵם חֲרָבָה,
וְהָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִדָּרוֹם נִקְרָאָה רִבְשָׁפֶע, וְהוּא
הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ בּוֹ כָּל מִינֵי חַיּוֹת בָּר; וְחֻלְק
מֵהֵן בָּאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ הַצִּפּוֹן לְבִקֵּשׁ אֶת מִזְוָנָם.
- רַק מֵהַלֹךְ יוֹם וּמִחֲצִית הַיּוֹם הָיָה הַמִּרְחָק
לְאִישׁ נָפִי מִן הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּמִזְרָח עַד הַיָּם אֲשֶׁר
בְּמַעַרְבּוֹ, לְאֶרֶץ גְּבוּל רִבְשָׁפֶע וְאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה.

לְכוּ, אֶרֶץ נָפִי וְאֶרֶץ זֶרְעִיחָמְלָה הָיוּ כְּמַעֵט
מִקְפּוֹת מַיִם, וְרִצְוֹעַת יִבְשָׁה קִטְנָה חִבְרָה אֶת
הָאֶרֶץ הַצְפוֹנִית וְאֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַדְרֹמִית.

were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land
between the land northward and the land southward.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים יָשְׁבוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ רִב־שַׁפְעָה מִן הַיָּם
הַמְּזֻרְחִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, וְהַנְּפִיִּים,
בְּחָכְמָתָם וּבִשְׂמִירָתָם וּבִצְבָאָם, גָּדְרוּ אֶת
הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּדְרוֹמָם, לְמָנְעָם מִהֶתְנַחֵל גַּם בְּצָפוֹן
וּמִפְּשֹׁט עַל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן.

33 And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land
Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites
in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in
the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more pos-
session on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

לְכוּ לֹא יִכְלּוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים לְהוֹסִיף לְהֶתְנַחֵל כִּי אִם
בְּאֶרֶץ נָפִי וּבִיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. בְּחָכְמַת הַנְּפִיִּים
הִיָּתָה זֹאת, כִּי הַלְּמָנִיתִים הָיוּ צוֹרְרִים לָהֶם וְהֵם
אָמְרוּ שֶׁלֹּא לִסְבֹּל אֶת מִכּוֹתֵיהֶם בְּכָל מְקוֹם;
וְכֵן גַּם שָׁמְרוּ לָהֶם מְקוֹם מִפָּלֵט, כְּפִי צְרָכָם.

34 Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the
land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom
in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would
not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have
a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר אֶמְרִי זֹאת, אָשׁוּב לְסַפֵּר עַל
עֲמוֹן וְאַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי וְעַמִּיתֵיהֶם.

35 And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of
Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

כג

23

וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים שָׁלַח קוֹל בְּכָל עָמוֹ, לְבָל
יִשְׁלְחוּ יָד אֶל עָמוֹן, אַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי,
אֶף לֹא בְּעַמִּיתֵיהֶם הַיּוֹצְאִים לְהִטִּיף אֶת
דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, בְּכָל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ, בְּכָל
אֲזוּרֵי אֶרֶץ.

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a
proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands
on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren
who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place
they should be, in any part of their land.

אָכֵן, גִּזְרָה יֵצֵא מֵאֵת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל עָמוֹ, לְבָל
יִשְׁלְחוּ יָד אֶלֵיהֶם לְאַסְרָם אוֹ לְתַתֵּם אֶל בֵּית
הַפֶּלֶא; וְהוּא אָסַר לִירֵק עֲלֵיהֶם וּלְהַכּוֹתָם, אוֹ
לְגַרְשָׁם מִבְּתֵי כְּסִיּוֹתֵיהֶם וּלְהַלְקוֹתָם בְּשׁוֹט
וּלְרַגֵּם אֹבָן. כִּי חֲפְשִׁיִּים יִהְיוּ לְבוֹא אֶל
בְּתֵיהֶם וְאֶל הַיְכָלֵיהֶם וְאֶל מִקְדָּשֵׁיהֶם.

2 Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands
on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they
spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues,
nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that
they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples,
and their sanctuaries.

וְכֵן הֵם יִכְלּוּ לְלַכֵּת לְהִטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,
כְּפִי חֲפָצָם, כִּי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְכָל בֵּיתוֹ הִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינִים
בִּיהוָה; לְכוּ שְׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת קוֹלוֹ לְעָמוֹ בְּכָל
הָאֶרֶץ, לְמַעַן הִסֵּר כָּל נִגְי מִפְּנֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים,
לְמַעַן יֵצֵא הַדְּבָר בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ לְהוֹכִיחַ לְעָמוֹ
כִּי קָבְלוּ מֵאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מְסֻרוֹת רָשָׁע, וְכִי בָּלָם
אֲחִים וְכִי עֲלֵיהֶם לְרַחֵק מִרְצָח וּמִשָּׂד וּמִגְנֵבָה
וּמִנְאוּף וּמַעֲשֵׂוֹת כָּל רָע.

3 And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their
desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his
household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land
unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but
that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might
be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and
that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that
they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit
adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר שְׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַהֲכָרָזָה הַזֹּאת,
הָלְכוּ אַהֲרֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, וּמִבֵּית

4 And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this
proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to

עבודת קדש אחד למשנהו, ליסד כנסיות
ולקדש כהנים ומורים בכל הארץ בקרב
הלמנים, להטיף וללמד את דבר אלהים
בעם. כך החלה ההצלחה להאיר להם פנים.

אלפים קבלו את דעת יהוה; אכן, אלפים
הובאו להאמין במסורות הנפיים; והם למדו
בכתבי הזכרונות והנבואות אשר נמסרו
מדור לדור עד עצם היום הזה.

וחי יהוה, כל אשר האמינו, כל אלה אשר
הובאו אל דעת האמת על ידי השפת עמון
ועמיתיו, כפי רוח ההתגלות והנבואה וכן
אלהים העושה בהם נפלאות, אני אומר
לכם, חי יהוה כי כל הלמנים אשר האמינו
בדברי השפתם והפכו מאמינים ביהוה, לא
סרו מאמונתם עד עולם.

כי הם הפכו עם צדיק; והם הניחו את כלי
נשק מרדם ולא לחמו עוד באלהים, ואף לא
באיש מאחיהם.

ואלה הם אשר הפכו מאמינים ביהוה:

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ ישמעאל.

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ מידוני.

עם הלמנים יושבי העיר נפי.

עם הלמנים יושבי ארץ שילום וארץ שמלון
ועיר למואל ועיר שמנילום.

אלה שמות ערי הלמנים אשר יושביהו הפכו
מאמינים ביהוה, ואלה הם אשר הניחו את
כלי נשק מרדם, אכן, את כל כלי מלחמתם;
כלם למנים היו.

והעמלקיים לא הפכו את אמונתם, וזלזל
איש אחד; אף מן העמולונים לא הפך איש
את אמונתו, כי הם הקשו את לבם ואף את
לב הלמנים בכל מקום משכנם בכל הארץ
ההוא, בכל כפריהם ובכל עריהם.

city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches,
and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the
Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and
thus they began to have great success.

5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea,
thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites;
and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed
down even to the present time.

6 And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many
as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching
of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of
prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say
unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in
their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

7 For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of
their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither
against any of their brethren.

8 Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

9 The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

10 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

11 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

12 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom,
and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in
the city of Shimnilom.

13 And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were
converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the
weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were
all Lamanites.

14 And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were
any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the
hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt,
yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

- 15 Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.
- 16 And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.
- 17 And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.
- 18 And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.
- וּבְכֹךְ נִקְבְּנוּ בְשֵׁמוֹת כָּל עָרֵי הַלָּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶן שָׁבוּ מִרְעֵתָם וְהִגִּיעוּ לְדַעַת אֶת הָאֱמֶת וְהִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ וּמִמִּירֵי הָאֲמוֹנָה חָפְצוּ בְשֵׁם אֲשֶׁר יִבְדִּילֵם מִשָּׂאֵר בְּנֵי עַמָּם. לְכֵן נִוְעֵץ הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּאַהֲרֹן וּבִרְבָּעִים מִכֹּהֲנֵיהֶם עַל אֹדוֹת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִקְרְאוּ, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו יִכְרוּ.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּ לְעַצְמָם אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִיִּים.
- בְּשֵׁם הַזֶּה נִקְרְאוּ וְלֹא נִקְרְאוּ עוֹד לָמָנִים.
- וְהֵם הָיוּ לְעַם חֲרוּץ מְאֹד; וְהֵם הָיוּ חֲבֵרִים לְנֶפְחִיִּים וְקִשְׁרוּ עִמָּם קִשְׁרִים, וְקָלְלָת אֱלֹהִים לֹא רָדְפָה אוֹתָם עוֹד.

כד

24

- 1 And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.
- 2 And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 3 Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 4 And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.
- 5 Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Middoni, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- וְהָעַמְלֻקִּיִּים וְהָעַמּוֹלוֹנִים וְהַלָּמָנִים יוֹשְׁבֵי אֶרֶץ עַמּוֹלוֹן וְאֶרֶץ חֵילָם וְאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, אוּ בְקֶצֶרָה, כָּל הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בְּאֶרֶץ סָבִיב, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִפְכוּ לְמַאֲמִינִים וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא קָרְאוּ עַצְמָם בְּשֵׁם אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי, הִתְעוֹרְרוּ עַל יְדֵי הָעַמְלֻקִּיִּים וְהָעַמּוֹלוֹנִים לְכַעַס עַל אֲחֵיהֶם.
- וְשִׂנְאָתָם רַבְתָּה מְאֹד, עַד כִּי הִחֲלוּ לְמָרְדּ בַּמֶּלֶכָם כִּי לֹא חָפְצוּ בּוֹ לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הֵם אָחָזוּ בְּכָלִי נֶשֶׁקָם לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ הֶעֱבִיר אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה אֶל בְּנוֹ, וְקָרָא אֶת שְׁמוֹ אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ מֵת בְּעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא, כִּאֲשֶׁר הִחֲלוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְהַכִּין מִלְחָמָה עַל עַם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְכִּי רָאוּ עַמּוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו וְכָל אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ אֶת הַכְּנוּת הַלָּמָנִים לְהַכְרִית אֶת בְּנֵי עַמָּם, הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מִדּוֹנִי. שָׁם פָּגַשׁ עַמּוֹן אֶת כָּל עַמִּיתָיו, וּמִשָּׁם הֵם הִלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל לְקִים מוֹעֵצָה עִם לָמוֹנִי וְעִם אֲחָיו, אֲנְטִי־נֶפְחִי־לְחִי, עַל אֲשֶׁר עֲלִיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת, לְהִגֹּן מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים.

- וְלֹא נִמְצָאָה נַפֵּשׁ אַחַת בֵּין כָּל הַהוֹפְכִים
מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הִיְתָה נִכְוָנָה לְאַחֹז בְּכָלִי
נִשְׁקֶם לְהִלָּחֵם עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם. אָכֵן, הִם אִף לֹא
עָשׂוּ כָּל הַכְּנוּת לְמִלְחָמָה; וּמִלָּכָם אִף צִוָּה
עֲלֵיהֶם כִּי לֹא יַעֲשׂוּ כֵן.
- וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לְעַמּוֹ עַל אֹדוֹת
הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה: עַמִּי הָאֱהוּב, אֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהִים, כִּי
אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל שָׁלַח אֲלֵינוּ בְּטוֹבוֹ אֶת אַחֵינוּ
הָאֵלֶּה, הַנִּפְיִים, לְהַטִּיף לָנוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים
וּלְשַׁכְנֵעַנו עַל אֹדוֹת מַסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרָשָׁעִים.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מוֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהֵי הַגָּדוֹל כִּי נָתַן לָנוּ חֵלֶק
מְרוּיָח קִדְשׁוֹ לְהִרְדּוֹ אֶת לִבֵּנוּ, עַד כִּי הִחְלוּנוּ
לִקְשׁוֹר קִשְׁרִים עִם אַחֵינוּ אֵלֶּה, הַנִּפְיִים.
- וְהִנֵּנִי מוֹדֶה לְאֱלֹהֵי עוֹד, כִּי בַעֲשׂוֹתֵנוּ אֶת
הַקִּשְׁרֵי הַזֶּה נִוְכַּחְנוּ בְּחַטָּאֵינוּ וּבִמְעַשֵׂי הָרָצַח
הַרְבִּים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּיָדֵינוּ.
- וְאַנִּי מוֹסִיף לְהוֹדוֹת לְאֱלֹהֵי, הָאֵל הַגָּדוֹל, כִּי
נָתַן לָנוּ לְהִנָּחֵם מִמְעַשֵׂים אֵלֶּה, וְכִי סָלַח לָנוּ
עַל חַטָּאֵינוּ הַרְבִּים הָהֵם וְהִרְצִיחוֹת אֲשֶׁר
רָצַחְנוּ, וְכִי הִסִּיר אֶת הָאָשָׁם מִלִּבֵּנוּ, וְזֹאת עַל
יְדֵי זְכוֹת בְּנוֹ.
- וְעַתָּה, אַחִי, יַעֲן אֲשֶׁר הָיָה זֶה כָּל אֲשֶׁר יָכַלְנוּ
לַעֲשׂוֹת לְהִנָּחֵם מִכָּל חַטָּאֵינוּ וּרְצִיחוֹתֵינוּ
הַרְבִּים, לְמַעַן יִסְיֶרֶם אֱלֹהִים מִלִּבֵּנוּ, כִּי הָיוּ
הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֲבוּדִים בְּיוֹתֵר בְּקִרְבִּי הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת,
אָכֵן, רָצִי הָיָה לָנוּ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהִנָּחֵם
מִרְעַתֵּנוּ בַּעֲבוּר יְמִיחָה אֶת כָּתֶם עוֹנֵינוּ;
- לָכֵן, אַחִי הָאֱהוּבִים מִכָּל, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִסִּיר
אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַכָּתֶם אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּנוּ וְחִרְבוֹתֵינוּ
בְּהִקּוֹ, הִבֵּה נִשְׁמְרָה מִגָּאֵל אֶת חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ
שְׁנִית בְּדָם אַחֵינוּ.
- הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! נִשְׁמַר נָא אֶת חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ
מִהִתְגָּאֵל בְּדָם אַחֵינוּ. כִּי אִם נִגָּאֵל שְׁנִית אֶת
חִרְבוֹתֵינוּ, אוֹלִי לֹא תוּכַלְנָה עוֹד לְהִרְחֵץ
בְּנִקְיוֹן עַל יְדֵי דָם בֶּן אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר
יִשְׁפֹּךְ לְמַעַן כִּפֹּרֶת חַטָּאֵינוּ.
- וְהָאֵל הַגָּדוֹל רַחֵם עָלֵינוּ וְהוֹדִיעֵנוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, לְמַעַן לֹא נֵאבֵד; אָכֵן, מֵרֵאשִׁי הוֹדִיעֵנוּ
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אוֹהֵב הוּא אֶת
- 6 Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.
- 7 Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.
- 8 And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.
- 9 And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.
- 10 And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.
- 11 And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do, (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—
- 12 Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.
- 13 Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.
- 14 And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he

עֲלֵמָא כד:טו-כא

נְפֻשׁוֹתֵינוּ כְּאַהֲבָתוֹ אֶת יְלָדֵינוּ. עַל כֵּן, בְּרַחֲמָיו
הוּא פּוֹקֵד אוֹתָנוּ עַל יְדֵי מַלְאָכָיו, לְמַעַן תִּגֹּדַע
לָנוּ תְּכֵנִית הַנֶּאֱלָה וְאֵף לְדוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.

loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his
angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well
as unto future generations.

הִנֵּה, מָה רַבּוֹ רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהֵינוּ! וְעַתָּה, אַחֵר
עֲשׂוֹתָנוּ כְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר יָכֻלְנוּ כִּי יִסִּיר מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת
כְּתָמֵינוּ וְחַרְבוֹתֵינוּ מִבְּהִיקוֹת, הִבֵּה נִסְתִּירָן
לְמַעַן לֹא יוֹעֵם בְּרָקָן, וְהָיוּ לְפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְעֵדוּת
בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִבְאָ לַעֲמֹד לְפָנָיו
לְמִשְׁפָּט, כִּי לֹא גָאֻלְנוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵינוּ בַּדָּם
אֲחֵינוּ מֵעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לָנוּ אֱלֹהִים אֶת דְּבָרוֹ
וּבְזֹאת טִהַרְנוּ.

15 Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as
much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our
swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept
bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we
shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not
stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his
word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנֵי עַמִּי, אִם יִבְקָשׁוּ אֲחֵינוּ לְהַכְרִיתָנוּ,
נִסְתִּיר אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵינוּ, אֵף נִקְבְּרוּ עִמָּם בְּאֲדָמָה
לְמַעַן לֹא יוֹעֵם בְּרָקָן כְּעֵדוּת בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן כִּי
לֹא הִשְׁתַּמְשְׁנוּ בָהֶן כָּלֵל. וְאִם אֲכֹן יִכְרִיתוּנוּ
אֲחֵינוּ, נֵלֶךְ אֶל אֱלֹהֵינוּ וְנוֹשָׁע.

16 And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we
will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the
earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never
used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we
shall go to our God and shall be saved.

וּכְכֹלּוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְכָל הָעָם
מִתְקַבְּצִים שָׁם, הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת
כָּל כְּלֵי נֶשֶׁק אֲשֶׁר שָׁפְכוּ בּוֹ דָּם אָדָם,
וּקְבְּרוּם עִמָּם בְּאֲדָמָה.

17 And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these
sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their
swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's
blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ, כִּי נִרְאָתָה בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּעֵדוּת לְפָנֵי
אֱלֹהִים וְאֲנָשִׁים, כִּי לְעוֹלָם לֹא יִשְׁתַּמְשׁוּ עוֹד
בְּכָלֵי נֶשֶׁק לְשַׁפֹּךְ דָּם אָדָם. וְזֹאת עָשׂוּ לְאִשׁוֹר
וּלְבָרִית עִם אֱלֹהִים, כִּי טוֹב בְּעֵינֵיהֶם לְמָסֹר
אֶת חַיֵּיהֶם מִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת דָּם אֲחֵיהֶם, לָתֵת
לְאֲחֵיהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לְקַחַת מִמֶּנּוּ; לַעֲבֹד בִּיגִיעַ
כְּפִיָּהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לְכֹלּוֹת יְמֵיהֶם בְּבִשָּׁלָה.

18 And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also
to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of
man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God,
that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up
their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would
give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would
labor abundantly with their hands.

וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִנָּחוּ הַלְּמָנִים
הָאֵלֶּה לְהֶאֱמִין בְּאֵמַת וּלְדַעְתָּהּ, הֵם הָיוּ אֵיתָנִים
בְּרוּחָם וְהָיוּ נְכוּנִים לְסַבֵּל עַד מוֹת וּבְלִבָּד כִּי לֹא
יָבוֹאוּ לְיַד חֶטֶא. וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ
אֶת נֶשֶׁק הַשָּׁלוֹם אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, אוֹ, כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ
אֶת נֶשֶׁק הַמִּלְחָמָה לְמַעַן הַשָּׁלוֹם.

19 And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe
and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto
death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their
weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

וְאֲחֵיהֶם, הַלְּמָנִים, הִתְכַּוְּנוּ לְמַלְחָמָה וְעָלוּ
עַל אֶרֶץ נֶפִי כִּי רָצוּ לְהַכְרִית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ
וּלְהַמְלִיךְ אַחֵר תַּחְתָּיו, וְאֵף לְהַכְרִית אֶת
אֲנָשֵׁי אַנְטִי־נֶפִי־לְחִי מִן הָאֶרֶץ.

20 And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made
preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose
of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of
destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

וּכְאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ עִם אֱלֹהִים כִּי הַלְּמָנִים עוֹלִים
עֲלֵיהֶם, הֵם יָצְאוּ לְקִרְאָתָם וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם
אֲרָצָה, וְהִחֲלוּ לְקַרֵּא בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה. וּבְהִיוֹתָם

21 Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they
went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the
earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in

- במצב הזה, החלו הלמנים לעלות עליהם ולהרגם בחרב.
- 22 And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.
- 23 Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—
- 24 Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.
- 25 And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.
- 26 And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.
- 27 And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.
- 28 Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.
- 29 Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.
- 30 And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.
- וכן, בלא כל התנגדות, הרגו הלמנים אלו ואלה חמש נפש מהם; ואנחנו יודעים כי ברוכים הם, כי הלכו לשכון עם אלהיהם.
- וכראות הלמנים כי אחיהם אינם נמלטים מן החרב וגם אינם נוטים ימין ושמאל, וכי על הארץ הם שוכבים ונהרגים, ואף בעת מותם, מפי חרב, הם מהללים את אלהים,
- אכן, כראות הלמנים זאת, הם חדלו מהרגם; ורבים מהם התעצבו מקרב לב על חללי החרב אשר באחיהם, כי נחמו על מעשיהם.
- והם השליכו לארץ את כלי נשקם ולא אבו שוב לקחתם, כי התיסרו על מעשי הרצח אשר בצעו; והם נפלו לארץ באחיהם, בשיקם את מבטחם ברחמי האנשים המרימים את ידם להרגם.
- וביום ההוא רב מספר הנספחים על עם אלהים ממספר ההרוגים; וההרוגים היו אנשים צדיקים; לכן אין לנו סבה לפקפק כי נושעו.
- ולא נהרג עמם אף איש רשע אחד, אף למעלה מאלף נפש התודעו אל האמת. כה רואים אנחנו כי יהוה פועל בדרךים שונות למען ישועת עמו.
- ורב הלמנים אשר הרגו כה רבים מאחיהם היו עמלקים ועמולונים, אשר רבם הלכו בדרך הנחורים.
- ולא היה בין הנספחים על עם יהוה אף איש עמלקי או עמולוני, או מנאמני דרך נחור, כי הכל היו צאצאי למן ולמואל.
- וכה רואים אנחנו ברורות כי אחר אשר מוארת דעת עם ברוח אלהים, והעם משיג ידיעה רבה בדרךים הנוגעים לצדק, ואחרי כן הם שוקעים בחטא ובעברות, הם נעשים קשים יותר ומצבם גרוע יותר מאשר אלו לא ידעו את הדברים האלה מעולם.

כה

25

- והנה, כעס הלמנים ההם גבר כי הרגו את אחיהם; לכן הם נשבעו נקמה על הנפיים, ולא הוסיפו בקוותם להרג את אנשי אנטי-נפילחי בעת ההיא.
- והם אספו את חילותיהם והלכו אל גבולות ארץ זרחמלה, והתנפלו על העם אשר בארץ עמוניה והשמידום.
- ואחרי כן היו להם קרבות רבים עם הנפיים, אשר בהם הם נגפו ונהרגו.
- ובין הלמנים אשר נפלו בקרב, היו כמעט כל זרע עמולון ועמיתיו, אשר שמשו כהנים לנח; ביד הנפיים הם נהרגו.
- ושאריתם ברחו אל היער המזרחי, ולקחו בחזקת היד את הכח ואת השלטון על הלמנים, ובזאת הסבו ללמנים רבים למות באש מפני אמונתם.
- כי רבים מן הלמנים, אחר אשר סבלו אבדות רבות ויסורים כה רבים, החלו להתעורר בזכרם את דברי אהרן ועמיתיו אשר הטיפו להם בארצם. על כן הם החלו לכפר במסורות אבותיהם, ולהאמין ביהוה, וכי הוא נתן לנפיים כח רב. וכך הפכו רבים מהם מאמיני יהוה בהיותם ביער.
- והמושלים ההם, אשר היו שארית בני עמולון, צוּוּ כי אלה יוצאו להורג, אכן, כל האנשים אשר האמינו בדברים האלה.
- ומות הקדושים הזה עורר את חמת רבים מאחיהם, ומריבה פרצה ביער. אז החלו הלמנים לערוץ מצוד על זרע עמולון ועמיתיו ולהרגם; והם ברחו אל היער המזרחי.
- והנה הם נצודים ביד הלמנים עד עצם היום הזה. כה התקיימו דברי אבינדי, אשר דבר על זרע הכהנים אשר הסבו את מותו באש.
- כי כה אמר אליהם: כל אשר תעשו בי יהיה כתבנית הדברים אשר יבואו.
- 1 And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.
- 2 But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, and destroyed them.
- 3 And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.
- 4 And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;
- 5 And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—
- 6 For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.
- 7 And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.
- 8 Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.
- 9 And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.
- 10 For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

עֲלֵמָא כה:יא-כו:א

- 11 And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.
- 12 And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.
- 13 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 14 And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.
- 15 Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.
- 16 Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.
- 17 And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.
- וְאַבְינָדִי הָיָה הָרִאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר נָשָׂא מוֹת בְּשִׂרְפָּה מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתוֹ בְּאַלֹהִים. לְזֹאת הָיְתָה כְּוִנָּתוֹ, כִּי רַבִּים יָמוּתוּ בְּאֵשׁ כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הוּמָת הוּא.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לְכֹהֲנֵי נֹחַ כִּי צִאֲצָאִיהֶם יוֹצִיאוּ רַבִּים לְהוֹרֵג כְּדֶרֶךְ הַמָּתָת, וְכִי הֵם הִפְצוּ יוֹפְצוּ וְיוֹמָתוּ; אָכֵן, כִּצְאָן אֲשֶׁר אֵין לָהֶן רוּעָה נִגְפּוֹת וּמוֹמָתוֹת בְּיַד חַיּוֹת טָרֵף. וְהִנֵּה הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ, כִּי הֵם נִדְּחוּ עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִים וּמִצִּדּוֹ נִעְרְפוּ עֲלֵיהֶם וְהֵם הֻכּוּ.
- וְכֹאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ הַלְּמָנִים כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לִגְבוֹר עַל הַנֶּפְתִּיִּים הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרְצָם. וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם בָּאוּ לִגְרוֹ בְּאַרְץ יִשְׁמָעֵאל וּבְאַרְץ נְפִי, וְנִסְפְּחוּ עַל עַם אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִי-נֶפְחִי-לֵהִי.
- וְגַם הֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָתָם, כְּמַעֲשֵׂה אֲחֵיהֶם, וְהָיוּ לְעַם צַדִּיק; וְהֵם הִלְכוּ בְּדֶרֶךְ יְהוָה וְשָׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו וְאֶת חֻקֹּתָיו.
- אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כְּתוּרַת מֹשֶׁה; כִּי הָיָה זֶה רְאוּי לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, כִּי לֹא כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הִתְקַיְּמוּ וּבָאוּ; וְאִם כִּי שָׁמְרוּ אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, הָיוּ מְצַפִּים לְבֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בְּחֻשְׁבָּם כִּי תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה הָיְתָה כְּתִבְנִית בּוֹאֵן; וְהֵם הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי עֲלֵיהֶם לְקַיֵּם אוֹתָן עֲשִׂיּוֹת חִיצוֹנִיּוֹת עַד הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִתְגַּלֶּה לָהֶם.
- וְהֵם לֹא סָבְרוּ כִּי הִישׁוּעָה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; כִּי אִם תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה מְשַׁרְתָּת כְּחֻזֵּק אֱמוּנָתָם בְּמָשִׁיחַ. כֹּה הֵם נִצְרוּ תִקְוָה לִישׁוּעַת עוֹלָם עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה, בְּסִמְכָם עַל רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה הַמְּדַבֶּרֶת עַל הַבָּאוֹת.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבְתָּה שְׂמֵחַת עֲמוֹן וְאַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי וְעַמִּיתֵיהֶם עַל הַהֲצֻלָּה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לָהֶם בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים, בְּרָאוּתָם כִּי נָתַן לָהֶם יְהוָה כְּפִי תְּפִלָּתֵיהֶם, וְעַל אֲשֶׁר קָם אֶת דְּבָרוֹ לָהֶם כְּכֹל פְּרָטָיו.

- 1 And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great

עֲלָמָא כּוֹב-יָא

לְשִׁמְחָה; וְכִי יָכֻלְנוּ לְהַעֲלוֹת עַל דְּעִתָּנוּ בְּצִאתָנוּ
מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה כִּי אֱלֹהִים יַעֲנִיק לָנוּ בְּרָכָה
כֹּה מְרֻבָּה?

reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started
from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such
great blessings?

הִנֵּה אֲנִי שׂוֹאֵל: מָה הֵם הַחֲסִידִים הַגְּדֹלִים
אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עִמָּנוּ? הַתּוֹכְלוּ לְהַגִּידָם?

2 And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can
ye tell?

וְהִנֵּנִי מַשִּׁיב בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם: אַחֲיָנוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים הָיוּ
בַּחֹשֶׁךְ; אַכֵּן, בְּתֵהוֹם מַחֲשָׁכִים הָיוּ; וְרָאוּ
מָה רַבִּים מֵהֶם מוֹבְאִים לְרֹאוֹת אֶת אֱלֹהִים
אֲשֶׁר הֵנִיפָלָם! וְזֹאת הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר הֵעֲנִיקָה
לָנוּ, בְּהַעֲשׂוֹתָנוּ כְּלֵי שֵׁרֶת בְּיַד אֱלֹהִים
לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגְּדֹל הַזֶּה.

3 Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in
darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of
them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the
blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made
instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

רְאוּ, אֲלָפִים מֵהֶם שְׂשִׁים וְהֵם הוֹבְאוּ אֶל חֵיק
צִאֵן אֱלֹהִים.

4 Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the
fold of God.

הִנֵּה הַבָּשִׁיל הַשָּׂדֶה, וּבְרוּכִים אַתֶּם כִּי
הֵנִיפְתֶּם מִגֶּל וּקְצַרְתֶּם בְּכַחְכֶּם. כָּל הַיּוֹם
עֲמַלְתֶּם, וְעַתָּה רְאוּ אֶת מִסְפַּר אֲלָמוֹתֵיכֶם!
אֵל הָאֶסֶס תֵּאֱסַפְנָה לְכָל תְּשַׁחֲתֶנָּה.

5 Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the
sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor;
and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered
into the garners, that they are not wasted.

לֹא תִרְבִּיצוּן הַסַּעֲרָה בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן, וּבִסּוּפָה
לֹא תִנְדָּפְנָה. כִּי בִבּוֹא הַסּוּפָה תֵּאֱסַפְנָה אֶל
מְקוֹמָן, לְכָל תִּפְגַּע בָּהֶן; אַכֵּן, לְכָל תִּנְשָׂאנָה
בְּרוּחוֹת עֲזוֹת אֶל אֲשֶׁר יִטֶּה הָאוֹיֵב לְשִׂאתָן.

6 Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea,
neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the
storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the
storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with
fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

וְרָאוּ, הֵנָּה בְּיַד אֲדוֹנֵי הַקְּצִיר וְלוֹ הֵן; הוּא
יִשְׂאֵן בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.

7 But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they
are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵינוּ; הִבָּה נִשְׁרֵי בְּשִׁבְחֹךָ, הִבָּה נִזְדָּה
לְשֵׁם קְדֻשּׁוֹ כִּי הוּא עוֹשֶׂה צְדָקוֹת לְעוֹלָם.

8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give
thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

כִּי לוֹיֵא יֵצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה הָיוּ עֲדִין
אַחֲיָנוּ הָאֲהוּבִים הָאֵלֶּה, הָאוֹהֲבִים אוֹתָנוּ
אֲהִבָּה כֹּה עַתָּה, מִכִּי שִׁנְאַה עָלֵינוּ, וְאִף הָיוּ
זָרִים לְאֱלֹהִים.

9 For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our
dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still
have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have
been strangers to God.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עִמּוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, גָּעַר בּוֹ אֶהֱרֹן אַחֲיוֹ, וְאָמַר: עִמּוֹן,
יִרְאֵתִי כִּי הִשִּׂיאתִיךָ הַשְׂמִיחָה לְהַתְפָּאֵר.

10 And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his
brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth
carry thee away unto boasting.

וְעִמּוֹן אָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינִי מִתְפָּאֵר בְּכַחֲשִׁי אוֹ
בְּחִכְמָתִי; אֲף הִנֵּה שְׂמִיחָתִי שְׁלֵמָה, הַחֲדָדָה
מִמֶּלֶאכֶת אֶת לְבִי וּבִאלֹהֵי אֲשִׁישָׁה.

11 But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in
my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with
joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

- 12 Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.
- הֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי כֹאֵין אֲנִכִּי. וְאֲשֶׁר לְכֹחִי, חֲלֹשׁ אֲנִי; עַל כֵּן לֹא בַעֲצָמִי אֶתְפָּאֵר; כִּי עַל אֱלֹהֵי אֶתְפָּאֵר, כִּי בְכֹחוֹ אוֹכַל לַעֲשׂוֹת הַכֹּל; אֲכֹן, פְּלֵאִים אֲדִירִים רַבִּים עָשִׂינוּ בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵיהֶם נִהְלַל אֶת שְׁמוֹ לְעוֹלָם.
- 13 Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?
- הִנֵּה, מָה רַבִּים אֲלֵפֵי אַחֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר שִׁחְרָר מִמִּכְאוֹבֵי שְׁחַת; וְהֵם הוֹבְאוּ לְשִׁיר אֶת הָאֱהָבָה הַפּוֹדָה, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי כֹחַ דְּבָרֹו אֲשֶׁר בָּנוּ. הֲאִין רְאוּי לָנוּ לְשִׂמְחָה מְאֹד עַל זֹאת?
- 14 Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.
- הֵן רְאוּי לָנוּ לְהִלְלוֹ לְעוֹלָם, כִּי הוּא אֵל עֲלִיוֹן, וְהוּא שִׁחְרָר אֶת אַחֵינוּ מִכְּבָלֵי שְׁחַת.
- 15 Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.
- אֲכֹן, אֶפְפוּם מִחֹשְׁכֵי עוֹלָמִים וְאַבְדּוֹן; אֲךָ הוּא הִבִּיֵּאֵם אֶל אוֹר הָעוֹלָמִים אֲשֶׁר לוֹ, אֵל יְשׁוּעַת נֶצַח; וְהֵם מִקְפִּים בְּשִׁפְעָה אֱהָבָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר אֵין עֲרֹךְ לָהּ. אֲכֹן, הָיִינוּ כְּלֵי שֶׁרֶת בְּיָדוֹ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנִּפְלָא הַזֶּה.
- 16 Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.
- לְכֹן, הִבֵּה נִפְאָרָה; אֲכֹן, נִהְלַל יְהוָה; נְשִׂיִשָּׁה כִּי שִׂמְחָתָנוּ שְׁלֵמָה. נִשְׂבַּחָה אֶת אֱלֹהֵינוּ לְעוֹלָם. מִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹכַל לְשַׂבַּח אֶת יְהוָה יוֹתֵר מִדִּי? מִי יוֹכַל לְהַכְבִּיר מַלְּיִם בְּסִפְרוֹ עַל כּוֹחַ הַגָּדוֹל, רַחֲמָיו וְאֶרְךְ אַפָּיו עִם בְּנֵי אָדָם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא אוֹכַל לוֹמַר אֶף מִקְצַת מִהֲרַגְשָׁתִּי.
- 17 Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?
- מִי סָבַר כִּי אֱלֹהֵינוּ יִזְהֶי כֹה רַחֲמָן עִד כִּי יִחַטְּפוּנוּ מִתּוֹךְ מַצְבָּנוּ הַנוֹרָא שֶׁל חַטָּא וְטִמְאַה.
- 18 Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.
- הִנֵּה, אֶף יֵצְאָנוּ בְּחִמָּה וּבְאַיוּמִים עֲזִים לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיָתוֹ.
- 19 Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?
- וּמַדּוּעַ לֹא גָזַר עָלֵינוּ אֲבָדוֹן נוֹרָא וְלֹא הִפִּיל בָּנוּ אֶת חֶרֶב דִּינֹו לְתַת חֲלָקְנוּ יְאוּשׁ עוֹלָם?
- 20 Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.
- הֵן, נִשְׁמָתִי, כְּמַעַט פּוֹרַחַת בַּמִּחְשָׁבָה. הִנֵּה, הוּא לֹא שִׁפְטָנוּ עַל מַדַּת הַדִּין, כִּי בְּרַחֲמָיו הָעֲבִיר אוֹתָנוּ מֵעֶבֶר לְתֵהוֹם הַמָּוֶת וְהִיסוּרִים הַנִּצְחִית אֵלֵי יְשׁוּעַת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ.
- 21 And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.
- וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי, מִי אָדָם טִבְעִי אֲשֶׁר יָבִין אֵלֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אֵין יוֹדֵעַ אֵלֶּה וְזֹלַת נַחֵם מִחַטָּא.

- 22 Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.
- 23 Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?
- 24 For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.
- 25 And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.
- 26 But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.
- 27 Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.
- 28 And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.
- 29 And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.
- אָכּוּ, הַמִּנְחָם עַל רְעֵתוֹ וְחֵי בְּאִמּוּנָה וְעוֹשֶׂה מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים וּמִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד בְּלִי הַפְּגָה. לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה נִתְּנָה דַּעַת סִתְּרֵי אֱלֹהִים; לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה יִנָּתֵן לְגִלּוֹת דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מֵעוֹלָם לֹא גִלּוּ; וַיִּנָּתֵן לְאִשֶּׁר כֵּזֶה לְהָשִׁיב אֶל־פִּי נֶפֶשׁ מִחֻטָּא, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ לְהָשִׁיב בְּתִשְׁבָּה אֶת אַחֵינוּ אֵלֶּה.
- הַזּוֹכְרִים אַתֶּם, עַמִּיתִי, כִּי בְּאִמְרָנוּ לְאַחֵינוּ בְּאַרְץ זְרַעְהֶמְלָה, כִּי עוֹלִים אָנַחְנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי לְהַשִּׁיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אֶל אַחֵינוּ הַלָּמָנִים, הֵם לָעָגוּ לָנוּ בְּבוֹז?
- וְכֵּה אָמְרוּ לָנוּ: הֲתִתְּשְׁבוּ כִּי תוּכְלוּ לְהִבִּיאַת אֶת הַלָּמָנִים אֶל דַּעַת הָאֱמֶת? הֲתִתְּשְׁבוּ כִּי תוּכְלוּ לְהוֹכִיחַ לְלָמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר עִם קִשָּׁה עֶרְךָ הֵם, כִּי מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם אֵינָם נִכְוֹנוֹת? שְׁפִיכֵת דָּם מֵעַנְגָּה אֶת לִבָּם. אֶת יְמֵיהֶם הֵם מְבַלִּים בְּמַעֲשֵׂי עֲוֹן גְּדוֹלִים. דְּרָכֵיהֶם דְּרָכֵי עוֹל מְבֻטָּן. וְעַתָּה, עַמִּיתִי, אַתֶּם זּוֹכְרִים כִּי זֹאת הָיְתָה לְשׁוֹן דְּבָרֵיהֶם.
- וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ: הִבֵּה נֹאחֲז בְּנִשְׁק עֲלֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן הַשְׁמִידֵם וּלְמַעַן הַכָּחִיד עוֹלָתָם מִן הָאָרֶץ, כֹּן יִפְשְׁטוּ עָלֵינוּ וַיִּשְׁמִידוּנוּ.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַמִּיתִי הָאֱהוּבִים, לֹא בָאנוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר בְּכַוְנָה לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת אַחֵינוּ, כִּי אִם בְּכַוְנָה לְהַצִּיל מִסָּפֶר מִנְּפִשׁוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וּבְנִפְל רוּחֵנוּ, בְּעַמְדָנוּ לָשׁוּב אַחֲוָר, וְהִנֵּה נִחְמָנוּ יְהוָה וְאָמַר: לָכּוּ אֶל אֲחֵיכֶם הַלָּמָנִים וּשְׂאוּ בְּאַרְץ רוּחַ אֶת יְסוּרֵיכֶם, וְאֶנְכִּי אֲצַלְחֶכֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה אָנַחְנוּ בָּאנוּ וְהִתְהַלַּכְנוּ בְּקִרְבָּם, וְנִשְׂאָנוּ בְּאַרְץ רוּחַ אֶת יְסוּרֵינוּ וְסַבְלָנוּ כָּל מַחְסוֹר; מִבֵּית אֶל בֵּית הִלָּכְנוּ וּמִשְׁעָנָתָנוּ רַחֲמֵי הָעוֹלָם; לֹא רַחֲמֵי הָעוֹלָם בִּלְבַד, כִּי אִם רַחֲמֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- וְכִנְסָנוּ אֶל בֵּיתֵיהֶם וּלְמַדְנוּ אוֹתָם, וְלְמַדְנוּם בְּרַחוּבוֹתֵיהֶם; אַף עַל הַגְּבָעוֹת לְמַדְנוּם; וְאֶף בָּאנוּ אֶל מִקְדְּשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶל בֵּיתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם וּלְמַדְנוּם שָׁם. וְהֵם גִּרְשׁוּנוּ וְלָעָגוּ לָנוּ וַיִּרְקוּ בְּפָנֵינוּ וְהִכּוּנוּ לָחִי; וְהֵם רָגְמוּנוּ אֶבָן וַתִּפְשׁוּנוּ וּבִעְבוֹתִים אֶסְרוּנוּ וְאֶל הַכְּלָא הִשְׁלִיכוּנוּ; אַף בָּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבְכַחְמָתוֹ נִחַלְצָנוּ שְׁנִית.

- 30 And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.
- 31 Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.
- 32 For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.
- 33 And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.
- 34 For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.
- 35 Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.
- 36 Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.
- 37 Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.
- סְבַלְנוּ כָּל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים, וְכָל זֹאת כִּי אֲמַרְנוּ: אֲוִלִי תִצֵּל עַל יְדִינוּ נֶפֶשׁ כְּלָשָׁהּ. חֲשַׁבְנוּ כִּי שְׂמִחָתֵנוּ תִהְיֶה שְׂלֵמָה אִם אֲמַנְם יִנָּצְלוּ עַל יְדִינוּ כַּמָּה מֵהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה נֹכַח לְהִבִּיט וּלְרְאוֹת אֶת פְּרֵי עֲמַלְנוּ; הֲאֵם מְעַשִׂים הֵם? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! רַבִּים הֵם. וְאֲנַחְנוּ עֲדִים לָתֵם לְכֶם מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם אֶת אַחֵיהֶם וְאוֹתָנוּ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה הֵם הִעֲדִיפוּ לְהַקְרִיב אֶת חַיֵּיהֶם מִקַּחַת נֶפֶשׁ אוֹיְבָם; וְהֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כְּלֵי מִלְחָמָתָם בְּעֵמֶק הָאֲדָמָה מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם אֶת אַחֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה אֲמַר לָכֶם: הֲאֵם הִיְתָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ אֲהֲבָה כֹּה רַבָּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! לֹא הִיְתָה כַּמּוֹה, אִף בֵּין הַנְּפִיטִים.
- כִּי הֵם הָיוּ נוֹשְׂאִים נֶשֶׁק עַל אַחֵיהֶם וְלֹא הָיוּ מוֹתִירִים עַצְמָם לְהָרֵג. וְהִנֵּה, מִה רַבִּים מֵאֲלֹהֵי הַתִּירוּ דָּמָם; וְאֲנַחְנוּ יוֹדְעִים כִּי הֵם הָלְכוּ אֶל אֱלֹהֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי אֲהֲבָתָם וּמִפְּנֵי שְׂנְאָתָם חֲטָא.
- הֲעַל זֹאת לֹא נִשְׂמַח? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים כְּמוֹנוּ מֵאֶזְרַח אֲשִׁית הָעוֹלָם, אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָהֶם סִבָּה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה לְשִׂמְחָה; וְאֲנִי נִשְׂאִיתִ בְּשִׂמְחָתִי עַד כְּדֵי הַתְּפַאֲרוֹת בְּאֵלֹהֵי; כִּי לוֹ הַגְּבוּרָה, הַחֲכָמָה וְהַבִּינָה: הוּא מִבִּין אֶת הַכֹּל, וְהוּא רַחֲמָן וּמוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת הַנִּחְמָמִים עַל חֲטָא וְהַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשִׁמּוֹ.
- וְאִם זֹאת הַתְּפַאֲרוֹת, לֹא אֲחַדֵּל מִהַתְּפַאֵר, כִּי הִיא חַיִּי וּמֹאוֹרִי, שְׂמִחָתִי וִישׁוּעָתִי, וְנִגְאֻלָּתִי מִקְלָלֶת עוֹלָם. בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי הַזִּכָּר אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הֵם עָנֹף מֵעַץ יִשְׂרָאֵל וְהֵם כְּרוֹתִים מִגּוֹפּוֹ בְּנֶכֶר. אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר, בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵי, הַזִּכָּר אוֹתָנוּ, הַנוֹדְדִים בְּנֶכֶר.
- וְעַתָּה, עֲמִיתִי, אֲנַחְנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי אֱלֹהִים זֹכֵר כָּל עַם, בְּכָל אָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה; וְהוּא מוֹנֶה אֶת עַמּוֹ וּמַעֲזִיו הוֹמִים רַחֲמִים עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ. זֹאת שְׂמִחָתִי וְתוֹדָתִי הַרְבֵּה. אוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהֵי עַד עוֹלָם. אָמֵן.

כּוּז

27

- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר הָלְכוּ
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנַפְיִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִלְחָמוּ רַבּוֹת
לְהַשְׁמִידָם, כִּי לִשְׂוֹא יִבְקְשׁוּ לְהַכְחִידָם, הֵם
שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְּי.
- וְהָעַמְּלָקִיִּים רָגְזוּ מְאֹד עַל אֲבֹדוֹתֵיהֶם;
וּבְרֵאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לְקַחַת נֶקֶם מִן הַנְּפִיִּים,
הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְעֹרֵר בָּעָם רָגֶז עַל אֲחֵיהֶם, אֲנָשֵׁי
אֲנִי־נִפְּי־לֵחִי; לָכֵן הִחֲלוּ שְׁנֵית לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- וְשׁוּב סָרְבוּ אֲנָשֵׁי אֲנִי־נִפְּי־לֵחִי לָאָחוֹז בְּכָלִי
נֶשֶׁק וְהַפְּקִירוּ עַצְמָם לְהָרֶג, כַּחֲפִץ אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- וְכִרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶת מַעֲשֵׂה הַהַשְׁמָדָה
בְּקֶרֶב אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם אֶהְבּוּ עַד מְאֹד, וְאֲשֶׁר
אֶהְבּוּ מְאֹד, כִּי הָיוּ בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּמַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלְחוּ לְהַצִּילָם מֵאֲבֹדוֹן עוֹלָם, אָכֵן,
כִּרְאוֹת עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶת מַעֲשֵׂה הַהַשְׁמָדָה
הַגָּדוֹל, נִכְמְרוּ רַחֲמֵיהֶם וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ:
- הִבֵּה נִקְבְּצָה אֶת עַם יְהוָה הַזֶּה וְנֵרֵד אֶל אֶרֶץ
זְרַעְחֶמְלָה, אֶל אֲחֵינוּ הַנְּפִיִּים, וְנִמְלֹט מִיַּד
אוֹיְבֵינוּ וְלֹא נֵאָבֵד.
- אֲדָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ אָמַר לָהֶם: הֵן יִשְׁמִידוּנוּ הַנְּפִיִּים
מִפְּנֵי מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח וְהַחֲטָא אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ בָּהֶם.
- וְאָמַר עֲמוֹן: אֵלֶּךְ וְאֶשְׁאַל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה; וְהָיָה
אִם יֹאמֶר לִי כִּי יֵרֵד אֶל אֲחֵינוּ, הֲתֵלְכוּ שָׁמָּה?
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: אָכֵן. אִם יֹאמֶר לָנוּ יְהוָה
לָלֶכֶת, יֵרֵד אֶל אֲחֵינוּ וְנִהְיָה לָהֶם לְעַבְדִּים עַד
אֲשֶׁר נִפְצָה עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח וְהַחֲטָא הַרְבִּים
אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ בָּהֶם.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲמוֹן: מִנְּגִד הַדָּבָר לַחֹק אֲשֶׁר
לְאֲחֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר חָק אָבִי, הָאוֹסֵר כָּל עַבְדּוֹת
בְּקִרְבָּם. לָכֵן הִבֵּה נִרְדָּה וְנִשְׁעִים מִבִּטְחָנוּ
בְּרַחֲמֵי אֲחֵינוּ.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו הַמֶּלֶךְ: שְׂאֵל נָא אֶת פִּי יְהוָה.
אִם יֹאמֶר לָנוּ לָלֶכֶת, נֵלֶךְ, וְאִם לֹא, נֵאָבֵד
בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 1 Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.
- 2 And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.
- 3 Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.
- 4 Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:
- 5 Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.
- 6 But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.
- 7 And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?
- 8 And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.
- 9 But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.
- 10 But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

- 11 And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:
- וַעֲמֹן הָלַךְ וַשְּׁאֵל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה. וַאֲמַר יְהוָה אֵלָיו:
- 12 Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.
- הוֹצֵא אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְבֹל יָאָבְדוּ; כִּי קָנָה לוֹ הַשָּׁטָן שְׁבִיתָהּ בְּלֵב הָעַמְלָקִיִּים, וְהֵם מְסִיתִים אֶת הַלָּמָנִים לְשׂוֹא אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם וּלְהָרְגֵם; לָכֵן צֵאוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת; וּבָרוּךְ הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּדוֹר הַזֶּה, כִּי שְׁמוֹר אֶשְׁמְרֵם.
- 13 And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.
- וַעֲמֹן הָלַךְ אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ וְסִפֵּר לוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַר אֵלָיו יְהוָה.
- 14 And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.
- וְהֵם קָבְצוּ יַחְדָּו אֶת כָּל עַמָּם, אֶת כָּל עַם יְהוָה, וְאֶת כָּל צֹאנָם וּבָקָרָם; וְהֵם עָזְבוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ וּבָאוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר הִפְרִיד בֵּין אֶרֶץ נְפִי וּבֵין אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, וּבָאוּ אֶל קְרֵבֶת גְּבוּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.
- וַעֲמֹן אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: נִלְכֶּה אֲנִי וְעַמִּיתִי, אֶל אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, וְאַתֶּם תִּשְׁאָרוּ פֹה עַד אֲשֶׁר נָשׁוּב; וְאַנְחֵנוּ נִנְסֶה אֶת לֵב אֲחֵינוּ, הֲאֵם יֵאוּתוּ לְכַנִּיסְתְּכֶם אֶל אֶרְצָם.
- 16 And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.
- וְהָיָה כְּבֹא עֲמֹן אֶל הָאָרֶץ, פָּגְשׁוּ הוּא וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶת עֲלָמָא בַּמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלָיו; וְהָיְתָה זֹאת פְּגִישָׁה רַבַּת שְׂמֵחָה.
- 17 Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.
- וְשִׂמְחַת עֲמֹן רַבָּתָהּ עַד כִּי מָלֵא. אָכֵן, הוּא נִבְלַע בְּשִׂמְחָה עַל אֱלֹהָיו עַד כִּי עָזְבוּ כֹחוֹ, וְהוּא נָפַל שָׁנִית עַל הָאָרֶץ.
- 18 Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.
- וְהֲלֹא הִיְתָה זֹאת שְׂמֵחָה גְּדוֹלָה? הִנֵּה, זֹאת שְׂמֵחָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִזְכֶּה בָּהּ אִישׁ, בְּלִיתִי אִם נָחַם מִחֲטָא בְּאַמֶּת וְעָנָו מִבְּקֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר.
- 19 Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.
- וְשִׂמְחַת עֲלָמָא בְּפִגִּישַׁת עַמִּיתָיו אָכֵן הִיְתָה רַבָּה מְאֹד, וְכִמּוֹה שְׂמֵחַת אַהֲרֹן, אוֹמְנֵר וְחִמְנִי, וְאוּלָם הֵיא לֹא גְּבָרָה עַל כֹּחָם.
- 20 And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.
- וַעֲלָמָא הוֹבִיל אֶת עַמִּיתָיו בְּשׁוּבָם אֶל אֶרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה, אֶל בֵּיתוֹ; וְהֵם הָלְכוּ וְסִפְרוּ לְשׁוֹפֵט הָעֵלְיוֹן אֶת כָּל הַקּוֹרוֹת אוֹתָם בְּאֶרֶץ נְפִי בְּקֶרֶב אֲחֵיהֶם הַלָּמָנִים.

- 21 והשופט העליון שלח קול בכל הארץ לשאל את פי העם על מתן רשות כניסה לארצם לאחיהם, אנשי אנטי-נפִי-לִהי.
- 22 And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.
- 23 והנה אנחנו מציבים את צבאנו בין ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן ובין ארץ נִפְּי, למען נגן על אחינו אשר בארץ יִרְשׁוֹן; זאת נעשה למען אחינו, מפני יראתם לשאת נשק על אחיהם פן יחטאו; ויראתם הגדולה הזאת באה עליהם מפני צער חרסתם, והנחמם על מעשי הרצח והרשעה האימה אשר הרבו לעשות.
- 24 And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.
- 25 זאת נעשה לאחינו למען יירשו את ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן; נשמרם בצבאנו מאויביהם, בתנאי כי יתנו לנו חלק מקננתם לעזור לנו לכלכל את צבאנו.
- 26 And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.
- 27 והיה כשמע זאת עמון, הוא שב אל אנשי אנטי-נפִי-לִהי ועלמא עמון, אל המקום אשר נטו בו את אהליהם ביער, והודיעם את כל הדברים האלה. ועלמא ספר להם גם על אודות ההפכו מאמין יהוה יחד עם עמון, אהרן ואחיו.
- 28 Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.
- 29 והדבר הסב להם שמחה רבה. והם ירדו אל ארץ יִרְשׁוֹן ולקחו אותה לנחלה. והנפִיִּים קראו את שמם אנשי עמון, ובשם הזה נודעו מהיום ההוא והלאה.
- 30 And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.
- 31 והם שָׁכְנוּ בקרב עם נִפְּי ובאו במנין עם כְּנִסִּית אֱלֹהִים. והם נודעו על דבר קנאתם לאלהים ולבני אדם, כי היו אנשי אמת עד תם וישרים בכל ואיתנים עד תכלית באמונת המשיח.
- 32 And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.
- 33 והם הביטו בתעוב רב על שפוך דמי אחיהם; ומעולם לא הצליח איש לשכנעם לשאת נשק על אחיהם; והם מעולם לא הביטו על המות באימה כלשהי, מפני בטחם במשיח ובתחייה ובחזונוֹתיהם לגביהם; על כן נבלע בעבורם המות על ידי נצחון המשיח.
- 34 And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

עָלֵיוּ. וְהֵם הָעֲדִיפוּ לְשֹׂאת בַּמָּוֶת בְּאִפֹּן
הַכּוֹאֵב וְהַקָּשָׁה בְּיוֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר נָקְטוּ אַחֲיָהֶם,
בְּטָרֶם יְרִימוּ חֶרֶב וּפָגִיוֹן לְהַכּוֹתָם.

וְכֵה הָיוּ, קִנְאִים וְאַהֲבָיִים, עִם אֲשֶׁר גָּמְלוּ
יְהוָה חֶסֶד רַב מְאֹד.

29 Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

30 And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

כח

28

וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר הִתְיַשְׁבוּ אַנְשֵׁי עֲמֹון
בְּאַרְצֵי יֶרְשׁוֹן וְאַף יִסְדּוּ בָּהּ כְּנִסְיָהּ, וְהָעֵב צָבָא
הַנְּפִיִּים סָבִיב אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן סָבִיב כָּל גְּבוּלוֹת
אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, וְהָנָה חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים פָּלְשׁוּ
אֶל הַיַּעַר בְּעֻקְבוֹת אַחֲיָהֶם.

אִז הִתְחַלֵּל קָרַב אֲדִיר, אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹהוּ לֹא
נֹדַע בְּכָל הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצָא, מִיּוֹם יָצְאָה
לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם. רַבּוֹת לְמָנִים נִהְרְגוּ
וְנִפְּצוּ לְמִרְחָקִים.

אִף טִבַּח עָצוֹם נַעֲשֶׂה בְּבָנֵי נָפִי. וְאוֹלָם,
הַלְּמָנִים גָּרְשׁוּ וְנִפְּצוּ, וּבְנֵי עַם נָפִי שָׁבוּ
אֶל אֶרְצָם.

אֵלֶּה הָיוּ יְמֵי אֲבֵל גָּדוֹל וְהַמְסָפָד נִשְׁמַע
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, בְּקָרֵב כָּל עַם נָפִי.

אִז נִשְׁמַע בְּכִי אֲלֻמָּנוֹת סוֹפְדוֹת לְבַעֲלֵיהֶן,
אֲבוֹת סוֹפְדִים לְבָנֵיהֶם, בָּנוֹת לְאַחֲיָהֶן וְאָחִים
לְאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. כֹּה נִשְׁמָעָה זַעֲקַת הַסּוֹפְדִים בְּקָרֵב
כָּל־ם, אֲבֵל עַל בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם הַהֲרוּגִים.

הָיְתָה זֹאת עֵת יָגוֹן, יְרֵאת כָּבוֹד,
וְרַב צוֹם וְתַפִּלָּה.

כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.

וְזֶה סִפּוֹר עֲמֹון וְעַמִּיתָיו, מִסַּעֲיָהֶם בְּאַרְצָא
נָפִי, סְבֻלוֹתֵיהֶם בְּאַרְצָא, יְגוֹנֵיהֶם וְיִסּוּרֵיהֶם,
וְשִׁמְחָתָם אֲשֶׁר אִין בְּלָתָהּ, וְקִבְּלַת אַחֲיָהֶם
בְּאַרְצֵי יֶרְשׁוֹן וְשִׁמְיִית בְּטָחוֹנָם. וְהָיָה רָצוֹן
מִלְּפָנֵי יְהוָה, גּוֹאֵל כָּל הָאָדָם, כִּי יִבְרַךְ אֶת
נִשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם לְעוֹלָם.

1 And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

2 And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

3 Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

4 And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

5 Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

6 And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

7 And thus ended the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

8 And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

- 9 And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.
- 10 And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.
- 11 And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.
- 12 While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.
- 13 And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.
- 14 And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.
- וְזֶה סִפּוּר הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים, וְכֵן מִלְחָמוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלָּמָנִים; וּבִזְמַת כְּלָתָהּ שְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וּמִהַּ שָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְעַד שְׁנַת חֲמִשׁ עָשָׂר הִשְׁמָדוּ אֶלְפֵי נַפְשׁוֹת. אַכֵּן, מַחְזָה שְׂפִיכַת דָּמִים אִים נִרְאָה בְּעֵת הַהִיא.
- וְגוֹיֹת אֲלָפִים רַבִּים מוֹטְלוֹת בְּעַמְקֵי הָאֲדָמָה וּפְגָרֵי אֲלָפִים רַבִּים אַחֲרִים מְרֻקְבִּים בְּעֶרְמוֹת אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; אַכֵּן, אֲלָפִים רַבִּים מִתְאַבְּלִים עַל אֲבִדוֹן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי יֵשׁ לָהֶם מִמָּה לִירָא, כְּדָבָר יְהוָה, כִּי נִגְזַר עֲלֵיהֶם יְגוֹן עוֹלָם.
- וְאֲלָפִים רַבִּים אַחֲרִים אַכֵּן מִתְאַבְּלִים עַל אֲבִדוֹן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, אַךְ גַּם עוֹלְזִים וְעוֹלְצִים בְּתִקְוָה, וְאֵף בִּידִיעָה, עַל פִּי דְבָר בְּרִית יְהוָה, כִּי נִשְׂאוּ לִשְׁכֵן לִימִין אֱלֹהִים בְּאֲשֶׁר אֵין קֵץ.
- מִזֹּאת רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ מַה גָּדוֹל הָעֵדֶר הַשְּׁוֹיִן בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִפְּנֵי חֲטָא וּפְשָׁע, וְזֹאת כֹּחַ הַשְּׁטָן הַבָּא בְּתַחבּוּלוֹת הָעֶרְמָה אֲשֶׁר הוּא זוֹמֵם לְלַכֵּד אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- וְכֵה רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ אֶת הַקְּרִיאָה הַגְּדוֹלָה לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם לְשָׁקֵד בְּעַמְלָם בְּכַרְמֵי יְהוָה; וְהֵנּוּ רוֹאִים אֶת הַמְּקוֹר הַגָּדוֹל לִיְגוֹן וְאֵף לְשִׁמְחָה; יְגוֹן, מִפְּנֵי מוֹת וְחֲרָבָן בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְשִׁמְחָה, מִפְּנֵי אוֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר לַחַיִּים.

כט

29

- 1 O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!
- 2 Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.
- 3 But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהָיִיתִי מַלְאָךְ אֱלֹהִים, וְהָיָה לִי חֲפִץ לְבִי לְצֵאתָ וּלְדַבֵּר בְּשׁוֹפָר אֱלֹהִים, וּבְקוֹל מְרֻעִיד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה, לְקַרֵּא לְתַשׁוּבָה אֶת כָּל אָמָה!
- לְהִשְׁמִיעַ לְכָל נֶפֶשׁ, כְּבְּקוֹל רָעַם, אֶת דְּבַר הַתְּשׁוּבָה וְתַכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה, לְמַעַן יִשׁוּבוּ וְיָבוֹאוּ אֶל אֱלֹהֵינוּ, וְנִסְּ יְגוֹן מֵעַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- אֲךְ הִנְנִי בֶן אָדָם, וּבְחִפְצִי זֶה אֲנִי חוֹטֵא, כִּי עָלִי לְהִיּוֹת מְרַצָּה בְּאֲשֶׁר חֶלֶק לִי יְהוָה.

אִין לִי לְהַפֵּר בְּתַשׁוּקוֹתַי אֶת גְּזֵרַת אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק.
הֵן יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִי הוּא נוֹתֵן לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם כְּחֶפְצָם,
אִם לְמוֹת וְאִם לְחַיִּים; אָכֵן, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִי
בְּגִזְרָה בְּלֹתִי מוֹפֶרֶת הוּא חוֹלֵק לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם
כְּפִי רְצוֹנָם, אִם לִישׁוּעָתָם וְאִם לְכִלְיוֹנָם.

וְיוֹדַע אֲנִי כִי טוֹב וְרַע בָּאִים לִפְנֵי כָל בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם; וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ יוֹדַע הִבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין
רַע הֵנוּ נְקִי מֵאֲשָׁמָה, וְאוֹלָם לִישׁוּעַ הִבְחִין בֵּין
טוֹב וּבֵין רַע נִתָּן כְּחֶפְצוֹ: טוֹב אוֹ רַע, חַיִּים אוֹ
מוֹת, שְׂמִיחָה אוֹ יְסוּרֵי חֲרָטָה.

וְאֲנִי, בִּידְעִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, מִדּוּעַ
אֲחַפֵּץ יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מְלֹאכְתִּי אֲשֶׁר
אֵלֵּיהָ נִקְרָאתִי?

מִדּוּעַ אֲשַׁתְּוֹקֵק כִּי אֶהְיֶה מְלָאךְ, לְדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל
אֲפִסֵּי אֶרֶץ?

כִּי הִנֵּה נוֹתֵן יְהוָה לְכָל הָעַמִּים אַנְשִׁים, בְּנֵי
אֲמָתָם וּלְשׁוֹנָם, בְּעֵבֹר לְלַמְדוֹ אֶת דְּבָרוֹ; אָכֵן,
בְּחֻמָּתוֹ הוּא נוֹתֵן אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִכּוֹן בְּעֵינָיו
כִּי יִקְבְּלוּ; וְכֹה רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי יְהוָה יוֹעֵץ
בְּחֻמָּה כְּפִי צִדְקוֹ וְאֲמָתוֹ.

יְדַעְתִּי מֵה צוֹנִי יְהוָה וּבִזְמַת אֲתַפְּאֵר. אֵינִי
מִתְפָּאֵר בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מִמּוֹנִי, כִּי אִם תִּפְאָרְתִּי
בְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צוֹנִי יְהוָה; כִּי אוֹלִי אֶהְיֶה כָּלִי
שְׂרַת בִּידֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַבִּיא נַפְשׁ כְּלָשְׁהִי
לְתִשׁוּבָה. זֹאת שְׂמִיחָתִי.

וְכִרְאוֹתַי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי עַמִּי נִחְמִים מִחֻטָּא
בְּאֲמָת, בָּאִים אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, תְּמַלֵּא נִפְשִׁי
שְׂמִיחָה; אֲנִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לִי יְהוָה,
כִּי שָׁמַע אֶת תְּפִלָּתִי. אֲנִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת זְרוּעַ
חֲסִדוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוֹשִׁיעַ אֵלַי.

אֲףִי אֲזַכֶּרָה אֶת שְׁבִית אֲבוֹתַי; הֵן יָדוּעַ אֲדַע
כִּי יְהוָה הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד וְעַל זֹאת יִסַּד אֶת
כְּנִסְיָתוֹ; אָכֵן, יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֱלֹהֵי אַבְרָהָם,
אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד.

אָכֵן, תְּמִיד אֲזַכֶּר אֶת שְׁבִית אֲבוֹתַי; כִּי
הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הִצִּילָם מִיַּד הַמִּצְרִים, הוּא
אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאָם מִשְׁעֶבֶד.

4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires, the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

5 Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

6 Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

7 Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

8 For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

9 I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

10 And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

11 Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

12 Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

- 13 Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.
- 14 But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.
- 15 Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!
- 16 Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.
- 17 And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.
- אָכּוּ, הוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר יָסַד אֶת כְּנִסְיָתוֹ בְּקִרְבָּם; וְהוּא הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר קָרָא לִי בְּקִרְיָאָת קִדְשׁ, לְהַטִּיף אֶת דְּבָרָיו אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, וְהַצְלִיחַ דִּרְכִּי עַד מְאֹד. עַל זֹאת שִׂמְחָתִי שְׁלֵמָה.
- וְאוֹלָם אֵינִי שִׂמְחָה בְּהַצְלָחָתִי בִּלְבַד, כִּי שִׂמְחָתִי מְלֵאָה וְגִדּוּשָׁה מִפְּנֵי הַצְלָחַת עַמִּיתִי אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְתִּי.
- הִמָּה עֲמָלוֹ בְּכָל מְאֹדָם וְהִרְבּוּ לָתֵת פְּרִיָם; מָה רַב יִהְיֶה גְמוּלָם!
- וּבְחִשְׁבִּי עַל הַצְלָחַת אַחֵי אֱלֹהִים, כְּאֵלּוֹ נְשֹׂאֵת נַפְשִׁי מִמֶּנִּי, עַד כִּי נִפְרָדֶת הִיא מִגּוּפִי; כֹּה רַבָּה שִׂמְחָתִי.
- יְהִי רְצוֹן כִּי יִתֵּן אֱלֹהִים לְאַחֵי אֱלֹהִים לִשְׁכֹּן בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; וְכִמּוֹהֶם כָּל אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם פְּרִי עַמְלָם, כִּי לֹא יֵצְאוּ עוֹד וְכִי יִהְלְלוּהוּ עַד עוֹלָמִי עוֹלָמִים. יְהִי רְצוֹן מִלִּפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה כַּדְּבָרִי, כַּכִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי. אָמֵן.

ל

30

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—
- 2 Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.
- 3 Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.
- 4 And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 5 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְיַשְׁבוּ אַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן בְּאֶרֶץ יֶרֶשׁוֹן וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים מִן הָאֶרֶץ, וְהָרוּגֵיהֶם נִקְבְּרוּ בְיַדִּי הַתּוֹשְׁבִים;
- וְהָרוּגִים לֹא נִמְנְוּ, כִּי עֲצֹם מִסְפָּרָם; וְאַף הָרוּגֵי הַנִּפְתִּים לֹא נִמְנְוּ; אָכּוּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָבְרוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּלוּ אֶת יְמֵי הָצוּם וְהָאֲבֵל וְהַתְּפִלָּה, בְּשָׁנַת שֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפְתִּי, הִחֲלָה תְּקוּפַת שְׁלוֹם אֶרֶץ כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהָעָם הִקְפִּידוּ לְקַיֵּם אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה; וְהָם הִתְחַמְּרוּ בְּשִׁמְרֵת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה, כִּי לָמְדוּ לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם.
- וּבְמִשְׁךְ כָּל שָׁנַת שֵׁשׁ עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נִפְתִּי לֹא סָבַל הָעָם כָּל פְּרָעָנוּת.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית שָׁנַת שֶׁבַע עָשָׂר לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים נִמְשְׁכָה הַשְּׁלוֹם.

- אך בטרם תכלה שנת שבע עשרה, בא איש אחד אל ארץ זרהמלה, אשר היה מתנגד-משית, והוא החל להטיף לעם דברים הסותרים את נבואות הנביאים על אודות בוא המשיח.
- 6 But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.
- ולא היה חק בארץ נגד אמונת איש, כי חק המסב העדר שויון בין בני האדם סותר חמורות את צוי אלהים.
- 7 Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.
- כי כה נאמר בכתבי הקדש: בחרו לכם היום את מי תעבדון.
- 8 For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.
- ואם חפץ אדם לעבד את אלהים, היתה זאת זכותו; או, ביקר דיוק, אם האמין איש באלהים, היתה זאת זכותו לעבדו; ואם לא האמין בו, לא היה כל חק להענישו על כך.
- 9 Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.
- אך אם רצח, היה ענישו מות; ואם שדד נענש, ואם גנב נענש, ואם נאף נענש; אך, על כל הרשעה הזאת נענשו.
- 10 But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.
- כי חק היה שם לדון איש כפשעו, אך על אמונת איש לא היה כל חק. על כן נענש איש רק על פשעים אשר בצע; לכן היה שויון בין כל האנשים.
- 11 For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.
- ומתנגד-משית זה, אשר שמו היה קוריהור, אשר החק לא יכל לפעל עליו, החל להטיף לעם כי לא יהיה משיח. ובדרך הזאת הטיף דברו לאמר:
- 12 And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:
- הוי, אתם האסורים בתקות כסל ובהל; מדוע תשימו עליכם על הבל אשר כזה? מדוע תצפו למשיח? אין איש יכול לדעת על אשר עתיד לבוא.
- 13 O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.
- הנה, הדברים אשר אתם מכנים נבואות, אשר תאמרו כי נמסרו מידי נביאים קדושים, הנם מסורות הבל מאת אבותיכם.
- 14 Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.
- איך תדעו כי אמת הם? הן לא תוכלו לדעת דברים אשר לא תראו. על כן אינכם יכולים לדעת כי יהיה משיח.
- 15 How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.
- הנכם צופים קדימה ואומרים כי יש לכם מחילת חטאיכם, אך זאת פעלת דעת
- 16 Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds

משגגת, ובלבול דעתכם זה, גרמוהו מסורות
אבותיכם, אשר הסבו אתכם להאמין
בדברים אשר אינם נכונים.

comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away
into a belief of things which are not so.

ועוד דברים רבים כאלה דבר אליהם, ואמר
להם כי אין כפרה על חטאי אדם, וכל איש
מנהל את חייו על פי טבעו. על פן מצליח כל
אחד כפי כשרונו, וכל אדם כובש לו כפי כחו,
וכל אשר הוא עושה לא יחשב לו פשע.

17 And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that
there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every
man fared in this life according to the management of the creature;
therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every
man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did
was no crime.

כה הטיף להם, ובהטותו לב רבים הדיחם
להרים ראש ברשעתם, ואף הטה נשים רבות
וגם גברים לזנונים, באמרו להם כי מות אדם
הוא קצו.

18 And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many,
causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading
away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling
them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

והאיש הזה הלך גם אל ארץ ירשון להטיף
את הדברים האלה בקרב עם עמון, אשר היו
לפנים בני עם הלמנים.

19 Now this man went over to the land of Jershon also, to preach these
things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the
Lamanites.

והנה, הם החכימו מרבים מן הנפיים, כי הם
תפשוהו ואסרוהו והביאוהו לפני עמון, אשר
הוא הכהן הגדול על העם ההוא.

20 But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they
took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a
high priest over that people.

אז הורה עמון לגרשו מן הארץ. והוא הלך
אל ארץ גדעון והחל להטיף דברו אף
לאנשיה. ואולם שם לא נצלח לו, כי נתפש
ונאסר והובא אל הכהן הגדול ואל השופט
העליון אשר על הארץ.

21 And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the
land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach
unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was
taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief
judge over the land.

ואמר אליו הכהן הגדול: מדוע תעזת את
דרכי יהוה? מדוע תלמד את העם הזה כי לא
יהיה משיח ותפר שמחתם? מדוע תדבר נגד
כל נבואות הנביאים הקדושים?

22 And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go
about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people
that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye
speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

ושם הכהן הגדול נקרא גדונה. וקוריהור
אמר אליו: יען אשר לא אלמד את מסורות
ההבול אשר לאבותיכם, ולא אלמד את העם
הזה לאסר עצמם תחת חקים וטקסים
אגיליים אשר שמום כהנים קדמונים לגזל כח
ולתפש שלטון עליהם, להשאירם בבערות,
למען לא ישאו ראש ויפגעו מפני דבריכם.

23 Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto
him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and
because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the
foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient
priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in
ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down
according to thy words.

אתם אומרים כי חפשי העם הזה. ואני אומר
כי משעבדים הקה. אתם אומרים כי
הנבואות העתיקות הן אמת. ואני אומר כי
אינכם יודעים אם אמת הן.

24 Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage.
Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do
not know that they are true.

עֲלָמָא לִכְה־לֵב

- 25 אַתֶּם אוֹמְרִים כִּי אִשִּׁם הָעָם הַזֶּה וְאַף נָפֵל מִפְּנֵי עֲבֹרַת אָבִיו. וְאַנִּי אוֹמֵר כִּי אֵין הֵבֶן אִשִּׁם מִפְּנֵי הוֹרָיו.
- 26 And ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.
- וְעוֹד אוֹמְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי מְשִׁיחַ יָבוֹא, וְאַנִּי אוֹמֵר כִּי אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים אִם יִהְיֶה מְשִׁיחַ. וְעוֹד אוֹמְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי הוּא יוֹמֵת בְּעֶבְרוֹ חֲסָאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- 26 And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—
- כִּף תְּדִיחוּ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶל מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הָאֵוִילוֹת, וְאַל אֲשֶׁר תַּחְפֹּצוּ. וְהִנֵּכֶם מִדְּכָאִים אוֹתָם כְּהִשְׁפֵּל עֲבָדִים, לְמַעַן תִּסְבְּאוּ מִעֲמַל כַּפֵּיהֶם, וּבְעֶבְרוֹ לֹא יִתְאַמְצוּ לְשֵׂאת עֵינֵיהֶם; וְאַף לֹא יַעֲזוּ לְהִנּוֹת מִזְכוּתֵיהֶם וּיְתִירוֹנוּתֵיהֶם.
- 27 And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.
- אֲכֹן, אֵין הֵם מַעֲזִים לְהִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, פֹּן יִפְגְּעוּ בְּכַהֲנֵיהֶם, הַמְּכַבִּידִים עֲלֵיהֶם עֲלָם כְּחֻפָּצָם, וְהַמְּסַבִּים אוֹתָם לְהֶאֱמִין, עַל יְדֵי מִסּוּרוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִלּוּמוֹתֵיהֶם, מְאֻוִּיָּהֶם וְחִזְיוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִסְתּוּרֵיהֶם הַכּוֹזְבִים, כִּי אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי הַכַּהֲנִים, יִפְגְּעוּ בַּהוִיָּה בְּלִתִּי יְדוּעָה כְּלִשְׁהִי, אֲשֶׁר הֵם אוֹמְרִים כִּי הִיא אֱלֹהִים; וְזֹאת הוִיָּה אֲשֶׁר מַעֲוֹלָם לֹא נִרְאָתָה אוֹ נֹדָעָה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִיָּתָה מַעֲוֹלָם וּלְעוֹלָם לֹא תִהְיֶה.
- 28 Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן אֶת קָשִׁי לִבָּבוּ וְכִי אָף אֶת אֱלֹהִים יַגְדִּיף, הֵם לֹא הִשְׁבִּיחוּ דָּבָר. וְהֵם הוֹרִו כִּי יֵאָסֵר, וְהוּא הָעֶבֶר לְיַד פְּקִידֵי הַשְּׁלֹטוֹן וְנִשְׁלַח אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַעְחֻמְלָה, לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי עֲלָמָא וּלְפָנֵי הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוּא מוֹשֵׁל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 29 Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.
- וְכִאֲשֶׁר הוּבָא לְפָנֵי עֲלָמָא וּלְפָנֵי הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן, הוּא הוֹסִיף לְהִגַּח כְּדָרְכוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ גִּדְעוֹן, וְאַף לְנַאֵץ אֶת אֱלֹהִים.
- 30 And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.
- וְהוּא קָם לְפָנֵי עֲלָמָא בְּמִלִּים רַמוֹת וּמִתְנַשְּׂאוֹת, וְגִדְף אֶת הַכַּהֲנִים וְאֶת הַמּוֹרִים, וְהָאִשְׁמִים כִּי מְשִׁיחַ אֶת לֵב הָעָם אֶל מִסּוּרוֹת הַהֶבֶל אֲשֶׁר לְאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, בְּעֶבְרוֹ יִזְלְלוּ אֶת עַמִּל הָעָם.
- 31 And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.
- וְאַמֵּר אֵלָיו עֲלָמָא: הֵן יְדַעְתָּ כִּי לֹא נִסְבָּא מִעֲמַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי מִרְאִשִׁית שְׁלֹטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפֵטִים וְעַד הַיּוֹם עָמַלְתִּי לְפָרֶסְתִּי בְּמוֹ יְדִי, עַל אֵף מִסְעֵי הָרַבִּים בְּאֶזְרוֹרֵי הָאֶרֶץ לְהַשְׁמִיעַ לְעַמִּי אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 32 Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

- 33 And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.
- וְאִיךָ כִּי עֲמַלְתִּי רַב עִמָּל בְּכִנְסִיָּה, לֹא קִבַּלְתִּי מֵעוּדֵי אִי סִנִּי אֶחָד בְּעַד עֲמָלִי; וְכִמּוֹנִי כָּל עַמִּיתִי, זֹלַת שְׂכָר בְּעֵבֹר זְמַנִּנוּ בְּשִׁבְתָּנוּ עַל כֶּסֶּם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע כְּזָק.
- 34 And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?
- וְעַתָּה, אִם אֵינָנו מְקַבְּלִים דְּבָר בְּעַד עֲמָלָנוּ בְּכִנְסִיָּה, מַה תּוֹעֵלָתָנוּ מֵעֲמָל זֶה, אִם לֹא לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת הָאֱמֶת, לְמַעַן נִשְׂמַח בְּשִׂמְחַת אֶחָינוּ?
- 35 Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?
- וּמַדּוּעַ תֹּאמַר כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ מְשִׁיפִים לְעַם הַזֶּה בְּעַד בָּצַע, בְּעוֹדָךְ אִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי אֵינָנו מְקַבְּלִים כָּל תַּמּוּרָה? הַתֶּאֱמִין כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ מְרַמִּים אֶת הָעָם, וּבִזְזַת מַעֲוָרִים שְׂמָחָה כֹּה רַבָּה בְּלִבָּם?
- 36 And Korihor answered him, Yea.
- וְקוֹרִיחֹר עָנָהוּ: אָכֵן.
- 37 And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?
- וְעַלְמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: הַתֶּאֱמִין כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים?
- 38 And he answered, Nay.
- וְהוּא עָנָה: לֹא.
- 39 Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.
- וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עַלְמָא: הַתּוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְכִי יֵשׁ מְשִׁיחַ? כִּי הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים וְכִי הַמְּשִׁיחַ בּוֹא יָבוֹא.
- 40 And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.
- הִנֵּה, אִיזוֹ רְאִיָּה יֵשׁ לָךְ כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ כִּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ לֹא יָבוֹא? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי אֵין לָךְ כָּל רְאִיָּה, כִּי אִם דְּבָרְךָ לְבַדּוֹ.
- 41 But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?
- וְהִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַמְעִידִים כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. וְאִיךָ לָךְ יֵשׁ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַמְעִידִים לְפָנֶיךָ כִּי אֱמֶת הֵם; הַתְּכַחֵשׁ אוֹתָם? הַתֶּאֱמִין כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת?
- 42 Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.
- הִנֵּה יָדַעְתִּי כִּי תֶאֱמִין, אֲךָ הִנֵּה אַחֲזוּ רוּחַ שָׁקֶר וְאַתָּה דֹּחִית מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, לְבַל יִהְיֶה לָּהּ מְקוֹם בְּקִרְבְּךָ. הַשָּׁטָן גּוֹבֵר עָלֶיךָ, וְהוּא נוֹשֵׂא אוֹתָךְ הִנֵּה וְהִנֵּה וּמַחְבֵּל תְּחַבּוּלוֹת לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 43 And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.
- וְקוֹרִיחֹר אָמַר אֶל עַלְמָא: אִם תִּרְאֵנִי אוֹת לְמַעַן אֲוַכַּח כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אָכֵן, הִרְאֵנִי כִּי יֵשׁ לּוֹ כֹּחַ, וְאֲוַכַּח בְּאֱמַת דְּבָרֶיךָ.
- 44 But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The
- וְעַלְמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: יֵשׁ לָךְ דַּי אוֹתוֹת; הַתְּנִסֶּה אֶת אֱלֹהֶיךָ? הַתֹּאמַר הִרְאֵנִי אוֹת בְּעוֹד יֵשׁ לָךְ עֵדוּת כָּל בְּנֵי עַמְּךָ אֵלֶּה וְכֵן עֵדוּת כָּל

הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים? כִּתְּבִי הַקְּדֹשׁ לְפָנֶיךָ וְכָל
הַדְּבָרִים מִצִּיּוֹנִים כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֵף הָאָרֶץ
וּתְנוּעָתָהּ וְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ וְכָל גְּרָמֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם
הַנִּשְׁעִים בְּמַסְלֹוֹתֵם הַקְּבועוֹת מְעִידִים כִּי יֵשׁ
בּוֹרֵא עֲלֵיוֹן.

scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

וְעַל אֵף זֹאת, הִתְלַף לְהַטּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם הַזֶּה
וּלְהַעֲדִי בְּאֲזִינֵיהֶם כִּי אֵין אֱלֹהִים? הֲעוֹדֶךָ
מִכְחִישׁ כְּנֶגֶד כָּל הָעֵדוּת הָאֵלֶּה? וְהוּא אָמַר:
אֲכֹן, מִכְחִישׁ אֲנִי, בְּלִתִּי אִם תֵּרָאֵנִי אוֹת.

45 And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלֵמָא: נִשְׁעַבְתִּי עַל קוֹשֵׁי לִבִּי, כִּי
עוֹדֶךָ מִתְנַגֵּד לְרוּחַ הָאֵמֶת עַד כִּי תֵאבֹד נַפְשִׁי.

46 And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

וְאוֹלָם, טוֹב כִּי תֵאבֹד נַפְשִׁי מִהִיוֹתְךָ הַמְּבִיא
אֶבְדֹן נַפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתְךָ וְחִלְקַת
דְּבָרֶיךָ; לָכֵן אִם תוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ, יִכָּכֶה אֱלֹהִים
וְתֵאָלֵם לְבַל תִּפְתַּח פִּיךָ לְעוֹלָם וּלְבַל תִּכְזֹּב
עוֹד לָעַם הַזֶּה.

47 But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

וְקוֹרִיחוֹר אָמַר אֵלָיו: אֵינֶנִּי מִכְחִישׁ כִּי קִים
אֱלֹהִים, אֵף אֵינֶנִּי מֵאֲמִין כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים; וְאֲנִי
אֵף אוֹמֵר כִּי אֵתָּה אֵינֶךָ יוֹדֵעַ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים,
וְאִם לֹא תֵרָאֵנִי אוֹת לֹא אֲאֲמִין.

48 Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

וְאָמַר אֵלָיו עֲלֵמָא: אֶתְּנֶךָ זֹאת לְאוֹת, הִכָּה
תִּכָּה בְּאֵלָם, כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי. הֲנִנִּי אוֹמֵר כִּי
בְּשֵׁם אֱלֹהִים תִּכָּה בְּאֵלָם, לְבַל תּוּכַל לִפְתָּח
עוֹד אֶת פִּיךָ.

49 Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

וְכִדְּבַר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נִאָּלֵם
קוֹרִיחוֹר וְלֹא יָכַל לְדַבֵּר, כְּדִבַּר עֲלֵמָא.

50 Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

וְכִרְאוֹת זֹאת הַשּׁוֹפֵט הֶעָלָיוֹן, הוּא שָׁלַח
יָדוֹ וְכָתַב אֶל קוֹרִיחוֹר לֵאמֹר: הֲנוֹכַחְתָּ בְּכֶחַ
אֱלֹהִים? בְּמִי חָפְצְתָּ כִּי יִרְאֶה עָלָיו אוֹת בְּיַד
עֲלֵמָא? הִתְחַפֵּץ כִּי יֵרַע עֲלֵמָא לְזוֹלָתְךָ
לְמַעַן הִרְאוּתְךָ אוֹת? הִנֵּה הִרְאָה אוֹת;
הֲתוֹסִיף לְהִתְנַכַּח?

51 And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

וְקוֹרִיחוֹר שָׁלַח אֶת יָדוֹ וְכָתַב לֵאמֹר: יָדַעְתִּי
כִּי אֵלִים אֲנִי וְלֹא אוֹכַל דַּבֵּר, וְכִי כֶחַ אֱלֹהִים
לְבַדּוֹ יָכַל לְהַבִּיא עָלַי זֹאת. אֲכֹן, תִּמְיֵד יָדַעְתִּי
כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים.

52 And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

- 53 But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.
- 54 Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.
- 55 But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.
- 56 And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.
- 57 Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.
- 58 And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.
- 59 And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.
- 60 And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.
- אֲדָהּ הַשֵּׁטָן הוֹלִיכֵנִי שׁוֹלֵל כִּי בְּדַמּוֹת מַלְאָךְ
נִרְאָה אֵלַי, וְכֹה אָמַר: לֵךְ וְהַשְׁבֵּת אֶת הָעָם
הַזֶּה, כִּי כָלָם תָּעוּ וְאַחֲרֵי אֵל בְּלֹא יָדוּעַ הָלְכוּ.
וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אֵין אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא לְמַדְנִי אֶת
אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר, וְאֲנִי לְמַדְתִּי אֶת דְּבָרָיו; לְמַדְתִּים
כִּי נְעִימִים הָיוּ לְתַחוּשָׁה הַטְּבַעִית, וְלְמַדְתִּים
עַד כִּי נִחְלַתִּי הַצִּלְחָה רַבָּה, וְאֲנִי אֶמְנֵם
הָאֱמָנִתִּי כִּי אֶמֶת הֵם. עַל כֵּן עָמַדְתִּי נֶגֶד
הָאֱמֶת, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִמָּטְתִּי עָלַי אֶת הַקְּלָלָה
הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת.
- וְכֵאמָרוּ זֹאת הַתְּחִנָּה אֶל עֲלָמָא כִּי יִתְפַּלֵּל
אֶל אֱלֹהִים לְהַסִּיר מִמֶּנּוּ אֶת הַקְּלָלָה.
- וְאֹלָם עֲלָמָא אָמַר אֵלָיו: אִם תּוֹסֵר מִמֶּךָ
הַקְּלָלָה הַזֹּאת, תּוֹסִיף לְהַטּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם
הַזֶּה. לָכֵן, בּוֹא יְבוֹא עָלֶיךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר הוּא
כֹּרְצוֹן יְהוָה.
- וְהַקְּלָלָה דְּבִקָּה בְּקוֹרִיחוֹר וְלֹא סָרָה מִמֶּנּוּ.
וְהוּא גָרַשׁ וְהָלַךְ מִבַּיִת אֶל בַּיִת לְבָקֵשׁ לֶחֶם.
- וְשִׁמְעָה מִקְרָה קוֹרִיחוֹר פָּשַׁט מִיַּד בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
אָכֵן, הוֹדְעָה עַל כֵּךְ נִשְׁלַחַה מֵאֵת הַשׁוֹפֵט
הָעֶלְיוֹן אֶל כָּל תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ, לְהַשְׁמִיעַ לְכָל
אֲשֶׁר הָאֱמִינִי בְּדַבְרֵי קוֹרִיחוֹר כִּי יִמְהָרוּ
לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָאָם כֵּן יִהְיֶה מִשְׁפָּטָם כְּמִשְׁפָּטֵי.
- וְהַכֹּל שָׁבוּ וְהִפְכוּ מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה כִּי נִוְכְּחוּ
בְּרִשְׁעַת קוֹרִיחוֹר; וּבְכֵךְ הוֹשֵׁם קֵץ לַעֲוֹן אֲשֶׁר
בְּדַרְכֵי קוֹרִיחוֹר. וְקוֹרִיחוֹר חָזַר עַל הַפְּתָחִים
לְבָקֵשׁ לֶחֶם לְמַחֲיָתוֹ.
- וְהוּא הִתְהַלֵּךְ בְּקֶרֶב הָאֲנָשִׁים. וּבּוֹאוֹ בְּקֶרֶב
עִם אֲשֶׁר נִפְרְדוּ מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וְקָרְאוּ עֲצָמָם
בְּשֵׁם זוֹרָמִים, כִּי מְנַהִיגָם הָיָה אִישׁ בְּשֵׁם
זוֹרָם; וּכְהִתְהַלְכוּ בְּקֶרֶבָם, נִרְמַס בְּרַגְלֵים
וְנִדְרַס לְמוֹת.
- וְכֹה רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ אֶת אַחֲרִית הַמַּעֲשֵׂה דְרָכֵי
יְהוָה; וְכֹה רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי הַשֵּׁטָן לֹא יִתְמַךְ
בְּבָנָיו בַּיּוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, כִּי בְּמַהֲרָה
יִסְחָבֵם אֶל מַעְמְקֵי שְׁאוֹל.

לֹא

31

וְאַחַר מוֹת קוֹרִיחוֹר נֹדַע לְעֲלָמָא כִּי הִזְרָמִים
עָנְתוּ אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה, וְכִי זֹרָם, מִנְהִינִם, הָשָׂה
אֶת לֵב הָעָם לְהַשְׁתַּחֲוֹת אֶל פְּסִילִים דּוֹמָמִים,
וְלִבּוֹ דָּאֵב שָׁנִית עַל עֹוֹן הָעָם.

1

הִי־דִיעָה עַל דָּבָר עֹוֹן בְּקָרֵב עִמּוֹ הִיָּתָה מְקוֹר
צִיעַר רַב לְעֲלָמָא; וְדָאֲבֹון לִבּוֹ גָּדַל מְאֹד עַל
פְּרוֹד הִזְרָמִים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים.

וְהִזְרָמִים נִקְבְּצוּ בְּאַרְץ אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּ שְׁמָהּ
אַנְטִיאֹנוֹם וְהִיא מִמְּזֹרַח לְאַרְץ זֶרַחְמֵלָה,
לְיַד חוֹף הַיָּם, מִדְּרוֹם לְאַרְץ יֶרֶשׁוֹן; וְגִבּוֹלָהּ
הַדְּרוֹמִי בִיעַר אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ בּוֹ הַלְּמָנִים.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים פָּחְדוּ מְאֹד כִּי יָבוֹאוּ הִזְרָמִים בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם
עִם הַלְּמָנִים, וְכֵה יוֹסֵב לְנַפְיֵיהֶם נֹזֵק רַב.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הִטְפֹּת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים מוֹלִיכָה בְּחֻזְקָה
לְמַשׁוֹךְ אֶת הָעָם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַיִּשּׁוּר, אֲכֹן, לַפְּעַל
בְּחֻזְקָה עַל דַּעַת הָאֲנָשִׁים מִפְּעֻלַת הַחֶרֶב אוֹ
מִכָּל דְּבַר אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָרָה לָהֶם, לָכֵן חָשַׁב
עֲלָמָא כִּי רָאִי לְנִסּוֹת אֶת סִגְלַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְעֲלָמָא לָקַח אֶת עִמּוֹן וְאֶת אֶהְרֹן וְאֶת אוֹמְנֵר
לְלָכֶת עִמּוֹ, וְאֶת חִמְנִי הַשָּׂאִיר בְּכִנְסִיָּה אֲשֶׁר
בְּזֶרַחְמֵלָה. וּמִלְכָּד שְׁלֶשֶׁת עֲמִיתָיו הַנִּזְכָּרִים,
לָקַח עֲלָמָא גַם אֶת עֲמוּלֵק וְאֶת זֶאֲזֶרוֹם, אֲשֶׁר
הָיוּ בְּאַרְץ מֶלֶק, וְכֵן שְׁנַיִם מִבְּנָיו לָקַח.

וְאֶת בְּכוֹר בְּנָיו, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא הִילְמָן,
לֹא לָקַח עִמּוֹ. וּשְׁמוֹת בְּנָיו אֲשֶׁר לָקַח עִמּוֹ
נִקְרְאוּ שִׁבְלוֹן וְקוֹרִיאֲנִטוֹן; אֵלֶּה הֵם שְׁמוֹת
הַהוֹלְכִים עִמּוֹ אֶל הִזְרָמִים לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.

וְהִזְרָמִים הָיוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר חָלְקוּ עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
עַל כֵּן נֹדַע לָהֶם דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְפָנִים.

אֲךָ הֵם נָפְלוּ אֶל מְשׁוּגוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת, כִּי לֹא
נִזְהָרוּ לְקִים אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת מִשְׁפָּטָיו,
כַּפִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.

1 Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

2 For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

3 Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

4 Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

5 And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

6 Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

7 Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblon and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

8 Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

9 But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

- 10 Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.
- וְהֵם אֲף לֹא שָׁמְרוּ אֶת הַנִּסִּים, לְהִתְמַיֵּד בְּתַפִּלָּה וּבְתַחֲנוּנָה אֶל אֱלֹהִים מְדִי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, לְבָל יְבוֹאוּ לִידֵי נִסְיוֹן.
- 11 Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.
- וּבִקְצָרָה, הֵם עָוְתוּ אֶת דְּרָכֵי יְהוָה בְּאַפְּנִים רַבִּים מְאֹד. עַל כֵּן, מִסְבָּה זֹאת, יָצְאוּ עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו אֶל הָאָרֶץ, לְהַטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- 12 Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;
- וּכְבוֹאֵם אֶל הָאָרֶץ, וְהִנֵּה מִצְאוּ, לְמִרְבֵּה הַתַּעֲוָתָם, כִּי הִזְדָּמִים בְּנוּ בְּתֵי כְנָסִיּוֹת, וְכִי הֵם נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו יוֹם אֶחָד בַּשָּׁבֹועַ, אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהוּ יוֹם יְהוָה; וַעֲבֹדֹת הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם הָיְתָה בְּאַפֵּן אֲשֶׁר לֹא רָאוּהוּ עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו מֵעוֹדָם.
- 13 For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head, and the top thereof would only admit one person.
- בְּמִרְכָּז בֵּית הַכְּנָסֶת הֵם בְּנוּ מְקוֹם עֲמִידָה, גְּבוּהָ מִקְוֵמַת אָדָם, וּבְרָאשׁוֹ יָכוֹל לַעֲמֹד אִישׁ אֶחָד בְּלִבָּד.
- 14 Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ לַעֲבֹד אֶת יְהוָה עָלָיו לַעֲלוֹת וּלַעֲמֹד בְּמְקוֹם הַמִּגְבָּה הַהוּא, לִפְשֹׁט אֶת יָדָיו הַשְׁמִימָה וְלִקְרֹא בְּקוֹל רָם לֵאמֹר:
- 15 Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.
- קְדוֹשׁ! אֵל קְדוֹשׁ! מֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי אַתָּה אֱלֹהִים, וּמֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי קְדוֹשׁ אַתָּה וְכִי הָיִיתָ רוּחַ, וְהִנֵּה רוּחַ וְתִהְיֶה רוּחַ עַד עוֹלָם.
- 16 Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.
- אֵל קְדוֹשׁ, מֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הִפְרַדְתָּ אוֹתָנוּ מֵאַחֵינוּ וְאֵינָנו מֵאַמִּינִים בְּמִסְרָתָם; אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרָה לָהֶם מֵאֵת פְּתִיּוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וּמֵאַמִּינִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי בְנוּ בְּחֵרְתָּ לְהִיְתָב בְּנֵי קְדוֹשׁ; וְכִי הוֹדַעְתָּנוּ כִּי לֹא יְבוֹא כָּל מְשִׁיחַ.
- 17 But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.
- הִנֵּה אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה אֶתְמוֹל וְהַיּוֹם וְלָעוֹלָם. אַתָּה בְּחֵרְתָּנוּ לְמַעַן נִשָּׁע, בְּעוֹד כָּל אֲשֶׁר סְבִיבָנוּ נִבְחָרוּ לְרִדָּת בְּחִמְתָּךְ שְׂאוֹלָה. וְעַל הַקְּדוּשָׁה הַזֹּאת אֲנַחְנוּ מוֹדִים לָךְ, אֱלֹהִים; וְכֵן מוֹדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לָךְ עַל כִּי בְּחֵרְתָנוּ, לְבָל נִטָּה אַחֵר מִסּוּרוֹת הַהֶבֶל אֲשֶׁר לְאַחֵינוּ, הָאוֹסְרוֹת אוֹתָם אֶל אֲמוֹנָה בְּמִשְׁיחַ, הַמוֹלִיכָה אֶת לִבָּם לְהִרְחִיק נֹדֵד מִמֶּךָ אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 18 And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.
- וְעוֹד מוֹדִים אֲנַחְנוּ לָךְ, אֱלֹהִים, כִּי עַם נִבְחָר וְקְדוֹשׁ אֲנַחְנוּ. אָמֵן.
- 19 Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.
- וְהָיָה כְּשֶׁמַּע עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו וּבְנֵי אֶת הַתַּפִּלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם תַּמְהוּ עַד לְאֵין שְׁעוֹר.

- 20 For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.
כי הנה כל איש עלה והתפלל את אותן התפלות.
- 21 Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.
והמקום אשר עליו אליו נקרא בפיהם רמיאומפטום, ופשרו העמוד הקדוש.
- 22 Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.
מן העמוד הזה התפללו, איש-איש, לאלהים את עצם התפלה ההיא, בהודותם לאלהיהם על כי בחרם ועל כי לא הטא אותם אחר מסרת אחיהם, ועל כי לבבם לא גנב להאמין בבאות, אשר על אודותיהן לא ידעו דבר.
- 23 Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.
ואחר אשר העלו כל האנשים את תודותיהם באופן הזה, הם שבו לבתיהם ולא דברו עוד על אלהיהם עד אשר נאספו שנית ליד העמוד הקדוש, להעלות את תודותיהם כמשפטם.
- 24 Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.
וכראות זאת עלמא, דאב לבו, יען אשר ראה כי עם מרשע ונעקש הם; אכן, הוא ראה כי כל מעיניהם בזהב ובכסף ובכל מיני חפצי יקר.
- 25 Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.
הוא אף ראה כי בגאותם התנשא לבבם בהתפארות רבה.
- 26 And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?
והוא נשא קולו למרום וקרא לאמר: הוי, יהוה! עד אנה תסבל כי עבדיך ישכנו כאן למטה בבשר, לראות רשעה כה גדולה בין בני האדם?
- 27 Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.
הנה, אלהים, הם קוראים אליה, אף לבם נבלע בגאותם. הנה, בפיהם הם קוראים אליה, אלהים, בעודם נפוחי התגדלות בהבלי העולם.
- 28 Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.
הוי, אלהי, ראה את לבוש יקרים, טבעותיהם, צמידיהם, תכשיטי זהבם, וכל יקרותיהם אשר עדו; ראה כי שיתו לבם עליהם, אף אליהם יקראו לאמר: מודים אנחנו לך, אלהים, כי עם נבחר אנחנו לך, וזולתנו יאבד.
- 29 Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.
והם אומרים כי הודעתם כי לא יהיה משיח.
- 30 O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.
יהוה אלהים, עד מתי תסבל רשעה וכפירה כאלה בקרב העם הזה? אנא, יהוה, חזקני למען אוכל לשאת את חלשותי. חלש אני, ורשעה כזאת בקרב העם הזה מכאיבה את נפשי.

- 31 O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.
- יהוה, רב יגון לבי. נחם נא את נפשי במשיח. יהוה, אנא חזקני למען אוכל לשאת בארץ רוח את היסורים אשר יבואוני מפני עון העם הזה.
- 32 O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.
- יהוה, נחם נא את נפשי והצלח אותי ואת העמלים עמי, הלא הם עמו ואהרן ואמון, ועמולק וזאזרם וכן שני בני, את כל אלה נחם נא, יהוה, אנא נחם את נפשים במשיח.
- 33 Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.
- אנא חזקם למען יוכלו לסבל את יסוריהם הבאים עליהם מפני עוונות העם הזה.
- 34 O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.
- אנא, יהוה, הצליחנו להשיבם אליך באמונה במשיח.
- 35 Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.
- הנה, יהוה, נפשותיהם יקרות, ורבים מהם אחינו; לכן, תננו כח, יהוה, והחכימנו למען נשיב את אלה, אחינו, אליך.
- 36 Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.
- וככלות עֲלֵמָא לומר את הדברים האלה, הוא טפח בידיו על כל אשר היו עמו. והנה, כאשר טפח ידיו עליהם, מלאו הם רוח הקדש.
- 37 And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.
- ואחרי כן נפרדו איש מעל אחיו ולא עלה על דעתם צורך עצמם, מה יאכלו או מה ישתו או מה ילבשו.
- 38 And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.
- ויהוה ספק להם צרכם לכל ירעבו ולכל יצמאו, ואף חזקם לכל יסבלו כל מיני יסורים, בלתי אם נבלעו בשמחת המשיח; וכל זאת כפי תפלת עֲלֵמָא, יען אשר התפלל באמונה.

לב

32

- 1 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.
- ואנשי עֲלֵמָא אכן יצאו והחלו להטיף את דבר אלהים לעם. הם נכנסו אל בתי כנסיותיהם ואל בתיהם; ואף ברחובותיהם הטיפו את דבר אלהים.
- 2 And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—
- והיה אחר עמל רב בקרב העם הם החלו להצליח בקרב דלת העם, כי אלה הרחקו מבתי הכנסת מפני לבושים הגסים;

- והם לא הרשו לבוא אל בתי כנסיותיהם לעבד את אלהים, כי נחשבו טמאה; אכן, הם היו עניים ואחיהם חשבו סגים; אכן, הם היו עניים באשר לדברי העולם הזה ואף עניים בלבם.
- 3 Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.
- והאשר למד עלמא את העם, וכדברו אליהם על גבעת אונידה, באו אליו המונים רבים מאלה אשר הזכרנו, אשר מהם היו עניים לב, מפני עניים בדברי העולם הזה.
- 4 Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.
- והם באו אל עלמא; ואמר אליו העומד בראשם: הנה, מה יעשו אחי אלה? הן בזויים הם מכל אדם מפני עניים, ובפרט יבזום כהנינו, כי גרשונו מבתי כנסיותינו אשר במו ידינו עמלנו רבות לבנותם; והם גרשונו מפני רב ענינו, ואין לנו מקום לעבד את אלהינו; הנה, מה נעשה?
- 5 And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?
- וכשמע זאת עלמא, הוא סובבו עד אשר עמדו פנים אל פנים, והביט בו בשמחה גדולה, יען אשר ראה כי יסוריהם אכן הכניעו, וכי נכונים הם לשמע את דבר אלהים.
- 6 And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.
- לכן הוא לא הוסיף לדבר אל ההמון האחר. והוא פשט ידו וקרא אל האנשים אשר ראה, אשר הם שבים מרעתם באמת, ואמר אליהם:
- 7 Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:
- רואה אני כי שפלי רוח אתם, ואם נכון הוא, ברוכים אתם.
- 8 I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.
- הנה אמר אחיהם: מה נעשה, יען אשר גרשונו מבתי כנסיותינו, ולא נוכל לעבד את אלהינו?
- 9 Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.
- הנני אומר לכם, התחשבו כי לא תוכלו לעבד את אלהים, כי אם בבתי כנסיותיכם בלבד?
- 10 Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?
- יתר על כן, אשא לכם, התחשבו כי אל לכם לעבד את אלהים, כי אם יום אחד בשבוע בלבד?
- 11 Moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?
- הנני אומר לכם כי היותכם מנדים מבתי כנסיותיכם, טוב הוא, למען עשותכם נכונים ולמען תחכימו; כי נחוץ לכם לקנות חכמה; כי מפני היותכם מנדים ובזויים בעיני אחיהם על רב עניכם, נעשיתם שפלי רוח; לכן בהכרח אתם מובאים לכלל הכנעה.
- 12 I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

- 13 And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִאֲלָצְתֶם לְהִיטֵי נִכְנָעִים, בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם; כִּי יֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר יִבְקֹשׁ אֲדָם לְשׁוּב מִרְעֻתוֹ, אִם הִכְנִיעָה כְּפוּיָה עָלָיו; וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַנִּחָם מִחֻטָּא, רַחֵם יְרַחֵם; וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר יִרְחֵם וְיִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, אָכֵן יִוָּשֶׁעַ.
- 14 And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם כִּי בִּרְכָתְכֶם עַל כִּי נִכְפַּתְתֶּם עָלֵיכֶם הִכְנִיעָה, הֲלֹא תַחֲשָׁבוּ כִּי הַמִּכְנִיעִים עֲצֻמָּם בְּאִמְתָּ מִפְּנֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים, מְבָרְכִים אֵף יוֹתֵר?
- 15 Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.
- אָכֵן, כָּל הַמִּכְנִיעֵ עֲצֻמוֹ בְּאִמְתָּ וְנִחָם עַל חֻטָּאֵיו וּמִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, הוּא יְבָרֵךְ; אָכֵן, מְבָרֵךְ הוּא יוֹתֵר מִהַכְפִּיִּים לְהִכְנַע מִפְּנֵי רֵב עָנִיִּים.
- 16 Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.
- בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַמִּכְנִיעִים עֲצֻמָּם מִבְּלִי שְׂתִכְפָּה עָלֵיהֶם כְּנִיעָה. וּבְמִלִּים אַחֲרוֹת: בְּרוּךְ הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים וּמִטְבֵּל בְּלִי עֲקָשׁוּת הַלֵּב; אָכֵן, מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹבֵא אֶל דַּעַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ אֵף מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר יִכְפֹּה לְדַעַת אוֹתוֹ בְּטָרֵם יֵאֱמִין בּוֹ.
- 17 Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.
- הִנֵּה, רַבִּים הָאוֹמְרִים: אִם תִּרְאֵנוּ אוֹת מִשְׁמַיִם, יֵדַע אֶת הַדְּבָר לְאַשׁוּרוֹ; אֲזִי נֵאֱמִין.
- 18 Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשַׁאלְכֶם: הֲלֹאֲתָ יִקְרָא אֱמוּנָה? הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא; אִם יֵדַע אִישׁ דְּבַר, אֵין לוֹ סִבָּה לְהֵאֱמִין, כִּי יוֹדַע הוּא.
- 19 And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?
- וְהִנֵּה, כַּמָּה אַרְוֵר יוֹתֵר הַיּוֹדַע אֶת רְצוֹן אֱלֹהִים וְאֵינוֹ עוֹשֶׂהוּ, מֵאֲשֶׁר הַמֵּאֲמִין בְּלֵב, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר לוֹ רַק סִבָּה לְהֵאֱמִין וְהוּא נִכְשָׁל בַּעֲבָרָה?
- 20 Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.
- בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, עָלֵיכֶם לִשְׁפֹּט. הֲנִנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי עַל הַכֹּף הָאֶחָד יֵשׁ כְּמִשְׁקָל אֲשֶׁר בַּכֹּף הַשֵּׁנִי; וְלֹכֵל אָדָם יִהְיֶה כְּפַעְלּוֹ.
- 21 And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.
- וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר לְאֱמוּנָה, אֱמוּנָה אֵינָה יְדִיעַת דְּבָרִים מְשֻׁלָּמִת. לָכֵן, אִם יֵשׁ לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה, אַתֶּם מְקוּיִם לְדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם נִרְאִים וְאֲשֶׁר אִמְתָּ הֵמָּה.
- 22 And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.
- וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, וְרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ, אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֵם עַל כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִינִים בְּשֵׁמוֹ; לָכֵן, רַאשִׁית חִפְצוֹ כִּי תֵאֱמִינוּ, אָכֵן, כִּי תֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֹוֹ.

- 23 And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times which confound the wise and the learned.
- וְהוּא חוֹלֵק אֶת דְּבָרָא לְבָנֵי אָדָם עַל יְדֵי מַלְאָכִים. לֹא לְגִבֹּרִים בְּלִבָּד, כִּי אִם אַף לְנָשִׁים. וְאִין זֹאת הַכֹּל; פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת נִתְּנִים לְיִלְדִים קְטָנִים דְּבָרִים, הַמְכַלִּימִים אֶת הַחֲכָמִים וְאֶת הַמְלָמְדִים.
- 24 And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, יַעֲזֹר אֲשֶׁר חָפְצְתֶם לְדַעַת מִמֶּנִּי מָה תַּעֲשׂוּ כִּי מַעֲזִינִים וּמִגְרָשִׁים אַתֶּם, וְאִינִי רוֹצֶה כִּי תַחֲשְׁבוּ כִּי בְכֹנְנִי לְשַׁפֵּט אֶתְכֶם, כִּי אִם עַל פִּי הָאֱמֶת לְבַדָּה,
- 25 For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.
- כִּי אִין כֹּנְנִי כִּי עַל כָּלְכֶם נִכְפַּתָּה כְּנִיעַתְכֶם, כִּי הָאֲמֹן אֲאָמִין כִּי יֵשׁ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אֶלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הִכְנִיעוּ אֶת עַצְמָם, הֵיוּ נִסְבוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ.
- 26 Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.
- וְכַפִּי אֲשֶׁר אִמַּרְתִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר לֵאמֹנָה, כִּי אִין הִיא יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת, כִּן הִדְבֵּר גַּם בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְּרִי. לֹא תוֹכְלוּ לְהַשִּׁיג מִיַּד יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת בְּאֲשֶׁר לֵאמֹתָם, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר אֵמֹנָה אֵינָה יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת.
- 27 But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.
- וְאִוֹלָם אִם תַּעֲרִירוּ וְתַעֲזְרוּ אֶת תְּבוּנַתְכֶם, וְאַף תִּנְסּוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי וְיִתְמִיִּם חֲלָקִים אֵמֹנָה, אַף אִם אֵינְכֶם מְסַגְלִים לְקִים יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר רָצוֹן לְהֵאֲמִין, תִּנּוּ נָא לְרָצוֹן הַזֶּה לְפַעַל בְּכֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר תֵּאֲמִינוּ בְּאִפֹּן כְּזֶה שֶׁתוֹכְלוּ לָתֵת מְקוֹם בְּלִבְכֶם לְחֵלֶק מִדְּבָרִי.
- 28 Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.
- נִמְשִׁילָה נָא אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְזֶרַע. אִם תִּתְּנוּ מְקוֹם, לְמַעַן יִזְרַע זֶרַע בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, הִנֵּה יִחַל לְתַפֵּחַ בְּחֻזְכֶּם, אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה זֶרַע אֱמֶת, זֶרַע טוֹב, וְלֹא תִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ בְּחֶסֶר אֵמֹנַתְכֶם, וְלֹא תִתְּנֶנּוּ לְרוּחַ יְהוָה; וְכַאֲשֶׁר תִּרְגִּישׁוּ אֶת תְּנוּעַת הַתִּפְיחָה, תֵּאֲמַרוּ בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, אִין זֹאת כִּי אִם זֶרַע טוֹב הוּא, אוֹ, כִּי טוֹב הוּא דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים כִּי הוּא מִרְחִיב אֶת נַפְשִׁי; אַכֵּן, הוּא מִתְחִיל לְהֵאִיר אֶת בִּינָתִי, הוּא מִתְחִיל לְהֵיוֹת עֶרֶב לִחְכִּי.
- 29 Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.
- הִנֵּה, הֲלֹא תִגְדִּיל זֹאת אֶת אֵמֹנַתְכֶם? הִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אַכֵּן! וְאִוֹלָם לֹא תִגְדֵּל זֹאת לְכַדִּי יְדִיעָה מְשֻׁלְּמָת.
- 30 But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now behold, will not this
- וְהִנֵּה, כַּאֲשֶׁר יִתְפַּח הַזֶּרַע וַיִּנְבֹּט וַיִּחַל לְצֻמָּח, אַז תֵּאֲמַרוּ כִּי טוֹב הַזֶּרַע; כִּי הִנֵּהוּ תוֹפֵחַ, נוֹבֵט וּמִתְחִיל לְצֻמָּח. וְעַתָּה, הֲלֹא תַחֲזֹק זֹאת אֶת

עלמא לב:לא-לט

- אָמוּנַתְכֶם? אַכּוּ, הִיא תַחֲזִק אֶת אָמוּנַתְכֶם
כִּי נִבֵּט וְהִחַל לְצֻמָּח.
- 31 And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.
- לָכֵן, אִם צֻמָּח זֶרַע, טוֹב הוּא, וְאִם אֵינוֹ
צֻמָּח, אֵינֶנּוּ טוֹב, עַל כֵּן יִשְׁלַף.
- 32 Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.
- וְאַתֶּם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם אֶת הַנְּסוּי, וּזְרַעְתֶּם
אֶת הַזֶּרַע וּרְאִיתֶם כִּי תִפָּח, נִבֵּט וְאִף הִחַל
לְצֻמָּח, יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ כִּי טוֹב הַזֶּרַע.
- 33 And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.
- וְעַתָּה, הֲאֵם יָדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה? אַכּוּ;
יָדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה בְּדָבָר הַהוּא, וְאַמוּנַתְכֶם
רְדוּמָה; וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי יָדִיעַתְכֶם, אַכּוּ, כִּי יוֹדְעִים
אַתֶּם כִּי דָבָר אֱלֹהִים תִּפָּח בְּנַפְשְׁכֶם, וְאִף
יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי נִבֵּט, כִּי בִינְתְּכֶם מִתְבַּהֶרֶת
וְאִף מִתְרַחֶבֶת דַּעְתְּכֶם.
- 34 And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because ye know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.
- וְאִם כֵּן, הֲאֵין בְּזֹאת מִמֶּשׁ? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם:
אַכּוּ! כִּי אֹרֶךְ הִיא, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְאֹר, טוֹב
הוּא, כִּי אֲפָשָׁר לְהִבְחִין בּוֹ; לָכֵן תִּדְעוּ יָדוּעַ
כִּי טוֹב הוּא; וְעַתָּה, אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתֶּם מִן
הָאֹר הַזֶּה, הֲאֵם יָדִיעַתְכֶם מְשֻׁלָּמָה?
- 35 O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?
- הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! וְאוֹלָם אֵל לָכֶם
לְהַתְעַלֵּם מֵאַמוּנַתְכֶם, כִּי אַתֶּם, רַק אֶת
אַמוּנַתְכֶם הִפְעַלְתֶּם לְזֶרַע אֶת הַזֶּרַע, לְמַעַן
תּוֹכְלוּ לְנִסּוֹת לְדַעַת בְּנִסּוּי אִם טוֹב הוּא.
- 36 Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.
- וְהִנֵּה, כַּאֲשֶׁר יִחַל הָעֵץ לְצֻמָּח, תֹּאמְרוּ: הֲבָה
נִכְלְכֵלוּ בְּדֹאגָה רַבָּה, לְמַעַן יִשְׁרִישׁ וַיִּצְמַח
וַיֵּשֶׂא לָנוּ פֶּרִי. וְרֹאוּ, אִם תִּכְלְכְלוּהוּ בְּמִסְרִית
רַבָּה, יִכָּה שָׂרֵשׁ וַיִּצְמַח וַיַּעֲשֶׂה פֶּרִי.
- 37 And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.
- אֲדָּ אִם תִּזְנִיחוּ אֶת הָעֵץ וְלֹא תִשְׁתִּי לְבָכֶם
לְכַלְכֵּלוּ, לֹא יִצְמַח לוֹ שָׂרֵשׁ, וּבָבוֹא חֹם
הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר יִצְרֵב אוֹתוֹ, יִיבֹשׁ הָעֵץ, מֵאִין
לוֹ שָׂרֵשׁ. אֲזִי תַעֲקְרוּהוּ וְתִשְׁלִיכוּהוּ מִכֶּם.
- 38 But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorched it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֵין זֹאת כִּי הַזֶּרַע לֹא הָיָה טוֹב,
וְאִף לֹא כִּי יִצְמַח בְּאוֹשִׁים; כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי
צָחִיחַ אֲדָמַתְכֶם, וְכִי אֶת עֵצְכֶם לֹא תִכְלְכְלוּ,
לֹא יוֹכֵל לְהִיּוֹת לָכֶם פֶּרִי.
- 39 Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

- 40 And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.
- 41 But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.
- 42 And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.
- 43 Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.
- וְכֵן, אִם לֹא תִכְלְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, בְּעֹדְכֶם מְצַפִּים בְּמַבְט אֱמוּנָה אֶל פְּרִי, לֹא תִּזְכְּלוּ לְעוֹלָם לְקַטֹּף מִפְּרֵי עֵץ הַחַיִּים.
- אֲדָּא אִם תִּכְלְלוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אַכּוּ, אִם תִּכְלְלוּ אֶת הָעֵץ בְּהַחֲלוֹ לְצִמּוּחַ, בְּשִׂקְיָה רַבָּה בְּאַרְךָ רוּחַ בְּאַמּוֹנָתְכֶם, בְּעֹדְכֶם מְצַפִּים אֶל פְּרִי, הוּא יִכָּה שָׂרֵשׁ וְהָיָה יְהִיָּה עֵץ הַצִּמּוּחַ אֱלֵי חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר כָּלְכָלְתֶּם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשִׂקְיֵיְדִתְכֶם, בְּאַמּוֹנָתְכֶם וּבְאַרְךָ רוּחְכֶם, לְמַעַן יִשְׁרִישׁ בְּכֶם, הִנֵּה, לֹא יִרְחַק יוֹם אֲסִיף פְּרִי; וּפְרִי זֶה קָר מִכָּל, מִתּוֹק מִכָּל מִתְּקָה, זֶה מִכָּל זֶה וְטָהוֹר מִכָּל טָהוֹר, וּבִפְרִי הַזֶּה תִּתְעַנְּגוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׂבְּעוּ וְלֹא תִרְעָבוּ, אֲפִי לֹא תִצְמָאוּ.
- אֲנִי, אַחֵי, תִּקְצְרוּ אֶת גְּמוּל אֱמוּנָתְכֶם וּשְׂקִידַתְכֶם, סְבָלְנוּתְכֶם וְאַרְךָ רוּחְכֶם, כְּאֲשֶׁר יַחֲלֶתֶם לְפָרִי הָעֵץ.

לג

33

- 1 Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.
- 2 And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.
- 3 Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?
- 4 For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.
- וְהָיָה כְּדַבֵּר עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִבִּיאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת שְׁאֵלָתָם לִפְנֵי, אִם עֲלִיהֶם לְהֵאֱמִין בְּאֱלֹהִים אֶחָד לְמַעַן יִזְכוּ בְּפְרִי זֶה אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר, וְכִיצַד יִזְרְעוּ אֶת הַזֶּרַע, אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוּתָיו דְּבַר, וְאָמַר כִּי עֲלֵיהֶם לִזְרְעוּ בְּלִבָּם, וּבְאִיזָה אַפֹּן יַחֲלוּ לַפְּעַל בְּאַמּוֹנָתָם.
- וְאָמַר עֲלֵמָא אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם כִּי גִרְשִׁיתֶם מִבְּתֵי כְּנַסְיּוּתֵיכֶם; וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אִם סוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים, טְעוֹת גְּדוֹלָה בְּיַדְכֶם, וְכִי עֲלֵיכֶם לַחְקֹר בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֶּדֶשׁ; אִם נִרְאָה בְּעֵינֵיכֶם כִּי כְּדָבַר הַזֶּה יִלְמְדוּכֶם, אֵינְכֶם מְבִינִים אוֹתָם.
- הַזּוֹכְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי קִרְאתֶם אֶת דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹס הַנְּבִיא הַקֹּדֶמון עַל תְּפִלָּה וְעַבְדוּת אֱלֹהִים?
- וְכֵן הוּא אָמַר: רַחוּם אַתָּה, אֱלֹהִים, כִּי שָׁמַעְתָּ תְּפִלָּתִי בְּהִיּוּתִי בַּמִּדְבָּר; רַחוּם הָיִיתָ בְּהַתְּפִלָּה אֵלַי עַל אוֹיְבֵי וְאֵתָה הַשִּׁיבוֹת אוֹתָם אֵלַי.

- 5 Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.
- אֱלֹהִים, אַף רַחוּם הָיִיתָ אֵלַי בְּקִרְאִי
אֵלֶיךָ בְּשִׂדְדָה, בְּקִרְאִי אֵלֶיךָ בְּתַפְלָתִי,
וְאַתָּה שָׁמַעְתָּנִי.
- 6 And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.
- וְעוֹד: אֱלֹהִים, בְּפָנוּתִי אֶל בֵּיתִי, שָׁמַעְתָּנִי
בְּתַפְלָתִי.
- 7 And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.
- וּבְפָנוּתִי אֶל חֲדָרִי, בְּתַפְלָתִי אֵלֶיךָ,
יְהוָה, שָׁמַעְתָּנִי.
- 8 Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.
- אָכֵן, רַחוּם אַתָּה עִם בְּנֵיךָ בְּשׁוֹעָתָם אֵלֶיךָ, לְמַעַן
תִּשְׁמָעֵם אַתָּה וְלֹא אָדָם, וְאַתָּה שָׁמוֹעַ תִּשְׁמָעֵם.
- 9 Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.
- אֱלֹהִים, רַחוּם הָיִיתָ עִמָּדִי וְאַתָּה שׁוֹעָתִי בְּקִרְבִּי
מִקְהָלֶיךָ אָכֵן שָׁמַעְתָּ.
- 10 Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.
- אֵף שָׁמַעְתָּנִי בְּעֵת הַדִּיחוּנִי אוֹיְבֵי וּבְבוֹזֵם לִי.
אָכֵן, שָׁמַעְתָּ שׁוֹעוֹתַי וְרִגְזוֹתַי עַל שׁוֹנְאֵי,
וּבְחֻמָּתְךָ פָּקַדְתָם בְּכָלִיוֹן מְהִיר.
- 11 And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.
- אָכֵן, שָׁמַעְתָּ אוֹתִי מִפְּנֵי יְסוּרֵי וּמִפְּנֵי תָם לְבִי;
וְכֹה רַחֲמִיתָנִי מִפְּנֵי בְּנֶךָ. לָכֵן אֶקְרָא אֵלֶיךָ בְּכָל
תְּלָאוֹתַי כִּי בְּךָ שְׂמִינִי; כִּי הִסְרָתָּ מִמֶּנִּי אֶת
שְׁפָטֶיךָ מִפְּנֵי בְּנֶךָ.
- 12 And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?
- וְאַמֵּר אֲלֵיהֶם עַל־מָא: הַתַּאֲמִינוּ בְּכַתְבֵּי הַקִּדְשׁ
הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר כָּתוּבִים אֲנִשֵּׁי קְדָם?
- 13 Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.
- הִנֵּה, אִם תַּאֲמִינוּ, אָכֵן תַּאֲמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי זֵנוֹס אֲשֶׁר
אָמַר: הִסְרָתָּ מִמֶּנִּי אֶת שְׁפָטֶיךָ מִפְּנֵי בְּנֶךָ.
- 14 Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?
- וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, אֲשַׁאלְכֶם אִם קִרְאתֶם אֶת כְּתָבֵי
הַקִּדְשׁ. אִם אָמַנְתֶּם קִרְאתֶם, אֵיכָכָה תוֹכְלוּ
לְכַפֵּר בְּבֶן אֱלֹהִים?
- 15 For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—
- הֵן אֵין כָּתוּב כִּי זֵנוֹס לְבַדּוֹ דִּבֶּר עַל הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי גַם זֵנוֹק דִּבֶּר עַל־יָהֶם.
- 16 For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: כָּעֵסֶתָ עַל הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה, יְהוָה,
כִּי לֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת רַחֲמֶיךָ אֲשֶׁר הֵעֲנַקְתָּ לָהֶם
מִפְּנֵי בְּנֶךָ.
- 17 And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.
- וְכֹה רוֹאִים אַתֶּם, אַחֵי, נָבִיא שֵׁנִי אֲשֶׁר מִקְדָּם
הִמְעִיד עַל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר סָרְבוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים
לְהִבִּין אֶת דִּבְרָיו, רָגְמוּהוּ בְּאֲבָנִים עַד מוֹת.

עלמא לג:יח-לד:ב

- 18 But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.
- 19 Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.
- 20 But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.
- 21 O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?
- 22 If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.
- 23 And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

וְאִין זֹאת הַכֹּל; לֹא הֵם לְבָדִם דִּבְרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בֶּן אֱלֹהִים.

הוּא מֹשֶׁה דִּבֶּר עָלָיו. אַכֵּן, אוֹת הוּקַם בַּמִּדְבָּר אֲשֶׁר כָּל הַמִּבְטִי אֵלָיו יִחְיֶה; וְרַבִּים הִבִּיטוּ וְחָיוּ.

וְאוֹלָם מַעֲשִׂים הִבִּינוּ אֶת מִשְׁמַע הַדְּבָרִים הָהֵם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי לְבָבָם; אִף רַבִּים הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַד כִּי לֹא אָבוּ לְהִבְטִי וְלָכֵן אָבְדוּ. הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִבְטִי כִּי לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי זֶה יִרְפָּאֵם.

אֲחִי, אִלּוּ רָפָא לָכֶם עַל יְדֵי נְשִׂיאת עֵינֵיכֶם בְּלִבְדָּה, בְּעֵבֹר תִּרְפָּאוּ, הֲאֵם לֹא הֵייתֶם חֲשִׁים לְהִבְטִי? אוֹ, לְעֲמַת זֹאת, הֲאֵם הֵייתֶם מְקַשִּׁים אֶת לְבָבְכֶם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּמִתְרַפִּים לְשֹׂאת אֶת עֵינֵיכֶם לְמַעַן תִּאבְדוּ?

אִם כֵּן, אוֹי לָכֶם. וְאִם לֹא כֵּן, שְׂאוּ עֵינֵיכֶם וְהִחֲלוּ לְהֶאֱמִין בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, כִּי יָבוֹא לְגָאֵל אֶת עַמּוֹ, וְכִי יִסְבֹּל וְיָמוּת לְמַעַן כִּפֹּר עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם, וְכִי יֵשׁוּב וְיָקוּם מִן הַמֵּתִים, וּבִזְמַת יָבִיא אֶת תְּחִילַת הַמֵּתִים לְמַעַן יַעֲמִדוּ קֹדֶם הָאָדָם לְפָנָיו, לְהִשְׁפֹּט בְּיוֹם הַחֲרוֹן, יוֹם הַדִּין, אִישׁ כְּפִי מַעֲשָׂיו.

וְעַתָּה, אֲחִי, חֲפְצִי כִּי תִזְרְעוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים זֶה בְּלִבְבְּכֶם וּכְהִלּוֹ לְתַפְחַת בְּכָל־לוֹהוּ בְּאֱמוּנַתְכֶם. וְהִנֵּה, הוּא יִהְיֶה לְעֵץ וְיִצְמַח בְּכֶם אֵילֵי חַיִּי עוֹלָם. וְהִי רְצוֹן כִּי יַעֲתִיר לָכֶם אֱלֹהִים הַקָּלֵת מִשְׁאָכְכֶם עַל יְדֵי הַשְׂמִיחָה בְּבָנוּ. אַכֵּן, אִם תִּרְצוּ, תוּכְלוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל זֹאת. אָמֵן.

לד

34

- 1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:
- 2 My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

סְבוּרָנִי, אֲחִי, כִּי לֹא נָתַן כִּי לֹא תִדְעוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמְרוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר אֲנַחְנוּ מְלַמְּדִים כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא; אַכֵּן, אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ כִּי לְמַדְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה רַבּוֹת לְפָנַי פְּרִישְׁתֶּכֶם מִקִּרְבָּנוּ.

- 3 And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר בְּקִשְׁתֶּם מֵאֲחִי הָאֱהוּב לְהוֹדִיעְכֶּם מָה עָלֵיכֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת מִפְּנֵי צָרוֹתֵיכֶם, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיכֶם מְעַט, לְהַכִּין אֶת דַּעְתְּכֶם וּלְהַזְהִירְכֶם כִּי תִתְאַזְרוּ בְּאֱמוּנָה וּבְאַרְףֹּר רִיחַ.
- 4 Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.
- וְזֹאת לְמַעַן תִּרְבֶּה אֱמוּנַתְכֶם עַד כִּי תִצְמִיחוּ אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּלִבְבְּכֶם, לְנִסּוֹת אֶת טוֹבוֹ בְּנִסּוּי.
- 5 And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ רָאִינוּ כִּי הַשְׂאֵלָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בְּדַעְתְּכֶם, הִיא אִם דִּבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים מְצוּי בְּכֵן, אוֹ, אִם אֵין לֹא יֵהִיָּה כָּל מְשִׁיחַ.
- 6 And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.
- אֲףִי רָאִיתֶם כִּי הוֹכִיחַ לָכֶם אֲחִי בְּאַפְּנֵי רַבִּים, כִּי דִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים הוּא בְּמְשִׁיחַ לְמַעַן יִשְׁוּעָה.
- 7 My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.
- אֲחִי הִסְתַּמֵּךְ עַל דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹס כִּי גְאֻלָּה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי בֶן אֱלֹהִים, וְגַם עַל דְּבָרֵי זֵנוֹק, וְאֲףִי הִסְתַּמֵּךְ עַל מֹשֶׁה לְהוֹכִיחַ כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת הֵמָּה.
- 8 And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי עֹצְמִי מֵעִד לִפְנֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי יוֹדַעְ אֲנִי כִּי יָבוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְקַבֵּל עָלָיו אֶת פְּשָׁעֵי עַמּוֹ, וְכִי הוּא יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם, כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים דִּבֶּר זֹאת.
- 9 For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.
- כִּי הֶכְרַח כִּי תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה; כִּי עַל פִּי הַתְּכַנִּית הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהֵי הָעוֹלָמִים צְרִיכָה לְהַעֲשׂוֹת כְּפָרָה. וְלֹא, אִין מָנוֹס כִּי תֵאבֵד כָּל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת; כִּי הַכֹּל מְקֻשִּׁים אֶת לָבָם; אֵין, הַכֹּל כּוֹשָׁלִים וְאוֹבְדִים, וְגוֹרְלָם חָרוּץ לְהִשָּׁחַת, אֲלֹא אִם בְּן תַעֲשֶׂה כְּפָרָה אֲשֶׁר הֶכְרַח כִּי תַעֲשֶׂה.
- 10 For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.
- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ כִּי יֵהִיָּה קֶרֶבֶן גָּדוֹל וְאַחֲרוֹן; אֵין, לֹא קֶרֶבֶן אָדָם, וְלֹא קֶרֶבֶן בְּהֵמָה, וְאֵין לֹא מִין עוֹף כְּלָשְׁהוּ; וְלֹא יֵהִיָּה זֶה קֶרֶבֶן אָנוּשׁ, כִּי עַל הַקֶּרֶבֶן הַזֶּה לְהִיּוֹת מַחְלָט וְנִצָּחִי.
- 11 Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.
- וְאִין אָדָם יָכוֹל לְהַקְרִיב אֶת דָּם עֻצְמוֹ לְכַפֵּר עַל חַטָּאֵי זֹולָתוֹ. וְהִיא אִם יִרְצַח אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, הִיוֹמַת אֲחִי הָרוֹצֵחַ עַל פִּי חֻקֵּנוּ אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁרִים הֵם? אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, לֹא!
- 12 But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.
- כִּי הַחֹק דּוֹרֵשׁ אֶת חַיֵּי הָרוֹצֵחַ; לָכֵן אִין דְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא פָחוֹת מִכְּפָרָה מְחַלָּט, אֲשֶׁר יִסְפִּיק עֲבוֹר חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.

- 13 Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.
- 14 And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.
- 15 And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.
- 16 And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.
- 17 Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;
- 18 Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.
- 19 Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.
- 20 Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.
- 21 Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.
- 22 Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.
- 23 Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.
- 24 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.
- 25 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.
- עַל כֵּן הֵכָרַח אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה קִרְבָּן גָּדוֹל אַחֲרוֹן; אִזְּ
יִהְיֶה, אוֹ רְאוּי כִּי יִהְיֶה, הַפֶּסֶק לְשִׁפְכֵת דָּמִים.
אִזְּ תִּקְיָם תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; אַכֵּן, אִזְּ תִּקְיָם כָּלָה, כָּל
אוֹת וּפְרָט אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ, וְאֵף אֶחָד מֵהֶם לֹא יַעֲבֹר.
- הִנֵּה, זֶה כָּל מִשְׁמַע הַתּוֹרָה, כָּל פֶּרֶט שְׂבָה
מִכֵּן אֶל הַקִּרְבָּן הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן הַהוּא;
וְהַקִּרְבָּן הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן הַהוּא יִהְיֶה בֶן
אֱלֹהִים, מִחֻלָּט וְנִצְחִי.
- וְכֵן יָבִיא יְשׁוּעָה לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמוֹ;
זֹאת כְּוִנַּת הַקִּרְבָּן הָאַחֲרוֹן הַזֶּה, לְהָבִיא מְלֵא
רַחֲמִים, הַמִּתְגַּבְּרִים עַל מִדַּת הַדִּין וּמַעֲנִיקִים
לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לַפְּעֵל בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם
תְּשׁוּבָה מִחֻטָּא.
- כֹּה יִכּוֹלִים רַחֲמִים לְסַפֵּק אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִדַּת הַדִּין
וּלְהַקִּיֵּם בְּזִרְעוֹת בְּטָחוֹן, בְּעוֹד הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר
אֵינוֹ פּוֹעֵל בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה חֲשׂוֹף לְכָל
חֹק תְּבִיעַת הַדִּין; לָכֵן מִפְּעֻלַּת תְּכֵנִית הַגָּאֻלָּה
הַגָּדוֹלָה וְהַנִּצְחִית רַק לְמֵאֲמִין לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה.
- לָכֵן, אַחֵי, יִהְיֶה רְצוֹן כִּי יִזְכְּכֶם אֱלֹהִים לַפְּעֵל
בְּאַמּוֹנָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תִּקְרְאוּ בְּשִׁמוֹ,
לְמַעַן יִרְחַמְכֶם.
- אַכֵּן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו לְרַחֲמִים, כִּי הוּא גִבּוֹר לְהוֹשִׁיעַ.
- אַכֵּן, הִכְנַעוּ וְהִתְמִידוּ בַתְּפִלָּה אֵלָיו.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם בַּשָּׂדֶה, אַכֵּן, בְּעַד
כָּל צֹאנְכֶם.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּבֵיתְכֶם, בְּעַד כָּל בְּנֵי בֵיתְכֶם,
בֶּקֶר, צִהָרִים וָעָרֶב.
- אַכֵּן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו, כְּנִגַּד כַּח אוֹיְבֵיכֶם.
- אַכֵּן, קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו כְּנִגַּד הַשָּׂטָן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אוֹיֵב
כָּל צָדִיקָה.
- קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּעַד תְּבוּאֹת שְׂדוֹתֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן
תִּצְלִיחוּ בָהֶם.
- קִרְאוּ בְּעַד הַצֹּאן אֲשֶׁר בְּשְׂדוֹתֵיכֶם, לְמַעַן יִרְבּוּ.

- 26 ואין זאת הכל עליכם לשפך את נפשכם בהיותכם בחדריכם, במסתוריכם וביערותיכם. But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.
- 27 ובעת אשר אינכם קוראים אל יהוה, יהי לבכם מלא, ותשפכוהו תמיד בתפלה אליו למען שלומכם, ולמען שלום אלה אשר סביבכם. Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.
- 28 ועתה, אחי האהובים, אני אומר לכם, אל תחשבו כי זה הכל, כי אחר עשותיכם כל זאת, אם תסירו את האביון ואת הערים מעליכם, ואת החולה ואת המנגע לא תבקרו, ולא תחלקו לנצרכים מקניינכם, בעוד יש לכם, אני אומר לכם, אם לא תעשו דבר מכל אלה, לשוא תפלתכם, ולא תועילכם מאומה, והנכם כחנפים המכחשים באמונה. And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.
- 29 לכן, אם לא תזכרו להיות אנשי חסד כסיגים תהיו, אשר ישליכם הצורף, כי לא יצלחו לכל, ואשר ברגלים ירמסו. Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.
- 30 ועתה, אחי, אחר אשר קבלתם עדויות כה רבות ונוכחתם כי כתבי הקדש מעידים על הדברים האלה, רצוני כי תבואו ותגישו פרי תשובה. And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.
- 31 אכן, רצוני כי תבואו ולא תקשו עוד את לבבכם. כי הנה עתה היום והשעה לישועתכם; ולכן, אם תנחמו מחטאכם ולא תקשו את לבבכם, מיד תפעל לגביכם תכנית הגאולה הגדולה. Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.
- 32 כי חיי העולם הזה הנם לבני האדם עת הכנה לקראת קבלת פני אלהים; אכן, יום חיי העולם הזה הוא היום אשר נועד לבני האדם לבצע את עמלם. For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.
- 33 וכפי אשר אמרתי לכם, יען כי יש לכם עדויות כה רבות, אני מפציר בכם כי לא תדחו לקץ את יום תשובתכם; כי אחר יום חיים זה, הנתון לנו בעבור נתכונן לחיי עולם, אם לא נשפר את ימינו בעודנו בעולם הזה, יבוא ליל החשכה אשר לא נתן לעשות בו כל עבודה. And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.
- 34 כי בבוא עליכם המשבר הנורא ההוא, לא תוכלו לומר: אני אנהם מרע, אני אשוב אל אלהי. אכן, אינכם יכולים לומר זאת; כי Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of

עֲלֵמָא לַד:לֵה-מֵא

לְאוֹתוֹ רוּחַ, הַשּׁוֹלֵט בְּגוֹפְכֶם בְּעֵת צַאתְכֶם
מִחַיִּי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, יִהְיֶה כַח שְׁלִטוֹן עַל גּוֹפְכֶם
בְּעוֹלָם הַנֶּצַח הַהוּא.

this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

כִּי אִם תִּדְחוּ אֶת תְּשׁוּבַתְכֶם עַד יוֹם מוֹתְכֶם
הַפּוֹד הַפֶּד רוּחַ הַשֵּׁטָן לְשִׁלְטוֹן, וְחוֹתְמוֹ נִתֵּן
בְּכֶם; לָכֵן רָחֶקָה מִכֶּם רוּחַ יְהוָה וְאֵין לָהּ
מָקוֹם בְּתוֹכְכֶם, וְלִשְׁטָן יֵשׁ שְׁלִיטָה מְלֵאָה
עֲלֵיכֶם. זֹאת אַחֲרִית הָרָשָׁעִים.

35 For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

וְזֹאת יָדַעְתִּי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יְהוָה כִּי אֵינִי
שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת אֲשֶׁר אֵינִם קְדוֹשִׁים, כִּי אִם
בְּלֵב צַדִּיקִים יֵשֶׁב; וְהוּא אָף אָמַר כִּי יֵשְׁבוּ
הַצַּדִּיקִים בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ וְלֹא יֵצְאוּ עוֹד; וְכִי
לְבוּשֵׁם הִלְבֵּן בְּדַם הַשֶּׁה.

36 And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְכִי בִירְאֵת אֱלֹהִים תַּעֲמְלוּ
לְהִקִּים אֶת יְשׁוּעַתְכֶם, וְכִי לֹא תִכְחַשׁוּ עוֹד
בְּבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

37 And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

רְצוֹנִי כִּי לֹא תוֹסִיפוּ לָרִיב בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי
תִקְבְּלוּהָ, וְתִקְבְּלוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ;
כִּי תִכְנְעוּ עַד עָפָר, וְתַעֲבְדוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים, בְּכָל
מָקוֹם אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיוּ, בְּרוּחַ וּבֶאֱמָת; כִּי תִהְיוּ
בְּהוֹדְיָהּ לוֹ מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, עַל רֹב רַחֲמֵי
וְשִׁפְעַת בְּרָכָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר הֵעֲתִיר עֲלֵיכֶם.

38 That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

וְאֵנִי אֶף מְזַהֵר אֶתְכֶם, אַחֵי, כִּי תִשְׁמְרוּ
לְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, לְבַל יִשָּׂה אֶתְכֶם הַשֵּׁטָן מִן
הַדֶּרֶךְ בְּמַדְוִיחוֹ, לְבַל יִגְבֵּר עֲלֵיכֶם וְתִהְיוּ
מִשְׁעַבְדִּים לוֹ בְּיוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן, כִּי גָמוּל לֹא
יִגְמַלְכֶם כָּל טוֹב.

39 Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, אֶעֱזֹר אֶתְכֶם לְהִתְאַזָּר
בְּאֶרֶךְ רוּחַ, וְלִשְׂאֵת כָּל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים; אֲלֵ
תִגְדְּפוּ אֶת הַמְּנַדִּים אֶתְכֶם עַל רֹב עֲנִיְכֶם, פֶּן
תִּחְטְאוּ כְּמוֹתָם.

40 And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

כִּי תִהְיוּ סְבָלָנִים וְתִסְבְּלוּ אֶת יְסוּרֵיכֶם בְּתַקְוָה
תְּקִיפָה כִּי יָבוֹא יוֹם וְבוֹ תִנּוּחוּ מִכָּל צָרוֹתֵיכֶם.

41 But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

לַה

35

- וְהָיָה בְּכָלֹת עֲמֹלֶק אֶת דְּבָרָיו, הֵם הִסְתַּלְּקוּ מִן הָהָמוֹן וַעֲבְרוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- וְאִי שְׂאָר עַמִּיתֵיהֶם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִשִּׁיפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לְזוֹרְמִים, בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- אֲזַי הִתְקַבְּצוּ נְכַבְּדֵי הַזּוֹרְמִים וְנוֹעְצוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגְדוּ לָהֶם; וְהֵם כָּעָסוּ עַל דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים כִּי הוּא הִכְרִית אֶת תְּחֻבֹּלָתָם, וְלֹכֵן לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ.
- וְהֵם שְׁלָחוּ וַאֲסָפוּ אֶת כָּל הָעָם מִכָּל הָאֶרֶץ, וְנוֹעְצוּ עִמָּם עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֹאמְרוּ.
- וּמוֹשְׁלֵי הָעָם וְכֹהֲנָיו וּמוֹרְיוֹ הִסְתִּירוּ מֵהָעָם אֶת רְצוֹנָם וְכִנּוּתֵיהֶם; וְכֹף הֵם גָּלוּ בְּעֶרְמָה אֶת דַּעַת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר גָּלוּ אֶת דַּעַת כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים, הֵם גָּרְשׁוּ מִן הָאֶרֶץ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר תָּמְכוּ בְּדְבָרֵי עֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו. רַבִּים הָיוּ הַמִּגְרָשִׁים; וְאִי הֵם עָבְרוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.
- וְעֲלָמָא וְעַמִּיתָיו שָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- וְעַם הַזּוֹרְמִים כָּעָסוּ עַל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנוּ בְּאֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן. וּמוֹשֵׁל הַזּוֹרְמִים הָעֲלִיז, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אִישׁ רָשָׁע מְאֹד, שָׁלַח אֶת דְּבָרוֹ אֶל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וּבִקֵּשׁ מֵהֶם לְגָרֵשׁ מֵאַרְצָם אֶת כָּל הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם מֵאֵת עֲמֹן.
- וְהוּא הִפִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם רַב אִיוִּמִּים, אַף הַדְּבָרִים לֹא הִפְחִידוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וְהֵם לֹא גָרְשׁוּ אֶת הַזּוֹרְמִים; וְהֵם קִבְּלוּ אֶת כָּל עֲנִיֵּיהֶם הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם, אַף כָּל־כֶּלֶם וְהַלְבִּישׁוּם וְנָתְנוּ לָהֶם אֲדָמוֹת לְנַחֲלָה וְסָפְקוּ לָהֶם אֶת צָרֵכֵיהֶם.
- וְהַדְּבָר הָעֵלָה אֶת חֲמַת הַזּוֹרְמִים עַל אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמֹן וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְעַרֵּב בְּלִמְנִים וּלְהַעֲלוֹת גַּם בָּהֶם חֲמָה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 1 Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.
- 2 Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.
- 3 And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.
- 4 And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.
- 5 Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.
- 6 And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.
- 7 And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.
- 8 Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.
- 9 And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.
- 10 Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

- 11 And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.
- 12 And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 13 And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.
- 14 And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.
- 15 Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.
- 16 Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

דְּבָרֵי עֲלֵמָא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל בְּנוֹ הֵילְמָן: נִכְלָל
בַּפְּרָקִים לוֹ-לוֹ; אֶל בְּנוֹ שִׁבְלֹן: נִכְלָל בַּפְּרָק לַח;
וְאֶל בְּנוֹ קוֹרִיאֲנֶטוֹן: נִכְלָל בַּפְּרָקִים לט-מב.
(בַּעֲרֹךְ 74 לַפָּנִי הַסְפִּירָה.)

The words of Alma to his son Helaman, comprising chapters 36–37; his son Shiblon, comprising chapter 38; and his son Corianton, comprising chapters 39–42. (About 74 B.C.)

לו

36

- 1 My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

- 2 I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְתַעֲשֶׂה כַּמַּעֲשִׂי וְתִזְכֹּר אֶת שְׁבִית אֲבוֹתֵינוּ; כִּי הָיוּ מִשְׁעֲבָדִים וְאֵף אֶחָד לֹא הָיָה יָכוֹל לְהַצִּילָם, כִּי אִם אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהם, אֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב. וְהוּא הֵצִל הַצִּילָם מִצָּרָתָם.
- 3 And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי הֵילָמֹן, עוֹדָךְ נַעַר, וְלָכֵן אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּךְ כִּי תִשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבָרֵי וְתִלְמַד מִמֶּנִּי; כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֲשֶׁר כָּל שֵׁם אֶת מִבְטָחוֹ בְּאֱלֹהִים, יִמָּצָא סֶעֶד בְּשַׁעַת נִסְיוֹנוֹ וּבְצָרָתוֹ וּבִיסוּרָיו וְיִתְנַשֵּׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 4 And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.
- אֵין רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַחֲשַׁב כִּי מִדַּעְתִּי נֹדַע לִי הַדָּבָר; אֵין יָדַעְתִּי בָאָה מִן הַגִּשְׁמִי, כִּי אִם מִן הָרוּחַ; לֹא מִן הַשִּׁכְל הַבָּשָׂרִי כִּי אִם מֵאֱלֹהִים.
- 5 Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself.
- הַנִּי אֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי לֹאֵל נִולַדְתִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לֹא הָיָה לִי לְדַעַת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֶף אֱלֹהִים הוֹדִיעֵנִי אוֹתָם בְּפִי מִלְּאֹף קָדְשׁוֹ, וְלֹא בְזָכוֹת עֲצָמִי כָלָל.
- 6 For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.
- כִּי הִלַּכְתִּי עִם בְּנֵי מוֹשִׁיָּע, בְּבִקְשָׁנוּ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים. וְהִנֵּה שָׁלַח אֱלֹהִים אֶת מִלְּאֹף קָדְשׁוֹ לְעָצְרֵנוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ.
- 7 And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵינוּ, וְקוֹלוֹ כְּקוֹל הָרָעַם וְכָל הָאָרֶץ רָעְדָה תַּחַת רַגְלֵינוּ. וְכָלֵנוּ נִפְלָנוּ אֶרְצָה מִפְּנֵי פֶחַד יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר נָפַל עָלֵינוּ.
- 8 But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.
- וְהִנֵּה דִּבֶּר אֵלַי הַקּוֹל לֵאמֹר: קוּמָה! וְקָמַתִּי וַרְאִיתִי אֶת הַמִּלְּאָךְ.
- 9 And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי: אִם חָפְצָךְ הוּא לְאַבֵּד עַצְמָךְ, אַל תּוֹסֵף לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים.
- 10 And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.
- וְנִפְלַתִּי אֶרְצָה; וְלֹא יָכַלְתִּי לִפְתּוֹחַ אֶת פִּי שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיְלוֹת, וְאֵף לֹא לְהִזִּיז אֶת אֵיבְרֵי גּוּפִי.
- 11 And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.
- וְהַמִּלְּאָךְ הוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר אֵלַי; וְעַמִּיתִי שָׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרָיו, אֶף אֲנִי לֹא שָׁמַעְתִּים, כִּי בְשִׁמְעִי אֶת הַמְּלִים: אִם חָפְצָךְ הוּא לְאַבֵּד עַצְמָךְ, אַל תּוֹסֵף לְבַקֵּשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, הִפְתִּי בַּפֶּחַד כֹּה עַז וּבְהֶלֶל פֶּן אֲבַד, עַד כִּי נִפְלַתִּי אֶרְצָה וְלֹא שָׁמַעְתִּי עוֹד דָּבָר.

- 12 עֲנוּי נֶצַח עֲנִיתִי, מִצּוֹקַת נַפְשִׁי רִבְתָּה מְכַל, וְהִכִּיתִי מִפְּנֵי כָּל חַטָּאִי. But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.
- 13 אָכֵן, זָכַרְתִּי אֶת כָּל חַטָּאִי וְעֲוֹנוֹתִי, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵיהֶם עֲנִיתִי בִּיסּוּרֵי שְׂאוּל; רָאִיתִי כִּי מִרְדֵּיתִי בָּאלֹהִי, וְלֹא שָׁמַרְתִּי אֶת מִצְוֹת קִדְשׁוֹ. Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.
- 14 אָכֵן, רִצַּחְתִּי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי, בְּהִטּוֹתִי אוֹתָם מִן הַדֶּרֶךְ אֵלֵי אַבְדּוֹן; וּבִקְצָרָה, כֹּה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ עֲוֹנוֹתִי, עַד כִּי הַמַּחְשְׁבָה לְבָדָה עַל בּוֹאֵי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִי, הִכְתָּה אֶת נַפְשִׁי בִּבְעָתָהּ אֲשֶׁר יִלְאַה פֶּה מִהִבֵּיעַ. Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.
- 15 וָאֲנִי אֲמַרְתִּי בְּלִבִּי, אָהֵה, מִי יִתֵּן וְאֶשְׁלַח וְאֶכְחָד נַפְשִׁי וְגוֹף, וְלֹא אוּכָא לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִי לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל מַעֲשֵׂי. Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.
- 16 הִנֵּה, שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיְלוֹת הִתְעַנִּיתִי, מְכָה בְּמַכְאוּבֵי נַפְשִׁי אַרְוֶרָה. And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.
- 17 וּבְהִיּוֹתִי מַעֲנָה בְּעֲנוּיִים הָאֵלֶּה, בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר הִצִּיקֵנִי זְכָרוֹן רַב חַטָּאִי, וְהִנֵּה זָכַרְתִּי כִּי שָׁמַעְתִּי אֶת נְבוּאָת אָבִי אֵל הָעָם עַל בּוֹא אִישׁ אֶחָד, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, לְמַעַן יִכְפֹּר עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם. And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.
- 18 וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִחֲזִיקָה דַּעְתִּי בַּמַּחְשְׁבָה הַזֹּאת, קָרָאתִי בְּעֵמֶק לִבִּי, הוּא, יֵשׁוּעַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, רַחֵם עָלַי, הַשְׁקוּעַ בְּמַרְרָה וְהַמְקָף בְּחַרְצָבוֹת מוֹת נֶצַחִיוֹת. Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.
- 19 וְהִנֵּה, בַּחֲשָׁבִי זֹאת, לֹא יִסְפָּתִי לְזָכֹר אֶת מַכְאוּבֵי וְלֹא עֲנִיתִי עוֹד עַל יְדֵי זְכָרוֹן חַטָּאִי. And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.
- 20 וְהִנֵּה, אִיזוֹ שְׂמִיחָה וְאִיזָה אֹר נִפְלָא רָאִיתִי; נִפְשִׁי מְלֵאָה שְׂמִיחָה כֹּה עֲצוּמָה כְּמַדַּת מַכְאוּבֵי לִפְנֵי כֵּן! And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!
- 21 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, בְּנִי, כִּי אֵין דְּבָר כֹּה נֹרָא וְכֹה מֵר מִמַּכְאוּבֵי אֲשֶׁר פִּקְדוֹנִי. וְעוֹד אֹמֵר לָךְ, בְּנִי, כִּי לַעֲמַת זֹאת אֵין דְּבָר כֹּה נְהָדָר וְכֹה מְתוֹק כְּשִׂמְחָה אֲשֶׁר הִיָּתָה לִּי. Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.
- 22 אָכֵן, דְּמִיתִי כִּי רָאִיתִי מֵרָאָה כְּמֵרָאָה אֲשֶׁר רָאָה אַבְיֵנוּ, לָחִי, וְהִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים יוֹשֵׁב עַל

כִּסְאוֹ, וְהוּא מְקַף מִקְהֲלֵי מַלְאָכִים אֵין מִסְפָּר
וְהֵם שָׁרִים וּמִשְׁבָּחִים לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם; וְנִפְשִׁי
הַשְׁתַּוְקָה לְהִיּוֹת שָׁם.

attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

וְהִנֵּה, שָׁב כַּח אֵיבְרִי לְקִדְמוֹתוֹ, וְעַמְדָּתִי עַל רַגְלִי
וְהִשְׁמַעְתִּי אֶת הָעָם כִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים נוֹלְדָתִי.

23 But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

וּמֵאָז וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה עָמַלְתִּי בְּלֹא חֵדֶל לְהַבְיֵא
נַפְשוֹת לְתַשׁוּבָה; לְהַבְיֵאן לְטַעַם מִן הַשְׂמִימָה
הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי, לְמַעַן יוֹלְדוּ גַם הֵן
מֵאֱלֹהִים וְיִמָּלְאוּ בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

24 Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, מִשְׁמַחְנִי יְהוָה שְׂמִימָה רַבָּה מְאֹד
בְּפָרִי עָמָלִי.

25 Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

כִּי מִפְּנֵי דְבָרוֹ אֲשֶׁר חָלַק לִי, נוֹלְדוּ רַבִּים
מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, וְטַעְמוֹ אֶת אֲשֶׁר טַעַמְתִּי, וְרָאוּ
עֵין בְּעֵין אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי; לָכֵן יָדוּעַ יוֹדְעִים
הֵם כְּמוֹנִי עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם
דִּבַּרְתִּי; וַיִּדְעָתִי מֵאֱלֹהִים הַנֵּה.

26 For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

בְּכָל מִינֵי נִסְיוֹנוֹת וְצָרוֹת הָיָה לִי מִשְׁעָן,
אֶף בְּכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים; כִּי הִצִּילָנִי אֱלֹהִים
מִמָּוֶלֶת וּמִכַּבְּלִים וּמִמָּוֶת; בּוֹ אֲשִׁים מִבְּטָחִי
וְהוּא עוֹד יוֹשִׁיעֵנִי.

27 And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

יָדוּעַ אֲדַע כִּי הוּא יִשְׁאַנִּי בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן לְשֹׁכֵן
עִמּוֹ בְּתַפְאָרָה; וְאֲנִי אֶהְלֹל לְעוֹלָם, כִּי הוּא
הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מִמִּצְרַיִם וְטָבַע אֶת
הַמִּצְרַיִם בַּיָּם סוּף וּבִכְחוֹ הוֹלִיךְ אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ
אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה; אָכֵן, הוּא הִצִּילָם
מִשְׁעָבוֹד וּמִשְׁבָּיָה פַּעַם בְּפַעַם.

28 And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

אֶף אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הוּא הוֹצִיא מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם;
וּבִכְחוֹ הִנְצָחִי אֶף הִצִּילָם מִשְׁעָבוֹד וּמִשְׁבָּיָה,
פַּעַם בְּפַעַם, עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה; וְזָכַר שְׁבָיָם לְנִגְדֵי
תְּמִיד. וּבְזָכְרִי אֶת שְׁבָיָם, כִּד עָלִיד לְזָכֹר.

29 Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, כִּי עָלִיד לְדַעַת,
כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר יוֹדַע אֲנִי, כִּי אִם תִּשְׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים, הִצְלַח תִּצְלִיחַ בְּאָרֶץ. וְכֵן עָלִיד לְדַעַת
כִּי אִם לֹא תִשְׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, תִּכָּרֵת
מִלְּפָנָיו. כֹּל זֹאת כְּדִבְרֹו.

30 But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

לז

37

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי הֵלָמָן, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶה לְקַחַת אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן הַמִּפְקָדִים בְּיָדִי.

1 And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

וְעוֹד אֲנִי מִצְוֶה לְכַתֵּב אֶת קוֹרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה עַל לוחות נְפִי, כְּפִי שֶׁעָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי, וְלִשְׁמֹר אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּקִדְשָׁתָם כְּאִשֶּׁר שָׁמַרְתִּים; כִּי שְׁמוֹרִים הֵם לְמַעַן תִּכְלִית חֻקָּמָה.

2 And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

וְלוחות נְחֹשֶׁת קָלָל אֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִחְרְטוּ בָּהֶם כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וּבָהֶם תוֹלְדוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לְדוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם מֵרֵאשִׁיתָם,

3 And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

הִנֵּה, אֲבוֹתֵינוּ נִבְּאוּ כִּי הֵמָּה יִשְׁמְרוּ וְיִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, וְכִי יָד יִהְיֶה תִּשְׁמְרָם וְתִנָּצְרָם עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵצֵא דְבָרָם לְכָל אֲמָה, מִשְׁפָּחָהּ, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם, לְמַעַן יֵדְעוּ אֶת הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.

4 Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

וְהִנֵּה, אִם אַכֵּן נִשְׁמְרִים הֵם, עֲלֵיהֶם לִשְׁמֹר אֶת בְּרָקָם; וְהֵם אַכֵּן יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת בְּרָקָם, וְכֵן כָּל הַלּוֹחוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם כְּתָב קֹדֶשׁ.

5 And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

וְאוֹלֵי תַחֲשֹׁב כִּי אֹלֶת הִיא מִמֶּנִּי; אֲךָ הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי בְּדְבָרִים קְטָנִים וּפְשוּטִים מוֹצֵאִים לַפֹּעַל דְּבָרִים גְּדוֹלִים, וְלַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת אֲמַצְעִים קִטְנִים אַכֵּן מְבִיכִים אֶת הַחֻקִּים.

6 Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

וַיְהִי וְאֱלֹהִים פּוֹעֵל עַל יְדֵי אֲמַצְעִים לְהַגְשִׁים אֶת תְּכֵלִיּוֹתָיו הַגְּדוֹלוֹת וְהַנִּצְחִיּוֹת; וּבְאֲמַצְעִים קְטָנִים מְאֹד מְבִיךְ יִהְיֶה אֶת הַחֻקִּים וּמְבִיא גְּאֻלָּה לַנִּפְשוֹת רַבּוֹת.

7 And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

וְהִנֵּה בְּחֻקְמַת אֱלֹהִים הִיא זֶה, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נוֹעֲדוּ לְהִשְׁמֹר, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר הִרְחִיבוּ אֶת זְכָרוֹן הָעָם הַזֶּה וְהוֹכִיחוּ לְרַבִּים אֶת שְׂגִיאת דְּרָכָם וְהִבִּיאוּם אֶל דַּעַת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְלַגְּאֻלַּת נַפְשָׁם.

8 And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

אַכֵּן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, לוֹלֵא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הָרְשׁוּמִים בְּכְתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל הַלּוֹחוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, לֹא יָכְלוּ עֲמוֹן וְעַמִּיתָיו לְהוֹכִיחַ לְאֶלְפִים כֹּה רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים כִּי מִסֵּרְתָּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם אֵינָנָה נְכוֹנָה. אַכֵּן, כְּתָבִים אֵלֶּה וְדְבָרֵיהֶם הִבִּיאוּם לִידֵי תְּשׁוּבָה. הֵם הִבִּיאוּם לִידְעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְלִשְׂמֹחַ בְּיִשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ גּוֹאֲלָם.

9 Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

- 10 And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?
- 11 Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.
- 12 And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.
- 13 O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.
- 14 And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.
- 15 And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.
- 16 But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.
- 17 For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.
- 18 For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.
- 19 And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show
- ומי יודע אם לא ישמשו הם אמצעי להביא עוד אלפים מן הלמנים ואף אלפים רבים מאחינו קשי הערף, הנפיים, המקשים היום את לבם בחטא ובעוון, לידיעת גואלם?
- טרים גלו לי הנסתרות האלה במלאן, לכן אתאפק.
- אולי יספיק אם רק אמר כי שמורים הם לתכלית חכמה, הידועה לאלהים. כי עצת חכמתו על כל מעשיו, וכל נתיבותיו מישרים, ומהלכו הוא מעגל אחד נצחי.
- זכר נא, זכר, בני הילמן, מה חמורות הן מצוות אלהים אשר אמר: אם תשמרו את מצוותי תצליחו בארץ, ואם לא תשמרו, הכרת תכרתו מלפני.
- ועתה, זכר, בני, כי אלהים הפקיד בידיך את הדברים האלה, אשר קדושים הם, והוא שמרם בקדשתם והוא ישמרם וינצרם לתכלית חכמה אשר עמו, למען יראה את כחו לדורות יבוא.
- והנני אומר לך ברוח הנבואה, כי אם תפר את מצוות אלהים, יקחו ממך הדברים האלה, אשר קדושים הם, על ידי כח אלהים, ואתה תפסר לידי השטן, למען יזרזר כמזין לפני הרוח.
- ואולם אם תשמר את מצוות אלהים ותנהג בדברים האלה, אשר הם קדושים, כאשר צוה יהוה, כי עליך לשאל אותו על כל הדברים מה תעשה בהם, אזי לא יהיה כח בארץ, או בשאול, אשר יוכל לקחתם ממך, כי רב כח אלהים להקים את כל דברו.
- כי נאמן הוא לקיים את כל דבריו אשר יאמר לך, כי אכן קיים את דברי בריתו לאבותינו.
- כי הוא אמר להם כי ישמר את הדברים האלה לתכלית חכמה אשר עמו, למען יראה את כחו לדורות אשר יבוא.
- והנה, תכלית אחת הוא קיים, השבת אלפים רבים מן הלמנים לידיעת האמת; והוא הראה את כחו בהם והוא עוד יראה את כחו בהם

לדורות אשר יבואו; לכן השמר ישמרו המה.

forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

ולכן אני מצוה, בני הילמן, כי תקים את כל דברי בשקייה, וכי תשקד לשמר את מצוות אלהים ככתבן.

20 Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

ועתה אדבר אליך על עשרים וארבעה הלוחות ההם, כי תשמרם, למען יודעו לעם הזה הנסתרות ומעשי החשף ועלילות הסתרים, או הפעלות הסודיות אשר לאנשים שהשמדו; אכן, כי כל הרציחות, ומעשי השד והגזל, וכל רשעתם ותועבותיהם יגלו לעם הזה; ועוד אני מצוה לשמר את המבארים האלה.

21 And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robberings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

כי הנה ראה יהוה כי החל עמו לפעל במחשכים, לרצח ולהתעב עלילה בסתר; על כן אמר יהוה, כי אם לא ינחמו מרעתם השמד ישמדו מעל פני האדמה.

22 For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

ואמר יהוה: הנני מכין לגזלם עבדי, אכן אשר תאיר באורה את החשכה, למען אגלה לעמי העובדים אותי, למען אגלה להם את פעל אחיהם, את עלילות סתריהם, מעשי מחשביהם, ורשעתם ותועבותיהם.

23 And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

והנה, בני, המבארים האלה הוכנו למען יתקים דבר אלהים אשר דבר לאמר:

24 And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

הנני מוציא מאפלה אל האור את כל עלילות סתריהם ואת תועבותיהם; ואם הם לא ינחמו מרעתם השמד אשמדם מעל פני האדמה. והנני מוציא אל האור את כל סודותיהם ואת כל תועבותיהם, לעיני כל אמה אשר תנחל את הארץ בימים אשר יבואו.

25 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

והנה, בני, אנחנו רואים כי הם לא נחמו; לכן הם השמדו, ועד היום הזה התקיים דבר אלהים; אכן, תועבותיהם הנסתרות הוצאו מאפלה ונודעו לנו.

26 And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

והנני מצוה, בני, לשמר את כל השבועות והבריתות וההסכמים אשר הם עשו בתועבותיהם הנסתרות. וכן את כל האותות

27 And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this

עֲלֵמָא לִזְכָּח-לָהּ

וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם; אֵת כָּלם תִּרְחִיק מִן
הָעַם הַזֶּה, לְמַעַן לֹא יִדְעוּם, כִּן יִפְלוּ גַם הֵם
אֶל חֹשֶׁךְ וְיִשְׁמְדוּ.

people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall
into darkness also and be destroyed.

כִּי הִנֵּה קָלְלָהּ רוֹבְצָתָ עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת כִּי
תָבוֹא הַשְׁמָדָה עַל כָּל הַפּוֹעֲלִים בַּמְחֹשְׂכִים,
כִּפִּי כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים, בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּמְלֵא סִאתָם;
לִכֹּן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי לֹא יִשְׁמַד הָעַם הַזֶּה.

28 For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall
come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of
God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might
not be destroyed.

לִכֹּן תִּסְתִּיר אֵת מִזְמוֹתֵיהֶם הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת הָאֵלֶּה,
אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ בִּשְׁבוּעוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְכִרְיֹתֵיהֶם,
מִיַּד־עַת הָעַם הַזֶּה; רַק עַל דְּבַר רִשְׁעָתָם
וּמַעֲשֵׂי רִצְיוֹנָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם תוֹדִיעֵם. וְאַתָּה
תִּלְמָדְם לִשְׂנֹא רִשְׁעָה וְתוֹעֲבוֹת וּמַעֲשֵׂי רִצְחָ
אֲשֶׁר כָּאֵלֶּה; וְאַף תִּלְמָדְם כִּי הִשְׁמָדוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים
הָהֵם מִפְּנֵי רִשְׁעָתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂי
הָרִצְחָ אֲשֶׁר בָּעָעוּ.

29 Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their
covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their
murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them;
and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations
and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were
destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and
their murders.

כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם הָרְגוּ אֵת כָּל נְבִיאֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר
בָּאוּ אֲלֵיהֶם לְהַגִּיד לָהֶם אֵת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְדַמִּי
הַנִּרְצָחִים קָרְאוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לִנְקָמָה עַל
רוֹצְחֵיהֶם; כִּן יָצָא לַפֶּעַל דִּין אֱלֹהִים עַל
הַפּוֹעֲלִים בַּמְחֹשְׂכִים וְעַל אַגְדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר.

30 For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came
among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and
the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their
God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the
judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret
combinations.

אָכֵן, אֲרוּרָה לְעַד־עַד תִּהְיֶה הָאֲדָמָה
לַפּוֹעֲלִים בַּמְחֹשְׂכִים וְעַל אַגְדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר, עַד
לְהַשְׁמָדָם כָּלִיל, בְּלֹא אִם יִנְחָמוּ מִרְעָתָם
בְּטָרָם תִּמְלֵא סִאתָם.

31 Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of
darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they
repent before they are fully ripe.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, זָכֹר אֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ. אֵל
תִּמְסָר אֵת מִזְמוֹת הַסֵּתֶר הָאֵלֶּה לָעַם הַזֶּה,
כִּי אִם לְמַדְם שְׂנֵאתָ עוֹלָם עַל חַטָּא וְעוֹן.

32 And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto
you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an
everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

הִטָּף לָהֶם לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֻסָּאֵיהֶם, וְלִהְיוֹת בְּאֲדוֹן
יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ; לְמַדְם לְהִכְנִיעַ עַצְמָם וְלִהְיוֹת
עֲנֻיִם וְשִׁפְלֵי רוּחַ; לְמַדְם לְעַמֹּד כְּגַד כָּל פְּתוּיֵי
הַשָּׂטָן עַל יְדֵי אִמּוֹנָתָם בְּאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

33 Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach
them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach
them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the
Lord Jesus Christ.

לְמַדְם כִּי אֵל לָהֶם לְלֹאוֹת לְעוֹלָם מִמַּעֲשֵׂים
טוֹבִים וְכִי יִהְיוּ עֲנֻיִם וְשִׁפְלֵי רוּחַ, כִּי אֵלֶּה
יִמְצְאוּ מְנוּחָה לְנַפְשָׁם.

34 Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly
in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

זָכֹר, בְּנִי, וּקְנֵה חֻכְמָה בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ; אָכֵן, לְמַד
בְּנְעוּרֶיךָ לִשְׁמֹר אֵת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.

35 O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy
youth to keep the commandments of God.

- 36 Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.
- וַעֲבוֹר כָּל צָרָתְךָ קְרָא אֶל אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, יְהוֹי נָא כָּל מַעֲשֶׂיךָ לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, וְאֵל כָּל אֲשֶׁר תִּלְךָ תִּהְיֶה נָא דְרָכְךָ בְּשֵׁם יְהוָה; אָכֵן, יְהוֹי נָא מִחֻשְׁבוֹתֶיךָ מְכֻנּוֹת אֶל יְהוָה; אָכֵן, יְהוֹי נָא רָגִשִׁי לְבָבְךָ מִכְּנָנִים אֶל יְהוָה לְעוֹלָם.
- 37 Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- בְּכָל מַעֲשֶׂיךָ הוֹעֵץ בִּיהוָה, וְהוּא יְנַהֲיֶיךָ לטוֹב; אָכֵן, בְּשֹׁכְבְּךָ לַיְלָה יְהִיָּה מִשְׁכְּבְּךָ לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְרֶךָ בְּשֵׁנְךָ; וּבְקוּמְךָ בְּבֹקֶר יְהִיָּה לְבָבְךָ שׁוֹפֵעַ תוֹדָה לְאֱלֹהִים. וְאִם אַתְּ אֵלֶּה תַעֲשֶׂה, תִּנָּשָׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- 38 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, יֵשׁ לִי לומר דְּבַר-מָה עַל אֲשֶׁר קָרְאוּהוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ כְּדוֹר אוֹ מוֹרָה, וְאֲשֶׁר כְּנֻוּהוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לְיֶהוּחֻנָּה, אֲשֶׁר פְּרוּשׁוֹ מִכְּנֹן, וִיהוָה הֵכִינוֹ.
- 39 And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.
- הִנֵּה, לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ לְהוֹצִיא תַּחַת יָדוֹ מְלָאכֶת מִחֻשְׁבֵּת אֲשֶׁר כְּזוֹ. הִנֵּה, הוּא הוּכַן לְהִרְאוֹת לְאֲבוֹתֵינוּ אֶת נְתִיב מַסְעֵם בַּמִּדְבָּר.
- 40 And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.
- וְהִמְכֹּן פָּעַל לְמַעַנָם כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם בְּאֱלֹהִים. לָכֵן, בְּהֶאֱמִינָם כִּי יוּכַל אֱלֹהִים לְקַבֵּעַ אֶת הַחוּגוֹת הָהֵן בְּאֶפֶן אֲשֶׁר תִּרְאֶינָה אֶת נְתִיב מַסְעֵם, אָכֵן כֵּן הָיָה. אָכֵן הָיָה לָהֶם הַנִּסְיָן הַזֶּה, וְכֵן נִסִּים רַבִּים נִסְפִּים, אֲשֶׁר חוֹלַל כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ.
- 41 Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;
- וְאַף כִּי חוֹלְלוּ הַנִּסִּים הָהֵם בְּאִמְצָעִים קְטַנִּים, הֵם הִרְאוּ נִפְלְאוֹת. וְכֹאֲשֶׁר הֵם הָיוּ נִרְפִּים וְזָנְחוּ לְהַפְעִיל אֶת אֱמוּנָתָם וּשְׂקִידָתָם, חָדְלוּ הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, וְהֵם לֹא הִתְקַדְּמוּ בַּמַּסָּע.
- 42 Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.
- לָכֵן הִתְמַהְמְהוּ בַּמִּדְבָּר וְלֹא נָסְעוּ בְּנְתִיב יֵשָׁר, וּבִרְעָב וּבְצָמָא הָכּוּ מִפְּנֵי פְשָׁעֵיהֶם.
- 43 And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִבִּין, כִּי אֵין הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נֶעְדָּרִים מוֹפֵת, כִּי בִּהְיוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ נִרְפִּים מִהִשְׁמַע לְמִכְּנֹן הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה דְּבַר חֲמָרִי, לֹא הֵאִירָה לָהֶם הַהֲצִלָּחָה פְּנִים. וְכֵן הַדְּבַר אֵף לְגַבִּי דְּבָרִים רוּחָנִיִּים.
- 44 For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, קַל לְהִשְׁמַע לְדְבַר הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יוֹרֵךְ אֶל נְתִיב יֵשָׁר לְאֲשֶׁר נִצָּחַ, בְּאוֹתָהּ מִדָּה אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לְהִשְׁמַע לְהוֹרָאת הַמִּכְּנֹן הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָה לָהֶם נְתִיב יֵשָׁר אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה.

עלמא לז:מה-לח:ו

- 45 ואמר: האין בדבר הזה משום תבנית? כי כפי אשר הביא המורה הזה את אבותינו אל הארץ היעודה בהליכה בנתיבו, כן ישאנו דברי המשיח, אם נלך בנתיבם, אל מעבר עמק הבכא הזה, אל ארץ יעודה טובה הרבה יותר.
- 46 O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.
- 47 ועתה, בני, ראה ושית לבך לדברים הקדושים האלה; תן לבך להביט אל אלהים וחייה. לך אל העם הזה והשמע את דבר אלהים. יהיה מפכח. שלום עליך, בני.
- 47 And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

לח

38

- 1 My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.
- 2 And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.
- 3 I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.
- 4 For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.
- 5 And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- 6 Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these
- הטה און לדברי, בני, כי הנני אומר לך, כפי אשר אמרתי להילמן כי אם תשמר את מצוות אלהים תצליח בארץ; ואם לא תשמר את מצוות אלהים תכרת תכרת מלפני.
- 2 והנה בני, אני מאמין כי תהיה לי שמחה רבה בך, כי איתן אתה ומסור לאלהים; וכפי אשר החלית בנעוריך להביט אל יהוה אלהיך, כן מקווה אני כי תוסיף לשמר את מצוותיו; כי ברוך המתמיד עד הקץ.
- 3 אני אומר לך, בני, כי כבר הייתה לי שמחה רבה בך מפני מסירותך ושקיפתך וארך רוחך וכח סבלך בעת שבתך בקרב עם הזורמים.
- 4 ידעתי כי נכבדת, ואף ידעתי כי רגמוך אבן על דבר אלהים, ואתה נשאת את כל אלה בארך רוח, כי היה יהוה עמך; והנך יודע כי יהוה אבן הצילך.
- 5 ועתה, בני שבלון, רצוני כי תזכר כי ככל אשר תשים את מבטך באלהים, כן תציל מנסיונותיך ומצרותיך ומיסוריך, ותנשא ביום האחרון.
- 6 הנה, בני, אין רצוני כי תחשב כי מדעתי נודעו לי הדברים האלה, כי רוח אלהים אשר

- בִּי, הִיא הַמּוֹדִיעַתִּי אוֹתָם, וְכִי לֹא־נִלְדָּתִי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לֹא הָיִיתִי יוֹדֵעַם.
- things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.
- 7 וְהִנֵּה שָׁלַח יְהוָה בְּרַחֲמָיו הַגְּדוֹלִים אֶת מַלְאָכּוֹ לְהַשְׁמִיעַנִי כִּי עָלִי לָשִׁים קֶזַךְ לְמַעֲשֵׂה הַהָרִס בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ. וְאֲנִי רָאִיתִי אֶת הַמַּלְאָךְ פָּנִים אֶל פָּנִים, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עִמִּי, וְקוֹלוֹ כְּקוֹל הָרַעַם הַמַּחְרִיד אֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- 7 But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.
- 8 וְשָׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה לַיִלּוֹת סָבַלְתִּי בְּמַכְאוֹב וּבְעִנְיַי הַנֶּפֶשׁ הַמְּרִים בְּיוֹתֵר; וְעַד אֲשֶׁר קָרָאתִי אֶל הָאֱדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ לְרַחֲמֵנִי, מֵעוֹלָם לֹא נִעְנִיתִי בְּמַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאתִי, וְהִנֵּה קָרָאתִי אֵלָיו וּמָצָאתִי שְׁלוֹה לְנַפְשִׁי.
- 8 And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.
- 9 וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, סִפַּרְתִּי לָךְ זֹאת לְמַעַן תִּקְנֶה חֻקָּהּ, לְמַעַן תִּלְמַד מִמֶּנִּי כִּי אֵין כָּל דֶּרֶךְ אוֹ אִפֹּן אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יוֹשַׁע בְּהֶם אָדָם, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְעַל יְדֵיו בְּלִבָּהּ. הִנֵּה, הוּא חַיִּי הָעוֹלָם וְאֹרֹן. הִנֵּה, הוּא דֹבֵר הָאֱמֶת וְהַצֶּדֶק.
- 9 And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.
- 10 וְעַתָּה, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר הַחֲלוּת לְלַמֵּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, כֵּן רְצוֹנִי כִּי תוֹסִיף לְלַמֵּד; וְכִי תִהְיֶה חָרוֹץ וּמְתוֹן בְּכָל דָּבָר.
- 10 And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.
- 11 הַשְׁמַר לִבְל תִּתְנַשֵּׂא בְּגִאָּה; אַכֵּן, הַשְׁמַר לִבְל תִּתְפָּאֵר בְּחֻכְמָתְךָ וּבְכֹחַ כִּחֲךָ.
- 11 See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.
- 12 נִהַג בְּתַקִּיפוּת, אֲךֹּ לֹא בְּשִׁחְצָנוּת; תֵּן דַּעְתְּךָ לְרֹשֶׁן אֶת כָּל תְּשׁוּקוֹתֶיךָ לְמַעַן תִּמָּלֵא אֲהֶבָה; הַשְׁמַר וּרְחַק מִן הַבִּטְלָה.
- 12 Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.
- 13 אַל תִּתְפַּלֵּל כְּזֹרָמִיתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי כִּי מִתְפַּלְלִים הֵם לְמַעַן יִשְׁמְעוּם אֱנָשִׁים, וּלְמַעַן יִהְיוּ עַל חֻכְמָתָם.
- 13 Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.
- 14 אַל תֹּאמַר: אֱלֹהִים, מוֹדָה אֲנִי לָךְ כִּי טוֹבִים אֲנַחְנוּ מֵאַחֵינוּ. וְכֹה תֹאמַר: אָנָּה, יְהוָה, מִחַל נָא עַל כִּי בִלְתִּי רָאוּי אֲנִי, וְזָכַר נָא אֶת אַחֵי בְּרַחֲמֶיךָ. אַכֵּן, הוֹדָה תִּמְדִּיד כִּי בִלְתִּי רָאוּי אֶתָּה לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 14 Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.
- 15 יְבָרֶךְ יְהוָה אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ וְיִקְבַּל אוֹתְךָ אֶל מַלְכוּתוֹ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן, לְשִׁבְתָּ בְּשָׁלוֹם. וְעַתָּה, לֵךְ, בְּנִי, וְלַמַּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים לָעָם הַזֶּה. הִיָּה מִפְּכָח. שְׁלוֹם עָלֶיךָ, בְּנִי.
- 15 And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

לט

39

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, יֵשׁ לִי לֵאמֹר לְךָ דְּבַר־מָה נֹסֵף עַל
אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לְאַחִיָּה. הֲלֹא הִתְבֹּנְנַת בְּיָצִיבוֹת
אֲחִיָּה, נְאֻמָּנוֹתָו וּשְׁקִידָתוֹ בְּשִׁמְרֵת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים? הֲאֵם לֹא הָיָה לְךָ לְמוֹפֵת?

כִּי לֹא שָׁמַעְתָּ לְדְבָרִי כְּאַחִיָּה בַּעַת שְׁבַתְךָ
בְּקֶרֶב עַם הַזֹּרָמִיט. וְזֹו טַעַנְתִּי אֵלֶיךָ: אַתָּה
הִלַּכְתָּ לְהַתְפָּאֵר בְּכַחַד וּבְחָכְמָתְךָ.

וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל, בְּנִי. עָשִׂיתָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִעַרְנִי,
כִּי נִשְׁטַףְתָּ אֶת שְׂרֹתְךָ וְהִלַּכְתָּ אֶל אֶרֶץ סִירוֹן,
בְּקֶרֶבֶת גְּבוּל הַלָּמָנִיט, אַחֵר הַזֹּנוֹה אִיזָּבֵל.

אָכֵן, הִיא גָּנְבָה לִבֵּי רַבִּים, אַף אֵין זֹאת
הַצִּדְקָה לְךָ, בְּנִי. הָיָה עֲלֶיךָ לְדַאֵג לְשְׂרֹתְךָ
אֲשֶׁר הִפְקֵד בְּיָדֶיךָ.

הֲאֵינְךָ יוֹדֵעַ, בְּנִי, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה תוֹעֵבָה הֵם
בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; אָכֵן, זֶה הַנִּתְעַב בְּחֻטָּאִים, זֹלַת
שְׁפִיכַת דָּם נָקִי וְהַתְפָּחוּת לְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ?

כִּי אִם מִתְכַּחֵשׁ אַתָּה לְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר
שָׁכְנָה פַּעַם בְּקֶרְבְּךָ, וְיֹדַע אַתָּה כִּי אַתָּה
מִתְכַּחֵשׁ לָהּ, זֶה חֻטָּא אֲשֶׁר אֵין חֲנִינָה עָלָיו,
וְכָל הַרוֹצֵחַ נֶגֶד אֱלֹהִים וְיָדִיעָתוֹ, לֹא יִקַּל
עָלָיו לְזִכּוֹת בְּמַחִילָה; הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לְךָ, בְּנִי, לֹא
עַל נִקְלָה יִסְלַח לוֹ.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּנִי, מִי יִתֵּן וְלֹא נִמְצְאָתָ אִשָּׁם בְּפֶשַׁע
כָּה גָדוֹל. וְאֲנִי לֹא הֵייתִי עֹמֵד עַל פֶּשַׁעֲךָ,
לְעֲנוֹת אֶת נַפְשְׁךָ, לוֹיֵלָה הִיָּה זֶה לְטוֹבָתְךָ.

הֵן לֹא תוּכַל הִסְתִּיר מֵאֱלֹהִים אֶת פֶּשַׁעֲךָ.
וְאִם לֹא תִנָּחַם מִחֻטְאֶיךָ יַעֲמְדוּ הֵם כְּעֵדוֹת
עָלֶיךָ בְּיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, חָפְצִי כִּי תִנָּחַם מִרְעַתְךָ וּתִנָּשֵׂא
אֶת חֻטְאֶיךָ וְאַל תוֹסֵף לָכֵת אַחֵר תַּאֲזוֹת עֵינֶיךָ;
בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בָּחוּן אֶת עֲצָמְךָ; בְּלִיתִי
אִם תַּעֲשֶׂה כֵּן, לֹא תוּכַל בָּשׂוּם אַפֹּן לְרִשְׁתָּ
אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים. זָכֹר וְשִׂים לֵב, וּבָחוּן אֶת
עֲצָמְךָ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

2 For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

3 And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron, among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

4 Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

5 Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

6 For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

7 And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

9 Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

- 10 ואני מצוה, כי תנעץ באחיה הגדולים ממך במעשיך; הן עודך נער וזקוק לסעד מהם. הן לבך לשמע לעצתם.
- 11 And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.
- אל תנח לכל דבר הקל ואולת להטותה. אל תנח לשטן להוסיף חטות את לבך אחר זונות הרשע ההן. ראה, בני, מה גדול העוון אשר הבאת על הזרמים, כי בראותם את דרכיך הם לא האמינו בדברי.
- 11 Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.
- והנה אומרת לי רוח יהוה: צוה את בניך לעשות טוב, פן יטו לבב רבים לאבדון. לכן אני מצוה, בני, ביראת אלהים, כי תרחק מעוונותיך.
- 12 And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;
- פנה אל יהוה בכל לבבך, בכל מאדך ובכל כחך, ואל תוסיף להטות לב אנשים להרע. כי אם שוב אתה אליהם והתודה על משוגותיך אשר העשית.
- 13 That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.
- אל תבקש עשר והבלי העולם הזה; הן לא תוכל לשאתם עמך.
- 14 Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.
- ועתה, בני, רצוני לומר לך דברים על בוא המשיח. הנני אומר לך כי הוא אשר בוא יבוא להסיר את חטאי העולם; אכן, הוא יבוא להשמיט לעמו בשורת ישועה שמחה.
- 15 And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.
- הנה, בני, זה היה שרותך אשר נקראת אלי, להשמיט את בשורת השמחה הזאת לעם הזה, להכין את לבבם, וביתר דיוק: להסב להם ישועה, בעבור יכינו את לב בנייהם לשמע את דבר אלהים בעת בואו.
- 16 And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.
- ועתה אקל מעט על דעתך בדבר הזה. הנך תמה מדוע יודעו הדברים האלה עת כה ארכה לפני בואם. הנני אומר לך, האין נפש בעת הזאת יקרה לאלהים באותה מדה כנפש בעת בואו?
- 17 And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?
- האין נחוץ כי תכנית הגאולה תודע אל העם הזה כפי אשר תודע אל בנייהם?
- 18 Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

הָאֵין זֶה קֵל לִיהוּה לְשַׁלַּח כְּעַת אֶת מַלְאָכּוֹ
לְהַשְׁמִיעֵנוּ בְּשׁוֹרַת שְׂמִיחָה זֹאת בְּאוֹתָהּ מִדָּה
אֲשֶׁר הוּא יָכוֹל לְהַשְׁמִיעָה אֶל בְּנֵינוּ, אוֹ אַחֵר
עַת בּוֹאוֹ?

19 Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

מ

40

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, הִנֵּה עוֹד דְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָצוֹנִי
לֹאמֹר לָךְ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי דַעְתָּךְ
מְטַרְדָּת בְּדִבְרֵי תַחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים.

1 Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ כִּי אֵין תַּחֲתִית מֵתִים, אוֹ
בְּמַלְּיִם אַחֲרוֹת: הַמֵּתִים לֹא יִהְיֶכּוּ בְּנִי
אֶלְמוֹת, וְהַמְּשֻׁחָת לֹא יִהְיֶכּוּ לְבִלְתִּי
מְשֻׁחָת כִּי אִם אַחֵר בּוֹא הַמְּשֻׁיחַ.

2 Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

הִנֵּה, הוּא הַמְּקִיִּם אֶת תַּחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים. וְאוֹלָם,
רֹאֶה בְּנִי, טֶרֶם הִגִּיעָה עַת הַתַּחֲתִיָּה. וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי
לָךְ דְּבַר סֵתֶר. אֲמַנְסָם יֵשׁ נִסְתָּרוֹת שְׂמֹרוֹת
רַבּוֹת, אֲשֶׁר אֵישׁ לֹא יוֹדֵעַן, כִּי אִם אֱלֹהִים
לְבַדּוֹ, אֵף דְּבַר אֶחָד אֶרְאֶה, אֲשֶׁר בְּרַב
שְׂקִידָתִי, בְּקִשְׁתִּי מֵאֱלֹהִים לְדַעְתּוֹ וְהוּא
דְּבַר תַּחֲתִית הַמֵּתִים.

3 Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

כִּי הוּעַד מוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן
הַמֵּתִים, וְאֵין אִישׁ יוֹדֵעַ מָתִי יָבוֹא; אֵף אֱלֹהִים
יֹדֵעַ אֶת עֵתוֹ.

4 Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

וְהִנֵּה, אַחַת הִיא אִם יִהְיֶה מוֹעֵד אֶחָד,
אוֹ מוֹעֵד שֵׁנִי, אוֹ מוֹעֵד שְׁלִישִׁי לְתַקּוּמָה
הַמֵּתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדֵעַ אֱלֹהִים אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה;
וְדִי לְדַעַת כִּי כֵן הַדְּבַר, כִּי מוֹעֵד נִקְבַּע
לְתַקּוּמַת הַכֹּל מִן הַמֵּתִים.

5 Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

וְהִנֵּה הֶכְרַח כִּי יִהְיֶה מְרוּחַ זְמַן בֵּין יוֹם הַמָּוֶת
וּבֵין יוֹם הַתַּקּוּמָה.

6 Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

וְעַתָּה אֶשְׁאַל: מַה הִיּוֹת נִפְשׁ הָאָדָם בֵּין יוֹם
הַמָּוֶת וּבֵין מוֹעֵד הַתַּקּוּמָה?

7 And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

אַחַת הִיא אִם נִקְבְּעוּ לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם מוֹעֲדֵי תַקּוּמָה
נוֹסְפִים עַל הָאֶחָד; הֲרִי אֵין הַכֹּל מֵתִים בְּעֵת
אַחַת, וְאֵין זֶה חֲשׁוּב; הֵן הַכֹּל יוֹם אֶחָד בְּעֵינֵי
אֱלֹהִים, וְהַזְמַן נִמְדָּד רַק לְבָנֵי הָאָדָם.

8 Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- אֲכֹן, יֵשׁ מוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר הוּעַד לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם לְקוֹם מִן הַמֵּתִים; וְיֵשׁ מְרוּחַ בֵּין יוֹם הַמָּוֶת וּמוֹעֵד הַתְּקוּמָה. וְעַתָּה, עַל אֹדוֹת מְרוּחַ הַזְּמַן הַזֶּה וּמָה הָיִיתָ בּוֹ לְנַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, הוּא הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר בִּשְׂקִידָתִי בִקְשָׁתִי מִיְהוָה לְדַעְתּוֹ; וְזֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר עָלִיו אֲכֹן אֲדַע.
- 9 Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.
- וּבְבוֹא הַמוֹעֵד, בְּאֲשֶׁר יָקוּמוּ הַכֹּל מִן הַמֵּתִים, אֲזִי יוֹדַע לָהֶם כִּי אֱלֹהִים יוֹדַע אֶת כָּל הַמוֹעֲדִים הַקְּבוּעִים לָאָדָם.
- 10 And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לְמַצֵּב הַנֶּפֶשׁ בֵּין הַמָּוֶת וּבֵין הַתְּקוּמָה, נֹדַע לִי מִפִּי מְלָאךְ אֱלֹהִים כִּי נִשְׁמָוֹת כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, מִיָּד עִם הַפְּרָדָן מִן הַגּוֹי אֲשֶׁר הוּא בֶן תְּמוֹיָתָהּ, הַטּוֹבוֹת וְהָרָעוֹת כְּאַחַת, נִלְקָחוֹת הַבֵּיָתָה אֶל הָאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם חַיִּים.
- 11 Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.
- אֲזִי תִתְקַבֵּלָה נִשְׁמָוֹת הַצַּדִּיקִים לְמַצֵּב שֶׁל שְׂמִיחָה הַנִּקְרָא גֶן עֵדֶן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מְנוּחָה וְשָׁלוֹם וּמְרוּגוּעַ מִכָּל צָרוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִכָּל דְּאָגָה וְצָעַר.
- 12 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.
- וּנִשְׁמָוֹת הָרָשָׁעִים, הֵן אֲשֶׁר רָעוֹת, אִין לָהֶן חֵלֶק וְנִחְלָה בְּרוּחַ יְהוָה, כִּי הֵם בָּחֲרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת מַעֲשִׂים רָעִים עַל פְּנֵי מַעֲשִׂים טוֹבִים; לָכֵן נִכְנַס רוּחַ הַשָּׁטָן לְתוֹכָם וְהִתְנַחַל בְּבֵיתָם. הֵן יִשְׁלָכוּ אֶל הַחֹשֶׁךְ הַחִיצוֹן; שָׁם יִהְיוּ בְּכִי, וְלָלֶה וְחֵרוֹק שָׁנִים, וְכָל זֹאת מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם, כִּי הָלְכוּ שְׂבִי אַחֵר רָצוֹן הַשָּׁטָן.
- 13 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.
- זֶה מַצֵּב נַפְשׁוֹת הָרָשָׁעִים. אֲכֹן, בַּחֲשֹׁךְ וּבְמַצֵּב אֵין וְנוֹרָא בְּצַפּוֹתָן לְחֵרוֹן אֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר לַחֲמַת אֱלֹהִים עָלֵיהֶן. כֹּה הֵם שְׂרוּיִים, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר הַצַּדִּיקִים שְׂרוּיִים בְּגֶן עֵדֶן עַד עַתָּה תְּקוּמָתָם.
- 14 Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.
- וְהִנֵּה, יֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר מְבִינִים כִּי מַצֵּב הָאֲשֶׁר הִזָּה וַיְגוֹן הַנֶּפֶשׁ הִזָּה אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵי הַתְּקוּמָה, הֵם תְּקוּמָה רִאשׁוֹנָה. וּמוֹדָה אֲנִי כִּי אֶפְשָׁר לְכַנּוּתָהּ תְּקוּמָה, וְהִיא נִשְׁיָאתָ הַנִּשְׁמָה, אֲזִי הַנֶּפֶשׁ וְהַסִּבְתָּהּ אֶל אֲשֶׁר אֲזִי יְגוֹן, כִּפִּי הַדְּבָרִים שֶׁנֶּאֱמָרוּ.
- 15 Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִף נֶאֱמַר כִּי יֵשׁ תְּקוּמָה רִאשׁוֹנָה, תְּקוּמַת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר הָיוּ וְאֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ, עַד תְּקוּמַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ מִן הַמֵּתִים.
- 16 And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

- 17 Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.
- 18 Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.
- 19 Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice; that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.
- 20 Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.
- 21 But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.
- 22 Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.
- 23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.
- 24 And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—
- 25 And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.
- 26 But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out,
- וְאֵנְחֵנוּ אֵינְנוּ סְבוּרִים כִּי הַתְּקוּמָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלֶיהָ בְּאִפְסוֹ הַזֶּה, הִיא תְּקוּמַת הַנְּפֻשׁוֹת וְהַסִּבְתָּן אֶל אֲשֶׁר אֵל אֵל יִגֹּן. לֹא תַעֲלֶה עַל דַּעְתְּךָ כִּי זֶה מִשְׁמַע הַדְּבָרִים.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ: לֹא; כִּי הַכֹּנָה הִיא אֶחָד הַנְּפֻשׁ וְהַגּוּף מִחֲדָשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֵלָה מִיְּמֵי אָדָם הָרִאשׁוֹן וְעַד יְעַד יְעַת תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְאֵנִי אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי נְפֻשׁוֹת כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עָלֵיהֶם וְגוֹפֵם יִשׁוּבוּ וְיִתְאַחֲדוּ בְּאוֹתָהּ הַשָּׁעָה, הַרְשָׁעִים וְהַצְדִּיקִים בְּאַחַד. דִּי אִם אֹמֵר כִּי הַכֹּל יָקוּמוּ וְיָבוֹאוּ; אוֹ בְּמַלְאִים אַחֲרוֹת, תְּקוּמָתָם תִּחּוּל לִפְנֵי תְּקוּמַת אֵלָה אֲשֶׁר יָמוּתוּ אַחֲרֵי תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר כִּי תְּקוּמָתָם תִּחּוּל בְּעַת תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ; אֲךְ אֵנִי מְבִיעַ אֶת דַּעְתִּי כִּי נְפֻשׁוֹת הַצְדִּיקִים וְגוֹפֵם יִתְאַחֲדוּ שְׁנִית בְּעַת תְּקוּמַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְעַלִּיתוֹ הַשְּׁמִימָה.
- אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה בְּעַת תְּקוּמָתוֹ אוֹ אַחֲרָיָהּ, זֹאת אֵינְנִי אוֹמֵר; וְאוֹלָם זֹאת אֹמֵר: יֵשׁ מְרוּחַ בֵּין הַמָּוֶת לְבֵין תְּקוּמַת הַגּוּף. וְהוּא מַצֵּב הַנְּפֻשׁ בְּאֲשֶׁר אוֹ בִּיגּוֹן עַד הַמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר הוֹעִיד אֱלֹהִים לְתְּקוּמַת הַמָּתִים וְלְאַחֲדוֹ הַנְּפֻשׁ וְהַגּוּף מִחֲדָשׁ וְהַבָּאָתָם לְעֵמֹד לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, לְהִשְׁפֹּט כְּפִי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם.
- וְזֶה יָבִיא אֶת הַשְּׁבִיט הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתֶיהָ הָגָה פִּי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- הַנְּפֻשׁ תִּשׁוּב אֶל הַגּוּף וְהַגּוּף יִשׁוּב אֶל הַנְּפֻשׁ; כָּל אִיֶּבֶר וּמִפְרָק יִשׁוּבוּ אֶל מְקוֹמָם בְּגוּף; אֲף שֶׁעַר הָרֹאשׁ לֹא יֵאבֵד; אָכֵן, כָּל דָּבָר יִשׁוּב אֶל צוּרְתוֹ הַמִּתְאַיְמָה וְהַמְשָׁלָמָה.
- הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, זֹאת הַהִשְׁבָּה אֲשֶׁר עַל אוֹדוֹתֶיהָ הָגָה פִּי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- אֲזַי יִזְרְחוּ הַצְדִּיקִים בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- אֲךְ הִנֵּה, מִיתָה אַיְמָה בָּאָה עַל הַרְשָׁעִים, כִּי מִתִּים הֵם בְּאֲשֶׁר לְדַבְרֵי צֶדֶק; כִּי טְמֵאִים הֵם וְלֹא יִירָשׁ כָּל טְמֵא אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים;

מנדחיים יהיו ויפקדו לאכל מפרי עמלם,
מעשיהם אשר רעים היו, ולשתות מקבעת
כוס התרעלה.

and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works,
which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

מא

41

ועתה, בני, יש לי לומר דבר-רמה על ההשבה
אשר דבר בה. כי הנה, יש אשר עויתו את
כתבי הקדש וסטו הרחק מדרך הישר מפני
הדבר הזה. ואני רואה כי אף דעתך מטרת
בדבר הזה; הנה אבארו לך.

1 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of
which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures,
and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy
mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will
explain it unto thee.

הנני אומר לך, בני, כי תכנית ההשבה היא
הכרח לפי צדק אלהים, כי יש הכרח אשר
כל הדברים ישובו אל סדרם. הנה, זה הכרח
וצורך לפי כח המשיח ותקומתו, כי תשוב
נפש האדם אל גופו, וכי ישוב כל איבר
אשר לגוף אל בנו.

2 I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with
the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored
to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to
the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be
restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored
to itself.

ויש הכרח לפי צדק אלהים כי בני האדם
ישפטו על פי מעשיהם; אם מעשיהם בעולם
הזה טובים היו ותשוקות לבם היו טובות,
הרי הכרח כי אף הם יושבו, ביום האחרון,
אל אשר הוא טוב.

3 And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged
according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and
the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last
day, be restored unto that which is good.

ואם רעים מעשיהם, יושבו אל עושיהם
לרעה. אכן, כל הדברים יושבו אל סדרם
הראוי, כל דבר אל מקומו הטבעי; מות ינשא
לאלמות, המשחת לבלתי משחת; הם ינשאו
לאשר אין קץ לרשת את מלכות אלהים, או
יסבו אל יגון אין קץ לרשת את מלכות
השטן, האחד לכאן והאחר לשם.

4 And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil.
Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, everything
to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to
incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of
God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one
on one hand, the other on the other—

האחד הוקם לאשר כפי תשוקותיו לאשר,
או לטוב כפי תשוקותיו לטוב; והאחר הוקם
אל הרע, כפי תשוקותיו לרע; כי כפי תשוקתו
כל היום להרע, כן יושב לו גמולו הרע
ברדת הלילה.

5 The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or
good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according
to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long
even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

וכך אף לזולתו. אם שָׁב הוא מחטאיו ורצה
בצדק עד קץ ימיו, גמול צדק יושב לו.

6 And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and
desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be
rewarded unto righteousness.

אלה הם אשר גאלם יהוה. אלה הם אשר
הוצאו, אשר נצלו מליל החשכה הנצחית;

7 These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that
are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness;

עֲלָמָא מֵא:ח-מב:א

- כָּךְ הֵם עֹמְדִים אוֹ נֹפְלִים, כִּי הֵם שׁוֹפְטֵי
עַצְמָם, אִם יַעֲשׂוּ טוֹב וְאִם רָע.
- 8 Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, אַל תִּסְתַּכֵּן בְּהוֹסַפְתָּ עֲבָרָה אַחַת
עַל אֱלֹהֶיךָ בְּאוֹתָם עֲקָרֵי תוֹרָתוֹ שֶׁהִסְתַּכַּנְתָּ
בָּהֶם עַד עַתָּה בְּפַעֲלֶךָ חַטָּא.
- 9 And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.
- אַל תַּחֲשֹׁב, כִּי יַעַן אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל הַשָּׂבָה,
תֵּשֵׁב אַתָּה מִחַיִּי חַטָּא לְאַשֶׁר. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ,
מֵעוֹלָם לֹא הָיְתָה רְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר.
- 10 Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הֵם בְּמַצֵּב
הַטְּבָעִי, כְּלוּמָר, מֵצֵבֶם הֵנוּ בְּבִשָּׁר, שְׂרִוּיִים
בְּמִרְרַת רוּשׁ וּבְכִכְלֵי הָעוֹן; חֲסָרִים הֵם אֶת
אֱלֹהִים בְּעוֹלָם וְהֵם הוֹלְכִים נֶגֶד טְבָעוֹ; לָכֵן
מֵצֵבֶם מִנֶּגֶד לְאַשֶׁר.
- 11 And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.
- וְהִנֵּה, הָאֵם מִשְׁמַע הַמִּלָּה הַשָּׂבָה הוּא
הַעֲבָרַת דְּבַר מִמַּצְבּוֹ הַטְּבָעִי אֶל אֲשֶׁר הוּא
בְּלִתֵּי טְבָעִי, אוֹ, אֶל אֲשֶׁר הוּא הִפּוּ טְבָעוֹ?
- 12 And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?
- אָכֵן, בְּנִי, לֹא כֵן הַדְּבַר, כִּי מִשְׁמַע הַמִּלָּה
הַשָּׂבָה הוּא הַשָּׂבָת רָעָה תְּמוּרַת רָעָה, אוֹ
בְּשָׂרֵי תְּמוּרַת בְּשָׂרִי, אוֹ שְׂטָנֵי תְּמוּרַת שְׂטָנִי;
וְכֵן טוֹב תְּמוּרַת טוֹב, צֶדֶק תְּמוּרַת צֶדֶק, יֵשׁוּ
תְּמוּרַת יֵשׁוּ, וְרַחֲמִים תְּמוּרַת רַחֲמִים.
- 13 O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.
- לָכֵן, בְּנִי, הַשְׁמַר כִּי יִהְיוּ לָךְ רַחֲמִים עַל אַחֶיךָ;
נְהַג בִּישָׁר, שִׁפְט בְּצֶדֶק וַעֲשֵׂה תְּמִיד אֶת הַטוֹב.
וְאִם תַּעֲשֶׂה אֶת כָּל אֵלֹהִי, אֲזִי יִשְׁלַם לָךְ כְּנֻמּוֹלָךְ;
אָכֵן, יוֹשְׁבוֹ לָךְ רַחֲמִים; יוֹשֵׁב לָךְ יֵשׁוּ; מִשְׁפָּט
צֶדֶק תִּשְׁפָּט וְטוֹב יִהְיֶה גְּמוּלָךְ.
- 14 Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.
- כִּי אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁלַח, יָשׁוּב אֵלֶיךָ וְלָךְ יִהְיֶה;
עַל כֵּן מִלֵּת הַשָּׂבָה מִרְשָׁעָה כָּלִיל אֶת הַחַטָּא,
וְאִינְנָה מַצְדִּיקָה אוֹתוֹ כָּלִל וְכָלִל.
- 15 For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, רֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי דַעְתְּךָ עוֹדְנָה טְרוּדָה
בְּדַבְר־מָה אֲשֶׁר אֵינְךָ יוֹכֵל לְהִבְיֵנוּ. אָכֵן, בְּדַבְר־
- 1 And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning

צִדֵּק אֱלֹהִים בְּעִנְיַשְׁתּוֹ אֶת הַחוּטָא. יַעַן
אֲשֶׁר סוֹבֵר אֶתָּה כִּי הֶסֶבֶת יָגוֹן לַחוּטָא
אִינָה צוֹדֶקֶת.

the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery.

הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אֲבָאֲרָ לְךָ אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה. כִּי הִנֵּה,
אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ
הָרִאשׁוֹנִים מִן עֵדֶן לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאָדָמָה אֲשֶׁר
נִלְקַחוּ מִמֶּנָּה; אָכֵן, אַחֵר הוּצִיָּאוּ אֶת הָאָדָם,
הוּא הַשְׂכִּין מִקֶּדֶם לְגֹן עֵדֶן כְּרוּבִים וְלֹהֵט חֶרֶב
מִתְהַפֶּכֶת, לְשָׁמֹר אֶת עֵץ הַחַיִּים.

2 Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

וְהִנֵּנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי הָאָדָם הָיָה כְּאֱלֹהִים, לְדַעַת
טוֹב וְרָע; וּפָן יִשְׁלַח יָדוֹ וְיִקַּח גַּם מִעֵץ הַחַיִּים
וְיֹאכַל וְיִחְיֶה לְעוֹלָם, הַשְׂכִּין יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים
כְּרוּבִים וְאֶת לֹהֵט הַחֶרֶב הַמִּתְהַפֶּכֶת, לְבָל
יֹאכַל הָאָדָם מִן הַפֶּרִי.

3 Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

כֹּה רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ, כִּי נָתַן זְמַן לָאָדָם לְהִתְנַחֵם
מִחֻטְאָיו, תְּקוּפַת נְסִיוֹן, תְּקוּפַת תְּשׁוּבָה
וְעִבּוּדַת אֱלֹהִים.

4 And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

כִּי אִלּוּ שָׁלַח אָדָם יָדוֹ מִיָּד וְיֹאכַל מִעֵץ
הַחַיִּים, הָיָה הוּא חַי לְעוֹלָם, כְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים,
וְלֹא הָיָה נֹתֵר נִזְרוֹחַ זְמַן לְתִשְׁבּוּהָ; וְאִף דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים הָיָה בָטֵל וְתִכְנִית הַיְשׁוּעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה
הָיְתָה מוֹפְרָת.

5 For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

וְהִנֵּה, נִגְזַר עַל הָאָדָם לָמוּת; לָכֵן, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר
הֵם הִרְחִקוּ מִעֵץ הַחַיִּים, כֵּן יִרְחִקוּ מֵעַל פְּנֵי
הָאָדָמָה, וְהָאָדָם הָיָה לְאוֹבֵד עַד עוֹלָם. אָכֵן,
הֵם הָיוּ לְבָנֵי נִפְיָלָה.

6 But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

וּבִזְזָת רוֹאָה אֶתָּה כִּי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים
נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה בְּחֹמֶר וְאִף בְּרוּחַ; וְכֹה
רוֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הֵם הִפְכוּ חֲפָשִׁים לַפֶּעַל
כְּחֻפָּצִים וְכִרְצוֹנִים.

7 And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא הָיָה זֶה רָאוּי כִּי הָאָדָם יִצַּל
מִמוּת הַגּוּף, כִּי הָיָה זֶה מִבְּשֵׁל אֶת תִּכְנִית
הָאֲשֶׁר הַגְּדוֹלָה.

8 Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

עַל כֵּן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לְעוֹלָם אֵין הַנֶּפֶשׁ יְכוּלָה
לָמוּת, וְהַנִּפְיָלָה הַבִּיאָה עַל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מוֹת
רוּחָנִי כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר הַבִּיאָה מוֹת גּוּפָנִי, וּמִשְׁמַע
זֹאת, כִּי הֵם נִכְרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה, הָיָה זֶה רָאוּי
כִּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם יִצְּלוּ מִן הַמּוֹת הָרוּחָנִי הַזֶּה.

9 Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

- לכן, יען אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בַעֲלֵי תַאֲוֹת בְּשָׂרִים, חוֹשְׁנִיִּים וְשִׁטְנִיִּים, כְּדֶרֶךְ הַטֶּבַע, נַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם מַצֵּב נִסְיוֹן, זֶה מַצֵּב הַתְּכַוֵּנָנוּת, מַצֵּב הַכְּנָה.
- 10 Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.
- וְעַתָּה, זְכוֹר, בְּנִי, לֹא־לֵא תִכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה, אֱלֹהֵי הָיָה וְתוֹר עָלֶיָּה, אֲמַלְלָהּ הִיתָה נַפְשָׁם, מִיָּד עִם מוֹתָם, כִּי הָיוּ נִכְרָתִים מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.
- 11 And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.
- וְאִף לֹא הָיָה שׁוּם אִפֹּן לְהִבִּיא אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהַנְצִל מִהַנְפִּילָה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא הָאָדָם עַל עֲצָמוֹ עַל יְדֵי אִי־הַשְׁמָעוֹ.
- 12 And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;
- לכן, עַל פִּי הַצֶּדֶק, לֹא הִיתָה יְכוּלָּה תִכְנִית הַגְּאֻלָּה לְצִיאָת אֵל הַפֶּעַל, כִּי אִם עַל תַּנְאִי אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁוּבוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם מִחֲטָא בְּעַת מַצֵּב הַנִּסְיוֹן הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, בְּעַת מַצֵּב הַהַכְּנָה, כִּי לֹא־לֵא הַתְּנָאִי הַזֶּה, לֹא יִכָּלֶה מִדַּת הַרְחָמִים לְהַשְׁפִּיעַ, כִּי הָיָה זֶה מִבְּטָל אֶת פְּעֻלַּת מִדַּת הַדִּין. אָכֵן, לֹא נָתַן לְבִטֵּל פְּעֻלַּת הַדִּין, כִּי אֱלֹהֵי הַתַּאֲפָשֶׁר הַדֶּבֶר הָיָה אֱלֹהִים חָדָל מֵהִיּוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 13 Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.
- וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי כָל בְּנֵי הָאָנוּשׁ הָיוּ מִפְּלִים וְאַחוּזִים עַל יְדֵי מִדַּת הַדִּין; אָכֵן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צָדֵק אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה גּוֹזֵר עֲלֵיהֶם לְהַכְרִית מִלִּפְנֵי לְעוֹלָם.
- 14 And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.
- וְהִנֵּה, תִכְנִית הַרְחָמִים לֹא הִיתָה יוֹצֵאת אֶל הַפֶּעַל, בְּלִתִּי אִם הִיתָה נַעֲשִׂית כְּפָרָה; לָכֵן אֱלֹהִים עֲצָמוֹ מִכְּפָר עַל חֲטָאֵי הָעוֹלָם, לְהוֹצִיא לַפֶּעַל אֶת תִּכְנִית הַרְחָמִים, לְסַפֵּק אֶת תְּבִיעוֹת מִדַּת הַדִּין, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה אֱלֹהִים מְשֻׁלָּם, אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק וְאֱלֹהֵי רַחֲמִים.
- 15 And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.
- וְהִנֵּה, לֹא יְכוּלִּים הָיוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשׁוּב מִחֲטָא לִילָא הִיתָה עֲנִישָׁה, אֲשֶׁר אִף הִיא נִצְחִית, כְּפִי שְׁחִיִּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ נִצְחִיִּים; וְהַעֲנִישָׁה נִקְבַּעַת לְעַמֻּת תִּכְנִית הָאֲשֶׁר, אֲשֶׁר אִף הִיא נִצְחִית כְּנִצְחִיוֹת חַיִּי הַנֶּפֶשׁ.
- 16 Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.
- וְהַכִּיצַד יוּכַל אָדָם לְשׁוּב מִחֲטָא אִם לֹא חֲטָא? וְכִיצַד יִחֲטָא אִם אֵין חֹק? וְכִיצַד יִהְיֶה חֹק אִם אֵין עֲנִישָׁה?
- 17 Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?
- הִנֵּה נִקְבַּעַת עֲנִישָׁה וְחֹק צָדֵק נָתַן אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיא חֲרָטָה מִצָּפוֹן לְאָדָם.
- 18 Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

- 19 כי לולא נתן חק, כמו רוצח אדם מות יומת, ההיה רוצח ירא מות?
Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?
- 20 אכן, לולא נתן חק על חטא, לא היו בני האדם יראים לחטא.
And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.
- 21 ולולא נתן חק, מה יכלו לעשות דין, או אף רחמים, על חטא בני אדם? הן לא היה להם כל תקף על הבירות.
And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?
- 22 אך נתן חק ונקבע ענש והענקה תשובה מחטא. ומדת הרחמים תובעת תשובה, אשר אם לא כן, תובעת מדת הדין את הבירה בהוציאה את החק אל הפעל, והחק מטיל את הענש; אם לא כן, תבטל פעלת הצדק, ואלהים יחדל מהיות אלהים.
But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.
- 23 אך אין אלהים חדל מהיות אלהים, ומדת הרחמים פועלת על הנחם מחטא, והרחמים באים מפני הכפרה; והכפרה מביאה את תקומת המתים; ותקומת המתים משיבה את האדם אל נכח אלהים; והוא מושב לעמד לפניו להשפט כפי מעשיו, על פי החק והצדק.
But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.
- 24 כי מדת הדין תובעת את כל תביעותיה, וכן מדת הרחמים תובעת את כל אשר לה. וכך לא נושע איש כי אם הנחמים מחטא באמת בלבד.
For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.
- 25 כי סבור אתה כי מדת הרחמים יכולה לחמס את מדת הדין? הנני אומר לך: לא; אף לא שמץ. כי אם כן, היה אלהים חדל מהיות אלהים.
What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.
- 26 אכן, כה מוציא אלהים לפעל את תכליותיו הגדולות והנצחיות, אשר הוכנו מיסוד העולם. וכה באה ישועת בני האדם ונאלתם, וכן כליונם ויגונם.
And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.
- 27 לכן, בני, כל החפץ לבוא יבוא ויגמע באות נפשו ממי החיים; וכל אשר אינו חפץ לבוא, איננו מכרח לבוא, ואולם ביום האחרון יושב לו גמולו בהתאם למעשיו.
Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.
- 28 אם חפץ להרע ולא שב מרעתו בימיו, רעה תעשה לו על פי ההשבה אשר לאלהים.
If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

29 And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תִתֵּן עוֹד לְדָבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה לְהַטְרִידָךְ. הִנָּח רַק לְחַטְאֶיךָ לְהַטְרִידָךְ
בְּאוֹתָהּ טְרִידָה אֲשֶׁר תְּבִיאָךְ אֵלַי תְּשׁוּבָה.

30 O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

הִנָּה, בְּנִי, חֲפָצִי כִּי לֹא תוֹסִיף לְהַכְחִישׁ אֶת
צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים. אַל תִּתְּאָמֵץ לְהַצְדִּיק אֶת עַצְמְךָ
אִף בְּדָבָר הַפְּחוּת בְּיוֹתֵר מִפְּנֵי חַטְאֶיךָ, וּבְזֹאת
לְהַכְחִישׁ אֶת צֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים; כִּי זֹאת תַּעֲשֶׂה: תֵּן
לְצֶדֶק אֱלֹהִים וּלְרַחֲמָיו וּלְאֲרָף אַפְּיוֹ שְׁלוֹטוֹן מְלֵא
בְּלִבְךָ, וְהִנָּח לָהֶם לְהַשְׁפִּילְךָ בְּכִנְיָה עַד עָפָר.

31 And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

הִנָּה, בְּנִי, נִקְרָאתָ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים לְהַטְיף אֶת
דְּבָרוֹ אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, לֵךְ לְדַרְכְּךָ,
וְהַשְׁמַע אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּאִמְתּוֹת וּבִפְּחָחוֹן,
לְמַעַן תְּבִיא נַפְשׁוֹת לְתְּשׁוּבָה, לְמַעַן תַּחֲוֹל
עַלֵּיהֶן תְּכִנִּית הַרְחָמִים הַגְּדוֹלָה. יְהִי רָצוֹן
מִלְּפָנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְתֵת לְךָ כִּפִּי דְּבָרִי. אָמֵן.

מג

43

1 And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

וְהָיָה כִּי הִלְכוּ בְּנֵי עֲלֵמָא אֶל הָעָם, לְהַשְׁמִיעַם
אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים. וְאַף עֲלֵמָא עַצְמוֹ לֹא יָכוֹל
הָיָה לְשָׁקֵט וַיֵּצֵא גַם הוּא.

2 Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

וְלֹא נוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר עַל הַשְׁפָּתָם, רַק כִּי הֵם
הִטְיִפוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֶת הָאִמְתּוֹת, כִּפִּי רוּחַ
הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַהֲתַגְלוֹת; וְהֵם הִטְיִפוּ, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר
הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְאֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּיו נִקְרָאוּ.

3 And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

וְעַתָּה אָשׁוּב לְסַפּוֹר הַמִּלְחָמוֹת בֵּין
הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִים בְּשָׁנַת שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂר
לְשָׁלוֹן הַשׁוֹפֵטִים.

4 For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

וְהִנָּה, הַזּוֹרָמִים הָפְכוּ לָמָנִים; וּבִרְאִשִׁית שְׁנַת
שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂר רָאוּ הַנְּפִיִּים כִּי הַלָּמָנִים עוֹלִים
עַלֵּיהֶם; לָכֵן הֵם הִתְכַּוְּנוּ לְקָרֵב. אָכֵן, הֵם
כָּנְסוּ אֶת צְבָאוֹתֵיהֶם בְּאֶרֶץ יֶרְשׁוֹן.

5 And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

וְהַלָּמָנִים בָּאוּ בְּאַלְפֵיהֶם. הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ
אַנְטִיאוֹנוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ הַזּוֹרָמִים; וְשֵׁם
מְנַהִיגָם נִקְרָא זֶרַחֶמְנָה.

6 And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore,

וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר נָטוּ הָעַמְלָקִיִּים בְּעַצְמָם לְרָשָׁעָה
וּלְרָצָח לְעַמַּת הַלָּמָנִים, מִנָּה זֶרַחֶמְנָה

- מפקדים עליונים על הלמנים אשר היו כלם
עמלקיים וזורמים.
- 7 Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.
- 8 For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.
- 9 And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.
- 10 For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.
- 11 Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.
- 12 And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.
- 13 And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.
- 14 Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.
- 15 And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jerston.
- זאת הוא עשה למען שמר את שנאתם
לנפיים, בעבור הכניעם למען יבצעו את
מזמורתו.
- הנה, הוא זמם לעורר את חמת הלמנים
על הנפיים, וזאת עשה למען יקח בחזקת
היד כח רב עליהם ולמען השיג עליונות
על הנפיים בשעבדם.
- וכונת הנפיים היתה להגן על ארצם ועל
בתיהם ועל נשיהם ועל ילדיהם, לשמרם
מיד אויביהם; וכן לשמר על זכויותיהם ועל
חירותם, למען יעבדו את אלהים כחפצם.
- כי הם ידעו כי אם יפלו לידי הלמנים,
ישמידו אלה את כל אשר יעבד ברוח ובאמת
את אלהים, את אלהי האמת החי.
- והם אף ידעו את שנאת הלמנים העזה
לאחיהם, אנשי אנטי-נפיר-לחי הנקראים
אנשי עמון, אשר לא נשאו כלי נשק;
כי בבוואם בברית לא הפרוה בשום אופן;
על כן ידעו, כי בנפל אלה לידי הלמנים,
השמיד ישמדם.
- והנפיים לא היו נכונים להתיר את השמדתם,
ולכן נתנו להם אדמות לנחלה.
- ואנשי עמון נתנו לנפיים חלק גדול מקנינם,
לכלכל את צבאם. הנה כי כן, נאלצו הנפיים
לעמד לבדם בפני הלמנים אשר היו
התחברות למן, למואל, בני ישמעאל וכל
אשר נפרדו מן הנפיים, והם עמלקיים
וזורמים וצאצאי כהני נח.
- והצאצאים ההם היו רבים מאד, כמעט
כמספר הנפיים. כה נאלצו הנפיים להלחם
באחיהם, עד שפך דם.
- והיה בהאסף חילות הלמנים בארץ
אנטיאנום, והנה היו חילות הנפיים מוכנים
לפגוש לקרב בארץ ירשון.

- 16 Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;
- 17 And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.
- 18 And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.
- 19 And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—
- 20 Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;
- 21 But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.
- 22 Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.
- 23 But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- 24 And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an
- וְשֵׁם מְנַהֵיג הַנְּפִיטִים, הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר מִנָּה לְמַפְקֶדֶם הָרָאשִׁי, נִקְרָא מוֹרוֹנִי; וְהוּא קָבַל אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל כָּל צָבָאָם.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי קָבַל אֶת הַפְּקוּד וְאֶת הַנְּהוּל כָּל מַלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהוּא בֶן עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה בְּלִבָּד בְּהַתְּמַנּוּתוֹ לְמַפְקֶד רָאשֵׁי לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהוּא פָגַשׁ בְּלָמָנִים בְּגִבּוֹל יֶרֶשׁוֹן, וְאֲנָשָׁיו מְזִינִים בְּחֶרֶבוֹת וּבַפְּגִינוֹת וּבְכָל מִינֵי כְלֵי מִלְחָמָה.
- וּבְהַפְּגֹשֶׁם רָאוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי נָפִי צִידוּ בְּיַד מוֹרוֹנִי בְּשָׂרִיוֹנֵי חֻזָּה וּבְמַגְנֵי זְרוּעַ וְאֵף בְּמַגְנֵי רֹאשׁ וּבְלָבוֹשׁ עָבָה.
- וּצָבָא זֶרַחֶמְנָה לֹא כָּךְ הָיָה מְצִיד. בִּידֵיהֶם הָיוּ רֶק חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וּפְגִינוֹתֵיהֶם, קִשְׁתוֹתֵיהֶם וְחֻצִּיָּהֶם, וְאַבְנִים וּמִקְלָעִים; וְהֵם הָיוּ עִירְמִים, זוֹלַת עוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר חָגְרוּ עַל מְתֵנֵיהֶם. אַכֵּן, הַכֹּל הָיוּ עִירְמִים, זוֹלַת הַזֹּרְמִים וְהָעַמְלֵקִיִּים.
- וְהֵם לֹא הָיוּ מְזִינִים בְּשָׂרִיוֹנֵי חֻזָּה אוֹ בְּמַגְנִים, וְעַל כֵּן חָרְדוּ מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי חֵיל הַנְּפִיטִים הַמְּשָׂרִינִים, אֵף כִּי מִסְפָּרָם רַב מְאֹד הָיָה מִמְּסַפְּר הַנְּפִיטִים.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְצֹאת עַל הַנְּפִיטִים בְּגִבּוֹל יֶרֶשׁוֹן. עַל כֵּן הֵם נָטְשׁוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ אַנְטִיאוֹנוֹם וּפָנוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת וְנָסְעוּ בָּהֶם הַלּוֹךְ וְסָב, הַרְחָק, לְמַקְוֹרוֹת נְהַר צִידוֹן, וּמִגַּמַּת פְּנִיָּהֶם אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי, לְכַבְּשָׁה; כִּי לֹא שָׁעְרוּ כִּי חִילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי יֵדְעוּ אָנָּה הֵלְכוּ.
- אֲךְ הָיָה כִּי מִיד בְּצֹאתָם אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, שָׁלַח מוֹרוֹנִי אַחֲרֵיהֶם מְרַגְלִים לְצִפּוֹת בְּמַחְנֵם. וּמוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר יָדַע עַל נְבוֹאוֹת עֲלָמָא, שָׁלַח אֵלָיו אֲנָשִׁים מִסְפָּר וּבִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ לְשַׁאל אֶת פִּי יְהוָה אָנָּה יֵלֵךְ חֵיל הַנְּפִיטִים לְהִגֵּן עַל עַצְמוֹ מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים.
- וְהָיָה דְּבַר יְהוָה אֶל עֲלָמָא, וְהוּא הוֹדִיעַ אֶת שְׁלִיחֵי מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים נָסְעוּ סָבִיב בַּיַּעְרוֹת וּפְנִיָּהֶם מוֹעֵדוֹת אֶל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי, לְפָתֹחַ בְּהַתְּקַפָּה עַל חֻלְק הָעָם הַחֹלֵשׁ.

- וְהַשְׁלִיחִים הָלְכוּ וַהֲבִיאוּ אֶת הַדִּבְעָתוֹ
אֶל מֹרֹנִי.
- וּמֹרֹנִי, אַחֲרֵי הַפְּקִידוֹ חֵיל מַצְבָּאוֹ בְּאַרְץ
יֶרְשׁוֹן, פֶּן יָשׁוּב אֵלֶיהָ חֵיל מִן הַלְּמָנִים
וַיִּשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל הָעִיר, לָקַח אֶת שְׂאֵר צְבָאוֹ עִמּוֹ
וַיַּעַד אֶל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי חֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא
לְהֶאָסֵף לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, לְהִגָּן עַל
אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְעַל אֶרְצָם, עַל זְכוּתֵיהֶם
וְעַל חֲרוּתָם; כֹּה הֵם הָיוּ עָרוּכִים לִפְנֵי
בּוֹא הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי צִוָּה אֶת צְבָאוֹ לְהִסְתֵּר בְּבִקְעָה אֲשֶׁר
לְשֹׁפֵת נָהָר צִידוֹן, מִמַּעַרְב לְנָהָר, בִּיעָרוֹת.
- וּמֹרֹנִי הֵצִיב מְרַגְלִים סָבִיב-סָבִיב, לְדַעַת אֶת
מוֹעֵד בּוֹא מַחֲנֵה הַלְּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי יָדַע כִּי כוֹנֵן הַלְּמָנִים הִיא לְהַשְׁמִיד
אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם, אוֹ לְהַכְנִיעֵם וּלְשַׁעֲבָדָם לְמַעַן
יִסַּד לְעַצְמָם מַמְלָכָה עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.
- וְהוּא אֵף יָדַע כִּי כָּל חֶפֶץ הַנֶּפְתִּים הָיָה לְשֹׁמֵר
עַל אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְחֲרוּתָם וְכִנְסֵיהֶם. לָכֵן לֹא
רָאָה חֵטָא בְּהַגְנָתָם עַל יְדֵי תַּחְבּוּלָה; לָכֵן
נִגְלָה לוֹ עַל יְדֵי מְרַגְלָיו מַסְלֹל מִסַּע הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהוּא חָלַק אֶת צְבָאוֹ וְהַעֲבִיר חֶלֶק מֵמֶנּוּ אֶל
הַבִּקְעָה, וְהַחֲבִיאוּ בְּמִזְרָח וּבִדְרוֹם גִּבְעַת רִפְלָה;
- וְאֵת שְׂאֵרֵי הַחֵיל הַחֲבִיֵּא בְּמַעַרְב הַבִּקְעָה,
מִמַּעַרְב לְנָהָר צִידוֹן, בּוֹאֲכָה גְבוּל אֶרֶץ מַנְטִי.
- וְכֵן, לְאַחֲרֵי הֵצִיבוּ אֶת צְבָאוֹ כְּחֶפְצוֹ, הוּא הָיָה
מוֹכֵן לִפְגָּשָׁם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ מִצָּפוֹן לְגִבְעָה, אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּתָהּ
הַתַּחֲבֵּא חֶלֶק מִצְבָּא מֹרֹנִי.
- וְהָיָה כַּעֲבֹר הַלְּמָנִים אֶת גִּבְעַת רִפְלָה,
כִּהְנִסְם אֶל הַבִּקְעָה וּבְהַחֲלִם לַחֲצוֹת אֶת
נָהָר צִידוֹן, יָצָא הַחֵיל הָאוֹרֵב בְּדְרוֹם הַגִּבְעָה,
- attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went
and delivered the message unto Moroni.
- 25 Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest
by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and
take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and
marched over into the land of Manti.
- 26 And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should
gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend
their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore
they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.
- 27 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be
secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which
was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.
- 28 And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the
camp of the Lamanites should come.
- 29 And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it
was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and
bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto
themselves over all the land;
- 30 And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to
preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he
thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore,
he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.
- 31 Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley,
and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;
- 32 And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the
river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.
- 33 And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was
prepared to meet them.
- 34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the
hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.
- 35 And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into
the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was
concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name

- אֲשֶׁר שָׁם מִנְהִיגוֹ נִקְרָא לְחִי, וְהִקְיָו אוֹתָם
מִמִּזְרַח, מֵאַחֲרֵיהֶם.
- וַיֵּרְאוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים עוֹלִים
עֲלֵיהֶם מֵאַחֲרֵי, הֵם פָּנוּ אֲלֵיהֶם וְהִחֲלוּ
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּחֵיל לְחִי.
- אֲזַי הִחֵל קִצְרֵי דָמִים בְּשֵׁנֵי הַצְּדָדִים, אַךְ נוֹרָא
יֹתֵר הָיָה בְּלְמָנִים, כִּי גוֹפֵם הָעִירִים חֲשׂוֹף הָיָה
לְמַכּוֹת הָעֲזוֹת מִחֶרְבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וּמִפְּגִיזוֹתֵיהֶם
אֲשֶׁר הִנָּחִיתוּ מוֹת כְּמַעַט בְּכָל מַכָּה.
- וְלִעֲמַת זֹאת, הָיוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים רַק בּוֹדִידִים
אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ מִחֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים וּמֵאֲבֹד דָּם, כִּי
אֵיבָרֵי גוֹפֵם הַחַיּוּנִיִּים הָיוּ מוֹגְנִים מִמַּכּוֹת
הַלְּמָנִים עַל יְדֵי שְׂרִיזֵי הַחֹזֶה וּמִגְנֵי הָזֶרַע
וּמִגְנֵי הָרֹאשׁ אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם. כֹּה עָלָה בְּיַד הַנְּפִיִּים
לְזַרֵּעַ מוֹת בְּקֶרֶב הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים נִבְּהָלוּ מֵעֲצָמַת הַהֲשָׁמָה בְּקֶרֶבָם,
וְהִחֲלוּ לָנוּס לְעֵבֶר נְהַר צִידוֹן.
- וְהֵם נִרְדְּפוּ עַל יְדֵי לְחִי וְאֶנְשָׁיו, אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּם
אֶל מִי צִידוֹן. וְהֵם חֲצוּ אֶת מִי צִידוֹן, וְלְחִי
הִחֲזִיק אֶת חֵילָיו עַל שְׂפַת נְהַר צִידוֹן לְמַנֵּעַ
אֶת הַלְּמָנִים מִחֲצִיתוֹ.
- וּמִזִּרְיָא וּצִבְאָא פָּגְשׁוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים בְּבִקְעָה,
בְּעֵבֶר נְהַר צִידוֹן; וְהֵם הִתְנַפְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם
וְהִחֲלוּ לְהָרְגָם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים נָסוּ שְׁנֵית מַפְיָהֶם, לְעֵבֶר אֶרֶץ
מִנְטִי, וְשָׁם פָּגְשׁוּ שְׁנֵית חֵיל מִזִּרְיָא.
- הַפֶּעַם לָחֲמוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּנִחְשׂוֹת רַבָּה; אָכֵן,
מֵעוֹלָם לֹא נִדְּעוּ הַלְּמָנִים כְּלוֹחֲמִים כֹּה עֲזִים
וְנוֹעֲזִים, אִף לֹא מִרֵּאשִׁיתָם.
- וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרוּם לְהִלָּחֵם הָיוּ זֹרָמִים
וְהַעֲמֻלָּקִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ רֹאשֵׁי מַפְקְדֵיהֶם
וּמִנְהִיגֵיהֶם, וְכֵן יִרְעַחְמָנָה, רֹאשׁ קְצִינֵיהֶם,
מִנְהִיגֵם הָרֹאשִׁי וּמַפְקֵדָם; אָכֵן, הֵם נִלְחָמוּ
כְּתַנְיָנִים וְרִבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים נִהָרְגוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם
כִּי הֵם פָּצְחוּ רִבִּים מִמִּגְנֵי רֹאשָׁם, וְנִקְבּוּ רִבִּים
מִמִּגְנֵי הַחֹזֶה וְכָרְתוּ יָדִים רַבּוֹת. כֹּה הִלְמוּ
הַלְּמָנִים בְּחֲמַת זַעֲמָם.
- was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about
on the east in their rear.
- 36 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites
coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to
contend with the army of Lehi.
- 37 And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more
dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed
to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters,
which brought death almost at every stroke.
- 38 While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among
the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded
from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body
being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates,
and their arm-shields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did
carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.
- 39 And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because
of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee
towards the river Sidon.
- 40 And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by
Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon.
And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that
they should not cross.
- 41 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in
the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon
them and to slay them.
- 42 And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of
Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.
- 43 Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the
Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength
and courage, no, not even from the beginning.
- 44 And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who
were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was
their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did
fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands,
yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did
pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their
arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

- 45 ואולם, מקור השׂראת הנפיים הִיה טוב יותר. כי הם לא נלחמו לשם מלוכה או מִשְׁרָה כי אם בעד בְּתִיָּהם וחרוּתָם, נְשִׁיָּהם וילְדֵיהֶם, ובעד כל אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, אֶכֶן, בְּעִבּוּר סֵדֶר עֲבֹדַת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם ובעֲבוּר כְּנִסְיָתָם.
- 46 והם עָשׂוּ אֵת אֲשֶׁר חֲשָׁבוּהוּ חֻבָּתָם לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם; כִּי יְהוָה אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם כְּאָמְרוֹ לְאַבְרָהָם: כָּל עוֹד אֵין בָּכֶם אֲשַׁמַּת הַפְּגִיעָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אוֹ הַשְּׁנִיָּה, אֵל לָכֶם לְמִסֵּר עַצְמְכֶם לְהָרֵג בְּיַד אֹיְבֵיכֶם.
- 47 ועוד זאת אָמַר יְהוָה, הֵגֶן תִּגְנוּ עַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיכֶם אֶף בְּשָׁפִיכַת דָּמִים. עַל כֵּן נִלְחָמוּ הַנְּפִיִּים בְּלִמְנִים, לְהִגֶּן עַל עַצְמָם וְעַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, עַל אֲדָמָתָם וְעַל אֶרְצָם, עַל זְכוּתֵיהֶם וְעַל דָּתָם.
- 48 וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אַנְשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִי אֵת עַז הַלְּמָנִים וְאֵת חֲמָתָם, הֵם כְּמַעֲט נִרְתְּעוּ וְנָסוּ מֵהֶם. ואולם מוֹרוֹנִי, בְּרִאשׁוֹתָם אֵת כּוֹנֵת אַנְשֵׁיוֹ, שָׁלַח אֲלֵיהֶם אֵת דְּבָרוֹ וְהַפִּיחַ רוּחַ בְּלִבָּם בְּרַעֲיוֹנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, עַל אִדּוֹת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְחִירוּתָם, הִיא הַחֲרוּת מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 49 אִזּוֹ פָּנוּ הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל הַלְּמָנִים וְקָרְאוּ פֹה אֶחָד אֶל יְהוָה לֵאלֹהֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן חִירוּתָם, חִירוּתָם מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- 50 והם הִחֲלוּ לַעֲמֹד בְּעַז בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים; וּבְעֵצָם שָׁעַת קְרִיאָתָם אֶל יְהוָה לְמַעַן חִירוּתָם, הִחֲלוּ הַלְּמָנִים לָנוֹס מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְנָסוּ עַד מִי צִידוֹן.
- 51 ואֵף כִּי הָיוּ הַלְּמָנִים רַבִּים, אֶכֶן, יוֹתֵר מִכְּפָלִים מִמֶּסְפַּר הַנְּפִיִּים, הֵם גָּרְשׁוּ, עַד כִּי נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחַד לְמַחְנֶה אֶחָד בְּבִקְעָה, עַל שְׂפַת נְהַר צִידוֹן.
- 52 וְכֹךָ כְּתָרוֹם חִילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי, מִשְׁתֵּי גְדוֹת הַנְּהַר, כִּי אַנְשֵׁי לְחִי הָיוּ מִמֶּזְרַח.
- 53 וְכִרְאוֹת אַנְשֵׁי זֶרַחֶמְנָה אֵת אַנְשֵׁי לְחִי בְּמִזְרַח נְהַר צִידוֹן, וְאֵת חִילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי בְּמַעֲרֵב הַנְּהַר, אֶכֶן, כִּי כְּתָרוֹם הַנְּפִיִּים, אֶחָתָם בְּהִלָּה נוֹרָאָה.
- 45 Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.
- 46 And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.
- 47 And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.
- 48 And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.
- 49 And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.
- 50 And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.
- 51 Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.
- 52 Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.
- 53 Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

- 54 Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.
- וְכִרְאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת פְּחָדָם, הוּא צִוָּה עַל אֲנָשָׁיו לְחַדֵּל מִשְׁפָּךְ דָּמָם.

44

מד

- 1 And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם חָדְלוּ מִהִלָּחֵם וּרְחִקוּ מֵהֶם. מָרְעַט. וְאָמַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל זֶרַחֶמְנָה; רְאֵה, זֶרַחֶמְנָה, אֵינָנו רֹצִים לְהִיּוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי דָמִים. הֵן יוֹדְעִים אַתָּם כִּי אַתָּם בְּיָדֵינוּ, אֲךָ אֵינָנו חֹפְצִים לְהָרֹג אֶתְכֶם.
- 2 Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.
- הֵן לֹא יָצֵאנוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּכֶם לְמַעַן נִשְׁגִּיג שְׁלֹטוֹן בְּשִׁפְכֵיכֶם דָּמְכֶם; אֵין גַּם חֹפְצֵנוּ לְהַכְנִיס אִישׁ תַּחַת עַל שִׁעְבּוֹד. הֵן רַק זֹאת סִבַּת צֵאתְכֶם עָלֵינוּ: זַעֲמָכֶם עָלֵינוּ מִפְּנֵי דִתְנוּ.
- 3 But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.
- וְעַתָּה הֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי עִמָּנוּ יְהוָה, וְכִי הוּא נִתַּנְכֶם בְּיָדֵינוּ. וְרוֹצוֹנִי הוּא כִּי תִבִּינוּ כִּי זֹאת נַעֲשֶׂתָה לָנוּ מִפְּנֵי דִתְנוּ וּמִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתְנוּ בְּמִשִּׁית. וְהֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי אֵין בְּיָדְכֶם לְאַבֵּד אֶת אֱמוּנָתְנוּ זֹאת.
- 4 Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.
- הֵנֶכֶם רוֹאִים כִּי זֹאת אֱמוּנַת אֱלֹהִים הַנִּכּוֹנָה; אֲכֹן, רְאִיתֶם כִּי אֱלֹהִים יִתְמַךְ בָּנוּ, וְיִשְׁמְרֵנוּ וְיִנְצְרֵנוּ כָּל עוֹד נִשְׁמַר אֱמוּנִים לוֹ וְלְאֱמוּנָתְנוּ וּלְדִתְנוּ; וְלֹעֹלָם לֹא יִתִּיר יְהוָה כִּי נִפְרַת בְּלָתִי אִם נִפְשַׁע וּנִכְחַשׁ בְּאֱמוּנָתְנוּ.
- 5 And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—
- וְעַתָּה, זֶרַחֶמְנָה, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶיכֶם בְּשֵׁם אֵל שַׁדַּי, אֲשֶׁר חֲזַק אֶת יָדֵנוּ לְגִבּוֹר עָלֵיכֶם, בְּשֵׁם אֱמוּנָתְנוּ וּדִתְנוּ, וְסִדֵּר עֲבוֹדַת קֹדְשֵׁנוּ וּכְנִסְיָנוּ, וּבְשֵׁם כָּל־כֹּלֶת נְשׁוֹתֵינוּ וְיָלְדֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר הִיא חֹבְתָנוּ הַקְּדוּשָׁה, וּבְשֵׁם הַחֲרוּת הַקּוֹשֶׁרֶת אוֹתָנוּ אֶל אֲדָמָתְנוּ וְאֶל אֶרְצֵנוּ; אֲכֹן, בְּשֵׁם שְׁמִירַת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַקְּדוֹשׁ, אֲשֶׁר הִוּדוֹת לוֹ כָּל אֲשֵׁרֵנוּ, וּבְשֵׁם כָּל הַיָּקָר לָנוּ;
- 6 Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.
- וְאֵין זֶה הַכֹּל, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶיכֶם בְּשֵׁם כָּל תְּשׁוּבָתֵיכֶם לְחַיּוֹת כִּי תִמְסְרוּ לָנוּ אֶת כָּל־נִשְׁקֵיכֶם; אֲזִי לֹא נִבְקֹשׁ אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם. כִּי אִם תֵּלְכוּ לְדַרְכְּכֶם וְלֹא תִשׁוּבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ, נָתַן נָתַן לָכֶם אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם לְשָׁלָל.
- 7 And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will
- וְאִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵן, בְּיָדֵינוּ אַתָּם, וְאֲנִי אֶצְוֶה אֶת אֲנָשָׁי כִּי יִתְנַפְּלוּ עָלֵיכֶם וְיִטְּלוּ בְּגוֹפְכֶם פְּצָעֵי מוֹת לְהַכְחִידְכֶם. אֲזִי נִרְאָה לָמִי הַשְׁלֹטוֹן

על העם הזה; אז נראה מי יהיו המשעבדים.

see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

וכשמע זרעהמנה את הדברים האלה, הוא קרב ונתן את חרבו ואת פגיונו ואת קשתו לידי מורוני ואמר אליו: הנה כלי נשקנו. נמסרם לכם, אך איננו מוכנים להשבע לכם שבועה אשר יודעים אנחנו כי נפר אותה, אנחנו ובנינו. קח את נשקנו ותן לנו לצאת אל היערות. ואם לא ישר זה בעיניך, נשא שנית את חרבותינו ונאבד או נכבש.

8 And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

אין אנחנו בני אמונתך. איננו מאמינים כי אלהים נתננו בידיכם, אלא מאמינים אנחנו כי ערמתכם שמרתכם מחרבותינו. הנה, שריוני החזה ומגניכם, הם אשר שמרוכם.

9 Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

וככלות זרעהמנה לומר את הדברים האלה, השיבו מורוני את החרב ואת כלי הנשק אשר קבל ואמר: הנה, שום נשים קץ למריבה.

10 And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

לא אוכל לחזור בי מדברי אשר דברתי. לכן, חי יהוה כי לא תצאו מפה כי אם בשבועה כי לא תשובו להלחם בנו. ועתה, יען אשר בידנו אתם, נגיר את דמכם לארץ, או תכנעו לתנאים אשר הצעתים.

11 Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

וכאמר מורוני את הדברים האלה, תפש זרעהמנה את חרבו, ובחמתו על מורוני, פרץ קדימה להרגו; אך כהניפו את חרבו, והנה אחד מחילי מורוני הכה אותה ארצה ונצבה נשבר; והוא אף הלם בזרעהמנה והתיו את קרקפתו ארצה. וזרעהמנה נסוג מפניהם אל בין חיליו.

12 And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

והחיל אשר עמד בקרבנו, והוא אשר הסיר במכתו את קרקפת זרעהמנה, הרים את הקרקפת מן האדמה בהחזיקו בשערוֹתיה ותקע אותה בקצה חרבו והניפה לעמת הלמנים ואמר אליהם בקול גדול:

13 And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

פקרקפת הזאת אשר נפלה ארצה, קרקפת מנהיגכם, כן תפלו אתם ארצה אם לא תמסרו את כלי נשקכם, ותצאו בבִּרית שלום.

14 Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

ורבים אשר שמעו את הדברים האלה וראו את הקרקפת התקועה בקצה החרב, הכו

15 Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came

- בַּפֶּחַד. וְרַבִּים נָגְשׁוּ וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם
לְרַגְלֵי מוֹרוֹנִי וּבָאוּ בְּבְרִית שְׁלוֹם. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר
בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, הִתְּרוּ לְצֵאתָא אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- 16 Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.
- וְזִרְעֶחֱמָנָה בַּחֲמָתוֹ הֶעָזָה עוֹרֵר אֶת שְׂאֲרֵית
חֵילָיו לְכַעַס עַל הַנְּפִיִּים וּלְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם
בְּמִשְׁנָה כָּח.
- 17 And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי כָעַס עַל עֲקֻשׁוֹת הַלָּמָנִים. וְלָכֵן
צִוָּה עַל אֲנָשָׁיו לְהִתְנַפֵּל עֲלֵיהֶם וּלְהָרְגֵם.
וְהֵם הֵחֵלוּ לְהָרְגֵם; וְהַלָּמָנִים נִלְחָמוּ
בְּחִרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְכֹחָם.
- 18 But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.
- וְהִנֵּה, מֵעֲרֻמֵּי עוֹרָם וְרֹאשֵׁיהֶם הַמְּגֻלִּים הָיוּ
חֲשׂוּפִים לְפִגְיַעַת חֲרָבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים הַחֲדוֹת; אַכֵּן
הֵם דָּקְרוּ וְהָכּוּ. וְנָפְלוּ כְּהֶרֶף עֵין לִפְנֵי חֲרָבוֹת
הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהֵם הִכְרַעוּ אֶרְצָה, כְּדַבֵּר הַנְּבוּאָה
אֲשֶׁר יָצָא מִפִּי חֵיל מוֹרוֹנִי.
- 19 Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.
- וּכְרָאוֹת זִרְעֶחֱמָנָה כִּי הֵם כֻּלָּם עַל סֵף הַכָּלִיוֹן,
הוּא קָרָא אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי בְּחִזְקָה וְאָמַר כִּי הוּא
וְאֲנָשָׁיו יָבוֹאוּ בְּבְרִית עִם הַנְּפִיִּים, אִם יַחֲסוּ
עַל חַיֵּי שְׂאֲרֵיהֶם, וְכִי לֹעוֹלָם לֹא יוֹסִיפוּ לְצֵאתָא
עֲלֵיהֶם לְמִלְחָמָה.
- 20 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.
- אֲזַי צִוָּה מוֹרוֹנִי לְחַדֵּל שְׁנִית מִן הַהֶרֶג
בְּאֲנָשִׁים. וְהוּא לָקַח אֶת כָּלִי הַנֶּשֶׁק מֵאֶת
הַלָּמָנִים; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ עִמּוֹ בְּבְרִית שְׁלוֹם
הִתְּרוּ לָהֶם לְצֵאתָא אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- 21 Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.
- וּמִסְפַּר הַרוּגֵיהֶם לֹא נִמְנָה כִּי רַב הָיָה. אַכֵּן,
עֲצוּם וָרַב הָיָה מִסְפַּר הַהָרוּגִים, הֵן מִן הַנְּפִיִּים
וְהֵן מִן הַלָּמָנִים.
- 22 And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.
- וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת מֵתֵיהֶם אֶל מֵי צִידוֹן; וְהֵם
נִשְׂאוּ הַלָּאָה מִשָּׁם וְנִקְבְּרוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם.
- 23 And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.
- וְחֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים, צָבָא מוֹרוֹנִי, שָׁבוּ אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם
וְאֶל אֲדָמָתָם.
- 24 And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.
- כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִּי. וְכֹה תָמוּ כְּתָבֵי עֲלָמָא,
הַכְּתוּבִים עַל לוחות נֶפִּי.

ספור מעשי עם נְפִי, מלחמותיהם ומחלוקותיהם בימי הילמן, על פי כתבי הזכרון אשר להילמן. (בערך 73-57 לפני הספירה) נכלל בפרקים מה-סב.

The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman. (About 73-57 B.C.) Comprising chapters 45-62.

מה

45

בימים ההם היתה לעם נְפִי שמחה רבה, כי שוב הצילם יהוה מידי אויביהם; על כן הם הודו ליהוה אלהיהם; אכן, הם הרבו לצום ולהתפלל ועבדו את אלהים בשמחה רבה.

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

והיה בשנת תשע עשרה לשלטון השופטים בעם נְפִי, בא עלמא אל הילמן בנו ואמר אליו: התאמין בדברים אשר אמרתי אליך על אודות כתבי הזכרון ההם אשר נשמרו?

2 And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

ואמר אליו הילמן: אכן, אני מאמין.

3 And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

ואמר אליו עלמא שנית: התאמין בישוע המשיח, אשר יבוא?

4 And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

והוא אמר: אכן, אני מאמין בכל הדברים אשר דברת.

5 And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

ועלמא הוסיף לומר אליו: התשמר את מצוותי?

6 And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

והוא אמר: כן, אשמר את מצוותיך בכל לבי.

7 And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

ואמר אליו עלמא: ברוך אתה, ויהוה יצליחך בארץ הזאת.

8 Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

והנה, יש לי אליך דבר נבואה, אך אל לך להודיעו לאיש. אכן, אל יודע את אשר אנבא באזניך עד אשר יתקיים. לכן, כתב את הדברים אשר אמר.

9 But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

ואלה הדברים: הנני חוזה, כפי רוח ההתגלות אשר בי, כי העם הזה, הנפיים, ידרדו אל חסר אמונה כעבר ארבע מאות שנה מעת התגלות ישוע המשיח לפניהם.

10 And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

ובימים ההם יראו הם מלחמות ודבר, רעב ושפיכות דמים עד אשר יכחד עם נְפִי כליל.

11 Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

- 12 וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי שִׁקְיַעְתֶּם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּפִילְתֶּם
אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ וְזִמָּה וְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת; אֲכֹן,
אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָךְ, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר יִחַסְאוּ נֶגֶד אֹר וְדַעַת
כֹּה גְדוֹלִים, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אִף דּוֹר רְבִיעִי לֹא
יִחַלֵּף כָּלֹ בְטָרִם יָבֹא הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- 13 And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh
that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered
among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the
people of Nephi.
- 14 But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and
dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall
become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the
disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until
they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy
shall be fulfilled.
- 15 And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to
Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed
the earth for the righteous' sake.
- 16 And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land,
yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto
destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have
said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon
the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of
allowance.
- 17 And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea,
all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.
- 18 And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla,
as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never
heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.
- 19 Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went
abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by
the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith
the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also
received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we
know nothing concerning his death and burial.
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי שִׁקְיַעְתֶּם בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּפִילְתֶּם
אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ וְזִמָּה וְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת; אֲכֹן,
אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָךְ, יֵעָן אֲשֶׁר יִחַסְאוּ נֶגֶד אֹר וְדַעַת
כֹּה גְדוֹלִים, מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אִף דּוֹר רְבִיעִי לֹא
יִחַלֵּף כָּלֹ בְטָרִם יָבֹא הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- וּבְבֹא הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא תָּבֹא עַד מִהֲרָה
הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יִחַדְלוּ הַנִּמְנָמִים עִתָּה עִם עַם
נִפִי, אוֹ עִם זֶרַעֲם, לְהִמָּנוֹת עִם עַם נִפִי.
- וְכָל הַנִּשְׁאָר, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאבֵד בַּיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל
וְהַנּוֹרָא הַהוּא, יִמָּנֶה עִם הַלָּמָנִים וְיִהְיֶה
כְּמוֹהֶם. רַק מַעֲשִׂים יִתְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר יִקְרְאוּ
תַּלְמִידֵי יְהוָה; וְהַלָּמָנִים רְדוּף יִרְדְּפוּם עַד
אֲשֶׁר יִמָּחוּ. הִנֵּה, קוֹם תִּקּוּם הַנְּבוּאָה הַזֹּאת
מִפְּנֵי הָעוֹן.
- וּכְכֹלֹת עֲלָמָא לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֶל הֵילְמָן, הוּא בֵּרַךְ אוֹתוֹ וְכֹן אֶת שְׂאֵר בָּנָיו;
וְהוּא אִף בֵּרַךְ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה לְמַעַן הַצַּדִּיקִים.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֶרְוָה
תִּהְיֶה הָאֶרֶץ, הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְכָל אָמָה,
מִשְׁפָּחָה, לְשׁוֹן וְעַם אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ רָשָׁעָה;
לְכָלֶּיהָ יִהְיוּ בְּמַלְאֵת סָאֲתָם; כִּי בְּאֲשֶׁר אִמְרָתִי
כֵּן יִהְיֶה; כִּי זֹאת קָלַלֹת אֱלֹהִים וּבִרְכָתוֹ עַל
הָאֶרֶץ, כִּי לֹא יוּכַל יְהוָה לְהִתִּיר כָּל חַטָּא,
אִף בְּוִתּוֹר הַקָּל בְּיוֹתֵר.
- וְכֵאמֹר עֲלָמָא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא בֵּרַךְ
אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יַעֲמְדוּ אֵיתָנִים
בְּאַמוּנָתָם מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְאַיִלָּךְ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲשׂוֹת עֲלָמָא אֶת זֹאת, הוּא יָצָא
מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, וְנִרְאָה כְּאֵלֵי הַלֵּךְ אֶל אֶרֶץ
מֶלֶךְ. וְאִישׁ לֹא שָׁמַע עוֹד עַל אוֹדוֹתָיו, וְאִין
אֲנַחְנוּ יוֹדְעִים דְּבַר עַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל קְבוּרָתוֹ.
- וְרַק זֹאת נִדַּע: צָדִיק הָיָה, וְהִשְׁמוּעָה יָצְאָה
בְּכְנִסְיָה כִּי הָרוּחַ לְקַחְתָּהוּ מֵעֵלָה, אוֹ כִּי
נִקְבֵּר, כְּמֹשֶׁה, בְּיַד יְהוָה. וְהִנֵּה, כְּתָבִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ
אוֹמְרִים כִּי יְהוָה לָקַח אֶת מֹשֶׁה אֵלָיו; וְאֲנַחְנוּ
מִשְׁעָרִים כִּי אִף אֶת עֲלָמָא קָבַל אֵלָיו בְּרוּחוֹ.
לְכֹן, מִפְּנֵי זֹאת, אִינְנוּ יוֹדְעִים מֵאוּמָה עַל
מוֹתוֹ וְעַל קְבוּרָתוֹ.

- 20 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.
- 21 For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.
- 22 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.
- 23 And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;
- 24 But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת תְּשַׁע עָשָׂרָה לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, יָצָא הֵילְמָן אֶל הָעָם לְהַשְׁמִיעֵם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- כִּי מִפְּנֵי מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם בְּלָמָנִים, וּמִפְּנֵי מַחְלֻקוֹת קְטָנוֹת מְרֻבּוֹת וְהַפְּרָעוֹת בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, הָיָה צָרָה לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶבם וּלְקַבֵּעַ סְדָרִים בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיָהּ.
- לָכֵן יָצְאוּ הֵילְמָן וְאֶחָיו לִישָׁד מִחֻדָּשׁ אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָהּ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, בְּכָל עִיר אֲשֶׁר בְּרַחְבֵּי כָּל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלַת עַם נְפִי. וְהֵם מָנוּ כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים בְּכָל הַכְּנִסְיֹת בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר מָנוּ הֵילְמָן וְאֶחָיו כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים לְכְּנִסְיֹת, פָּרְצָה מְרִיבָה בְּעַם וְהֵם לֹא שָׁתוּ לִבָּם לְדַבְּרֵי הֵילְמָן וְאֶחָיו;
- כִּי הֵם הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ וְהִתְגָּאוּ בְּלִבָּם עַל גְּדֹל עֲשָׂרָם הָעָצוֹם; אַכֵּן, הֵם הָיוּ עֹשִׂירִים בְּעֵינֵיהֶם וְלֹא שָׁתוּ לִבָּם לְדַבְּרֵי הֵילְמָן וְאֶחָיו לָלֶכֶת בְּדֶרֶךְ מִישָׁרִים לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.

מו

46

- 1 And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.
- 2 And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, insomuch that they were determined to slay them.
- 3 Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.
- 4 And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.
- 5 And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר סָרְבוּ לִשְׁמָע לְדַבְּרֵי הֵילְמָן וְאֶחָיו נֶאֱסָפוּ יַחְדָּו עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם.
- וְהִנֵּה, כֹּה רַב הָיָה קִצְפָּם עַד כִּי בִקְשׁוּ לְהָרֹגם.
- וְרֹאשׁ הָרוֹגְזִים עַל בְּנֵי עַמָּם הָיָה אִישׁ גָּדוֹל וְחֹזֶק, וְשֵׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עַמְלִיקְיָהּ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָהּ חָפֵץ לִהְיוֹת מֶלֶךְ; וְהַמְתַּקּוֹמָמִים בִּקְשׁוּ אִף הֵם כִּי הוּא יִהְיֶה מֶלֶכָם. רַבָּם הָיוּ שׁוֹפְטֵי הָאֶרֶץ הַנְּמוּכִים וְהֵם בִּקְשׁוּ לְיָבוֹת בִּשְׂרָרָה.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָהּ הוֹלִיךְ אוֹתָם בְּדַבְּרֵי חֲלָקוֹת, כִּי אִם יִתְמַכּוּ בּוֹ וְיִשְׁמְעוּהוּ מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא יַפְקִידֵם כְּמוֹשָׁלִים בְּעַם.

- 6 Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.
- 7 And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.
- 8 Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.
- 9 Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.
- 10 Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning devices and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.
- 11 And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.
- 12 And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.
- 13 And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breastplate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—
- 14 For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.
- כֹּה הָיוּ עַל יְדֵי עֲמִלִּיקָיָה אֶל מַחְלָקָה, לְמִרּוֹת הַטֶּפֶת הַיִּלְמָן וְאֶחָיו; אָכֵן, עַל אִף דְּאֶגְנָתָם הַמְרִבָּה לְכִנְסִיָּה, כִּי הֵם הָיוּ כֹהֲנִים גְּדוֹלִים בָּהּ.
- וְרַבִּים הָיוּ בְּכִנְסִיָּה אֲשֶׁר הָאֲמִינִי בְּדִבְרֵי הַחֲלָקוֹת אֲשֶׁר מִפִּי עֲמִלִּיקָיָה; לָכֵן הֵם נִפְרְדוּ גַם מִן הַכִּנְסִיָּה. וְכֹה הָיוּ עֲנִינֵי עַם נְפִי רוֹפְפִים וּמִסְכָּנִים עַד מָאֹד, עַל אִף נִצְחוֹנָם הַגָּדוֹל עַל הַלְּמָנִים וְרַב שִׂמְחָתָם עַל הַצִּלָּתָם בְּיַד יְהוָה.
- וְכֹה רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ מִה מְהִירִים בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְשַׁכַּח אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, וְמִה מְהִירִים הֵם לַעֲשׂוֹת עֲוֹן וְלִסּוֹר מִדֶּרֶךְ הַיֹּשֶׁר בְּהִנְהַגַּת הַשָּׁטָן.
- וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ מִה גְּדוֹלָה הַרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר יָכוֹל אִישׁ רָשָׁע מְרָשָׁע לְהִבְאִי לְבַדּוֹ אֶל קֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- אָכֵן, רֹאִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי עֲמִלִּיקָיָה, בְּהִיוֹתוֹ אִישׁ תַּחְבּוּלוֹת, אִישׁ עֲרָמָה וְחִנְפָּה, הָשָׂה לְבַב רַבִּים אֶל מַעֲשֵׂי רָשָׁע, כִּי בִקֵּשׁ הוּא לְאַבֵּד אֶת כִּנְסִיַּת אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַחְרִיב אֶת יְסוֹד הַחֲרוּת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים, הִיא הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֱלֹהִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ לְמַעַן הַצְדִּיקִים.
- וְהִיָּה כְשֶׁמַּעַם מוֹרוֹנִי, הַמְּפַקֵּד הָעֲלִיוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְחִילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים, עַל הַמְרִיבוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא כָּעַס עַל עֲמִלִּיקָיָה.
- וְהוּא קָרַע אֶת כְּתָנָתוֹ, וְלָקַח קָרַע מִמֶּנָּה וְכָתַב עָלָיו: לְזִכְרוֹן אֱלֹהֵינוּ וְדִתָּנוּ, חֲרוּתָנוּ וּשְׁלוֹמָנוּ, נָשִׁינוּ וְיִלְדֵינוּ; וְהוּא הִצְמִיד אֶת הַקָּרַע אֶל קֶצֶה מוֹט.
- וְהוּא חָבַשׁ אֶת שָׁרְיוֹן רִאשׁוֹ וְאֶת שָׁרְיוֹן חֲזֵהוּ וְאֶת מְגִנָּיו, וְחָגַר אֶת נִשְׁקוֹ עַל מִתְּנָיו; וְהוּא לָקַח אֶת הַמוֹט אֲשֶׁר בְּרִאשׁוֹ נָשָׂא קָרַע כְּתָנָתוֹ, וְלוֹ קָרָא נֶס הַחֲרוּת; וְהוּא הִשְׁתַּחֲוָה אַרְצָה וְהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּרַב עֶזָּא אֶל אֱלֹהָיו כִּי יִשְׁלַח אֶת בְּרַכַּת הַחֲרוּת עַל עַמִּיתָיו, כָּל עוֹד נִשְׁאָרָת אַגְדַּת מְשִׁיחִיִּים לְנַחֵל אֶת הָאֶרֶץ.
- כִּי כֵךְ נִקְרָאוּ כָּל מֵאֲמִינֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ הַכִּנְסִים, חֲבֵרֵי כִנְסִיַּת אֱלֹהִים, בְּפִי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר לֹא חֲבָרוּ לְכִנְסִיָּה.

- 15 וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר חָבְרוּ לְכִנְסִיָּה הָיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים; אָכֵן, כָּל הַמֵּאֱמִינִים בַּמָּשִׁיחַ בְּכִנּוּת קִבְּלוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, בַּחֲפֶז לֵב, אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אוֹ אֶת הַשֵּׁם מָשִׁיחִיִּים, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאוּ, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בַּמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא.
- 16 לָכֵן הִתְפַּלֵּל מוֹרוֹנִי בַּעֲת הַהִיא כִּי עָנָן הַמָּשִׁיחִיִּים וְחֵירוּת הָאָרֶץ יִמָּצֵא חֵן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַךְ אֶת לְבוֹ בַּתְּפִלָּה לְאֱלֹהִים, הוּא כָּנָה אֶת כָּל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם לָאָרֶץ חֲרִבָּה, אָכֵן, אֶת כָּל אָרֶץ הַנִּפְיִים, אֲשֶׁר מִצָּפוֹן וְאֲשֶׁר מִדְּרוֹם, אָרֶץ הַבְּחִירָה וְאָרֶץ חֵירוּת.
- 18 וְהוּא אָמַר: אָכֵן, לֹא יִתֵּר אֱלֹהִים כִּי אֲנַחְנוּ, אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹזוּנוּ מִפְּנֵי שְׂאֲתָנוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, נִרְמָס וְנִשְׁמָד כִּי אִם בְּהִסָּבְנוּ זֹאת עָלֵינוּ בַּפִּשְׁעֵינוּ.
- 19 וְכַאֲמֹר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָצָא מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל הָעָם, וְהוּא מְנוּפֵף אֶת קֶרַע בִּתְּנֻתוֹ מֵעֵלָּה, לְמַעַן יֵרְאוּ הַכָּל אֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב עָלָיו, וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל לֵאמֹר:
- 20 בְּהוֹלֵךְ, וְהוֹסֵעַ יִמָּנֵן עַל הָאָרֶץ, לְמַעַן יִבְרַכְהוּ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 21 וְהָיָה בְּהִשְׁמִיעַ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהָיָה נִהְרֵי הָאֲנָשִׁים יָחִידוּ חֲגוּרִים בְּנִשְׁקָם עַל מִתְּנֵיהֶם, וְהָיוּ קוֹרְעִים אֶת בְּגִדֵיהֶם, לְאוֹת, וְלִבְרִית, כִּי לֹא יַעֲזֹבוּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם; וּבִלְשׁוֹן אַחֵר: אִם יִפְּרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ יִפְשְׁעוּ, וְיִבּוֹשׁוּ לְשֵׂאת עָלֵיהֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, קְרוֹעַ יִקְרָעֻם יְהוָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר קָרְעוּ הֵם אֶת בְּגִדֵיהֶם.
- 22 וְזֹאת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ; וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶת בְּגִדֵיהֶם לְרַגְלֵי מוֹרוֹנִי וְאָמְרוּ: בְּרִיתָנוּ עִם אֱלֹהֵינוּ כִּי נֵאֱבֹד כְּאֶחָיו בְּאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, אִם נִשְׁקַע בַּעֲבֻרוֹת; אָכֵן, אִם פָּשְׁעוּ נִפְשָׁע זָכָאִי הוּא לְהִשְׁלִיכֵנוּ לְרַגְלֵי אוֹיְבֵינוּ, כְּאֲשֶׁר הִשְׁלַכְנוּ אֲנַחְנוּ אֶת בְּגִדֵינוּ לְרַגְלֵי הַלְּרִמָּס.
- 15 And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.
- 16 And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.
- 17 And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.
- 18 And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.
- 19 And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:
- 20 Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.
- 21 And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.
- 22 Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

- 23 ואמר מורוני אליהם: הנה, שארית בית יעקב אנחנו, אכן, שריד לזרע יוסף, אשר כתנתו נקרעה בידי אחיו לקרעים רבים; ועתה, הבה נזכרה לשמר את מצוות אלהים, פן יקרעו אחינו את כתנותינו, ואותנו ישליכו אל בית הכלא, או ימכרונו או יהרגונו.
- 24 הבה ננצר את חרותנו כשארית יוסף; הבה נזכר את דברי יעקב לפני מותו; הן הוא ראה כי שריד מכתנת יוסף נותר בלא פגע. וכה אמר: כהשמר שארית כתנת בני, כן תשמר שארית זרע בני ביד אלהים, ואליה תלקח; בעוד יאבד יתר זרע יוסף, כי יתר כתנתו.
- 25 ועל זאת תעצב נפשי; אך יש לנפשי שמחה בבני, מפני שריד זרעו אשר ילקח אל אלהים.
- 26 הנה, זה היה לשון יעקב.
- 27 ומי יודע אם שארית זרע יוסף, אשר תכלה ככתנתו, איננה כי אם אלה אשר נפלגו מעמנו? ואף בנו יהיה הדבר, אם לא נעמד איתנים באמונת המשיח.
- 28 ואחר אשר אמר מורוני את הדברים האלה, הוא יצא לדרך, ואף שלח אחרים אל כל אזורי הארץ אשר פשו בהם מחלוקות, וקבץ את כל האנשים אשר חפצו לשמר על חרותם, לעמוד נגד עמליקיה והנפלים, אשר נקראו עמליקיים.
- 29 וכראות עמליקיה כי רב מספר אנשי מורוני מאנשיו, וכראותו כי נפל ספק בלב אנשיו אם יש צדק בדרךם, הוא לקח, בחששו כי תאבד תוחלתו, את אלה מאנשיו אשר חפצו ללכת עמו, ויצא אל ארץ נפי.
- 30 ומורוני סבר כי לא יטב אשר ללמנים יהיה כח נוסף; לכן הוא בקש לחסם את אנשי עמליקיה, או לתפושם ולהשיבם לארצם ולהמית את עמליקיה; ועו אשר ידע כי זומם עמליקיה לעורר את זעם הלמנים על הנפיים, וכי חפצו להוציאם למלחמה עליהם; והוא ידע כי עמליקיה יעשה כן, למען קיום תכליתו.
- 23 Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.
- 24 Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.
- 25 Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.
- 26 Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.
- 27 And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.
- 28 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.
- 29 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.
- 30 Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

- 31 על כן ראה מורוני לכוון לקחת את חילוֹתיו אשר נאספו והגרו כלי נשקם ובאו בברית לשמור את השלום; אכן, הוא לקח את צבאו ואת אהליהם וצעד אל היערות לנתק שם את נתיב עמליקיה.
- 32 והוא עשה כחפצו, ויצא אל היערות, והקדים את צבא עמליקיה.
- 33 ועמליקיה ברח עם מתי מעט מאנשיו, ושאריתם נמסרו לידי מורוני והושבו אל ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 34 ולמורוני, אשר מנה למשרתו על ידי השופטים העליונים ועל ידי קול העם, היתה שררה לעשות כחפצו בחילות הנפיים, לקים ולהפעיל את סמכותו עליהם.
- 35 והיה כי כל איש מן העמליקיים, אשר לא בא בברית לתמוך בענין החרות, למען קיום ממשל חפשי, הומת בפקדתו. אך רק מעטים היו אשר התנכרו לברית החרות.
- 36 ומורוני צוה להניף את נס החרות על כל מגדלי הארץ אשר היא נחלת הנפיים; כה קבע מורוני את דגל החרות בקרב הנפיים.
- 37 ושב השלום אל הארץ. והארץ שקטה כמעט עד אחרית שנת תשע עשרה לשלטון השופטים.
- 38 ואף הילמן והכהנים הגדולים קימו את הסדר בתוך הכנסייה. אכן, במשך ארבע שנים היו השלום והשמחה שורים בכנסייה.
- 39 בימים ההם מתו רבים באמונה שלמה כי נשמותיהם נגאלות על ידי האדון ישוע המשיח. כך הם יצאו בשמחה מן העולם הזה.
- 40 והיו אשר מתו מקדחת, אשר נפוצה מאד בארץ בעונות מסוימות בשנה; אך לא היו אלה רבים, מפני הסגלות המצוינות של צמחים ושרשים רבים אשר הכין אלהים להסיר את מקור המחלות, אשר באו על האנשים בנסבות מזג האוויר.
- Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.
- And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.
- And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.
- Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power to do according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.
- And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.
- And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.
- And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.
- And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.
- And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.
- And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

- 41 But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.
- וְרַבִּים מִתּוֹ בְּשִׁיבָה טוֹבָה; וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
מִתּוֹ בְּהֵיוֹתָם מֵאֲמִינֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, שְׂמִיחִים בּוֹ,
עַל פִּי אֲמוֹנָתָנוּ.

47

מז

- 1 Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he took those who went with him, and went up into the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.
- וְעַתָּה נָשׁוּב וְנִסְפֹּר בְּסִפְרֵנוּ זְכוֹנוֹתֵינוּ עַל
עַמְלִיקִיָּה וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּרְחוּ עִמּוֹ אֶל
הַיְעֵרוֹת. הִנֵּה, הוּא לָקַח אֶת הַהוֹלְכִים עִמּוֹ
וְעָלָה אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי, אֶל הַלְּמָנִיתִים. וְהוּא עוֹרֵר
אֶת זֶעַם הַלְּמָנִיתִים עַל עַם נָפִי, עַד כִּי שָׁלַח
מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים הוֹדְעָה בְּכָל רִחְבֵּי אֶרְצוֹ,
בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַמּוֹ, לְהִתְקַבֵּץ וּלְצִאת שְׁנִית
לְקֶרֶב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 2 And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandment of the king.
- וְהָיָה כִּהְגִּיעַ הַקְּרִיאָה אֵלֵיהֶם, הֵם יָרְאוּ מְאֹד;
אֲכֹן, הֵם פָּחְדוּ לְהִכְעִיס אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאִף פָּחְדוּ
לְצִאת לְקֶרֶב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, פֶּן יִאבְּדוּ. וְהֵם
סָרְבוּ לְצִיָּת לְפָקֶדֶת מֶלֶכָם; אֲכֹן, רַבִּים
לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לְקְרִיאָה.
- 3 And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.
- וּמֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִיתִים קָצַף עַל כִּי הִמְרוּ אֶת פִּיו; וְהוּא
הִפְקִיד אֶת חֶלֶק צָבָאוֹ אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַע לְמִשְׁמַעְתּוֹ
בְּיַד עַמְלִיקִיָּה וְצִוָּה עָלָיו לְצִאת וּלְאָכֹף
עֲלֵיהֶם לְצִאת לְמִלְחָמָה.
- 4 Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.
- וְהִנֵּה, זֶה הָיָה חֲפֵץ עַמְלִיקִיָּה, כִּי בְּעֶרְמָתוֹ
לְבַצֵּעַ רָעָה הוּא זָמַם בְּלִבּוֹ לְהַסִּיר אֶת מֶלֶךְ
הַלְּמָנִיתִים מִכִּסְאוֹ.
- 5 And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.
- וְעַתָּה הוּא הָיָה לְמִפְקֵד חֶלֶק הַלְּמָנִיתִים אֲשֶׁר
תָּמְדוּ בְּמֶלֶךְ; וְהוּא בָקַשׁ לְמִצָּא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי אֵלֶּה
אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִשְׁמָעוּ לוֹ. עַל כֵּן הוּא יָצָא אֶל הַמָּקוֹם
אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא עוֹנִידָה, כִּי שָׁמָּה בָּרְחוּ כָּל
הַלְּמָנִיתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר בְּגִלּוֹתָם כִּי הֵצֵבָא קֶרֶב וּבָא,
חָשְׁבוּ כִּי לְהַשְׁמִידָם הוּא בָּא. לָכֵן נִמְלְטוּ אֶל
עוֹנִידָה, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ הָיָה בֵּית הַנֶּשֶׁק.
- 6 And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.
- וְהֵם מָנוּ עָלֵיהֶם מֶלֶךְ וּמְנַהִיג, כִּי הָחִלְטוּ
הַחֲלָטָה חֲרוּצָה, כִּי לֹא יֵאָלְצוּ לְצִאת
לְמִלְחָמָה בְּנְפִיִּים.
- 7 And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.
- וְהֵם הִתְקַבְּצוּ בְּרֹאשׁ הָהָר הַנִּקְרָא אַנְטִיפָס
וְעָעְרְכוּ לְקֶרֶב.

- 8 Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.
- 9 And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.
- 10 And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.
- 11 And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.
- 13 And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him, Amalickiah, a second leader over the whole army.
- 14 And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.
- 15 And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they plead with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.
- 16 And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.
- אִךְ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ לֹא הִתְכַּוֵּן לְהִכָּנֵס עִמָּהֶם
בְּקִרְבָּם כְּפִקְדַת הַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּי כוֹנֵתוֹ הָיְתָה לְמַצֵּא
חֵן בְּעֵינֵי חֵילוֹת הַלָּמָנִיתִים, לְמַעַן יַעֲמִד בְּרֹאשׁוֹ,
וּבְהִסְרֹוֹ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִכִּסְאוֹ יִתְפֹּשׁ לְעַצְמוֹ
אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה.
- וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת חֵילוֹ לָנִטּוֹת אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם
בְּעֵמֶק הַקָּרוֹב אֶל הַר אַנְטִיפָס.
- וּכְרִדְתָּ הַלַּיְלָה הוּא שָׁלַח מִשְׁלַחַת חֲרָשׁ
אֶל הַר אַנְטִיפָס, וּבִקֵּשׁ אֶת מְנַהִיג הַחֵיל אֲשֶׁר
עַל הָהָר, אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמוֹ לְחוֹנְתִּי, לָרֶדֶת אֶל
רִגְלֵי הָהָר, כִּי חָפֵץ לְדַבֵּר אֵלָיו.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל לְחוֹנְתִּי אֶת דְּבַר הַשְּׁלִיחִים,
הוּא לֹא הֵעִז לָרֶדֶת אֶל רִגְלֵי הָהָר וְעֲמִלִיקְיָהּ
שָׁלַח אֶת אַנְשָׁיו אֵלָיו שֵׁנִית וּבִקֵּשׁוֹ לָרֶדֶת;
אִךְ לְחוֹנְתִּי לֹא שָׁעָה לְבִקְשָׁתוֹ. וְעֲמִלִיקְיָהּ
שָׁלַח אֵלָיו בְּשִׁלִּישִׁית.
- וְהָיָה כִּבְרָאוֹת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ כִּי לֹא יוֹכַל לְפָתוֹת
אֶת לְחוֹנְתִּי לָרֶדֶת מִן הָהָר, הוּא עָלָה שָׁמָּה
עַצְמוֹ, אֶל קִרְבַּת מַחֲנֵה לְחוֹנְתִּי, וְשָׁלַח אֵלָיו
אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּרִבְעִית לְבִקְשָׁתוֹ לָרֶדֶת, הוּא
וְשׁוֹמְרָיו עִמּוֹ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר רָדָת לְחוֹנְתִּי עִם שׁוֹמְרָיו אֶל
עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ, בִּקֵּשׁוֹ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ לָרֶדֶת עִם צָבָאוֹ
בְּעוֹד לַיְלָה וּלְהַקִּיף אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם
הַפְּקִידוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ, הַחוֹנִים שָׁם; וְאָמַר כִּי יִמְסְרוּ
בְּיַד לְחוֹנְתִּי, אִם יִמְנֶהוּ, אֶת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ, מִשְׁנָה
עַל כָּל הַצָּבָא.
- אִז יָרַד לְחוֹנְתִּי עִם אַנְשָׁיו וְהֵם הִקיפוּ אֶת
אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ. וּבִטְרָם יַעֲזֹרוּ אֲנָשֵׁי עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ
בְּשַׁחַר, הִקיפּוּם חֵילוֹת לְחוֹנְתִּי.
- וּבְרֹאוֹתָם כִּי מִקְפִּים הֵם, בִּקֵּשׁוֹ אַנְשָׁיו
אֶת עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ כִּי יִתִּיר לָהֶם לְהִתְחַבֵּר עִם
בְּנֵי עַמָּם, לְמַנַּע אֶת הַכְּחָדָתָם. וְהִנֵּה,
אִף זֶה הָיָה חָפֵץ עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ.
- כֹּה מָסַר עֲמִלִיקְיָהּ אֶת אַנְשָׁיו, בְּהַפּוֹךְ לְפִקְדַת
הַמֶּלֶךְ. הִנֵּה, זֶה הָיָה חָפֵצוֹ, לְמַעַן יִפְּיֵק אֶת
יָמּוֹ לְהִסִּיר אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִכִּסְאוֹ.

- 17 וְהָיָה מִנְהַג הַלָּמָנִיתִים בְּקִרְבָּם אֲשֶׁר בְּנִפֹּל מִפְּקֻדָּם הָעֶלְיוֹן, הֵם מִנּוּ תַּחֲתִיו אֶת מִשְׁנָהוּ. Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.
- 18 וְעַמְלִיקָיָה צִוָּה אֶת אֶחָד מִשְׁרָתָיו לְהִרְעִיל בַּהֲדָרָה אֶת מַאֲכָלִי לְחוֹנְתִּי עַד אֲשֶׁר מָת. And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.
- 19 וְהָיָה אַחֵר מוֹת לְחוֹנְתִּי מִנּוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים אֶת עַמְלִיקָיָה לְמִנְהִיגָם וְלִמְפַקְדָּם הָעֶלְיוֹן. Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.
- 20 וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוֹ עָלָה בִּידּוֹ, צַעַד עַמְלִיקָיָה עִם חֵילוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ נִפְּי, אֶל הָעִיר נִפְּי, אֲשֶׁר הִיא הָעִיר הָרֵאשִׁית. And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.
- 21 וְהַמֶּלֶךְ יָצָא לִקְרָאתוֹ עִם שׁוּמְרָיו, בְּחִשְׁבוֹ כִּי מֵלֵא עַמְלִיקָיָה אֶת פְּקֻדָּתוֹ, וְכִי קִבֵּץ חֵיל כֹּה עָצוֹם וְרַב לְצֹאֵת לִקְרֹב עַל הַנְּפִיתִים. And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.
- 22 וְהִנֵּה, כְּצֹאֵת הַמֶּלֶךְ לִקְרָאתוֹ, צִוָּה עַמְלִיקָיָה אֶת מִשְׁרָתָיו לָלֶכֶת לִפְנֵי, לִקְרָאת הַמֶּלֶךְ. וְהֵם הִלְכוּ, וְהִשְׁתַּחֲווּ לִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ, כְּאִלּוּ חָלְקוּ לוֹ כְּבוֹד עַל גְּדֻלָּתוֹ. But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.
- 23 וְהַמֶּלֶךְ הוֹשִׁיט יָדוֹ לְהִרְיָמָם, כְּמִנְהַג הַלָּמָנִיתִים, אוֹת שָׁלוֹם, אֲשֶׁר שָׁאֲלוּהוּ מִן הַנְּפִיתִים. And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.
- 24 וּבְהִקִּימוֹ אֶת הָרֵאשִׁון מִן הָאָרֶץ, דָּקַר אוֹתוֹ הָאִישׁ בְּלִבּוֹ, וְהַמֶּלֶךְ נָפַל אֶרְצָה. And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.
- 25 וּמִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ נָסוּ, וּמִשְׁרָתֵי עַמְלִיקָיָה קָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל יֵאמֹר: Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:
- 26 מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ דָּקְרוּהוּ בְּלִבּוֹ! הוּא נָפַל וְהֵם בָּרְחוּ; הִנֵּה, בּוֹאוּ וּרְאוּ. Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.
- 27 וְעַמְלִיקָיָה צִוָּה אֶת חֵילָיו לָלֶכֶת וּלְרַאוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר אֶרֶע לַמֶּלֶךְ. וְכַאֲשֶׁר הֵם בָּאוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם וּמָצְאוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ מִתְּבוּסָס בְּדָמוֹ, הִעֲמִיד עַמְלִיקָיָה פָּנִים גְּזַעְמוֹת וְאָמַר: כֹּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אוֹהֵב לַמֶּלֶךְ יֵצֵא נָא לְרֹדֵף אַחֵר מִשְׁרָתָיו וּלְהָרְגָם. And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.
- 28 וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמְעוּ כָּל אוֹהְבֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם יָצְאוּ וּרְדְּפוּ אַחֵר מִשְׁרָתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ. And it came to pass when all they who loved the king heard these words, they came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

- 29 Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.
- 30 And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.
- 31 And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.
- 32 And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—
- 33 Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.
- 34 And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all they who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.
- 35 And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.
- 36 Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.
- וְכִרְאוֹת מִשְׁרָתִי הַמֶּלֶךְ צָבָא דּוֹלֵק אַחֲרֵיהֶם, הֵם נִבְהָלוּ שֵׁנִית וְנִמְלְטוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת. וְהֵם בָּאוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה וַהֲתַחֲבְרוּ אֶל אַנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן.
- וְהַצָּבָא אֲשֶׁר רָדַף אַחֲרֵיהֶם שָׁב, כִּי לִשְׁוֹא רִדְפָם. כֹּה, עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתוֹ, עָלָה בְּיַד עַמְלִיקְיָה לְרַכֵּשׁ אֶת לֵב הָעָם.
- וּלְמָחָר הַיּוֹם נָכַנס עַמְלִיקְיָה עִם חֵילוֹתָיו אֶל הָעִיר נֶפְחִי וַתִּפְשְׁוּהָ.
- וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמְעָה הַמֶּלֶכָה עַל רִצְחַן הַמֶּלֶךְ, כִּי הִנֵּה שָׁלַח אֵלֶיהָ עַמְלִיקְיָה מִשְׁלַחַת לְהוֹדִיעָהּ כִּי נִרְצַח הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּיַדִּי מִשְׁרָתָיו, וְכִי הוּא רָדַף אַחֲרֵיהֶם עִם צָבָאוֹ, אֲדָּה לִשְׁוֹא, כִּי הִצְלִיחוּ לְהִמָּלֵט;
- אָכֵן, בְּקַבֵּל הַמֶּלֶכָה אֶת הַהוֹדָעָה הַזֹּאת, הִיא שָׁלְחָה אֶל עַמְלִיקְיָה אֶת בְּקִשְׁתָּהּ כִּי יְחוּס עַל אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר וְאֶף בְּקִשָּׁה מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יָבוֹא אֵלֶיהָ וְכִי יָבִיא עִמּוֹ עֵדִים לְהַעֲדִיד עַל מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָה לָקַח אֶת הַמִּשְׁרָת אֲשֶׁר הָמִית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמּוֹ, וְהֵם הָלְכוּ אֶל הַמֶּלֶכָה, אֶל מְקוֹם מוֹשְׁבָהּ; וְכָל־הָעֵדוֹ הֵעִידוּ לִפְנֵיהָ כִּי הוּמַת הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּיַדִּי מִשְׁרָתָיו, וְאֶף אֲמָרוּ: הִנֵּה הֵם נִמְלְטוּ. הֲאִין זֶה מַעֲשֵׂיד עֲלֵיהֶם? כֹּה הֵם שָׂכְנָעוּ אֶת הַמֶּלֶכָה בְּדִבְרֵי מוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ.
- וְעַמְלִיקְיָה בִקֵּשׁ לְמִצָּא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי הַמֶּלֶכָה, וַלְקַחְהָ לוֹ לְאִשָּׁה. כֹּה, עַל יְדֵי תַרְמִיתוֹ וּבִעֲזָרַת מִשְׁרָתָיו הַנוֹכְלִים, קִבֵּל הוּא אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. וְהוּא הִכָּר כְּמֶלֶךְ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, בְּקִרְבֵּי כָּל עַם הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר כָּל־אֶת הַלְּמָנִים וְהַלְּמוֹאֲאִים וְהַיִּשְׁמַעֲאֵלִים וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִפְלְגוּ מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וּפְרָשׁוּ מֵהֶם מִיָּמֵי שְׁלֹטוֹן נְפִי וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- וּלְפֹרְשֵׁים הָהֵם הָיְתָה אוֹתָהּ הַתּוֹרָה וְאוֹתָהּ הַיְדִיעָה אֲשֶׁר לְנִפְיִים. כִּי הֵם קִבְּלוּ אוֹתָהּ הוֹרָאָה עַל דַּעַת יְהוָה; וְאוֹלָם, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר מוֹזֵר הַדְּבָר, זְמַן מָה אַחֵר פְּרִישְׁתָּם, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ קָשִׁים וְנִקְשִׁים, פְּרָאִים וְרָשָׁעִים וְאַכְזָרִים יוֹתֵר מִן הַלְּמָנִים. הֵם שָׁתוּ בְּצִמְאֻן אֶת מִסּוּרוֹת הַלְּמָנִים וַהֲתַמְסְרוּ לְבִטְלָה וּלְכָל מִינֵי תַאֲוֹת; אָכֵן, הֵם שָׁכְחוּ כָּל־לֵיל אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

מח

48

- וְהָיָה כִּי מִיָּד עִם קִבְּלָתוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה הַחֹל
עַמְלִיקָיָה לְעוֹרֵר אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים עַל עַם נִפְי;
וְהוּא מִנָּה אֲנָשִׁים לְשֹׂאֵת נְאוּמִים אֶל הַלְּמָנִים
מֵעַל מִגְדְּלֵיהֶם נֶגֶד הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְהוּא כֹּה הִטָּה לָבָם עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, עַד כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית
שְׁנַת תִּשְׁעָה עָשָׂרָה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, כַּהֲפִיקוּ
אֶת זִמְמוֹ עַד כֹּה, אַכֹּן, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לְמֶלֶךְ
עַל הַלְּמָנִים, הוּא בִקֵּשׁ אַף לְמֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל
הָאָרֶץ וְעַל כָּל יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, הַנְּפִיִּים כָּל־מְנִים.
- וְעַד כֹּה הוּא הִצְלִיחַ לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת זִמְמוֹ,
כִּי הִנֵּה הִקְשָׁה אֶת לֵב הַלְּמָנִים וְעוֹרֵר אֶת
עֵינֵיהֶם, וְעוֹרֵרם לְחֵרוֹן עַד כִּי אֶסֶף צָבָא
רַב מְאֹד לְצֵאתָ לִקְרֹב עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- לָכֵן הוּא גָּמַר בְּלִבּוֹ, מִפְּנֵי מִסְפַּר אֲנָשָׁיו
הַעֲצוֹם, לְגַבֵּר עַל הַנְּפִיִּים וּלְשַׁעֲבָדָם.
- וְהוּא הִפְקִיד שְׂרֵי צָבָא מִן הַזֹּרַמִּים כִּי הֵם הַפִּירִי
הַיֵּטֵב אֶת כָּח הַנְּפִיִּים, אֶת מְקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלֶטֶם
וְאֶת נִקְדוֹת הַתְּרַפָּה אֲשֶׁר לְעִירֵיהֶם. עַל כֵּן
מִנָּה אוֹתָם לְרָאשֵׁי הַמְּפַקְדִּים עַל חֵילוֹתָיו.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת כָּל מַחֲנֶה וַיֵּצְאוּ אֶל
הַיַּעְרוֹת אֶל עֵבֶר אֶרֶץ זָרַהֲמִלָּה.
- וְהָיָה בְּאוֹתָהּ עַת אֲשֶׁר תִּפְּשׂ עַמְלִיקָיָה
אֶת שְׁלִטוֹנוֹ בְּעִרְמָה וּבְמִרְמָה, הָיָה מוֹרֹנִי
בְּאַרְצוֹ, מְכִין אֶת לֵב עַמּוֹ לְשֹׁמֵר אֲמוּנָתָם
לִיהוּה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- הוּא חִזַּק אֶת חֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים וּבָנָה מִבְּצָרִים
קְטָנִים לִהְיוֹת מְקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלֶטֶם; וְהוּא שָׂפַף
סוּלָלוֹת עֵפֶר סְבִיבָם, לְהַקִּיף אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו, וְאֵף
בָּנָה חוֹמוֹת אַכֹּן לְכַתְּרָם, וּלְכַתֵּר אֶת עִירֵיהֶם,
וְאֶת גְּבוּלוֹת שְׂטִחֵיהֶם בְּכָל אֶרֶץ.
- וְהוּא הִגְדִּיל אֶת מִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים בַּמִּבְצָרִים
הַחֲלָשִׁים. כֹּה הוּא בָצַר וַחֲזַק אֶת הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
נִחְלָו הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְכֹה הוּא הִכִּין תְּמִיכָה בְּחֵרוֹתָם, וּבְאַדְמָתָם,
בְּנִשְׁיָהֶם, וּבְיָלְדֵיהֶם, וּבְשִׁלּוּמָם, לְמַעַן יֵחִיו
- 1 And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.
- 2 And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.
- 3 Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.
- 4 For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.
- 5 And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.
- 6 And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.
- 7 Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.
- 8 Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.
- 9 And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.
- 10 And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto

עלמא מח:יא-יט

- לשם יהוה אלהיהם, ובעבור יקימו את אשר כנוהו אויביהם: ענין המשיחיים.
- 11 And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;
- 12 Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.
- 13 Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.
- 14 Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.
- 15 And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;
- 16 And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.
- 17 Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.
- 18 Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.
- 19 Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and
- ומורוני היה איש חזק וגבור חיל; איש תם בינה אשר לא חפץ בשפיכת דמים; כי שמחה נפשו בחפז ארצו ובדרורה, ובחרות אחיו משעבוד ומעבדות;
- אכן, הוא היה איש אשר בלבו נאצתה תודה לאלהיו על הטובה ועל הברכה הרבה אשר העניק לעמו; איש אשר עמל רבות למען רוחת עמו ובטחונם.
- אכן, איתן היה באמונת המשיח, והוא נשבע באלה להגן על עמו, על זכויותיו, על ארצו ועל דתו, אף במחיר חייו.
- והנפיים היו למודי מלחמה להגנות מפני אויביהם, אף בשפיכת דמים, אם היה צורך בהם. הם אף למדו להמנע מפגע, ולא להניף את חרבם, כי אם באויב, לשמירת חייהם.
- ואמונתם היתה כי בעשותם כן, יצליחם אלהים בארץ. ובגלשון אחר: אם יהיו נאמנים לשמר את מצוות אלהים, יעשם אלהים חיל בארץ, כי יזהירם לנוס, או להערוך למלחמה, כפי מדת הסכנה;
- ואף כי יודיעם אלהים לאן יצאו להגנות מפני אויביהם, ובעשותם כן, יצילם יהוה. וזאת אמונת מורוני ולבו עלץ בה; אכן, לא אל שפיכת דמים נשא לבו, כי אם לעשות טוב ולנצר את עמו, לשמר את מצוות אלהים ולעמד איתן בפני עוון.
- אכן, באמת ובתמים אני אומר לכם, אלו כל בני האדם היו או הנם כמורוני, או אם יהיו כמוהו, יהיו כחות שאול נרעדים לעולם; אכן, מעולם לא היה עוד כח לשטן למשל בלב בני האדם.
- הנה דמה מורוני לעמון בן מושיע, או לשאר בני מושיע, וכן לעלמא ולבניו, כי כלם היו אנשי אלהים.
- והנה, לא פחות ממורוני היו הילמן ואחיו משרתי הקדם. כי הם הטיפו את דבר אלהים,

- והטבילו לשם תשובה את כל אשר שמעו לדבריהם.
- 20 And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.
- אך, כפי אשר אמרתי, באחרית שנת תשע עשרה, על אף השלום ביניהם, הם נאלצו, ללא רצונם, להלחם באחיהם הלמנים.
- 21 But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.
- ובקצרה: במשך שנים רבות לא חדלו מלחמותיהם בלמנים, על אף כי לא רצונום היה הדבר.
- 22 Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.
- הם התעצבו לשאת נשק להלחם בלמנים, כי לא חפצו בשפיכת דמים. ואין זאת הכל, כי הם התעצבו כי על ידיהם נשלחו כה רבים מאחיהם מן העולם הזה אל עולם הנצח, בלי הכנה להקרא לפני אלהיהם.
- 23 Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.
- ואולם, הם לא יכלו להתיר הפקרת חייהם, להוביל נשיהם וילדיהם לטבח מעשה פראות ואכזריות על ידי אלה אשר היו לפנים אחיהם, ואשר פָּרְשׁוּ מִכְנָסֵיהֶם וְחָבְרוּ לַלְמָנִים בְּרִצּוֹנָם לְכַלּוֹתָם.
- 24 Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.
- אכן, הם לא יכלו לשאת כי ישישו אחיהם על דם הנפיים, כל עוד היו בקרבם שומרי מצוות אלהים, כי דבר יהוה היה אליהם כי בשמֶרם את מצוותיו הם יצליחו בארץ.
- 25 Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

מט

49

- והיה בשנת תשע עשרה, בחדש האחד עשר, בעשרה לחדש, נראו חילות הלמנים קרבים אל ארץ עמוניהה.
- 1 And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.
- והנה, העיר היתה בנויה מחדש, ומורוני הציב צבא בגבולה, וחיליו ערמו סוללות עפר סביב להגנה מפני חצי הלמנים ואביהם, כי באלה נלחמו.
- 2 And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt around about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.
- הנה אמרתי כי העיר עמוניהה נבנתה מחדש. אכן, אמר לכם כי בחלקה נבנתה
- 3 Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had

מחדש; ויען אשר החריבוה פעם הלמנים, מפני עוון אנשיה, הם שערו כי העיר תהיה להם שנית טרף קל השגה.

והנה, מה רבה היתה אכזבתם בראותם כי הנפיים הקימו סביבם סוללת עפר, אשר מפני גבהה לא יכלו הלמנים לירות עליהם את אבניהם ואת חציהם ולפגע בהם, ואף לא לעלות עליהם, כי אם דרך פתח העיר.

עתה היו מפקדי צבא הלמנים מפתעים עד מאוד על חכמת הנפיים בהקנת מקומות מבטחיהם.

ומנהיגי הלמנים, בסמכם על רב מספרם, חשבו כי יבואו על הנפיים באשר עשו לפנים, וכי להם יהיה היתרון; והם אף הצטידו במגנים ובשריוני חזה, ואף התלבשו בגדי עור, אכן, לבוש עבה מאוד, לכסות את מערמיהם.

ובהיותם ערוכים כן, סברו כי על נקלה יגברו על אחיהם ויכניסום בעל שעבוד, או ימיתום ויעשו בהם טבח כחפצם.

והנה, להפתעתם המוחלטת, היו הנפיים ערוכים לקראתם באופן אשר לא היה ידוע מעולם בקרב בני לחי. הם היו ערוכים להלחם בלמנים על פי הוראות מורוני.

והפתעת הלמנים או העמליקיים, היתה רבה מאוד נכח אפן הערכות הנפיים למלחמה.

ואלו יצא המלך עמליקיה מארץ נפי וירד בראש צבאו, אפשר כי היה מסב את הלמנים לתקוף את הנפיים בעיר עמוניהה, יען אשר לא חס על דם עמו.

והנה, עמליקיה עצמו לא ירד אל הקרב, ומפקדיו הראשיים לא העזו לתקוף את הנפיים בעיר עמוניהה, כי מורוני שנה את מערך הנפיים עד כי נכזה תוחלת הלמנים מפני מקלטיהם; והם לא יכלו לעלות עליהם;

על כן הם נסוגו אל היערות, וצעדו עם כל מחנם אל ארץ נח, בחשבם כי שם המקום השני המועיל לתקוף את הנפיים.

destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

4 But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

5 Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

6 Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

7 And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

8 But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

9 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

10 Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

11 But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

12 Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

- 13 For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.
- 14 But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.
- 15 And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.
- 16 And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.
- 17 And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.
- 18 Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.
- 19 And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.
- 20 Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.
- 21 And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.
- וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי מוֹרוֹנִי בָּנָה מִבְּצָרֵי מַעֲזָה
וּבְצָרִים, לְכָל עִיר בְּכָל רְחֹבֵי הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן
צָעְדוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים אֶל אֶרֶץ נֹחַ בְּדַעַת נְחוּשָׁה;
אָכֵן, מִפְּקֻדֵּיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים בָּאוּ וְנִשְׁבָּעוּ כִּי
הַשְׂמֵד יִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת יוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- וְהִנֵּה, לְמַרְבֵּה הַפְּתָעָתָם, הִפָּךְ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת
הָעִיר נֹחַ, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַד כֹּה עִיר פְּרוֹזָה,
לְעִיר מִבְּצָר, חֲזָקָה אֲפִי מִן הָעִיר עֲמוֹנִיָּהָה.
- וְהִנֵּה, בְּחָכְמַת מוֹרוֹנִי הָיְתָה זֹאת, כִּי הוּא
שָׁעַר כִּי יִירָאוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּבוֹאָם אֶל הָעִיר
עֲמוֹנִיָּהָה, וְכִי הֵם יִצְעְדוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּעִיר נֹחַ,
אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַד אַזּ מְקוֹם הַתְּרָפָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
וְכֵן אֶרֶע הַדְּבָר כִּרְצוֹנוֹ.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי מִנָּה אֶת לְחִי לְמַפְקֵד אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר
הַהִיא. וְהוּא אוֹתוֹ לְחִי אֲשֶׁר נָלָחֵם בַּלְּמָנִיתִים
בְּבִקְעָה שְׁמִמְמָרָח לְנֹהַר צִידוֹן.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר נֹדַע לַלְּמָנִיתִים כִּי לְחִי הָיָה מִפְקֵד הָעִיר,
נִפְלָה רוּחָם שֵׁנִית, כִּי יִרְאוּ מִפְּנֵיו עַד מָאָד;
וְאוּלֵם נִשְׁבָּעוּ מִפְּקֻדֵּיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים בְּאֵלָה
לְתַקֵּף אֶת הָעִיר, וְלָכֵן הֶעֱלוּ אֶת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִיתִים לֹא יָכְלוּ לָבוֹא בְּמִבְצָרֵי הַמַּעֲזָה,
כִּי אִם דֶּרֶךְ פֶּתַח הַכְּנִיסָה לְעִיר מִפְּנֵי גִבָּה
הַסּוּלָּהָ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁרָמָה שָׁם וְעִמָּק הַתְּעֵלָה
אֲשֶׁר נִחְפְּרָה סְבִיב־סְבִיב, זֹלַת הַכְּנִיסָה.
- כֹּה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיתִים עָרוּכִים לְהַשְׂמִיד בִּירֵית
אֲבָנִים וְחִצִּים אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִנְסֶה לָטַפֵּס
לְמַעַלָּה וּלְבוֹא בְּמִבְצָר בְּכָל אֲפִן אַחֵר.
- כֹּה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיתִים עָרוּכִים בְּהִצִּיבָם קְבוּצָה מִן
הַחֲזָקִים אֲשֶׁר אֵצֶר אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם לְהַכּוֹת בְּחֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם
וּבְקִלְעֵיהֶם אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִנְסֶה לְהִכָּנֵס אֶל
מַעֲזָם בְּפֶתַח הַכְּנִיסָה; אָכֵן, כֹּה עָרוּכִים הָיוּ
לְהִגֹּן עַל עֲצָמָם נֶגֶד הַלְּמָנִיתִים.
- וּמִפְּקֻדֵּי הַלְּמָנִיתִים הֶעֱלוּ אֶת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל
מְקוֹם הַכְּנִיסָה וְהִחִלוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנִפְיִים, לָבוֹא
אֶל תּוֹךְ מַעֲזֵיהֶם; וְאוּלֵם הֵם נִהְדָּפוּ פַּעַם
בְּפַעַם, עַד כִּי עָצְמוּ הָרוּגֵיהֶם בְּטִבַּח רַב.

- 22 Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.
- 23 Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.
- 24 There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.
- 25 And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.
- 26 And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.
- 27 Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.
- 28 And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.
- 29 And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 30 Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and
- וּבְרֵאשִׁית כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לִגְבֹּר עַל הַנְּפִיִּים דְּרָדָּה פִּתַּח הָעֵיר, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לַחְתּוֹר פִּתַּח סוֹלְלוֹת הָעֵפֶר, לַפְתָּח מַעְבַּר לַחֲיִלֵיהֶם, לַתֵּתָם לַהֲלָחַם בַּתְּנָאִים שְׂוִים עִם אוֹיְבֵיהֶם. אַךְ בְּנִסְיוֹנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הֵם גִּרְשׁוּ בְּאַבְנִים וּבַחֲצִים אֲשֶׁר נִזְרְאוּ אֲלֵיהֶם; וּבִמְקוֹם לְמַלֵּא אֶת תַּעֲלוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעֵפֶר סוֹלְלוֹת הָרוֹסוֹת הֵם מִלְּאוּ, בְּחֻלְקוֹ, בְּגוֹיֹת הָרוּגֵיהֶם וּבַפְּצוּעֵיהֶם.
- כָּךְ גִּבְרוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עַל אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, וְהִלְמְנִים הוֹסִיפוּ בְּנִסְיוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים עַד אֲשֶׁר נִהְרְגוּ כָּל מַפְקְדֵיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים; אַכֵּן, יוֹתֵר מֵאֶלֶף לְמַנִּים נִהְרְגוּ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר מִן הַנְּפִיִּים לֹא נִהְרְגָה אֶף נֶפֶשׁ אַחַת.
- כִּחְמָשִׁים מֵהֶם נִפְצְעוּ מִפְּגִיעַת חֲצֵי הַלְּמָנִים מִבְּעַד לַפְתָּח הָעֵיר, אֶךְ מִפְּנֵי מִגוּנָם בְּמַגְנֵיהֶם וּבְשָׂרֵיוֹנֵי הַחֹזֶה וּבְקוֹבְעֵיהֶם, הֵם נִפְצְעוּ בְּרִגְלֵיהֶם בְּלִבָּד, אֶף כִּי רַבִּים הָיוּ הַפְּצָעִים הַקָּשִׁים.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים כִּי כָּל מַפְקְדֵיהֶם הָרָאשִׁיִּים נִהְרְגוּ, הֵם בָּרְחוּ אֶל הָעֵרְוֹת; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִי לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת דְּבַר מַפְלֹתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה לְמֶלֶכָם, עַמְלִיקִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אִישׁ נְפִי מִלְּדָה.
- וְעַמְלִיקִיָּה רָגַז מְאֹד עַל עַמּוֹ, כִּי לֹא צָלַח חֲפָצוֹ בְּיָדוֹ לְהַכְנִים אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים בְּעַל הַשְׁעָבֹד.
- וּבְחֻמָּתוֹ הַבּוֹעֶרֶת קָלַל אֶת אֱלֹהִים, וְאֶף אֶת מוֹרוֹנִי קָלַל וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּאֵלֶּה לְשָׂתוֹת אֶת דָּמוֹ. וְזֹאת כִּי שָׁמַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים לְהִכִּין בְּשַׁחוּן לְעַמּוֹ.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים בְּאַרְצָם הוֹדוּ לַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, עַל כַּחוֹ הַעֲלִיּוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נִצְלוּ מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת תִּשְׁעַ עֶשְׂרֵה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- וְהָיָה בְּקִרְבָּם שְׁלוֹם מִמֶּשֶׁךְ וְאֵף הַצִּלְחָה גְּדוֹלָה מְאֹד בְּכִנְסָיָה, כִּי הִקְשִׁיבוּ בְּשִׁקְיָה לְדַבֵּר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הִסִּיפוּ לָהֶם הִילְמָן, שִׁבְלוֹן, קוֹרִיאֲנִטוֹן, וְעַמְמוֹן וְעַמְיִיתָיו, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִסְמִךְ

על פי סדר הקדש אשר לאלהים, והטבלו לשם תשובה ונשלחו להטיף בקרב העם.

by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

נ

50

ומורוני לא חדל להתכונן למלחמה, למען הגן על עמו מפני הלמנים. והיה כי בראשית שנת עשרים לשלטון השופטים, הוא צוה את צבאו להחל בהקמת סוללות עפר סביב כל הערים בכל ארץ נחלת הנפיים.

1 And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

והוא צוה לתקע בראש סוללות העפר האלה קורות עץ, קירות קרשים, קומת אדם גבהה, סביב הערים.

2 And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

והוא צוה לקבע על מבנה הקורות ההן שורת מוטות חדי קצה, חזקים וגבוהים.

3 And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

והוא צוה להקים מגדלים הצופים מעבר לשורת המוטות, וצוה לבנות עמדות מבצרות על המגדלים, למנוע פגעי אבני הלמנים וחיציהם.

4 And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

ועמדות המגדלים נבנו באפן אשר יכלו אנשיהן להשליך מהן אבנים כפי רצונם וכחם, וכך להרג את כל הקרב אל חומות העיר.

5 And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

כה הכין מורוני מעוזים סביב כל עיר, בכל הארץ, לקדם את פלישת אויביהם.

6 Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

ומורוני צוה על צבאו לצאת אל היער המזרחי; והם הלכו וגרשו את כל הלמנים אשר היו שם אל אדמתם, אשר הייתה מדרום לארץ זרעהמלה.

7 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

וארץ נפי השתרעה בקו ישר מן הים המזרחי ועד הים המערבי.

8 And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

והיה אחר אשר גרש מורוני את כל הלמנים מן היער המזרחי, אשר הוא מצפון לשטחי נחלתם, הוא צוה על יושבי ארץ זרעהמלה והאזורים אשר סביבה ללכת אל היער המזרחי, עד גבולו אשר לחוף הים, ולהתנחל שם.

9 And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

וְהוּא אֶף הִצִּיב צָבָא בְּדָרוֹם, בְּגִבּוּלוֹת נְחֻלָּתָם, וְצִוָּם לְהָקִים מִבְּצָרִים לְבִטְחוֹן צָבָאָם וְעַמָּם מִפְּגִיעַת אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

10 And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

כֹּה נִתַּק מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת כָּל מַעְזֵי הַלְּמָנִים בִּיעָר הַמְּזֻרְחִי, וְאֶף בַּמַּעֲרָב, וּבִצָּר אֶת קו הַגְּבּוּל בֵּין הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלְּמָנִים, בֵּין אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְאֶרֶץ נֶפִי, מִן הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, אֲשֶׁר אֵל עֶבֶר מְקוֹר נְהַר צִידוֹן. וְהַנְּפִיִּים הִתְנַחֲלוּ כְּחֻפָּצָם, בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן, וְאֶף כָּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִצָּפוֹן לְאֶרֶץ רַב־שָׁפַע.

11 And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

כֹּה בִקֵּשׁ מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר צָבָאוֹ גָּדַל מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, מִפְּנֵי הַבִּטְחוֹן בְּהַגָּנָתָם אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיאוּ לָהֶם מִתְקַנְיָו, לְקַצֹּץ אֶת כֹּחַ הַלְּמָנִים וְעַצְם בְּאֶרֶץ נְחֻלַּת הַנְּפִיִּים, לְמַעַן לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם הַכֹּחַ לְשַׁלֵּט בְּאֶרְצוֹתֵיהֶם.

12 Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים יָסְדּוּ עִיר חֲדָשָׁה וְקָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ מוֹרוֹנִי; וְהָעִיר שָׁכְנָה לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרְחִי, בְּדָרוֹם הָאֶרֶץ, לִיד גְּבּוּל נְחֻלַּת הַלְּמָנִים.

13 And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

וְהֵם גַּם יָסְדּוּ עִיר בֵּין הָעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי וּבֵין הָעִיר אֶהְרֹן, לְחַבֵּר אֶת גְּבּוּל אֶהְרֹן עִם גְּבּוּל מוֹרוֹנִי. וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שֵׁם הָעִיר וְאֶת הָאֶרֶץ נֶפִיָּהָה.

14 And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.

וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְבָנוֹת עָרִים רַבּוֹת בְּצָפוֹן; אַחַת מֵאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר בְּצָפוֹן לְחוּף הַיָּם, נִבְנְתָה בְּאֶפֶן מִיָּחָד; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת שְׁמָהּ לְחִי.

15 And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים.

16 And thus ended the twentieth year.

וּבַעֲדָה עִם נְפִי הוֹלְכִים מִחֵיל אֶל חֵיל, הִחֲלָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִי.

17 And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְהִצְלַחְתָּם רַבָּתָה מְאֹד. וְעָשְׂרָם פָּרַץ עַד מְאֹד. וְהֵם רַבּוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, וְכָחַם עַצְמָם.

18 And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

וְכֹה רוֹאִים אֲנִחנוּ כִּי בִרְחֻמִּים וּבְצֶדֶק מְקִים יְהוָה אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם. אָכֵן, אֲנִחנוּ רוֹאִים כִּי דְבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל לְחֵי מִתְקִים אֶף בַּעֲת הַזֹּאת; וְכֹה אָמַר:

19 And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

בָּרוּךְ אַתָּה וּבְרוּכִים בְּנֵיךָ, וּבְרוּכִים יִהְיוּ; כָּל עוֹד יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי יִצְלִיחוּ בְּאֶרֶץ. אֶף

20 Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land.

זְכוֹר, כִּי אִם לֹא יִשְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי, הִכָּרַת
יִכָּרְתוּ מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה.

But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

וְאַנְחֵנוּ רֹאִים כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הִתְקִימוּ
בְּעַם נֶפִי; כִּי מְרִיבוּתֵיהֶם וּמַחְלוּקוֹתֵיהֶם,
הַרְצָח וְהַגָּזֹל, עֲבֹדַת הָאֱלִילִים וְהַזֹּמָה
וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם, הֵם אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיאוּ
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת חֲרָבָנָם.

21 And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ נֹאמְנִים לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת
יְהוָה נִצְלוּ בְּכָל פַּעַם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר עַל אֲלָפִים
מֵאַחֵיהֶם הִרְשָׁעִים נִגְזַר שְׁעָבוֹד, אוֹ נִפְּלָה
בַּחֶרֶב, אוֹ שְׁקִיעָה בַּחֶסֶר אֲמוּנָה וְהַתְּבוּלָלוֹת
בְּתוֹךְ הַלְּמָנִים.

22 And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

הִנֵּה, מִיָּמֵי נֶפִי לֹא הָיְתָה עֵת כַּה מְאֻשֶּׁרֶת
לְעַם נֶפִי, כִּימֵי מוֹרוֹנִי, בְּזֶמֶן הַזֶּה, בְּשָׁנַת
עֶשְׂרִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

23 But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

וּשְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים,
וְכֵן שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשָׁלֹשׁ, כָּלוּ בְּשָׁלוֹם.

24 And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

וְאַף בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְאַרְבַּע לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הָיָה שָׁלוֹם בְּקִרְבָּם עִם נֶפִי, לוֹלֵא
מְרִיבָה אֲשֶׁר פָּרְצָה בֵּינֵיהֶם, בְּעִנְיַן אֶרֶץ לְחִי
וְאֶרֶץ מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הִיא הַתְּחַבְּרָה אֶל
גְּבוּל לְחִי; שְׁתֵּי הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה שָׁכְנוּ עַל
חוּף הַיָּם.

25 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

כִּי הָעָם הַיּוֹשֵׁב בְּאֶרֶץ מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן תָּבַע
לוֹ חֶלֶק מֵאֶרֶץ לְחִי. לְכֵן הִחַל רִיב קָשֶׁה
לְהִתְפַּתַּח בֵּינֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי אָחֲזוּ אֲנָשֵׁי
מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן בְּכָל נֶשֶׁק וְנִמְרוּ אִמָּר
לְצִאתָ עַל אַחֵיהֶם בַּחֶרֶב וּלְהָרְגֵם.

26 For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

וַיּוֹשְׁבֵי אֶרֶץ לְחִי נָסוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי
וּבִקְשׁוּהוּ לְעֻזָּר, כִּי לֹא נִמְצָא עוֹל בְּכַפָּם.

27 But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר שָׁם
מַנְהִיגָם נִקְרָא מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, כִּי אֲנָשֵׁי לְחִי נָסוּ
אֶל מַחֲנֵה מוֹרוֹנִי, הֵם יִרְאוּ מְאֹד כֹּן יִתְקַפֵּם
צָבָא מוֹרוֹנִי וַיִּשְׁמִידֵם.

28 And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

עַל כֵּן נָתַן מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן מִחְשָׁבָה בְּלִבָּם לְהִמָּלֵט
אֶל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר מִצְפוֹן, אֲשֶׁר כְּסוּיָהּ אֲגָמֵי מִיָּם
גְּדוֹלִים, וּלְהִתְנַחֵל בָּהּ. וְהִנֵּה, הֵם כִּמְעַט

29 Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

- והנה, הם כמעט הוציאו לפעל את מזמתם, אשר היתה מביאה יגון וצער, לולא קפץ רגז מוריאנטון, אשר היה איש חם מזג, על אחת ממשרתותיו, והנה הוא התנפל עליה, והכה בה נמרצות.
- והיא נסה ובאה אל מחנה מורוני וספרה למורוני הכל על אודות הדבר הזה ועל כוננתם לברח אל הארץ אשר בצפון.
- והנה, העם אשר בארץ רב-שפע יראו, ואף ירא מורוני, פן ישמעו אנשי רב-שפע לדברי מוריאנטון ויתחברו עם אנשיו. וכך הוא יתפש את אזורי הארץ ההם, ובזאת תבשר הקרקע להתפתחות חמורה בקרב עם נפי, אשר תביא לסלוק חרותם.
- לכן שלח מורוני צבא, עם ציודו, להקדים את אנשי מוריאנטון, לעצר בעד בריחתם אל הארץ אשר בצפון.
- וצבא מורוני לא השיגם, כי אם אחר הגיעם אל גבול ארץ חרבה. שם הדיחם במעבר הצר אשר לחוף הים, אשר דרכו הוליכה אל ארץ הצפון, בקרבת הים אשר ממערב ואשר ממזרח.
- ובראש הצבא אשר שלח מורוני, אשר השיג את אנשי מוריאנטון, עמד איש אשר שמו נקרא טיאנקום. וזה קשים היו אנשי מוריאנטון, יען אשר השפיעו מרשעתו ומחלקת לשונו, עד כי פרץ קרב בין שני החילות. וטיאנקום הרג את מוריאנטון, והביס את חילו ושבא אותם, ושב אל מחנה מורוני. כה תמה שנת עשרים וארבע לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.
- כה הושבו אנשי מוריאנטון. ואחר בואם בבית לשמר שלום, הם הושבו אל ארץ מוריאנטון והתאחדו עם עם לחי; אכן, אף הם הושבו, איש אל אדמתו.
- ובשנה אשר שב השלום אל עם נפי מת נפיהה, השופט העליון השני, אחר שפשו לפני אלהים בתכלית הישר כל ימי שבתו על כס המשפט.
- 30 And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.
- 31 And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.
- 32 Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.
- 33 Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.
- 34 And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.
- 35 And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 36 And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.
- 37 And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephihah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

38 על אף זאת, הוא סרב למלא את בקשת עלמא לקבל לידיו את כתבי הזכרונות ואת החפצים ההם, אשר נחשבו לקדושים ביותר בעיני עלמא ובעיני אבותיו. על כן מסרם עלמא לידי בנו, הלמן.

39 Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

ובן נפיהה מנה לשבת על כס המשפט תחת אביו; אכן, הוא מנה לשופט העליון ולמושל על העם, ולכך נשבע כמשפט קדש, לשפט בצדק ולשמר על שלום העם ועל חרותם, ולהעניק להם את זכויותיהם המקדשות לעבד את יהוה אלהיהם; אכן, לתמוך ולקיים את עניני אלהים כל ימיו, ולהביא למשפט את הרשעים, איש כפשעו.

40 Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

ושם האיש פחורן. והוא ישב על כסא אביו והחל למשל בעם נפי באחרית שנת עשרים וארבע.

נא

51

1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

ובראשית שנת עשרים וחמש לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי, אחר אשר כונן שלום בין אנשי לחי ובין אנשי מוריאנטון בדבר אדמותיהם, החלה שנת עשרים וחמש בשלום.

2 Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

ואולם שלותם השלמה לא האריכה ימים בארץ, כי פרצה מחלוקת בקרב העם באשר לשופט העליון, פחורן; כי הנה, חלק מן העם חפץ בשנוי סעיפים מסוימים בחק.

3 But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

ופחורן לא חפץ לשנות את החק ולא הניח כי יעשה בו כל שנוי; לכן הוא לא שמע לקול השולחים אליו עצומות בענין שנוי החק.

4 Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

על כן רגזו עליו כל המבקשים לשנות את החק, ובקשו להסירו מכס השופט העליון בארץ. כה התעורר ופוח עז בענין הזה, אך לא עד שפיכת דמים.

5 And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

והמבקשים להסיר את פחורן מכס המשפט נקראו בשם מלוקנים, כי בקשו לשנות את החק באופן אשר יסלק ממשל החרות בארץ וישם מלך תחתיו.

וְהַחֲפָצִים כִּי יִשְׂאָר פְּחוֹרָן שׁוֹפֵט עָלִיוֹן בְּאַרְצָא
קָרְאוּ עֲצָמָם בְּנֵי חֲרוּת; כֹּה נִפְלַג הָעָם, כִּי בְנֵי
הַחֲרוּת נִשְׁבָּעוּ, אַכֹּן, בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, לְשֹׁמֵר עַל
זְכוּת דָּתָם עַל יְדֵי מִמְּשַׁל חֲרוּת.

אִזְ יָשָׁב דְּבַר הַמַּחְלָקָת אֲשֶׁר בֵּינֵיהֶם עַל יְדֵי
קוֹל הָעָם. וְהִנֵּה, בְּמִשְׁאֵל הָעָם הָיְתָה יָד בְּנֵי
חֲרוּת עַל הָעֲלִיוֹנָה; כֹּה נִשְׂאָר פְּחוֹרָן עַל כֹּס
הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְשִׁמְחַת לֵב עֲמִיתָיו וְלִב רַבִּים
מֵאֲנָשֵׁי הַחֲרוּת; וְכֹה הִשְׁתִּיקוּ אֶת הַמְּלוֹכִים,
עַד כִּי לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְהַתְּנַגֵּד לְעִנְיֹן הַחֲרוּת וְנִאֲלָצוּ
לְהַשְׁלִים עִמּוֹ.

וְהַחֲפָצִים בְּמִלְכִּים הָיוּ בְּעָלֵי יַחַס נִכְבָּד, וְהֵם
בִּקְשׁוּ לְמֶלֶךְ. וְתוֹמְכֵיהֶם הָיוּ הַמְּבַקְשִׁים כֹּה
וְשִׁרְרָה עַל הָעָם.

אִךְ הָיְתָה זֹאת עֵת הָרַת סִפְנוֹת בַּעֲבוּר
מַחְלֻקוֹת כְּאֵלֶּה בְּקֶרֶב עַם נָפִי, כִּי הִנֵּה
עֲמִלִּיקָה הֶחֱלָ לְהַסִּית שְׁנֵית אֶת לֵב עַם
הַלְּמָנִים עַל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים; וְהוּא אָסַף חֲיָלִים
מִכָּל חֲלָקֵי אֲרָצוֹ, וְחִמְשָׁם וְהִתְכַּנֵּן לְמַלְחָמָה
בְּשִׁקְדָּה רַבָּה, כִּי נִשְׁבַּע לְשָׂתוֹת אֶת דַּם מוֹרוֹנִי.

וְאִנְחֵנוּ נִרְאָה כִּי דִבְרָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הָיְתָה
פְּזִיזָה; וְאוֹלָם, הוּא הָכִין עֲצָמוֹ וְאֶת צְבָאוֹ
לְבוֹא לְהִלָּחֵם בַּנְּפִיִּים.

וְעַתָּה לֹא הָיָה צְבָאוֹ רַב כְּלִפְנֵים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
נִהָרְגוּ אֲלָפִים רַבִּים בְּיַדֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים; אִךְ עַל
אִף אֲבִדוּתֵיהֶם הַכְּבִדּוֹת, קִבֵּץ עֲמִלִּיקָה
צָבָא עֲצוֹם וָרַב, עַד כִּי לֹא יָרָא לָרֶדֶת אֶל
אֲרֶץ יִזְרַעְחֶמְלָה.

אֲכֹן, אִף עֲמִלִּיקָה עֲצָמוֹ יָרַד הַפַּעַם בְּרֹאשׁ
הַלְּמָנִים. הָיָה זֶה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְחֲמִשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִחְלוּ לִישֹׁב אֶת
הַמַּחְלָקָת בְּדַבָּר פְּחוֹרָן, הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעָלִיוֹן.

וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים הַנִּקְרָאִים
מְלוֹכִים כִּי הַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם, הֵם
שָׂמְחוּ בְּלִבָּם וְסָרְבוּ לֵאחֹז בְּנִשְׁקָא, אַכֹּן, כֹּה גָדוֹל
הָיָה זַעֲמָם עַל הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעָלִיוֹן וְעַל אֲנָשֵׁי הַחֲרוּת
עַד כִּי לֹא אָבוּ לְשֹׂאת נֶשֶׁק לְהִגָּן עַל אֲרָצָם.

6 And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

7 And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

8 Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

9 But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

10 But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

11 Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

12 Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

13 And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

- 14 And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.
- 15 And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him, Moroni, power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.
- 16 For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.
- 17 And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.
- 18 And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.
- 19 And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.
- 20 And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.
- 21 And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.
- 22 Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war
- וְכִרְאוֹת זֹאת מוֹרוֹנִי, וְכִרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים
פּוֹלְשִׁים אֶל גְּבוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ, בְּעֵרָה חֲמָתוֹ עַל
עֲקֻשׁוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּרַב שְׁקִידָתוֹ עָמַל
לְשִׁמְרָם. אָכֵן, בְּעֵרָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֲמָתוֹ עַד מְאֹד,
וְנִפְשׁוֹ מִלְּאָה רָגֵז.
- וְהוּא שָׁלַח עֲצוּמָה, בְּקוֹל הָעָם, אֶל מוֹשֵׁל
הָאָרֶץ, וּבִקֵּשׁ כִּי יִקְרָאנָה וַיִּיָּפֶה אֶת כּוֹחַ,
אֶת כַּח מוֹרוֹנִי, לְאַכְּף עַל הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם
לְהִגֵּן עַל אֶרֶצָם, אוֹ לְהוֹצִיאֵם לְהוֹרֵג.
- כִּי רִאשִׁית דְּאֻגָּתוֹ הִיְתָה לְשִׁים קֵץ לְמַחְלּוֹקוֹת
וּלְפְלוּגִים כְּאֵלֶּה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם. הֵן זֹאת הִיְתָה
עַד כֹּה סִבַּת כָּל חֲרָבָנָם. וְהָיָה כִּי נִתְּנָה לוֹ
בִּקְשָׁתוֹ, כִּרְצוֹן הָעָם.
- אֲזַי פָּקַד מוֹרוֹנִי עַל צָבָאוֹ לְעֹלוֹת עַל
הַמְּלוֹכִימִים הָהֵם, לְשַׁבֵּר אֶת גָּאוֹתָם וְאֶת כְּבוֹד
אֲצִילוֹתָם וּלְהַשְׁפִּילָם עַד עֶפְרָ, אִם לֹא יֵאחֲזוּ
בִּנְשָׁק וַיִּתְמַכּוּ בְּעֵנִין הַחֲרוּת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי צָעַד עֲלֵיהֶם הַצָּבָא, וְהִסִּיר אֶת
גָּאוֹתָם וְאֶת כְּבוֹד אֲצִילוֹתָם, עַד כִּי בִּהְרִימָם
אֶת כְּלֵי נֶשֶׁקָם לְהִלָּחֵם עִם אֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִי,
נִגְדְּעוּ בַּחֶרֶב וּלְאָרֶץ מִגְרוּ.
- וְהָיָה מִסְפַּר הַנּוֹפְלִים בַּחֶרֶב מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים
הָהֵם אַרְבַּעַת אֲלָפִים אִישׁ. וְאֵלֶּה מִמִּנְהִיגֵיהֶם
אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִהָרְגוּ בַּקֶּרֶב, נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְאֵל הַכְּלָא
הַשְׁלָכּוּ, כִּי לֹא הָיָה זְמַן לְהִסְפִּיקָהּ הָעֵת הַהִיא
לְשִׁפְטָם אוֹתָם.
- וְהַנּוֹתָרִים מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם נִכְנְעוּ לְדָגֹל
הַחֲרוּת, תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יָכּוּ בַּחֶרֶב אֶרְצָה. וְהֵם
אֲלָצוּ לְהִנִּיף אֶת נֵס הַחֲרוּת עַל מִגְדְּלֵיהֶם
וּבְעָרֵיהֶם, וּלְאַחֲזֹ בִּנְשָׁק לְהִגָּנַת אֶרְצָם.
- כִּךְ שָׁם מוֹרוֹנִי קֵץ לְמְלוֹכִימִים הָהֵם, עַד כִּי לֹא
הָיָה עוֹד אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר נִדְּעַ בְּכַנּוּי מְלוֹכִנִי. וְכִךְ
הוּא שָׁם קֵץ לְעֲקֻשְׁנוֹת וּלְגָאוֹת הָאֲנָשִׁים,
אֲשֶׁר טָעְנוּ כִּי דָם אֲצִילִים דָּמָם; הִנֵּה, הֵם
הַשְׁפִּילוּ עַד כִּי נִכְנְעוּ וְהָיוּ כְּאֶחֱיהֶם, וְנִלְחָמוּ
בְּעֵז לְמַעַן חֲרוּתָם מִשְׁעָבוֹד.
- וּבִעֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁקַד מוֹרוֹנִי לְהַפְסִיק אֶת
הַמְּלָחְמוֹת וְהַמְּחִלּוֹקוֹת בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי עַמּוֹ
וּלְהַשִּׁיב חַיֵּי שְׁלוֹם וְתִרְבוּת, וּבִעֵת יִסְדּוּ

סְדָרִים לְהִתְכַּוֵּן לְמַלְחָמָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים, וְהִנֵּה פָּלְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר שְׂכָנָה עַל הַגְּבוּל לְחוּף הַיָּם.

against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

וְהַנְּפִיטִים, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ חֲזָקִים דִּים בְּעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי, נִהְדָּפוּ עַל יְדֵי עַמְלִיקָיָה, וְהוּא הָרַג רַבִּים מֵהֶם. וְעַמְלִיקָיָה תָּפַשׂ אֶת הָעִיר, וְכָל מִבְצָרֶיהָ נָפְלוּ בְּיָדוֹ.

23 And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

וְהַנִּמְלָטִים מֵעִיר מוֹרוֹנִי בָּאוּ אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה. גַּם אֲנָשֵׁי הָעִיר לְחֵי נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו, וְנִעְרְכוּ וְהָיוּ נְכוּנִים לְהִתְרָאוֹת פָּנִים עִם הַלְּמָנִים.

24 And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

אֲךָ עַמְלִיקָיָה לֹא הִתִּיר לְלָמָנִים לְצֵאת אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהּ, וְהִחֲזִיקָם לְחוּף הַיָּם; כֹּה הִסֵּב לְנַפְיִים לְהִחֲזִיק אֲנָשִׁים בְּכָל עִיר וְעִיר, לְשָׁמֹר וּלְהִגָּן עֲלֵיהֶן.

25 But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

וְכֹה הִתְקַדֵּם עַמְלִיקָיָה, וּתְפַשׂ עָרִים רַבּוֹת: אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיחָה, וְאֶת הָעִיר לְחֵי, וְאֶת הָעִיר מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, וְאֶת הָעִיר אוֹמְנֶר, וְאֶת הָעִיר גִּיד, וְאֶת הָעִיר מוּלֶק, כֻּלָּן בְּפִאֲתֵי מִזְרָח, לְחוּף הַיָּם.

26 And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

כֹּה כָּבְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים, בְּעֶרְמַת עַמְלִיקָיָה, עָרִים כֹּה רַבּוֹת עַל יְדֵי חִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיָה לָהֶם מִסָּפֶר, וְכָל מִבְצָרוֹת הַיָּם עַל פִּי הַיָּם מוֹרוֹנִי, וְהִשְׁגִּיקוּ מִבְצָרֵי עֹז לְלָמָנִים.

27 And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

וְאַחֵר זֹאת צָעְדוּ חֵילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים אֶל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ רִבְשָׁפֶע, וְהִדְּפוּ אֶת הַנְּפִיטִים לְפָנֵיהֶם וְהָרְגוּ בָּהֶם רַבִּים.

28 And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

אֲךָ שָׁם הֵם נִתְּקְלוּ בְּטִיאַנְקוּם, אֲשֶׁר הָרַג אֶת מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן, וְעָצַר אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו הַנִּמְלָטִים.

29 But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

וְהָיָה כִּי הוּא עָצַר אַף אֶת עַמְלִיקָיָה הַמִּתְקַדֵּם עִם צְבָאוֹ הָעֶצְוִם לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת אֶרֶץ רִבְשָׁפֶע וְאֶת אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.

30 And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

וְהִנֵּה, עַמְלִיקָיָה נָחַל אֲכֻזָּה כִּי נִהְדָּף בְּיַד טִיאַנְקוּם וְאֲנָשָׁיו. כִּי הִלְלוּ הָיוּ מְלֻמְּדֵי מִלְחָמָה, וְכָל אִישׁ מִחֵיל טִיאַנְקוּם עָלָה עַל הַלְּמָנִים בְּכָחוֹ וּבְכֹשֶׁר לְחִימָתוֹ, עַד כִּי הִשְׁגִּינוּ יְתְרוֹן עַל הַלְּמָנִים.

31 But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

וְאֲנָשֵׁי טִיאַנְקוּם הִטְרִידוּ אוֹתָם וְהָרְגוּ בָּהֶם עַד רֵדֶת הַחֹשֶׁכָה. וְטִיאַנְקוּם וְאֲנָשָׁיו נָטוּ אֶת

32 And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum

עֲלֵמָא נָא:לֵג-נָב:ה

אֶהְלִיָּהֶם עַל גְּבוּל אֶרֶץ רִב־שָׁפַע; וְעַמְלִיקִיָּה
נָטָה אֶת אֹהֲלָיו בְּפִאֲתֵי הַחוּף, בְּקִרְבַּת שְׂפַת
הַיָּם; וּבְאַפֿן זֶה נִהְדָּף צָבָאוֹ.

and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful;
and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the
seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

וַיָּרֶדֶת הַלַּיְלָה, הִתְגַּבְּבוּ טִיאֲנָקוּם וְנוֹשְׂא
כְּלָיו, וְהִלְכוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵה עַמְלִיקִיָּה, וְהִנֵּה כָּל־
שְׂקוּעִים בְּתִרְדֵּמָה יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָנְעוּ רַבּוֹת בַּעֲמַל
הַיּוֹם וּבְחֶמּוֹ.

33 And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his
servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of
Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their
much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

וְטִיאֲנָקוּם הִתְגַּבְּבָהּ בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי אֶל תּוֹךְ אֹהֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ
וַתִּקַּע חֲנִית בְּלִבּוֹ; כִּהְרָף עֵין הַמִּית אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ
וְאִף אֶחָד מִמְּשָׁרְתָיו לֹא הִתְעוֹרָר.

34 And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king,
and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king
immediately that he did not awake his servants.

וְטִיאֲנָקוּם שָׁב בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי אֶל מַחֲנֵהוּ, וְהִנֵּה
אֲנָשָׁיו יֹשְׁנִים. וְהוּא הֵעִירָם וְסִפֵּר לָהֶם אֵת
כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה.

35 And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men
were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he
had done.

וְהוּא צִוָּה אֶת חֲיָלָיו לְעִמּוּד מוֹכְנִים, כִּן יִקְיִצוּ
הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וַיָּבֹאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם.

36 And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the
Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, וְכֹה תָמוּ יְמֵי עַמְלִיקִיָּה.

37 And thus ended the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over
the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Amalickiah.

נב

52

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים
בְּעַם נְפִי, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִקְיִצוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם
בְּבִקְרַת הָרָאשׁוֹן אֲשֶׁר לַחֹדֶשׁ הָרָאשׁוֹן, וְהִנֵּה
הֵם רָאוּ כִּי עַמְלִיקִיָּה מֵת בְּתוֹךְ אֹהֲלֹו וְכִי
טִיאֲנָקוּם הָיָה מוֹכֵן לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם בּוֹ בַּיּוֹם.

1 And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the
judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke
on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah
was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to
give them battle on that day.

וּבְרִאיוֹתָם זֹאת הֵם תְּרִדּוּ וְאִף נָטְשׁוּ אֶת
תְּכֵנִיתָם לְצַעַד אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן; וְהֵם נִסּוּגוּ
עִם כָּל צָבָאָם אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֵק, וּבִקְשׁוּ
מִגֹּן בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם.

2 And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and
they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward,
and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought
protection in their fortifications.

אִז מָנָה אַחֵי עַמְלִיקִיָּה לְמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם; וְשִׁמּוֹ
נִקְרָא עֲמֹרוֹן. כֹּה הַמֶּלֶךְ עֲמֹרוֹן תַּחַת אַחֵי
הַמֶּלֶךְ עַמְלִיקִיָּה.

3 And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king
over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron,
the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

וְעֲמֹרוֹן צִוָּה אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְהַחֲזִיק בְּעָרִים אֲשֶׁר
נִכְבְּשׁוּ בְּדָמִים, כִּי הֵם לֹא כָּבְשׁוּ אִף עִיר אַחַת
בְּלֹא שְׂפִיכַת דָּם רַב.

4 And it came to pass that he did command that his people should
maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood;
for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

וּבְרִאיוֹת טִיאֲנָקוּם כִּי הַלְּמָנִים נִחוּשִׁים
בְּדַעְתָּם לְהַחֲזִיק בְּעָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ וּבְחִבְלֵי

5 And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to
maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land

עלמא נב:ו-יג

- הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר תִּפְשׂוּ, וּבִרְאוֹתוֹ גַּם אֶת עֵצִים
מִסְפָּרָם, הוּא חָשַׁב כִּי אֵין תּוֹעֵלֶת בְּנִסּוֹת
לְהִתְקִיפָם בְּעוֹדָם בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם.
- וְהוּא הִצִּיב אֶת אַנְשָׁיו סָבִיב-סָבִיב, כְּאֵלּוּ
עֲרַכְם לְמִלְחָמָה; וּלְמַעַשְׂהָ הָכִין טִיאֲנֻקוֹם אֶת
הַגְּנָתָם עָלֵיהֶם; כִּי הוּא שָׁפַף סוּלָלוֹת עֶפֶר
מִסָּבִיב וְהָכִין מְקוֹמוֹת מִחֻסָּה.
- וְכֵן הוּא הִתְכַּוֵּן לְמִלְחָמָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח
אֵלָיו מוֹרוֹנִי אַנְשִׁים רַבִּים, לְהַגְבִּיר אֶת חֵילוֹ.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי אֵף שָׁלַח אֵלָיו פְּקֻדוֹת כִּי יַחְזִיק אֶת
כָּל הַשְּׁבוּיִים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ לְיָדוֹ; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
תִּפְשׂוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים, יַחְזִיקוּ כָּל
הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים כְּכֹפֶר תְּמוּנֹת הַשְּׁבוּיִים
אֲשֶׁר הֵם לָקְחוּ.
- וְהוּא אֵף צִוָּה אֶת טִיאֲנֻקוֹם לְבַצֵּר אֶת אֶרֶץ
רֶב-שֹׁפַע וּלְהַבְטִיחַ אֶת הַמַּעְבָּר הַצָּר הַמּוֹכִיל
אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, פֶּן יִשְׁתַּלְטוּ הַלְּמָנִים עַל הַמָּקוֹם
הַהוּא וְיִהְיֶה לָאֵל יָדָם לְהַטְרִידָם בְּכָל עֵבֶר.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי בִקֵּשׁ מִמֶּנּוּ לְשֹׁמֵר בְּנִיאֲמֻנוֹת אֶת
אֲזוֹרוֹ, וְאֵף כִּי יִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּכָל שַׁעַת כְּשֶׁר
לְהַכּוֹת בְּלִמְנִים אֲשֶׁר בְּאֲזוֹר הוּא כָּל אֲשֶׁר
יֻכַּל, אוֹלֵי יֻכַּל לְהָשִׁיב, בְּתַחְבוּלָה אוֹ בְּאִפְּן
אַחֵר, אֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִלְקְחוּ מִיָּדֵיהֶם. וְעוֹד
הוּא בִקֵּשׁ, כִּי יִבְצֹר וַיַּחְזִק אֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר
מִסָּבִיב וְלֹא נָפְלוּ לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהוּא אֵף אָמַר אֵלָיו: רְצוֹנִי לָבוֹא אֵלֶיךָ, אֵף
הִנֵּה הַלְּמָנִים בָּאִים עָלֵינוּ בְּגִבּוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ
אֲשֶׁר לְחוּף הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, וְהִנֵּנִי יוֹצֵא עָלֵיהֶם;
לִכֵּן לֹא אוּכַל לָבוֹא אֵלֶיךָ.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ עֲמוֹרוֹן יָצָא מֵאֶרֶץ זִרְעֵה־מֶלֶךְ,
וְהוֹדִיעַ לְמִלְכָּה עַל מוֹת אָחִיו. וְהוּא אָסַף
אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים וְעָרָף מִסָּע לְקִרְאָת הַנְּפִיִּים
אֲשֶׁר עַל חוּף הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי.
- בְּזֹאת הוּא הִתְאַמֵּץ לְהַטְרִיד אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים
וּלְמַשׁוֹךְ חֶלֶק מִחִילוֹתֵיהֶם אֶל אֲזוֹר הָאָרֶץ
הַהוּא, בְּעוֹד כִּי אֶת הַחִילִים אֲשֶׁר הִפְקִיד עַל
הַחֲזָקָה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְבְּשׁוּ מִקֹּדֶם, צִוָּה
- which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity
of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should
attempt to attack them in their forts.
- 6 But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war;
yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by
casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.
- 7 And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni
had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.
- 8 And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the
prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many
prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a
ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.
- 9 And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land
Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land
northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should
have power to harass them on every side.
- 10 And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful
in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every
opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was
in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some
other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and
that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which
had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.
- 11 And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the
Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and
behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.
- 12 Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla,
and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his
brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had
marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.
- 13 And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away
a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded
those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that
they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and

עלמא נב:יד-כא

שִׁטְרֵי־דָא אֲפִי הִם אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַגְּבוּל,
לִיד הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרְחִי, וְכִי יִכְבְּשׁוּ אֶת הַשְּׂטָחִים
כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֻכְּלוּ, כְּפִי עֲצָמַת חִילוֹתֵיהֶם.

should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power,
according to the power of their armies.

הִנֵּה, כֹּה כְּרוּכִים בְּסִכְנָה הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים
בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

14 And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the
ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the
people of Nephi.

וּבְשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים קָבַל
טֵאנְקוּם פְּקֻדָּה מֵאֵת מוֹרוֹנִי. כִּי מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר
יָסַד אֶת הַצָּבָא לְהִגָּן גְּבוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ בְּדָרוֹם
וּבַמֶּזְרָב, הֵחֵל אֶת מַסְעוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ רֵב־שֹׁפֶעַ
לְמַעַן סִיעַ לְטֵאנְקוּם, עַל יְדֵי אֲנָשָׁיו, בְּהִשָּׁבַת
הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָבְדוּ לָהֶם.

15 But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign
of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had
established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the
land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he
might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they
had lost—

וְהִנֵּה, הַפְּקֻדָּה לְטֵאנְקוּם הָיְתָה לְעָרֹךְ
הַתְּקֵפָה עַל הָעִיר מוּלֵק וּלְכַבְּשָׁהּ שׁוּב,
אִם נָתַן הַדָּבָר לְהַעֲשׂוֹת.

16 And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an
attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

לְכֹן נִעְרָךְ טֵאנְקוּם לְהַתְּקֵפָה עַל הָעִיר מוּלֵק
וּלְמַסַּע צָבָאוֹ עַל הַלְּמָנִים. וְאוּלָם הוּא רָאָה
כִּי לֹא יֻכָּל לִגְבֹּר עַל הַלְּמָנִים בְּהִיוֹתָם חוֹסִים
בְּמִבְצָרֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן הוּא נָטַשׁ אֶת תְּכַנִּיתוֹ
וְשָׁב אֶל הָעִיר רֵב־שֹׁפֶעַ וְהִמָּתִין לְבוֹא מוֹרוֹנִי,
לְקַבֵּל תְּגִבְרַת לְצָבָאוֹ.

17 And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack
upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the
Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower
them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned
his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the
coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

וְהָיָה כִּי מוֹרוֹנִי הִגִּיעַ עִם צָבָאוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ רֵב־
שֹׁפֶעַ בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

18 And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of
Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וּבְרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְשִׁמוֹנָה נֶאֱסָפוּ
מוֹרוֹנִי וְטֵאנְקוּם וְרָבִים מִשָּׂרֵי הַצָּבָא לְמוֹעֶצֶת
מִלְחָמָה, לְהוֹעִץ מֵה יַעֲשׂוּ לְמַעַן הִסֵּב לַלְּמָנִים
לְצִאתָם עֲלֵיהֶם לְקָרֵב, אוֹ לְפָתוֹתָם בְּדָרוֹךְ פְּלִשְׁתִּי
לְצִאתָם מִתּוֹךְ מַעֲזֵיהֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁיִגוּ יִתְרוֹן
עֲלֵיהֶם וְיָשִׁיבוּ מִיַּדֵּיהֶם אֶת הָעִיר מוּלֵק.

19 And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni
and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—
what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them
to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their
strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again
the city of Mulek.

וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ שְׁלִיחִים אֶל חֵיל הַלְּמָנִים הַמְּפֻקָּד
עַל שְׁמִירַת הָעִיר מוּלֵק, אֶל מְפַקְּדָם אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ
נְקָרָא יַעֲקֹב, וּבִקְשׁוּהוּ לְצִאתָם עִם צָבָאוֹ,
לְהִתְרַאוֹת עִמָּם פָּנִים בְּמִישׁוֹר אֲשֶׁר בֵּין שְׁתֵּי
הָעָרִים. וְאוּלָם יַעֲקֹב, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אִישׁ זֹרָמִי, לֹא
אָבָה לְצִאתָם עִם צָבָאוֹ לְהַפְגִּישׁ עִמָּם בְּמִישׁוֹר.

20 And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites,
which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was
Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet
them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who
was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon
the plains.

וּכְאֲשֶׁר אֶפְסָה תְּקוּת מוֹרוֹנִי לְפָגֵשׁ אֶת
הַלְּמָנִים בְּתַנָּאִים שְׂוִים, הוּא עָרַךְ תְּכַנִּית
לְפָתוֹתָם לְצִאתָם מִמַּעֲזֵיהֶם.

21 And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them
upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might
decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

- 22 Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched into the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.
- 23 And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.
- 24 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.
- 25 And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.
- 26 And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.
- 27 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.
- 28 And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.
- 29 Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.
- 30 Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.
- 31 And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand,
- לְכֹן הוּא צִוָּה עַל טֵיאַנְקוּם לְקַחַת עִמּוֹ אֲנָשִׁים מִסְפָּר וּלְרִדֹּת אֶל חוּף הַיָּם. וּמֹרֹנִי וּצְבָאוֹ צָעְדוּ בַּלַּיְלָה אֶל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר בְּמַעְרֵב הָעִיר מוּלֶק. וּלְמַחֲרָתָּהּ, כְּאֲשֶׁר גָּלוּ שׁוֹמְרֵי הַלְּמָנִים אֶת טֵיאַנְקוּם, הֵם מָהְרוּ וְסָפְרוּ אֶת הַדָּבָר לַיַּעֲקֹב, מִפְּקֻדָּם.
- אִזּוּ יָצְאוּ חֵילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים לְקִרְאָתָּהּ טֵיאַנְקוּם, בְּסִבְבָּרָם כִּי יִגְבְּרוּ עָלָיו מִפְּנֵי מִסְפָּרָם הַמְעַט. וְכִרְאוֹת טֵיאַנְקוּם אֶת חֵילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים יוֹצְאִים עֲלֵיהֶם, הוּא הֵחֵל לִסְגֹּת אֶל עֶבֶר חוּף הַיָּם צָפוֹנָה.
- וְהָיָה בִּרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִים כִּי בּוֹרַח הוּא מִפְּנֵיהֶם, הֵם אָזְרוּ עֹז וְרָדְפוּ אַחֲרָיו בְּאַמֶּץ. וּבְעוֹד טֵיאַנְקוּם מְרַחֵק אֶת הַלְּמָנִים הָרוֹדְפִים אַחֲרָיו לְשׂוּא, פָּקַד מֹרֹנִי עַל חֶלֶק מִצְבָּאוֹ אֲשֶׁר עִמּוֹ לְהִתְקַדֵּם אֶל תּוֹךְ הָעִיר וּלְכַבְּשָׁהּ.
- וְכֵן עָשׂוּ. וְהֵם הִרְגוּ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַרוּ לְהִגָּן עַל הָעִיר; אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִנִּיחוּ אֶת כְּלֵי נֶשֶׁקָם.
- כֹּה כָּבַשׁ מֹרֹנִי אֶת הָעִיר מוּלֶק עַל יְדֵי חֶלֶק מִצְבָּאוֹ, בְּעוֹד הוּא עֹצְמוֹ צָעֵד עִם שְׂאֵר הַצָּבָא לַפִּגְשׁ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים בְּשׁוּבָם מִרְדֵּף אַחֲרֵי טֵיאַנְקוּם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵי טֵיאַנְקוּם עַד אֲשֶׁר הִתְקַרְבוּ אֶל הָעִיר רִב־שִׁפְעָה. שָׁם הֵם נִתְקְלוּ בְּלַחִי וּבְחֵיל קָטָן, אֲשֶׁר הִשָּׂאָה לְשִׁמּוֹר עַל הָעִיר.
- וְכִרְאוֹת שְׂרֵי צְבָא הַלְּמָנִים אֶת לַחִי וּצְבָאוֹ בָּאִים עֲלֵיהֶם, הֵם נָסוּ בְּבִהְלָה, מִיִּרְאַתָּם פֶּן יִשְׁיִגֶם לַחִי בְּטָרֶם יִגְיעוּ אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֶק; כִּי הֵם עֵיפוּ מִמַּסָּעָם, בְּעוֹד אֲנָשֵׁי לַחִי הָיוּ רַעֲנָנִים.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא יָדְעוּ כִּי מֹרֹנִי וּצְבָאוֹ מֵאַחֲרֵיהֶם. כָּל פֶּחָדָם הָיָה מִלַּחִי וּמֵאֲנָשָׁיו.
- וְלַחִי לֹא חָפֵץ לְהִשְׁיִגֶם בְּטָרֶם יִפְגְּשׁוּ בְּמֹרֹנִי וּבְצְבָאוֹ.
- וְהָיָה בְּטָרֶם הִרְחִיקוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּנִסְיָנָתָם, הַקִּיפּוּם הַנִּפְיִים, אֲנָשֵׁי מֹרֹנִי מָזָה וְאֲנָשֵׁי לַחִי

מְזָה, כָּלֶם רַעֲנָנִים וּמְלָאִים מֶרֶץ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר
הַלְּמָנִים יָגְעוּ מִפְּנֵי מִסְעָם הָאָרָךְ.

and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

וּמֹרֹנִי פָקַד אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם עַד
אֲשֶׁר יִנְיִחוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם.

32 And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

וַיַּעֲקֹב מִפְּקֻדָּם, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה זֹרַמִּי, אִישׁ עָשׂוּי
לְבָלִי חַת, הִנְהִיג בְּחִמָּת זַעְמוֹ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים
בְּקֶרֶב עַל מֹרֹנִי.

33 And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צָבָא מֹרֹנִי עַל נְתִיב מִסְעָם, הָיָה
יַעֲקֹב תַּקִּיף בְּדַעְתּוֹ לְהִרְגֵם וּלְהַבְקִיעַ דָּרָךְ בְּתוֹךְ
צָבָאָם בְּמִסְעוֹ אֶל הָעִיר מוֹלֵק. אַף הִנֵּה, מֹרֹנִי
וְאֲנָשָׁיו חִזְקוּ מֵהֶם וְלֹא נִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵי הַלְּמָנִים.

34 Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָחֲמוּ בִּשְׁנֵי הָעֲבָרִים בְּחִמָּה
שְׂפוּכָה. רַבִּים הָיוּ הִרְגוּם בִּשְׁנֵי הַמַּחְנוֹת;
מֹרֹנִי נִפְצַע וַיַּעֲקֹב נָהָרַג.

35 And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

וְלֵחִי וּגְבוּרֵי חִילוֹ לָחֲצוּ אֶת מַאֲסָף צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים
בְּחִמָּה עֲזָה, עַד כִּי מָסְרוּ לַיָּדֵיהֶם חִילוֹ מַאֲסָף
אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם; וּשְׂאִרֵיהֶם, אַחֲזִי בְּהִלָּה
וּמְבוּכָה, לֹא יָדְעוּ אִם לְהַמְלִיט אִם לְהִלָּחֵם.

36 And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whether to go or to strike.

וְכִרְאוֹת מֹרֹנִי אֶת מְבוּכָתָם הוּא אָמַר
אֲלֵיהֶם: אִם תָּבִיאוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וְתִסְגְּרוּם
לַיָּדִינוּ, נַחְדֵּל מִשְׁפָּךְ אֶת דַּמְכֶם.

37 Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

וְהָיָה כְּשִׁמְעַת הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, בָּאוּ
כָּל שָׂרֵי צָבָאָם אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בַּחַיִּים וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ
אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם לְרַגְלֵי מֹרֹנִי וְאֵף צִוּוּ אֶת
אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן.

38 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים מֵהֶם מָאָנוּ. וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר לֹא
הִסְגִּירוּ אֶת חַרְבֹּתֵיהֶם נִלְקְחוּ וְנִכְבְּלוּ, וְכָלִי
נִשְׁקָם נִלְקְחוּ מֵהֶם. וְהֵם אֵלְצוּ לָצֵאת לְמִסְעָם
עִם אַחֵיהֶם אֶל אֶרֶץ רַב־שְׂפָע.

39 But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

וּמִסְפַּר הַשְּׁבוּיִים עָלָה עַל מִסְפַּר הַהִרְגוּם.
אֲכֹן, רַב מִסְפָּרָם מִמִּסְפַּר הַרוּגֵי שְׁנֵי הַצְּדִידִים.

40 And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

וְהִנֵּפִיִּים שָׂמוּ שׁוּמְרִים עַל שְׁבוּיֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִים,
וְאֵלְצוּם לָצֵאת לְקַבֵּר אֶת מֵיתֵיהֶם וְאֵף אֶת

1 And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea,

עֲלֵמָא נג:ב-ח

מִתֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, הַהֲרוּגִים בְּקָרְבַּ. וּמֹרֹנִי מָנָה
עֲלֵיהֶם אֲנָשִׁים, לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת עֲבוֹדָתָם.

אִזְ הָלַךְ מֹרֹנִי, וְלַחִי עִמּוֹ, אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֶק,
וְהוּא לָקַחָהּ וַיִּתְּנָהּ לְלַחִי לְפָקוּדָה. וְלַחִי הָיָה עִם
מֹרֹנִי בְּרַב קְרָבוֹתָיו, וְהוּא הָיָה אִישׁ כְּמֹרֹנִי.
וְהֵם שָׂמְחוּ, אִישׁ בְּבִטְחוֹן רֵעֵהוּ, אַכְּוֹ, הֵם
אָהְבוּ אִישׁ אֶת רֵעֵהוּ, וְאִף כָּל עִם נָפִי אָהְבָם.

וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת הַלְּמָנִים לִקְבֹּר אֶת מִתֵּיהֶם וְאֶת
מִתֵּי הַנְּפִיִּים, הֵם הִרְחִקוּ שׁוּב אֶל אֶרֶץ
רַב־שָׁפַע. וְטִיאֲנֻקוּס צָוָם, עַל פִּי פְקֻדַּת
מֹרֹנִי, כִּי יַחֲלוּ בַּעֲבוֹדוֹת חֲפִירֵת תְּעֹלָה סָבִיב
הָאֶרֶץ, אוֹ הָעִיר רַב־שָׁפַע.

וְהוּא צָוָם לְבָנוֹת חוֹמַת קוֹרוֹת עַל הַשָּׂפָה
הַפְּנִימִית אֲשֶׁר לְתַעֲלָה; וְהֵם עָרְמוּ עִפְרוֹ מִן
הַתְּעֹלָה עַל חוֹמַת הַקּוֹרוֹת. כֹּה הֵם הִעֲבִידוּ
אֶת הַלְּמָנִים עַד אֲשֶׁר הִקִּיפוּ אֶת הָעִיר רַב־שָׁפַע
בְּחוֹמַת עֵץ וְעָפָר חֲזָקָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַה לְגִבָּה רַב.

מִן הָעֵת הַהִיא הִפְכָּה הָעִיר הַזֹּאת מִבְּצָר חֲזָק
מְאֹד. וְהַנְּפִיִּים הִשְׁגִּיחוּ בַּתּוֹךְ הָעִיר הַזֹּאת עַל
הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים; וְזֹאת בַּעֲדוֹם מְקָפִים בְּחוֹמָה
אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ לְבָנוֹתָהּ בְּמֹו יְדֵיהֶם. וּמֹרֹנִי נֶאֱלָץ
לְהַעֲבִיד אֶת הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי קָל הָיָה לְהִשְׁגִּיחַ
עֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת עֲבוֹדָתָם; וְהוּא רָצָה כִּי כָּל חִילוֹתָיו
יַעֲמְדוּ לְרִשּׁוֹתוֹ כְּאֲשֶׁר יִתְקַף אֶת הַלְּמָנִים.

כֹּה זָכָה מֹרֹנִי בְּנִצְחוֹן עַל אֶחָד מִחִילוֹת
הַלְּמָנִים הַגְּדוֹלִים בְּיוֹתֵר וְהַשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל הָעִיר
מוּלֶק, אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה אֶחָד מִמְּאֲחֹזֵי הַלְּמָנִים
הַחֲזָקִים בְּיוֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר בְּאֶרְצוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכֹה
הוּא בָּנָה מִבְּצָר לְהַחֲזִיק בּוֹ אֶת שְׁבוּיָיו.

וְלֹא יָסַף מֹרֹנִי לְצִאֵת לְמִלְחָמָה בַּלְּמָנִים
בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא; הוּא הִעֲסִיק אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו בְּהַכְנוֹת
לְמִלְחָמָה, וּבִבְנִית בְּצוּרִים לְהִגָּנָה מִפְּנֵי
הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִף בְּהַצֵּלֶת נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם
מִרָעָב וּמִסָּכָל וּבְהַסָּפָקֶת מִזֶּן לְצָבָאוּ.

וְהָיָה בְּעֵת הַתְּרַחֲקוֹת מֹרֹנִי מִחֻבַּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
לְיַד הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, בְּדָרוֹם, נִצְלוּ חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים
שֶׁעָתָה כָּשָׁר, מִפְּנֵי סָכְסוּף אֲשֶׁר תִּגְלַע בְּקָרְבַּ
הַנְּפִיִּים, אֲשֶׁר הִסֵּב לְמַחֲלָקֶת בֵּינֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי
תִּפְשׁוּ עָרִים מִסָּפֶר בְּחֻבַּל הָאֶרֶץ הַהִיא.

and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

2 And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

3 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

4 And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

5 And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the lands of the Nephites; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

8 And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

- 9 And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.
- 10 And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.
- 11 And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.
- 12 And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.
- 13 But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.
- 14 But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.
- 15 And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.
- 16 But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.
- 17 And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.
- כה, מפני עוון בתוכם, אכן, מפני מריבה וסכסוכים בינם לבין עצמם, הפכו נסבותיהם להיות חמורות בסכנותיהן.
- ועתה, יש לי לומר דבר-מה על אנשי עמון, אשר היו בתחלה למנים; ואשר על ידי עמון ועמיתיו, כלומר בכח אלהים ודברו, הפכו מאמיני יהוה. אלה הובאו אל ארץ זרעהמלה ומאז היו הנפיים מגנייהם.
- וען אשר נשבעו את שבועתם, הם נשמרו מאחז בנשק על אחיהם; כי נשבעו כי לעולם לא יוסיפו לשפוך דם. ועל פי שבועתם היו אומנם קלים, כי נכונים היו לפל לידי אחיהם, אלמלא רחמי עמון ועמיתיו ושפע אהבתם להם.
- על זאת הובאו אל ארץ זרעהמלה; והנפיים היו מגנייהם מיום בואם.
- והיה כאשר ראו אלה את הסכנה ואת הפגעים והתלאה הרבה אשר נשאו הנפיים למענם, נכמרו רחמיהם והם בקשו לאחז בנשק להגנת ארצם.
- והנה, כאשר אמרו לקחת את כלי נשקם, שכנעו דברי הילמן ואחיו, כי כבד עמדו להפר את השבועה אשר נשבעו.
- כי הילמן ירא פן יאבדו את נפשותיהם בעשותם פן. לכן נאלצו כל הבאים בברית הזאת לחזות בסבל אחיהם בעתות הסכנה והמצוקה האלה.
- ואולם היו להם בנים רבים, אשר לא באו בברית האלה להמנע מנשק להגן על עצמם מפני אויביהם. לכן, כל אשר יכלו לשאת נשק מאלה נקבצו בעת ההיא, והם קראו עצמם נפיים.
- והם כרתו ברית להלחם למען חרות הנפיים; אכן, להגן על הארץ אף בחרוף נפשם. והם נשבעו שלא לוותר לעולם על חרותם, וכי הם ילחמו בכל עת להגן על הנפיים ועל עצמם משעבוד.

- 18 Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.
- 19 And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.
- 20 And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.
- 21 Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.
- 22 And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.
- 23 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וּמִסְפַּר הַצְעִירִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ
בְּבְרִית וּלְקַחוּ אֶת נִשְׁקָם לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרֶצָם,
אֲלֵפִים אִישׁ.
- וְהֵנָּה, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ עַד הַיּוֹם הַהוּא
לְמַעֲמָסָה וּלְתַקְלָה לְנַפְיִים, הֵם נַעֲשׂוּ עֲתָה,
בְּעֵת הַזֹּאת, לְסִמּוֹךְ וּלְמִשְׁעִנָּה. וְהֵם לְקַחוּ אֶת
כָּלֵי נִשְׁקָם וּבִקְשׁוּ כִּי הֵיִלְמוּ יִהְיֶה מִנְהִיגָם.
- כָּלֶם הָיוּ צְעִירִים וְהֶצְטִינוּ בְּעַזְ רוּחָם, וְכֵן
בְּעֵצָם יָדָם וּבִפְעֻלָּה. וַיִּתְּרָה מִזֹּאת, כָּכָל אֲשֶׁר
הִפְקְדוּ הָיוּ נְאֻמָּנִים תָּמִיד.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשֵׁי אֱמֶת וּמִפְּכָחִים,
כִּי הֵם לָמְדוּ לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים
וּלְלַכֵּת לִפְנֵיו בְּמִישְׁרִים.
- וְהֵיִלְמוּ צֶעֶד בְּרֹאשׁ אֲלֵפִים חִילָיו הַצְעִירִים
אֶל גְּבוּל הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם, לִיד חוּף הַיָּם
הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לְמַעַן חֲזֹק אֶת הָעָם הַשׁוֹכֵן שָׁם.
- וְכֵן תִּמְּהָ שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשִׁפְט
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעָם נִפְי.

נִד

54

- 1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.
- 2 And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.
- 3 Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.
- 4 Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:
- וְהָיָה בְּשֵׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְתִשְׁעַ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשׁוֹפְטִים, שָׁלַח עַמּוֹרוֹן אֶל מֹרוֹנִי בִקְשָׁה
לְהַחֲלִיף שְׁבוּיִים.
- וּמֹרוֹנִי שָׂמַח מְאֹד עַל הַבִּקְשָׁה הַזֹּאת,
כִּי רָצָה לְסַפֵּק לְבָנָי עִמּוֹ אֶת הַמְּזוֹן אֲשֶׁר
קִבְּלוּ הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלָּמָנִים, וְכֵן רָצָה לְהַשְׁבִּי
אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְמַעַן חֲזֹק אֶת צְבָאוֹ.
- וַיַּעַן כִּי שָׁבוּ הַלָּמָנִים נָשִׁים וְיָלָדִים רַבִּים,
בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר בֵּין כָּל שְׁבוּיֵי מֹרוֹנִי, בֵּין הַשְּׁבוּיִים
אֲשֶׁר הוּא שָׁבָה, לֹא הָיְתָה אַף אִשָּׁה אַחַת,
וְלֹא הָיָה אַף יָלֵד אֶחָד, עַרְךָ מֹרוֹנִי תִכְנִית
לְהַשְׁיֵיג אֶת מֵרֵב הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַנִּפְיִים אֲשֶׁר
יֻכַּל לְקַבֵּל מֵאֵת הַלָּמָנִים.
- לְכֵן הוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת וּשְׁלַחָה בְּיַד מְשִׁרְתָּ
עַמּוֹרוֹן, הוּא אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא אֶגְרָת לְמֹרוֹנִי. וְאֵלֶּה
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב מֹרוֹנִי אֵלָיו, לֵאמֹר:

הַנִּנִּי כּוֹתֵב לָךְ, עֲמֹרֹרֹן, עַל אֹדוֹת הַמִּלְחָמָה
אֲשֶׁר עָרַכְתָּ עַל עַמִּי, וּבִיָּתֶר דִּיּוּק, אֲשֶׁר עָרַךְ
אֶחָיִךְ עָלֵינוּ, וְאֲשֶׁר גָּמְרְתָּ אֲמֹר לְהַמְשִׁיכָהּ
אַחֵר מוֹתוֹ.

5 Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

הִנֵּה, רְצוֹנִי לֹמֵר לָךְ דְּבָרִים אֲחָדִים עַל
אֹדוֹת צָדֵק אֱלֹהִים וְעַל חֶרֶב זַעֲמוֹ הָעֹלִיּוֹן,
הַתְּלוּיָהּ עַל צוֹאֲרָהּ, בְּלִתִּי אִם תָּשׁוּב מִרְעֻתָּךְ
וְתָשִׁיב אֶת חִילוֹתֶיכֶם אֶל אֶרְצְכֶם, אֶל אֶרֶץ
נַחֲלַתְכֶם, הִיא אֶרֶץ נָפִי.

6 Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

אָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי לֹמֵר לָךְ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
אִם יָכוֹל אַתָּה לְשַׁמֵּעַ אֲלֵיהֶם; אָכֵן, לֹמֵר לָךְ
עַל אֹדוֹת שְׂאוֹל הָאֵימָה הַמְּצַפָּה לְקַבֵּל
רוֹצְחִים כְּמוֹתְךָ וּכְאֶחָיִךְ, בְּלִתִּי אִם תָּשׁוּבוּ
מִרְעֻתְכֶם וְתַחְדְּלוּ מִמְּזֻמוֹת רָצַח וְתָשׁוּבוּ עִם
חִילוֹתֶיכֶם לְאֶרְצְכֶם.

7 Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

וְאוֹלָם, כָּפִי שֶׁדְּחִיתֶם לְפָנַי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה מִפְּנֵיכֶם וּיְצַאתְכֶם לְהִלָּחֵם בָּעַם יְהוָה,
כֵּן מְצַפָּה אֲנִי כִי תוֹסִיפוּ לְדַחוֹתָם.

8 But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

לְכֵן הִנֵּנוּ נִכְוִנִים לְהִתְרַאוֹת עִמָּכֶם פָּנִים; אָכֵן,
אִם לֹא תַחְדְּלוּ מִמְּזֻמוֹתֵיכֶם, הִנֵּנֶכֶם מוֹרִידִים
עָלֵיכֶם אֶת חֲמַת הָאֵל אֲשֶׁר מְאַסֶּתֶם אוֹתוֹ,
לְכִלוֹתְכֶם תְּכָלִית כָּלִיוֹן.

9 And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

חֵי יְהוָה כִּי יָקוּמוּ חִילוֹתֵינוּ עָלֵיכֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם
תִּסּוּגוּ לְאַחֹר, וְעַד מִהֲרָה יִשְׁיַגְּכֶם הַמָּוֶת; כִּי
הַחֹזֶק נִחְזָק בְּעָרֵינוּ וּבְאֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ. אָכֵן, בְּדַתֵּנוּ
נִדְבָק וּבְעֵנָנוּ אֱלֹהֵינוּ נִחְזָק.

10 But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

אֲךְ נִרְאָה לִי כִי לִשְׂוֹא אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר עִמָּךְ עַל
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; נִרְאָה לִי כִי כֵן שְׂאוֹל אַתָּה;
עַל כֵּן אֶחָתָם אֶת אֲנִי אֶתִּי בְּאֶמְרִי לָךְ כִּי לֹא
אֶחְלִיף שְׁבוּיִים עִמָּךְ, כִּי אִם בְּתַנָּאִי כִּי
תִשְׁחַרְרוּ אִישׁ וְאִשְׁתּוֹ וְיִלְדָיו תַּמּוּרַת שְׁבוּי
אֶחָד. אִם כֹּה תַעֲשׂוּ, אֶסְכֶּם לְחִלּוּפִים.

11 But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

וְהִיא אִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ כֵן, בְּחִילוֹתֵי אָבוֹא
עָלֵיכֶם. אֶת נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶת טַפְּנוּ אֶחְמֹשׁ וְעָלֵיכֶם
עֲלֵה אֶעֱלֶה; וְאֲנִי אֶרְדֶּה אַחֲרֵיכֶם, אִף עַד
אֶרְצְכֶם אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ נַחֲלַתֵּנוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאֲנִי
יִשְׁפּוֹף דָּם תַּחַת דָּם, אָכֵן, נָפֶשׁ תַּחַת נָפֶשׁ. וְאֲנִי
אֶלְחֹם בָּכֶם עַד הַכְּחָדְכֶם מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה.

12 And behold, if you do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

- 13 Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.
- הִנֵּה, זֹעֵם אֲנִי, וְכֹן עַמִּי. אַתֶּם בִּקְשָׁתֶם לְהַרְגֵנוּ, וְאֲנַחְנוּ בִקְשָׁנוּ רַק אֶת הַגָּנוּתָנוּ. וְרָאוּ, אִם תּוֹסִיפוּ לְבַקֵּשׁ לְהַשְׁמִידֵנוּ, נִבְקֵשׁ אֲנַחְנוּ לְהַשְׁמִידְכֶם; וְאִף אֶת אֶרְצֵנוּ נִבְקֵשׁ, אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתֵנוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה.
- 14 Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.
- הֲנִי חֹתֵם אֶת אֲגֻרְתִּי, אֲנִי מוֹרוֹנִי, מְנַהֵיג לָעָם הַנִּפְיִים.
- 15 Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:
- וְהָיָה כַּאֲשֶׁר קָבַל עֲמֹרוֹן אֶת הָאֲגֻרָה הַזֹּאת, הוּא הִתְקַצֵּף וְכָתַב אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי אֲגֻרָת שְׁנִית. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לֵאמֹר:
- 16 I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.
- אֲנִי עֲמֹרוֹן, מֶלֶךְ הַלְּמָנִים. אֲנִי אֲחִי עַמְלִיקִיָּה אֲשֶׁר רָצַחְתֶּם; נָקוּם אַקֶּם אֶת דָּמוֹ מִכֶּם. הֲנִי בָּא עֲלֵיכֶם בְּחִילוֹתִי, כִּי אֵינֶנִּי יֵרָא מֵאִיוּמִיָּה.
- 17 For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.
- כִּי הִנֵּה אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הִרְעוּ לְאֲחֵיהֶם, וְגָזְלוּ אֶת זְכוּתָם לְשִׁלְטוֹן אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה עַל פִּי הַצֶּדֶק.
- 18 And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.
- וְעַתָּה, אִם תִּנְיְחוּ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָכֶם, וְתִכְנְעוּ לְשִׁלְטוֹן אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם הַשִּׁלְטוֹן עַל פִּי הַזְכוּת, אֲזִי אֲצַוָּה עַל בְּנֵי עַמִּי לְהַנִּיחַ אֶת כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם וּלְחַדֵּל מִמִּלְחָמָה.
- 19 Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.
- הִנֵּה, הִרְבִּיתִּי לְהַפְחִיחַ אִיוּמִים עָלַי וְעַל עַמִּי, אִף אֵינֶנּוּ יֵרָאִים מֵאִיוּמִיָּה.
- 20 Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.
- וְאוֹלָם, מִסְכִּים אֲנִי בְּרָצוֹן לְחִלּוּפֵי שְׁבוּיִים, כְּבִקְשָׁתְךָ, לְמַעַן הוֹתִיר אֶת הַמְּזוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי בְּעִבּוֹר חִילִי. וְאֲנַחְנוּ נִלָּחֵם מִלְחָמַת עוֹלָם, אִם לְהַכְנִיעַ אֶת הַנִּפְיִים לְשִׁלְטוֹנֵנוּ וְאִם לְהַכְחִידָם לְעוֹלָם.
- 21 And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a thing, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.
- וּבְאֲשֶׁר לְאוֹתוֹ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר עָלְיוֹ אֲמַרְתָּ, כִּי מְאַסְנוּהוּ, אֵינֶנּוּ מַכִּירִים דְּבַר כֵּזֶה, וְאִף אַתֶּם אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים אוֹתוֹ. וְאִם אֲמַנְתֶּם קִים דְּבַר כֵּזֶה, יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ אִף כִּי עָשָׂה הוּא אוֹתָנוּ כְּעֹשׂוֹתוֹ אֶתְכֶם.
- 22 And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.
- וְאִם אָכֵן קִימִים שָׁטָן וּשְׂאוּל, הֲאִם הוּא לֹא יִשְׁלַח אוֹתְךָ שָׁמָּה, לְדוֹר עִם אֲחִי אֲשֶׁר רָצַחְתָּ, אֲשֶׁר רָמַזְתָּ כִּי הָלַךְ לְמָקוֹם כֵּזֶה? אִף אֵין לְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חֲשִׁיבוֹת.

- 23 I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.
- אֲנִי עֲמֹרוֹן, נֶצֶר לְזֹרָם, אֲשֶׁר כָּפוּהוּ
אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם לְצֵאת מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 24 And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.
- לִמְנִי אֲמִיץ לֵב אֲנִי. הַמִּלְחָמָה הַזֹּאת נִעְרְכָה
לְגִמּוֹל עַל הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם לָהֶם, וּבַעֲבוּר
לְקַבֵּל וּלְקַיֵּם אֶת זְכוּתָם לְשִׁלָּט. וּבִזָּה אֲנִי
חוֹתֵם אֶת אֲגִרָתִי לְמוֹרוֹנִי.

נה

55

- 1 Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הָאֲגִרָה הַזֹּאת
גָּבַר רָגְזוֹ, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי עֲמֹרוֹן הַכִּיר הַיֵּטֵב
כִּי דִבְרֵי תַרְמִית דִּבֶּר וְהוּא יָדַע כִּי עֲמֹרוֹן יָדַע
כִּי לֹא צוּדְמָה הָיְתָה הַמִּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר עָרַף עַל
עַם נְפִי.
- 2 And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: לֹא אֶקִּים חִלּוּפֵי שְׁבוּיִים עִם
עֲמֹרוֹן. בְּלִתי אִם יִחְדַּל מִמְּזַמְתּוֹ, כְּדִבְרֵי
אֲגִרָתִי; כִּי לֹא אֶתֵּן לוֹ לְהִרְבוֹת עֲצָמָה
עַל עֲצָמָתוֹ.
- 3 Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.
- הִנְנִי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ שׁוֹמְרִים
הַלְּמָנִים אֶת בְּנֵי עַמִּי הַשְּׁבוּיִים; וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא
יָקִים עֲמֹרוֹן אֶת דִּבְרֵי אֲגִרָתִי, אֶתֵּן לוֹ אֲנִי
כְּאֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי; אֲכַוֵּה בְּקֹשׁ אֲבִקֵּשׁ לָזַרַע בֵּהֶם
מָוֶת עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְחַנְּנוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת שָׁלוֹם.
- 4 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.
- וְכַאֲמֹר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא צִוָּה
לְחַקֵּר בֵּין אֲנָשָׁיו, הֲיֵשׁ בֵּהֶם מִזֶּרַע לָמָן.
- 5 And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.
- וְהֵם מָצְאוּ אִישׁ אֶחָד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא
לָמָן; וְהוּא אֶחָד מִשְׁתָּרְתֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר
עֲמָלִיקְיָה רָצְחוֹ.
- 6 Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי צִוָּה עַל לָמָן וְעַל מִסְפָּר מֵאֲנָשָׁיו לְצֵאת
אֶל מְקוֹם הַמִּשְׁמָר אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הַחֲזָקוֹ הַנֶּפְתִּיִם.
- 7 Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.
- וְהַנֶּפְתִּיִם הֻחָזְקוּ בְּעִיר גִּיד; לְכֵן מָנָה מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת
לָמָן וְצִוָּה כִּי אֲנָשִׁים אֲחָדִים יֵלְכוּ עִמּוֹ.
- 8 And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר בָּא הָעֶרֶב, הָלַךְ לָמָן אֶל הַמִּשְׁמָר
הַמִּפְקָד עַל הַנֶּפְתִּיִם. וּבִרְאוֹתָם אוֹתוֹ קָרַב וּבָא
קִרְאוּ אֵלָיו בְּקוֹל; וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: אַל תִּירְאוּ, אֲנִי
לָמָנִי.

- הַנְּנִי לְמָנִי. נִמְלִטְנוּ מִיַּד הַנְּפִיִּים בְּעוֹדָם
יִשְׁנִים, וְהִנֵּה לָקַחְנוּ מִיָּנֶם וְהִבֵּאְנוּ עִמָּנוּ.
- 9 Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.
- 10 But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;
- 11 For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.
- 12 And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.
- 13 And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.
- 14 And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.
- 15 And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.
- 16 And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;
- 17 Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.
- 18 But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.
- 19 But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם לָמֵן: הִבֵּה נִשְׁמֹר אֶת יַיִנְנוּ עַד
אֲשֶׁר נֵצֵא לְקִרְאָת הַנְּפִיִּים לְקָרֵב. וְאוֹלָם דְּבָרָיו
אֵלֶּה הִגְבִּירוּ אֶת תְּשׁוּקָתָם לְשָׂתוֹת מִן הַיַּיִן.
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ: יָגַעִים אֲנַחְנוּ, עַל כֵּן הִבֵּה נִשְׁתֶּה
מִן הַיַּיִן, וְעוֹד זְמַן מָה נִקְבֵּל אֶת מִנְת יַיִנְנוּ,
אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲזִיקֵנוּ לְצֹאֵת עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם לָמֵן: עֲשׂוּ כְּטוֹב בְּעֵינֵיכֶם.
- וְהֵם לָקְחוּ מִן הַיַּיִן כְּאֹנֶת נִפְשָׁם, וְהוּא עָרֵב
לִחְכָם. וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְשָׂתוֹת מִמֶּנּוּ בִּיתָר
חֲרוּת; וְהָיָה עַז, כִּי לָקַד הוֹכֵן.
- וְהֵם שָׁתוּ וְעָלְזוּ, וְלֹא אָרְכָה הַשָּׁעָה עַד אֲשֶׁר
שָׁכְרוּ כָּלָם.
- וּבִרְאוֹת לָמֵן וְאֶנְשָׁיו כִּי כָּלָם שׂוֹכְרִים,
שָׁקוּעִים בְּתַרְדָּמָה עֲמֻקָּה, הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי
וְסִפְרוּ לוֹ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה.
- זֶה הָיָה עַל פִּי תַכְנִית מוֹרוֹנִי. וְהוּא הִקְדִּים
וְסִפֵּק נֶשֶׁק לְאֶנְשָׁיו. אַז הָלַךְ מוֹרוֹנִי אֶל הָעִיר
גִּיד, וּבְעוֹד אֲשֶׁר יָשְׁנוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנָה עֲמֻקָּה,
הִלְוִי מִיָּו, הוּא הִשְׁלִיךְ אֶת כָּלִי הַנֶּשֶׁק אֶל
הַשְּׁבוּיִים, עַד אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ הַכָּל חֲמוּשִׁים.
- אִף לְנָשׁוֹת הַשְּׁבוּיִים וּלְכָל בְּנֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ
לְהַפְעִיל כָּלִי מִלְחָמָה סִפֵּק מוֹרוֹנִי נֶשֶׁק וְהַכָּל
נַעֲשָׂה בְּשִׁקֵּט וּבְדַמְמָה.
- אֲלוּ הָעִירוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים, יָכְלוּ הַנְּפִיִּים לְהָרְגֵם,
כִּי שׂוֹכְרִים הָיוּ.
- אִךְ לֹא זֶה הָיָה רְצוֹן מוֹרוֹנִי. חֲפָצוֹ לֹא הָיָה
בְּרַצַּח וּבְשִׁפְכַת דָּמִים, כִּי אִם בְּהַצֵּלַת בְּנֵי
עַמּוֹ מִהַשְׁמָדָה. וְעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא אָבָה לְהַעֲטוֹת
עָלָיו עוֹלָה, לֹא הִתְנַפֵּל עַל הַלְּמָנִים לְהַשְׁמִידָם
בַּעַת שִׁכְרוֹנָם.

- 20 והנה, חפצו עלה בידו; כי הוא ספק נשק לשבויים הנפיים המקפים בחומת העיר, ונתן בידיהם כח להשתלט על חלקי העיר אשר בתוך החומה.
- 21 אז הוא צוה על האנשים אשר עמו לסגת מעט ולהקיף את צבא הלמנים.
- 22 כל זה נעשה בלילה. והיה כאשר הקיצו הלמנים בבקר, הם ראו כי הקיפום הנפיים מחוץ וכי שבויהם חמושים מבית.
- 23 כה נוכחו הלמנים כי רב כח הנפיים מכם, וכי לא תצמח תועלת בנסבות ההן להלחם בנפיים. לכן דרשו שרי צבאם לאסוף אליהם את כלי נשקם; והם הביאום אל הנפיים והשליכום לרגליהם, מתחננים לרחמים.
- 24 הנה, בזאת חפץ מורוני. הוא לקחם כשבויי מלחמה, וכבש את העיר וצוה לשחרר את כל השבויים הנפיים. אלה הצטרפו אל צבאו והיו לו תגברת גדולה.
- 25 אז צוה מורוני את הלמנים אשר שבה, כי יחלו במלאכת חזוק הבצורים אשר סביב העיר גיד.
- 26 וכאשר השלים את בצור העיר גיד, כחפצו, הוא צוה להעביר את שבויו אל העיר רב־שפע, אשר אף אותה שמר בכח צבא אדיר ורב.
- 27 ובעת ההיא, על אף כל מזמות הלמנים, עלה ביד הנפיים לשמר על כל שבויהם אשר לקחו ולהגן עליהם, ואף להחזיק בכל השטח וביתרון אשר השיבו להם.
- 28 והנפיים החלו לזכות שנית בנצחונות ולהשיב להם את זכויותיהם.
- 29 פעמים רבות נסו הלמנים להקיפם בלילה, אך בנסיונות האלה נשבו רבים מהם.
- 30 פעמים רבות נסו הלמנים להגיש לנפיים מיינם, בכונה להשמידם ברעל או בשכרות.
- But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.
- And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.
- Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.
- And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.
- Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.
- And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.
- And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.
- And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.
- And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.
- Many time did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.
- And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

- וְהִנֵּה, הַנְּפִיִּים לֹא מָהֲרוּ לְשָׁכַח אֶת יְהוָה
אֱלֹהֵיהֶם בְּעַת צָרָתָם זֹאת. אָכֵן, הֵם לֹא נָפְלוּ
בַּפֶּח וְלֹא טָעְמוּ מִן הַיַּיִן, בְּלֹא אִם הִקְדִּימוּ
לָתֵת מִמֶּנּוּ לְשִׁבּוּיֵים הַלְּמָנִים.
- כִּי הֵם נִזְהָרוּ לִבְל יִרְעַל אִישׁ מֵהֶם; כִּי
בְהִרְעִיל הַיַּיִן אִישׁ לְמָנִי, כִּן יִרְעִיל גַּם אִישׁ
נְפִי; כֹּה הֵם בָּחֲנוּ אֶת כָּל מִשְׁקָאוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וּבְעַת הַהִיא רָאָה מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי עָלָיו לְהִתְכַּוֵּן
לְמַלְחָמָה עַל הָעִיר מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן; כִּי הַלְּמָנִים
בְּצָרוֹ, בָּרַב עֲמָלָם, אֶת הָעִיר הַזֹּאת עַד אֲשֶׁר
הָיְתָה מִבְּצָר חֹזֶק וְאֲדִיר כָּח.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְמִידוּ בַּהֲבָאת כֹּחות חֲדָשִׁים
אֶל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת וְאֶף סִפְקוֹ לָהּ מִשְׁלוּחֵי מְזוֹן
חֲדָשִׁים בְּלִי חֲשֹׁף.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וְתִשְׁעָ לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- 31 But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.
- 32 And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.
- 33 And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.
- 34 And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.
- 35 And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

נו

56

- וּבִרְאִשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים,
בַּחֹדֶשׁ הָרִאשׁוֹן, בְּשָׁנִים לְחֹדֶשׁ, קָבַל מוֹרוֹנִי
אֶגְרָת מֵאֵת הֵילְמָן, וּבָהּ הוֹדְעָה עַל עֲנִינֵי הָעָם
בְּחֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא.
- וְאַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לֵאמֹר: אֲחִי הַיָּקָר
וְהָאֱהוּב, מוֹרוֹנִי, אֲחִי בְּאַמּוֹנֵת יְהוָה כְּבִתְלָאוֹת
מַלְחָמָתָנוּ; הִנֵּה, אֲחִי יְקִירִי, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה
לְהַגִּידָךְ עַל אוֹדוֹת מַלְחָמָתָנוּ בְּאֶזֶר הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּה.
- הֲנִי מְדַבֵּר עַל אֲלָפִים מִבְּנֵי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר
הֵבִיא עִמּוֹן מֵאֶרֶץ נְפִי, וַיְדַעְתָּ כִּי אֵלֶּה צִאֲצָאִי
לָמֶן, בְּכוֹר אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי.
- לָכֵן, אֵינֶנִּי צָרִיד לְחֹזֵר וּלְהַשְׁמִיעַךְ עַל אוֹדוֹת
מְסוֹרוֹתֵיהֶם אוֹ חֶסֶר אֲמוֹנָתָם, כִּי יִדְעָתָ אֶת
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- עַל כֵּן דִּי בְּאַמְרֵי לִךְ כִּי אֲלָפִים מִן הַעֲצִירִים
הָאֵלֶּה נִשְׂאוּ כָּלִי מַלְחָמָה וּבִקְשׁוּנֵי לְהִיּוֹת
מְנַהִיגִם; וְאֲנִיחָנוּ יִצְאָנוּ לְהִגֵּן עַל אֶרְצָנוּ.
- 1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.
- 2 And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.
- 3 Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;
- 4 Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—
- 5 Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

- 6 And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.
- 7 But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.
- 8 But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.
- 9 But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.
- 10 And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.
- 11 Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.
- 12 And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.
- 13 And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:
- 14 The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.
- 15 And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.
- הִנֵּה יָדַעְתָּ עַל הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי לֹא יֵאָחֲזוּ בְנִשְׁקָם עַל אֶחְיֵיהֶם לְשַׁפֵּךְ דָּם.
- וְאִלֵּם בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, בְּרֹאוֹתֵם אֶת צָרוֹתֵינוּ וְתִלְאוֹתֵינוּ לְמַעַנְם, הֵם עָמְדוּ לְהַפֵּר אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ בְּקִרְבָּתְךָ כְּלִי מִלְחָמָה לְמַעַן הַגָּתֵנוּ.
- וְאִנִּי לֹא יִכְלֹתִי לְהַתִּיר כִּי יִפְרוּ אֶת הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ, בְּחֶשְׁבִּי כִּי אֱלֹהִים יַחֲזִקֵנוּ, וְכִי לֹא יִרְבַּ סִּבְלָנוּ מִפְּנֵי הַשְּׂבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעוּ.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה דָבָר אֶחָד הַיָּכוֹל לְשִׁמְחָנוּ שְׂמִיחָה רַבָּה: בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, אֲנִי, הֵילְמָן, צָעִדְתִּי בְּרֹאשׁ אֲלָפִים הַצְעִירִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל הָעִיר יְהוּדָה, לְעֹזֹר לְאַנְטִיפּוֹס, אֲשֶׁר מִנִּיתָ לְמִנְהִיג עַל אֲנָשֵׁי חֶבֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא.
- וְאִנִּי צִרְפֵּתִי אֶת אֲלָפִים בְּנֵי, וְאֶבֶן רְאוּיִים הֵם לְהִקְרָא בְּנִים, לְצָבָא אֲנְטִיפּוֹס; וְעַל הַתַּגְבֵּרָת הַזֹּאת שְׂמַח אֲנְטִיפּוֹס מְאֹד, כִּי חִילוּ הַתְּמַעֵט עַל יְדֵי הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר חִילוּתֵיהֶם הִרְגוּ, לְמִרְבָּה אֶבְלָנוּ, רַבִּים מֵאֲנָשֵׁינוּ.
- וְאִלֵּם, נוֹכַח לְהַתְנַחֵם בְּכֹךְ כִּי לְמַעַן אֶרְצָם וּלְמַעַן אֱלֹהֵיהֶם מָתוּ וְכִי מֵאֲשָׁרִים הֵם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים אַף לָקְחוּ רַבִּים בְּשָׁבִי, כָּלֶם שָׂרֵי צָבָא, כִּי לֹא חָסוּ עַל חַיֵּי אִישׁ זֻלָּתָם. וְסָבוּרִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הֵם נִמְצְאִים עִתָּה בְּאֶרֶץ נֶפִי, אִם אֶבֶן לֹא הוּמָתוּ.
- וְאֵלֶּה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבְשׁוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּשִׁפְכַת דָּמִים כֹּה רַבִּים מִגִּבּוֹרֵינוּ:
- אֶרֶץ מִנְטִי, אוֹ הָעִיר מִנְטִי, הָעִיר זֶעֶזְרוֹם, הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי וְהָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.
- וְאֵלֶּה הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶן שָׁלַטוּ בְּעֵת הַגִּיעִי אֶל הָעִיר יְהוּדָה; וְאִנִּי מְצָאתִי אֶת אֲנְטִיפּוֹס וְאֶת אֲנָשָׁיו עֹמְלִים בְּכָל כֹּחַם לְבַצֵּרָה.

- 16 והם היו נדכאים בגוף וברוח, כי היה להם היום למלחמת גבורה והלילה לעמל למען הגן על עריהם; וכה הם סבלו כל מיני תלאות גדולות.
- 17 ונחושה היתה החלטהם לזכות בנצחון במקום ההוא או למות. לכן, תוכל להבין היטב כי החיל הקטן הבא עמי, אלה בני הפיח בהם תקנה גדולה ושמחה רבה.
- 18 וכראות הלמנים כי קבל אנטיפוס תגברת לצבאו, הם נאלצו, בפקדת עמורון, לחדל מהלחם על העיר יהודה או עלינו.
- 19 כה הטה לנו יהוה חסדו, כי אלו תקפוננו בעת חלשתנו זאת, אולי היו משמידים את צבאנו הקטן. אך הנה נשמרנו מזאת.
- 20 ועמורון צום להגן על הערים אשר כבשו. כך תמה שנת עשרים ושש. ובראשית שנת עשרים ושבע, הכינונו את עירנו ואותנו להגנה.
- 21 עתה חפצנו כי יתקפוננו הלמנים, כי לא רצינו לערוך עליהם מלחמה בעודם במבצריהם.
- 22 ואנחנו קימנו תצפיות סביבנו, לעקב אחר תנועות הלמנים, פן יחלפו לידנו בלילה או ביום, בדרךם לתקוף את ערינו האחרות אשר בצפון.
- 23 אכן ידענו כי הערים ההן לא היו חזקות דין להלחם בלמנים; על כן חפצנו להתנפל עליהם מאחור בעת אשר יעברו לידנו, אכן, לבוא עליהם מלפנים ומאחור. סברנו כי בידנו להכריעם, אך תולתנו זאת נכזבה.
- 24 הם לא העזו לעבר לידנו במלא צבאם ואף לא בחלקו, פן לא יעצרו כח וינגפו.
- 25 הם אף לא העזו לרדת להלחם בעיר זרעהמלה, או לחצות את עין צידון אל העיר נפיהה.
- 26 כה היו הלמנים וחילותיהם איתנים בדעתם להגן על הערים אשר תפשו.
- 16 Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.
- 17 And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.
- 18 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.
- 19 And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.
- 20 They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.
- 21 Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.
- 22 And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.
- 23 For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.
- 24 They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.
- 25 Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.
- 26 And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

- 27 And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא, בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַשֵּׁנִי, הִגִּיעְתָּנוּ צִידָה רַבָּה מֵאֵת הוֹרֵי אֲלָפִים בְּנֵי אֵלֶּה.
- 28 And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.
- גַּם אֲלָפִים אִישׁ נִשְׁלָחוּ אֵלֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַחְמֶלָה. כֹּה הָיִינוּ עֲרוּכִים בְּרִבּוֹא אִישׁ, וּבִצִּידָה אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם, וְאִף לְנִשְׁיָהֶם וּלְטַפָּם.
- 29 And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.
- וְכִרְאוֹת הַלְּמָנִיתִים כִּי כַחוֹתֵינוּ רַבִּים מְדֵי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, וְצִידָה מְגִיעָה לְסַעֲדָנוּ, נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם פַּחַד. וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְצֵאת לְהַתְקַפּוֹת כְּדֵי לְשִׁים קֶץ לְמִשְׁלוֹחֵי הַצִּידָה וּלְהַתְעַצְמוֹתָנוּ.
- 30 Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ כִּי הִדְבָּר הַדֶּרֶךְ אֶת מְנוּחַת הַלְּמָנִיתִים, רָצִינוּ לְהַפְעִיל עֲלֵיהֶם תַּחְבּוּלָה. עַל כֵּן צִוָּה אֲנִטִּיפּוֹס כִּי אֶסַּע עִם בְּנֵי הַצְעִירִים אֶל עִיר שְׂכֵנָה, כְּאִלּוּ הוֹבְלָנוּ צִידָה אֵלֶיהָ.
- 31 And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.
- הָיָה עָלֵינוּ לְנַסֵּעַ עַל יַד הָעִיר אֲנִטִּיפָרָה, כְּאִלּוּ פָּנִינוּ אֶל הָעִיר אֲשֶׁר מֵעֵבֶר לָהּ, בְּגִבּוֹל לֵיד חוֹף הַיָּם.
- 32 And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.
- כֹּה נִסְעָנוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר אָנַחְנוּ מִתְּרָאִים כְּנוֹשְׂאֵי צִידָה אֶל הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- 33 And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.
- וְאֲנִטִּיפּוֹס צָעַד עִם חֶלֶק צָבָא, וְאֵת הַנוֹתֵר הַשָּׂאִיר בְּעִיר לְהַגְנָתָהּ. וְהוּא לֹא יָצָא לְמַסָּעוֹ עַד אֲשֶׁר יָצָאתִי עִם צָבָאִי הַקָּטָן וְהַגָּעִתִּי אֶל קִרְבַּת הָעִיר אֲנִטִּיפָרָה.
- 34 And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.
- וּבְעִיר אֲנִטִּיפָרָה הָצַב הַצָּבָא הַחֲזָק בְּיֹתֵר, וְאִף הַגָּדוֹל בְּיֹתֵר אֲשֶׁר לְלְמָנִיתִים.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעוּ לָהֶם צוֹפִיָּהֶם, יָצְאוּ הַלְּמָנִיתִים בְּצָבָאָם וְהִתְקַדְּמוּ לְקִרְאֵתָנוּ.
- 36 And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;
- וְאֲנַחְנוּ נָסָנוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם צָפוֹנָה. כֹּה הוֹבְלָנוּ מִמְּקוֹמוֹ אֶת צָבָא הַלְּמָנִיתִים הַחֲזָק בְּיֹתֵר;
- 37 Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.
- אָכֵן, הִרְחַקְנוּ מִרְחָק נֹכַח. וּבִרְאוֹתָם אֶת צָבָא אֲנִטִּיפּוֹס רוֹדֵף אַחֲרֵיהֶם, בְּרַב כּוֹחַ, הֵם לֹא נָטוּ יְמִינָה אוֹ שְׂמֹאלָה כִּי הוֹסִיפוּ בְּמַסָּעָם בְּדֶרֶךְ יִשְׁרָה אַחֲרֵינוּ. סְבוּרִים אָנַחְנוּ כִּי כּוֹנְנִתָם הָיְתָה לְהַרְגֵנוּ בְּטָרִם יְשִׁיגָם אֲנִטִּיפּוֹס, וּבְאִפֵּן זֶה לְמַנֵּעַ אֶת כְּתוּרָם בְּיַד אֲנָשֵׁינוּ.

- 38 And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.
- 39 And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.
- 40 Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.
- 41 And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.
- 42 But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.
- 43 And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;
- 44 Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?
- 45 And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.
- 46 For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.
- 47 Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.
- 48 And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.
- וְכִרְאוֹת אֲנְטִיפּוֹס אֶת הַסִּכָּנָה הַנִּשְׁקָפָת לָנוּ, הוּא זָרָא אֶת צַעֲדָת צָבָאוֹ. וְהִנֵּה, יָרֵד הַלַּיְלָה, וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הִשְׁיִיגוּנוּ וְאֲנְטִיפּוֹס לֹא הִשִּׁיגָם. לָכֵן חָנִינוּ לַעֵת לַיְלָה.
- וּבִטְרָם יַעֲלֶה הַשַּׁחַר הַמְּשִׁיכּוֹ הַלְמָנִים לְרֹדְפֵנוּ, וְאִנְחָנוּ לֹא הָיִינוּ חֲזָקִים דִּינוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם. וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא עָלָה בְּדַעְתִּי לְהַתִּיר אֶת נַפְיִלַת בְּנֵי הַקְּטָנִים לְיַדֵּיהֶם, הַמְּשַׁכְּנוּ בְּמִסְעָנוּ וּפָנִינוּ אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת.
- וְהַלְמָנִים לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְהִמָּיִן אוֹ לְהִשְׁמָאִיל פֶּן יִכְתְּרוּ; וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכֻלְנוּ לַעֲמֹד בַּפְּנֵיהֶם, אִף אֲנִי לֹא נָטִיתִי יְמִינָה אוֹ שְׂמָאלָה פֶּן יִדְבִּיקוּנִי וַיִּהְרֹגוּנִי, וַיִּצְלִיחוּ לְהִמָּלֵט; כֹּה נִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת עַד רֹדֶת הַחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְהִנֵּה כַּאֲשֶׁר הָאִיר אוֹר הַבֹּקֶר, רָאִינוּ שְׁנִית אֶת הַלְמָנִים בָּאִים עָלֵינוּ וְנִסְגּוּ מִפְּנֵיהֶם.
- אִךְ הֵם לֹא הִרְחִיקוּ לְרֹדֵף אַחֲרֵינוּ, כִּי עָצְרוּ. הָיָה זֶה בַּבֹּקֶר הַיּוֹם הַשְּׁלִישִׁי לַחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁבִיעִי.
- וְאִנְחָנוּ לֹא יָדַעְנוּ אִם הִשִּׁיגָם אֲנְטִיפּוֹס; לָכֵן אָמַרְתִּי לְאֶנְשֵׁי: אוֹלֵי הֵם עָצְרוּ בַּעֲבוּר נִצָּא לְקִרְאָתָם, לְמַעַן יִלְכְּדוּנוּ בְּרִשְׁתָּם.
- מָה תֹאמְרוּ, בְּנֵי? הֲתִצָּאוּ לְקִרְאָתָם אֵלַי קָרֵב?
- הִנֵּה אָמַר לִּי, אָחִי הִיקָה, מוֹרוֹנִי, כִּי מַעֲוִדִי לֹא רָאִיתִי גְבוּרָה כֹּה רַבָּה, אֲכֹן, אִף לֹא בְּקָרֵב כָּל הַנִּפְיִים.
- כִּי בְּקִרְאִי לָהֶם תַּמִּיד בְּנֵי, בְּהִיּוֹת כָּלָם צְעִירִים מְאֹד, כֹּה אָמְרוּ אֵלַי: אָבָא, הִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים עִמָּנוּ וְהוּא לֹא יִתְּנֵנוּ לְנָפֶל; לָכֵן הָבָה נִצָּא לְקִרְאָתָם. לֹא הָיִינוּ הוֹרָגִים אֶת אַחֵינוּ אֱלֹו עֲזָבוּנוּ לְנַפְשָׁנוּ. לָכֵן, הָבָה נִלְכֶּה, פֶּן יִגְבְּרוּ עַל צָבָא אֲנְטִיפּוֹס.
- הִנֵּה, הֵם מַעֲוֹלִם לֹא נִלְחָמוּ, אִךְ אֶת הַמּוֹת לֹא יָרְאוּ. חֲרוֹת הוֹרִיָּהֶם יָקָרָה בְּעֵינֵיהֶם מִחַיָּהֶם; וְהֵם לָמְדוּ מֵאֲמוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי אִם לֹא יִתְּנוּ מְקוֹם לְסַפֵּק בְּלָבָם, הַצִּיל יִצְיִלֵם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם שָׁנְנוּ בְּאָזְנֵי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲמוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאָמְרוּ: בְּטוֹחִים אִנְחָנוּ כִּי יָדוּשׁ יִדְּעוּ זֹאת אֲמוֹתֵינוּ.

- 49 And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.
- אז פניתי אחור עם האלפים אשר לי ויצאתי לקראת הלמנים אשר דלקו אחרינו. והנה צבא אנטיפוס הדיביקם וקרבו נזרא התחולל.
- 50 The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.
- צבא אנטיפוס, אשר יגע מפני ארוך מסעו במשך זמן כה קצר, עמד לנפל לידי הלמנים; ולולא שבתי עם אלפים אנשי, היתה מוזמת עולה בידיהם.
- 51 For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.
- ואנטיפוס נפל בחרב, וכן נפלו רבים ממפקדי צבאו מפני עיפותם אשר הכריעתם במסעם הנחפו. ובמבוכת אנשי אנטיפוס כי נפלו מפקדיהם, הם החלו להכנע ללמנים.
- 52 And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.
- והלמנים התאזרו אמן והחלו לרדף אחריהם. כה רדפום הלמנים ברב עז, כאשר הילמן פשט עליהם מאחור עם אלפים החילים אשר לו והחל להפליא בהם הרג, עד כי עצר כל צבא הלמנים מרדיפתו ופנה אל הילמן.
- 53 Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.
- ובראות אנשי אנטיפוס כי הלמנים פנו מהם, הם כנסו את אנשיהם ועלו שנית על מאסף הלמנים.
- 54 And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.
- ואנחנו, אנשי נפי, אנשי אנטיפוס, ואני עם האלפים אשר לי, בטרנו את הלמנים והרגנום, עד כי הם נאלצו להתפרק מנשקם ולהתמסר כשבויי מלחמה.
- 55 And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.
- וכאשר נכנעו לנו הלמנים, מניתי את הצעירים אשר נלחמו עמי, כי חרדתי פן נהרגו רבים מהם.
- 56 But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.
- והנה, למרבה שמחתי, לא נפלה חלל אף נפש אחת מהם. הנה נלחמו כמו בכח אלהים; אכן, מעולם לא נודעו אנשים אשר נלחמו בעז נפלא אשר כזה; הם התנפלו בעצמה כה רבה על הלמנים, עד כי הפחידום והביאום למסור עצמם כשבויי מלחמה.
- 57 And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.
- וען אשר לא היה לנו מקום לשמר את שבויינו מחילות הלמנים, שלחנום אל ארץ זרעהמלה עם חלק מאנשי אנטיפוס אשר לא נהרגו; ואני לקחתי את הנותרים, וצרפתים אל העמונים הצעירים אשר עמי וצעדנו שוב אל העיר יהודה.

נז

57

- בַּעֲתָהּ הָיָא קִבְלָתִּי אֶגְרָת מֵאֵת הַמֶּלֶךְ
עֲמֹרֹן אֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעַנִי כִּי אִם אֲשַׁחֲרֶה אֶת
שְׂבוֹיֵי הַמֶּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר לָקַחְנוּ, יִמְסֹר הוּא
לִידְנוּ אֶת הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.
- וְאוּלַם אֲנִי שִׁלַּחְתִּי אֶל הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶגְרָת לֵאמֹר
כִּי בְטוּחִים אֲנִיחֵנוּ כִּי כַח צָבָאנוּ דִּיּוּ לְכַבֵּשׁ
אֶת הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה, וְכִי לֹא נִנְהַג בְּתַבּוּנָה
בְּשַׁחֲרָנוּ אֶת הַשְּׂבוֹיִים תְּמוּרַת הָעִיר הַזֹּאת,
וְרַק בְּחִלּוֹף שְׂבוֹיִים נִשְׁחַרֵּר אֶת הַשְּׂבוֹיִים
אֲשֶׁר בִּידְנוּ.
- וְעֲמֹרֹן דָּחָה אֶת אֶגְרָתִּי, כִּי לֹא רָצָה בְּחִלּוֹפֵי
שְׂבוֹיִים. עַל כֵּן הִחֲלוּנוּ בְּהִכְנוּת לְהִתְקַפֵּה עַל
הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה.
- וְאֲנָשֵׁי אֲנְטִיפָרָה נָטְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר וְנָסוּ אֶל
הָעָרִים הָאַחֲרוֹת אֲשֶׁר בִּידֵיהֶם, לְמַעַן בְּצָרָן;
וְכֹה נָפְלָה הָעִיר אֲנְטִיפָרָה לְיָדֵינוּ.
- כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשִׁלְטֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- וּבִרְאִשִׁית שְׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וְחָשַׁע קִבְלָנוּ אֶסְפָּקַת
מְזוֹן, וְכֵן תִּגְבַּרְתָּ לְצָבָאנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ זֶרְעֵחְמָלָה
וּמִן הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. שִׁשָּׁת אֲלָפִים אִישׁ
נֹסְפּוּ לָנוּ מִלְבָּד שְׁשִׁים מִבְּנֵי עַם עֲמֹן. אֵלָּה
בָּאוּ לְהַצְטָרֵף אֶל אַחֵיהֶם, גְּדוּדֵי הַקָּטָן אֲשֶׁר
מִנֵּה אֲלָפִים חֵל. הִנֵּה, הֵינּוּ חֲזָקִים וְאֶסְפָּקַת
מְזוֹן רַבָּה הוּבָאָה אֵלֵינוּ.
- וּרְצוֹנֵנוּ הָיָה לְצִאת לְקָרֵב עַל הַצָּבָא אֲשֶׁר
הִפְקִיד לְהִגֹּן עַל הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי.
- וְאֲנִי אֶרְאֶה כִּי עַד מִהֲרָה הוֹצֵאנוּ לַפְעַל אֶת
חֲפָצֵנוּ. אָכֵן, בְּחִילָנוּ הַגָּדוֹל, אוּ עִם חֲלָקוֹ,
הִקְפָּנוּ בַּלַּיְלָה אֶת הָעִיר קוּמֵנִי לְפָנוֹת הַמוֹעֵד
אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ אֲנִישֶׁיהָ לְקַבֵּל אֶסְפָּקַת מְזוֹן.
- בְּמִשְׁךְ לַיְלֹת רַבִּים חָנִינוּ סָבִיב הָעִיר; יִשְׁנוּ
עַל חֲרֻבּוֹתֵינוּ וְהִצַּבְנוּ שׁוּמְרִים, לְבַל יָבוֹאוּ עָלֵינוּ
הַלָּמָנִים לַיְלָה לְהִרְגָּנוּ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נָסוּ פְעַמִּים
רַבּוֹת; אֲךָ בְּכָל צֵאתָם עָלֵינוּ נִשְׁפָּךְ דָּמָם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.
- 2 But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.
- 3 And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.
- 4 But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.
- 5 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.
- 6 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.
- 7 And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.
- 8 And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.
- 9 And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

- 10 ואחר זמן מה הגיע משלוח אספקתם והם
עמדו להכנס אל העיר בלילה. ובמקום
הלמנים, היינו אנחנו, הנפיים. על כן תפשונו
אותם ואת אספקתם.
- 11 ועל אף הכרתת האספקה מן הלמנים באפן
הזה, היו הם נחושים בדעתם להגן על העיר;
לכן טוב היה בעינינו לקחת את האספקה
ההיא ולשלחה ליהודה, וכן להעביר את
השבויים אשר בידינו אל ארץ זרעהמלה.
- 12 ולא עברו ימים רבים ואבדה תקות הלמנים
לסייע; לכן הם מסרו את העיר לידינו. כה
בצענו את תכניתנו לתפש את העיר קומיני.
- 13 וכה רב היה מספר שבויינו, ואף כי מספר
חילינו היה עצום, נאלצנו להעסיק את כל
צבאנו במשמר עליהם, או להמיתם.
- 14 כי הם התפרצו בהמוניהם ונלחמו באבנים
ובאלות ובכל דבר אשר השיגה ידם, עד כי
הרגנו למעלה מאלפים מהם אחר אשר
נכנעו לידינו.
- 15 לכן היה זה נחוץ כי נשים קץ לחייהם,
או נובלים תחת משמר, בעוד חרבותינו
שלופות, אל ארץ זרעהמלה. גם אספקת
מזוננו לא הספיקה, כי אם בעבור אנשינו
בלבד, על אף את אשר לקחנו מן הלמנים.
- 16 ובמצב החמור הזה קשה היה להחליט בדבר
השבויים האלה; ואולם, אמרנו לשלח אותם
אל ארץ זרעהמלה. לכן בחרנו חלק מאנשינו
והפקדנום על השבויים לרדת אל ארץ
זרעהמלה.
- 17 אך למחרת יציאתם הם שבו אלינו ואנחנו
לא שאלנום על אודות השבויים, כי יד הלמנים
היתה בנו; והם שבו במועד להצילנו מנפל
לידיהם, יען אשר שלח עמורון לחזקם
אספקת מזון חדשה ואף צבא גדול.
- 18 והאנשים אשר שלחנום עם השבויים
הגיעו במועד לבלם את הלמנים, כי הם
עמדו לגבר עלינו.
- 10 At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter
the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites;
therefore, we did take them and their provisions.
- 11 And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support
after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city;
therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and
send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.
- 12 And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the
Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up
the city into our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in
obtaining the city Cumeni.
- 13 But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that,
notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to
employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.
- 14 For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight
with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into
their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of
them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.
- 15 Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their
lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla;
and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own
people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.
- 16 And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious
matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless,
we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore
we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners
to go down to the land of Zarahemla.
- 17 But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now be-
hold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold,
the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us
from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their
support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.
- 18 And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners
did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

- 19 But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.
- וְהִנֵּה, גְדוּדֵי הַקָּטָן, אֲשֶׁר מִנֵּה אֲלָפִים וְשֵׁשִׁים חֵיל, נִלְחָם בְּנַחֲשֹׁת רַבָּה. הֵם עָמְדוּ אֵיתָנִים מִוִּל הַלְּמָנִים וְחָלְקוּ מוֹת לְכָל אֲשֶׁר עָמַד בְּפָנֵיהֶם.
- 20 And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.
- וּבְעוֹד אֲשֶׁר שָׂאָר חֵילֵינוּ עָמְדוּ לְהִכָּנֵעַ לְלָמָנִים, הָיוּ הָאֲלָפִים וְשֵׁשִׁים הֵהֶם אֵיתָנִים וְעֲשׂוּיִים לְבָלִי חַת.
- 21 Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.
- הֵם צִיתוּ וְהִקְפִּידוּ לְבַצֵּעַ בְּדִיוק כָּל פְּקֻדָּה; וְכַפִּי אֲמוּנָתָם, כֵּן נַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם; וְאֲנִי זָכַרְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ לִי כִּי לְמִדּוֹם אֲמוּנָתָהֶם.
- 22 And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.
- הִנֵּה, עָלֵינוּ לְהוֹדוֹת לְבָנֵי אֵלֶּה וּלְאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִבְחָרוּ לְהַעֲבִיר אֶת הַשְּׁבוּיִים עַל הַנֶּצְחון הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה; כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִכְרִיעוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים, וְהִרְחִיקוּם אֶל הָעִיר מַנְטִי.
- 23 And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.
- וְאֲנַחְנוּ הִחֲזַקְנוּ בְּעִירֵנוּ קוּמֵנִי וְלֹא הִכְחָדְנוּ כָּלָנוּ; וְאוּלָם, נִגְרַמּוּ לָנוּ אֲבֵדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת.
- 24 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.
- וְאַחֵר נֹוֹס הַלְּמָנִים פָּקַדְתִּי מִיָּד לְהוֹצִיא אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי הַפְּצוּעִים מִבֵּין הַהָרוּגִים וְצִוִּיתִי לְחַבֵּשׁ אֶת פְּצָעֵיהֶם.
- 25 And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.
- וּמֵתוּד אֲלָפִים וְשֵׁשִׁים אֲנָשִׁים הָיוּ מָאֲתִים אֲשֶׁר הִתְעַלְפוּ מֵאֲבֹד דָּם; אֲף הִנֵּה, בְּטוֹב אֱלֹהִים וּלְהַפְתָּעֵתָנוּ הַרְבֵּה, וּלְשִׂמְחַת כָּל צָבָאֵנוּ, לֹא נִסְפְּתָה אֶף נֶפֶשׁ אַחַת מֵהֶם; וְאוּלָם, לֹא הָיָה אֶף אֶחָד מִבֵּינֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִפְצַע פְּצָעִים רַבִּים.
- 26 And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.
- וְהִנֵּה, הַשְׁתַּמְרוּתָם הַפְתִּיעָה אֶת כָּל צָבָאֵנוּ, כִּי אֵלֶּה נִוָּתְרוּ בְּחַיִּים בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אֵלֶּף מֵאֲחֵינוּ נִהָרְגוּ. וְאֲמָנָם מִיְּחֻסִּים אֲנַחְנוּ כָּל זֹאת לְכַח אֱלֹהִים הַנִּפְלָא, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם הִתְקִיפָה בְּאֲשֶׁר לְמִדּוֹם לְהֶאֱמִין, לֹא־מֹר, כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהֵי צֶדֶק וְכָל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוּ יִסְטִיל סֶפֶק, הַשְּׁמֵר יִשְׁמֵר עַל יְדֵי הַנִּפְלָא.
- 27 Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.
- הִנֵּה, זֹאת אֲמוּנַת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם דִּבַּרְתִּי; צְעִירִים הֵם וְדַעְתָּם אֵיתָנָה וְהֵם שְׂמִים אֶת מִבְטָחָם בְּאֱלֹהִים תָּמִיד.
- 28 And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר טַפְלָנוּ בַּפְּצוּעֵינוּ וְקִבְרָנוּ אֶת מֵתֵינוּ, וְאֶף אֶת מֵתֵי הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר מְרַבִּים

עלמא נז:כט-נח:א

- היו, חקרנו את גיד בדבר השבויים אשר לקחו עמם להורידם לארץ זרחמלה.
- 29 Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.
- 30 And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.
- 31 And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.
- 32 And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.
- 33 And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.
- 34 And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.
- 35 And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.
- 36 Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.
- והם קראו אלינו לאמר: חילות הלמנים מתקדמים אל עבר העיר קומני. הם יתקפוה וישמידו את אנשינו.
- והיה כי שמעו שבוינו את קריאותיהם; והם לבשו אומץ והתקוממו עלינו במרד.
- ומפני מרידתם הפגינו את חרבותינו אליהם. והם רצו כאיש אחד אל חרבותינו, וכה הומתו רבם. והנותרים מהם פרוצו ונמלטו מאתנו.
- ואחר אשר הם ברחו, ואנחנו לא יכלנו להשיגם, צעדנו במהרה אל העיר קומני. והנה, הגענו בשעה אשר יכלנו לעזור לאחינו להחזיק בעיר.
- ואכן, אף הפעם נצילנו מיד אויבינו. ברוך שם אלהינו, כי הוא אשר הצילנו, ועשה לנו את הדבר הגדול הזה.
- ואני, הילמן, בשמעי את דברי גיד אלה, מלאתי שמחה רבה מפני טוב אלהים לשמרנו, לבל נאבד כלנו. ומאמין אני כי נשמות ההרוגים באו אל מנוחת אלהיהם.

נח

58

- 1 And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.
- ועתה משימתנו היתה לתפוש את העיר מנטי. ואולם לא היתה לנו כל דרך להוציא את הלמנים מן העיר על ידי גדודינו הקטנים, כי הם זכרו את אשר עשינו עד כה. לכן לא יכלנו לפתותם לצאת ממעוזיהם.

- ומספר צבאם כה עצם ממספר צבאנו, עד כי לא העזנו להתקיפם בעודם במעוזיהם.
- 2 And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.
- והיה עלינו להעסיק את אנשינו בהגנת אזורי ארץ נחלתנו אשר השיבנו לשליטתנו; לכן היה עלינו לחכות לקבלת תגברת מארץ זרעהמלה וכן לאספקת מזון נוספת.
- 3 Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.
- אז שגרתי משלחת אל מושל ארצנו, להודיעו על אודות מצב אנשינו. ואנחנו חפינו לקבלת אספקה ולתגברת מארץ זרעהמלה.
- 4 And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.
- אך זאת לא הועילתנו דבר, יען אשר קבלו גם הלמנים תגברת גדולה, ואף אספקה רבה, מדי יום ביומו. כזה היה מצבנו בעת ההיא.
- 5 But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.
- והלמנים היו עורכים גיחות עלינו מדי פעם בפעם, כי זממו להשמידנו; אך אנחנו לא זכינו להקנס עמם לקרב, מפני מקומות מפלטם ומעוזיהם.
- 6 And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.
- ובנסבות הקשות האלה צפינו חדשים רבים לעזרה, עד כי כמעט גוענו מחסר מזון.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.
- ואולם, אחרי כן קבלנו מזון, אשר נשלח אלינו תחת שמירת צבא בן אלפים איש אשר בא לעזרנו. וזאת כל העזרה אשר קבלנו להגנתנו ולהגנת ארצנו מנפל ידי אויבינו, ולהלחם עם אויב אשר לא ימנה.
- 8 But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.
- ואנחנו לא ידענו את סבת המבוכה הזאת, מדוע לא נשלחה אלינו תגברת גדולה יותר. לכן נעצבנו ואף יראנו, פן יבוא על ארצנו דין אלהים, להשליכנו ולכלותנו תכלית כליון.
- 9 And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.
- לכן שפכנו את לבנו בתפלה לפני אלהים, כי יחזקנו ויצילנו מידי אויבינו, ואף כי יחזקנו למען נשמר על ערינו ואדמותינו ונחלותינו בעבור קיום עמנו.
- 10 Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.
- ויהוה אלהינו פקדנו בדברים, כי אכן יצילנו; והוא נתן שלוח לנפשותינו, והעניק לנו אמונה עזה, והפיח בנו תקוה כי הצל יצילנו.
- 11 Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

- 12 ואֲנַחְנוּ הִתְאַזְרְנוּ עִזְ בְּחִילָנוּ הַקָּטָן אֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְנוּ, וְנִמְרְנוּ אִמְרוּ לְהַכְנִיעַ אֶת אוֹיְבֵינוּ, וְלִהְיוֹת עַל אֲדֻמּוֹתֵינוּ וְעַל רְכוּשֵׁנוּ וְעַל נָשֵׁינוּ וְעַל יְלָדֵינוּ וְעַל עֲנָן חֲרוּתָנוּ.
- 13 כֹּה יֵצְאוּנוּ בְּכָל כֹּחֵנוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּעִיר מַנְטִי; וְנָטִינוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ אֶל עֵבֶר הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר לִיד הָעִיר.
- 14 וְלִמְחָרָת, כֹּאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הָיינוּ בְּגִבּוֹל הַיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר לִיד הָעִיר, הֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת מְרַגְלֵיהֶם לְסַבִּיבוֹתֵינוּ, לְגַלוֹת אֶת מִסְפַּר חִילֵינוּ וְאֵת כֹּחֵנוּ.
- 15 וּבְרֹאֲתָם כִּי אֵינָנוּ חֲזָקִים, עַל פִּי מִסְפָּרָנוּ, וּבְחֻשָּׁשָׁם כִּי נִנְתַּק אוֹתָם מִמְּקוֹר אֲסַפְּקָתָם, אִם לֹא יֵצְאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ וּלְהִרְגָנוּ, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמוּ כִּי יָקַל עֲלֵיהֶם לְכַלּוֹתָנוּ בְּצָבָאָם הָרַב, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהַעֲרוֹךְ לְקִרְאָת יִצְיָאָה לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ.
- 16 וְכֹאֲשֶׁר רָאינוּ כִּי הֵם נִעְרָכִים לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ, צִוִּיתִי אֶת גִּיד וּמִסְפַּר אַנְשֵׁים קָטָן לְהִסְתַּר בְּיַעְרוֹת, וְאֶת טְאוּמְנֵר וּמִסְפַּר אַנְשֵׁים קָטָן לְהִסְתַּר בְּיַעְרוֹת אֲףִי הֵם.
- 17 הִנֵּה, גִּיד וְאֲנָשָׁיו הָיוּ מִיְּמִין וְהָאַחֲרִים מִשְׁמָאל; וּבְעוֹד אֵלֶּה מִתְחַבְּאִים, נִשְׁאַרְתִּי אֲנִי, עִם שְׂאֵר צָבָאִי, בְּמִקְוֶה אֲשֶׁר נָטִינוּ בּוֹ אֶת אֹהֲלֵינוּ בְּרֹאשׁוֹנָה, לְקִרְאָת יִצְיָאָה הַלְּמָנִים הַצָּפוּיָה אֶל הַקָּרֵב.
- 18 אֲזִי יֵצְאוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּצָבָאָם הָרַב עָלֵינוּ, וּבִבּוֹאָם, כֹּאֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לְהִתְקַיֵּנוּ בְּחָרְב, צִוִּיתִי אֶת אַנְשֵׁי אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ לְסַגֵּת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- 19 וְהַלְּמָנִים רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵינוּ בְּמַהֲרָה רַבָּה, מִפְּנֵי תַשׁוּקָתָם הַעֲזָה לְהַשִּׁיגָנוּ וּלְהִרְגָנוּ; לָכֵן הֵם דָּלְקוּ בְּעִקְבוֹתֵינוּ אֶל תּוֹךְ הַיַּעַר. וְאֲנַחְנוּ עֹבְרֵנוּ בֵּין גִּיד וּבֵין טְאוּמְנֵר, אֲףִי הַלְּמָנִים לֹא גִלוּם.
- 20 וְכֹאֲשֶׁר חָלְפָם צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים, יֵצְאוּ גִיד וְטְאוּמְנֵר מִמְּקוֹם מִתְּחַבְּאוֹם וְנִתְּקוּ אֶת מְרַגְלֵי הַלְּמָנִים מֵעֵרָם, לְבָל יִשׁוּבוּ אֵלֶיהָ.
- And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.
- And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.
- And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.
- And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.
- And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.
- Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.
- And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.
- And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.
- And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

- 21 And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.
- 22 Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.
- 23 And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.
- 24 And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.
- 25 And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.
- 26 Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.
- 27 And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.
- 28 And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.
- 29 And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.
- 30 Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.
- 31 And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.
- וְאַחַר עֲשׂוּתָם זֹאת, הֵם רָצוּ אֶל הָעִיר וְתָקְפוּ
אֶת שׁוּמְרֶיהָ אֲשֶׁר נֹתְרוּ לְהִגֹּן עָלֶיהָ; וְהֵם
הִשְׁמִידוּם וְכָבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר.
- זֹאת קָרָה, כִּי הַלָּמָנִים הִנִּיחוּ לְכָל צָבָאָם,
זוֹלַת שׁוּמְרִים בּוֹדְדִים, לָצֵאת אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- בְּאִפֹּן זֶה הִצְלִיחוּ גִיד וְטֵאוֹמְנֵר לְהִשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל
מְעֻזֵּיהֶם. וְאַנְחֵנוּ, אַחֵר מִסַּע אֶרֶץ בֵּיעַר, שָׁמָּנוּ
פְּעָמֵינוּ אֶל עֵבֶר אֶרֶץ יִרְעָהְמְלָה.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר נֹכְחוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְדַעַת כִּי הֵם צוֹעֲדִים
אֶל אֶרֶץ יִרְעָהְמְלָה, גָּבַר פַּחַדָּם מְאֹד, פֶּן חֲרָשָׁה
מְזֻמָּה לְהוֹבִילָם אֵלָי כְּלִיוֹ; לָכֵן הֵם הִחִילוּ לִסְגֹּת
אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת, לָשׁוּב בְּדֶרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ בָּהּ.
- וְהִנֵּה, בַּלַּיְלָה הֵם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
סָבְרוּ שָׂרֵי צָבָאָם כִּי יָגֵעוּ הַנִּפְיִים מִמִּסְעָם.
וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר דָּמּוּ כִּי הֵם הִדְפּוּ אֶת כָּל צָבָאָנוּ,
הֵם הִתְעַלְמוּ מִן הָעִיר מִנְטִי.
- וּבִרְדֹּת הַלַּיְלָה צִוִּיתִי עַל אַנְשֵׁי לַחֲשׂוֹף
שָׁנָה מֵעֵינֵיהֶם וּלְצַעֵד לְקִרְאָת אֶרֶץ מִנְטִי
בְּדֶרֶךְ אַחֲרָת.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַל יְדֵי מִסְעָנוּ זֶה הַלַּיְלָה, הָיִינוּ לְמַחֲרָת
מֵעֵבֶר לְמַחְנֵה הַלָּמָנִים; כֹּה הִגַּעְנוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם
אֶל הָעִיר מִנְטִי.
- בְּתַחְבּוּלָה הַזֹּאת עָלָה בִּידֵנוּ לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת הָעִיר
מִנְטִי לֹלֵא שְׁפִיכַת דָּמִים.
- וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים אֶל קִרְבַּת הָעִיר,
וַרְאוּ כִּי נֹכְזִים אֲנַחְנוּ לִפְגֹּשָׁם, הֵם הִפְתָּעוּ
מְאֹד וְהָכּוּ בַּפֶּחַד גָּדוֹל, עַד כִּי נָסוּ אֶל הַיַּעַר.
- כֹּה נָסוּ חִילוֹת הַלָּמָנִים מִכָּל חֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ
הַזֶּה; אַף הֵם נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם נָשִׁים וְיִלְדִים רַבִּים
מִן הָאָרֶץ.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבְשׁוּ הַלָּמָנִים, כָּלֵן
נִמְצְאוֹת הַיּוֹם בִּידֵינוּ; וְהוֹרִינוּ וְנָשִׂינוּ וְיִלְדֵינוּ
שׁוֹבִים כָּלֵם אֶל בְּתֵיהֶם, מִבְּלַעֲדֵי הַשְּׁבוּיִים
אֲשֶׁר לְקַחוּם הַלָּמָנִים מֵאֶרְצָנוּ.

- 32 But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.
- 33 But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.
- 34 Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.
- 35 Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.
- 36 And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.
- 37 But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.
- 38 Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.
- 39 And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord had supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.
- 40 But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.
- 41 And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken
- ואולם, חילותינו קטנים מהחזיק מספר ערים כה רב ונחלות כה גדולות.
- על אף זאת, הננו שמים את מבטחנו באלהינו אשר נתן לנו נצחון בשטחים האלה, ועל ידי קבלנו את הערים והנחלות אשר היו קנייננו.
- איננו יודעים מדוע אין הממשלה נותנת לנו תגברת נוספת. אף האנשים אשר באו אלינו אינם יודעים מדוע לא קבלנו תוספת כח.
- איננו יודעים אם מפני חסר הצלחה העברת את הגיסות אל חבל הארץ ההוא. אם כן הדבר, איננו חפצים להתלונן.
- ואם אין הדבר כן, חוששים אנחנו כי יש בממשלה סיעה, אשר מפניה אין שולחים אלינו חילים נוספים לעזרתנו, יען אשר יודעים אנחנו כי רבים הם מאלה אשר שלחו אלינו.
- אך אחת היא; הננו בוטחים כי אלהים יצילנו על אף חלשת צבאנו, אכן, כי הוא יצילנו מידי אויבנו.
- הנה, זאת אחרית שנת עשרים ותשע ואנחנו מחזיקים באדמותינו, והלמנים נסו אל ארץ נפי.
- ובני עם עמון ההם, אלה אשר הללתיים בדברי, נמצאים עתה עמי בעיר מנטי; ויהוה תמכם ושמרם מנפל בחרב, עד כי לא נהרגה אף נפש אחת מהם.
- והנה, הם נפצעו פצעים רבים; על אף זאת, עומדים הם איתנים בחרות אשר על ידיה עשה אותם אלהים בני חרין; והם מקפידים לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם יום-יום. והם שומרים תמיד לקיים את חקיו ואת משפטי ואת מצוותיו; וחזקה אמונתם בנבואות על אשר עתיד לבוא.
- ועתה, אחי האהוב, מורוני, יהי רצון מלפני יהוה אלהינו, אשר גאלנו ועשנו חפשיים, לשמרם לפני תמיד; יהי רצון כי יחן את העם הזה, וכי יעלה בידו לקבל את השליטה על

כָּל אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ הַלְּמָנִים מֵאַתְנֹו, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה
לְמַחֲיָתָנֹו. וְהִנֵּנִי חֹתֵם אֶת אֲנִרְתִּי, אֲנִי הֵילָמָן
בֶּן עֲלָמָא.

from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine
epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

נֹט

59

וְהָיָה בְּשִׁנַּת שְׁלִישִׁים לְשִׁלְטֹון הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעַם
נָפִי, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר קָבַל מֹרֹנִי אֶת אֲנִרְתִּי הֵילָמָן
וְקִרְאָהּ, הוּא שָׂמַח מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי הַרוּחָה
וְהַהֲצָלָה הַמְרֻבָּה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה לְהֵילָמָן
בַּהֲשָׁבַת הַשְּׂטָחִים אֲשֶׁר אָבְדוּ.

1 Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over
the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's
epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the
exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands
which were lost.

וְהוּא הוֹדִיעַ אֶת הַדָּבָר לְכָל עַמּוֹ, בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ
אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב, בְּאַזְוֹר אֲשֶׁר יָשָׁב, לְמַעַן יִשְׂשֻׁוּ
אִף הֵם.

2 Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round
about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

וּמֹרֹנִי מֵהֵרָ לְשַׁלַּח אֲנִרְתִּי אֶל פְּחוֹרָן, וּבְקִשׁ
מִמֶּנּוּ כִּי יַצְוֶה לְקַבֵּץ אֲנָשִׁים לְחֹזֶק אֶת הֵילָמָן
וְחֵילוֹ, בְּעֵבֹר יָגֵן בְּקִלּוֹת עַל חֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא,
אֲשֶׁר הוּא הֶעֱלִיחַ לְהַשְׁבִּיב בְּדֶרֶךְ נֶס כֹּה גָדוֹל.

3 And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran,
desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen
Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease
maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously
prospered in regaining.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר שָׁלְחוּ אֶת הָאֲנִרְתִּי הַזֹּאת אֶל אָרֶץ
זָרַחֶמְלָה, הַחַל מֹרֹנִי שְׁנִית לְהַכִּין תַּכְנִית
לְהַשְׁבִּיב אֶת שְׂאֵר הַקְּנָזִים וְהָעִירִים אֲשֶׁר פָּבְשׁוּ
מֵהֶם הַלְּמָנִים.

4 And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land
of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the
remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had
taken from them.

וּבַעֲדָה מֹרֹנִי מִתְכַּוֵּן לְצִיאַת לְמַחְמָה עַל
הַלְּמָנִים, הִתְקִיפוּ אֵלָהּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי נְפִיָּהָה,
אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱסָפוּ מִן הָעִיר מֹרֹנִי וּמִן הָעִיר לְחִי
וּמִן הָעִיר מֹרִיאַנְטֹון.

5 And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations
to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah,
who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of
Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

אָכֵן, הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר אֱלָצוּ לְנוֹס מֵאָרֶץ מְנָטִי
וּמִן הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיבָהּ, בָּאוּ וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ אֶל
הַלְּמָנִים בְּחֶבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּה.

6 Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of
Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the
Lamanites in this part of the land.

וְכֵן עָצוּם וְרַב הָיָה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים, וְהוּא
הִתְחַזַּק מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ, עַד כִּי בִּפְקֻדַּת עֲמֹרֹון
הֵם יֵצְאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאֲנָשֵׁי נְפִיָּהָה וְהִחֲלוּ לְטַבֵּחַ
בָּהֶם טֶבַח רַב.

7 And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength
from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth
against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with
an exceedingly great slaughter.

אָכֵן, כֹּה עָצוּמִים הָיוּ חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי נֶאֱלָצוּ
שְׂאֵרֵי יוֹשְׁבֵי נְפִיָּהָה לְנוֹס מִפְּנֵיהֶם. וְהֵם בָּאוּ
אֶל צָבָא מֹרֹנִי וְחִבְּרוּ אֵלָיו.

8 And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people
of Nephihah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and
joined the army of Moroni.

וּבְהִנִּיחַ מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי יִשְׁלַחוּ חֵילִים מֵאַרְץ
זְרַעְחֶמְלָה אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיחָה, לְעֶזֶר לְיוֹשְׁבֶיהָ
לְהִגֹּן עָלֶיהָ; וּבִידְעוֹ כִּי קָל לְשָׁמֵר עַל הָעִיר
מִנִּפֹל לְיַד הַלְּמָנִים מֵאֲשֶׁר לָשׁוּב וּלְכַבֶּשָׁה
מִיָּדֵיהֶם, הוּא שָׁעַר כִּי עַל נִקְלָה יִגְנוּ אֲנָשֶׁיהָ
עַל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת.

לָכֵן הוּא הִחֲזִיק אֶת כָּל חֵילוֹ לְהִגֹּן עַל
הַמְּקוֹמוֹת אֲשֶׁר שִׁחְרָרָם.

וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי נִפְלָה הָעִיר נְפִיחָה,
הוּא נֶעְצֵב מְאֹד וְהָחֵל לִפְקֹק, פֶּן יִפֹּל הָעָם,
מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲנָשָׁיו, בְּיַד אֲחֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִים.

כֹּה נִרְאָה הַדְּבָר בְּעֵינָיו כָּל שָׂרֵי צָבָאוֹ. אִף הֵם
פִּקְּקוּ וְתַמְּהוּ עַל רָשָׁעַת הָעָם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי
נִצְחוֹן הַלְּמָנִים עָלֵיהֶם.

וּמוֹרוֹנִי רָגַז עַל אֲנָשֵׁי מְמַשְׁלָתוֹ, מִפְּנֵי
אֲדִישׁוּתָם בְּדִבְרֵי חֲרוֹת אֶרְצָם.

9 And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city Nephihah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

10 Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

11 And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephihah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

12 Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

13 And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

ס

60

וּמוֹרוֹנִי כָּתַב שֵׁנִית אֶל מוֹשֵׁל הָאֶרֶץ, פַּחוֹרָן.
וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתַב, לְאֹמֶר: הִנְנִי מִפְּנֵה
אֶת אֲגֻרְתִּי אֶל פַּחוֹרָן, אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר זְרַעְחֶמְלָה,
וְהוּא הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֶלְיוֹן וּמוֹשֵׁל הָאֶרֶץ, וְכֵן אֶל
כָּל הַנִּבְחָרִים עַל יְדֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה לְמִשָּׁל וּלְנִהַל
אֶת עֲנִינֵי הַמִּלְחָמָה הַזֹּאת.

כִּי הִנֵּה, יֵשׁ לִי דְבַר־מָה לֹאמַר לָהֶם, דְּבַר
הָאֲשָׁמָה. יְדוּעַ לָכֶם הֵיטֵב כִּי מִנִּיתֶם לַגִּיס
אֲנָשִׁים וּלְחַמְשֵׁם בְּחֻרְבוֹת וּבַפְּגִיזוֹת וּבְכָל
מִינֵי כָּלִי נָשֶׁק, וּלְשַׁלְּחֵם לְמִלְחָמָה עַל
הַלְּמָנִים בְּכָל חֲלָמִי אֶרְצָנוּ אֲשֶׁר יִפְּלֹשׁוּ.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי אֲנִי וְאֲנָשִׁי, וְכֵן הִילְמָן
וְאֲנָשָׁיו, סָבְלוּ סִבָּל גָּדוֹל מְאֹד; רָעַב וְצָמָא
וְיָגִיעָה וְכָל מִינֵי יְסוּרִים.

וְאֵלֹי הָיָה זֶה כָּל סָבְלָנוּ לֹא הִיָּתָה בְּפִינוּ תִּלְנָה
אוֹ טַעְנָה.

אֲדָּהֵנָּה, רַב הָיָה הַהֲרָג בְּקֶרֶב אֲנָשֵׁינוּ. אֲכֹן,
אֲלָפִים נָפְלוּ בַּחֲרֵב, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרֵת הָיוּ

1 And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

2 For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

3 And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

4 But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

5 But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been

יכולים להיות פני הדברים אלו שלחתם אל
חילותינו די תגברת ועזרה. אכן, רבה היתה
הזנחתכם אותנו.

if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for
them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

והנה, רצוננו לדעת את סבת ההזנחה
הגדולה והחמורה הזאת; אכן, חפצנו לדעת
את סבת מחדלכם מן המחשבה והדאגה.

6 And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great
neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

התחשבו כי תשבו על כסאות השלטון
שקועים בטמטום וקהות המחשבה, בעוד
אויביכם זורעים מות סביבכם, אכן, בעודם
רוצחים אלפים מאחיהם?

7 Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor,
while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea,
while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

אכן, אלה אשר נשאו עיניהם אליכם להגנה,
הם אשר הושיבוכם בתפקיד אשר תוכלו
לעזור להם. ואתם יכולתם לשלח אליהם חילים
לחקם ולהציל אלפים מהם מנפל בחרב.

8 Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have
placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye
might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and
have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

ואין זה הכל; מנעתם מהם את אספקת
המזון אשר בידיכם, עד כי רבים נלחמו
והגירו את דמיהם עד תמם לגוע, כי עז
רצונם היה טובת העם. וזאת עשו בהיותם
עומדים למות ברעב, אשר באם אחר
הזנחתכם הגדולה אשר הזנחתם אותם.

9 But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from
them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because
of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea,
and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger,
because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

ועתה, אחי האהובים, הן עליכם להיות
אהובים, ועליכם לעזור עצמכם ביד
שקידה למען טובת העם הזה וחרותו;
אך הנה, הזנחתם עד כי דם אלפים יחול
לנקמה על ראשכם, כי יודע אלהים את
כל שועותיהם ואת כל סבלותיהם.

10 And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye
ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the
freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch
that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance;
yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

התחשבו כי תוכלו לשבת על כסאות
שלטונכם ומפני טוב אלהים, השופע לרב,
לא תעשו דבר והוא יצילכם? אם כן
תחשבו, שוא מחשבתכם.

11 Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and
because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he
would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed
in vain.

התחשבו כי יען אשר נהרגו כה רבים
מאחיהם היה זאת מפני רשעתם? הנני אומר
לכם, כי אם כן תחשבו, שוא מחשבתכם.
אכן, אני אומר לכם: רבים נפלו בחרב, ואתם
אשמים בדאגה.

12 Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed
it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed
this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who
have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

כי מניח יהוה לצדיק להרג, למען יבוא דינו
ומשפטו על הרשע. על כן אל תחשבו כי
הריגת הצדיקים היא אבדנם, כי באים הם
אל מנוחת יהוה אלהיהם.

13 For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and
judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose
that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do
enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

- 14 And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.
- וְהִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יֵרָא אֲנִי מְאֹד כִּי מִשְׁפָּטֵי אֱלֹהִים יַחֲלוּ עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי רֹב רְפִיּוֹנוֹ, וּמִפְּנֵי רְפִיּוֹן מִמְּשָׁלֵתָנוּ וְהִזְנָחָתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה אֶת אֶחְיָהֶם, אַכֹּן, אֶת אֱלֹה אֲשֶׁר נִהְרְגוּ.
- 15 For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.
- הֵן לוֹלֵא הִרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר רִאשִׁיתָהּ הִיתָה בְּמִנְהִיגֵינוּ, הֵינְנוּ עוֹמְדִים בְּפָנֵי אוֹיְבֵינוּ וְהֵם לֹא הָיוּ גּוֹבְרִים עָלֵינוּ.
- 16 Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.
- לוֹלֵא הַמִּלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר פָּרְצָה בְּקִרְבָּנוּ, אַכֹּן, לוֹלֵא הַמְּלוּכָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִסְבּוּ לָנוּ שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים כֹּה רַבָּה; לוֹלֵא רִבְנוּ בֵּינֵינוּ וְהֵינְנוּ מֵאַחֲדִים אֶזְזֵנוּ אֶת כֹּחֵנוּ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂינוּ לְפָנֵים; לוֹלֵא תַאֲוֹת הַמְּלוּכָנִים הָאֵלֶּה לְכַח וְלִשְׂרָרָה עָלֵינוּ, אֱלוֹ הָיוּ נֶאֱמָנִים לְעֵנֶן חֲרוּתָנוּ וְהָיוּ מֵתְאַחֲדִים עִמָּנוּ יוֹצְאִים עַל אוֹיְבֵינוּ בְּמִקּוֹם לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ בְּחִרְבוּתֵיהֶם, וּבְזֹאת מְסַבִּים לָנוּ שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים כֹּה רַבָּה, אֱלוֹ יִצְאָנוּ עַל אוֹיְבֵינוּ בְּעֹז יְהוָה, הֵינְנוּ מְפִיִּצִים אוֹתָם, וּבְזֹאת הָיָה מִתְקַנֵּם דְּבָרוֹ.
- 17 But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה הַלָּמָנִיתִים עוֹלִים עָלֵינוּ; הֵם כּוֹבְשִׁים אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵינוּ וְהוֹרְגִים בְּחֶרֶב אֶת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ, אֶת נְשֵׁינוּ וְאֶת יְלָדֵינוּ; הֵם אַף לּוֹקְחִים אוֹתָם בְּשָׁבִי וּבְזֹאת מְסַבִּים לָהֶם תַּלְאוֹת לָרֹב. וְכָל זֹאת מִפְּנֵי רִשְׁעַת הַמְּבַקְשִׁים כֹּחַ וְשְׂרָרָה, הֲלֹא הֵם הַמְּלוּכָנִים.
- 18 But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.
- וּמַדּוּעַ אֶרְבֶּה לְדַבֵּר עַל זֹאת? אֵינְנוּ יוֹדְעִים, כִּי אִם אוֹלֵי אַף אֲתֶם רוֹדְפִים שְׂרָרָה; אוֹלֵי אַף אֲתֶם בִּגְדָתִים בְּאַרְצְכֶם.
- 19 Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?
- וְאוֹלֵי זִנְחָתֶם אוֹתָנוּ, כִּי הֵנֶכֶם יוֹשְׁבִים בְּלֵב הָאָרֶץ, כְּאֲשֶׁר הַבְּטָחוֹן מִקִּיפְכֶם, וְלָכֵן אֵינְכֶם מוֹרִים לְשַׁלַּח אֵלֵינוּ מִזֹּון וְאֲנָשִׁים, לְחַזֵּק אֶת חֵילָנוּ?
- 20 Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?
- הֲאִם שָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם? הֲשָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת שְׁעָבוֹד אֲבוֹתֵינוּ? הֲשָׁכַחְתֶּם כִּי הוּא הִצִּילָנוּ פְּעָמִים רַבּוֹת מִיְּדֵי אוֹיְבֵינוּ?
- 21 Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?
- הֲתִחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יוֹסִיף יְהוָה לְהִצִּילָנוּ בְּעֵת שְׁבִתָּנוּ עַל כִּסֵּי הַשְּׁלִטוֹן, מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּמְשְׁנוּ בְּאִמְצָעִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לָנוּ?

- 22 Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?
- 23 Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.
- 24 And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he hath regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.
- 25 And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—
- 26 And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—
- 27 And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.
- 28 Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.
- 29 Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.
- הַתְּשִׁבוּ בְּעִצְלָתִים, מִקָּפִים בְּאַלְפִים וּבְרִבְבוֹת הַיּוֹשְׁבִים אִף הֵם בְּטֵל, בְּאִשֹּׁר בְּגִבּוּלוֹת הָאָרֶץ יֵשׁ אֲלֵפִים הַנוֹפְלִים בַּחֶרֶב, פְּצוּעִים וְשׁוֹתֵתִים דָּם?
- הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יִרְאֶה אֱלֹהִים אֶתְכֶם נְקִיִּים מֵאֵשׁ, בְּעוֹדְכֶם יוֹשְׁבִים דּוֹמְמִים וּמְבִיטִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה? הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא! יִתֵּן כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַאֹמֵר כִּי יֵשׁ לְטָהָר בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה אֶת פְּנִים הַכְּלִי, וְאַחֵר כִּד יִטְהָרוּ גַם פְּנֵי הַכְּלִי הַחִיצוֹנִים.
- וְעַתָּה, אִם לֹא תִנָּחֲמוּ עַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם וְתִקְוֹמוּ לַפְעֻלָּה, וְתִשְׁלְחוּ מְזוֹן וְאֲנָשִׁים אֵלֵינוּ וְאֶל הַיְלָמוֹן, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכֵל הַיְלָמוֹן לְכַלֵּל אֶת חֻלְקֵי אֶרְצֵנוּ אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁיָבָם, וּבְעֵבֹר נֹכַח אִף אֲנַחְנוּ לְהָשִׁיב אֶת שְׂאֵר קִנְיָנֵנוּ בְּחֻלְקֵי הָאָרֶץ הָאֵלֶּה, רְאוּיִי יִהְיֶה לָנוּ לְחַדֵּל מִן הַמִּלְחָמָה בְּלִמְנִים, וּלְהַקְדִּים לְטָהָר אֶת פְּנִים כְּלָנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא רֹאשׁ מִמְּשַׁלְתָּנוּ הַגָּדוֹל.
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם תִּקְבְּלוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲגֻרְתִּי, וְתִרְאוּנִי רוּחַ חֵירוֹת שְׁלָמָה, וְתִתְאַמְצוּ לְחֹזֶק וּלְגִבּוֹר אֶת חֵילוֹתֵינוּ וּלְסַפֵּק לָהֶם מְזוֹן לְכַלֵּלָתָם, אֲפָרִישׁ אֲנִי חֶלֶק מִבְּנֵי הַחֵירוֹת אֲשֶׁר עִמִּי לְהִגֵּן עַל חֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה, וְאֲנִי אֲנִי עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת בְּרִכְתּוֹ, בְּעֵבֹר לֹא יוֹכֵל כָּל כֹּחַ אַחֵר לַפְעֹל נִגְדָם;
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם הַעֲזָה וְאֶרְךְ רוּחָם בִּימֵי תְלָאָתָם;
- וְאֲנִי אֲבֹא אֵלֵיכֶם, וְאִם יִהְיֶה בָכֶם מִי אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ בְּלִבּוֹ תְּשׁוּקַת חֵירוֹת, אִם אֵד נֹתֵר בָּכֶם נִיצוֹץ חֵירוֹת, אֲזִי אֶעֱוֹרֵר בְּתוֹכְכֶם הַתְּקוּמָמוֹת, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִכְחֲדוּ כָּל הַמִּתְאַוִּים לַתַּפְּשׁ כֹּחַ וּשְׁרָרָה.
- הִנֵּה, אֲיַנְנִי יִרָא אֶת כֹּחְכֶם וְאֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנְכֶם, כִּי אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֲנֹכִי יִרָא. וְעַל פִּי מִצְוֹתַי נֹשֵׂא אֲנִי אֶת חֶרְבִּי לְהִגֵּן עַל עַמִּי אֶרְצִי; וְהֵן בְּעוֹנְכֶם סָבְלָנוּ אֲבִדוֹת כֹּה גְדוּלוֹת.
- הִנֵּה הַגִּיעָה וּבָאָה הָעַתָּה, וְהִיא אִם לֹא תִתְעוֹרְרוּ לְהִגָּן אֶרְצְכֶם וּלְהִגָּן לְיָדֵיכֶם, תִּפֹּל עֲלֵיכֶם חֶרֶב הַדִּין הַתְּלִיָּה מֵעֲלֵיכֶם; אֲכֹן, הִיא פְּקוּדַת תְּפָקְדְכֶם וְהִיא אַחֲרִיתְכֶם כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ.

- 30 Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even into the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.
- הַנְּנִי מַצְפֶּה לְעֻזְרְתְּכֶם, וְאִם לֹא תִשְׁרְתוּ אֶת רוּחִתִּנִּי, קוֹם אָקוּם עֲלֵיכֶם אִף בְּאַרְצָא זְרַחֶמְלָה, לְהַכּוֹתְכֶם בַּחֶרֶב, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִהְיֶה בְּכֶם כָּל כֹּחַ לְעַצֹּר אֶת הַתְּקַדְמוֹת הָעַם הַזֶּה בְּעֵנֶינִי חֲרוּתִנִּי.
- 31 For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.
- הֵן לֹא יִתִּיר יְהוָה כִּי תַחֲיוּ בַעֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם וְתַחֲזְקוּ לְמַעַן תִּכְחִידוּ אֶת עַם צְדִיקוֹ.
- 32 Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?
- הַתְּחַשְׁבוּ כִּי יַחֹס יְהוָה עֲלֵיכֶם וְיִשְׁפֹּט אֶת הַלְּמָנִיטִים, כְּאֲשֶׁר מִסְּרַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הִיא אֲשֶׁר זָרְעָה בָּהֶם אֶת שִׂנְאָתָם? וְכֹאֲשֶׁר הַמִּשְׁטָמָה הַזֹּאת נִכְפְּלָה וְהִתְעַצְמָה עַל יְדֵי הַנִּפְלָגִים מֵאַתָּנִי, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם פּוֹשְׁעִים לְמַעַן אֲהַבֵּת הַתְּהַלָּה וְהַבְּלִי הָעוֹלָם?
- 33 Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.
- וְאַתֶּם יוֹדְעִים כִּי עוֹבְרִים אַתֶּם עַל חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהִים, אִף רוֹמְסִים אוֹתָם בְּרַגְלֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה אוֹמֵר יְהוָה אֵלַי: וְהָיָה אִם לֹא יִנָּחְמוּ הַמִּמְנִים עַל יְדֵיכֶם לְמוֹשְׁלִים מִחֻטְאֵיהֶם וּמַעֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, יֵצְאוּ תַצְאוּ לְקָרֵב עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 34 And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, מְכֻרָח לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִי, עַל פִּי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כְּרַתִּי עִמּוֹ; עַל כֵּן חָפֵץ אֲנִי כִּי תִדְבְּקוּ בְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְכִי תִשְׁלְחוּ בְּמַהֲרָה מִן הָאִסְפָּקָה וּמִן הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּרִשְׁוֹתְכֶם, אֵלַי וְכוּן אֶל הִילְמָן.
- 35 And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.
- וְהִנֵּה, אִם לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, בְּמַהֲרָה אָבוֹא אֲנִי אֲלֵיכֶם; כִּי לֹא יִרְשְׁנוּ אֱלֹהִים לָגוֹעַ בְּרָעָב. לָכֵן הוּא יִתְּנֵנוּ מִן הַמֶּזֶן אֲשֶׁר לָכֶם, אִף אִם יִהְיֶה זֹאת בַּחֶרֶב. וְעַתָּה, הִשְׁמְרוּ לְקוֹם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים.
- 36 Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.
- הַנְּנִי מוֹרוֹנִי, מִפְּקֵד צֶבָאָכֶם. לֹא שֶׁלְטוֹן אֲנִי מִבְּקֵשׁ, כִּי אִם לְמוֹסָטוֹ. לֹא כְבוֹד מִבְּקֵשׁ אֲנִי מִבְּנֵי הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם אֶת תְּפָאֶרֶת אֱלֹהִי, וְאֶת חֲרוּת אֶרְצִי וְאֶת רוּחָתָהּ. וּבֹאֵת אֲנִי חוֹתֵם אֶת אֲנִיִּיתִי.

סא

61

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:
- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי שֶׁלַח מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת אֲנִיִּיתוֹ אֶל פַּחוֹרָן, הַמֹּשֵׁל הָעֲלִיוֹן, הוּא קִבֵּל מִמֶּנּוּ אֲנִיִּית וְאֵלֶּה דְּבָרָיו:

עֲלָמָא סֵא:ב-י

אֲנִי פְחוֹרָן, הַמּוֹשֵׁל הָעֶלְיוֹן עַל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת,
שׁוֹלַח אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל מוֹרוֹנִי, מִפְּקֵד
הַצָּבָא. הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ, מוֹרוֹנִי, כִּי אֵין לְבִי שֵׁשׁ
עַל סִבְלָכֶם הָרַב, כִּי מַעֲצִיב הַדְּבָר אֶת נַפְשִׁי.

וְהִנֵּה יֵשׁ הַשָּׂשִׁים בְּסִבְלָכֶם, עַד כִּי הֵם
הַתְּקוּמָמוֹ עָלַי בְּמֶרֶד, וְאֵין עַל אֵלֶּה מַאֲנָשִׁי
אֲשֶׁר בְּנֵי חֲרוּת הֵם. וְהַמִּתְקוּמָמִים
רַבִּים מְסֻפָּר.

וְהִנֵּה, מִיַּד אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהַדְּיַחֲנִי מִכִּסִּי
הַמִּשְׁפָּט בְּאֵי הָעוֹן הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה. בְּרַב חֲנֻפָּתָם
הֵם הִטּוּ לִבָּב אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים, וּבָזָאת יָסְבוּ לָנוּ
צָרָה גְדוֹלָה. הֵם מָנְעוּ אֶת אִסְפָּקָתָנוּ וְהִטְלִינוּ
מוֹרָאָם עַל בְּנֵי הַחֲרוּת, אֲשֶׁר עַל כֵּן לֹא
בָּאוּ אֵלָיָהּ.

הִנֵּה, הֵם גִּרְשׁוּנִי מִפְּנֵיהֶם וְאֵין בְּרַחֲתִי אֶל אָרֶץ
גִּדְעוֹן, וְעַמִּי כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר יָכַלְתִּי לֵאסֹף.

שָׁלַחְתִּי קְרִיאָה בְּכָל חֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֶּה, וְהִנֵּה
נוֹהָרִים אֵלֵינוּ אֲנָשִׁים מִדֵּי יוֹם, אֶל הַנִּשְׁקָה,
לְהִגָּן עַל אֶרְצָם וְעַל חֲרוּתָם, וְלִגְמֹל עַל
הָרָעָה אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשְׂתָה לָנוּ.

וְכֵן רַב מְסֻפָּר הַבָּאִים אֵלֵינוּ עַד כִּי עָבְרוּ
הַמִּתְקוּמָמִים עָלֵינוּ לְהַתְּגוֹנְנוֹת. פָּחַדְנוּ נָפֶל
עֲלֵיהֶם וְאֵין הֵם מַעֲזִים לְצֹאת עָלֵינוּ לְקָרֵב.

הִנֵּה, הֵם הִשְׁתַּלְטוּ עַל הָאָרֶץ וְעַל הָעִיר
זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה וְהִמְלִיכוּ מֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; וּמִלְכָם כָּתַב
אֶל מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים, וּבָזָאת הִתְחַבֵּר עִמּוֹ בְּרִית
וְכֵן הוּא הִסְכִּים לְהִגָּן עַל הָעִיר זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה.
וְהוּא חוֹשֵׁב כִּי הַהֲגָנָה הַזֹּאת תִּאֲפָשֶׁר לְלָמָנִים
לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת שְׂאֵר הָאָרֶץ; וְכִי אַחֵר נִצְחֹן
הַלָּמָנִים הֵם יִשְׁמֹוּהוּ מֶלֶךְ עַל הַנִּפְיִים.

בְּאַגְרֶתְךָ נִזְפַּתְתָּ בִּי, אֲךָ אֵין בְּכֹךְ חֲשִׁיבוֹת. אֵינִנִּי
כּוֹעֵס, כִּי אִם שִׂמַּח עַל גְּדֻלַּת נַפְשִׁי. אֲנִי, פְּחוֹרָן,
אֵינִנִּי מִבְּקֵשׁ כֹּחַ, כִּי אִם לְהוֹסִיף לְשִׁבְתָּ עַל
כִּסִּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, לְמַעַן שָׁמֵר אֶת זְכוּת עַמִּי וְאֶת
חֲרוּתוֹ. נַפְשִׁי נִצְבֶּת אִיתָנָה לְמַעַן הַחֲרוּת,
אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדִיָּה עָשְׂנוּ אֱלֹהִים חֲפָשִׁיִּים.

הִנֵּה, נִתְּנָה לְרָשָׁע עַד כְּדֵי שְׂפִיכַת דָּמִים.
וְאוֹלָם לֹא נִשְׁפֹּךְ אֶת דַּם הַלָּמָנִים אִם
יִשְׁבּוּ בְּאַרְצָם.

2 I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

3 But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

4 And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

5 And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

6 And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

7 And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

9 And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

10 And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

עֲלָמָא סָא:יָא-כָא

- 11 We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.
לֹא נִשְׁפָּךְ אֶת דַּם אֶחָיו אִם לֹא יִתְקוּמֻמוּ בְּמֶרֶד וַיִּשְׂאוּ עָלֵינוּ חֶרֶב.
- 12 We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.
הֵייוּנוּ נְכוּנִים לְהִכָּנֵס בְּעַל שַׁעְבּוּד, אִלּוּ הָיָה זֶה עַל פִּי מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ אִלּוּ הוּא צִוָּנוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן.
- 13 But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.
וְהִנֵּה, אֵין הוּא מְצִוָּנוּ לְהִכָּנֵס לְאוֹיְבֵינוּ, כִּי אִם לְשֵׁים בּוֹ אֶת מִבְטָחֵנוּ וְהוּא יַצִּילֵנוּ.
- 14 Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.
לְכֻן, אָחִי הָאֱהוּב, מוֹרוֹנִי, הִבֵּה נִתְנַגֵּד לָרֹעַ; וְהָרַע אֲשֶׁר לֹא נוֹכַח לְהִתְנַגֵּד לוֹ בְּדִבְרֵינוּ, כְּגוֹן מֶרֶד וְהִתְפַּלְגוּת, הִבֵּה נִתְנַגֵּד לוֹ בְּחֶרֶב, לְמַעַן נִשְׁמֹר עַל חֲרוּתֵנוּ וּלְמַעַן נִשְׂיֵשׁ בְּזִכּוֹת הַגְּדוּלָּה אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָנוּ בְּכִסְיָתָנוּ וּבְמִשְׁפָּט גּוֹאֲלָנוּ וְאֱלֹהֵינוּ.
- 15 Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the Spirit of freedom which is in them.
עַל כֵּן בּוֹאָה אֵלַי בְּמַהֲרָה עִם אַחָדִים מֵאֲנָשֶׁיךָ, וְהִפְקֵד אֶת לְחֵי וְטִיאֲנֻקוֹם עַל הַנוֹתָרִים. הַסְמֵךְ אוֹתָם לְנַהֵל אֶת הַמִּלְחָמָה בְּחֵבֶל הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא, כְּפִי רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הִיא רוּחַ הַחֲרוּת אֲשֶׁר בָּם.
- 16 Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.
הִנֵּה, שְׁלַחְתִּי אֵלֵיהֶם אֶסְפֶּקֶת מִזֹּון מַעֲטָה לְכָל יִגְוֵעוּ בְּטָרֶם תָּבוֹא אֵלַי.
- 17 Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.
וּבִדְרֹךְ מִסְעָד הִנֵּה, אֶסְפָּה לָךְ חֵיל כָּל אֲשֶׁר תּוֹכֵל, וּבְמַהֲרָה יֵצֵא עַל הַנִּפְלָגִים הָהֵם, בְּעֹז אֱלֹהֵינוּ, עַל פִּי הָאֱמוּנָה אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּנוּ.
- 18 And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.
וְאֶנְחֵנוּ נִתְפֹּשׂ אֶת הָעִיר זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְנִשְׂיֵג תּוֹסֶפֶת מִזֹּון וְנִשְׁלַח אוֹתָהּ אֶל לְחֵי וְאֶל טִיאֲנֻקוֹם. אָכֵן, נֵצֵא אֵלֵיהֶם לְבוֹשִׁים בְּעֹז יְהוָה וְנִשְׂיֵם קֵץ לַעֲוֹל הַגְּדוֹל הַזֶּה.
- 19 And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.
הִנֵּה, מוֹרוֹנִי, שֵׁשׁ אֲנִי בְּקִבְלַת אֶגְרָתְךָ, כִּי הִיְתָה דְּאָגָה בְּלִבִּי, מָה עָלֵינוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת וְאִם אָכֵן נִצְדָּק בִּיצִיאָתָנוּ עַל אֶחָיו.
- 20 But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.
וְהִנֵּה, אֲמַרְתֶּם כִּי צִוָּךְ יְהוָה לִצְאָת עֲלֵיהֶם לְקָרֵב בְּלַחֵי אִם יִנְחָמוּ מִרְעָתָם.
- 21 See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast
חֲזֹק אֶת לְחֵי וְאֶת טִיאֲנֻקוֹם בְּאֱמוּנַת יְהוָה; אָמֹר לָהֶם כִּי לֹא יִירָאוּ, כִּי יַצִּילֵם אֱלֹהִים, וְכֻן אֶת כָּל

אשר עומדים איתנים על משמר החרות, אשר
על ידיה עשה אותם אלהים חפשיים. ובזאת
אני חותם את אגרותי אל אחי האהוב, מורוני.

in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close
mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

סב

62

והיה כאשר קבל מורוני את האגרת הזאת,
התאזר לבו אמן והוא התמלא שמחה רבה
מאד על נאמנות פחורן ועל אשר לא בגד אף
הוא בחרות ארצו ובענינה.

1 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle
his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy
because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to
the freedom and cause of his country.

ולבו דאב מאד על עולת האנשים אשר הדיחו
את פחורן מכס המשפט. ובקצרה, הוא
התאבל מפני המורדים בארצם ובאלהיהם.

2 But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who
had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of
those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

ומורוני לקח עמו אנשים מספר, כבקשת
פחורן, ונתן את פקוד שארית צבאו בידי
לחי וטיאנקוס, וצעד אל ארץ גדעון.

3 And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according
to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the
remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

ובכל מקום אשר אליו בא הוא הניף את נס
החרות, וקבץ חיל ככל אשר יכל לאתר מסעו
אל ארץ גדעון.

4 And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did
enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards
the land of Gideon.

והיה כי אלפים נהרו אל דגלו ונשאו את
חרבותיהם להגנת חרותם, לבל ישתעבדו.

5 And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did
take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might
not come into bondage.

ואחר אשר גיס מורוני אנשים ככל אשר יכל,
בכל מסעו, הוא הגיע אל ארץ גדעון. והוא
חבר את חילו עם חיל פחורן והיה צבאם
אדיר ועצום, אף חזק מאנשי פחוס מלך
הפורשים אשר גרשו את בני החרות מארץ
זרעהמלה והשתלטו על הארץ.

6 And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he
could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting
his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even
stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters
who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had
taken possession of the land.

ומורוני ופחורן ירדו עם חילותיהם אל ארץ
זרעהמלה ובאו להלחם על העיר. והם פגשו
את אנשי פחוס וערכו עמם קרב.

7 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their
armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and
did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

והנה, פחוס נהרג ואנשיו נשבו ופחורן הושב
אל כס המשפט.

8 And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and
Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

ואנשי פחוס העמדו למשפט כחק, וכמוהם
המלוכנים אשר נתפשו והשלו אל בית
הכלא. והם הוצאו להורג כחק; אכן, אנשי
פחוס והמלוכנים ההם, כל אשר לא נשא
נשק להגנת ארצו, כי אם נלחם בה, מות

9 And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and
also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and
they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and
those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of
their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

- 10 And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.
- 11 And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.
- 12 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.
- 13 And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.
- 14 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.
- 15 And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.
- 16 And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.
- 17 And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.
- 18 And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephihah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephihah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephihah, which is near the city of Nephihah.
- 19 Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.
- הוּמַת. כֹּה נַחוּץ הָיָה לְשֹׁמֵר בְּמִפְרָשׁ עַל
הַחֹק הַזֶּה לְמַעַן בְּטָחוֹן אֶרֶץ. אָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר
נִמְצָא שׁוֹלֵל אֶת חֲרוּתָם הוּמַת בְּמַהֲרָה כְּחֹק.
- כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשׁוֹפְטִים
בְּעַם נְפִי. וּמֹרֹנִי וּפָחוֹרָן הִשְׁיבוּ אֶת הַשָּׁלוֹם
אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה, בְּקִרְבָּם עִמָּם, וְהִמִּיתוּ אֶת
כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ נְאֻמָּנִים לְעִנְיַן הַחֲרוּת.
- וּבִרְאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, צִוָּה מֹרֹנִי לְשַׁלֵּחַ
בְּמַהֲרָה אֶסְפָּקֶת מְזוֹן וְחֵיל בֶּן שְׁשַׁת אֲלָפִים
אִישׁ אֶל הֵילְמָן, לְעֹזֹר לוֹ לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת חֶבְל
הָאָרֶץ הַהוּא.
- וְהוּא אֵף צִוָּה לְשַׁלֵּחַ חֵיל בֶּן שְׁשַׁת אֲלָפִים
אִישׁ, מְצִידִים בְּכַמּוֹת מְזוֹן מִסְפִּיקָה, אֶל צָבָא
לְחֵי וְטִיאֲנָקוּם; וְזֹאת לְשֵׁם חֲזוֹק הָאָרֶץ
מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים.
- וּמֹרֹנִי וּפָחוֹרָן הִשְׁאִירוּ חֵיל גָּדוֹל בְּאֶרֶץ
זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְצִעְדוּ בְּרֹאשׁ חֵיל גָּדוֹל אֶל אֶרֶץ
נְפִיָּהָה, נִחוּשִׁים לְגַרֵּשׁ אֶת הַלָּמָנִים מִן
הָעִיר הַהִיא.
- וְהָיָה בְּדֶרֶךְ מִסְעָם, הֵם תָּפְשׂוּ כַּח גָּדוֹל
מֵאֲנָשֵׁי הַלָּמָנִים; וְהֵם הִרְגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם וְלָקְחוּ
אֶת מְזוֹנָם וְאֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תָּפְשׂוּם הֵם אֲלָצוּם לְכָרֶת בְּרִית
לְבָל יִשְׂאוּ עוֹד אֶת כָּלִי נֶשֶׁקָם עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְאַחֵר כִּרְתָּם אֶת הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת הֵם שָׁלְחוּם
לְגוֹר עִם אֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹן. וּמִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר
לֹא הוּמָתוּ הָיָה כְּאַרְבַּעַת אֲלָפִים.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁלְחוּם, הֵם הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמִסְעָם
אֶל אֶרֶץ נְפִיָּהָה. וּבְבוֹאָם אֶל הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה
הֵם נָטוּ אֶת אֹהֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵמֶק נְפִיָּהָה אֲשֶׁר
לִיד הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָה.
- מֹרֹנִי רָצָה כִּי יֵצְאוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְהִלָּחֵם בְּצָבָאוֹ
בְּעֵמֶק. וְאוֹלָם הַלָּמָנִים, בִּידְעָם אֶת גְּבוּרַת
הַנְּפִיִּים וּבִרְאוּתָם כִּי מִסְפָּרָם רַב, לֹא הִעֲזוּ
לְצֵאתָ עֲלֵיהֶם. לָכֵן הֵם לֹא נִלְחְמוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.

- 20 And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.
- 21 And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.
- 22 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.
- 23 And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.
- 24 And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.
- 25 And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.
- 26 Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephihah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.
- 27 Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.
- 28 And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.
- 29 Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.
- 30 Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce
- וּבִרְדֵּת הַלַּיְלָה יָצָא מוֹרוֹנִי בַּחֹשֶׁכָה וְעָלָה עַל
הַחוֹמָה לְצִפּוֹת הַיְכָן חוֹנָה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים
בָּעִיר.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם הָיוּ בְּמִזְרַח הָעִיר לִיד הַשַּׁעַר;
כֻּלָּם יָשְׁנוּ. וּמוֹרוֹנִי שָׁב אֶל צָבָאוֹ וְצָוָם
לְהַחֲפֹז וּלְהַכִּין חֲבָלִים חֲזָקִים וְסֻלָּמוֹת, אֲשֶׁר
יִשְׁלְשְׁלוּ מֵרֹאשׁ הַחוֹמָה אֶל עֲבֵרָה הַפְּנִימִי.
- וּמוֹרוֹנִי צָוָה אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְהִתְקַדֵּם וּלְעֹלוֹת עַל
הַחוֹמָה וּלְרִדֹת אֶל חֶלֶק הָעִיר הַמַּעֲרָבִי, אֲשֶׁר
בּוֹ לֹא חָנָה צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהָיָה בְּאֻמְצָעוֹת חֲבָלֵיהֶם הַחֲזָקִים
וְסֻלָּמוֹתֵיהֶם הִשְׁתַּלְשְׁלוּ הַכֹּל בַּלַּיְלָה אֶל תּוֹךְ
הָעִיר; וְכֵן, בְּהָאִיר הַבֹּקֶר הָיוּ כֻּלָּם בְּתוֹךְ
חוֹמוֹת הָעִיר.
- וּבְהִקִּיץ הַלְּמָנִים מִשְׁנָתָם וּבִרְאוּתָם אֶת צָבָא
מוֹרוֹנִי בְּתוֹךְ הָעִיר, הֵם נִבְעָתוּ מְאֹד וְנָסוּ
הַחוּצָה דֶּרֶךְ הַשַּׁעַר.
- וּכְרֹאוֹת מוֹרוֹנִי כִּי הֵם בּוֹרְחִים מִפָּנָיו הָיָה
פָּקֵד עַל אֲנָשָׁיו לְצַעֵד לְקִרְיָתָם. וַחֲזִילוּ הָרְגוּ
רַבִּים מֵהֶם וְכָתְרוּ רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים וּלְקַחוּם
בְּשָׁבִי; וְהַנּוֹתְרִים בָּרְחוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹנִי
אֲשֶׁר שׁוֹכְנֵת לְחוּף הַיָּם.
- כֹּה כָּבְשׁוּ מוֹרוֹנִי וּפָהֳרָן אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָ
מִבְּלִי אִף אֶבְדָּה אַחַת בְּנַפְשׁ, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר
נִהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הַשְּׁבוּיִים חָפְצוּ
לְהִתְחַבֵּר אֶל אֲנָשֵׁי עַמּוֹן וּלְהִיּוֹת עִם חָפְשִׁי.
- אִזִּי נָתַן לָהֶם כְּחָפְצָם; כֹּל הַמִּבְקֵשׁ נִעְנָה.
- לְכֵן הִתְחַבְּרוּ כָּל שְׁבוּיֵי הַלְּמָנִים אֶל אֲנָשֵׁי
עַמּוֹן וַהֲחִלוּ לַעֲבֹד בְּחָרִיצוֹת רַבָּה, בְּעִבּוֹד
הַקֶּרֶקֶר, וּבְגִדּוֹל כָּל מִינֵי דָגָנִים וְצֹאן וּבִקְרָה
מִכָּל מִין. כֹּה הִשְׁתַּחֲרָרוּ הַנִּפְצִים מִן הַמַּשָּׂא
הַכָּבֵד, וְעַל כָּל הַשְּׁבוּיִים הַלְּמָנִים הוֹסֵר מֵהֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר לָקַח מוֹרוֹנִי שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים
בְּכָבְשׁוֹ אֶת הָעִיר נְפִיָּהָ, וּבִזְאוֹת הַקִּטְיוֹן מְאֹד

עלמא סב:לא-לז

את צבא הלמנים, ובהשיבו לו שבוים נפיים
רבים, אשר חזקו מאד את צבאו, הוא יצא
מארצו נפיהה אל ארץ להי.

the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

ובראות הלמנים כי מורוני יצא עליהם,
אחזם שנית פחד, והם נסו מפני צבאו.

31 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

ומורוני וצבאו רדפו אחריהם מעיר אל עיר,
עד אשר פגשו הלמנים בלחי ובטיאנקום.
והם ברחו הרחק מהם, אל עבר חוף הים,
עד אשר הגיעו אל ארץ מורוני.

32 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

וחילות הלמנים התקבצו והיו לצבא אחד
בארץ מורוני. ועמורון, מלך הלמנים,
היה עמם.

33 And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now, Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

ומורוני ולחי וטיאנקום חנו עם צבאם
סביב גבולות ארץ מורוני; כה היו הלמנים
מקפים בגבולותיהם, ביער אשר בדרום
וביער אשר במזרח.

34 And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

כה הם חנו חנית לילה, כי הנפיים וגם
הלמנים, היו יגעים מן המסע הגדול; ועל כן
לא זממו כל תחבולה להפיקה לילה, זולת
טיאנקום. כי רב היה כעסו על עמורון, יען
אשר ראה בו ובעמליקיה אחיו את סבת
המלחמה הגדולה והממשכת הזאת בין
הנפיים ובין הלמנים, אשר דם כה רב
נשפך בה, ואשר הסבה רעב כה גדול.

35 And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

והיה כי טיאנקום יצא בחמת רוחו אל מחנה
הלמנים והשתלשל בחבל מעבר לחומות העיר.
והוא הלך ממקום אל מקום עד אשר מצא
את המלך. והוא הטיל עליו חנית, והיא פצעה
אותו ליד לבו; אף לפני מותו העיר המלך את
משרתיו, והם רדפו אחר טיאנקום והרגוהו.

36 And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

ובהנדע לחי ולמורוני דבר מות טיאנקום
הם התעצבו מאד, כי הוא היה לוחם אמיץ
למען ארצו, ידיד נאמן לחרות, ופגעים קשים
מאד סבל בחייו. והנה הוא מת, ובדרך כל
הארץ הלה.

37 Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

- 38 Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.
- 39 And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.
- 40 And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.
- 41 But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.
- 42 And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.
- 43 And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.
- 44 And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.
- 45 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.
- 46 And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.
- 47 Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.
- וּלְמַחֲרָת יֵצֵא מוֹרוֹנִי בְּרֹאשׁ צָבָאוֹ וְתִקַּף אֶת
הַלְּמָנִים וְטָבַח בָּהֶם טָבַח רַב וַיִּגְרָשׁם מִן
הָאֶרֶץ. וְהַלְּמָנִים נָסוּ וְלֹא שָׁבוּ בַּעֲת הַהִיא
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּנִפְיִים.
- וּבִזְמַת תְּמֵה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת לְשִׁטּוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעַם נָפִי. כֹּה סָבְלוּ הַנִּפְיִים
מִלְחָמוֹת וּשְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים וָרָעָב וּפְגָעִים
בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת.
- וּבַעֲת הַהִיא פָּשׁוּ בְּקֶרֶב עִם נָפִי רְצִיחוֹת
וּמְרִיבוֹת וּמַחְלֻקוֹת וְכָל מִינֵי מַעֲשֵׂי אָוֶן;
וְאוֹלָם לְמַעַן הַצַּדִּיקִים וּבִזְכוֹת תַּפְלוּתֵיהֶם,
לֹא נַעֲשְׂתָה בָּעַם נָפִי כָּלָה.
- וְהִנֵּה, מִפְּנֵי מִשְׁךְ הַמִּלְחָמָה בֵּין הַנִּפְיִים וּבֵין
הַלְּמָנִים, אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַרְכָּה עַד מְאֹד, הִקְשׁוּ
רַבִּים אֶת לִבָּם; וְהָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר הִתְרַפְּפוּ לִבָּם
מִפְּנֵי הַפְּגָעִים אֲשֶׁר סָבְלוּ; אֲלֵה נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים, עַד שֶׁפָּל הַהִכָּנְעָה.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּצַר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת חֻלְקֵי הָאֶרֶץ
הַחֲשׂוּפִים בְּיוֹתֵר לַפְּגִיעַת הַלְּמָנִים וְחָזְקָם
יָדָם, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הָעִיר זֶרַחְמֶלָה; וְאִף הִילָּמָן
שָׁב אֶל נַחֲלָתוֹ. כֹּה שָׁב הַשָּׁלוֹם לְשֹׁכְנֵי בְּקֶרֶב
עִם נָפִי.
- אִזְ הֶעֱבִיר מוֹרוֹנִי אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל חִילוּתָיו לְיָדֵי
בְּנוֹ, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא מוֹרוֹנִיָּהָ; וְהוּא שָׁב אֶל
בֵּיתוֹ, לְכָלוֹת אֶת שְׂאֵרֵי יָמָיו בְּשָׁלוֹה.
- וּפָחֳרוֹן שָׁב אֶל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, וְהִילָּמָן שָׁב
לְהִטִּיף לָעָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים; כִּי מִפְּנֵי
הַמִּלְחָמוֹת וְהַמְרִיבוֹת הָרַבּוֹת הָיָה צָרָה
לְהִקְדִּים שְׁנִית סִדְרִים בַּתּוֹךְ הַכְּנִסְיָה.
- לְכֵן יֵצְאוּ הִילָּמָן וְאַחָיו וְהוֹדִיעוּ אֶת דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים בְּרַב עֹז; כֹּה הֵם הוֹכִיחוּ לְאַנְשֵׁים רַבִּים
עַל רְשָׁעָתָם, וּבִזְמַת הִבִּיאוּ רַבִּים לְהִנָּחֵם עַל
חַטָּאתֵיהֶם וּלְהִטָּבֵל לְשֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם אָבֹן יְסֻדוֹ שְׁנִית אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהֵם קָבְעוּ סִדְרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לַחֹק, וּבְחָרוּ אֶת
שׁוֹפְטֵיהֶם, נְמוּכִים וְעֲלִיּוֹנִים.

- 48 And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.
- וְהַהֲצִלְחָה שָׁבָה לְהָאִיר פְּנִיָּה לְעַם נְפִי בְּאַרְצָם, וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד, וְהִתְעַשְּׂרוּ עֲשָׂר רַב.
- 49 But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.
- וְהִנֵּה, עַל אִף עֲשָׂרָם וְכֹחָם וְהַצְלָחָתָם הֵם לֹא נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם בְּגָאוֹה וְלֹא מִהֲרוּ לְשַׁכַּח אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם נִכְנָעוּ לִפְנֵי הַכֹּנֶעָה רַבָּה.
- 50 Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.
- אֲכֹן, הֵם זָכוּרִים מֵהַגְּדוֹלִים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַנָּם, בְּהַצִּילָם מִמָּוֶת וּמִכַּבְּלֵי שַׁעְבּוּד, מִכָּלָא וּמִכָּל פְּגַע, וְכִי הוּא חֹלְצָם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- 51 And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.
- וְהֵם הִתְפַּלְלוּ תָמִיד אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי בִרְכָם כְּדִבְרוֹ. וְהֵם חֲזָקוּ וְעָשׂוּ חֵיל בְּאַרְצָן.
- 52 And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ. וְהֵילְמָן מֵת בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחָמֵשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

סג

63

- 1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.
- וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, לָקַח שִׁבְלוֹן לִידּוֹ אֶת הַכִּפְצִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר מָסַר עֲלָמָא לְהֵילְמָן.
- 2 And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.
- הוּא הָיָה אִישׁ אַמֵּת וְהָלַךְ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּדָרֶךְ מִישְׁרִים, וּבִקֵּשׁ לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב תָּמִיד וּלְשַׁמֵּר אֶת מִצְוֹת יְהוָה אֱלֹהָיו; וְכִמּוֹהוּ הָיָה אָחִיו.
- 3 And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מֵת מוֹרוֹנִי אִף הוּא. כֹּה תִמָּה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 4 And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֶׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים יֵצְאָה קְבוּצָה גְּדוֹלָה, אֲשֶׁר מִנְתָּה חֲמִשָּׁת אֲלָפִים וָאַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת אִישׁ, עִם נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם, מֵאַרְצָן זֶרַחֵמְלָה אֶל הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בַּצָּפוֹן.
- 5 And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched
- וְהָיָה אִישׁ אֶחָד בְּאַרְצָן, חֲגוּת שְׁמוֹ; וּבְהִיּוֹתוֹ אֲמֹן מִהִיר בְּמִלְאָכָתוֹ הוּא קָם וּבָנָה לוֹ סִפִּינָה גְּדוֹלָה וְעֲצוּמָה עַל גְּבוּל אָרֶץ רַב־שְׁפַע,

- בְּקֶרֶבֶת אֶרֶץ חֶרֶבָה; וְהוּא הִשְׁיָקָה וְהִסְיַע
אוֹתָהּ בַּיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לִיד הַמַּעְבָּר הַחַד
הַמּוֹלִיד אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים נָכְנְסוּ לְתוֹכָהּ וְהִפְלִיגוּ
בָּהּ צְפוֹנָה וְעַמְּהֶם צִידָה רַבָּה וְנָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִּים
רַבִּים. כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת שְׁלָשִׁים וְשִׁבְעִי.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלָשִׁים וְשִׁמּוֹנָה בָּנָה הָאִישׁ
הַזֶּה סְפִינּוֹת נּוֹסָפוֹת. וְהִנֵּה שָׁבָה הַסְּפִינָה
הָרִאשׁוֹנָה וְאֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים נּוֹסָפִים נָכְנְסוּ
לְתוֹכָהּ. וְאֵף הֵם לָקְחוּ עִמָּהֶם צִידָה רַבָּה,
וְהִפְלִיגוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מַעוֹלָם לֹא נִשְׁמַע מֵהֶם דְּבָר,
וְאֲנַחְנוּ מִשְׁעָרִים כִּי טָבְעוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם.
וּסְפִינָה נּוֹסֶפֶת הִפְלִיגָה בָּיָם, וְאֵת יַעֲדָהּ
אֵינָנו יוֹדְעִים.
- וּבְשָׁנָה הַחֵמִישִׁי יָצְאוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים אֶל אֶרֶץ
הַצָּפוֹן. וְכֹה תִמָּה שְׁנַת שְׁלָשִׁים וְשִׁמּוֹנָה.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלָשִׁים וְחֲשֵׁעַ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים
וְשִׁבְלוֹן מֵת אָף הוּא. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן הִפְלִיג
בְּסְפִינָה אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, לְהַבִּיא צִידָה
לְאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נָסְעוּ אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַחֵמִישִׁי.
- עַל כֵּן רָאָה שִׁבְלוֹן לָכֻחַ לְמָסֹר, לְפָנַי מוֹתוֹ,
אֶת חֲפְצֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְיָדִי בֶן הֵילְמָן, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ
נִקְרָא הֵילְמָן, עַל שֵׁם אָבִיו.
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַכְּתָבִים הַחֲרוּטִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּיַדִּי
הֵילְמָן, נִכְתְּבוּ וְהוּפְצוּ בֵּין בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֲשֶׁר
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, וְזֹלַת הַחֲלָקִים אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה עַלְמָא
לְמַנְעָם אֶת הַפָּצָתָם.
- עַל אֵף זֹאת, הָיָה עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְהַשְׁמֵר
בְּקִדְשָׁהּ וּלְהַמְסֵר מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר; לָכֵן בְּשָׁנָה הַחֵמִישִׁי
נִמְסְרוּ הֵם לְיָדִי הֵילְמָן לְפָנַי מוֹת שִׁבְלוֹן.
- וְהָיוּ בְּשָׁנָה הַחֵמִישִׁי פּוֹרְשִׁים אַחֲדִים,
אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ אֶל הַלָּמָנִים; וְהֵם עוֹרְרוּ מִחֲדָשׁ
אֶת רִגְזוֹ הַלָּמָנִים עַל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וּבְעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַחֵמִישִׁי יָרְדוּ הַלָּמָנִים בְּצָבָא
עֲצוּם לְהִלָּחֵם בְּאֲנָשֵׁי מוֹרוֹנִיחָה, מִשְׁמָע
- 6 And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.
- 7 And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.
- 8 And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.
- 9 And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.
- 10 And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.
- 11 Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.
- 12 Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.
- 13 Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.
- 14 And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.
- 15 And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of

בְּצָבָאוּ. וְהָנָה, הֵם הוּבְסוּ וְגִרְשׁוּ, עַד כִּי שָׁבוּ
אֶל אֶרְצָם וְלָהֶם אֲבֹדוֹת כְּבֹדוֹת.

Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

כֹּה תִמָּה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְחֹשֶׁעַ לְשִׁטּוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

16 And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְכֹה כָּלוּ דְבָרֵי יָמֵי עֲלָמָא וְדְבָרֵי הֵילְמָן בְּנוֹ
וְאֵף דְבָרֵי שִׁבְלוֹן בְּנוֹ.

17 And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

סֵפֶר הֵילְמָן

THE BOOK OF HELAMAN

סְפּוֹר מַעֲשֵׂה הַנְּפִיִּים. מִלְחָמוֹתֵיהֶם, מְרִיבוֹתֵיהֶם
וּפְלוּגֵיהֶם. נְבוֹאוֹת נְבִיאֵי קֹדֶשׁ רַבִּים עַל בּוֹא
הַמָּשִׁיחַ, עַל פִּי כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְהֵילְמָן בֶּן
הֵילְמָן וְעַל פִּי כְּתָבֵי בְנָיו עַד עַתָּה בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
לְמַנִּים רַבִּים הוֹפְכִים לְמַאֲמִינֵי אֱלֹהִים. סְפּוֹר
צְדָקַת הַלְּמָנִים וְרָשָׁעַת הַנְּפִיִּים וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
(בְּעֶרְךָ 1–52 לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.)

An account of the Nephites, their wars, contentions, and dissensions. Holy prophets prophesy the coming of Christ—according to the records of Helaman the son of Helaman and his sons, down to the coming of Christ. Many Lamanites are converted. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites and of the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites. (About 52–1 B.C.)

א

1

וְהִיָּה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים לְשִׁטּוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, צֵץ קָשִׁי חֲמוֹר בְּקֶרֶב
עַם הַנְּפִיִּים.

1 And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

כִּי הִנֵּה פָּחוֹרָן מֵת, בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאָרֶץ הַלֵּךְ.
וּמְרִיבָה קָשָׁה הִתְעוֹרְרָה עַל דְּבַר יִרְשֵׁת כֶּסֶם
הַמִּשְׁפָּט בֵּין הָאֲחִים, בְּנֵי פָּחוֹרָן.

2 For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

וְאַלֶּה שְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם: פָּחוֹרָן, פְּאֲנֹכִי וּפְקוּמֵנִי.
הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָבוּ עַל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט וְאֵף עוֹרְרוּ
מִדּוֹן בְּעַם.

3 Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

אִין אֵלֶּה כָּל בְּנֵי פָּחוֹרָן, כִּי בְּנִים רַבִּים הָיוּ לוֹ,
כִּי אִם הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָבוּ עַל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט. וְכֹךָ הֵם
פָּלְגוּ אֶת הָעָם לְשָׁלֹשׁ מִפְּלָגוֹת.

4 Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran, (for he had many) but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

וְהִנֵּה בָּרַב קוֹלוֹת הָעָם נִבְחַר פָּחוֹרָן לְשׁוֹפֵט
עָלְיוֹן וּלְמוֹשֵׁל עַל עַם נְפִי.

5 Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

וּכְאֲשֶׁר רָאָה פְּקוּמֵנִי כִּי לֹא נָתַן לוֹ כֶּסֶם
הַמִּשְׁפָּט, הוּא קָבַל אֶת דְּעַת הָעָם.

6 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

ואולם, פאנכי והמפלגה אשר חפצה כי יהיה הוא מושלם כעסו מאד, ועל כן חשב פאנכי לפתות בחלקלקות את האנשים ההם ולקום במרד על אחיהם.

ובעודו מתכוון לעשות כך, הוא נתפש ונשפט על פי דעת העם ונדון למות יען אשר קם למרד ובקש להקרית את חרות העם.

והיה בראות האנשים החפצים בו להיות מושלם כי הוא נדון למות, הם קצפו ושלחו איש אחד, קישקומן שמו, אל כס פחורן. והוא רצח את פחורן בשבתו על כסא המושפט.

ומשרתי פחורן רדפו אחרי, אך הנה, כה מהר קישקומן לנוס, עד כי לא יכול היה איש להשיגו.

והוא הלך אל שולחיו, והם כרתו כלם ברית, ונשבעו ביוצרים הנצחי כי לא יגלו לאיש כי קישקומן רצח את פחורן.

וקישקומן לא נודע בקרב עם נפי, כי בעת רצחו את פחורן היה מחפש. וקישקומן וכנפיתו, אשר כרתו עמו ברית, התערבו בקרב העם, באפן אשר לא יכול היה איש למצאם; אך כל אשר נתפש מהם נדון למות.

ופקומני נבחר על פי קול העם לשופט עליון ומושל בעם, במקום אחיו פחורן; וזאת על פי זכותו. כל זה נעשה בשנת ארבעים לשלטון השופטים וכה כלתה השנה ההיא.

והיה בשנת ארבעים ואחת לשלטון השופטים, גיסו הלמנים צבא חילים אשר לא ימנה מרב והם חמשום בחרבות ובפגיונות, בקשתות ובחצים, במגני ראש ובמגני חזה ובכל מיני שריונים.

והם שוב ירדו לאסור מלחמה על הנפיים. והנהיגם איש אשר שמו נקרא קוריאנטומר; והוא צאצא לזרע חמלה ופרש מן הנפיים; והוא היה איש בעל מדות וגבור חיל.

7 But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

8 And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

9 Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

10 And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

11 And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

12 Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

13 And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

14 And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

- לְכֹן סֶבֶר מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים, תּוֹבָלוֹת שְׁמוֹ, 16 Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—
- וְהוּא בֶן עַמּוֹרוֹן, כִּי אִישׁ חֹזֶק בְּקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר לְהִנְהִיגָם, יוֹכֵל לַעֲמֹד בַּפָּנִי הַנִּפְּיִים מִפָּנֵי עֹזוֹ וְחֻכְמָתוֹ הָרַבָּה; וְכִי בִשְׁלָחוֹ אוֹתוֹ עַל הַנִּפְּיִים הוּא אָכֵן יִגְבֵּר עֲלֵיהֶם.
- עַל כֵּן עוֹרָר הַמֶּלֶךְ זַעַם בְּעַמּוֹ, וְהוּא אָסַף 17 Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.
- אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו וּמָנָה אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר לְהִנְהִיגָם. וְהוּא צִוָּה עֲלֵיהֶם לָרֶדֶת אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה לְהִלָּחֵם בַּנִּפְּיִים.
- וְהָיָה מִפָּנֵי הַמְּרִיבָה הָרַבָּה וְהַקְּשָׁיִים 18 And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.
- בְּמִמְשָׁלָהּ, לֹא הִצִּיבוּ הַנִּפְּיִים דֵּי שׁוּמְרִים בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר סָבְרוּ כִּי הַלָּמָנִים לֹא יַעֲזוּ לְבוֹא אֶל לֵב אֶרְצָם, לְתַקֹּף אֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה זֶרַחֵמְלָה.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר צָעַד בְּרֹאשׁ צֶבָאוֹ הַגְּדוֹל 19 But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.
- וְהַתְּנַפֵּל עַל תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר. וְכֹה מָהִיר הָיָה מִסָּעָם עַד כִּי לֹא הָיָה סִפְּק בְּיַד הַנִּפְּיִים לִקְבֹּץ אֶת צֶבָאָם.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר הִכָּה אֶת חֵיל הַמִּשְׁמָר אֲשֶׁר 20 Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay everyone who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.
- בְּשַׁעַר הָעִיר וְהַתְּקַדֵּם עִם כָּל צֶבָאוֹ אֶל תּוֹכָהּ. וְהֵם הָרְגוּ אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר עָמְדוּ בְּדֶרֶכָם וְכָךְ כָּבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר כְּלָהּ.
- וּפְקוֹמֵנִי, הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן, בָּרַח מִפָּנֵי 21 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.
- קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר עַד חוֹמַת הָעִיר; וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר הִטִּילוֹ נֶגֶד הַחוֹמָה עַד כִּי מָת. כֹּה כָלוּ יְמֵי פְקוֹמֵנִי.
- וְכִרְאוֹת קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֵר כִּי כָבַשׁ אֶת הָעִיר 22 And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.
- זֶרַחֵמְלָה, וְכִי הַנִּפְּיִים נָסוּ מִפָּנָיו אוֹ נִהָרְגוּ אוֹ נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא, אָכֵן, כִּי תִפֹּשׁ אֶת הַחֹזֶק הַבְּמִעֲזִי כָל הָאֶרֶץ, הוּא הִרְהִיב עוֹ בְּנִפְשׁוֹ וְשֵׁם פָּנָיו קְדִימָה לְכַבֵּשׁ אֶת כָּל הָאֶרֶץ.
- לְכֹן הוּא לֹא הִתְמַהֵמָה בְּאֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, 23 And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.
- וְצָעַד עִם צֶבָא גְּדוֹל אֶל הָעִיר רִבְ-שִׁפְעָה, כִּי גָמַר בְּלִבּוֹ לְהִתְקַדֵּם וּלְפַלֵּס אֶת דֶּרְכּוֹ בְּחֶרֶב בַּעֲבוּר יִתְפֹּשׁ אֶת חֻלְקֵי הָאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹנִיִּים.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר סָבַר כִּי עֶקֶר כֹּחַ הַנִּפְּיִים הָיָה 24 And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble
- בְּמִרְכְּזָהּ הָאֶרֶץ, הוּא הִתְקַדֵּם בְּלֹא תַת לָהֶם

הילמן א:כה-לג

שהות להקבץ, כי אם בקבוצות קטנות. באופן הזה התנפלו עליהם חיליו והכוסו ארצה.

themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

ואולם, מסע קוריאנטומר דרך לב הארץ העניק למורוניהה יתרון גדול עליהם, על אף גדל מספר הנפיים ההרוגים.

25 But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

ומורוניהה הניח כי הלמנים לא יעזו להפגס אל לב הארץ וכי הם יתקפו את הערים אשר סביב, בגבולותיה, כאשר עשו לפנים. לכן פקד מורוניהה להגן בחילותיו החזקים ביותר על חלקי הארץ אשר בגבולות.

26 For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

והנה, לא נפחדו הלמנים כצפית מורוניהה, כי אם נכנסו אל לב הארץ, ותפשו את העיר הראשית, את העיר זרעהמלה, והתקדמו דרך אזורי הארץ הראשיים, בעודם טובחים בדרךם את העם טבח רב, גברים, נשים וילדים, כאשר הם תופשים ערים רבות ומבצרים רבים.

27 But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

וכאשר נודע הדבר למורוניהה הוא מהר לשלח את לחי בראש צבא לעצור אותם בטרם יבואו אל ארץ רב-שפע.

28 But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

וכה עשה. הוא הקדימם טרם הגיעו אל ארץ רב-שפע, ונלחם עמם, עד אשר הם החלו לסגת ולשוב אל עבר ארץ זרעהמלה.

29 And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

ומורוניהה הקדימם בדרך נסיגתם ונלחם בהם עד כי היה הקרב עקב מדם. אכן, רבים היו ההרוגים וקוריאנטומר נמנה עמם.

30 And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

עתה לא יכלו הלמנים לסגת בכל דרך, לא צפונה ולא דרומה, לא מזרחה ולא מערבה, כי כתרומם הנפיים מכל עבר.

31 And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

כה הטיל קוריאנטומר את הלמנים אל קרב הנפיים, עד כי התגברו עליהם הנפיים, והוא עצמו נהרג והלמנים נכנעו לידי הנפיים.

32 And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

אז שב וכבש מורוניהה את העיר זרעהמלה וצוה לשלח בשלום את הלמנים השבויים מן הארץ.

33 And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

34 And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.
כה כִּלְתָהּ שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

ב

2

- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִשִּׁיב מוֹרוֹנִיָּהָ אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בֵּין הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִים, לֹא הָיָה אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יֵשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט. לָכֵן פָּרַץ שׁוֹב בָּעָם רִיב, בְּשֹׂאֲלָה מִי יֵשֵׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 1 And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.
- אֲזַ נִבְחַר הִילְמָן אֲשֶׁר הוּא בֶן הִילְמָן, עַל פִּי קוֹל הָעָם, לְשִׁבְתָּה עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 2 And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, קִישְׁקוּמֵן, רוֹצֵחַ פַּחוֹרָן, אָרַב לְהַשְׁמִיד אֹף אֶת הִילְמָן, וְהוּא נִתְמַךְ בְּזֹאת עַל יְדֵי כְּנָפֵיתוֹ, אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתָה בְּרִית לְהִסְתִּיר אֶת דְּבַר רָשָׁעֲתוֹ.
- 3 But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה, גָּדִיאַנְטוֹן שְׁמוֹ, וְהוּא מְמַחֵה בְּשִׁפְעַת דְּבוּרִים וְאֹף בְּכִשְׁרוֹנוֹ לְבַצֵּעַ בְּחֻשָּׁאֵי מַעֲשֵׂי רָצַח וְשׁוֹד. עַל כֵּן הוּא הָיָה לְמַנְהִיג כְּנָפֵית קִישְׁקוּמֵן.
- 4 For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.
- הוּא הִחְלִיק דְּבָרָיו אֲלֵיהֶם וְאֵל קִישְׁקוּמֵן, בְּאֶמְרוֹ כִּי אִם יוֹשִׁיבוּהוּ עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, הוּא יִתֵּן לְחֻבְרֵי הַכְּנָפִיָּה שְׂרָרָה וְשִׁלְטוֹן עַל הָעָם. לָכֵן בִּקֵּשׁ קִישְׁקוּמֵן לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 5 Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.
- וְהָיָה בְּלָכְתוֹ אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן, וְהִנֵּה לִפְנֵי אֶחָד מִמְשָׁרְתֵי הִילְמָן, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּלִילָה בְּחוּץ וְאֲשֶׁר נֹדַע לוֹ, עַל יְדֵי הַתַּחְפָּשׁוּת, עַל אוֹדוֹת תְּכַנִּיּוֹת הַכְּנָפִיָּה הַזֹּאת לְהַשְׁמִיד אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 6 And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—
- וּבַפֶּגֶשׁ הַמְּשָׁרֵת אֶת קִישְׁקוּמֵן הוּא אוֹתָהּ לוֹ אוֹת. אֲזַי הוֹדִיעַ לוֹ קִישְׁקוּמֵן אֶת חֲפָצוֹ וְכָנָנִיתוֹ וּבִקֵּשׁ כִּי יוֹבִילוּ אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְמַעַן הִרְגֵּם אֶת הִילְמָן.
- 7 And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוּא גָּלָה לְמְשָׁרֵת הִילְמָן אֶת כָּל לְבוֹ וְכִי כָּנָנִית לְרָצוֹחַ, וְאָכֵן, כִּי הִרְצַח וְהַשָּׂדֶה וְהַשְׂגַּת שְׂרָרָה הָיָה חֲפֵץ כָּל חֻבְרֵי הַכְּנָפִיָּה, וְכִי זֹאת הָיְתָה תְּכַנִּיּוֹתָם הַסּוּדִית וּמְזֻמָּתָם, אָמַר הַמְּשָׁרֵת אֵל קִישְׁקוּמֵן: הִבָּה נָלְכָה אֵל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט.
- 8 And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

וְהָיָה הַדָּבָר טוֹב עַד מְאֹד בְּעֵינֵי קִישְׁקוּמֵן. יַעַן
אֲשֶׁר סָבַר כִּי יַעֲלֶה בְּיָדוֹ לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מִזְמֹתוֹ;
וְאוּלָם בְּלִכְתָּם אֶל כֶּסֶם הַמִּשְׁפָּט, דָּקַר מִשְׁרֵת
הַיִּלְמָן אֶת קִישְׁקוּמֵן בְּלִבּוֹ, וְהוּא נָפַל מֵת בְּלִי
אֲנָחָה. אַזְרֵץ הַמִּשְׁרֵת אֶל הַיִּלְמָן וְסִפֵּר לוֹ אֶת
כָּל אֲשֶׁר רָאָה וְשָׁמַע וְעָשָׂה.

וְהַיִּלְמָן שָׁלַח לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת כְּנַפְיֵת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים,
רוֹצְחֵי הַחֶרֶשׁ, לְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג עַל פִּי הַחֹק.

וְאוּלָם כְּאֲשֶׁר נֹכַח גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן כִּי לֹא שָׁב
קִישְׁקוּמֵן, הוּא יָרָא פֶּן יִשְׁמַד; עַל כֵּן הוּא
צִוָּה עַל כְּנַפְיָתוֹ לָלֶכֶת אַחֲרָיו. וְהֵם בָּרְחוּ מִן
הָאָרֶץ בְּדֶרֶךְ נִסְתָּרָת וּבְאֵל הַיַּעֲרוֹת; לָכֵן
כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח הַיִּלְמָן אֲנָשִׁים לְקַחְתָּם לֹא
נָתַן הָיָה לְמַצָּאָם.

וְעוֹד בְּדַבֵּר גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן יִסְפָּר בְּהַמְשָׁךְ. וְכֹה
כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נֶפִי.

וְהִנֵּה, בְּאַחֲרִית הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה תִּוְכַחוּ כִּי אוֹתוֹ
גְּדִיאֲנִטוֹן הִסֵּב אֶת מַפְלַת עַם נֶפִי, אַכֵּן כְּמַעַט
אֶת הַשְׁמָדָתוֹ כָּלֹ.

אֵין כְּוִנָּתִי לְסוּיִם סֵפֶר הַיִּלְמָן, כִּי אִם לְסוּיִם
סֵפֶר נֶפִי, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנּוּ לְקַחְתִּי אֶת כָּל סֵפֹר
הַמַּעֲשֵׂה אֲשֶׁר כָּתַבְתִּי.

ג

וּבְשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים
לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב עַם נֶפִי, וְזוֹלַת
מְעַט גִּאְוָה בְּכִנְסִיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הִסְבָּה בָּעַם
מִחֲלֻקוֹת אַחֲדוֹת, וְהוּא יָשָׁבוּ בְּאַחֲרִית
שְׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ.

וּבְשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבַּע לֹא הָיְתָה כָּל
מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, וְאַף בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים
וְחָמֵשׁ לֹא הָיוּ מְרִיבוֹת קְשׁוֹת.

וְהִנֵּה בְּשָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וָשֵׁשׁ פָּרְצוּ מְרִיבוֹת
קְשׁוֹת וּפְלוּגִים רַבִּים, עַד כִּי עָזְבוּ הַמּוֹנִים
רַבִּים אֶת אֶרֶץ זְרַהֲמֵלָה וְהָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ
הַצָּפוֹן לְנַחֵל אוֹתָהּ.

9 Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

10 And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

11 But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

12 And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

13 And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

14 Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

3

1 And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

2 And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

3 And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

- 4 And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ מֵרֶחֶק רַב מְאֹד, עַד בּוֹאִים אֶל אַגְמֵי מַיִם גְּדוֹלִים וְנְהָרוֹת רַבִּים.
- 5 Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.
- אָכֵן, הֵם הִתְפַּשְׁטוּ בְּכָל חֵלְמֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהִלְכוּ אֶל כָּל הָאֲזוּרִים אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בָּהֶם עֵצִים וְלֹא הִחְרְבוּ מִפְּנֵי הַתּוֹשְׁבִים הָרַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נָחְלוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ לְפָנֵים.
- 6 And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.
- וְלֹא הָיָה בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת כָּל שְׁטַח חֲרָב, זֹלַת הָעֵצִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְרְתוּ; אֲךָ מִפְּנֵי הַהָרָס וְהַחְרָבֹן אֲשֶׁר עוֹלְלוּ תוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ הַקּוֹדְמִים, נִקְרְאָה הָאָרֶץ חֲרָבָה.
- 7 And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.
- וַיְהֵן אֲשֶׁר מְעַט הָיָה הָעֵץ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, הִפְכוּ הַבָּאִים שָׁמָּה לְמַמְחִים בְּמִלְאֲכַת מֶלֶט; לָכֵן הֵם בָּנוּ בְּתֵי מֶלֶט וְשָׁכְנוּ בָּהֶם.
- 8 And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.
- וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְפַּשְׁטוּ, וְהִלְכוּ מֵאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן; וְהֵם כֹּה נִפְצוּ עַד כִּי כִסּוּ אֶת פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ מִן הַיָּם הַדְּרוֹמִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַצָּפוֹנִי, וּמִן הַיָּם הַמְּעַרְבִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמְּזֻרְחִי.
- 9 And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.
- וְאִנְשֵׁי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן שָׁכְנוּ בְּאֹהֲלִים וּבְתֵי מֶלֶט. וְהֵם הֵנִיחוּ לְכָל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר צָמַח עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה לַעֲלוֹת וּלְגָדֹל, בְּעֵבֹר לְקַחְתּוֹ, בְּבוֹא הָעֵת, כְּקִרְשֵׁים לְבָנוֹן בְּתֵיהֶם וְעָרֵיהֶם, הֵיכָלֵיהֶם וּבְתֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיהֶם, מִקְדָּשֵׁיהֶם וְכָל מִינֵי בְּנוֹנֵיהֶם.
- 10 And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.
- וַיְהֵן כִּי הָיָה נָדִיר מְאֹד בָּאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן, הֵם שָׁלְחוּ עֵץ רַב בְּסָפִינוֹת.
- 11 And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.
- כֹּה נָתְנוּ לְאִנְשֵׁי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן אֶת הֵיכָלָת לְבָנוֹת עָרִים רַבּוֹת, גַּם מֵעֵץ וְגַם מִמֶּלֶט.
- 12 And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.
- וְרַבִּים מֵאִנְשֵׁי עַמּוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לְמִנִּים מְלָדָה, יָצְאוּ אִף הֵם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 13 And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.
- וְהִנֵּה, נִמְצְאוּ כְּתָבֵי זִכְרוֹן רַבִּים וּבָהֶם קוּרוֹת הָאִנְשִׁים הָהֵם, וְהֵם נִשְׁמְרוּ עַל יְדֵי רַבִּים מִבְּנֵי עַמָּם; וְהַדְּבָרִים עַל אִדּוּתֵיהֶם מִפְּרָטִים וְאַרְפִּים.
- 14 But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their
- וְאֹלֶם, אֵין יְכוּלִים כְּתָבֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַכִּיל אִף אֶת חֵלְק הַמְּאֹה מִקּוּרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה, אָכֵן, אֶת סְפּוֹר הַלְּמִנִּים וְהַנְּפִיִּים, מִלַּחְמוֹתֵיהֶם

ומריבותיהם, פלוגיהם והטפותיהם
ונבואותיהם, המשלוח בספינות ובניית
ספינותיהם, בניית היכליהם ובתי כנסיותיהם
ומקדשיהם, צדקתם ורשעתם, והרצח והשד
והגזל אשר היו בהם, וכל מיני תועבותיהם
וזנוניהם.

prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

הנה, יש ספרים וכתבים רבים מפל מין,
והם שמורים בעקר בידי הנפיים.

15 But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

והם נמסרו מדור לדור על ידי הנפיים, עד
אשר נפלו אלי פשע, ונהרגו ונבזו ונרדפו
ונדחו והומתו והופצו על פני האדמה,
והתערבו בלמנים, עד כי אינם נקראים עוד
נפיים. והם נוהגים בדרכי רשע, והם פראים
ואכזרים, כי הפכו להיות למנים.

16 And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

ועתה אשוב אל ספורי; כל אשר הזכרתי
קם והיה אחר אשר פוצו מריבות גדולות
והפרעות ומלחמות ופלוגים בקרב עם נפי.

17 And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

ושנת ארבעים ושש לשלטון השופטים בלטה.

18 The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

ובשנת ארבעים ושבע עוד רבות היו
המריבות בארץ, וכן בשנת ארבעים ושמונה.

19 And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

על אף זאת, שפט הילמן מפס המשפט
בצדק ובמישרים. אכן, הוא הקפיד לשמר
על חקי אלהים, ועל משפטי ועל מצוותיו;
והוא עשה תמיד את הישר בעיני אלהים,
והלך בדרכי אביו והצליח בארץ.

20 Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

שני בנים היו לו. את שם הבכור הוא קרא
נפי, ואת שם הצעיר קרא לחי; והם גדלו
לשם יהוה.

21 And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

והיה באחרית שנת ארבעים ושמונה
לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי החלו המלחמות
והמריבות אשר בקרבם לשקט מעט.

22 And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

ובשנת ארבעים ותשע לשלטון השופטים
השתרר בארץ שלום ממש, וזולת אגדות
הסתר אשר יסדן השוודד גדיאנטון בחלקי
הארץ אשר רבו יושביהם; אף בעת ההיא
לא היו ידועים חברי האגדות האלה
ליושבים בראש השלטון; על כן הם
לא הכרתו מן הארץ.

23 And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

- 24 And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.
- 25 And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.
- 26 And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.
- 27 Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.
- 28 Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.
- 29 Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a straight and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—
- 30 And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.
- 31 And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.
- 32 And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.
- 33 And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—
- ובשנה ההיא רבתה הצלחת הכנסייה;
אלפים הצטרפו אליה והטבילו לשם תשובה.
- כה רבה היתה הצלחת הכנסייה וכן הברכה
אשר ננסכה על העם, עד כי אף הכהנים
הגדולים והמורים עצמם השתוממו עד מאד.
- ועבודת יהוה הצליחה בהטבילה ובחבור
נפשות רבות, רבבות, אל כנסית אלהים.
- בזאת נוכח כי רחום וחנון יהוה אל כל אשר
יקרא בשם קדשו בלב שלם.
- וכן רואים אנחנו כי שער השמים פתוח
לכל; לכל המאמינים בשם ישוע המשיח,
אשר הוא בן אלהים.
- אכן, רואים אנחנו כי כל הרוצה יכול
להחזיק בדבר אלהים, אשר הוא מהיר
ורב כח, המכרית את כל ערמת השטן ואת
מצודתו ואת תחבולותיו, ומוליך את המאמין
במשיח במסלול ישר וצר מעבר לתהום
היסורים המוכנה לבלע את הרשעים;
- ומשפין את נשמות אלה, את נשמותיהם
הנצחיות, לימין אלהים במלכות השמים,
לשבת עם אברהם, עם יצחק ועם יעקב, ועם
כל אבותינו הקדושים, ולא לצאת עוד.
- הנה, בשנה ההיא שרתה השמחה בארץ
זרעהמלה, ובכל האזורים הסובבים אותה,
אכן, בכל ארץ נחלת הנפיים.
- והשלום והשמחה הרבה נמשכו בשארית
שנת ארבעים ותשע; וכה היתה גם בשנת
חמשים לשלטון השופטים.
- אף בשנת חמשים ואחת לשלטון השופטים
שרר שלום, זולת הגאווה אשר החלה להכנס
אל הכנסייה; לא אל תוף כנסית אלהים,
כי אם אל לב האנשים אשר טענו כי הם
חברי כנסית אלהים.

- 34 And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.
- 35 Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.
- 36 And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.
- 37 And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.
- הם התנשאו בגאווה ואף רדפו רבים מאחיהם. הִיָּה זֶה אִסּוֹן גָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר הִסֵּב לַחֲלָק הָעָם הַנְּדַבָּא לְסַבֵּל רְדִיפוֹת גְּדוּלוֹת וּלְהִתְאַבֵּל בְּרַב מַצּוּקָה.
- אֲףֹ הֵם הִרְבּוּ לָצוּם וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ הַלּוֹף וְחִזּוֹק בְּכִנְיֻתָם, וְאַמּוּנָתָם בְּמַשִּׁיחַ נַעֲשֶׂתָה מוֹצֵקֶת וְאִיתָנָה עַד אֲשֶׁר מָלְאָה אֶת נַפְשָׁם שְׂמִיחָה וְנַחֲמָה, וְאֵף טִהְרָה וְקִדְּשָׁה אֶת לִבָּם. וְהִקְדִּשָׁה הַזֹּאת בָּאָה מִפְּנֵי הַתְּמַסְרוֹת לִבָּם לֵאלֹהִים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי שָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם כָּלְתָה בְּשָׁלוֹם אֲףֹ הִיא, זֹלַת הַגָּאוּוֹת הַמְרִבָּה אֲשֶׁר קָנְתָה שְׁבִיתָה בְּלִבֵּי הָאֲנָשִׁים, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוּם וְהַצְלָחָתָם בָּאָרֶץ. וְגֵאוּתָם אָכֵן גְּבָרָה בָּהֶם מִיּוֹם לְיוֹם.
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁלֹשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים מֵת הִילְמָן, וּבְנֹו הַבְּכוֹר, נְפִי, הִחֵל לְמַשֵּׁל תַּחְתָּיו. וְהוּא יָשַׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט וְשָׁפֵט בְּצֶדֶק וּבְמִשְׁרָשִׁים; אָכֵן, הוּא שָׁמַר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְהָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו.

ד

4

- 1 And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.
- 2 And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.
- 3 And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.
- 4 But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.
- 5 And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea,
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וָאַרְבַּע רַבּוּ הַפְּלוּגִים בְּכִנְסִיָּה, וְאֵף פְּרֻצָּה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, עַד כִּי נִשְׁפָּף דָּם רַב.
- וְהַמּוֹרְדִים נִהָרְגוּ אוֹ גָּרְשׁוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהַמְּגִרָשִׁים הָלְכוּ אֶל מֶלֶךְ הַלָּמָנִים.
- וְהֵם הִתְאַמְּצוּ לְעוֹרֵר אֶת הַלָּמָנִים לְצֵאתָ לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַנְּפִיִּים, וְאוֹלָם הַלָּמָנִים יָרְאוּ מְאֹד וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרֵי הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים עָלוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים נוֹסְפִים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל הַלָּמָנִים; וּבִיד אֱלֹהֵם אָכֵן עָלָה, בְּעִזְזַת הַפּוֹרְשִׁים קוֹדְמִיָּהֶם, לְעוֹרְרָם לְכַעַס עַל הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכָל הַשָּׁנָה הָהִיא נִעְרְכוּ הַלָּמָנִים לְמִלְחָמָה.
- וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְשִׁבְעָה הֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים לְקָרֵב; וְהֵם הִחִלּוּ לְזַרְעַ מוֹת, עַד כִּי בְּשָׁנַת

חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הֵם
הַצְּלִיחוּ לְהִשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְאֵף
עַל כָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת עַד הָאֶרֶץ הַקְּרוֹבָה אֶל
אֶרֶץ רֹב־שֹׁפֵעַ.

insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

וְהַנְּפִיטִים וְחֵילוֹת מוֹרוֹנִיחָה גִּרְשׁוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ
רֹב־שֹׁפֵעַ.

6 And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

וְהֵם הִקִּימוּ שָׁם בְּצוּרִים לְהִגָּן מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִים,
מִן הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי וְעַד הַיָּם הַמַּזְרָחִי, אֲשֶׁר
אָרְכוּ מִהַלֵּךְ יוֹם אֶחָד לְאִישׁ נָפִי. וְהֵם הִצִּיבוּ
אֶת חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם עַל הַקוֹ הַמְּבַצֵּר לְהִגָּן
שֶׁטְחֵיהֶם הַצָּפוֹנִיִּים.

7 And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

כִּךְ עָלָה בְּיַד הַפּוֹרְשִׁים מִן הַנְּפִיטִים, בְּעֶזְרָת
צָבָא לָמָנִי רַב, לְתַפֵּשׁ אֶת כָּל נְחֻלַּת הַנְּפִיטִים,
אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בְּאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם. כָּל זֶה נַעֲשֶׂה בְּשָׁנַת
חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה וּבְשָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע
לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

8 And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שִׁשִּׁים לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הַצְּלִיחַ
מוֹרוֹנִיחָה עִם צָבָאוֹ לְתַפֵּשׁ חֻלְקִים רַבִּים מִן
הָאֶרֶץ. אָכֵן, הֵם הִשִּׁיבוּ לַיְדֵיהֶם עָרִים רַבּוֹת
אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ לַיְדֵי הַלָּמָנִים.

9 And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

וּבְשָׁנַת שִׁשִּׁים וְאֶחָת לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים הֵם
הַצְּלִיחוּ לְהָשִׁיב לַיְדֵיהֶם מִחֲצִית מִכָּל נְחֻלָּתָם.

10 And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲבֹדוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה וְהַהֵרֶג
הָרַב אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם לֹא הָיוּ בָּאִים עֲלֵיהֶם לוֹלֵא
הָרָשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֵבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּם; וְאֵף הָיָה
בְּקִרְבָּם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הִצְחִירוּ כִּי חֲבָרִי כְּנָסִית
אֱלֹהִים הֵמָּה.

11 Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

וְזֹאת בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת לִבָּבָם, מִפְּנֵי
עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוֹם, אָכֵן, כִּי נָגְשׁוּ בְּעֵנִיִּים, וּמָנְעוּ
אֶת לֶחֶמָם מִן הָרָעִיבִים וְאֶת לְבוּשָׁם מִן
הָעִרְמִיִּים, וּמִפְּנֵי הַכּוֹתָם אֶת אֲחֵיהֶם הַנִּכְנָעִים
עַל הַלְּחִי, וּמִפְּנֵי שִׁימָם אֶת הַקְּדוֹשׁ לְלַעַג,
וְהַכְּחִישָׁם אֶת רוּחַ הַנְּבוּאָה וְהַתְּגִלוֹת, וַיַּעַן
אֲשֶׁר רָצְחוּ וּבָזְזוּ וְרָמּוּ וּנְגְבוּ וְנָאֲפוּ, וְעַל קוֹמָם
לְמִרְיבוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וְעַל כִּי עָרְקוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ נָפִי,
אֶל הַלָּמָנִים.

12 And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

וּמִפְּנֵי רְשָׁעָתָם הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת וְהַתְּפָאֲרוֹתָם
בְּכַחֲסָם, הֵם נִעְזְבוּ לְהִשָּׁעַן עַל כֹּחֵם בְּלִבָּד;

13 And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they

- לכן לא הצליחו, כי אם ענו והבו וגרשו
מפני הלמנים, עד אשר אבדו כמעט את
כל אדמותיהם.
- 14 But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.
- 15 And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.
- 16 For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.
- 17 And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.
- 18 And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.
- 19 Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.
- 20 And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.
- 21 Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God.
- 22 And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.
- לכן, מפני עוונם, הטיף מורוניהה לעם
דברים רבים; וכן נפי ולחי, בני הילמן הטיפו
רבות לעם ואף נבאו להם דברים רבים על
עוונותיהם ועל אשר יבואם אם לא ינחמו
מחטאיהם.
- והנה, הם נחמו על רעתם, וכמדת תשובתם
החלו להצליח.
- ובראות מורוניהה כי הם נחמו על רעתם,
הוא העז להוליכם ממקום למקום ומעיר
לעיר, עד אשר השיבו לידיהם את מחצית
רכושם ומחצית מכלל אדמותיהם.
- כה פלטה שנת ששים ואחת לשלטון
השופטים.
- ובשנת ששים ושנים לשלטון השופטים,
לא יכול היה מורוניהה להוסיף לתפוש נחלות
מידי הלמנים.
- על כן נטשו הנפיים את תכניתם לכבש את
שאר אדמותיהם, יען אשר מספר הלמנים היה
כה רב, עד כי התגברות עליהם הייתה מעבר
להשג ידם. לכן העסיק מורוניהה את כל צבאו
בהגנת חלקי הארץ אשר הושבו לידם.
- והנפיים פחדו פחד גדול, מפני מספר
הלמנים העצום, פן יגברו אלה עליהם,
וירמסו ויהרגו וישמידו.
- הם זכרו את נבואות עלמא ואת דברי
מושיע, וראו כי עם קשה ערף הם וכי הפרו
את מצוות אלהים;
- וכי הם שנו ורמסו תחת רגליהם את חקי
מושיע, אשר צוהו יהוה לתת לעם. והם ראו
כי חקיהם נשחתו, וכי הם היו לעם רשע,
עד כי הרשיעו כללמנים;

הילמן ד:כג-ה:ו

- 23 And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.
- וְכִי מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם נִחְלְשָׁה הַכְּנִסָּה; וְכִי הֵם הִחֲלוּ לִכְפֹּר בְּרוּחַ הַנְּבִיאָה וּבְרוּחַ הַהִתְגַּלוּת; וְכִי מִשְׁפָּט אֱלֹהִים הָעֵצִים אֲלֵיהֶם פָּנִיו.
- 24 And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—
- וְהֵם רָאוּ כִּי הֵם נִהְיוּ חֲלָשִׁים כְּאַחֵיהֶם הַלְּמָנִיתִים, וְכִי רוּחַ יְהוָה אֵינוֹ שׁוֹמֵר עֲלֵיהֶם עוֹד. אַכֵּן, הִסְתַּלַּק מֵהֶם רוּחַ יְהוָה כִּי אֵינוֹ שׁוֹכֵן בְּהִיכָלוֹת מִחֲלָלִים.
- 25 Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God, they must unavoidably perish.
- לְכֵן, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִדְרָדְרוּ אֶל חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וְרָשָׁע נִזְרָא, חָדַל יְהוָה לְשׁמֹרָם בְּכֹחוֹ הַנִּפְלָא אֲשֶׁר אֵין עָרֵף לוֹ. וְהֵם רָאוּ כִּי הַלְּמָנִיתִים רַבִּים מֵהֶם עַד מְאֹד וְכִי אִם לֹא יִדְבְּקוּ בִיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, לֹא יִהְיֶה לָהֶם כָּל מְנוּס מִכְּלִיוֹן.
- 26 For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.
- וְהִנֵּה, הֵם רָאוּ כִּי כַח הַלְּמָנִיתִים הָיָה כְּכֹחַם, בְּהִלָּחֵם אִישׁ בְּאִישׁ. כֹּה הֵם נָפְלוּ אֶל הַפֶּשַׁע הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה, וְכֹה הֵם נִחְלְשׁוּ; וְכָל זֹאת עַל דְּבַר פֶּשַׁעַם בְּמִשְׁפָּח שְׁנַיִם מֵעֻשׂוֹת.

ה

5

- 1 And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.
- וּבְעֶצֶם הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא מָסַר נְפִי אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נְקָרָא כְּזֹרָם.
- 2 For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.
- כִּי הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר נִוָּסְדוּ חֻקֵּיהֶם וּמִמְשָׁלָתָם עַל קוֹלוֹת הָעָם הַבּוֹחֵר, וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר רַבּוּ הַבּוֹחֲרִים בָּרַע מִן הַבּוֹחֲרִים בְּטוֹב, הֵם בָּשְׁלוּ לְקִרְאָת הַשְׁמָדָה, כִּי חֻקֵּיהֶם נַעֲשׂוּ מִשְׁחָתִים.
- 3 Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.
- וְלֹא זֶה בְּלִבְדּוֹ, כִּי הָיוּ הֵם עִם קָשָׁה עֵרָף, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא נָתַן הָיָה לְשַׁלֵּט בָּהֶם בְּחֹק אוֹ בְּצֶדֶק בְּלָתִי אִם לְהַשְׁמִידָם.
- 4 And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;
- וְנְפִי הִתִּיגַע מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם; וְהוּא הִעָבִיר אֶת כִּסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט לְזֹולָתוֹ, וְהִתְמַסֵּר לְהַטִּיף אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּשָׂרִית יְמֵי חַיָּו. וְכִמּוֹהוּ עָשָׂה לְחִי, אָחִיו, כָּל שְׂאִרֵּית יְמָיו.
- 5 For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:
- כִּי הֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם הִילְמָן אָבִיהֶם. וְאֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר:
- 6 Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have
- הִנֵּה, בָּנִי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ לְשׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים. וּמִי יִתֵּן וְתִשְׁמַעְנֵם לַעֲם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. קִרְאתִיכֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרִאשׁוֹנִים, אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם;

- וְזֹאת עֲשִׂיתִי כִּי בִזְכְּרְכֶם אֶת שְׁמוֹתֵיכֶם
תִּזְכְּרוּ בָהֶם. וּבִזְכְּרְכֶם אוֹתָם תִּזְכְּרוּ אֶת
מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם. וּבִזְכְּרְכֶם אֶת מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם תִּדְעוּ
כִּי נָאֵמַר וְאִף נִכְתָּב כִּי טוֹבִים הָיוּ.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּנֵי, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תַעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַטוֹב,
לְמַעַן יֵאמַר עַל אוֹדוֹתֵיכֶם, וְאִף יִכְתָּב,
כְּאִמּוֹר וְכִכְתּוֹב עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, רְצוֹנִי לְבִקְשְׁכֶם עוֹד דְּבַר־מָה.
אֲלֵךְ נָא תַעֲשׂוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְשֵׁם
הַתְּפָאָרוֹת, כִּי אִם תַּעֲשׂוּם בְּעִבּוֹר תִּצְאָרוּ
לְכֶם אוֹצָר בְּשָׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֶצְחִי וְאֵינוֹ
כָּלֵה, לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה לְכֶם מַתָּנַת הַיָּקָר, חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
אֲשֶׁר יֵשׁ לָנוּ לְהַנִּיחַ כִּי נִתְּנָה לְאַבּוֹתֵינוּ.
- זְכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ, בְּנֵי, אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר
הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּנִימִין אֶל עַמּוֹ; זָכְרוּ נָא כִּי אֵין דֶּרֶךְ אוֹ
אֶפֶן אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם יוֹכֵל אָדָם לְהוֹשֵׁעַ, כִּי אִם
בְּדָם כְּפָרַת יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יָבוֹא.
אֲכֹן, זָכְרוּ כִּי בָא הוּא לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת הָעוֹלָם.
- זָכְרוּ אִף אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲמוּלֵק אֶל
זְאֶזְרוֹם בְּעִיר עַמּוֹנִיָּה; כִּי הוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו כִּי
בּוֹא יָבוֹא יְהוָה לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת עַמּוֹ; אִף לֹא יָבוֹא
הוּא לְגַאֲלֵי אוֹתָם בְּעוֹדָם חוֹטְאִים, כִּי אִם יִגְאֹל
אוֹתָם מִחַטָּאֵיהֶם.
- וְכֵן נָתַן לוֹ מֵאֵת הָאֵב לְגַאֲלֵם מִחַטָּאֵיהֶם מִכֹּחַ
תְּשׁוּבָתָם מִחַטָּא. לְכֵן הוּא שָׁלַח אֶת מַלְאָכָיו
לְהַשְׁמִיעַ אֶת תְּשׁוּבָתָם עַל תְּנַאי הַתְּשׁוּבָה,
הַמְּפַעֲלִים אֶת כָּח הַגּוֹאֵל עַל הַנִּחְמָמִים עַל
חַטָּאֵיהֶם לְהוֹשִׁיעַ אֶת נַשְׁמוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנֵי, זְכוֹר תִּזְכְּרוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לִבְנוֹת אֶת
יְסוּדְכֶם עַל צוֹר גּוֹאֲלָנוּ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ,
בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁלַח הַשָּׁטָן אֶת
סוּפוֹתָיו הָעֲזוֹת, וְאֵת חֲצֵי הַסְּעָרָה, בָּעֵת
אֲשֶׁר יִכְכֶם כָּל הַבָּרָד וְהָרוּחוֹת הָאֲדִירוֹת
אֲשֶׁר לוֹ, לֹא יִהְיֶה בָאֵלֶּה כָּח לְגָרֵר אֶתְכֶם
אֶל מַעֲמָקֵי תְהוֹם הַיְסוּרִים וְיִגוֹן עוֹלָם, יַעַן
אֲשֶׁר בְּנוִיִּים אַתֶּם עַל הַצּוֹר, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יְסוֹד
מִבְּטָחִים, יְסוֹד אֲשֶׁר הַבּוֹנִים עָלָיו לֹא יִמוּטוּ.
- אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לָמַד הִילְמָן אֶת בְּנָיו.
אֲכֹן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר אֵינִם כְּתוּבִים, וְכֵן
דְּבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר כְּתוּבִים הוּא לְמַדֵּם.
- done that when you remember your names ye may remember them;
and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when
ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also
written, that they were good.
- 7 Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that
it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and
written of them.
- 8 And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you,
which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast,
but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in
heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye
may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to
suppose hath been given to our fathers.
- 9 O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin
spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor
means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of
Jesus Christ, who shall come, yea, remember that he cometh to redeem
the world.
- 10 And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom,
in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely
should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to
redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.
- 11 And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them
from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels
to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth
unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.
- 12 And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of
our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your
foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea,
his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm
shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down
to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which
ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men
build they cannot fall.
- 13 And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught
to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written,
and also many things which are written.

- 14 And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;
וְהֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרָיו; וְעַל כֵּן יָצְאוּ, וְהָם שׁוֹמְרִים אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים, לְלַמֵּד אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם נֶפִי; וְרֹאשִׁית דִּרְכָם בְּעִיר רִב־שֹׁפֶעַ.
- 15 And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;
וּמִשָּׁם הֵם הִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּדִרְכָם אֶל הָעִיר גִּיד; וּמִן הָעִיר גִּיד אֶל הָעִיר מוּלֶק.
- 16 And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.
וְכֵן הֵם הָלְכוּ מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, עַד אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ בְּקֶרֶב כָּל עַם נֶפִי הַיּוֹשֵׁב בְּאַרְץ הָדָרוֹם; וּמִשָּׁם אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה, אֶל הַלְּמָנִים.
- 17 And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.
וְהֵם הִטִּיפוּ בְּכַח רַב, עַד כִּי הִבִּישׁוּ רַבִּים מִן הַפּוֹרְשִׁים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר רָחֲקוּ מִן הַנֶּפְתִּים; אֲלֵהָ בָּאוּ וְהִתְנִדּוּ עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם וְהִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וּמִיד שָׁבוּ אֶל הַנֶּפְתִּים וְהִתְאַמְצּוּ לְתַקֵּן אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָלוּ לָהֶם.
- 18 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority, given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—
וְנֶפִי וְלְחִי הִטִּיפוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים בְּכַח רַב וּבְתִקְףָּהּ סְמֻכּוּת, כִּי בַעֲבוּר יוֹכְלוּ לְדַבֵּר הֵם קִבְּלוּ כַח וְסְמֻכּוּת וְאֵף נִתְּנוּ לָהֶם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר עָלִיהֶם לֹאמַר;
- 19 Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.
עַל כֵּן הִסְבּוּ דְּבָרֵיהֶם הַשְׁתוֹמָמֹת רַבָּה בֵּין הַלְּמָנִים, וְאֵף שִׁכְנָעוּם, עַד כִּי שְׁמוֹנֶת אֲלָפִים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הַיּוֹשְׁבִים בְּאַרְץ זֶרַעְחֶמְלָה וּבִסְבִּיבוֹתֶיהָ הִטְבְּלוּ לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה וְנוֹכְחוּ לְדַעַת אֶת דְּבַר רְשָׁעַת מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 20 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.
אֲזַי הִמְשִׁיכוּ נֶפִי וְלְחִי אֶת דִּרְכָם אֶל אֶרֶץ נֶפִי.
- 21 And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.
וְשָׁם תִּפְּשׂוּם צָבָא לְמָנִים וְהִשְׁלִיכֻם אֶל הַכְּלָא, הוּא בֵּית הַכְּלָא אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ נִכְּלָאוּ עַמּוֹן וְעַמְּיִתָיו עַל יְדֵי מְשָׁרְתֵי לִמְחִי.
- 22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.
וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם הָיוּ כְּלוּאִים יָמִים רַבִּים בְּלִי מִזֶּן, נִכְּנְסוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא לִקְחָתָם וּלְהוֹצִיאָם לְהוֹרֵג.
- 23 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.
וְהָיָה הֶקְפּוֹ נֶפִי וְלְחִי בִכְעֵין אֵשׁ. וְהַלְּמָנִים לֹא הֵעִזוּ לְשַׁלַּח אֶת יָדָם אֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּחָדָם כִּי יָכוּ. וְנֶפִי וְלְחִי לֹא נִכְּוּ; הֵם הָיוּ כְּעוֹמְדִים בְּתוֹךְ אֵשׁ וְלֹא נִשְׂרָפוּ.

- 24 And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.
- וּבִרְאוֹתָם כִּי הִקְפּוּ בְּעַמּוּד אֵשׁ וְכִי לֹא נִשְׂרָפוּ, לִבָּם לָבַשׁ אֲמִץ;
- 25 For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.
- יָעִן אֲשֶׁר הֵם רָאוּ כִּי הִלְמָנִים לֹא הֵעִזּוּ לְשַׁלַּח יָד אֲלֵיהֶם וְאִף לֹא הֵעִזּוּ לְהִתְקָרֵב אֲלֵיהֶם, וְכִי הֵם עָמְדוּ דּוֹמָמִים כְּמִכִּי תַמְהוֹן.
- 26 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.
- אִז עָמְדוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם נְפִי וְלֵהִי וְלָחִי וְדִבְרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: אַל תִּירָאוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה אֱלֹהִים הוּא הַמֵּרְאָה לָכֶם אֶת הַדָּבָר הַנִּפְלָא הַזֶּה; הֵן הוּא מֵרְאָה לָכֶם כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְשַׁלַּח אֶת יְדֵכֶם אֵלֵינוּ לְהַרְגֵנוּ.
- 27 And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.
- וּבִאֲמָרָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה חָרְדָה הָאֲדָמָה חָרְדָה עֲזָה מְאֹד וְקִירוֹת בֵּית הַכְּלֵא הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדוּ לְקַרֵּס אֶרְצָה; אַךְ הִנֵּה, לֹא נָפְלוּ הֵם. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בְּבֵית הַכְּלֵא הָיוּ לָמָנִים וְנִפְתִּיִם פּוֹרְשִׁים.
- 28 And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָסַם עָנָן עֲלֵהֶם וְנִפְלְאָה עֲלֵיהֶם אֵימַת הוֹד מִבְּעִיתָהּ.
- 29 And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.
- וְקוֹל נִשְׁמַע, כְּאִלּוּ מֵעַל עָנָן הָעֲלֵטָה, לֵאמֹר: הִנָּחֵם תִּנָּחֲמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם וְאַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ עוֹד לְאַבֵּד אֶת עַבְדֵי אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּים אֲלֵיכֶם לְבַשֵּׁר טוֹב.
- 30 And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַקוֹל הַזֶּה וְנוֹכַחוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה זֶה קוֹל רֶעֶם וְאִף לֹא קוֹל הַמְּלָחָה רַבָּה, כִּי אִם קוֹל שָׁקֵט בְּתַכְלִית הָרֹף, כְּאִלּוּ לַחֹשׁ, אֲשֶׁר חָדַר אֶל עַמְקֵי הַנֶּפֶשׁ;
- 31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—
- וְעַל אִף רֹף הַקוֹל, חָרְדָה הָאֲרֶץ חָרְדָה עֲזָה וְקִירוֹת בֵּית הַכְּלֵא הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ שֵׁנִית, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדוּ לְקַרֵּס אֶרְצָה, וְהִנֵּה לֹא נִמוּג עָנָן הָעֲלֵטָה אֲשֶׁר אָפַף אוֹתָם;
- 32 And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.
- וְהִנֵּה הוֹסִיף הַקוֹל לֵאמֹר: הִנָּחֵם תִּנָּחֲמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם כִּי קְרוֹבָה לְבֹא מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם וְאַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ עוֹד לְאַבֵּד אֶת עַבְדֵי. וְהָאֲרֶץ הוֹסִיפָה לְחָרֹד וְהַקִּירוֹת הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ.
- 33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.
- וְהִנֵּה נִשְׁמַע הַקוֹל בְּשָׁלִישִׁית, וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים מִפְּלְאִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא יוּכַל אָדָם לְהִשְׁמִיעֵם; וְהַקִּירוֹת הִזְדַּעְזְעוּ עוֹד וְהָאֲרֶץ חָרְדָה, כְּאִלּוּ עָמְדָה לְהִבָּקַע.

- 34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.
- וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא יָכְלוּ הַלְמָנִיתִים לָנוּס, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר אָפְףָּ אוֹתָם עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה וּמִפְּנֵי הַיּוֹתָם מִשְׁתָּקִים מִן הַפַּחַד אֲשֶׁר נָפַל עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 35 Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.
- וְאִישׁ אֶחָד הָיָה בִּינְיָהִם, נָפִי מִלְדָּה, אֲשֶׁר נִמְנָה לְפָנִים עִם חֲבֵרֵי כְנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים, וְאוֹלָם פָּרַשׁ מֵהֶם.
- 36 And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִפְנוֹתוֹ אֶת מִבְטּוֹ, וַהֲנֵה מִבְּעַד לַעֲנַן הָעֲלָטָה הוּא רָאָה אֶת פְּנֵי נָפִי וְלֵחִי. וַהֲנֵה הֵם זָרְחוּ וַהֲזֹהִירוּ כְּפְנֵי מַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים. וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם הַשָּׁמַיְמָה, וְהֵם הָיוּ כַּמְדַּבְּרִים אוֹ כְּנוֹשְׂאִים קוֹל אֶל מִי אֲשֶׁר רָאוּהוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.
- אֲזַי קָרָא הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה אֶל הַהֶמוֹן, לְהִפְנוֹת אֶת מִבְטָם וּלְרְאוֹת. וַהֲנֵה, נָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ, וְהֵם פָּנוּ וַהֲבִיטוּ וַרְאוּ אֶת פְּנֵי נָפִי וְלֵחִי.
- 38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ אֶל הָאִישׁ: מָה מִשְׁמַע כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְעִם מִי שׁוֹחִים הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה?
- 39 Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.
- וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ הַהוּא נְקִיָּא עַמִּינָדָב. וְכֵה אָמַר לָהֶם עַמִּינָדָב: מְשִׁיחִים הֵם עִם מַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 40 And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?
- וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ הַלְמָנִיתִים: מָה נַעֲשֶׂה בְּעִבּוֹר יָסוּר מִכְסוּתָנוּ עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה הַזֶּה?
- 41 And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.
- וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם עַמִּינָדָב: עֲלִיכֶם לְהִנָּחַם מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם וּלְקַרֵּא אֶל הַקּוֹל, עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְאַזְרוּ אֶמּוּנָה בְּמִשְׁיַח, אֲשֶׁר עֲלָמָא וְעַמּוּלֵק וְזִיזְרוֹם לְמַדּוּכֶם עַל אוֹדוֹתֵי; וּבַעֲשׂוֹתְכֶם בֵּן יָסוּר עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה מֵעֲלֵיכֶם.
- 42 And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.
- אֲזַי הִחֲלוּ כָּלֶם לְקַרֵּא אֶל קוֹל מִי אֲשֶׁר הִתְרִיד אֶת הָאָרֶץ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נִמּוּג עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה.
- 43 And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִבְיֵטֵם סָבִיב וּבִרְאוֹתֶם כִּי נִמּוּג עָנַן הָעֲלָטָה אֲשֶׁר אָפְפָּם, וַהֲנֵה הֵם רָאוּ כִּי הֵם מְקֻפָּסִים, כָּל אִישׁ מֵהֶם, בְּעַמּוּד אֵשׁ.
- 44 And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm
- וּבִתְוֹכֶם הָיוּ נָפִי וְלֵחִי; אָכֵן, אִף הֵם הָיוּ מְקֻפָּסִים בְּאֵלוּ בִּתְוֹךְ לְהִבְתֵּי אֵשׁ, אֲךָ לֹא אָנָּה

לָהֶם כָּל רַע, וְאִף קִירוֹת בַּיִת הַכֵּלֵא לֹא נִאָּחֲזוּ
בָאֵשׁ. וְהֵם מָלְאוּ שִׂמְחָה אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְתֹאֲרָה,
וְכָלָה אוֹמֶרֶת כְּבוֹד.

them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

וְהִנֵּה יֵרְדֶה רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים מִן
הַשָּׁמַיִם וְנִכְנְסָה אֶל לִבָּם וְהֵם כָּאֵלוּ מָלְאוּ אֵשׁ
וַיְכַלּוּ לְהַבִּיעַ דְּבָרִים נִפְלְאִים.

45 And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

אִז נִשְׁמַע קוֹל בְּאִזְנוֹהֶם, קוֹל נָעִים, כָּאֵלוּ
לְחֹשׁ, לֵאמֹר:

46 And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

שָׁלוֹם, שָׁלוֹם עֲלֵיכֶם, עַל אֱמוּנָתְכֶם בְּבִנִי
יְקִירִי הָאֱהוֹב, אֲשֶׁר הוּא קִים מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם.

47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

וְכַאֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ זֹאת, הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם
כָּאֵלוּ אָבוּ לְרֹאוֹת מֵאֵין בָּא הַקוֹל. וְהִנֵּה הֵם
רָאוּ כִּי נִפְתְּחִים הַשָּׁמַיִם, וּמַלְאָכִים יוֹרְדִים
וּמִשְׁמָשִׁים לִפְנֵיהֶם.

48 And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

כִּשְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת נַפְשׁ רָאוּ וּשְׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה. וְהֵם הִצְטִווּ לְצִאָתָא, וְלֹא לְתִמְאָה וְאִף
לֹא לְהִטִּיל סִפְקָא.

49 And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וּשְׁמָשׁוּ לִפְנֵי הָעָם, בְּהַשְׁמִיעָם בְּכָל
אֲזוֹרֵי הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר הֵם שָׁמְעוּ וָרָאוּ, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּכְּנְעוּ רַב
הַלְמָנִים עַל יְדֵיהֶם, מִפְּנֵי הָרָאיוֹת הַבְּרוּרוֹת
אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵיהֶם.

50 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתַּכְּנְעוּ הִנִּיחוּ אֶת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָתָם
וְאִף נִטְשׂוּ אֶת שִׁנְאָתָם וְאֶת מִסֵּרָת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

51 And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם מָסְרוּ לְיַד הַנְּפִיִּים אֶת אֲדָמוֹת
נַחֲלָתָם.

52 And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

1

6

וְהָיָה בְּתֵם שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשׁוֹפְטִים, וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ;
וְרַב הַלְמָנִים הִפְכוּ עִם צִדִּיק, עַד כִּי צִדְקָתָם
עָלְתָה עַל צִדְקַת הַנְּפִיִּים, כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אִיתְנִים
וְיָצִיבִים בְּאַמְנוּנָתָם.

1 And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

כִּי הִנֵּה, רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים הָיוּ לְאִנְשֵׁים קָשִׁים
וְנִקְשִׁים, וּמִרְשָׁעִים עַד מָאֵד, עַד כִּי הֵם מָאִסוּ

2 For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the

הילמן ו:ג-יא

- אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וְכָל דְּבַר הַשְּׁפָה וְנִבְּוָאָה
אֲשֶׁר בָּא בְּקִרְבָּם.
- word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.
- 3 וְאוּלָּם, שְׂמָחוּ מְאֹד אַנְשֵׁי הַכְּנָסִיָּה עַל הַפִּיכֹת
הַלְּמָנִים לְמַאֲמֵי יְהוָה, כִּי נִוְסְדָה בֵּינֵיהֶם
כְּנִסִּית אֱלֹהִים. וְהֵם הִתְחַבְּרוּ זֶה לָזֶה וְשָׂשׂוּ
זֶה בְּזֶה, וְרִבְּהָ הִיִּתָּה שְׂמֻחָתָם.
- 3 Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.
- 4 וְרַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחְמֶלָה
וְהִשְׁמִיעוּ לָעָם הַנְּפִיִּים עַל אֲדוּת אִפֹּן
הַפִּיכָתָם לְמַאֲמֵי יְהוָה וְהַפְּצִירוּ בָּהֶם
לְהֵאֱמִין וּלְשׁוּב מִרְעָתָם.
- 4 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.
- 5 אָכֵן, רַבִּים מֵהֶם הִטִּיפוּ בְּרַב עֹז וּבְתִקְוָה
סִמְכוֹת עַד כִּי שְׁפָלוּ רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים אֶל
עִמְקֵי הַהִכָּנָעָה, וְהִפְכוּ נְאֻמָּנִים נִכְנָעִים
לְאֱלֹהִים וְלִשָׁה.
- 5 Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.
- 6 וְרַבִּים מִן הַלְּמָנִים הָלְכוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן;
וְאִף נְפִי וְלֵחִי הָלְכוּ שָׁמָּה לְהִטִּיף לָעָם. וְכֹה
כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ.
- 6 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.
- 7 וְהָיָה שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, עַד כִּי הָלְכוּ הַנְּפִיִּים
אֶל כָּל מְקוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ, אִם אֶל
מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים, וְאִם אֶל מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַלְּמָנִים.
- 7 And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.
- 8 וְאִף הַלְּמָנִים הָלְכוּ בְּאֶשֶׁר חָפְצוּ, אִם אֶל
מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַלְּמָנִים, וְאִם אֶל מוֹשְׁבוֹת הַנְּפִיִּים.
כֹּה הִתְנַהֵּל בֵּינֵיהֶם מִשָּׂא וּמִתֵּן חֶפְשִׁי לְמִקָּח
וּמִמְכָּר וּלְרוֹחַ כְּחֶפְצָם.
- 8 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.
- 9 אַזְּ הָאִיר לָהֶם הָעֵשֶׂר פָּנִים עַד מְאֹד, הַלְּמָנִים
וְהַנְּפִיִּים כָּאֶחָד; וְהֵם צָבְרוּ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וְכָל מִינֵי
מִתְּכֹת יְקָרוֹת בְּשֹׁפֵעַ עֲצוֹם וָרֹב, בְּאֶרֶץ
הַצָּפוֹן כְּבְּאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם.
- 9 And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.
- 10 וְאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם נִקְרָאָה בְּשֵׁם לְחִי וְאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן
נִקְרָאָה בְּשֵׁם מוּלֵק, כְּשֵׁם בֶּן צִדְקִיָּהוּ, כִּי אֶל
אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן הֵבִיא יְהוָה אֶת מוּלֵק וְאֶל אֶרֶץ
הַדָּרוֹם הֵבִיא אֶת לְחִי.
- 10 Now the land south was called Lehi and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.
- 11 אָכֵן, בְּשֵׁתֵי הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה הָיוּ כָּל סוּגֵי זָהָב
וְכֶסֶף וְעִפְרוֹת יְקָרוֹת לְמִינֵיהֶן; וְכֹן הָיוּ שָׂם
אֲמָנֵי מַחְשֶׁבֶת אֲשֶׁר הִפְּקוּ כָּל מִין עֲפָרָה
וּצִרְפוּהָ, וְכֹה הֵם הִתְעַשְּׂרוּ.
- 11 And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

- והם גדלו תבואות בשפע, בצפון כבדרום. והם עלו ושגשגו עד מאד, בצפון כבדרום. והם רבו בארץ ועצמו מאד. והם גדלו עדרי צאן ובקר לרב וכן עגלי מרבק רבים.
- 12 They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.
- והשיהם עמלו וטוו וארגו כל סוג אריג, וישו משיור ויבד מכל מין לכסות את מעמיהם. כה חלפה בשלום שנת ששים וארבע.
- 13 Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.
- אף בשנת ששים וחמש היה להם רב שמחה ושלום, אכן, הספה רבה ונבואות רבות על העתיד לבוא. וכה חלפה שנת ששים וחמש.
- 14 And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.
- והיה בשנת ששים וישו לשלטון השופטים, רצחה יד אלמונית את כוזרם בעודו יושב על כס המשפט. ובשנה ההיא נרצח גם בנו, אשר בחרו העם תחת אביו. וכה כלתה שנת ששים וישו.
- 15 And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.
- והיה בראשית שנת ששים ושבע החלו האנשים להרשיע מאד כלפניהם.
- 16 And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.
- כי הנה ברכם יהוה בעשר העולם עת כה ארבה, עד כי לא התעוררו לרגו או למלחמה ולשפיכות דמים. לכן הם הפנו את לבם אל עשרם; אכן, הם החלו לרדף בצע בעבור התנשא איש על אחיו. לכן הם בצעו רציחות בסתר, ושידדו וגזלו למען בצע.
- 17 For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.
- והרוצחים והגזלנים ההם היו כנפיה אשר יסדו קישקומן וגדיאנטון. והנה כי רבים היו אנשי כנפית גדיאנטון, אף בין הנפיים, אף מרבים יותר היו בקרב רשעי הלמנים; והם נקראו בשם שודדי גדיאנטון ורוצחיו.
- 18 And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.
- אלה היו האנשים אשר רצחו את השופט העליון כוזרם ואת בנו בעודם על כסא המשפט. והנה, לא נתפשו הרוצחים.
- 19 And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.
- וכאשר נזכחו הלמנים לדעת כי יש בקרבם שודדים, הם נעצבו מאד ונקטו כל אמצעי אשר היה לאל ידם להשמידם מעל פני האדמה.
- 20 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.
- ואולם, השטן עורר את לב מרבית הנפיים, עד כי הם התחברו אל כנפיות השודדים.
- 21 But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers,

הילמן ו:כב-כט

הָאֱלֹהִים וּבָאוּ עִמָּן בְּבְרִית וּבְאֲלֵהּ, לְהִגֹּן וּלְשָׁמֹר
אִישׁ אֶת אָחִיו בְּכָל הַנְּסֻבּוֹת הַקְּשׁוֹת אֲשֶׁר
יִמְצְאוּ בָּהֶן, לְכָל יַעֲנֹשׁ עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח
וְהַגְזֵל וְהַגְנֵבָה אֲשֶׁר יַבְצְעוּ.

and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

וְהָיוּ לָהֶם סִימָנִים, אָכֵן, סִימְנֵי סֵתֶר וּמִלּוֹת
סֵתֶר; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבֹר יִבְחִינוּ מִי אָחִיָּהֶם, אִישׁ
בְּרִיתָם, כִּי בְלִי כָל יַחַס לַעֲוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה
אִישׁ, לֹא יַפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ אָחִיו, וְלֹא כָל חֵבֶר בְּכַנְפֵּיתוֹ
אֲשֶׁר עָבַר בְּבְרִית הָהִיא.

22 And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

וְכֵה הֵם יִכְלוּ לְרָצַח וּלְגַזֵּל וּלְגַנֵּב וּלְזָנוּת
וּלְעִשְׂוֹת כָּל רָשָׁעָה, כְּנֶגֶד חֻקֵּי אֶרֶצָם וְאֶף
חֻקֵּי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

23 And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הוּא חֵבֶר בְּכַנְפֵּיתָם וְגִלָּה בְּרִבִּים
אֶת רָשָׁעָתָם וְאֶת תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם הָעֵמֶד לְדִין,
לֹא עַל פִּי חֻקֵּי אֶרֶצָם, כִּי אִם כְּפִי חֻקֵּי עוֹלָמָם,
אֲשֶׁר חָקְקוּ גְדִיאַנְטוֹן וְקִישְׁקוּמֶן.

24 And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

הִנֵּה, אֵלֶּה הָאֱלֹלוֹת וּבְרִיתוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה
עַל־מֶלֶךְ אֶת בְּנוֹ כִּי לֹא תִצְאָנָה אֵל כָּל־
הָאֲנָשִׁים, פֶּן יִסְבוּ אֲבִדוֹן לָעַם.

25 Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

וְאִלֻּם הָאֱלֹלוֹת וּבְרִיתוֹת הַסֵּתֶר הָהֵן לֹא בָאוּ
אֶל גְּדִיאַנְטוֹן מִן הַפְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ לְיָדֵי
הִילְמָן, כִּי הֵם נָתְנוּ בְּלִבָּם גְּדִיאַנְטוֹן עַל יְדֵי מִי
אֲשֶׁר פָּתָה אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ הָרָאשׁוֹנִים לְטַעַם
מִן הַפְּרִי הָאָסוּר;

26 Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

הוּא אֲשֶׁר קָשַׁר קָשֶׁר עִם קַיִן כִּי בְרָצָחוֹ אֶת הָאֵל
אָחִיו לֹא יוֹדַע הַדָּבָר בְּרִבִּים. וְהוּא קָשַׁר עִם קַיִן
וְעִם הַהוֹלְכִים בְּדַרְכָּיו מִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהַלְּאָה.

27 Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר נָטַע בְּלִבָּם הָאֲנָשִׁים לְבָנוֹת מִגְדָּל
כֹּה גְבוּהָ, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכְלוּ לְהִגִּיעַ הַשָּׁמַיְמָה.
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הִטְעָה אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ
מִן הַמִּגְדָּל הַהוּא אֶל הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר
הִפִּיץ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת עַל פְּנֵי
כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, עַד אֲשֶׁר מָשָׁךְ אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים
אֵלֵי אֲבִדוֹן וְאֶל שְׂאוֹל אֵין קֵץ.

28 And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

אָכֵן, הוּא אֲשֶׁר נָטַע בְּלִבָּם גְּדִיאַנְטוֹן כִּי יוֹסִיף
לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהָרָצָח בְּחֹשֶׁאֵי;
וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא זֹאת מֵעַתָּה רִאשִׁית הָאָנוּשׁ
וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.

29 Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

- 30 And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder; and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.
- 31 And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.
- 32 And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- 33 And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also.
- 34 And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.
- 35 And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.
- 36 And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.
- 37 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.
- 38 And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.
- הנה, הוא אבי כל חטא, והוא ממשיך בעשותו את מעשי החשך שלו והרציחות בחשאי, אכן, בהעבירו את תחבולות הקשר ושבועותיהם ובריתותיהם ומזמות הרשעה הנוראה מדור אל דור, ככל אשר עולה בידו להשתלט על לב בני האדם.
- ועתה הוא השתלט על לב הנפיים עד כי נעשו מרשעים מאד. הנה, רבים סרו מדרך הישר ורמסו ברגליהם את מצוות אלהים ופנו אל דרכם, והקימו להם את אילי זהבם וכסףם.
- וכל העוונות האלה באו אליהם במשך שנים מעטות, עד כי מרביתם ארעו להם בשנת ששים ושבע לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.
- ואף בשנת ששים ושמונה הם הגדילו והרבו את עוונותיהם, למרבה צער הצדיקים ויגונם הרב.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי הנפיים החלו לשקע בחסר אמונה ולהרבות רשע ותועבה, בעוד הלמנים החלו לבוא עד מאד אל דעת אלהיהם; כי הם שמרו את חקיו ואת מצוותיו והלכו לפניו באמת ובישר.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי רוח יהוה החל לרחק מן הנפיים מפני קשי לבבם ורשעתו.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי שפך יהוה את רוחו על הלמנים, כי היו נוחים וחספזים להאמין בדברו.
- אז ערכו הלמנים מצוד על כנפית שודדי גדיאנטון; והם הטיפו את דבר אלהים בקרב חלק עמם המרשע, עד כי נעקרה והשמדה כנפית השודדים ההיא מקרב הלמנים.
- ולעמדת זאת, טפחו הנפיים את השודדים ותמכו בהם, החל ברשעים אשר בהם, עד אשר הם התפשטו בכל ארץ הנפיים ופתו את מרבית הצדיקים, עד אשר האמינו במעשיהם ולקחו מבזתם והתחברו עמם במעשי הרצח בחשאי ובאגדות הסתר.

39 And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

וְכֵן הֵם קִבְּלוּ אֶת הַמְּמִשָּׁלָה לְיָדֵיהֶם בְּלִבָּבָה, עַד כִּי רָמְסוּ בְּרַגְלֵיהֶם אֶת הָעֲנָוִים וְהָעֲנִיִּים וּמֵאֲמִינֵי אֱלֹהִים הִנָּכְנְעִים, וְאֶת הַכּוֹסִים וְשִׁפְעֵי עֶרְף.

40 And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

וְכֵן רֹאִים אֲנִיחָנוּ כִּי הִנָּפִיִּים הָיוּ בְּמַצָּב אִים וְכִי הֵם בְּשָׁלוּ לְקִרְאָת אֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם.

41 And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְכֵן כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְשְׁמוֹנֶה לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.

The prophecy of Nephi the son of Helaman. God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger to their utter destruction unless they repent of their wickedness. God smites the people of Nephi with pestilence, and they repent and turn to him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies to the Nephites. (About 23–1 B.C.) Comprising chapters 7–16.

נְבוּאָת נְפִי בֶן הֵילְמָן. אֱלֹהִים מְזַהֵר אֶת עַם נְפִי כִּי יִפְקֹדֵם בְּחֵמָת אָפוֹ, וְיַעֲשֶׂה בָהֶם כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם. אֱלֹהִים מַכָּה אֶת עַם נְפִי בַּמִּגָּפָה, וְהֵם שׁוֹבִים מִרְעֵתָם וּפּוֹנִים אֵלָיו. שְׁמוּאֵל, אִישׁ לָמְנִי, מְנַבֵּא לְנִפְיִים. (בְּעֶרְף 23–1 לְפָנֵי הַסְּפִירָה.) נִכְלָל בְּפָרָקִים ז–טז.

T

7

1 Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

וְהִיָּה בְּשְׁנַת שְׁשִׁים וְתֵשַׁע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי, שָׁב נְפִי, בֶּן הֵילְמָן, מֵאַרְצֵי הָעֲצָפוֹן אֶל אֶרֶץ זְרַחֲמֵלָה.

2 For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

כִּי הוּא יָצָא בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצֵי הָעֲצָפוֹן וְהִטִּיף לָהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים וּנְבֵאָה לָהֶם דְּבָרִים רַבִּים.

3 And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

וְהֵם מָאֲסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו, עַד אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָכוֹל הָיָה לְשִׁבָּת בְּתוֹכָם, וְהוּא שָׁב אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹלְדָתוֹ.

4 And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הָעָם שְׂרֹי בְּרָשָׁעָה כֹּה נּוֹרָאָה, וְכִי שׁוֹדְדֵי גִדְיָאֲנִטוֹן הֵם יֹשְׁבוּ בְּכִסְאֵי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, כִּי לָקְחוּ לְיָדֵיהֶם בְּחֻזָּקָה כֹּחַ וּשְׂרָרָה. וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי הֵם סָרוּ מִמִּצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא פָּעְלוּ כָּלִל בִּישׁוֹר לְפָנָיו, וְלֹא שִׁפְטוּ בְּצִדִּיק אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;

5 Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

כִּי הֵם הִרְשִׁיעוּ אֶת הַצְּדִיק מִפְּנֵי צְדִיקוֹתוֹ, וּפָטְרוּ מֵעֲנֹשׁ אֶת הָאָשָׁם וְאֶת הָרָשָׁע בְּעֶבֶר כִּסְפּוֹ, אָכֵן, בְּעֶבֶר יִחְזִיקוּ בְּמִשְׁרָתָם בְּרֹאשׁ הַמִּמְשָׁל, לְשִׁלֹּט וּלְהִגָּד כְּחָפְצָם, בְּעֶבֶר רוּחַ וְתִהְיֶה הָאָדָם; וְאָכֵן, בְּעֶבֶר יִקַּל עֲלֵיהֶם לְנָאֵף וּלְגַנֹּב וּלְהִרְגֹּת וּלְעֲשׂוֹת כְּכִי חָפְצָם.

- והעוון הגדול הזה בא על הנפיים במשך
שנים מעטות. וכראות נפי את זאת, התמלא
לבו צער והוא קרא ביוגון נפשו:
- אֵהָהּ, אֱלֹהֵי יָמֵי בִימֵי יִצְיָאת אָבִי נָפִי
לְרִאשׁוֹנָה מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, אִזִּי הֵייתִי שָׁשׁ
עִמּוֹ בְּאֶרֶץ הַנְּעֻדָּה. בָּעֵת הַהִיא הָיָה עִמּוֹ נֹחַ
לְהַעֲנוֹת לְבִקְשׁוֹת וְאֵיתָן בְּשִׁמִּירַת מִצְוֹת
אֱלֹהִים וְלֹא אָץ לְהִנְטוֹת אֶל דְּרָכֵי אָנוּ. אִזִּי
הָיָה הָעָם זָרִיז לְשִׁמְעַת לְדִבְרֵי יְהוָה.
- אָכֵן, אֱלֹהֵי יָמֵי בִימֵיהֶם, הֵייתָה נִפְשִׁי שֹׁשֶׁה
בְּצִדְקַת אַחֵי.
- אֲךָ נִגְזַר כִּי יָמֵי חַיֵּי יַחְוֹלוּ בָּעֵת הַזֹּאת וְנִפְשִׁי
תִּמָּלֵא צֶעַר מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אַחֵי הַזֹּאת.
- וְהֵנָּה, הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נֶאֱמָרוּ מֵעַל מִגְדָּל
אֲשֶׁר בְּגִן נָפִי, אֲשֶׁר לִיד הַדֶּרֶךְ הָרִאשִׁית
הַמּוֹלִיכָה אֶל הַשּׁוּק הַמְּרֻכָּז אֲשֶׁר לְעִיר
יְרֵעְחִמְלָה; וְהֵנָּה הַשְׁתַּחֲוָה נָפִי עַל הַמִּגְדָּל
אֲשֶׁר בְּגִנוֹ. וְהַמִּגְדָּל הָיָה לִיד שַׁעַר הַגֶּן אֲשֶׁר
לִיד עִבְרָה הַדֶּרֶךְ הָרִאשִׁית.
- וְעָבְרוּ שָׁם אַנְשִׁים אַחֲדִים, וְכִרְאוּתָם אֶת
נָפִי הַשּׁוֹפֵף אֶת נַפְשׁוֹ לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים עַל הַמִּגְדָּל,
הֵם רָצוּ וְסָפְרוּ לָעָם אֶת אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ; וְהָעָם בָּא
בְּהִמּוֹנִי לְדַעַת אֶת סִבַּת הָאֵבֶל הַגָּדוֹל, אֲשֶׁר
עַל רָשָׁעַת הָעָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קָם נָפִי עַל רִגְלָיו, הוּא רָאָה אֶת
הַמּוֹנֵי הָעָם אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּצוּ יַחְדָּו.
- וְהוּא פָּתַח אֶת פִּיו וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: מַדּוּעַ
נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם כָּלְכֶם? הֲאֵם בַּעֲבוּר אֶגִּיד לָכֶם
אֶת עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם?
- אָכֵן, כִּי עָלִיתִי עַל מִגְדָּלִי לְשַׁפֹּךְ אֶת נִי
פָּשִׁי לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהֵי, מִפְּנֵי צֶעַר לְבִי הָרַב, אֲשֶׁר
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹלוֹתֵיכֶם!
- וּמִפְּנֵי אֵבֶלִי וְקִינָתִי נֶאֱסַפְתֶּם יַחְדָּו וְאַתֶּם
מִשְׁתוֹמְמִים; אָכֵן, צָרָה גְּדוֹל יֵשׁ לָכֶם לְתַמָּה.
עֲלִיכֶם לְתַמָּה כִּי הִתְמַסְרֹתֶם לְיַדֵּי הַשָּׂטָן וְהוּא
קָנָה לוֹ שְׁבִיתָה כַּה חֲזָקָה בְּתוֹךְ לְבָבְכֶם.
- 6 Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of
not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with
sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:
- 7 Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi
first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him
in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to
keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and
they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—
- 8 Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have
had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.
- 9 But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my
soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my
brethren.
- 10 And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was
in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the
chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had
bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower
was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.
- 11 And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw
Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and
they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came
together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great
mourning for the wickedness of the people.
- 12 And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who
had gathered together.
- 13 And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them:
Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you
of your iniquities?
- 14 Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul
unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is
because of your iniquities!
- 15 And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered
yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to
marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil
has got so great hold upon your hearts.

- 16 Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?
ואיכָה זֶה נִפְתִּיתֶם לְמִבְקֵשׁ לְהִדְף אֶת נַפְשְׁכֶם אֶל בּוֹר יְגוֹן אִין קֹץ וְאַנְחַת עוֹלָמִים?
- 17 O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?
הִנָּחֵמוּ נָא, הִנָּחֵמוּ מִחֻטְאֵיכֶם! מַדּוּעַ תָּמוּתוּ? פָּנוּ נָא, פָּנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם. מַדּוּעַ עָזַבְכֶם?
- 18 It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.
כִּי הוּא כִּי הִקְשִׁיתֶם אֶת לְבַבְכֶם; אַכֵּן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵינְכֶם רוֹצִים לְשֹׁמֵעַ בְּקוֹל הַרוֹעֶה הַטּוֹב. אַתֶּם הִעִירְתֶּם אֶת חֲמָתוֹ עָלֵיכֶם.
- 19 And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.
וְהִנֵּה, תַּחַת אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּצֶכֶם, בְּהִיּוֹתְכֶם שָׂבִים מִרְעֻתְכֶם, הוּא יִזְרֶה אֶתְכֶם הִלָּא מִפָּנָיו, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּהְיוּ מֵאֵכָל לְכָלְבִּים וְטָרֵף לְחַיַּת הַשָּׂדֶה.
- 20 O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?
אֵיכָה שָׁכַחְתֶּם אֶת אֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּעֶצֶם יוֹם הַצִּילוֹ אֶתְכֶם?
- 21 But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.
וְהִנֵּה, כָּל זֹאת בְּעִבּוֹר הַבָּצֵעַ, וְלְהַשְׁתַּבַּח בִּי בְנֵי הָאָדָם; אַכֵּן, לְשֵׁם הַשָּׂגָת זָהָב וְכֶסֶף. וְאַתֶּם שֵׂתֶם אֶת לְבַבְכֶם אֶל הָעֵשֶׂר וְאֶל הַבָּלִי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה, וּבְעִבּוֹרְכֶם אַתֶּם רוֹצְחִים וְגוֹזְלִים וְגוֹנְבִים וּמַעֲדִידִים עֵדוּת שָׁקֶר עַל רֵעֵכֶם וּפּוֹעֲלִים כָּל אָוֶן.
- 22 And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.
וְלָכֵן, אוֹי לָכֶם בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל רְעֻתְכֶם. כִּי אִם לֹא תִנָּחֵמוּ, הִלָּקָה תִּלְקַח מִכֶּם הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, וְאֵף כָּל הָעָרִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת אֲשֶׁר מִסְבִּיב, בְּאֶרֶץ נְחֻלָּתֵנוּ. וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מְקוֹם בְּתוֹכָן, כִּי לֹא יִתֵּן לָכֶם יְהוָה עֹז לְעִמָּד בְּפָנָי אוֹיְבֵיכֶם כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה עַד עַתָּה.
- 23 For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those that repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.
כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֲרָאָה מַעֲזִי לְרָשָׁעִים, לְאַחַד מֵאֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁנֵהוּ. כִּי אִם לְמִנָּחֵמִים עַל חֻטְאֵיהֶם הַשּׁוֹמְעִים לְדִבְרִי. עַל כֵּן, אַחִי, רְצוּנִי כִּי תִתְבּוֹנְנוּ, כִּי בְלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל חֻטְאֵיכֶם, טוֹב יִהְיֶה לְלָמָנִים מֵאֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה לָכֶם.
- 24 For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.
כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם צַדִּיקִים מִכֶּם, כִּי הֵם אֵינֶם חוֹטְאִים עַל הַיְדִיעָה הַרְבֵּה אֲשֶׁר קִבַּלְתֶּם; לָכֵן יִרְחַמֶם יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, הוּא יֶאֱרִיד אֶת יְמֵיהֶם וְיַרְבֶּה אֶת יָרֵעֵם, גַּם כְּאֲשֶׁר תִּבּוֹא עָלֵיכֶם כָּלִיָּה עַד תִּמָּכֶם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֵמוּ עַל רְעֻתְכֶם.
- 25 Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!
אוֹי לָכֶם עַל הַתּוֹעֲבָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה בְּקִרְבְּכֶם! וְאַתֶּם הִתְחַבְּרְתֶּם אֵלֶיהָ, אֶל הַכְּנֻפָּה הַחֲשׂאִית אֲשֶׁר יִסְדָּה גַּדִּיאֲנְטוֹן!

- 26 Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!
- 27 Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!
- 28 And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.
- 29 Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.
- אוי לְכֶם עַל הַגָּאוֹן אֲשֶׁר הִתְרַם לְהִכָּנֵס
אֶל לְבַבְכֶם, כִּי הָיָא אֲשֶׁר הִגְבִּיהָה אֶתְכֶם מֵעַל
הַטּוֹב, מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרְכֶם הָעָצוֹם!
- אוי לְכֶם עַל רְשָׁעְתְּכֶם וְעַל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם!
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם תִּנָּחֲמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם, אַבּוּד תֵּאבְדוּ;
וְאִף תִּלְקַח מִכֶּם אֲדָמַתְכֶם וְאַתֶּם תִּכָּרְתוּ
מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- רְאוּ נָא, לֹא עַל דַּעַת עֲצָמִי אוֹמֵר אֲנִי כִי יְבוֹאוּ
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי לֹא מֵאִתִּי אֲנִי יוֹדְעִם; הַנְּנִי
יוֹדֵעַ כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֵמֶת הֵם, וְעַן אֲשֶׁר
הוֹדִיעֵם לִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים; עַל כֵּן מַעֲיֵד אֲנִי כִי
בּוֹא יְבוֹאוּ.

ח

8

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?
- 2 Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?
- 3 For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.
- 4 And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.
- 5 Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.
- וְהָיָה בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר נָפִי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
הָיוּ שָׁם שׁוֹפְטִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֲבָרִים בְּאֲגֻדַּת
גִּדְיָאֲנֶטוֹן הַחֲשָׁאִית, וְהֵם רָגְזוּ וְקָרְאוּ לָעָם
עָלָיו לֵאמֹר: מַדּוּעַ לֹא תִּתְּפְּשׂוּ אֶת הָאִישׁ
הַזֶּה וְתַעֲמִידוּהוּ לְדִין, לְחַרֵּץ אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ
כַּפִּי פִּשְׁעוֹ אֲשֶׁר פָּשַׁע?
- מַדּוּעַ תִּבְטִּיטוּ אֶל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וְתִקְשִׁיבוּ לוֹ
בְּנֶאֱצוֹ אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה וְאֶת חֻקֵּינוּ.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, נָפִי דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיהֶם עַל שְׁחִיתוֹת חֻקֵּיהֶם.
אָכֵן, דְּבָרִים רַבִּים דִּבֶּר נָפִי אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִתֵּן
לְכַתְּבָם; וְלֹא הָיָה אֶחָד מִדְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר סִתַּר
אֶת מִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהַשּׁוֹפְטִים הָאֵלֶּה רָגְזוּ עָלָיו כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר
אֵלֵיהֶם בְּרוּרוֹת עַל מַעֲשֵׂי הַסִּתָּר הָאֲפִלִּים אֲשֶׁר
לָהֶם. עַל אִף זֹאת, הֵם לֹא הָעִזּוּ לְשַׁלַּח בּוֹ אֶת
יָדָם, מִיִּרְאַתָם אֶת הָעָם, כֹּן יִקְרְאוּ נִגְדָם.
- עַל כֵּן הֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר: מַדּוּעַ תִּתִּירוּ
לָאִישׁ הַזֶּה לְגַדְּפוֹ? הֵן הוּא מַרְשִׁיעַ אֶת כָּל
הָעָם הַזֶּה וְחוֹרֵץ אֶת דִּינוֹ לְכָלִּיה. וְהוּא אִף
אוֹמֵר כִּי עָרֵינוּ הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה תִּלְקַחְנָה
מִמֶּנּוּ, וְלֹא יִהְיֶה מָקוֹם לָנוּ בָתוֹכָן.

הילמן ח:ו-יד

- 6 And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.
- הנה, יודעים אנחנו כי לא תתכן זאת; הן חזקים אנחנו וערינו גדולות. לכן לא יהיה כח לאויבינו לגבר עלינו.
- 7 And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;
- כה שסו השופטים את האנשים, ועוררו בהם זעם על נפי, וכה חרחרו ריב ביניהם; והיו שם כמה אשר קראו לאמר: חדלו לכם מן האיש הזה, כי איש טוב הוא, והדברים אשר דבר אכן בוא יבואו, אם לא נשוב מרעתנו.
- 8 Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;
- הן כל המשפטים אשר העיד בנו יבואו עלינו; כי יודעים אנחנו אשר הוא העיד בנו באמת על דבר עוונותינו. ואכן, רבים הם, וכידעו את עוונותינו כן יודע הוא את כל אשר יבאנו.
- 9 Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.
- הן לולא היה נביא, לא יכול היה הוא להעיד על הדברים האלה.
- 10 And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.
- ומפני הפחד אשר אחז באנשים המבקשים לבלות את נפי, הם נמנעו לשלח בו את ידם. ובראות נפי כי מצא חן בעיני אחדים, שב הוא לדבר אליהם, עד כי פחדו שאריתם.
- 11 Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?
- אכן, הוא הכרח להוסיף דבר אליהם, וכה אמר: הנה, אחי, הלא קראתם את הכתוב, כי נתן אלהים כח לאיש אחד, למשה, להפוך במי ים סוף, והם נבקעו הנה והנה, עד אשר עברו בני ישראל, אבותינו, ביבשה, והמים שבו וסגרו על צבא המצרים ובלעו?
- 12 And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?
- והנה, אם נתן אלהים לאיש הזה כח כזה, מדוע תתוכחו ביניכם ותאמרו כי לא נתן הוא לי הכח לדעת את המשפטים אשר יבואוכם, בלתי אם תשובו מרעתכם?
- 13 But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.
- אך לא רק את דברי מכחישים אתם, כי אם אף את כל הדברים אשר אמרו אבותינו, וכן את דברי האיש הזה, משה, אשר כח כה גדול נתן לו, והם הדברים אשר דבר על בוא המשיח.
- 14 Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.
- האם הוא לא העיד כי אכן יבוא בן אלהים? וכרימו במדבר את נחש הנחשת, כן ירומם זה אשר יבוא.

- 15 And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.
- 16 And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.
- 17 Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.
- 18 Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.
- 19 And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.
- 20 And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?
- 21 And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—
- 22 Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.
- 23 And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.
- 24 And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received;
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָבִיטוּ בְּנֶחֱשׁ הַזֶּה נָתַן לָהֶם חַיִּים, כֹּן כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֵבִיט עַל בֶּן אֱלֹהִים בְּאִמּוּנָה, וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, יִנָּתֵן לוֹ לַחַיּוֹת וְאֵף לְזִכּוֹת בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָמִים.
- וְהִנֵּה לֹא מֹשֶׁה לְבַדּוֹ הֵעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי אִם כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, מִיְּמֵי אַבְרָהָם וְעַד יְמֵיו.
- הֵן אַבְרָהָם חָזָה אֶת בּוֹאוֹ וְלָבָו שִׂמְחָה וְנִמְלָא חֵדוֹה.
- וְהִנֵּנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי לֹא רַק אַבְרָהָם יָדַע אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כִּי לִפְנֵי יְמֵיו הָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ עַל פִּי סֵדֶר אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, עַל פִּי סֵדֶר בְּנוֹ; וְזֹאת בְּעֵבֹר הָרְאוֹת לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אֲלֵפֵי שָׁנִים לִפְנֵי בּוֹאוֹ כִּי גָאֵלָה בּוֹא תָבוֹא אֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי מֵאִזְּיָמִי אַבְרָהָם הֵעִידוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; הִנֵּה, הַנְּבִיא זֶנוֹס הֵעִיד בְּאִמָּץ לֵב וּמִפְּנֵי זֶה הוּמָת.
- וְאֵף זֵינוֹק, וְעִזְיָה, וְיִשְׁעִיָּהוּ וְיִרְמְיָהוּ, וְיִרְמְיָהוּ הוּא הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד עַל חֲרָבַת יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְיֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי יְרוּשָׁלַם נִחְרְבָה, כְּדָבְרוֹ. לָכֵן מִדּוּעַ אִפּוֹא לֹא יָבוֹא בֶּן אֱלֹהִים כְּדָבַר נְבוּאָתוֹ?
- הִנֵּה, הַתְּסַתְרוּ כִּי נִחְרְבָה יְרוּשָׁלַם? הַתֹּאמְרוּ כִּי בְנֵי צִדְקִיָּהוּ לֹא הוּמָתוּ, כָּלֶם זֹלַת מוּלֵק? יֵהָיו אַתֶּם רוֹאִים כִּי זֶרַע צִדְקִיָּהוּ עִמָּנוּ, וְכִי הֵם גֵּרְשׁוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם? וְאֵין זֹאת הַכֹּל;
- אַבְיֵנוּ, לְחִי, גֵּרֵשׁ מִירוּשָׁלַם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. וְאֵף נָפִי הֵעִיד עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, וְכִמְעַט כָּל אַבּוֹתֵינוּ, עַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה; אָכֵן, הֵם הֵעִידוּ עַל בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְצִפּוּ לוֹ וְשִׂמְחוּ עַל יוֹמוֹ אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוּא אֱלֹהִים, וְהוּא עִמָּם, וְהוּא הַתְּגַלָּה אֲלֵיהֶם, וְכֵה נִגְאָלוּ עַל יָדָיו; וְהֵם כְּבִדּוּהוּ בְּעֵבֹר הָעֲתִיד לָבוֹא.
- וְעַתָּה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְהַכְחִישָׁם, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּשְׁקְרוּ, הֵן בְּדָבַר הַזֶּה חָטֵאתֶם, כִּי מֵאִסְתָּם אֶת כָּל אֵלָה, עַל אֵף רְאִיּוֹת כֹּה רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר

קבלתם; אכן, קבלתם את כל הדברים,
דברים אשר בשמים ואף את כל הדברים
אשר בארץ, כעדות כי אמת הם.

yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

והנה מאסתם את האמת ומרדתם באלהיכם
הקדוש. ואף כעת, תחת אשר תאצרו לכם
אוצרות בשמים, אשר לעולם לא ישחתו,
ואשר כל טמאה לא יכולה לבוא, גודשים
אתם חמה לכם ליום הדין.

25 But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

אכן אף היום ממלאים אתם את הסאה,
ברצח ובזנות ובפשע אשר עשיתם, לקראת
אבדון עולם; אשר עד מהרה יבוא עליכם,
בלתי אם תנחמו מרעתכם.

26 Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

אכן, על פתחכם עומד הוא עתה. לכו אל כס
המשפט ובקשו; הנה, שופטכם נרצח והוא
מתבוסס בדם; והוא נרצח על ידי אחיו
המבקש לשבת על כס המשפט.

27 Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

הן שניהם חברים באגדתכם החשאית,
אשר יסדה גדיאנטון והמרשע ההוא,
המבקש להאביד את נשמות בני האדם.

28 And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

ט

9

ובכללות נפי לדבר את הדברים האלה,
רצו אנשים אחדים מן העומדים שם אל כס
המשפט. חמשה היו ההולכים, וזה אמרו
זה אל זה בלכתם:

1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

עתה ידוע נדע אם נביא האיש הזה,
אשר שלחו אלהים לנבא לנו דברים
מפלאים כאלה. הנה, איננו מאמינים כי
עשה כן, איננו מאמינים כי הוא נביא. ואולם,
אם אמת הדבר אשר הוא דבר, כי השופט
העליון הרוג, נאמין כי שאר דבריו אמת הם.

2 Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

והם רצו ברב כח ובאז אף כס המשפט,
והנה השופט העליון נפל ארצה מת,
מתבוסס בדם.

3 And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

ובראותם זאת, הם השתוממו מאד, עד כי
נפלו ארצה, כי לא האמינו לדברי נפי אשר
דבר על השופט העליון.

4 And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

- 5 But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.
- 6 Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;
- 7 And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.
- 8 And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.
- 9 And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.
- 10 And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.
- 11 And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.
- 12 And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.
- 13 And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know, concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:
- 14 We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch
- ועתה, אחר ראותם, הם האמינו ופחד נפל עליהם פן יבואו על העם כל המשפטים אשר על אודותיהם דבר נפי. על כן הם רעדו ונפלו ארצה.
- והנה, במהרה אחר רצח השופט, אשר נדקר למות בידי אחיו אשר התחפש לכל יפירוהו ונמלט, רצו המשרתים וספרו לעם את אשר קרה, והזעקה על הרצח פשטה בעם.
- אז התקבצו האנשים אל מקום כס המשפט; והנה, לתמהונם, הם ראו את חמשת האנשים אשר נפלו על הארץ.
- והאנשים לא ידעו דבר על ההמון אשר נאסף ליד גן נפי; על כן אמרו זה אל זה: אלה האנשים אשר רצחו את השופט ואלהים הכם לבל יוכלו להמלט מידנו.
- והם תפשו אותם ואסרום והשליכום אל בית הכלא. אז יצא קול בקרב העם כי השופט נהרג, וכי רוצחיו נתפשו ונכלאו בבית הכלא.
- ולמחרת היום התאסף העם להתאבל ולצום בעת קבורת השופט העליון והגדול אשר נרצח.
- ואף השופטים אשר היו גן נפי ושמעו את דבריו נאספו יחדו לקבורה.
- והם שאלו את האנשים לאמר: איפה החמשה אשר נשלחו לחקר על אודות השופט העליון, אם אמנם נהרג? והם ענו לאמר: איננו יודעים דבר על החמשה אשר אומרים אתם כי שילחתם, אך יש חמשה אשר הם הרוצחים, ואותם השלכנו אל בית הכלא.
- אז בקשו השופטים כי יובאו הפלואים; והם הובאו והנה, הם החמשה אשר נשלחו והשופטים חקרום לדעת את הענין; ואלה ספרו להם את כל אשר עשו, לאמר:
- רצנו ובאנו אל מקום כס המשפט, ובראותנו את כל הדברים, והם כפי אשר העיד נפי,

גְּדָלָה הַשְׁתוּמְמוֹתֵנוּ עַד כִּי נָפַלְנוּ אֶרֶצָה.
וְכַאֲשֶׁר הִתְאַוְּשָׁנוּ מִהַשְׁתוּמְמוֹתֵנוּ, וְהִנֵּה
הַשְּׁלִיכוֹנוּ אֶל בֵּית הַכְּלָא.

that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our
astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

וְאֲשֶׁר לְרֹצַח הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, אֵינָנוּ יוֹדְעִים מִי הוּא
אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה זֹאת, וְרַק יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי רָצִינוּ
וְהִגַּעְנוּ כְּחֻפְּצְכֶם וְהִנֵּה הוּא הָרוּג, כַּדְּבַר נָפִי.

15 Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and
only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and
behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

אִזּוּ בָּאֵרוּ הַשּׁוֹפְטִים אֶת הַדְּבַר לָעָם; וְהֵם
קָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל נֹגֵד נָפִי, לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּנוּ יוֹדְעִים
כִּי הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, נָפִי, אָכֵן קָשָׁר עִם מִישֹׁהוּ
לְהַרְגֵּהוּ אֶת הַשּׁוֹפֵט. כִּךְ הוּא יוֹכֵל לְהַכְרִיז אֶת
דְּבַר הָרֹצַח בְּאַזְנוֹנֵנוּ בְּעֵבֹר יִהְיֶה אֶת אֲמוֹנֶתְנוּ
בְּאַמוֹנָתוֹ, לְמַעַן יִתְנַשֵּׂא וְיִהְיֶה לְאִישׁ גָּדוֹל,
בְּחִיר אֱלֹהִים וְנָבִיא.

16 And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto
the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know
that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and
then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his
faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and
a prophet.

וְעַתָּה, נִגְלָה אֶת צְפוֹנוֹת הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה, וְהוּא
יִתְּוֶה עַל אֲשַׁמְתּוֹ וְיוֹדִיעֵנוּ מִי אָכֵן רָצַח אֶת
הַשּׁוֹפֵט הַזֶּה.

17 And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault
and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

וְחֻמְשַׁת הָאֲנָשִׁים שֶׁחֲרָרוּ מִכְּלָאם בְּיוֹם
הַקְּבוּרָה. וְאוֹלָם, הֵם גָּעְרוּ בַּשּׁוֹפְטִים עַל
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם אָמְרוּ נֹגֵד נָפִי וְרַבּוּ עִמָּם,
אִישׁ-אִישׁ, עַד כִּי הִכְלִימוּם.

18 And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the
burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which
they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one,
insomuch that they did confound them.

עַל אִף זֹאת, צִוּוּ הַשּׁוֹפְטִים לְתַפֵּשׂ אֶת נָפִי
וּלְאַסְרוֹ וּלְהַבְיִאוֹ לִפְנֵי הָעָמוֹן. וְהֵם חָקְרוּ
אוֹתוֹ בְּשִׂאלוֹת שְׁתֵּי וְעֶרֶב לְמַעַן יִסְתַּר עֲצָמוֹ,
בְּעֵבֹר יוֹכֵלוּ לְגֹזֵר עָלָיו מָוֶת.

19 Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and
brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers
ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

וְהֵם אָמְרוּ לוֹ: שְׂתָף אֶתָּה לְעִבְרָה; מִי הָאִישׁ
אֲשֶׁר בָּצַע אֶת הָרֹצַח הַזֶּה? הִגַּד לָנוּ וְהוֹדֵה
בְּאַשְׁמָתְךָ; וְעוֹד אָמְרוּ: הִנֵּה כֶסֶף, וְאִף אֶת
חַיִּיד נָתַן לָךְ אִם תִּסְפָּר לָנוּ, וְתוֹדֶה בְּקָשָׁר
אֲשֶׁר קָשַׁרְתָּ עִמּוֹ.

20 Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done
this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold
here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell
us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם נָפִי: הוּא, סְכָלִים וְעִרְלֵי לֵב, עֹרִים
וְקָשִׁי עֶרֶךְ, הִתְדַּעְו עַד מָתִי יֵנִיחַ לָכֶם יְהוָה
אֱלֹהֵיכֶם לְלָכֶת בְּדַרְפְּכֶם הַחֲסָאָה הַזֹּאת?

21 But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye
blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your
God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

הֵן עֲלֵיכֶם לְעֹק וּלְהַתְּאֵבֵל עַל הַחֲרָן הַגָּדוֹל
הַאוֹרֵב לָכֶם כְּעַתָּה, בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּנְחַמוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם.

22 O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction
which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

הִנֵּכֶם אוֹמְרִים כִּי קָשַׁרְתִּי קָשָׁר עִם אִישׁ
בְּעֵבֹר יִרְצַח אֶת שִׁזּוֹרָם, שׁוֹפְטֵנוּ הָעֲלִיּוֹן.
וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כֹה הַדְּבַר יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
הַעֲדֵיתִי לִפְנֵיכֶם בְּעֵבֹר תִּדְּעוּ עַל כֵּךְ; אָכֵן,

23 Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder
Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is
because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning

- כַּעֲדוֹת לָכֶם כִּי יָדַעְתִּי אֶת הָרָשָׁעָה וְאֶת
הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבְּכֶם. this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the
wickedness and abominations which are among you.
- 24 וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר כֹּה הֵעִדְתִּי, אוֹמְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי קִשְׁרָתִי
קִשֹּׁר עִם אִישׁ בַּעֲבוּר יַעֲשֶׂה אֶת הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַזֶּה;
אָכֵן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נָתַתִּי לָכֶם אֶת הָאוֹת הַזֶּה, אַתֶּם
רוֹגְזִים עָלַי וּמְבַקְשִׁים לְכַלּוֹת אֶת נַפְשִׁי. And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that
he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are
angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.
- 25 וְעַתָּה הִנְנִי שֵׁם לָכֶם אוֹת נוסף וְאֶרְאֶה אִם
תִּבְקְשׁוּ לְכַלּוֹתֵנִי אִף מִפְּנֵי. And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will
in this thing seek to destroy me.
- 26 הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לָכוּ אֶל בֵּית שְׁאֲנָטוּם,
אָחִי שְׁזוֹרָם, וְאָמְרוּ לוֹ: Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother
of Seezoram, and say unto him—
- 27 הֲאִם קִשֹּׁר עִמּוֹד נָפִי, הַמְתַּרְאֶה נְבִיא
וְהַמְתַּנְבֵּא עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה, רָעָה כֹּה רָבָה,
כִּי תִרְצַח אֶת שְׁזוֹרָם אָחִידֶךָ? Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much
evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have
murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?
- 28 וְהוּא יֹאמֵר אֲלֵיכֶם: לֹא. And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.
- 29 וְאַתֶּם תֹּאמְרוּ אֵלָיו: הֲרִצַּחְתָּ אֶת אָחִידֶךָ? And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?
- 30 וְהוּא יַעֲמֵד נִפְחָד וְלֹא יָדַע מֶה יִדְבֹּר וְהִנֵּה,
יִכְחִישׁ הוּא אֶת הַדְּבָר בְּאַזְנוֹיְכֶם, וַיַּעֲמִיד פָּנָי
מִפְתָּע וַיְגִידְכֶם כִּי נָקִי בְּפִים הוּא. And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold,
he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished;
nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.
- 31 אַךְ אַתֶּם תִּחְקְרוּהוּ וְתִמְצְאוּ דָם בְּכַנֵּי
גְלִימָתוֹ. But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the
skirts of his cloak.
- 32 וּבְרֹאוֹתְכֶם זֹאת תֹּאמְרוּ: מֵאֵין הָדָם הַזֶּה?
הֲאֵין יוֹדְעִים אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי זֶה דָּם אָחִידֶךָ? And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this
blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?
- 33 אַז הוּא יִרְעַד וַיִּחְוֹר כְּאֵלוֹ בְּאוֹ הַמָּוֶת. And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had
come upon him.
- 34 וְאִז תֹּאמְרוּ: מִפְּנֵי הַפַּחַד הַזֶּה וְהַחֲוֹרוֹן אֲשֶׁר
בְּפָנֶיךָ, הִנְנוּ יוֹדְעִים כִּי אָשָׁם אַתָּה. And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has
come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.
- 35 אִז יִפֹּל עָלָיו פַּחַד נוֹרָא אִף יוֹתֵר וְהוּא יִתְוֹדֶה
לְפָנֵיכֶם, וְלֹא יִכְחִישׁ עוֹד כִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר רָצַח. And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess
unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.
- 36 אִז יֹאמֵר הוּא אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי אֲנִי, נָפִי, אֲנִינִי
יודֵעַ דְּבָר בְּעֵנֶיךָ הַזֶּה, בְּלִתִּי אִם נֹדַע לִי בְּכֹחַ
אֱלֹהִים. וְאִז תִּדְּעוּ כִּי אִישׁ יָשָׁר אֲנִי, וְכִי
אֱלֹהִים שְׁלַחְנִי אֲלֵיכֶם. And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning
the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then
shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you
from God.

- 37 והיה כי הלכו האנשים ועשו ככל אשר דבר אליהם נפי. והנה דבריו התקמו כדמם. כי כפי דבריו הכחיש שאנטום את פשעו, וכפי דבריו הוא התודה עליו.
- 38 והוא אלץ להודות כי אכן הוא עצמו היה הרוצח; וכה שחררו חמשת האנשים, וגם נפי.
- 39 והיו שם אנשים מן הנפיים אשר האמינו לדברי נפי; וכן היו שם אנשים אשר האמינו מפני עדות החמשה, כי אלה הפכו מאמינים בעת מאסרם בבית הכלא.
- 40 והיו בעם אלה אשר אמרו כי נפי נביא.
- 41 והיו אחרים אשר אמרו: הנו אל, כי לולא כן לא היה יודע הכל. הן הוא אמר לנו את מחשבות לבנו ואף אמר לנו דברים נוספים; והוא אשר הודיענו מי אכן רצח את שופטנו העליון.

י

10

- 1 והיה כי פרצה מחלוקת בקרב העם, עד כי הם נפלגו לכאן ולכאן ופנו איש לעברו, בהשאירם את נפי, העומד בתוכם, לבדו.
- 2 ונפי הלך לדרכו, אל ביתו, והוא הוה בדברים אשר הראהו יהוה.
- 3 והיה בהיותו שקוע בשערפון, נדכה ושפל רוח מפני רשעת עם הנפיים, מעשי הסתר האפלים אשר עשו והרצח והגזל וכל מיני עוונותיהם, והנה קול דובר אליו, לאמר:
- 4 ברוך אתה, נפי, על הדברים אשר עשית; כי ראיתיך מודיע לעם הנה את דברי אשר נתתי בפיו בלא לאות ובלא יראה מפניהם, ולא בקשית את שלום נפשך, כי אם לקיים את רצוני ולשמר את מצוותי.
- 5 ועתה, יען אשר עשית זאת בלא לחשוד ממך עמל יגיע, הנה ברכתיך לעולם ואעשה גבור בדבור ובמעשה, באמונה ובפעולה. כפי
- 1 And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.
- 2 And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.
- 3 And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:
- 4 Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.
- 5 And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be

דְּבַרְךָ יַעֲשֶׂה לְךָ הַכֹּל, כִּי לֹא תִבְקֹשׁ אֶת אֲשֶׁר
אֵינוֹ לְרָצוֹנִי.

done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which
is contrary to my will.

הִנֵּה, אַתָּה נְפִי וְאֲנֹכִי אֱלֹהִים. הִנְנִי מוֹדִיעַ לְךָ
זֹאת לִפְנֵי מַלְאָכֵי: גְבוּר תִּגְבֹּר עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה
וְאֵת הָאָרֶץ תִּכָּה בְּרָעָב וּבְדָבָר וּבְחָרָב, כִּפִּי
רָשָׁעַת הָעָם הַזֶּה.

6 Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee
in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this
people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and
destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

הִנְנִי נֹתֵן לְךָ כֹּחַ, לְמַעַן כָּל אֲשֶׁר תַּחְתָּמְהוּ
בְּאָרֶץ יִחַתֵּם בְּשָׁמַיִם; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תַּתִּיר בְּאָרֶץ,
יִתֵּר בְּשָׁמַיִם. כֹּה יִהְיֶה כִּיְהוָה בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה.

7 Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth
shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall
be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

וְכֵן, אִם תֹּאמַר לְהִיכָל הַזֶּה כִּי יִבָּקַע לְשָׁנִים,
כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה.

8 And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it
shall be done.

וְאִם תֹּאמַר לְהָר הַזֶּה: נָפַל וְהָיָה מִישׁוֹר,
כֹּה יַעֲשֶׂה.

9 And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become
smooth, it shall be done.

וְהִנֵּה, אִם תֹּאמַר כִּי אֱלֹהִים יִכָּה אֶת הָעָם
הַזֶּה, כֹּה יִהְיֶה.

10 And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall
come to pass.

וְעַתָּה, הִנְנִי מִצְוֶה כִּי תֵלֵךְ וּתְוַדִּיעַ לָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי
כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא אֵל שַׁדַּי; אִם
לֹא תִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם הַכֹּה תָּכּוּ אִף עַד כְּלוֹתְכֶם.

11 And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this
people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye
repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה אֵל נְפִי אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, חָדַל נְפִי מִלָּכֶת אֶל בֵּיתוֹ וְשָׁב
אֶל הָעָמוֹן הַמְפֻזָּרִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְהוּא
הוֹדִיעָם אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אֵלָיו, עַל
אֲבֻדָּתָם בְּלִיתִי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם.

12 And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these
words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house,
but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the
face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord
which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they
did not repent.

וְהִנֵּה, עַל אִף הַנֶּס הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר חוֹלַל נְפִי
בְּהַגִּידוֹ לָהֶם עַל אִדּוֹת מוֹת הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֵלְיוֹן,
הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ לְדְבַר יְהוָה.

13 Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had
done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did
harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

לְכֵן הוֹדִיעָם נְפִי אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה לֵאמֹר:
בְּלִיתִי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם, הַכֹּה תָּכּוּ אִף
עַד כְּלוֹתְכֶם, נְאֻם יְהוָה.

14 Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying:
Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto
destruction.

וְהָיָה כִּאֲשֶׁר הוֹדִיעָם נְפִי אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה,
וְהִנֵּה הֵם עוֹד הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ
לְדְבָרָיו; וְהֵם אִף גִּדְּפוּהוּ וּבִקְשׁוּ לְתַפְּשׁוֹ
וּלְהַשְׁלִיכוֹ לַכְּלָא.

15 And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word,
behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto
his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay
their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

- 16 But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.
- 17 And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.
- 18 And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.
- 19 And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- ואולם, כח אלהים עמדם לו ולא יכלו הם לתפשו ולקלואו, כי רוח אלהים לקחו מקרבם ונשארו הרחק מהם.
- וכך הוא הלך ברוח אלהים מהמון אל המון, מודיע את דבר אלהים, עד אשר הודיעו לכל, או שלחו בקרב העם כולו.
- ואולם, הם לא שמעו לדבריו. והנה פרוצו מריבות ביניהם עד כי נפגלו זה מזה והחלו להרג איש את אחיו בחרב.
- כה כלתה שנת שבעים ואחת לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.

יא

11

- 1 And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.
- 2 And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.
- 3 And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:
- 4 O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.
- 5 And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.
- 6 And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.
- והיה בשנת שבעים ושנים לשלטון השופטים, רבו המריבות עד כי היו מלחמות בקרב כל עם נפי בכל רחבי הארץ.
- היתה זאת הפנפיה החשאית ההיא, אשר בצעה את פעלות ההרס והרשעה. והמלחמה הזאת נמשכה כל השנה ההיא; וכה נמשכה אף בשנת שבעים ושלש.
- ובשנה ההיא קרא נפי אל יהוה לאמר:
- אֱהָהּ, יְהוָה, אֵל תִּתִּיר אֶת הַשְּׁמֶדֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה בַּחֶרֶב, כִּי אִם תִּבְיֹא רָעָב בָּאֶרֶץ, יְהוָה, לְעֹזְרָם לְזָכֹר אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. אוֹלֵי הֵם יִנָּחֲמוּ וְיָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַיָּךְ.
- וכך היה, כדבר נפי. רעב גדול היה בארץ בכל עם נפי; וכה נמשך הרעב בשנת שבעים וארבע. אז חדלה ההשמדה בחרב, אף קשתה מפני הרעב.
- ופעלת ההשמדה הזאת נמשכה אף בשנת שבעים וחמש, כי הארץ הכתה בחרב ולא נתנה תבואת דגן בעתה. כל הארץ הכתה, אדמת הלמנים כאדמת הנפיים; וכה קשתה המכה עד כי מתו אלפים בחבלי הארץ אשר בהם שלטה הרשעה.

- 7 והיה כאשר ראו האנשים כי הכליון ברעב עומד לבוא עליהם, הם החלו לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם. ואת דברי נפי.
- 8 והאנשים הפצירו בשופטיהם הראשיים ובמנהיגיהם כי ידברו אל נפי לאמר: הנה ידענו כי איש אלהים אתה; על כן קרא נא אל יהוה אלהינו כי יסיר את הרעב הזה מקרבנו, פן יתקיימו כל הדברים אשר דברת על כליוננו.
- 9 והשופטים דברו אל נפי בדברים אשר בקשם העם. וכראות נפי כי שב העם מרעתו וכי לבש שק בהכנעה, הוא קרא אל יהוה שנית ואמר:
- 10 יהוה, הנה נחם העם על רעתו. הם מחו מקרבם את כנפית גדיאנטון, עד כי נכרתו, ואת מזמות הסתר הסמינו באדמה.
- 11 ועתה, יהוה, יען אשר כד נכנעו, אנא, לשוב אפך ותשכך חמתך בהשמדת הרשעים אשר כבר אבדת.
- 12 אנא, יהוה, הסר זעמך וחרונוך והעבר מן הארץ הזאת את הרעב.
- 13 אנא, יהוה, שמעני, וצוה כי יעשה כדברי והורד מטר על פני הארץ, בעבור תתן פריה ודגניה בעתם.
- 14 אנא, יהוה, הן שמעת לדברי באמרי: יבוא רעב, בעבור תעמד החרב מנגף ויודע אני כי אף כעת תשמע את דברי, כי אמרת: אם ישוב העם הזה מרעתו, חוס אחוס עלי.
- 15 אנא, יהוה, הנה רואה כי הם שבו מרעתם מפני הרעב והמגפה וההרס אשר באום.
- 16 ועתה, יהוה, הסר נא מהם את זעמך; נסם שנית אם אכן יעבדוך? ואם כן, ברכם נא, יהוה, כדברך אשר דברת.
- 17 והיה בשנת שבעים ושש הסיר יהוה את זעמו מן העם והוריד מטר על הארץ,
- 7 And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.
- 8 And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.
- 9 And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:
- 10 O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.
- 11 Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.
- 12 O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.
- 13 O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.
- 14 O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.
- 15 Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.
- 16 And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.
- 17 And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon

עד כי נתנה האדמה את פריה בעתו ואת
דגנה בעתו.

the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

והעם שמח ופאר את אלהים, וכל פני
הארץ מלאו גיל. והאנשים לא בקשו עוד
לִאבֹד את נְפִי, כִּי אִם כְּבֹדוֹ כְּכֹד נְבִיא
גָדוֹל, אִישׁ אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱנִיק לוֹ אֱלֹהִים
רַב כֹּחַ וְסִמְכוֹת.

18 And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

והנה, אחיו לחי לא פגר אחריו בדברים
הנוגעים לַצֶּדֶק, אף כְּמֵלֶא הַנִּימָה.

19 And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

כֹּה שָׁבוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ עִם נְפִי בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לִבְנוֹת אֶת שְׂמֻמוֹת אֶרֶץ;
וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְהִתְפָּשְׁטוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר כָּסּוּ אֶת כָּל פְּנֵי
הָאָרֶץ, בְּצִפּוֹן וּבְדָרוֹם, מִן הַיָּם הַמַּעֲרָבִי וְעַד
הַיָּם הַמִּזְרָחִי.

20 And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

וּשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשֵׁשׁ כָּלָתָה בְּשָׁלוֹם, וְאַף
שְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשִׁבְעָה הֵחֵלָה בְּשָׁלוֹם; וְהַכְּנָסִיָּה
הַתְּפֹשֶׁטָה עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ; וְרַב הָאֲנָשִׁים,
הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִיתִים כָּאֶחָד, הָיוּ חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנָסִיָּה;
וְהַשָּׁלוֹם וְהַשְׁלָוָה הָרַבִּים הָיוּ מִנֵּת חֵלֶקם
בָּאָרֶץ. כֹּה תָמָה שְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשִׁבְעָה.

21 And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

וְאַף בְּשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְשְׁמוֹנֶה הָיָה לָהֶם שָׁלוֹם,
זוֹלַת מְרִיבוֹת אֲחָדוֹת עַל אוֹדוֹת עֲקָרֵי הַתּוֹרָה
אֲשֶׁר יִסְדּוּ הַנְּבִיאִים.

22 And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

וּבְשְׁנַת שִׁבְעִים וְתֵשַׁע פָּרְצוּ מִדִּינִים רַבִּים,
וְאוֹלָם נָפִי וְלַחִי וְרַבִּים מֵאַחֵיהֶם לַכְּנָסִיָּה
אֲשֶׁר הִיטִיבוּ לְדַעַת אֶת עֲקָרֵי הַתּוֹרָה
לְאִשּׁוּרָהּ, וְאֲשֶׁר לָהֶם רַב חִזְיוֹנוֹת מִדֵּי יוֹם
בְּיוֹמוֹ, הִסִּיפוּ אֶל הָעָם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים,
עַד כִּי שָׁמוּ בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא קֶץ לִסְכָּסוֹן.

23 And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

וּבְשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים לְשָׁלוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בָּעָם נָפִי,
קָמוּ פּוֹרְשִׁים נְפִיִּים אֲחָדִים, אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ אֶל
הַלְּמָנִיתִים שְׁנִים מִסָּפֶר לִפְנֵי כֵן וְאֲשֶׁר כִּנּוּ
עַצְמָם לְמָנִים, וְעַמָּם מִסָּפֶר מִצִּיִּצְאֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים
מִלְּדָה, אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם, אָכֵן, עַל יְדֵי
הַפּוֹרְשִׁים, לְכַעַס עַל אֲחֵיהֶם עַד כִּי הֵם הֵחֵלוּ
לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם.

24 And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם רָצְחוּ וְגָזְלוּ, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן נִסּוּגוּ אֶל
הַהָרִים וְאֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת וְאֶל מְקוֹמוֹת סִתְרָם,

25 And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret

הילמן יא:כו-לה

לְהִתְחַבֵּא בָהֶם לְכָל יָמָאָה; וּמִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ גָּדַל
מִסְפָּרָם, כִּי הָלְכוּ פוֹרְשִׁים וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ עִמָּהֶם.

places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

וּבְמִשָּׁךְ הַזֶּמֶן, בְּטָרִם תַּחֲלֻפָּה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת,
הִפְכוּ לְכִנְפִית שׁוֹדְדִים אֲדִירָה. וְהֵם חִפְּשׁוּ
אֶת כָּל מְזֻמּוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר לְגַדְיָאֲנִטוֹן, וְכֵה
הָיוּ לְשׁוֹדְדֵי גַדְיָאֲנִטוֹן.

26 And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

וְהָיָה כִּי הַשׁוֹדְדִים הָאֵלֶּה הִסְבוּ חֲרָבָן
גָּדוֹל וְהָרַס רַב בְּקֶרֶב עַם נָפִי, וְאִף בְּקֶרֶב
עַם הַלְּמָנִים.

27 Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

וְהָיָה הֵיכָרֶח לְשִׁים קֶץ לַפַּעֲלַת הַהָרָס
הַזֹּאת. לָכֵן נִשְׁלַח צָבָא גְבוּרֵי חֵיל אֶל הַיַּעְרוֹת
וְאֶל הַהָרִים לַחֲפֹשׁ אֶת כִּנְפִית הַשׁוֹדְדִים
וְלִהְשָׁמִידָם.

28 And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

אִף הִנֵּה, בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא נִהְדָּפוּ אֲנָשֵׁי הַצָּבָא
אֶל אֶרְצָם. וְכֵה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נָפִי.

29 But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְאַחַת הֵם יָצְאוּ
שְׁנִית עַל כִּנְפִית הַשׁוֹדְדִים הַהִיא וְהִשְׁמִידוּ רַבִּים
מִמֶּנָּה. וְאוֹלָם אִף הֵם סָבְלוּ אֲבֹדוֹת כְּבֹדוֹת.

30 And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

וְהֵם נֶאֱלָצוּ לְסֻגָּת שְׁנִית מִן הַיַּעְרוֹת
וּמִן הַהָרִים אֶל אֶרְצָם מִפְּנֵי עֶצֶם מִסְפַּר
הַשׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר שָׂרְצוּ בְּהָרִים וּבַיַּעְרוֹת.

31 And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

כֵּה כָּלְתָה הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא. וּמִסְפַּר הַשׁוֹדְדִים
עָדִין גָּדַל וְכַחַם עֶצֶם, עַד כִּי הִעֲזוּ פְּנֵיהֶם אֶל
כָּל חִילוֹת הַנֶּפִּים וְאִף אֶל חִילוֹת הַלְּמָנִים.
וְהֵם הִטִּילוּ מוֹרָא רַב עַל אֲנָשֵׁי כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

32 And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם חָדְרוּ אֶל אֲזוּרִים רַבִּים בְּאֶרֶץ
וְזָרְעוּ בָּהֶם חֲרָבָן וְהָרַס. וְהֵם הָרְגוּ רַבִּים וְשָׁבּוּ
אַחֲרֵים וְהוֹבִילוּם אֶל הַיַּעַר; וּבִפְרָט שָׁבוּ אֶת
נְשֵׁיהֶם וְאֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם.

33 Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

וְהָרַעָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר בָּאָה עַל
הָאֲנָשִׁים מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם, עוֹרְרָה אוֹתָם לְזִכֹּר
שְׁנִית אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.

34 Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

כֵּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְאַחַת לְשִׁלְטוֹן
הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.

35 And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

הילמן יא:לו-יב:ה

- 36 And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.
- ובשנת שמונים ושתים הם שכחו שנית את יהוה אלהיהם. ובשנת שמונים ושלש גדלו עוונם וכבדו. ובשנת שמונים וארבע הם לא תקנו את דרכם.
- 37 And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.
- ובשנת שמונים וחמש חזקו ועצמו גאותם ורשעתם; וכה הם שבו והבשילו אלי שחת.
- 38 And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.
- כה כלתה שנת שמונים וחמש.

יב

12

- 1 And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.
- וכה רואים אנחנו מה כוזב לב בני האדם ומה רופף הוא. הננו נזכרים כי יהוה, בטובו הגדול אשר ללא קץ, מברך ומצליח את השמים בו את מבטחם.
- 2 Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.
- בידנו לראות כי בעצם השעה אשר מצליח הוא את עמו בהגדלת תבואתם ועדרי צאנם ובקרם, וזהבם וכסףם וכל מיני דברי יקר אשר מפל סוג ואמנות, בשעת הצילו את חייהם וחלצם מידי אויביהם, בעת רכבו את לב שונאיהם לבל יקומו עליהם למלחמה; ובקצרה: כאשר הוא עושה הכל למען רוחת עמו ואשרם, אכן, בעצם העת ההיא, מקשים הם את לבם, ושוכחים את יהוה אלהיהם, ורומסים ברגליהם את האל הקדוש; וזאת מפני שלותם והצלחתם הכבירה.
- 3 And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.
- וכה רואים אנחנו כי אם אין אלהים מוכיח את עמו בפגעים רבים, אכן, אם אין הוא פוקדם במות ובמזרע, ברעב ובכל מיני מגפות, הם אינם זוכרים אותו.
- 4 O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!
- אָהָה, מה נבטרים בני האדם, ומה בני הכל הם, ומה רשעים ושבטניים הם, ומה מהירים לעול ומה אטיים לעשות טוב; אכן, מה נחפזים הם לשמע לדברי המרשע ולהטות את לבם אל הבלי העולם!
- 5 Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!
- מה מהירים הם להתנשא בגאווה; אכן, מה נחפזים להתפאר ולפעל כל מיני און; ומה אטיים הם לזכר את יהוה אלהיהם ולהטות און לעצתו; ומה שוהים הם מלכת בנתיבות חכמה!

הילמן יב:ו-כ

- 6 Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.
- הִנֵּה, אֵין הֵם רוֹצִים כִּי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא בּוֹרְאָם, יִמְשֹׁל בָּהֶם וְיִמְלֹךְ עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל אִף רַב טוֹבוֹ וְרַחֲמָיו עֲלֵיהֶם, לְרִיק הֵם שְׂמִים אֶת עֲצָתוֹ וְאֵין הֵם חֹפְצִים כִּי יִנְהַגֵּם.
- 7 O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.
- אָכֵן, מִה רַבָּה אַפְסוּת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; לֹא יָאָה עֲרַכְם אִף לְעָפָר הָאָרֶץ.
- 8 For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, עָפָר הָאָרֶץ נָע הֵנָּה וְהֵנָּה וְנִחְלַק בְּפִקְדַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנֶּצְחִי.
- 9 Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.
- הֵן לְקוֹלוֹ חָרְדוּ גְבָעוֹת וְהָרִים רָעָשׁוּ.
- 10 And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.
- בְּקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר הֵם נִבְקָעִים וְהוֹפְכִים מִישׁוֹר, אִף כְּאָרֶץ הַשְּׁפֵלָה.
- 11 Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;
- הֵן בְּקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר תִּרְעַד כָּל הָאָרֶץ;
- 12 Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.
- וּבְקוֹלוֹ הָאֲדִיר יִנְעוּ מוֹסְדֵי אָרֶץ, אִף עַד עָצָם קִרְבָּהּ.
- 13 Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.
- אָכֵן, אִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָאָרֶץ: נִזְע! נִזְע תִּנְּוֶעַ.
- 14 Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָאָרֶץ: סָבִי לְאַחֹר וַיִּאָּרֶךְ הַיּוֹם שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 15 And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.
- כֵּן, עַל פִּי דְבָרוֹ, שָׁבָה הָאָרֶץ לְאַחֹר, וְלִבְנֵי הָאָדָם נִדְמָה כִּי הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ עוֹצֵר מִהִלְכּוֹ. הֵן הָאָרֶץ הִיא הַנִּזְעָה, וְלֹא הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ.
- 16 And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.
- הִנֵּה, אִף אִם יֹאמֶר אֶל מֵי תְהוֹם רַבָּה: יִבְשׁוּ! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 17 Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר אֶל הָהָר הַזֶּה: קוּמָה וּבֹא וְעַל הָעִיר הַזֹּאת נָפֹל, וְהִיא תִקָּבֵר! כֵּן יִהְיֶה.
- 18 And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.
- אִם יִטְמֵן אִישׁ אוֹצֵר בְּאֲדָמָה, וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה: אָרוּר הַמִּטְמֵן, בְּעִבּוֹר עוֹלַת טוֹמְנוֹ! אָרוּר יִהְיֶה.
- 19 And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.
- וְאִם יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל הָאוֹצֵר: אָרוּר תִּהְיֶה, וְלֹא יִמְצָאָךְ אִישׁ מִעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם! הִנֵּה לֹא יִשְׁגִּיחוּ אָדָם מִעַתָּה וְעַד עוֹלָם.
- 20 And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.
- אִם יֹאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל אִישׁ: יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ דְּבַר אָנוּ, אָרוּר תִּהְיֶה לְעוֹלָם! כֵּה יִהְיֶה.

הילמן יב:כא–יג:ד

- 21 ואם יאמר יהוה: מפני עוונך, הכרת תכרת מלפני! יסבב הוא כי יקום הדבר.
- 22 ואי לאיש אשר הוא יאמר לו כדבר הזה, כי בעונו יבוא עליו, ותשובה לו אין. על כן בעבור יושעו בני האדם, הכרז על תשובה.
- 23 ברורים המנחמים מחטא, השומעים לקול יהוה אלהיהם, כי הם אשר יושעו.
- 24 יהי רצון מלפני אלהים, אשר לו הגדלה כחמה כי יגיעו בני האדם לכלל תשובה ומעשים טובים, למען יושב להם חסד תחת חסד, כפי מעשיהם.
- 25 הנה, חפצני כי כל בני האדם יושעו, אך כתוב כי ביום הגדול והאחרון יהיו כאלה אשר ישלכו, אכן, ידחו מלפני יהוה;
- 26 עליהם יגזרו יסורי עולם, למלא את דברי האמור: למיטיב עשות, חיי נצח; ולפועל רשעה, קללת עולם. כן הדבר. אמן.

יג

13

- 1 והיה בשנת שמונים ויש, והנפיים הוסיפו להרע ולהרשיע עד מאד, בעוד הקמנים הקפידו לשמור את מצוות אלהים על פי תורת משה.
- 2 אכן, בשנה ההיא בא איש אחד למני, ושמו נקרא שמואל, אל ארץ זרהמלה, והחל להטיף לעם. והיה כי הוא הטיף להם ימים רבים על תשובה, אך הם גרשוהו והוא עמד לשוב אל ארצו.
- 3 והיה אליו קול יהוה וצוהו כי ילך וינבא שנית אל העם את הדברים אשר יעלו על לבו.
- 4 והיה כי לא נתנוהו האנשים להכניס אל עירם; על כן הוא הלך ועלה על החומה, ופשט את ידו וקרא בקול גדול, ונבא לעם את כל הדברים אשר שם יהוה בלבבו.

- וְכֵן הָיָה אָמַר אֵלֵיהֶם: הֲנִי שְׂמוֹאֵל אִישׁ
לְמִנִּי, מְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁם
יְהוָה בְּלִבִּי; וְהִנֵּה שָׁם הוּא בְּלִבִּי לְהַגִּיד לָעָם
הַזֶּה כִּי חָרַב הַדִּין תִּלְוֶיהָ מֵעַלְיוֹ; וּבְטָרִם
יִחְלְפוּ אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה נָפֹל תִּפֹּל הָיָה
עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה.
- אָכֵן, חָרַבְנָן כְּבֹד עֹמֵד לְפָקֹד אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,
וּבֹא יָבוֹא עָלָיו; וְדַבֵּר לֹא יֵצִיל אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה,
בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם וַיֵּאֱמִינוּ בְּאֲדֹנָי יֵשׁוּעַ
הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹא יָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם, וַיִּסְבֹּל
רַבּוֹת יְיוּמַת לְמַעַן עָמוֹ.
- וְהִנֵּה, הוֹדִיעֵנִי זֹאת מִלֶּאֱלֹהִים יְהוָה וּבִשְׁמֵר אֶת
נַפְשִׁי בְּשׁוֹרָה מִשְׁמַחַת. וְהִנֵּה, נִשְׁלַחְתִּי
אֵלֵיכֶם לְהַשְׁמִיעָהּ, בְּעֶבֶר תִּתְּבַשְּׂרוּ אִף
אִתָּם; וְהִנֵּה לֹא חָפְצָתֶם לְקַבְּלִנִי.
- עַל כֵּן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הִקְשׁוּ עָם
הַנִּפְתָּיִים אֶת לִבָּם, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם
אֲסִיר אֶת דְּבָרֵי מִיָּה, וְאֶאֱסֹף מֵהֶם אֶת
רוּחִי, נִשְׁוֹא לֹא אֲשָׂאם עוֹד, וְאֵת לֵב
אֲחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁה עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְלֹא תִחְלַפְנָה אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה בְּטָרִם אֲסֹב
עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת מַכָּתָם; אָכֵן, פְּקוֹד אֶפְקֹדֶם בַּחֶרֶב
וּבָרָעַב וּבִמְגָפָה.
- אָכֵן, בָּעִזָּא אֶפִּי אֶפְקֹדֶם, וּבְדוֹר הָרְבִיעִי יִחְיוּ
מִבְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר יִחְיוּ כְּכִלְיוֹנְכֶם הַחֲרוּץ;
וְכָל זֹאת אָכֵן יָבוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם בְּלִתִּי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ
מִרְעֵתְכֶם, נֵאֻם יְהוָה. וּבְנֵי הַדֹּר הָרְבִיעִי
הֵם אֲשֶׁר יָבִיאוּ אֶת כְּלִיֹּנְכֶם.
- אִף אִם תִּנָּחֲמוּ עַל רְעֵתְכֶם וְתִשׁוּבוּ אֶל
יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם, אֲשִׁיב מִכֶּם אֶת חַמְתִּי, נֵאֻם
יְהוָה. כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַשֹּׁבִים
מִרְעֵתָם הַפּוֹנִים אֵלַי, אִף אוֹי לֹאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשׁוּב.
- אָכֵן, אוֹי לְעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, זֶרַעְתָּמְלָה;
הֵן בְּעֶבֶר הַצְּדִיקִים הִיא נִצְלָתָה. כִּי כֹה אָמַר
יְהוָה: אוֹי לְעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר
רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי רַבִּים מֵהֶם, אָכֵן, רַב יוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר
הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עָלַי, נֵאֻם יְהוָה
- 5 And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.
- 6 Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.
- 7 And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.
- 8 Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.
- 9 And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.
- 10 Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.
- 11 But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.
- 12 Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

- 13 But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.
- אך בְּרוּכִים הֵם הַמִּנְחָמִים עַל חַטָּאתָם, כִּי אוֹתָם אֶצִּיל. הֵן לוֹלֵא הַצְדִּיקִים אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, שְׁלַחְתִּי אֵשׁ מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם וְהַשְׁמַדְתִּיהָ.
- 14 But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.
- הֵן בְּעֵבֹר הַצְדִּיקִים הִיא נִצְלָתָה. אֲנִי הִנֵּה תָבוֹא הָעֵת, וְהַשְׁלַכְתֶּם אֶת הַצְדִּיקִים מִקִּרְבְּכֶם, אִזְ תִּבְשִׁילוּ לְקִרְאֵת הַשְׁמַדְתְּכֶם, נָאוֹם יְהוָה; וְאוֹי לְעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, עַל הָרָשָׁעָה וְעַל הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּהּ.
- 15 Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.
- אוֹי לְעִיר גִּדְעוֹן, עַל הָרָשָׁעָה וְעַל הַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ.
- 16 Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.
- וְאוֹי לְכָל הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר בְּאַרְצָן מִסְבִּיב, אֲשֶׁר נִחְלוּן הַנְּפִיתִים, מִפְּנֵי הָרָשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבָּן.
- 17 And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת: קִלְלָה תָבוֹא עַל הָאָרֶץ, מִפְּנֵי אֲנָשֶׁיהָ, אֲכֹן, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעֵתָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 18 And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ בְּאֶדְמָה לֹא יִמְצָאוּהוּ בְּעֵת הַהִיא, מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ הַגְּדוֹלָה; לֹא כֵן הַצְדִּיק אֲשֶׁר יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, נָאוֹם יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, אֱלֹהֵי אֲמֶת הַגְּדוֹל.
- 19 For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.
- כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: חֲפָצִי כִּי הֵם יִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם לְשָׁמִי; אָרוּר הוּא אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי; כִּי הֵטֵמֵן לֹא יִטְמִין אִישׁ אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי, כִּי אִם הַצְדִּיק; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִטְמִין אֶת אוֹצָרוֹ לְשָׁמִי, אָרוּר הוּא וְאָרוּר אוֹצָרוֹ, וְאִישׁ לֹא יַצִּילֵנוּ מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ.
- 20 And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.
- בּוֹא יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר הֵם יִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי שִׁתּוּ לִבָּם לְעֶשֶׂר; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר שִׁתּוּ לִבָּם לְעֶשֶׂר, וְיִטְמִינוּ אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר יָנוּסוּ מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; אֲכֹן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא לְשָׁמִי יִטְמִינוּם, אָרוּרִים יִהְיוּ, הֵם וְאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם. בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא הִכָּה יִכּוּ, נָאוֹם יְהוָה.
- 21 Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed
- רְאוּ, אֲנֹשֵׁי הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת, שְׁמְעוּ אֵל דְּבָרִי; הֶאֱזִינוּ לְדְבַרִי יְהוָה; הִנֵּהוּ אוֹמֵר כִּי אָרוּרִים אַתֶּם מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרְכֶם, וְאִף עֲשָׂרְכֶם

אָרוֹר, כִּי שֵׁתָם לִבָּכֶם לֹו, וְלֹא שָׁמַעְתֶּם לְדִבְרֵי מִי אֲשֶׁר נָתַנוּ לָכֶם.

because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

לֹא זָכַרְתֶּם אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם בְּדָבָרִים אֲשֶׁר בֵּרַכְכֶם, אֲדָו זִכְרִים אֲתֶם תְּמִיד אַתְּ עֹשֶׂרְכֶם וְאִינְכֶם מוֹדִים עָלָיו לִיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם; אֲכֹן, אֵין לִבָּכֶם נִמְשָׁךְ אֶל יְהוָה כִּי הוּא תוֹפַח בְּגָאוֹה רָבָה, וְאַתֶּם עוֹסְקִים בַּהֲתַפָּאוֹת וּבַהֲתַנְשְׁאוֹת, בְּקִנְאוֹה וּבִסְכּוּכִים, בְּזִדּוֹן וּבְרִדְפוֹת, וּבְרִצָּח וּבְכָל מִינֵי עוֹל.

22 Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

עַל כֵּן שׁוֹלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים מְאֵרָה בְּאַרְצְכֶם וְאַף בְּעֶשְׂרְכֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹכֶם.

23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

אִוִי לָעַם הַזֶּה כִּי הִגִּיעָה הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר אֲתֶם מְגַרְשִׁים אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלוֹעֲגִים לָהֶם, וְרוֹגְמִים בָּהֶם אַבְנִים וְהוֹרְגִים אוֹתָם וְעוֹשִׂים לָהֶם כָּל מִינֵי עוֹלָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ לָהֶם בִּימֵי קֶדֶם.

24 Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

וּבְדַבְּרְכֶם אוֹמְרִים אֲתֶם: אֵלֹו חַיִּינוּ בִּימֵי אֲבוֹתֵינוּ אֲשֶׁר מִלְּפָנִים, לֹא הָיִינוּ הוֹרְגִים אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים, לֹא רוֹגְמִים בָּהֶם אַבָּן וּמְגַרְשִׁים אוֹתָם.

25 And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

הִנֵּכֶם רָעִים מֵאַבּוֹתֵיכֶם. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי בָּבֹא אֲלֵיכֶם נְבִיא וְכַהֲדִיעֹו אֶתְכֶם אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה הַמַּעֲדִיד עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם וְעוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, אֲתֶם רוֹגְמִים עָלָיו, מְגַרְשִׁים אוֹתוֹ וּמְבַקְשִׁים כָּל דֶּרֶךְ לְהַשְׁמִידוֹ. אֲכֹן, תֹּאמְרוּ כִּי נְבִיא שֶׁקֶר הוּא, וְחוֹטֵא, וְשׁוֹלַח מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר מַעֲדִיד הוּא כִּי מַעֲשִׂיכֶם רָעִים.

26 Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

וְאִם יָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם אִישׁ וְיֹאמַר עֲשׂוּ זֹאת וְאֵין בְּכֶךְ עוֹוֹן, עֲשׂוּ זֹאת וְלֹא תִסָּבֵלוּ! אוֹ אִם יֹאמַר: לָכוּ כְּדֶרֶךְ גִּאוֹת לִבָּכֶם, לָכוּ אַחֵר גְּבוּהוֹת עֵינֵיכֶם וְעֲשׂוּ כָּל תַּאֲוֹת לִבָּכֶם! הֵן קִבַּל תִּקְבְּלוּהוּ וְנְבִיא תִכְנוּהוּ.

27 But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

אֲכֹן, אוֹתוֹ תְּרוֹמְמוּ וּמַהוֹנֵכֶם תִּתְּנוּ לֹו; אֶת זְהָבְכֶם וְכֶסֶףְכֶם תִּתְּנוּ לוֹ וּבִגְדֵי יָקָר תַּלְבִּישׁוּהוּ; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יַחֲלִיק דְּבָרָיו אֲלֵיכֶם וְיֹאמַר כִּי הִכָּל טוֹב, לֹא תִמָּצְאוּ בוֹ כָּל מוֹם.

28 Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

הוֹי, דּוֹר רָשָׁע וְנָלוֹז; עִם קָשָׁה וְעַקְשָׁה, עַד מָתִי, סוֹבְרִים אֲתֶם, יִשְׁאַכֶּם יְהוָה? עַד מָתִי תִפְקְרוּ עֲצֻמְכֶם לְסוֹר אַחֵר מִנְהִיגִים שׁוֹטִים וְעוֹרִים? עַד מָתִי תִבְחָרוּ בַחֲשָׁךְ תַּחַת אוֹר?

29 O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

- 30 Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.
- הִנֵּה כָּבֵד בּוֹעֶרֶת חֲמַת יְהוָה עֲלֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה הוּא אָרַר אֶת הָאָרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם.
- 31 And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.
- הִנֵּה בָּאָה הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִקְלַל יְהוָה אֶת עֲשָׂרְכֶם, כִּי יִהְיֶה חֶלֶק, אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִהְיֶה לָכֶם אַחֲזִיזָה בּוֹ, וּבְיָמֵי עֲנִיְכֶם יִשָּׁמַט מִיָּדְכֶם.
- 32 And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:
- וּבְיָמֵי עֲנִיְכֶם תִּקְרָאוּ אֶל יְהוָה, אֲךָ לִשְׁוֹא תִקְרָאוּ, כִּי כָּבֵד נִחְרַץ חֲרִבְנֶכֶם וְכִלְיוֹנֶכֶם נִכּוֹן, נֹאמֹר יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת. אָזִי תִבְכוּ וּתְיַלְלוּ, אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא תִקְוֹנֶנּוּ לֵאמֹר:
- 33 O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהִיִּיתִי שֹׁב מִרְעֵתִי וְנִמְנַע מִהָרֹג אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים, וּמִרְגֵּם אוֹתָם בָּאֶבֶן וּמִגָּרֶשֶׁם. אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא תֹאמְרוּ: מִי יִתֵּן וְזָכְרֵנוּ אֶת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא לֵנוּ אֶת עֲשָׂרֵנוּ, כִּי אָז לֹא הָיָה חֶלֶק וְנִשָּׁמַט מִיָּדֵנוּ, כִּי הִנֵּה אָבֵד לָנוּ עֲשָׂרֵנוּ.
- 34 Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.
- הִנֵּה אֲנַחְנוּ מְנִיחִים כָּאֵן כָּלִי וְלִמְחָרָת הוּא נִעָלֵם. הִנֵּה חֲרִבּוֹתֵינוּ תִלְקַחְנָה מִמֶּנּוּ בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִבְקָשׁוּן לִקְרָב.
- 35 Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.
- אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵינוּ הִטַּמְנוּ וְהֵם נִשָּׁמְטוּ מִמֶּנּוּ, מִפְּנֵי קִלְלַת הָאָרֶץ.
- 36 O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְשִׁבְנוּ מִרְעֵתֵנוּ בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ שָׁמַעְנוּ אֶת דְּבַר יְהוָה; כִּי הִנֵּה אֲרוּרָה הָאָרֶץ וְכָל דָּבָר חֶלֶק וְנִשָּׁמַט מִיָּדֵנוּ.
- 37 Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.
- הִנֵּנוּ מִקְפִּים בְּשִׂדִּים, אָכֵן, מִכְתָּרִים בְּמַלְאָכֵי הַמִּבְקָשׁ לְאַבֵּד אֶת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ. הִנֵּה, גָּדוֹל עֲוֹנוֹנֵנוּ. אֲנֵּה, יְהוָה, הֲלֹא תִשָּׁיב אַפְּךָ מִמֶּנּוּ? בְּלִשׁוֹן כָּזֹאת תִּדְבְּרוּ בָּעֵת הַהִיא.
- 38 But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.
- הִנֵּה, חָלְפוּ אֲזִי יָמֵי מִבְחָנְכֶם. עַכְבָּתָם אֶת יוֹם יְשׁוּעַתְכֶם עַד אֲשֶׁר אַחֲרָתָם לְעוֹלָם וְכִלְיוֹנְכֶם נִחְרַץ. כִּי בִקְשָׁתֶם כָּל יָמֵי חַיֵּיכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִכְלַתֶם לְהַשְׁיִיגוֹ. אָכֵן, בִּקְשָׁתֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּעֲשִׂית אֲוֹן, וְזֶה מִגֵּד לְטֹבַע הַצֶּדֶק אֲשֶׁר לְאַדְוִינָה הַגָּדוֹל, רִבּוֹן הָעוֹלָמִים.
- 39 O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.
- אָהֵה, תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָאָרֶץ, מִי יִתֵּן וְהִקְשַׁבְתֶּם לְדִבְרִי! וְאֲנִי מִתְחַנֵּן כִּי יִשָּׁיב יְהוָה מִכֶּם אֶת אַפּוֹ, וְכִי תִנְחַמוּ מִחַטְאוֹתְכֶם וְתִשָּׁעוּ.

יד

14

- 1 And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.
- וְהָיָה כִּי עוֹד דְּבָרִים רַבִּים מְאֹד, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְכַתֵּב, נִבֵּא שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי.
- 2 And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנְנִי נֹתֵן לָכֶם אוֹת; בְּעוֹד חָמֵשׁ שָׁנִים, וְהִנֵּה בָא בֶן אֱלֹהִים לְגַאֵל אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמּוֹ.
- 3 And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.
- וְהִנֵּה לָכֶם הָאוֹת לַעֲת בּוֹאִי; הִנֵּה יֵרְאוּ מְאֻרוֹת גְּדוֹלִים בַּשָּׁמַיִם, עַד כִּי בִלְיִלָה אֲשֶׁר לִפְנֵי בּוֹאִי לֹא תִהְיֶה כָּל חֹשֶׁכָה, וּבְעֵינֵי בְנֵי אָדָם יִדְמָה כְּאֵלוֹ יוֹם הוּא.
- 4 Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.
- עַל כֵּן יִהְיוּ יוֹם וָלַיְלָה וַיּוֹם כְּאֵלוֹ יוֹם אֶחָד הֵם, בְּלֹא לַיְלָה. וְהִנֵּה לָכֶם אוֹת, כִּי אַכֵּן תִּדְעוּ עַל זְרִיחַת הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ וְעַל שְׁקִיעֻתוֹ, לָכֵן יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ כִּי יִהְיוּ אֵלֶּה שְׁנֵי יָמִים וָלַיְלָה; וְהִלְיִלָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִחְשִׂי, הוּא הַלַּיְלָה לִפְנֵי הַוֵּלָדוֹ.
- 5 And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.
- וְהִנֵּה, כּוֹכֵב חָדָשׁ יַעֲלֶה, אֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹתוֹ לֹא רָאִיתֶם מֵעוֹדֶכֶם; וְאִי זֶה יִהְיֶה לָכֶם אוֹת.
- 6 And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.
- וְאֵין זֶה הַכֹּל, אוֹתוֹת וּנְפִלְאוֹת רַבִּים יִהְיוּ בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- 7 And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.
- אִזִּי תִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּ וְתִתְפַּלְאוּ, עַד כִּי לֵאָרֶץ תִּפְּלוּ.
- 8 And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִין בֶּן אֱלֹהִים, יִחְיֶה חַי עוֹלָם.
- 9 And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.
- וְכֹה צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה עַל יְדֵי מַלְאָכִי לְבוֹא וּלְהַגִּיד לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה; אַכֵּן, הוּא צִוָּה כִּי אֲנִיבֹא לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; וְכֹה אָמַר אֵלִי: קְרֹא נָא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, הִנְחֵמוּ עַל חַטֹּאֵיכֶם וּפְנּוּ אֶת דְּרֹךְ יְהוָה!
- 10 And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.
- וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר לָמְנִי אֲנִי, וְדִבַּרְתִּי אֵלֵיכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה, וְעַתָּה אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ הַדְּבָרִים עֲלֵיכֶם קָשִׁים, הִנֵּכֶם רוֹגְזִים עָלַי וּמְבַקְשִׁים לְכַלּוֹתִנִּי, וְאַתֶּם גִּרְשְׁתֶּם אוֹתִי מִקִּרְבְּכֶם.
- 11 And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of
- וְעַתָּה תִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי, כִּי בַעֲבוּר זֹאת עָלִיתִי עַל חוֹמַת הָעִיר הַזֹּאת, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁמְעוּ

וְתִדְעוּ אֶת מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים הַמְצַפָּה לָכֶם
מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וְאִף לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ אֶת
תְּנַאי הַתְּשׁוּבָה;

God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

וּבְעִבּוֹר תִּדְעוּ עַל בּוֹא יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן
אֱלֹהִים, אָבִי שָׁמַיִם וָאָרֶץ, בּוֹרֵא הַכֹּל
מִבְּרָאשִׁית; וְאִף לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ עַל אוֹתוֹת בּוֹא,
בְּעִבּוֹר תְּאֻמֵּינוּ בְּשֵׁמוֹ.

12 And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

וְאִם תְּאֻמֵּינוּ בְּשֵׁמוֹ, תְּשׁוּבוּ מִכָּל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם,
וּבְזֹאת תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם כְּפָרָה עָלֵיהֶם, בְּזִכּוֹתָיו.

13 And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

וְהִנֵּה, אוֹת נֹסֵף נֹתֵן אֲנִי לָכֶם, אוֹת עַל מוֹתוֹ.

14 And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אֲכֹן מוֹת יָמוּת הוּא בְּעִבּוֹר תְּבוֹא
הַיְּשׁוּעָה. אֲכֹן, רְאוּי הַדְּבָר וְהַכָּרֵחַ עָלָיו לְמוֹת
בְּעִבּוֹר קִיָּם אֶת תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם
יִוָּבְאוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶל נֹכַח פְּנֵי יְהוָה.

15 For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

אֲכֹן, הַמָּוֶת הַזֶּה מְבִיא אֶת הַתְּחִיָּה וְגוֹאֵל אֶת
כָּל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת מִן הַמָּוֶת הָרִאשׁוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
מָוֶת רוּחָנִי. כִּי כָל הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר נִכְרְתָה
מִלִּפְנֵי יְהוָה עַל יְדֵי נְפִילַת אָדָם, נִחְשָׁבֶת
לְמֵתָה, בְּעֵינֵי הָרוּחַ כְּבַעֲנִינֵי הַגּוֹף.

16 Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

וְהִנֵּה, תְּחִיַּת הַמָּשִׁיחַ גּוֹאֵלֶת אֶת הָאֲנוּשׁוֹת; אֶת
כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הֵיא מְשִׁיבָה אֶל נֹכַח פְּנֵי יְהוָה.

17 But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

וְהֵיא מְקִימַת אֶת תְּנַאי הַתְּשׁוּבָה, אֲשֶׁר כָּל
הַשֵּׁב מִרְעֻתוֹ אֵינוֹ נִכְרַת וְאֵינוֹ מִשְׁלָךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
וְאוּלָם כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵינוֹ שֵׁב מִרְעֻתוֹ נִכְרַת וּמִשְׁלָךְ
אֶל הָאֵשׁ, וְשֵׁב עָלָיו מָוֶת רוּחָנִי, מָוֶת שֵׁנִי, כִּי
הוּא נִכְרַת שְׁנִית בְּאֲשֶׁר לְעֵינֵי צֶדֶק.

18 Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

לָכֵן, שׁוּבוּ מִרְעֻתְכֶם, שׁוּבוּ פֶן תִּרְשְׁעוּ
וְתוֹרְדוּ אֶל הַמָּוֶת הַשֵּׁנִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יִדְעֻתֶם
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְלֹא עֲשִׂיתֶם אוֹתָם.

19 Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

וְהִנֵּה, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי לָכֶם עַל אוֹת שֵׁנִי,
אוֹת עַל מוֹתוֹ, הִנֵּה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר הוּא
יָמוּת, יִחְשֹׁךְ הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ וְיִסָּרֵב לְהַגִּיף אוֹר
עָלֵיכֶם וְכִמּוּהוּ הַיָּרֵחַ וְהַכּוֹכְבִּים; וְלֹא יִזְרַח
אוֹר עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים,
מִשְׁעַת מִיתָתוֹ וְעַד שְׁעַת קוּמוֹ מִן הַמֵּתִים.

20 But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

וּבְעֵת אֲשֶׁר יֵשִׁיב אֶת רוּחוֹ יִפּוּצּוּ רָעָמִים
וּבְרָקִים בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת, וְהָאָרֶץ תִּחְרָד

21 Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake

וְתִרְעַד, וְהַסְלָעִים אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵיהָ אֲשֶׁר הֵם מַעַל
הָאָרֶץ וּמִתַּחְתֶּיהָ, אֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי הֵיוּ
מוֹצָקִים הֵם, אוֹ כִּי רַבָּם גּוֹשׁ מוֹצָק, יִבְקָעוּ.

אָכֵן, הִבְקָע יִבְקָעוּ הֵם, וּמֵאֲזוּ וְהִלָּאָה יִמְצְאוּ
סְדוּקִים וּמִבְקָעִים, שְׁבוּרִים וּמְפֹרָרִים עַל פְּנֵי
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, מֵעֲלֶיהָ וּמִתַּחְתֶּיהָ.

בָּעֵת הַהִיא תִּתְחַלֵּלֶנָּה סְעֻרוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת
וְהָרִים רַבִּים יִשְׁפְּלוּ וַיְהִיו לְבָקְעוֹת, וּמְקוֹמוֹת
רַבִּים הַנִּקְרָאִים הַיּוֹם בְּקָעוֹת וַיְהִיו הָרִים
גְּבוּהִים וְנִשְׁאָרִים.

וְדֶרֶכִּים רַבּוֹת תִּהְרַסְנָה, וְעָרִים רַבּוֹת
תִּהְיֶינָה לְשָׁמָמָה.

וּקְבָרִים רַבִּים יִפְתָּחוּ וַיּוֹצִיאוּ רַבִּים מִמִּיתָהֶם,
וּקְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים יוֹפִיעוּ לִפְנֵי רַבִּים.

כֹּה דִבֶּר אֱלִי הַמִּלְאָךְ. אָכֵן, הוּא אָמַר לִי כִּי
רַעְמִים וּבָרָקִים יִתְחַלְּלוּ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.

וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלַי כִּי בָעֵת הַתְּחִלָּה הָרַעַם וְהַבָּרָק
וְהַסְעָרָה, יִחֻלוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְכִי חֹשֶׁךְ
יִכְסֶּה אֶת פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים.

וְהַמִּלְאָךְ אָמַר אֵלַי כִּי רַבִּים יִרְאוּ דְּבָרִים
אֵף גְּדוֹלִים מֵאֵלֶּה, לְמַעַן יֵאֱמִינוּ כִּי הָאוֹתוֹת
וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת הָאֵלֶּה יִחֻלוּ עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאָרֶץ
הַזֹּאת, לְבַל תִּהְיֶה כָּל סִבָּה לְסַפֵּק בֵּין
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם;

וְזֹאת לְמַעַן יִוָּשַׁע כָּל הַמֵּאֲמִין, וְלְמַעַן
יִחֻל מִשְׁפַּט צָדֵק עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֱמִין;
וְאֵף לְמַעַן יָבִיאוּ הַחַיִּבִּים בְּדִין אֶת הַרְשָׁעָתָם
עַל עַצְמָם.

זָכְרוּ, זָכְרוּ נָא, אַחֵי, כִּי כָּל הָאוֹבֵד, לֹא־
עֲצָמוּ הוּא אוֹבֵד, וְכָל הַפּוֹעֵל עוֹל, לְעַצְמוֹ הוּא
מַעוֹל; כִּי חַפְשִׁים הֵנֶכֶם, וְרָשָׁאִים אַתֶּם לַפֶּעַל
בְּרִשׁוֹת עַצְמְכֶם; כִּי הִנֵּה נָתַן לָכֶם אֱלֹהִים
דַּעַת וְעִשָּׂה אֶתְכֶם בְּנֵי חַיִּין.

אָכֵן, הוּא נָתַן לָכֶם לְהַבְדִּיל בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין
רָע; וְהוּא נָתַן לָכֶם לִבְחֹר בַּחַיִּים אוֹ בַּמָּוֶת;
וּבִידְכֶם לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת וּלְהִשָּׁיב עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת

and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

22 Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

23 And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

24 And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

25 And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

26 And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

27 And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

28 And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

29 And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

30 And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

31 He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is

הטוב, ובִּיְדְכֶם לְהָרַע וּלְהָשִׁיב עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת הָרַע.

good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

טו

15

וְעַתָּה, אֲחֵי הָאֱהוּבִים, הִנְנִי מוֹדִיעֲכֶם כִּי בִלְתִּי
אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ מִרַעְתְּכֶם, יִשְׁמוּ בְּתִיכֶם מֵאִין יוֹשֵׁב.

1 And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

אָכֵן, בִּלְתִּי אִם תִּשׁוּבוּ מִרַעְתְּכֶם, תִּאֲבֹלְנָה
נְשֵׁיכֶם אֲבָל כִּבְד בַּעַת הִנִּיקוּן כִּי תִבְקְשׁוּ לָנוֹס,
וְלֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם מִפָּלֵט; אוֹי לְנָשִׁים הַהֲרוֹת כִּי
לֹא תוּכְלֶנָה לְהִמָּלֵט מִפָּנַי כִּבְד מִשְׁאָן; עַל כֵּן
בִּרְגָלִים הֵן תִּרְמָסֶנָּה וּלְכָלִּיּוֹן תִּעֲזֹבֶנָּה.

2 Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

אוֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה הַנִּקְרָא עִם נָפִי, בִּלְתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ
מִרַעְתָם בְּרֵאוֹתָם אֶת כָּל הָאוֹתוֹת וְהַנִּפְלְאוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יֵרְאוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם; כִּי הֵם עִם אֲשֶׁר
נִבְחַר לַיהוָה; הֵן אֶת עִם נָפִי הוּא אֶהָב וְאִי
הוֹכִיחַ; אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם עֲוֹנָם הוּא הוֹכִיחָם
מֵאַהֲבָתוֹ אוֹתָם.

3 Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

וְהִנֵּה, אֲחֵי, אֶת הַלְּמָנִים הוּא שָׂנֵא, כִּי
מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם הָיוּ רָעִים תָּמִיד; וְזֹאת מִפָּנַי הָעוֹן
אֲשֶׁר בְּמִסְרָת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם. וְאוֹלָם, הִיִּתָּה לָהֶם
הַיְשׁוּעָה עַל יְדֵי הַטַּפֹּת הַנִּפְּיִים; וּבַעֲבוּר זֹאת
הָאָרֶץ יִהְיֶה אֶת יְמֵיהֶם.

4 But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

וְרָצוֹנִי כִּי תִרְאוּ כִּי רַבִּם הוֹלְכִים בְּנִתִּיב
חֻבָּתָם, וְהֵם מִשְׁגִּיחִים בְּהִתְהַלֵּךְ לִפְנֵי
אֱלֹהִים, וּמִקְפִּידִים לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת מִצְוֹתַי וְאֶת
חֻקֵּי וְאֶת מִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל פִּי תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.

5 And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רַבִּם עוֹשִׂים כֵּן, וְהֵם
מֵתְאַמְּצִים בְּשִׁקְדָּה לֵלֵא לְאוֹת לְהָבִיא אֶת
שְׂאֵר אֲחֵיהֶם אֶל דַּעַת הָאֱמֶת. עַל כֵּן רַבִּים
הֵם הַנִּסְפָּחִים עֲלֵיהֶם מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ.

6 Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

הֵן אֲמַנִּים יוֹדְעִים אֲתָם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵיכֶם
חִזִּיתֶם בְּזֹאת, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר מֵתוֹדְעִים אֶל
הָאֱמֶת וְאֶל הַכֶּרֶת מִסּוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי
מִרְשָׁעוֹת וְנִתְעַבּוֹת הֵן, וּמִנְהִיגִים לְהֶאֱמִין
בְּכִתְבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אָכֵן, בְּנִבּוּאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים
הַקְדוּשִׁים הַכְּתוּבוֹת, הַמּוֹלִיכוֹת אוֹתָם אֶל
אֲמוּנַת יְהוָה וְאֶל הַתְּשׁוּבָה, וְהָאֲמוּנָה
וְהַתְּשׁוּבָה הָאֵלֶּה מְחַלְלוֹת שְׁנוֹי בְּלִבָּם;

7 And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

אֲכֹן, יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ לְיָדֵי כֶּה, אֵיתָנִים הֵם וְיֹצִיבִים בְּאַמְנוֹנָתָם וּבְדָבָר אֲשֶׁר עַל יָדָיו נַעֲשׂוּ בְּנֵי חֲרִין.

8 Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

וְעוֹד יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם כִּי הֵם קָבְרוּ אֶת כָּל נֶשֶׁקָם וְכִי יִרְאִים הֵם לְשֹׂאתָם, פֶּן יַחֲטְאוּ בְּכָל אִפֹּן שֶׁהוּא; הֵן רוֹאִים אַתֶּם כִּי יִרְאִים הֵם לַחֲטָא, וְכִי יִבְכְּרוּ לְהִרְמָס וּלְהִהָרֵג בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם, וְלֹא יִשְׂאוּ אֶת חַרְבוֹתֵיהֶם עֲלֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בַּמָּשִׁיחַ.

9 And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר יֹצִיבִים הֵם בְּאַמְנוֹנָתָם בְּאֲשֶׁר הֵם מֵאֲמִינִים, אֲכֹן, מִפְּנֵי אֵיתָנוּתָם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תֵּאִיר לָהֶם הַדְּעַת, בְּרוּךְ יִבְרַכֶּם יְהוָה וַיֶּאֱרִיד אֶת יְמֵיהֶם, עַל אִף עֲוֹנָם.

10 And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

אֲכֹן, אִף אִם יִדְרְדְּרוּ אֶל חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה, וַיֶּאֱרִיד יְהוָה אֶת יְמֵיהֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבָרוֹ אֲבוֹתֵינוּ, וְכֵן הִנְבִּיא זְנוֹס וְנָבִיאִים רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים, בְּדָבָר הַשְּׂבַת אַחֵינוּ הַלְּמָנִים שְׁנִית אֶל יְדִיעַת הָאֱמֶת.

11 Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים יִחוּלוּ דְבָרֵי בְרִית יְהוָה עַל אַחֵינוּ הַלְּמָנִים; וְעַל אִף הַצָּרוֹת הַרְבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר תִּפְקְדְּנָה אוֹתָם, וְאִף כִּי יִגְרְשׁוּ מִמְּקוֹם אֶל מְקוֹם עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, וַיִּרְדְּפוּ וַיִּפּוּ וַיִּפּוּצוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ, בְּלֹא מְקוֹם מִקְלֵט, רַחֵם יְרַחֵם יְהוָה.

12 Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

וְזֹאת עַל פִּי דְבַר הִנְבוּאָה כִּי הֵם יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת הָאֱמֶת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא יְדִיעַת גּוֹאֲלָם, רוֹעֶם הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנָּאֶמָן, וַיִּמְנּוּ עִם צֹאנוּ.

13 And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

לָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִם לֹא תִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתְכֶם, יִיטֵב לָהֶם מֵאֲשֶׁר לָכֶם.

14 Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

כִּי אֱלוֹ הֵם, אֲשֶׁר הִדְרְדְּרוּ אֶל חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה מִפְּנֵי מְסוּרוֹת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, הִרְאוּ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂי הָעוֹ אֲשֶׁר הִרְאוּ לָכֶם, אַזִּי נֹכַחְתֶּם כִּי לְעוֹלָם לֹא הָיוּ שָׂבִים לְהִדְרֹדֶר אֱלִי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה.

15 For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

לָכֵן, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה: לֹא אֶעֱשֶׂה בָהֶם כְּכֹל עַד תָּמָס, כִּי אִם אֶסָּב כִּי בְיוֹם חֻכְמָתִי הֵם יָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי, נְאוּם יְהוָה.

16 Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

וְעַתָּה, כֹּה אָמַר יְהוָה עַל עַם נִפְי: בְּלִתִּי אִם יָשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם, וַיִּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת רְצוֹנִי,

17 And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy

אֲשֶׁמִידִם עַד תִּמָּם, נְאוּם יְהוָה. וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי
הֶסֶר אֲמוֹנֶתָם, עַל אֲף מַעֲשֵׂי הָעִזְזָא אֲשֶׁר
עָשִׂיתִי בְּקִרְבָּם. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ כָּל
אֵלֶּה, נְאוּם יְהוָה.

them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

טז

16

וְהִנֵּה, רַבִּים הָיוּ הַשּׁוֹמְעִים אֶת דְּבָרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל
הַלְּמָנִי, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר מֵעַל חוֹמַת הָעִיר. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר
הָאֱמִין בְּדִבְרוֹ הִלְךְ וּבִקֵּשׁ אֶת נָפִי; וּבְבוֹאָם
אֵלָיו, הֵם הִתְנוּדוּ לְפָנָיו עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם בְּלֹא
כַחַשׁ וּבִקְשׁוּ לְהִטָּבֵל לְשֵׁם יְהוָה.

1 And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

אֲךָ כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל
רָגְזוּ עָלָיו וְהִשְׁלִיכוּ אֲבָנִים לְעִבְרוֹ. אֶל רֹאשׁ
הַחוֹמָה, וְרַבִּים אֲף יָרוּ אֵלָיו חֲצִים בְּעִמְדוֹ עַל
הַחוֹמָה. אֲךָ רוּחַ יְהוָה הָיָה עִמּוֹ וְהֵם לֹא יָכְלוּ
לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ בְּאֲבָנֵיהֶם וּבְחֲצֵיהֶם.

2 But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

וְהָיָה כֹּאֲשֶׁר רָאוּ כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ,
הָאֱמִינוּ רַבִּים נֹסְפִים בְּדִבְרָיו וְהִלְכוּ אֶל נָפִי
לְשֵׁם טְבִילָה.

3 Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

כִּי הִנֵּה הָיָה נָפִי מְטַבֵּיל וּמְנַבֵּא וּמְשִׁיר, קוֹרֵא
אֶת הָעָם לְתַשׁוּבָה וּמְרַאֶה אוֹתוֹת וּנְפִלְאוֹת,
וְעוֹשֶׂה נִסִּים בְּקִרְבָּם הָעָם, בְּעִבּוֹר יָדְעוּ כִּי אֵין
קָרֵב בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

4 For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

וְהוּא סֹפֵר לָהֶם עַל דְּבָרֵים הַקְּרוֹבִים לְבוֹא
בְּעִבּוֹר יָדְעוּ וַיִּזְכְּרוּ בַּעֲת בּוֹאָם כִּי הֵם נוֹדְעוּ
לָהֶם מֶרְאֵשׁ, לְמַעַן יֵאֱמִינוּ. לָכֵן הִלְכוּ כָּל
הַמְּאֱמִינִים בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל אֶל נָפִי לְשֵׁם
טְבִילָה, כִּי הֵם בָּאוּ כְּשֹׁבִים עַל רָעָתָם
וּמִתְנוּדִים עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.

5 Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

אֲךָ רַב הָאֲנָשִׁים לֹא הָאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל.
וְהָיָה בְּרֹאוֹתָם כִּי לֹא יוֹכְלוּ לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ בְּאֲבָנֵיהֶם
וּבְחֲצֵיהֶם, הֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל שָׂרֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: קְחוּ
אֶת הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה וּכְפֹתוּהוּ, כִּי שֵׁד אֲחֻזּוֹ; וּמִפְּנֵי
כַח הַשֵּׁטָן אֲשֶׁר בְּקִרְבּוֹ אֵינָנו יְכוּלִים לִפְגֹּעַ בּוֹ
בְּאֲבָנֵינוּ וּבְחֲצֵינוּ; לָכֵן קְחוּהוּ וּכְפֹתוּהוּ
וְהוֹצִיאוּהוּ מִפֹּה!

6 But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

- 7 And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.
- וְהָיָה בְּבֹאֵם לְשַׁלַּח בּוֹ יָד, וְהִנֵּה הוּא הִשְׁלִיךְ עַצְמוֹ מִן הַחוֹמָה וְנָס מֵאַרְצָם אֶל אֶרְצוֹ וְהָחֵל לְהִטִּיף וּלְנַבֵּא בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ.
- 8 And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.
- וְלֹא יִסָּף אִישׁ מִן הַנְּפִיטִים לְרֹאוֹתוֹ. כֹּה הָיָה מִצַּב הָעָם.
- 9 And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- וְכֹה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשֵׁשׁ לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים בְּעַם נְפִי.
- 10 And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.
- וְאַף כֹּה כָּלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשֶׁבַע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר רַב הָעָם מִחֲזִיק בְּגִאֲוָתוֹ וּבְרָשָׁעָתוֹ, וְהַמְעַשִּׂים מַתְהַלְכִים בְּרַב הַשְּׁגָחָה לִפְנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים.
- 11 And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.
- וְכֹזֶה הָיָה מִצָּבָם אַף בְּשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים.
- 12 And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.
- וּבְשְׁנַת שְׁמוֹנִים וְתֵשַׁע לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים לֹא חָל כְּמַעַט כָּל שְׁנוֹי בְּמִצַּב הָעָם זֹלַת הַכְּבֹדָה עֲוֹנָם, כִּי פָעְלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בִּיתָר שְׂאֵת אֵת אֲשֶׁר הוּא הִפָּךְ לְמִצְוֹת אֱלֹהִים.
- 13 But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.
- וּבְשְׁנַת תִּשְׁעִים לְשִׁלְטוֹן הַשּׁוֹפְטִים, נָתַנוּ לָעָם אוֹתוֹת גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאוֹת, וְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 14 And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.
- וּמְלָאכִים הופיעו לְפָנֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לְפָנֵי אֲנָשִׁים חֲכָמִים, וְהוֹדִיעוּם בְּשׂוֹרֶת שִׂשׁוֹן וְרַב שִׂמְחָה. אָכֵן, בְּשָׁנָה הַזֹּאת הֵחֵלוּ דִּבְרֵי כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 15 Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:
- עַל אֵף זֹאת הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֵת לִבָּם, זֹלַת הַדְּבָקִים בִּיתָר בְּאַמוּנָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָהֶם נִפְיִים וְגַם לְמָנִים. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הֵחֵלוּ לְסַמֵּךְ עַל כֹּחַם וְעַל חֲכָמָתָם, לֵאמֹר:
- 16 Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.
- אֲשֶׁר לְדִבְרֵים אַחָדִים מִבֵּין דְּבָרִים כֹּה רַבִּים, אֶפְשָׁר כִּי הֵם נָחְשׁוּ נְכוֹנָה; אֲךָ יוֹדְעִים אֲנִחנוּ כִּי כָּל הַמַּעֲשִׂים הַגְּדוֹלִים וְהַנִּפְלְאִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עֲלֵיהֶם לֹא יִתְקַנּוּ וְלֹא יִהְיוּ.
- 17 And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:
- וְהֵם הֵחֵלוּ לְהִתְוַכַּח וּלְרִיב בֵּינֵיהֶם, לֵאמֹר:

- 18 That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?
- אין זה מתקבל על הדעת כי אחד כמשיח יבוא; ואם כן הדבר והוא בן אלהים, אבי שמים וארץ כפי אשר נאמרה, מדוע לא יתגלה אלינו כאליהם אשר יהיו בירושלם?
- 19 Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?
- מדוע לא יתגלה בארץ הזאת, כבארץ ירושלם.
- 20 But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.
- הנה יודעים אנחנו כי מסרת רשע מסרו לנו אבותינו, לעשותנו מאמינים בדבר גדול ומפלא, אשר יקרה, אולם לא בקרבנו, כי אם בארץ רחוקה, ארץ אשר לא נודעה; לכן יש בידם להחזיקנו שקועים בבלי דעת, כי איננו יכולים לחזות במו עינינו כי אמת דברים.
- 21 And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.
- ועל ידי דרכי הערמה והסתרים אשר למרשע ההוא, יפעלו הם איזו פעלת מסתורין אשר לא נוכל להבין ואשר תתננו עבדים לדבריהם ואף להם עצמם. כי סומכים אנחנו בהם בלמוד דבר אלהים. לכן, אם נפגע להם יחזיקונו במצב בערות כל ימי חיינו.
- 22 And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.
- ועוד דברים רבים, אשר היו אולת והבל, עלו בלב העם. והם נרגשו ונבהלו, כי עוררם השטן לפעל תמיד און; כי הוא היה משוטט ומפיץ שמועות ומדון על כל פני הארץ, למען יקשה את לב בני האדם על הטוב ועל אשר עתיד לבוא.
- 23 And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.
- ועל אף האותות והנפלאות אשר נעשו בקרב עם יהוה, והנסים הרבים אשר עשו, השיג השטן אחיזה חזקה בלב האנשים אשר על כל פני הארץ.
- 24 And thus ended the ninetyeth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.
- כה כלתה שנת תשעים לשלטון השופטים בעם נפי.
- 25 And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.
- וכה תם ספר הילמן, על פי כתבי הילמן ובניו.

סֵפֶר נְפִי ג

סֵפֶר נְפִי בֶן נְפִי בֶן הֵלְמָן, הוּא הֵלְמָן בֶּן הֵלְמָן
בֶּן עֲלָמָא בֶּן עֲלָמָא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה צֶאֱצָא נְפִי בֶן לְחִי
אֲשֶׁר יָצָא מִירוּשָׁלַם בְּשָׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְמֶלֶךְ
צִדְקִיָּהוּ, מֶלֶךְ יְהוּדָה. (בְּעֶרְךָ 1–35 לְסִפְרָה.)

א

וּשְׁנַת תְּשָׁעִים וָאֶחָת חָלְפָה, וְהָיוּ שָׁשׁ מֵאוֹת
שָׁנָה מֵעַתַּת יְצִיאַת לְחִי מִירוּשָׁלַם. וּבְשָׁנָה הַהִיא
הָיָה לַכּוֹנָאוֹס הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָעֲלִיוֹן וּמוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.

וְנְפִי בֶן הֵלְמָן יָצָא מֵאֶרֶץ זְרַחְמֶלָה אַחֵר
הַפְּקִידוֹ בְּיַד נְפִי, בְּכוֹרוֹ, אֶת לוֹחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת
הַקָּלָל וְאֶת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן וְאֶת כָּל הַחֲפָצִים
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁמְרוּ בְּהִיּוֹתָם קְדוּשִׁים מֵעַתַּת יְצִיאַת
לְחִי מִירוּשָׁלַם.

וְהוּא יָצָא מִן הָאָרֶץ וְאִישׁ אֵינּוּ יוֹדֵעַ לָאֵן
הָלַךְ. וּבְנֵי נְפִי רָשָׁם אֶת הַזִּכְרוֹנוֹת תַּחַת
אֲבִיו, אֵלָּה כְּתָבֵי זְכָרוֹנוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה.

וְהָיָה בְּרֵאשִׁית שְׁנַת תְּשָׁעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם,
וְהִנֵּה הַחֲלוֹ נְבוֹאוֹת הַנְּבִיאִים לְהִתְקַיֵּם
בְּיָתֵר דִּיּוֹק; כִּי נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם אוֹתוֹת
וּנִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלִים יוֹתֵר.

אֲךָ הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ כִּי עַתָּה קִיּוֹם דְּבָרֵי
שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי כָּבֵד חָלְפָה.

וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְשׁוֹחַק עַל אַחֵיהֶם, וְאָמְרוּ:
הִנֵּה חָלַף הַמּוֹעֵד וְדְבָרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל לֹא הִתְקַיְּמוּ;
עַל כֵּן לִשְׂוֹא הָיָה שְׂשׂוֹנְכֶם וְלָרִיק אֲמוֹנַתְכֶם
בְּדִבְרֵי הַזֶּה.

וְהֵם הִקִּימוּ מְהוּמָה גְּדוֹלָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ;
וְהָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הָאֲמִינוּ נִעְצְבוּ מְאֹד פֶּן לֹא
יִתְקַיְּמוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֲמִוּרִים הָאֵלֶּם.

עַל אֵף זֹאת, הֵם הָיוּ דֹבְקִים בְּצַפִּיתָם לַיּוֹם
הַהוּא וְלַלַּיְלָה הַהוּא וְלַיּוֹם הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה
כִּיּוֹם אֶחָד, כֹּאֲלוֹ בְּלֹא לַיְלָה, לְמַעַן יָדְעוּ כִּי
לֹא לִשְׂוֹא הָיְתָה אֲמוֹנַתָם.

THE BOOK OF 3 NEPHI

The book of Nephi the son of Nephi, who was the son of Helaman. And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out from Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah. (About A.D. 1–35.)

1

1 Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

2 And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

3 Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

4 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

5 But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

6 And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

7 And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

8 But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

- 9 Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.
- 10 Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.
- 11 And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.
- 12 And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord, all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:
- 13 Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.
- 14 Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfill all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.
- 15 And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.
- 16 And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.
- 17 And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.
- 18 For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.
- אִז קָבְעוּ הַכּוֹפְרִים יוֹם, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יוֹצִיאוּ לְהוֹרֵג אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר הֵאֱמִינוּ בַּמִּסְכֶּרֶת הַהִיא, אִם לֹא יָקוּם הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר שְׁמוּאֵל הַנָּבִיא.
- וּבִרְאוֹת נְפִי בֶן נְפִי אֶת הָרָשָׁעָה הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר בַּעֲמֹ, הוּא נֶעְצֵב מְאֹד אֶל לְבוֹ.
- וְהוּא יָצָא וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה אֶרְצָה וְקָרָא בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל אֶל אֱלֹהָיו לְמַעַן עַמּוֹ, לְמַעַן אֱלֹהָ אֲשֶׁר סָכְנָת הַשְׁמָדָה נִשְׁקָפָה לָהֶם מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בַּמִּסְכֶּרֶת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- כָּל הַיּוֹם קָרָא הוּא אֶל יְהוָה בְּרִב כָּחוֹ. וְהִנֵּה, קוֹל יְהוָה דִּבֶּר אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר:
- שָׂא רֹאשְׁךָ וְהִתְעוֹדֵד; כִּי הִנֵּה קִרְבָּה הָעֵת. וּבִלְיִלָה הַזֶּה יִנָּתֵן הָאוֹת וּלְמַחֲרָת הַנָּנִי בָּא אֶל הָעוֹלָם, לְהַרְאוֹת לְעוֹלָם כִּי אֲקִים אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתִּי בְּפִי נְבִיאֵי הַקְּדוֹשִׁים.
- הַנָּנִי בָּא אֶל אֲשֶׁר לִי, לְהַקִּים אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הוֹדַעְתִּים לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם מִיְסוּד הָעוֹלָם, וּלְעֲשׂוֹת אֶת רְצוֹן הָאָב וְהָבֶן; אֶת רְצוֹן הָאָב בַּעֲבוּרִי, וְאֶת רְצוֹן הָבֶן בַּעֲבוּר בְּשָׁרִי. הִנֵּה, בָּא הַמּוֹעֵד וְהִלְיָלָה הַזֶּה יִנָּתֵן הָאוֹת.
- וְהַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר הָיָה אֶל נְפִי קָם כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר. כִּי שָׁקַע הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ וְהַחֹשֶׁכָה לֹא יָרְדָה; וְהָאָנָשִׁים הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה חֹשֶׁךְ בָּבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה.
- וְהָיוּ רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר לֹא הֵאֱמִינוּ לְדְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה וְהָיוּ כְּמֵתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדְעוּ כִּי הוֹפְרָה מְזִמַּת הַהִשְׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר הִכִּינוּ לַמֶּאֱמִינִים בְּדְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִזְכַּר אָכֵן קָם וְהָיָה.
- אִז הֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים קָרַב לְבוֹא; אָכֵן, כָּל הָאָנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאֲדָמָה, מִמַּעַרְב וּמִמְזָרָח, בָּאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן וּבָאֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, הַשְׁתוֹמָמוּ כָּל כָּךְ עַד כִּי נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה.
- וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי יָדְעָם כִּי הֵעִידוּ הַנְּבִיאִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּמִשְׁךְ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת וְכִי הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִזְכַּר קָם וְהָיָה; וְהֵם יָרְאוּ עַל דְּבַר עֲוֹנָם וְעַל כְּפִירָתָם.

- וְהָיָה כִּי כָל הַלַּיְלָה הָהוּא לֹא הָחֹשֶׁה, וְהָאֹר
הָיָה כְּבֹצֵהָרִים; וּבִבְקֹר זֶרַח הַשָּׁמֶשׁ, כְּסֻדְרוֹ.
אִזְ יָדְעוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים, עַל פִּי הָאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן, כִּי
בֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יֵלֵד הָאֲדוֹן.
- 19 And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.
- וְהָיָה הַכֹּל כִּסְּמֵי הַנְּבִיאִים; אָכֵן,
לֹא נִפְל מֵהֶם דְּבָר.
- 20 And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.
- וְאִי כּוֹכַב חָדָשׁ הוֹפִיעַ, כְּדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר.
- 21 And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.
- וּמִן הַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִלָּאָה הַחַל הַשָּׁטָן לְשַׁלֵּחַ
כָּזָב בֵּין הָאֲנָשִׁים, לְהַקְשֹׁת אֶת לִבָּם לִבֵּל
יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּאוֹתוֹת וּבְנִפְלְאוֹת הָהֶם אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ.
וְאוֹלָם, עַל אִי הַכָּזָב וְהַמְרָמָה הָאֵלֶּה, הָאֲמִינוּ
רַב הָעָם וְהִפְכוּ לְמֵאֲמִינִים בִּיהוָה.
- 22 And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.
- וְנִפִּי הָלַךְ בְּקִרְבָּהּ הָעָם, וְעוֹד רַבִּים נוֹסְפִים,
לְהַטְבִּילָם לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, אֲשֶׁר בִּזְמַן הָיְתָה
מְחִילַת עֲוֹנוֹת גְּדוּלָּה. וְכֵן שָׁב הָעָם לְשָׁבֶת
בְּאַרְצָם בְּשָׁלוֹם.
- 23 And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.
- וְלֹא הָיוּ עוֹד מְרִיבוֹת בָּעָם, זֹלַת אֲחָדִים
אֲשֶׁר הִחֲלוּ לְהִטִּיף בְּהִתְאַמְּצֵם לְהוֹכִיחַ עַל
פִּי כְתָבֵי הַקֶּדֶשׁ כִּי אֵין עוֹד הִכְרַח לְשֹׁמֵר אֶת
תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה. וּבִזְמַן הַזֶּה טָעוּ, כִּי לֹא הִבִּינוּ
אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקֶּדֶשׁ.
- 24 And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.
- וְהָיָה, עַד מְהֵרָה הֵם הִפְכוּ אֶת דַּעְתָּם כִּי
נוֹכְחוּ בְּטַעְוָתָם, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נֹדַע לָהֶם כִּי
הַתּוֹרָה לֹא הִתְקַיְּמָה עֲדֵינָם, וְכִי הִכְרַח הוּא כִּי
תִתְקַיֵּם עַל כָּל פְּרִשְׁתָּהּ; וְהָיָה אֲלֵיהֶם דְּבַר
אֱלֹהִים כִּי קוֹם תִּקְוֶה הַתּוֹרָה, וְלֹא תִעָבֵר
מִמֶּנָּה יוֹד אַחַת, אוֹ תֵּג, עַד אֲשֶׁר תִּתְקַיֵּם
כָּלָה; עַל כֵּן הֵם הוֹבֵאוּ בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא לְהִפָּרֵת
טַעְוָתָם וְהִתְוֹדוּ עַל מִשְׁוֹגָתָם.
- 25 But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת תְּשׁוּעִים וּשְׁתִּים, אַחֵר
הִבִּיֵּאָה בְּשׂוֹרוֹת מִשְׁמַחוֹת אֶל הָעָם, עַל יְדֵי
בּוֹא הָאוֹתוֹת, אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי נְבוֹאוֹת כָּל
הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים.
- 26 And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.
- אִי שְׁנַת תְּשׁוּעִים וְשָׁלֹשׁ חָלְפָה בְּשָׁלוֹם, חוּץ
מִפְּעֻלַּת שׂוֹדֵדֵי גְדִיאֲנִטוֹן, אֲשֶׁר הִתְגַּוְּרוּ
בְּהָרִים וּשְׂרָצוּ בְּאַרְצָם; וְכֵן חֲזָקִים הָיוּ
מֵאֲחֻזֵּיהֶם וּמִחִבּוֹאֵיהֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא יָכְלוּ
- 27 And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore

נְפִי ג א:כח-ב:ה

הָאֲנָשִׁים לְגִבּוֹר עֲלֵיהֶם; לָכֵן הֵם בָּצְעוּ מַעֲשֵׂי
רָצַח רַבִּים וְהָרְבוּ לְטֹבַח בָּעָם.

they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among
the people.

וּבְשָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וָאַרְבַּע הִתְרַבּוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים עַד
מְאֹד, כִּי רַב מִסֵּפֶר הַפּוֹרְשִׁים מִן הַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר
בָּרְחוּ אֲלֵיהֶם. וְהִדְבֵּר צָעַר מְאֹד אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים
אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַרוּ בָּאָרֶץ.

28 And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to
increase in great degree, because there were many dissenters of the
Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto
those Nephites who did remain in the land.

גַּם לְלִמְנִים נִגְרַם צָעַר רַב, כִּי הָיוּ לָהֶם בָּנִים
רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר גָּדְלוּ וּבָגְרוּ וְעָמְדוּ בְּרִשּׁוֹת עֲצָמָם,
אֲשֶׁר זֹרָמִים הָיוּ אֶת לִבָּם בְּכַזְבֵּיהֶם וּבְדַבְרֵי
חֲלָקוֹת לְהַסְתִּיף אֶל שׁוֹדְדֵי גַדִּיאַנְטוֹן.

29 And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for
behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax
strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by
some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to
join those Gadianton robbers.

כָּךְ פָּגְעָה הָרָעָה אֶף בְּלִמְנִים, וְהֵם הִחְלוּ
לִשְׁקֹעַ בְּדַבַּר אֲמוּנָתָם וּצְדִיקָתָם, מִפְּנֵי רִשְׁעַת
הַדּוֹר הַצָּעִיר.

30 And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to
their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising
generation.

ב

2

כֹּה חָלְפָה גַּם שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וְחָמֵשׁ. וְהָאֲנָשִׁים
הִחְלוּ לִשְׁכַּח אֶת הָאוֹתוֹת וְאֶת הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הָהֵם,
אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ; וְהִשְׁתּוֹמְמוּתָם עַל אוֹת אוֹ פֶּלֶא
מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם הִלָּה וּפָחַתָּה עַד אֲשֶׁר הִתְקַשָּׁה
לִבָּם וְדַעְתָּם הִתְעוּרָה וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ עוֹד
בְּכֹל אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וָרָאוּ.

1 And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also,
and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had
heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder
from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and
blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard
and seen—

כִּי הֵם הֵעִלוּ בְּלִבָּם דְּמִיוֹן שׁוֹא, כִּי הִדְבְּרִים
הָהֵם נַעֲשׂוּ בְיַד אָדָם וּבְכַח הַשָּׁטָן, לְהַטּוֹתָם
מִן הַדֶּרֶךְ וּלְרִמּוֹת אֶת לֵב הָעָם. כֹּה שָׁב הַשָּׁטָן
וְקָנָה שְׂבִיתָה בְּלֵב הָעָם, עַד כִּי עוֹר אֶת
עֵינֵיהֶם וְהֵסֵם לְהֶאֱמִין כִּי עָקַר הָאֲמוּנָה בְּדַבַּר
הַמְּשִׁיחַ הוּא אֲנִלָּה וּדְבַר שׁוֹא.

2 Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by
men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts
of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the
people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away
to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

וְרִשְׁעַת הָעָם וְתוֹעֲבוּתֵיהֶם הִלְכוּ וָרַבוּ,
וְהֵם לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ כִּי יָקוּמוּ אוֹתוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת
נוֹסָפִים. וְהַשָּׁטָן הִתְהַלֵּךְ לוֹ, וְהוּא הִטָּה אֶת
לֵב הָאֲנָשִׁים וּפָתָה אוֹתָם וְהִסְבֵּם לְהַגְדִּיל
רִשְׁעָתָם בָּאָרֶץ.

3 And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness
and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any
more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the
hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should
do great wickedness in the land.

כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וָשֵׁשׁ וְכֵן שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים
וָשִׁבְעִי; וְאַף שָׁנַת תְּשַׁעִּים וָשְׁמוֹנֶה וְשָׁנַת
תְּשַׁעִּים וָתֵשַׁע.

4 And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety
and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the
ninety and ninth year;

וְכֹה חָלְפוּ מֵאָה שָׁנָה מִיְמֵי מוֹשִׁיָּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה
מֶלֶךְ עַל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים.

5 And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah,
who was king over the people of the Nephites.

- 6 And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.
- וְשֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנִים חָלְפוּ מֵעַתַּת יֵצֵא לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 7 And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.
- וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנִים חָלְפוּ מֵעַתַּת נָתַן הָאוֹת, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיו דִּבְרוּ הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ יָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם.
- 8 Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים הֵחִלּוּ לְחַשֵּׁב אֶת עֵתוֹתֵיהֶם מֵעַתַּת הַנָּתֵן הָאוֹת, אַכֵּן מֵעַתַּת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ; כִּן חָלְפוּ תֵשַׁע שָׁנִים לְמִנְיָנָם.
- 9 And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.
- וְנִפְי אָבִי נִפְי, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה מְפָקֵד עַל כְּתָבֵי הַזְכָּרוֹן, לֹא שָׁב אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, וְלֹא יָכַל אִישׁ לְמַצְאוֹ בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 10 And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הָעָם לֹא חָדַל מִהֲרַע עַל אֵף הַהֲטָפוֹת וְהַנְּבוּאוֹת הַרְבוֹת אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁלַחוּ אֲלֵיהֶם; כֹּה חָלְפָה הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית, וְאֵף שָׁנַת אַחַת עֲשָׂרָה חָלְפָה בְּעוֹן וּבַעֲוֹל.
- 11 And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה פָּרְצוּ מִלְחָמוֹת וּמְרִיבוֹת בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, כִּי הִתְרַבּוּ מְאֹד שׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן; וְהֵם הָרְגוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים וְהַחְרִיבוּ עָרִים רַבּוֹת וְזָרְעוּ מָוֶת וְטִבַּח בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי הִכְרַח הָיָה כִּי כָל הָעָם, הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְּמָנִים כָּאֶחָד, יִשְׂאוּ עֲלֵיהֶם נֶשֶׁק.
- 12 Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.
- לָכֵן הִתְאָחְדוּ כָּל הַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ מֵאֻמֵּי יְהוָה עִם אֲחֵיהֶם הַנְּפִיִּים. וְהֵם נִאָּלְצוּ לְשֹׂאת נֶשֶׁק עַל שׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן הָהֵם לְמַעַן בְּטָחוֹן חַיֵּיהֶם וְחַיֵּי נְשֵׂיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם, וְאֵף בְּעִבּוֹר שְׂמִירַת זְכוּיֹתֵיהֶם וְזִכּוּיֹת כְּנִסְיָתָם, וְעִבּוּדֹת קֹדֶשׁ וְעִנְיֹן חֲרוּתָם.
- 13 And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.
- וּבְטָרָם תִּמְחָה הַשָּׁנָה הַזֹּאת, שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה, נִשְׁקָפָה לְנִפְיִים סַכְּנַת כְּלִיּוֹן חָרוֹץ מִפְּנֵי הַמִּלְחָמָה הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִתְמַיְרָה עַד מְאֹד.
- 14 And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;
- וְהַלְּמָנִים אֲשֶׁר הִתְאָחְדוּ עִם הַנְּפִיִּים נִמְנוּ עִמָּם.
- 15 And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;
- וְהַקְלָלָה אֲשֶׁר רִבְצָה עֲלֵיהֶם הוּסְרָה וְעוֹרָם הִלְבִּין, כְּעוֹר הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 16 And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.
- אָכֵן, נַעֲרֵיהֶם וּנְעוּרוֹתֵיהֶם נָהִיו יָפִי תֹאֵר מְאֹד, וְהֵם נִמְנוּ עִם הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם נְפִיִּים. כֹּה כָלְתָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ עֲשָׂרָה.

17 וְהָיָה כִּי בִּרְאשִׁית שָׁנַת אַרְבַּע עָשָׂר נִמְשְׁכָה מִלְחָמַת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים וְעַם נְפִי וְהַחֲמִירָה מְאֹד. עַל אֵף זֹאת, הִשִּׁיג עִם נְפִי יִתְרוֹן כָּל־שָׁהוּ עַל הַשּׁוֹדְדִים, בְּהִדָּפָם אוֹתָם אֶל מַחוּץ לְאַרְצָם, אֶל הַהָרִים וְאֶל מַחְבְּאוֹתֵיהֶם.

18 And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

18 And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

19 And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

כֹּה תָמָה שָׁנַת חֲמֵשׁ עָשָׂרָה, וְכֹה הָיוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים שְׂרִוּיִים בְּתִלְאָה רַבָּה; אַכְּוָה, חָרַב הַכְּלִיֹּן הַיָּתָה תְּלִיָּה מֵעֲלֵיהֶם, קְרוּבָה לְהַכּוֹתָם אֶרְצָה עַל דְּבַר עֲוֹנָם.

ג

3

1 And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

2 Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

אֵל לְכוֹנָאוּס הָאֲצִיל, מוֹשֵׁל הָאֶרֶץ הָרָאשִׁי. הִנְנִי כוֹתֵב אֶת הָאֲנָגְרָה הַזֹּאת אֵלֶיךָ, וְאֲנִי מְהַלְלֶךָ וּמְשַׁבַּחֶךָ עַל אֵיתְנוּתְךָ וְעַל אֵיתְנוּת עַמְּךָ בְּשִׁמְרַת הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר סְבוּרִים אַתֶּם כִּי הוּא זְכוּתְכֶם וְחֲרוּתְכֶם. הִנֵּכֶם נִצְבִּים אֵיתְנִים, כְּאִלוּ יָד אֵל תּוֹמְכֶם בְּכֶם, לְהַגִּנָּת חֲרוּתְכֶם וְרְכוּשְׁכֶם וְאַרְצְכֶם, אוֹ אֶת אֲשֶׁר מְכֻנִּים אַתֶּם אֶרְצְכֶם.

3 And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

צַר לִי, לְכוֹנָאוּס הָאֲצִיל, כִּי תִדְמוּ לָכֶם בְּרַב אוֹלְתְּכֶם וְהַבְּלִיכֶם כִּי תוּכְלוּ לַעֲמֹד בַּפָּנִי גְבוּרִים כֹּה רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר תַּחַת פְּקֻדָּתִי, הַנִּצְבִּים עִתָּה חֲמוּשִׁים בְּכָלִי נִשְׁקָם, וּמַצְפִּים בְּרַב תְּשׁוּקָה לְדַבֵּר הַפְּקָדָה: רְדוּ עַל הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַשְׁמִידוּם!

4 And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

וּבִידְעִי אֶת רוּחָם, אֲשֶׁר אֵין לְכַבְּשָׁה, כִּי נִסִּיתִים בְּשִׂדָּה הַקָּרִב, וּבִידְעִי אֶת שְׂנְאָתָם הַנִּצְחִית אֵלֵיכֶם, מִפְּנֵי הָעוֹלוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם לָהֶם, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי אִם יֵצְאוּ עֲלֵיכֶם לְקָרֵב, פְּקוּד יִפְקְדוּכֶם בְּכָלִיֹּן מְחֻלָּט.

- לכן כתבתי את האגרת הזאת וחתמתיה במו ידי, בעודי שוחר את טובתכם בעבור איתנותכם למען הדבר אשר מאמינים אתם כי הוא הצדק, ובעבור אצילות רוחכם בשדה הקרב.
- 5 Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.
- על כן אני כותב אליה ומבקש כי תמסרו לאנשי אלה את עריכם ואדמותיכם וקנייניכם, פן יפקדוכם בחרב ויבוא עליכם הפליון.
- 6 Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.
- ובלשון אחר: הפנעו לנו והתאחדו עמנו, והתודעו אל מעשינו הנסתרים; הוי לנו לאחים והייתם כמותנו, לא עבדינו תהיו, כי אם אחינו ושתפינו בכל אשר לנו.
- 7 Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.
- הנני נשבע לכם באלה, כי אם כה תעשו לא תשמדו. אך אם לא תעשו כן, הנני נשבע לכם באלה, כי בחודש הקרב אצוה על חילותי כי ירדו עליכם למלחמה. והם לא יניחו ידם ולא יחשכו מכתם, כי הרוג יהרגוכם, וחרבם תקצר בכם עד הכחדתכם.
- 8 And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.
- הנני גדיאנחי; ואנכי מושל החברה החשאית הזאת, היא חברת גדיאנטון; ידעתי כי החברה ומעשיה טובים ועתיקי ימים, ודבר פעלותיה נמסר מני אז, עד אשר נתן לנו.
- 9 And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianon; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.
- כתבתי את האגרת הזאת אליה, לכוֹנאוס, בקוֹוֹתִי כי תמסרו את אדמותיכם ואת קנייניכם בלי שפך דם, בעבור ישיבו להם אנשי את זכויותיהם ואת שלטונם; כי פרשו הם מכאן ועו אשר הרעתם לעשות במנעכם מהם את זכויותיהם לשלטון; ואם לא כן תעשו, גמול אגמל על העולות אשר נעשו להם. אני גדיאנחי.
- 10 And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.
- והיה כאשר קבל לכוֹנאוס את האגרת הזאת הוא השתומם מאד, מפני עזות גדיאנחי לדרש כי יקבל לידי את נחלת ארץ הנפיים, ולהשיל אימה על העם ולגמל על הרעות אשר נעשו, לאלה אשר כל רע לא נעשה להם, כי אם הם אשר הרעו לעצמם בפרישתם אל השודדים הרשעים והנחשבים ההם.
- 11 And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.
- והמושל לכוֹנאוס היה איש צדיק, אשר לא נבהל מדרישות ואימים מפי שודד. על כן
- 12 Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber;

- הוא לא שמע לדברי אנרת גדיאנכי, מושל השודדים, כי אם צוה על עמו לקרא אל יהוה, לבקש ממנו כח לעת רדת השודדים עליהם.
- 13 Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.
- 14 And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.
- 15 Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in no wise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.
- 16 And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.
- 17 And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.
- 18 Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.
- 19 Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) someone that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.
- 20 Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.
- 21 But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will
- והוא העביר קול בכל העם לאסוף את נשיהם וטפם, ואת צאנם ובקרם וכל קנינם, וזאת אדמתם, אל מקום אחד.
- והוא צוה לבנות מבצרים מסביבם ולחזקם עד מאד. והוא צוה כי יצבו צבאות פשוטות מסביב, צבאות נפיים וצבאות למנים, אכן, כל אשר באו במספר הנפיים יצבו לצפותם ולשמרם יומם ולילה מפני השודדים.
- וכה הוא אמר אליהם: חי יהוה, אם לא תשובו מכל עוונותיכם ולא תקראו אל יהוה, הנצל לא תנצלו מידי שודדי גדיאנטון ההם.
- כה גדולים ומפלאים היו דברי לכונאוס ונבואותיו אליהם, עד כי הפילו אימה על כל העם, והם התאמצו בכל מאדם לעשות כדבריו.
- אז מנה לכונאוס שרי צבא על כל חילות הנפיים, להיות מפקדיהם בעת אשר יפלשו השודדים מן היערות אליהם.
- ושם ראש כל שרי הצבא אשר מנה, נקרא גידגדוני, הוא המפקד העליון אשר לכל חילות הנפיים.
- ומנהג כל הנפיים היה, זולת בעת שקיעתם ברשעה, למנות למפקד עליון איש אשר רוח החזיון והנבואה שורה עליו. ואכן היה גידגדוני נביא גדול בקרבם וכן שופטם העליון.
- והעם אמרו אל גידגדוני: התפלל נא אל יהוה ונעלה אל ההרים ואל היערות, ונפל על השודדים ונשמדם בשטחם.
- וגידגדוני אמר להם: ישמרנו יהוה מעשות זאת; כי אם נעלה עליהם, ימסרנו יהוה לידיהם; על כן נערך במרכז ארצנו, ונקבץ את כל חילותינו ולא נצא אליהם, כי נמתין

עַד אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ הֵם עָלֵינוּ. חֵי יְהוָה כִּי אִם כֹּה
נַעֲשֶׂה, נִתּוֹן יִתְּנֵם בְּיָדֵנוּ.

wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we
do this he will deliver them into our hands.

וְהָיָה בַשָּׁנָה שִׁבְעָה עָשָׂרָה, בְּטָרֵם תִּכְלֶה
הַשָּׁנָה, יֵצְאָה הַכְּרוֹת לְכוֹנָאוֹס וּפִשְׁטָה עַל
כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְהִכְלָל לָקְחוּ אֶת סוּסֵיהֶם
וּמִרְכָּבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶת בָּקָרָם וְכָל צֹאנָם
וְעִדְרֵיהֶם, אֶת תְּבוּאָתָם וְאֶת כָּל רְכוּשָׁם
וְהִלְכוּ בְּאַלְפֵיהֶם וּבִרְבּוּבוֹתֵיהֶם, עַד אֲשֶׁר
הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר נִקְבַּע לְהִתְקַבְּצוֹתָם,
לְהִגָּן עֲלֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

22 And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the
year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the
face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots,
and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain,
and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens
of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had
been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend
themselves against their enemies.

וְהָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נִקְבְּעָה לְהִתְקַבְּצוֹתָם הָיְתָה
אֶרֶץ יִזְרְעֵה־מֶלֶה וְכֹן הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר בֵּינָהּ וּבֵין
אֶרֶץ רַב־שָׁפַע, עַד הַקוֹ אֲשֶׁר עָבַר בֵּין אֶרֶץ
רַב־שָׁפַע וּבֵין אֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה.

23 And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the
land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful,
yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land
Desolation.

וְהָיוּ שָׁם אֲלָפֵי אָדָם רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם
נִפְתִּיטִים וְהִתְקַבְּצוּ בָּאָרֶץ הַהִיא. וְלִכְוֹנָאוֹס צֹוֹם
לְהִתְאַסֵּף בָּאָרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, מִפְּנֵי הַקְּלָלָה
הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר רִבְּצָה
עַל אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.

24 And there were a great many thousand people who were called
Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now
Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in
the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the
land northward.

כֹּה הֵם הִתְבַּצְּרוּ לְקִרְאָת בּוֹא אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; וְהֵם
שָׁכְנוּ בָּאָרֶץ אַחַת וּבְמִחְנֶה אַחַד, וְהֵם יָרְאוּ
מִדְּבָרֵי לְכוֹנָאוֹס אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, עַד כִּי נִחְמוּ עַל
כָּל חַטָּאֵיהֶם. וְהֵם פָּנוּ אֶל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם
בְּתַפְלוֹתֵיהֶם כִּי יַצִּילֵם בְּעֵת רִדְת אוֹיְבֵיהֶם
לְהִלָּחֵם בָּהֶם.

25 And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did
dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which
had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all
their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God,
that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come
down against them to battle.

וְהֵם הִתְעַצְּבוּ מְאֹד מִפְּנֵי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם. וְגִדְגִּדּוֹנִי
צֹוֹם לַעֲשׂוֹת כָּלִי מִלְחָמָה מְכָל סוּג וּלְהִתְחַזֵּק
בְּשִׁרְיוֹן וּבְמִגְנִים וּבְצִנּוֹת, כְּפִי הוֹרְאוֹתָיו.

26 And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And
Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every
kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with
bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

ד

4

וְהָיָה בְּאַחֲרִית שָׁנָה שְׁמוֹנֶה עָשָׂרָה, נִעְרְכוּ
חֵילוֹת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים הָאֵלֶּה לְקָרֵב וְהִחֲלוּ לְהִגִּים
מִן הַגְּבָעוֹת וּלְרִדְת מִן הַהָרִים וּלְצֹאָת מִן
הַיַּעֲרוֹת וּמִמְעֵיָהֶם וּמִמְחֻבּוֹאֵיהֶם. וְהֵם
תָּפְשׂוּ שְׂטָחִים בָּאָרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם וּבָאָרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן,
וְכָבְשׂוּ אֶת כָּל הַשְּׂטָחִים אֲשֶׁר נָטְשׂוּ הַנִּפְתִּיטִים
וְאֶת הָעָרִים אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ שׁוּמּוֹת.

1 And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those
armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down
and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the
wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began
to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and
which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the
lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which
had been left desolate.

- אך בכל השטחים האלה, אשר נטשו הנפיים, לא נמצאו חיות בר או חיות ציד. על כן לא היה ציד לשודדים, כי אם ביערות בלבד.
- והשודדים לא יכלו להתקיים, כי אם ביערות, אשר ספקו את מזונם; כי הנפיים עזבו את אדמותיהם ושומות, ואספו את עדרי צאנם ובקרים וכל אשר להם, והתקבצו במחנה אחד.
- לכן לא יכלו השודדים לבז ולקחת מזון, כי אם בצאתם אל שדה המערכה להלחם בנפיים. והנפיים היו כלם מחנה אחד, במספרם הרב, ובשפע המזון אשר אצרו להם, ובסוסייהם ובבקרים ובכל צאנם למיניהם, למען יוכלו לספק את צרכי מחיתם לשבע שנים כי הם קוו, בתוך העת ההיא, למחות את השודדים מעל פני האדמה. כה חלפה שנת שמונה עשרה.
- ובשנת תשע עשרה ראה גדיאנכי כי הכרח לו לצאת לקרב על הנפיים, כי לא היתה לשודדים כל דרך להתכלכל, כי אם בבזיה ובשד ובבצח.
- והם לא העזו לפזר את אנשיהם על פני הארץ בעבור יגדלו דגן, פן יתנפלו עליהם הנפיים ויהרגום. על כן צוה גדיאנכי על חילותיו כי יעלו בשנה ההיא למלחמה בנפיים.
- והיה כי הם אכן עלו לקרב, וזאת בחודש הששי. והנה, גדול ונורא היה יום בואם למלחמה; אזורים היו הם בדרך השודדים, על מתניהם עור כבש וגופם צבוע בדם וראשיהם גזוזים וחבושים מגנים. אכן, גדול ונורא היה מראה חילות גדיאנכי, מפני שריוניהם ומפני הצטבעם בדם.
- והיה כראות חילות הנפיים את מראה צבא גדיאנכי, הם נפלו ארצה ונשארו את קולם אל יהוה אלהיהם, כי יצילים ויחלצם מידי אויביהם.
- וכראות זאת חילות גדיאנכי, הם צעקו בקול גדול מרב גיל, בסברם כי חילותיהם הטילו בהלה בנפיים וכי הם נפלו אחוזי פחד.
- 2 But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.
- 3 And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.
- 4 Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.
- 5 And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.
- 6 And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land inso-much that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.
- 7 And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.
- 8 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.
- 9 And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

- 10 But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.
- 11 And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.
- 12 And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.
- 13 And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.
- 14 And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.
- 15 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.
- 16 And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.
- 17 Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah; therefore it was Zemnariyah that did cause that this siege should take place.
- 18 But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,
- אֲדָבָה בָּזָאת הֵם נִחְלוּ אֶכְזָבָה, כִּי הִנָּפִיִּים לֹא יִרְאוּ מֵהֶם, כִּי אִם יִרְאוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְהִתְחַנְּנוּ לְפָנָיו כִּי יִגְוּ עֲלֵיהֶם; לָכֵן, בְּהִשָּׁתָעַר חִילוֹת גִּדְיָאנְחִי עֲלֵיהֶם, הֵם הָיוּ נִכּוֹנִים לְהִתְרָאוֹת עִמָּם פָּנִים אֶל פָּנִים; אָכֵן, הֵם קִבְּלוּם לְבוֹשִׁים עִזֵּי יְהוָה.
- וְהִקְרַב הַחֹל בַּחֹדֶשׁ הַשְּׁשִׁי; גָּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא הָיָה הַקְּרַב הַהוּא; אָכֵן, גָּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא הָיָה הַטִּבָּח אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשָׂה שָׁם, וְלֹא נֹדַע מֵעוֹלָם טִבָּח כֹּה גָדוֹל בַּקְּרַב כָּל צֶאֱצָאֵי לְחֵי מִיּוֹם צֵאתוֹ מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- וְעַל אִף הָאֵיּוֹמִים וְהָאֲלֹתֹת אֲשֶׁר יָצְאוּ מִפִּי גִדְיָאנְחִי, הִכּוּ הִנָּפִיִּים אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו, עַד אֲשֶׁר נִסּוּגוּ אַחֲרֵי מִפְּנֵיהֶם.
- אֲזַי צָוָה גִּדְּגִדּוֹנִי אֶת חִילוֹתָיו לְרֹדֹף אַחֲרֵיהֶם עַד גְּבוּל הַיַּעַר וְלֹא לְחוּם עַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יִפֹּל לְיַדֵּיהֶם בַּדֶּרֶךְ. וְכֹה הֵם רָדְפוּ אַחֲרֵיהֶם וְהָרְגוּ בָּהֶם עַד הַגִּיעָם אֶל גְּבוּל הַיַּעַר, וּבָזָאת קִמּוּ אֶת פְּקֻדַּת גִּדְּגִדּוֹנִי.
- וּגִדְיָאנְחִי, אֲשֶׁר עָמַד וְנִלָּחַם בָּעֵז, נִרְדָּף בְּעֵת הַמָּלָטוֹ; וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא יָגַע מְרִב לְחִימָתוֹ הַשִּׁיגוּהוּ רוֹדְפָיו וְהִרְגוּהוּ. כֹּה הָקִיץ הַקֶּץ עַל הַשּׁוֹדֵד גִּדְיָאנְחִי.
- אֲזַי שָׁבוּ חִילֵי הִנָּפִיִּים אֶל מְקוֹם הַמִּבְטָחִים שְׁלָהֶם. וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפָה הַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא, שְׁנַת תִּשְׁעָה עָשָׂרָה, וְהַשּׁוֹדְדִים לֹא יָסְפוּ לִצְאָתָה לְמִלְחָמָה, וְאִף בְּשָׁנַת עָשָׂרִים הֵם לֹא בָּאוּ.
- וּבְשָׁנַת עָשָׂרִים וְאַחַת לֹא עָלוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים לְמִלְחָמָה; אֲדָבָה בָּאוּ מִכָּל עֵבֶר לְשֵׁים מִצּוֹר עַל עַם נְפִי, בְּסִבְרָם כִּי אִם יִנָּתֶקוּ אֶת עַם נְפִי מֵאֲדָמָתָם וְיִסְגְּרוּם מִכָּל עֵבֶר וְיִמְנְעוּ מֵהֶם כָּל יְתָרוֹן מִסִּבִּיבָתָם, הֵם יִכְנִיעוּם כְּחָפְצָם.
- וְהֵם מָנוּ לָהֶם מְנַהִיג אַחֵר, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא זִמְנָרִיָּה, וְהוּא הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה לְצוֹר אֶת הַמִּצּוֹר הַזֶּה.
- וְהִנֵּה, הָיָה זֶה יְתָרוֹן לְנִפְיִים, כִּי לִבְצָר מִן הַשּׁוֹדְדִים לְצוֹר מִצּוֹר לְאַרְבָּעִים יָמִים בְּעֶבְרוֹ תִּצְלַח מִזְמָתָם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֲצָרוּ הִנָּפִיִּים צִידָה רַבָּה.

- 19 And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers—for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;
- וְאֵלּוּ מִזֹּנִן הַשּׁוֹדְדִים הָיָה מִגְבָּל, כִּי רַק בָּשָׂר
בָּא אֶל פִּיהֶם לְהַחֲיֹת אֶת נַפְשָׁם, מִן הַחַיָּיד
אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁגִּיגוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת.
- 20 And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness—insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.
- אֶף חַיֹּת הַחַיָּיד הִתְמַעֲטוּ בַּיַּעְרוֹת, עַד כִּי
כַמַּעַט גָּוְעוּ הַשּׁוֹדְדִים בַּרְעָב.
- 21 And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים צָעְדוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ תָמִיד, בַּיּוֹם וּבַלַּיְלָה,
וְהִתְנַפְּלוּ עַל חֵילוֹת הַשּׁוֹדְדִים וְהַפִּילוּ בָהֶם
אֲלָפִים וּרְבָבוֹת.
- 22 And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.
- כֹּה גָמַל בָּלֵב אֲנָשֵׁי זִמְנָרִיחָה חֲפֹץ לְבַטֵּל אֶת
מִזְמָתָם, אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיֵּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֲרָבָן וְכָלְיוֹן
בַּלַּיְלָה וּבַיּוֹם.
- 23 And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.
- וְהָיָה כִּי זִמְנָרִיחָה אָכַן צִוָּה אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְסָגֵת
מִן הַמִּצּוֹר וּלְלַכֵּת אֶל קְצוֵי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן.
- 24 And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.
- וְגִדְגִּידוֹנִי, אֲשֶׁר יָדַע עַל תְּכַנִּיתָם, וְעַל חֲלָשְׁתָם,
מִפְּנֵי הַמַּחְסוֹר בְּמִזֹּנִן וְהַשְׁבָּח הָרַב אֲשֶׁר
נַעֲשָׂה בָהֶם, שָׁלַח אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו לַיְלָה; וְהוּא
נִתַּק אֶת דֶּרֶךְ מִפְּלֹתָם וְהַצִּיב אֶת חֵילוֹתָיו
בַּדֶּרֶךְ נִסְיָגָתָם.
- 25 And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.
- אָכֵן, בַּלַּיְלָה הֵם עָשׂוּ זֹאת; וְהֵם נָעוּ מֵעֵבֶר
לְשׁוֹדְדִים, בְּאִפְּן אֲשֶׁר לְמַחֲרָת, כְּאֲשֶׁר הֵחֵלוּ
הַשּׁוֹדְדִים בְּמַסָּעָם, פָּגְשָׁם צָבָא הַנְּפִיִּים
מִלְּפָנִים וּמֵאַחֲרֵם.
- 26 And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.
- וְאֵף הַשּׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר בְּדָרוֹם הָיוּ מִנְּתָקִים
מִמְּקוֹמוֹת מִפְּלֹתָם. כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה נַעֲשׂוּ
בְּפִקְדַת גִּדְגִּידוֹנִי.
- 27 And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.
- וְהָיָה כִּי אֲלָפִים רַבִּים נִכְנְעוּ וְהִתְמַסְּרוּ לְשָׁבִי
הַנְּפִיִּים, וְשְׂאִרֵיהֶם הוּמָתוּ.
- 28 And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:
- וּמִנְּהִיגָם, זִמְנָרִיחָה, נִתְּפַשׁ וְנִתְּלָה עַל עֵץ. עַל
צִמְרֵת הָעֵץ תְּלוּהוּ עַד אֲשֶׁר נָפַח אֶת נִשְׁמָתוֹ.
וְאַחֵר תְּלוּתָם אוֹתוֹ עַד כִּי מָת, הֵם כָּרְתוּ אֶת
הָעֵץ וְקָרְאוּ בְּקוֹל גָּדוֹל, לֵאמֹר:
- 29 May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.
- יְהִי רָצוֹן כִּי יִשְׁמַר יְהוָה אֶת עַמּוֹ בְּצִדִּיק
וּבְקִדְשַׁת הַלֵּב בְּעִבּוֹר יִכְרְתוּ, כְּהִכְרַת הָאִישׁ
הַזֶּה, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִבְקֹשׁ לְהָרְגֵם לְמַעַן כֹּחַ
וְשִׁלְטוֹן, וּלְמַעַן אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֶר.

וְהֵם שִׂמְחוּ וַיִּקְרְאוּ שְׁנִית פַּה אֶחָד, לֵאמֹר: יְהִי רָצוֹן כִּי יִגְוּ אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹרָהֶם וְאֱלֹהֵי יִצְחָק וְאֱלֹהֵי יַעֲקֹב עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה בְּצִדִּיק, כָּל עוֹד יִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם אֱלֹהֵיהֶם לְמַעַן הִגָּנוּם.

וְהֵם פָּרְצוּ בְּרִנָּה, כָּלֶם כְּאֶחָד, וַשִּׁבְחוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵיהֶם עַל הַדָּבָר הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לְמַעַנָם, בְּשִׁמְרוֹ אוֹתָם מִנָּפֶל בְּיַד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.

וְכֵן הֵם קָרְאוּ: הוֹשֵׁעַ נָא, אֵל עֲלִינוּ.
וְעוֹד קָרְאוּ: בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ,
אֵל שְׂדֵי, אֵל עֲלִינוּ.

וְלִבָּם רָחַב בְּגִיל וְעֵינֵיהֶם זָלְגוּ רַב דָּמַע עַל גָּדֹל טוֹבַת אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר הֵצִילָם מִיַּד אוֹיְבֵיהֶם; וְהֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי מִפְּנֵי חַשְׁבוֹתָם וּכְנִיעָתָם נוֹשְׁעוּ מֵאֲבִדוֹן עוֹלָם.

30 And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

31 And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

32 Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

33 And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

ה

5

וְהֵנָּה, בְּכָל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים לֹא הָיְתָה נֶפֶשׁ חַיָּה אַחַת אֲשֶׁר הִטִּילָה סֶפֶק אֶף בְּדָבָר זָעִיר מִדְּבָרֵי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים; כִּי הֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי הֵם אֲכֹן יִתְקַיְּמוּ.

וְהֵם יָדְעוּ כִּי בָּא הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, מִפְּנֵי הָאוֹתוֹת הַרְבִּים אֲשֶׁר קָמוּ, עַל פִּי דְבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים. וּמִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּבַר בָּאוּ, יָדְעוּ הֵם כִּי אֲכֹן יִתְקַיְּמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר.

עַל כֵּן הֵם חָדְלוּ מִכָּל חַטְאֵיהֶם וּמִתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּמִזְנוּנֵיהֶם, וַשִּׁקְדוּ מְאֹד לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהֵים יוֹמָם וְלַיְלָה.

וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם לָקְחוּ בְּשָׁבִי אֶת כָּל הַשּׁוֹדְדִים, וְלֹא הָיָה בָּהֶם אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר נִמְלֹט וְלֹא נִהְרַג. וְהֵם כָּלֵאוּם בְּבֵית הַכְּלָא וְהוֹרּוּ לְהִטִּיף אֲלֵיהֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁב מִחַטְאָתָיו וַיִּכְנַס בְּבְרִית לְחֹדֶל מִרְצָח, נִתְּנָה לוֹ חֲרוּתוֹ.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא בָּא בְּבְרִית וְאֵף שָׁמַר בְּלָבוּ מִחֻשְׁבוֹת רָצַח בְּחַשָּׁא, אֲכֹן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר נִמְצָא מִפִּיָּהּ אִיוָּמִים עַל אֲחֵיו נָדוֹן וְנִעְנָשׁ כַּחֵק.

1 And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

2 And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

3 Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

4 And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

5 But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

- 6 And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.
- 7 And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.
- 8 And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;
- 9 But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.
- 10 Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.
- 11 And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.
- 12 And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.
- 13 Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.
- 14 And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—
- 15 Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.
- 16 Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;
- כָּף הֵם שָׁמוּ קֶץ לְכָל הַכְנָפִיּוֹת הַרְשָׁעוֹת
וְהַחֲשָׁאִיוֹת וְהַנְּתַעֲבוֹת הֵהָן, אֲשֶׁר כָּה רַבָּה
הָיָה רִשְׁעָתָן וְאֲשֶׁר רָצְחוּ רַבִּים כָּל כָּף.
- כָּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁתַּיִם, וְכֵן שְׁנַת
עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁלֹשׁ וְעֶשְׂרִים וְאַרְבַּע וְעֶשְׂרִים
וְחָמֵשׁ. וְכֵה חָלְפוּ עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִתְרַחֲשׁוּ דְבָרִים רַבִּים אֲשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי
אֲחָדִים הָיוּ גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים; אֲךָ לֹא נִתָּן
לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל־סֵפֶר הַזֶּה; אֲכֹן, אִין הַסֵּפֶר
הַזֶּה יָכוֹל לְהַכִּיל אֶף חֵלֶק אֶחָד מִמֶּמָּה בְּאֲשֶׁר
נַעֲשָׂה בְּקֶרֶב אַנְשֵׁים כָּה רַבִּים בְּמִשְׁוֹף עֶשְׂרִים
וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה.
- וְאוּלַם יֵשׁ כְּתָבִי זִכְרוֹן הַמְּכִילִים אֶת כָּל
קוֹרוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְקִצּוֹר הַדְּבָרִים, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
סִפּוֹר נֶאֱמָן, כְּתָב נָפִי.
- עַל כֵּן רָשַׁמְתִּי אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה עַל פִּי
כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְנָפִי הַנִּחְרָט עַל הַלּוּחוֹת
הַנִּקְרָאִים לּוּחוֹת נָפִי.
- וְהִנֵּנִי רוֹשֵׁם אֶת כְּתָבִי עַל לּוּחוֹת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי
בְּמוֹ יָדִי.
- הִנֵּנִי נִקְרָא מוֹרְמוֹן, עַל פִּי אֶרֶץ מוֹרְמוֹן,
הָאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יִסַּד בָּהּ עֲלֵמָא אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה
בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם; הִיא הַכְּנִסְיָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה אֲשֶׁר
נוֹסְדָה בְּתוֹכָם אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר פָּשְׁעוּ.
- הִנֵּנִי תִלְמִיד יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים. הוּא
אֲשֶׁר קָרָאנִי לְהוֹדִיעַ אֶת דְּבָרוֹ בְּקֶרֶב עַמּוֹ,
בְּעֵבֹר זִכְרוֹ בְּחַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- וְעַל פִּי רָצוֹן אֱלֹהִים כִּי תִתְקַיֵּמְנָה תְּפִלּוֹת
הַנִּפְטָרִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים, כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם, רְאוּי
כִּי אֲרֻשָׁם לְזִכְרוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ;
- אֲכֹן, כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר הוּא קִצּוֹר הַקּוֹרוֹת
מֵעַתָּה צֵאתָ לְחֵי מִירוּשָׁלַם וְעַד הַיּוֹם הַזֶּה.
- לְכֵן רוֹשֵׁם אֲנִי אֶת כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי עַל פִּי
הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר הִנִּיחוּ קוֹדְמֵי עַד רִאשִׁית יָמֵי.

- 17 ואֲחֲרֵי כֵן אֶרְשֹׁם לְזַכֵּרוֹן אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתִי בְּמוֹ עֵינַי. And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.
- 18 וַיֹּדַע אֲנִי כִּי כֶּתֶב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי רוֹשֵׁם אֵמֶת הוּא. עַל אֵף זֹאת, רַבִּים הֵם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר, עַל פִּי צוּרַת לְשׁוֹנִנִּי, אֵין יְכוּלִים אֲנַחְנוּ לְכַתֵּבָם. And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.
- 19 וּבְזֹאת כְּלִיתִי לְדַבֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנִּי הוּא, וְאֲנִי שָׁב לְסַפֵּר עַל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לִפְנֵי יָמַי. And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.
- 20 אֲנִי מוֹרְמוֹן, צֶאֱצָא טְהוֹר לְלֶחִי. רָאִיוּ לִי לְבָרְךְ אֶת אֱלֹהֵי וְאֶת מוֹשִׁיעֵי יִשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, עַל כִּי הוֹצִיא אֶת אֲבוֹתֵינוּ מֵאֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאֵף אִישׁ אֶחָד לֹא יָדַע זֹאת וְזוֹלַת לֶחִי עֲצָמוּ וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאָם מִן הָאֶרֶץ הַהִיא; וְעַל כִּי חָנַן אוֹתִי וְאֶת עַמִּי יְדִיעָה כֹּה מְרַבָּה לְמַעַן יִשְׁוַעַת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ. I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.
- 21 אֲכֹן, בְּרַךְ בְּרַךְ הוּא אֶת בֵּית יַעֲקֹב וְאֶת זֶרַע יוֹסֵף רַחֵם. Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.
- 22 וּכְדִבְרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר, הוּא בְּרַךְ וְהַצִּילִיחַ אֶת בְּנֵי לֶחִי כְּפִי שְׁקִידָתָם לְשִׁמּוֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו. And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.
- 23 וְהוּא אֲכֹן יוֹסִיף וְיָשִׁיב שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יוֹסֵף אֶל יְדִיעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם. Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God.
- 24 חִי יְהוָה כִּי קִבֵּץ יִקְבֹּץ אֶת כָּל שְׂאֵרֵיט זֶרַע יַעֲקֹב, הַמִּפְזָר עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה, מֵאֶרֶבֶעַ כְּנָפֹת הָאֶרֶץ. And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.
- 25 וּכְפִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת בְּרִית עִם כָּל בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, קוֹם תִּקּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּם בְּמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר קָבַע, לְמַעַן יָשִׁיב אֶת כָּל בֵּית יַעֲקֹב אֶל יְדִיעַת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּם. And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.
- 26 אֲזִי הֵם יִדְעוּ אֶת גּוֹאֲלָם, אֲשֶׁר הוּא יִשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים; אֲזִי הֵם יִקְבְּצוּ מֵאֶרֶבֶעַ כְּנָפֹת הָאֶרֶץ אֶל אֲדָמָתָם, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה נִפְּצוּ. חִי יְהוָה כִּי כֵן יִהְיֶה. אָמֵן. And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

1

6

- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ, שָׁב כָּל עַם הַנְּפִיִּים
אֶל אֲדָמָתָם, אִישׁ וּבֵיתוֹ, בְּצֹאנָם וּבְבָקָרָם,
בְּסוּסֵיהֶם וּבְבִהֶמְתָּם וּבְכָל רְכוּשָׁם אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא כָּלוּ לֵאכֹל אֶת כָּל הַמְּזוֹן אֲשֶׁר
אָצְרוּ, הֵם לָקְחוּ עִמָּם אֶת כָּל הַנוֹתֵר לָהֶם,
מִכָּל דָּגָנָם לְמִינֵהוּ, וְכֹן אֶת זָהָבָם וְכֶסֶףָם וְכָל
יְקָרוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֲדָמָתָם וְאֶל נַחֲלָתָם
בְּצָפוֹן וּבְדָרוֹם, בְּאֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן וּבְאֶרֶץ הַדָּרוֹם.
- וְהֵם נָתְנוּ לְשׁוֹדְדִים אֲשֶׁר באוּ בְּבִרִית לְשֹׁמֵר
אֶת הַשְּׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר חָפְצוּ לְהִשְׁאֵר
לְמִנִּים, אֲדָמוֹת עַל פִּי מִסְפָּרָם, בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹצִיאוּ
אֶת לַחֲמָם מִן הָאֶרֶץ בִּיגִיעַ כְּפִיהֶם. כֹּה הֵם
יָסְדוּ שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְהֵם שָׁבוּ וְהִצְלִיחוּ וְהִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד. כֹּה חָלְפוּ
שָׁנוֹת עֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ וְעֶשְׂרִים וָשֶׁבַע, בַּהֲיוֹת סֵדֶר
רַב בְּאֶרֶץ; וְהֵם חֻקְּקוּ אֶת חֻקֵּיהֶם בְּצֶדֶק וּבִישָׁר.
- וְלֹא הָיָה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ אִם מְכַשׁוֹל אֶחָד לְהִצְלַחַת
הָעָם תָּמִיד, כִּי אִם הַכְּשָׁלָם בְּדַבֵּר עֲבָרָה.
- וְהַשְּׁלוֹם וְהַשְּׁלֹוּהָ הָאֵלֶּה נֹסְדוּ בְּאֶרֶץ עַל
יְדֵי גִדְגִידוֹנִי וְהַשּׁוֹפֵט לְכוֹנָאוֹס וְהַמְּנַהִיגִים
אֲשֶׁר מִנּוּ.
- וְהָיָה כִּי נִבְנוּ עָרִים חֲדָשׁוֹת רַבּוֹת וְעָרִים
עֲתִיקוֹת שֻׁפְצוּ.
- וְדָרְכִים רַבּוֹת הֻקְמוּ, וְנִסְלְלוּ מִסְלּוֹת רַבּוֹת
הַמּוֹלִיכוֹת מֵעִיר אֶל עִיר, וּמֵאֶרֶץ אֶל אֶרֶץ,
וּמִמָּקוֹם אֶל מָקוֹם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָשִׁמוֹנָה, וְשָׁלוֹם
הָעָם נִמְשָׁכָה.
- וְאוֹלָם בְּשָׁנַת עֶשְׂרִים וָתֵשַׁע הִתְגַּלְעוּ בָּעָם
סִכְסוּכִים. הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹה
וּבְהִתְפָּאָרוֹת מִפְּנֵי עֲשָׂרָם הָעֲצוּם עַד כִּי
הִכְבִּידוּ רִדְיָפוֹת עַל זֻלָּתָם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.
- 2 And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.
- 3 And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.
- 4 And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.
- 5 And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.
- 6 And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.
- 7 And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.
- 8 And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.
- 9 And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.
- 10 But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

- 11 For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.
- 12 And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning, yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.
- 13 Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.
- 14 And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.
- 15 Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.
- 16 And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.
- 17 And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.
- 18 Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.
- 19 And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.
- כי רבים היו הסוחרים אשר בארץ, וכן עורכי
דין רבים ושירים רבים.
- והאנשים החלו להבדל זה מזה במעמדם,
כפי עשרם ותלמודם; אכן, היו אנשים
נבערים מדעת מפני עניים, והיו אחרים אשר
קנו דעת מרבה מפני עשרם.
- והיו אנשים אשר התנשאו בגאווה, בעוד
אשר אחרים היו ענוים עד מאד. והיו אשר
השיבו בוז תחת בוז, ואחרים אשר קבלו בוז
ונגישה וכל מיני ענויים ולא השיבו בגדוף, כי
אם הלכו בדרכי כניעה ותשובה לפני אלהים.
- כה התפתח העדר שויון גדול בכל הארץ,
עד כי החלה הכנסייה להתפורר. אכן, עד כי
בשנת שלשים התפוררה הכנסייה בכל הארץ,
זולת בקרב מעטים מן הלמנים, אלה אשר
הפכו למאמינים באמונת האמת. המה לא
רחקו מאמונתם, כי היו מוצקים ואיתנים
ויציבים, ושמרו בכל מאדם לקיים את
מצוות יהוה.
- וזאת היתה סבת עוון העם: לשטן היה כח
רב לעורר את העם לכל מיני און, ולהפית
בלבם גאווה ולפתותם לבקש כח ושלטון
ועשר והבלי העולם הזה.
- כה הטא השטן את לב העם לעשות כל
מיני און. על כן נהנה העם משלווה שנים
מעטות בלבד.
- ובראשית שנת שלשים, אחר אשר נשאו
האנשים עת ממשכת על ידי פתוי השטן
אל כל אשר הוא רצה לשאתם, ופשעו
בכל אשר חפץ כי יפשעו, הם שקעו
ברשעה נוראה.
- ולא בלי דעת חטאו, כי הם ידעו את חפץ
אלהים לגביהם כי הם למדו בדבר הזה. על
כן במזיד מרדו באלהים.
- והיה זאת בימי לכונהוס בן לכונהוס אשר
ישב על כסא אביו ומשל בעם בשנה ההיא.

- 20 וּבָעֵת הַהִיא נִשְׁלָחוּ אַנְשִׁים אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ מְשֻׁמִּים מְלֹאֲתָם. וְהֵם עָמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם הִטִּיפוּ וְהִעִידוּ בְּעַז רוּחָם עַל חַטָּאי הָעָם וְעוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם. וְהֵם הִעִידוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם עַל הַגָּאֻלָּה אֲשֶׁר יִגָּאֵל יְהוָה אֶת עַמּוֹ, וּבְלִשׁוֹן אֲחֵר: עַל הַתַּחֲיָה אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְהֵם אֵף הִעִידוּ בְּאַמֵּץ עַל מוֹתוֹ וְעַל יְסוּרָיו.
- 21 Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.
- 22 וְלֹא הָיָה בֵּינָם שׁוֹם עוֹרֵף דִּין אוֹ שׁוֹפֵט אוֹ כֹּהֵן גָּדוֹל לְתֵת תִּקְוָה לְגֹזֵר דִּין מוֹת עַל אִישׁ, בְּלִתִּי אִם נִחַתָם גֹּזֵר דִּינָם בְּיַד מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.
- 23 Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.
- 24 וְרַבִּים מִן הַמְּעִידִים עַל עֲנִיֵּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר הִעִידוּ בְּעַז רוּחָם, נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהוּמָתוּ בַּחֲשָׁאֵי עַל יְדֵי הַשׁוֹפְטִים; וּבְדִבְרֵי מוֹתָם לֹא נֹדַע לְמוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ, כִּי אִם לְאַחֵר מוֹתָם.
- 25 Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.
- 26 וְהִנֵּה, הָיָה זֶה בְּנִגּוּד לְחֻקי הָאָרֶץ, הוֹצֵאת אִישׁ לְהוֹרֵג בְּלִי תִקְוָה שְׂרָרָה מֵאֵת מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ.
- 27 Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—
- 28 עַל כֵּן הִגִּיעָה תִלְנָה אֶל אֶרֶץ זֶרַחֵמְלָה, אֶל מוֹשֵׁל הָאָרֶץ עַל הַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם, אֲשֶׁר הוֹצִיאוּ לְהוֹרֵג אֶת נְבִיאֵי יְהוָה שְׁלֹא בַּחֵק.
- 29 Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.
- 30 אַז הֵם נִתְּפְשׁוּ וְהוּבְאוּ לְפָנֵי הַשׁוֹפֵט לְהִשְׁפֹּט עַל פִּשְׁעָם, בַּחֵק אֲשֶׁר חוֹקֵק הָעָם.
- 31 Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.
- 32 וְלַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם הָיוּ יְדִידִים וּקְרוֹבִי מִשְׁפָּחָה רַבִּים. וּשְׂאֲרָם, אֲשֶׁר מִנּוּ כְּמַעַט אֶת כָּל עוֹרְכֵי הַדִּין וְהַכֹּהֲנִים הַגָּדוֹלִים, הִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו וְהִתְאַחְדּוּ עִם קְרוֹבֵי הַשׁוֹפְטִים הָהֵם אֲשֶׁר הָעָמְדוּ לְדִין בַּחֵק.
- 33 Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.
- 34 וְהֵם בָּאוּ בְּבְרִית, אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, וְהִיא הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה עַל יְדֵי אַנְשֵׁי קִדְם, הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁטָן מִסֵּר וְשִׁמֵּשׁ לְקִשּׁוֹר קִשּׁוֹר עַל כָּל דִּבְרֵי צֶדֶק.
- 35 And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

- על כן הם התאגדו על אנשי יהוה; והם באו
בברית להשמידם ולמלט את האשמים
ברצח מכף הדין, אשר עמד לצאת לפעל על
פי החק.
- 29 Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.
- והם בזו לחק ולזכויות ארצם וכרתו ברית,
איש עם רעהו, לאבד את המושל ולהמליך
מלך על הארץ, בעבור תחדל החרות מקרב
הארץ בהמסרה לרשות מלכים.
- 30 And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

ז

7

- הנה, אני אראה לכם כי הם לא המליכו מלך
על הארץ; ואולם בשנה ההיא, שנת שלשים,
הם הרגו את שופט הארץ העליון, אכן, הם
רצחוהו בשפטו על כס המשפט.
- 1 Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.
- והעם נחלק זה על זה, והם נפרדו איש
מעל רעהו והתפלגו לשבטים, איש לביתו
ולמשפחתו ולידידיו; כה הם אבדו את
ממשלת הארץ.
- 2 And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.
- וכל שבט מנה לו ראש או מנהיג; וכה היו הם
לשבטים ולראשי שבטים.
- 3 And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.
- ולא היה בהם איש בלא משפחה גדולה
ורב קרובים וידידים; על כן היו שבטיהם
גדולים מאד.
- 4 Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.
- כל זה נעשה ולא היו עדין מלחמות ביניהם;
וכל העוון הזה בא על העם כי נכנעו לכהן
השטן.
- 5 Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.
- וסדרי הממשל אכן נהרסו מפני אגדת
הסתרים אשר לידידי רוצחי הנביאים
ולקרוביהם.
- 6 And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.
- כי הם זרעו ריב ומדון בארץ, עד כי חלק
העם הצדיק הפך כמעט כלו לרשעים;
אכן, רק צדיקים מעטים נותרו בהם.
- 7 And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.
- והנה, לא חלפו שש שנים ורב העם סר
מצדקתם, ככלב שב על קאו, או כחזירה
המתפלשת ברפש.
- 8 And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

- 9 Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;
- 10 And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.
- 11 And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.
- 12 Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.
- 13 And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.
- 14 And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.
- 15 And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;
- וַאֲגַדְתָּ הַסֵּתֶרִים הַהֵיא, אֲשֶׁר הִסְבִּיחַ אָנוּ כֹה גָדוֹל בָּעַם, הַתְּכַנְסָה וְהִעֲמִידָה בְּרֹאשָׁהּ אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא יַעֲקֹב.
- וְהֵם קָרְאוּהוּ מֶלֶכָם, וְהוּא הָיָה מֶלֶךְ עַל כְּנִפְיֵי הָרָשָׁע הַהֵיא; וְהוּא הָיָה אֶחָד מֵרָאשֵׁי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נָתְנוּ קוֹלָם נֶגֶד הַנְּבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר הָעִידוּ עַל יֵשׁוּעַ.
- אֲדָּא אֲנִשֵּׁי הַכְּנִפְיָה לֹא הָיוּ רַבִּים כְּעַם אֲשֶׁר בִּשְׁבָטִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מֵאַחָדִים, זֹלַת בְּחֻקֵּיהֶם אֲשֶׁר חֻקְקוּ כָּל מְנַהִיג, אִישׁ בְּעֵבֹר שְׁבָטוֹ. וְאַף כִּי הֵם הָיוּ אוֹיְבִים זֶה לָזֶה וְאַף כִּי לֹא הָיוּ עִם צַדִּיק, מֵאַחָדִים הָיוּ בְּשִׁנְאָתָם אֶת הַבָּאִים בְּבִרְיַת לְאַבְדֹת אֶת הַמִּמְשָׁל.
- לְכֹן, כְּרֹאוֹת יַעֲקֹב, מֶלֶךְ הַכְּנִפְיָה, כִּי אוֹיְבָיו מְרַבִּים מֵאֲנָשָׁיו, הוּא צִוָּם לָנוֹס אֶל יַרְכְּתִי צִפּוֹן הָאָרֶץ וְלִהְיוֹת לָהֶם שֵׁם מַמְלָכָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִתְחַבְּרוּ אֵלֵיהֶם פּוֹרְשִׁים, כִּי הוּא דִּבֶּר אֵלֵיהֶם חֲלָקוֹת בְּאִמְרוֹ כִּי יִרְבוּ הַפּוֹרְשִׁים, וְהַכְּנִפְיָה תִּחְזַק דִּיּוּהָ לְהִתְנַגֵּד לְשִׁבְטֵי הָעָם. וְכֵן עָשׂוּ אֲנָשָׁיו.
- וְכֹה מְהִירָה הָיְתָה צֵעֲדָתָם, עַד כִּי לֹא נָתַן לְהַכְשִׁילָהּ, וְהֵם הִרְחִיקוּ מֵעֵבֶר לְהִשָּׁג יַד הָעָם. כֹּה כָלְתָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְכֹה הָיָה מִצַּב עֲנִינֵי עַם נְפִי.
- וּבְשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָאַחַת הָיָה הָעָם מְפֹלָג לְשִׁבְטִים, אִישׁ לְבֵיתוֹ וּלְמִשְׁפָּחָתוֹ וּלְיָדֵידָיו. עַל אֵף זֹאת, הֵם עָשׂוּ הֶסֶם שְׁלֹא לְהִלָּחֵם זֶה בָּזֶה. אֲדָּא בְּחֻקֵּיהֶם וּבְדִרְכֵי הַמִּמְשָׁל לֹא הָיוּ הֵם מֵאַחָדִים, כִּי אֵלֶּה נִכְוֵנוּ כְּפִי דְעוֹת רָאשֵׁיהֶם וּמְנַהִיגֵיהֶם. וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם חֻקְקוּ חֻקִּים חֲמוּרִים מְאֹד לְמַנְעַ עֲבֵרוֹת שְׁבָט אֶחָד עַל מִשְׁנֵהוּ, הָיְתָה מִדָּה שֶׁל שְׁלוֹם בְּאָרֶץ. וְאוֹלָם, לָבֶם סָר מֵעַם יְהוָה אֵלֵיהֶם וְהֵם סָקְלוּ נְבִיאִים בְּאִבָּנִים וּגְרָשׁוּם מִתּוֹכָם.
- וְנְפִי, יָעַן אֲשֶׁר נִגְלוּ אֵלָיו מַלְאָכִים וְאַף שָׁמַע אֶת קוֹל יְהוָה, וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָאָה מַלְאָכִים, וּבִהְיוֹתוֹ עַד רֹאֵי, כִּי כַח נָתַן לוֹ לְדַעַת עַל אוֹדוֹת שְׁלִיחוֹת הַמְּשִׁית, וַיֵּעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא חָזָה בְּמוֹ עֵינָיו כִּי סָר הָעָם מִהֲרָה מִן הַצִּדִּיק אֶל רָשָׁעָתָם וְאֶל תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם;

- 16 Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.
- 17 And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.
- 18 And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.
- 19 And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.
- 20 And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.
- 21 And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.
- 22 And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.
- 23 Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.
- 24 Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.
- 25 Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.
- וּבַהֲתַעֲצָבוּ עַל קָשִׁי לִבָּם וְעַל עִוְרוֹן דַּעְתָּם, לָכֵן הוּא יָצָא אֲלֵיהֶם בְּשָׁנָה הַהִיא, וְהֵחֵל לְהַעֲדִיד בְּעֹז רוּחַ עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל מַחִילַת חַטָּאִים עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָה בְּאֶדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- דְּבָרִים רַבִּים הוּא דָּרַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם; לֹא נִתָּן לְכַתֵּב אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו, וְחֻלְקָם לֹא יִסְפִּיק; עַל כֵּן הֵם אֵינֶם כְּתוּבִים בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה. וְאוּלָם, נָפִי אָבֹן דָּרַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם בְּעֹז וּבְתַקְוָה סִמְכוֹת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי כָעָסוּ עָלָיו הָאֲנָשִׁים, כִּי כָחוּ גִבּוֹר עַל כָּחָם, וְהֵם לֹא יָכְלוּ שְׁלֹא לְהֶאֱמִין בְּדְבָרָיו; כִּי כֹה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה אֱמוּנָתוֹ בְּאֶדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, עַד כִּי מַלְאָכִים שִׁרְתוּהוּ מִדֵּי יוֹם בְּיוֹמוֹ.
- וּבְשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הוּא גָרַשׁ שְׂדֵים וְרוּחוֹת טְמָאָה; וְאִף אֶת אָחִיו הֶעֱלָה מִן הַמֵּתִים, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִרְגַם בְּאֲבָנִים בְּיַד הָעָם עַד מוֹת.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים רָאוּ זֹאת וְהָעִידוּ עַל כֹּף, וְכָעָסוּ עָלָיו מִפְּנֵי כָחוֹ. וְהוּא עָשָׂה נִסִּים נֹסְפִים רַבִּים בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ לַעֲיֵי הָעָם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת, וְרַק מְעַטִּים הָיוּ אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ מֵאֱמִינֵי יְהוָה; וְאוּלָם כָּל אֶלֶּה הָעִידוּ לָעָם כִּי אָבֹן פְּקֻדוֹם כֹּחַ אֱלֹהִים וְרוּחוֹ אֲשֶׁר בְּיֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הָאֱמִינֹ.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר גָּרְשׁוּ מִתּוֹכָם שְׂדִים, וְאֲשֶׁר נִרְפְּאוּ מִמַּחֲלָתָם וּמִחֲלָשׁוֹת גּוֹפָם, הִכְרִיזוּ בְּאֲזֵי הָעָם כִּי אָבֹן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים פָּעִלָה בָּהֶם וְרָפָא לָהֶם; וְאִף הֵם הִרְאוּ מוֹפְתִים וַעֲשׂוּ כְמָה נִסִּים בְּקִרְבֵּי הָעָם.
- כֹּה חָלְפָה גַם שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם. וּבִרְאשִׁית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֹׁלֶשׁ קָרָא נָפִי אֶל הָעָם וְהִסִּיף לָהֶם עַל תְּשׁוּבָה וְעַל מַחִילַת חַטָּאִים.
- וּרְצוֹנִי כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה בָּעָם אִף אִישׁ אֶחָד אֲשֶׁר שָׁב מִרְעֻתוֹ וְלֹא הִטְבִּיל בְּמִים.
- לָכֵן הִסְמִיךְ נָפִי אֲנָשִׁים לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ בְּשִׁלְחוֹת הַזֹּאת, בְּעִבּוֹר יִטְבִּיל בְּמִים כָּל הַבָּא אֲלֵיהֶם, וְזֹאת כִּרְאָיָה וּכְעֵדוֹת, לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים וְאֶל הָעָם, כִּי הֵם שָׁבוּ מִרְעֻתָם וְנִמְחַל לָהֶם עַל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.

- 26 And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.
- ובראשית השנה ההיא היו רבים אשר הטבלו לשם תשובה; וכה חלפה מרבית השנה.

ח

8

- 1 And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—
- ואלה הדברים אשר באו והיו על פי כתב זכרונותינו; ויודעים אנחנו כי הכתוב אמת הוא, כי איש ישר כתבם, כי הוא אכן עשה נסים רבים בשם ישוע; ולא היה אף אדם אחד אשר יכל לעשות נס בשם ישוע, בלתי אם טהר מכל שמץ עוון.
- 2 And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;
- על כן, אם לא טעה האיש בחשוב עתינו, חלפה שנת שלשים ושלש.
- 3 And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.
- והעם החל לצפות בכבד ראש לאות אשר נתן הנביא שמואל הלמני בדבר עת אפלה על פני הארץ במשך שלשה ימים.
- 4 And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.
- וספקות ווכוחים גדולים התעוררו בעם, על אף האותות הרבים אשר כבר קמו.
- 5 And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.
- והיה בשנת שלשים וארבע, בארבעה לחדש הראשון, קמה סערה גדולה, אשר כמוה לא נודעה מעולם בכל הארץ.
- 6 And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.
- ואף סופה גדולה ונוראה באה, ורעם אים נשמע, אשר החריד את כל האדמה כאלו עמדה הארץ להבקע.
- 7 And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.
- וברקים עזים ומסנורים הבריקו, אשר כמוהם לא נודעו מעולם בכל הארץ.
- 8 And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.
- ואש אחזה בעיר זרעהמלה.
- 9 And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.
- והעיר מורוני שקעה לתוך מעמקי הים, וכל יושביה טבעו.
- 10 And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moroni, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.
- והאדמה התרוממה על העיר מורוני, ובמקומה התנשא הר גדול.
- 11 And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.
- ובארץ הדרום התחולל חרבן גדול ונורא.
- 12 But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed,
- אך חרבן גדול ונורא יותר היה בארץ הצפון; כי הנה, כל פני הארץ השתנו מפני הסופה

- ורוחות הסערה והרעמים והברקים ורעידות האדמה האדירות בכל הארץ.
- 13 And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.
- 14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.
- 15 And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many of them who were slain.
- 16 And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.
- 17 And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth.
- 18 And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.
- 19 And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land.
- 20 And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;
- 21 And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;
- 22 And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.
- והיה כי ערים גדולות ונודעות רבות שקעו, ורבות אחרות נשרפו, ורבות הרעדו עד אשר נפלו בתייהן ארצה ויושביהן נהרגו ומשכנותן נותרו שוממות.
- והיה כי ערים אחרות נשארו על תלן, אך גדול מאוד היה הנזק אשר פגען, ורבים משוכניהן נהרגו.
- והיו אנשים אשר נשאו ברוח הסערה; ואיש אינו יודע אים, זולת כי נשאו הלאה ממקומם.
- כה נשחתו פני כל האדמה מפני הסופות והרעמים והברקים ורעידת האדמה.
- והנה נבקעו הסלעים; הם נשברו על פני כל האדמה, עד כי נמצאו מפוררים, סדוקים ומבקעים על כל פני הארץ.
- והיה כאשר חדלו הרעמים והברקים, והסערה והסופה ורעידות האדמה, והם נמשכו כשלוש שעות, והיו אשר אמרו כי ארכו מזאת; על אף זאת, כל הדברים הגדולים והנוראים האלה נעשו במשך כשלוש שעות, והנה, אחר אשר חדלו ירדה חשכה על פני הארץ.
- והיה חשך כבד על כל פני הארץ, עד כי יכלו יושביה, אשר לא נפלו, לחוש את ערפלי החשכה.
- ומפני החשך לא יכול היה להיות אור, לא בגירות ולא בפנסים; ואף לא יכלו האנשים להדליק אש בעצייהם הדקים והיבשים. כך לא נמצא להם אור כלל.
- אכן, כל אור לא נראה, לא אש ולא זיק, לא שמש ולא ירח ולא כוכבים; כה גדול היה ערפל החשכה אשר ירד על פני הארץ.

- וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא נִרְאָה אֹר בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים.
וְכָל הָעַתָּה הָיָה רַבּוֹ הָאֵבֶל וְהִיבָבָה וְהִבְכָּיָה
בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָעָם; אָכֵן, גְּדוּלָּה הָיְתָה נֹאקֶת הָעָם
מִפְּנֵי הַחֹשֶׁךְ וְהַחֲרָבָן הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר בָּא עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 23 And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.
- וּבְמָקוֹם אֶחָד נִשְׁמַע קוֹל זַעֲקָתָם לֵאמֹר:
אֵהָה, אֱלֹהֵי שְׁבָנוּ מִרְעַתָּנוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא הַיּוֹם
הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא הַזֶּה, כִּי אִזּוֹ הָיוּ אַחֵינוּ נִצְלִים
וְלֹא נִשְׂרָפִים בְּעִיר הַגְּדוּלָּה הַהִיא, זֶרַחֶמְלָה.
- 24 And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.
- וּבְמָקוֹם אַחֵר נִשְׁמַע קוֹל זַעֲקָתָם וְאֵבֶלָם לֵאמֹר:
אֵהָה, אֱלֹהֵי שְׁבָנוּ מִרְעַתָּנוּ לִפְנֵי בּוֹא הַיּוֹם
הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא הַזֶּה, וְלֹא הִרְגָנוּ וְלֹא רָגַמְנוּ אֶבֶן
בְּנָבִיאִים וְלֹא גִרְשָׁנוּם מִתּוֹכֵנוּ, כִּי אִזּוֹ הָיוּ
אֲמוּתֵינוּ וּבְנוֹתֵינוּ הַיְּפֹת וְיִלְדֵינוּ נִצְלִים, וְלֹא
נִקְבְּרִים בְּתוֹךְ הָעִיר הַגְּדוּלָּה הַהִיא מוֹרוֹנִיָּה.
הִנֵּה, כֹּה, גְּדוּלוֹת וְנוֹרָאוֹת הָיוּ יָבֻבוֹת הָעָם.
- 25 And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

ט

9

- אִזּוֹ נִשְׁמַע קוֹל בְּקֶרֶב כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי הָאֲדָמָה, עַל
פְּנֵי כָל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְכֹה קָרָא:
- 1 And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:
- אֹי, אֹי, אֹי לָעָם הַזֶּה! אֹי לְיוֹשְׁבֵי תְּבֵל
כֻּלָּה, אִם לֹא יִשְׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם; כִּי שׂוֹחֵק הִשְׁטָן
וּמִלְאָכָיו שָׂשִׁים עַל הָרָג בְּנֵי עַמִּי הַנָּאִים
וּבְנוֹתֵיהֶם הַיְּפֹת; מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם
בָּאָה עֲלֵיהֶם הַמִּפְלָא הַזֹּאת.
- 2 Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!
- הִנֵּה, אֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוּלָּה זֶרַחֶמְלָה וְאֵת
יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ אֲנִכִּי שָׂרַפְתִּי בָאֵשׁ.
- 3 Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.
- וְאֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוּלָּה מוֹרוֹנִיָּה אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי
בְּמַעַמְקֵי הַיָּם וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ הִטְבַּעְתִּי.
- 4 And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.
- וְאֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוּלָּה מוֹרוֹנִיָּה וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ
אֲנִכִּי כִסִּיתִי בַּעֲפָר, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֵת
עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֵת תוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבֵל יוֹסִיף דָּם
הַנָּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לְבּוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.
- 5 And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.
- וְאֵת הָעִיר גִּלְגָּל אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי, וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ
קִבַּרְתִּי בְּמַעַמְקֵי הָאֲדָמָה.
- 6 And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;
- וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן הִשְׁקַעְתִּי אֵת הָעִיר אוֹנִיָּה וְאֵת
יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, וְאֵת הָעִיר מוֹקוּם וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהָ, וְאֵת
- 7 Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the

הָעִיר יְרוּשָׁלַם וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ; וּמִים הָעֲלִיתִי
עֲלֵיהֶם, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֵת רְשָׁעָתָם וְאֵת
תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבַל יוֹסִיף דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים
וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֵת הָעִיר גָּדִיאַנְדִּי וְאֵת הָעִיר גָּדִיּוֹמְנָה
וְאֵת הָעִיר יַעֲקֹב וְאֵת הָעִיר גִּמְגִּמְנוֹ, אֵת כָּל
אֵלֶּה אֲנִכִּי הִשְׁקַעְתִּי, וּבְמִקְוֵי הַקְּמָתִי גִבְעוֹת
וְעַמְקִים; וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ קִבַּרְתִּי בְּמַעַמְקֵי
הָאֲדָמָה, לְהַסְתִּיר מִפְּנֵי אֵת רְשָׁעָתָם וְאֵת
תּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְבַל יוֹסִיף דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים
וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֵת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה יַעֲקֹבֻגַּת, אֲשֶׁר יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ
הָיוּ אֲנָשֵׁי הַמֶּלֶךְ יַעֲקֹב, שְׂרָפְתִּי בָאֵשׁ. מִפְּנֵי
חַטָּאֵיהֶם וְרְשָׁעָתָם, אֲשֶׁר גָּדְלוּ מִרְשָׁעַת
כָּל הָאָרֶץ, מִפְּנֵי רִצְחוֹתֵיהֶם בְּמִסְתָּרִים
וְאֲגֻדוֹתֵיהֶם הַחֲשָׁאִיוֹת, כִּי הֵם אֲשֶׁר הִפְּרוּ אֵת
שְׁלוֹת עַמִּי וְהָרְסוּ אֵת מַמְשַׁל הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן
שְׂרָפְתִּים בָּאֵשׁ לְהַשְׁמִיד מִלִּפְנֵי, לְבַל יוֹסִיף
דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים לָבוֹא אֵלַי כְּנִגְדָם.

וְאֵת הָעִיר לָמָן, וְאֵת הָעִיר יוֹשׁ וְאֵת הָעִיר
גָּד וְאֵת הָעִיר קִישְׁקוּמֵן וְאֵת יוֹשְׁבֵיהֶן שְׂרָפְתִּי
בָּאֵשׁ, עַל כִּי הִרְעוּ בְּגִרְשָׁם אֵת הַנְּבִיאִים,
וְעַל כִּי סָקְלוּ אֵת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּי לְהוֹדִיעַם
אֵת דְּבַר רְשָׁעָתָם וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר גִּרְשׁוּ אֵת כָּלֶם, עַד כִּי לֹא הָיָה
בָּהֶם אִף אִישׁ צָדִיק אֶחָד, הוֹרְדָתִי אֵשׁ עֲלֵיהֶם
וְהִשְׁמַדְתִּים בְּעֶבֶר הַסְּתִיר אֵת רְשָׁעָתָם
וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם מִפְּנֵי, לְבַל יֵצֵעַ אֵלַי מִן הָאֲדָמָה
דָּם הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַקְדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְתִּי בְּקִרְבָם
וַיִּקְרָא כְּנִגְדָם.

חֲרָבָן וְכִלְיוֹן רַב שְׁלַחְתִּי עַל הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְעַל
הָעָם הַזֶּה, מִפְּנֵי רְשָׁעָתָם וְתּוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

הוּא, אַתֶּם אֲשֶׁר נִצַּלְתֶּם בְּעֶבֶר הַיּוֹתָכֶם
צָדִיקִים מֵהֶם, הֲלֹא תָשׁוּבוּ עִתָּה אֵלַי,
וְתִנָּחְמוּ עַל חַטָּאֵיכֶם וְתִהְיֶיכֶם לְמַאֲמִינִים
לְמַעַן אֲרַפְּאֶכֶם?

אֲכֹן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: אִם תָּבוֹאוּ אֵלַי, יִהְיֶה
לָכֶם חַיִּי עוֹלָם. הִנֵּה פֶשֶׁטָה אֲלִיכֶם וְרוּעַ
רַחֲמִי, וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא אֶקְבָּלֵנוּ; וּבְרוּכִים הֵם
הַבָּאִים אֵלַי.

inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

8 And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

10 And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

11 And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

12 And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

13 O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

14 Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

- 15 Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.
- הִנְנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים. אֲנִכִּי בְרָאתִי אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ וְאֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר בָּם. מִבְּרֵאשִׁית הָיִיתִי עִם אָבִי. אֲנִי בְּאָבִי וְאָבִי בִּי; וּבִי פָאֵר אָבִי אֶת שְׁמוֹ.
- 16 I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.
- בָּאתִי אֶל אֲשֶׁר לִי וְאֲשֶׁר לִי לֹא קִבְּלוּנִי; וּכְתָבֵי הַקְּדָשׁ הַמְדַּבְּרִים עַל בּוֹאִי קִיְּמוּ.
- 17 And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּנִי, נָתַתִּי לָהֶם לִהְיוֹת בָּנִים לְאֱלֹהִים; וְכֵן אֶעֱשֶׂה לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמִּי; כִּי הִנֵּה, מֵאֲתִי בָּאָה הַגְּאֻלָּה וּבִי מִקִּיַּמַת תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה.
- 18 I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.
- אֲנִי אוֹר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיּוֹ. אֲנִי אֶלֶף וְתֵּי, רֵאשִׁית וְאַחֲרִית.
- 19 And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.
- לֹא תִקְרִיבוּ לִי עוֹד שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים; אַכֵּן, קְרִבְנוֹתֵיכֶם וְעוֹלוֹתֵיכֶם חָדוֹל יִחְדְּלוּ, כִּי לֹא אֶקְבַּל מִכֶּם כָּל קִרְבָּן וְעוֹלָה.
- 20 And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.
- לֵב נִשְׁבָּר וְרוּחַ נִכְאָה יִהְיוּ הַקִּרְבָּן אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרִיבוּ לִי. וְכָל אֲשֶׁר בָּא אֵלַי בְּלֵב שִׁבּוֹר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אוֹתוֹ אֶטְבִּיל בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקְּדָשׁ, אַכֵּן כָּל־מֵנִים, אֲשֶׁר מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בִּי בָּעַת אֲשֶׁר הִפְכוּ לְמֵאֲמִינִים, הִטְבְּלוּ בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקְּדָשׁ, וְהֵם לֹא יָדְעוּ זֹאת.
- 21 Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.
- הִנֵּה, בָּאתִי אֶל הָעוֹלָם לְהָבִיא גְּאֻלָּה לְעוֹלָם, לְהוֹשִׁיעוֹ מִחַטָּאָה.
- 22 Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.
- לְכֵן, כָּל הַשֹּׁב מִרְעֵתוֹ וּבָא אֵלַי כִּי־לֵד קָטָן, אוֹתוֹ אֶקְבַּל, כִּי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים הִנֵּה מִכְּאֻלָּה. הֵן לְמַעַן כְּאֻלָּה נָתַתִּי אֶת חַיִּי וּלְקַחְתִּים לִי שֵׁנִית. עַל כֵּן, שׁוּבוּ וּבּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, אֲפָסִי אֶרֶץ, וְהוֹשְׁעוּ.

י

10

- 1 And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּל אַנְשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְהָיוּ עֵדִים לָהֶם. וְהָיָה אַחֵר הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הַשְׁתָּרַר שָׁקֶט בָּאָרֶץ בְּמִשְׁוֹן שָׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.
- 2 For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.
- כִּי כֹה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַשְׁתּוֹמְמוֹת הָעָם, עַד כִּי הֵם חָדְלוּ לְקוֹנוֹ וּלְיִלֵּל עַל אֲבִדוֹ בְּנֵי מִשְׁפַּחְתָּם אֲשֶׁר נִהַרְגוּ. עַל כֵּן נִמְשַׁח הַשָּׁקֶט בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ שָׁעוֹת רַבּוֹת.

- 3 And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:
- 4 O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.
- 5 And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.
- 6 O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.
- 7 But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.
- 8 And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.
- 9 And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.
- 10 And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.
- 11 And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.
- 12 And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—
- וְקוֹל נִשְׁמָע שֵׁנִית בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם, וְכָל הָאֲנָשִׁים שָׁמְעוּהוּ וְהָיוּ עֵדִים לוֹ, וְכֵן אָמַר:
- הוּא, אֲנָשֵׁי הָעָרִים הַגְּדוֹלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ, אֲשֶׁר צָאצְאֵי יַעֲקֹב אַתֶּם, אֲכֹן, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵנֶכֶם! עַד כַּמָּה קִבַּצְתִּיכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרִנְגֵּלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ וְכִלְכַּלְתִּיכֶם.
- וְמָה הַפְצַתִּי לְקִבֵּץ אֶתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרִנְגֵּלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ, אֵהָה, אֲנִשִּׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אֲשֶׁר נָפְלִיתֶם; אֵהָה, אֲנִשִּׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, אַתֶּם הַשּׁוֹכְנִים בִּירוּשָׁלַם, כַּאֲשֶׁר אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נָפְלִיתֶם; מָה הַפְצַתִּי לְקִבֵּץ אֶתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרִנְגֵּלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ, וְלֹא אֲבִיתֶם.
- אֵהָה, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר חֲסִיתִי עֲלֵיכֶם, כַּמָּה אֲחַפֵּץ לְקִבֵּץ אֶתְכֶם כְּקִבֵּץ תְּרִנְגֵּלֶת אֶת אֶפְרוֹחֶיהָ תַּחַת כְּנָפֶיהָ, אִם תִּנְחַמוּ עָלַי חֲטָאֵיכֶם וְתָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם.
- אֲךָ אִם לֹא כֵן, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, יִהְיוּ מִשְׁכְּנוֹתֵיכֶם לְשִׁמְמָה עַד עֵת קִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית לְאַבּוֹתֵיכֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ הָעָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לִבְכּוֹת וּלְיֵלֵל עַל אֲבֹדֵן בְּנֵי מִשְׁפַּחְתָּם וַיִּדְדֵיהֶם.
- כֵּן חָלְפוּ שְׁלֹשֶׁת הַיָּמִים. וְהָיָה זֶה בִּבְקָר הַיּוֹם; וְנִמְוָה הַחֹשֶׁכָה מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ וְהָאֲדָמָה חָדְלָה מִרַעְדָּהּ, וְהַסֵּלְעִים חָדְלוּ מִהִתְפֹּרֵר, וְהַשְׂאוֹן הָאִים פָּסַק, וְכָל קוֹלוֹת הַהִמְלָה שָׁקְטוּ.
- וְהָאֲדָמָה שָׁבָה וְהִתְאַחַתְתָּה וְעָמְדָה מִנּוּעָה; אֲזַ שָׁבְתוּ הַמִּסְפָּד וְהַבְּכִי וְנָהִי הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נָצְלוּ מִמּוֹת. וְאַבְלָם הִפָּךְ לְשִׂשׂוֹן וּמִסְפָּדָם לְתִהֲלָה וּלְהוֹדָיָה לְאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, גּוֹאֲלָם.
- עַד כֵּן הִתְקַיְּמוּ דְבָרֵי כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר נִבְאוּ הַנְּבִיאִים.
- וְהַנְּצוּלִים הָיוּ הַצְדִּיקִים אֲשֶׁר בָּעָם. הֵם אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלֹא רָגְמוּם, וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁפְכוּ אֶת דַּם הַקְּדוֹשִׁים.

- 13 And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.
- 14 And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.
- 15 Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.
- 16 Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.
- 17 Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?
- 18 And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—
- 19 Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.
- וְהֵם נִוְתָרוּ בַּחַיִּים וְלֹא שָׁקְעוּ לְתַחֲתֵית הָאֲדָמָה
לְהִקָּבֵר בָּהּ; וְהֵם לֹא טָבְעוּ בְּמַעְמְקֵי הַיָּם, וְלֹא
נִשְׂרְפוּ בָּאֵשׁ, וְלֹא נִמְחָצוּ לְמוֹת בְּמַפּוּלוֹת,
וְלֹא נִשְׂאוּ הַרְחָק בְּרוּחַ הַסְּעָרָה, וְאֵף לֹא
הִכְרַעוּ עַל יְדֵי עָרְפְּלֵי הָעָשָׁן וְהַחֹשֶׁכָה.
- וְעַתָּה, כָּל הַקּוֹרֵא זֹאת יִבִּין נָא, וְכָל אִשֶּׁר
לוֹ כְּתָבִי הַקֹּדֶשׁ יַחְקֹר נָא בָּהֶם, וְיִרְאֶה וְיִזְכֹּחַ
אִם כָּל הַמִּיתוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, וְהַחֲרָבֹן בָּאֵשׁ וּבְעָשָׁן
וּבְסוּפּוֹת וּבְרוּחוֹת סְעָרָה וּבַפְּתִיחַת פִּי
הָאֲדָמָה לְבָלֵעַ אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה לֹא בָּאוּ כְּקִיּוֹם נְבוֹאוֹת אֲשֶׁר לְרַבִּים
מִן הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים.
- הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי רַבִּים הָעִידוּ כִּי יָקוּמוּ
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעֵת בּוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְהֵם
הוּמָתוּ עַל הָעֵידוּם זֹאת.
- הַנְּבִיא זֵנוֹס הָעִיד עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵף
זֵנוֹק דִּבֶּר עַל אוֹדוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי הֵם הָעִידוּ עַל
הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לָנוּ בְּכָרְט, בְּאֲשֶׁר אָנֹחֵנוּ
שְׂאֵרֵית זְרַעֲם.
- הִנֵּה, אֵף יַעֲקֹב אֲבִינוּ הָעִיד בְּדִבְרֵי שְׂאֵרֵית
בֵּית יוֹסֵף. וְהֵאֵין אָנֹחֵנוּ שְׂאֵרֵית בֵּית יוֹסֵף?
הֵאֵין הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְּעִידִים עָלֵינוּ,
כְּתוּבִים עַל לוחוֹת נְחֹשֶׁת הַקֶּלֶל, אֲשֶׁר
אֲבִינוּ, לְחִי, הוֹצִיָּאָם מִירוּשָׁלַם?
- וְאֵנִי אֲרָאָה לָכֶם כִּי בְּאַחֲרִית שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים
וְאַרְבַּע הָרָאוּ חֲסָדִים גְּדוֹלִים לְאֲנָשֵׁי נְפִי אֲשֶׁר
נִצְּלוּ, וְכֹן לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ פַּעַם לְמָנִים
וְאֲשֶׁר נִוְתָרוּ בַּחַיִּים, וְעַל רֹאשָׁם יָרַד שֹׁפַע
בְּרָכוֹת, עַד כִּי בְּמַהֲרָה לְאַחַר עֲלוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ
הַשְּׁמַיָּמָה, הוּא אָכֵן הִתְגַּלָּה לְעֵינֵיהֶם.
- וְהוּא הָרָאָה לָהֶם אֶת גּוּפוֹ וְשִׁמְשׁ לְפָנֵיהֶם;
וְסִפּוֹר מַעֲשֵׂה שְׁמִשּׁוֹתָיו וְסִפּוֹר בְּהִמְשָׁךְ
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. לָכֵן אֲנִי מְסַיֵּם, לְפִי שְׁעָה,
אֶת דְּבָרִי.

ישוע המשיח מראה עצמו לעם נְפִי ומשמש
לפניהם, בעוד ההמונים מתקבצים בארץ רב-
שפע. (בערך 34 לספירה.) נכלל בפרקים יא-כו.

Jesus Christ shows himself to the people of Nephi and ministers to them as
the multitude is gathered together in the land Bountiful. (About A.D. 34.)
Comprising chapters 11-26.

יא

11

- והיה המון רב מעם נְפִי מתקבץ ליד בית
המקדש אשר בארץ רב-שפע. והם הביעו
את תמיהתם ואת השתוממותם איש עם
רעהו, והשיחו זה לזה בדבר התמורה
הגדולה והנפלאה אשר ארעה.
- הם גם שוחחו על ישוע המשיח, אשר על
מותו נתן אות ומופת.
- והיה בעודם שוחים זה עם זה, הם שמעו קול
אשר בא כאלו ממרום. והם נשאו עיניהם
סביב, כי לא הבינו את הקול אשר שמעו.
והקול לא היה קשה ואף לא רם; ואולם, אף
כי היה הקול חרישי, הוא חדר בקרב אלה
אשר שמעוהו, עד כי לא נותר אף איבר אחד
בכל גוֹם אשר לא החרר. אכן, הקול חדר
בקרבם עד עצם נשמתם והצית את לבבם.
- והם שמעו את הקול שנית, אף לא הבינוהו.
- והם אף שמעו את הקול בפעם השלישית,
והם פתחו את אזניהם לשמעו בפנותם את
עיניהם אל עברו, ובהישיבם את מבטם
השמימה, כי משם בא הקול.
- והנה, בפעם השלישית הם הבינו את הקול
הנשמע באזניהם, וכוה אמר אליהם:
- ראו את בני אהובי, אשר בו רציתי, אשר בו
פארתי את שמי. שמעו אותו!
- והיה כאשר הבינו, הם נשאו עיניהם שנית
השמימה; והנה איש יורד ממרום, והוא
לובש שמלה לבנה. והוא ירד ועמד בקרבם;
ועיני כל ההמון הפנו אליו, והם לא העזו
לפצות פיהם, ואף לא דברו זה אל זה; והם
לא ידעו את פשר הדבר, ען אשר סברו כי
הופיע אליהם מלאך אלהים.
- 1 And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered
together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in
the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with
another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous
change which had taken place.
- 2 And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the
sign had been given concerning his death.
- 3 And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with
another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast
their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which
they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice;
nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce
them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of
their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the
very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.
- 4 And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood
it not.
- 5 And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their
ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they
did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.
- 6 And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they
heard; and it said unto them:
- 7 Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have
glorified my name—hear ye him.
- 8 And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again
towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven;
and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in
the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned
upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another,
and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had
appeared unto them.

- 9 And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:
- 10 Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.
- 11 And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.
- 13 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:
- 14 Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.
- 15 And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.
- 16 And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:
- 17 Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.
- 18 And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.
- 19 And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.
- 20 And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.
- וְהוּא נָטָה אֶת יָדוֹ וַדְּבַר אֶל הָעָם לֵאמֹר:
- הִנְנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הַנְּבִיאִים הֵעִידוּ כִּי אָבוֹא אֶל הָעוֹלָם.
- אֲנִכִּי אֹר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיִּי; אֲנִי שָׁתִיתִי מִכּוֹס הַתֵּרֶעֱלָה אֲשֶׁר נָתַנִּי הָאֵב, וּפָאֲרָתִי אֶת הָאֵב בְּקַחְתִּי עָלַי אֶת חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם; וּבְכֹךְ נִשְׁאַתִּי אֶת רְצוֹן הָאֵב בְּכָל הַדְּבָרִים מִבְּרֵאשִׁית.
- וְהָיָה כְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, נָפַל כָּל הַהֶמְוֵן אֶרְצָה; כִּי הֵם זָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבוּאָה אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם כִּי הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִתְגַּלֶּה אֲלֵיהֶם, אַחֵר עֲלוֹתוֹ הַשְּׁמַיִמָּה.
- אָז דִּבֶּר הָאֱדוֹן אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר:
- קוּמוּ וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי בְּעֶבֶר תִּשְׁלְחוּ יְדֵיכֶם אֶל צֶד גּוֹפִי וּתְמַשְׁשׁוּ אֶת עֲקֻבוֹת הַמַּסְמְרִים בְּיָדַי וּבְרַגְלֵי, בְּעֶבֶר תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֲנִכִּי אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֱלֹהֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ, וְכִי הוּמָתִי לְמַעַן חַטָּאתֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- אָז קָרְבוּ אֵלָיו אַנְשֵׁי הַהֶמְוֵן וְשִׁלְחוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם אֶל צֶדוֹ וּמַשְׁשׁוּ אֶת עֲקֻבוֹת הַמַּסְמְרִים בְּיָדָיו וּבְרַגְלָיו. וְכֹה הֵם עָשׂוּ, אֶחָד-אֶחָד, עַד אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּלָם לִפְנֵי וַראוּ בָמוֹ עֵינֵיהֶם, וּמַשְׁשׁוּ בָמוֹ יְדֵיהֶם וַידְעוּ לֹלֵא סֶפֶק, וְהָיוּ עֵדִים, כִּי אֵכֶן הוּא זֶה, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כְּתִבּוֹ הַנְּבִיאִים כִּי יָבוֹא.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ כָּלָם לִפְנֵי וַראוּ בָמוֹ עֵינֵיהֶם, הֵם קָרְאוּ פֶה אֶחָד לֵאמֹר:
- הוֹשִׁיעֲנָא! בְּרוּךְ שֵׁם אֱלֹהֵינוּ! וְהֵם נָפְלוּ אֶרְצָה לְרַגְלֵי יֵשׁוּעַ וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לוֹ.
- אָז הוּא פָּנָה בְּדִבְרָיו אֶל נְפִי, כִּי נְפִי הָיָה בְּקִרְבִּי הַקָּהֵל, וְצִוָּהוּ לָגֶשֶׁת.
- וְנְפִי קָם וְהָלַךְ אֶל הָאֱדוֹן וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוָה לִפְנֵי וַנִּשֶּׁק אֶת רַגְלָיו.
- אָז צִוָּהוּ הָאֱדוֹן לָקוּם. וְהוּא קָם וַעֲמַד לִפְנָיו.

- 21 And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.
- אז אמר אליו האדון: הנני מיפה את ידך להטביל את העם הזה אחר אשר אעלה שנית השמימה.
- 22 And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.
- והאדון שב וקרא לאחרים ואמר להם כדברים האלה, ונתן להם תקף סמכות להטביל. וכה אמר אליהם: באפן הזה תטבילו, ואל יהיו ביניכם וכוותים.
- 23 Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.
- אכן, אני אומר לכם, כי כל אשר ינחם על חטאיו מפני דבריכם ויחפץ להטביל בשמי, באפן הזה תטבילוהו: הנה, תרדו נא ותעמדו במים, ובשמי תטבילו.
- 24 And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:
- ואלה הדברים אשר תאמרו, בקראכם אותם בשמם, לאמר:
- 25 Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.
- בתקף הסמכות אשר נתנה לי מאת ישוע המשיח, הנני מטביל אותך בשם האב והבן ורוח הקדש. אמן.
- 26 And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.
- אז תשקיעו אותם במים ותשובו ותעלו מן המים.
- 27 And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.
- באפן הזה תטבילו בשמי, כי אכן, הנני אומר לכם, כי האב והבן ורוח הקדש אחד הם. אני באב והאב בי, והאב ואני, אחד.
- 28 And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.
- כאשר צויתכם, כן תטבילו; אל יהיו וכוותים ביניכם, כאשר היו לפנים, ואל יהיו וכוותים ביניכם על עקרי תורתי, כאשר היו לפנים.
- 29 For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.
- אכן, הנני אומר לכם, זה אשר רוח מדון שוררת בקרבו, איננו ממני, כי מן השטן הוא, אשר הוא אבי מדון והוא המעורר את לב בני האדם לריב בזעם זה עם זה.
- 30 Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.
- הנה, אין זו תורתי לעורר את לב בני האדם לזעם זה על זה. כי אם זאת תורתי: כי ירחקו מעליכם דברים כאלה.
- 31 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.
- אכן, הנני אומר לכם, את תורתי אודיעכם.
- 32 And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth
- זאת תורתי, והיא התורה אשר נתנני האב; ואנכי מעיד על האב והאב מעיד עלי, ורוח

הַקֹּדֶשׁ מֵעִיד עַל הָאֵב וְעָלִי; וְהִנְנִי מֵעִיד כִּי
הָאֵב צִוָּה אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם, בְּכָל מְקוֹם, לְהִנָּחם
מִחֲטָא וּלְהֵאֱמִין בִּי.

record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me;
and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to
repent and believe in me.

וְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִין בִּי וּמִטְבָּל הוּא יוֹשֵׁעַ. וְהֵם אֲשֶׁר
יִירָשׁוּ אֶת מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

33 And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved;
and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

וְכָל אֲשֶׁר לֹא מֵאֲמִין בִּי וְאִינוּ מִטְבָּל אָרוּר יִהְיֶה.

34 And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם; כִּי זֹאת תּוֹרָתִי וּמֵאֲת
הָאֵב מֵעִיד אֲנִי עָלֶיךָ; וְכָל הַמֵּאֲמִין בִּי מֵאֲמִין
אֲףִי בָאֵב; וּלְפָנָיו יֵעִיד הָאֵב עָלַי, כִּי הוּא
יִפְקְדֵנוּ בָאֵשׁ וּבִרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

35 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record
of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father
also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit
him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

וְכֵן יֵעִיד הָאֵב עָלַי, וּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ יֵעִיד
לְפָנָיו עַל הָאֵב וְעָלַי, כִּי הָאֵב, וְאֲנִי, וּרוּחַ
הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֶחָד.

36 And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will
bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and
the Holy Ghost are one.

וְשׁוּב אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחם מִחֲטָא,
וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי; וּבִלְתִּי אִם
תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, לֹא תוּכְלוּ בְּשׁוֹם אֶפֶן לְקַבֵּל אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

37 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child,
and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

וְשׁוּב אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: עָלֵיכֶם לְהִנָּחם מִחֲטָא
וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי וּלְהִיטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, וּבִלְתִּי אִם
תַּעֲשׂוּ כֵן, לֹא תוּכְלוּ בְּשׁוֹם אֶפֶן לְרִשֵּׁת אֶת
מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.

38 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name,
and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom
of God.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי זֹאת תּוֹרָתִי, וְכָל
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹנֶה עָלָיו, עַל צוּרִי הוּא בּוֹנֶה, וְשִׁעְרֵי
שָׂאוֹל לֹא יוּכְלוּ לוֹ.

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso
buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall
not prevail against them.

וְכָל הַמְכַרִּיז עַל יוֹתֵר אוּ פָחוֹת מִזֶּה וַיִּכְוֶנֶן אֶת
דְּבָרָיו כְּאֵלוֹ תּוֹרָתִי הֵם, מֵאֲת רָשָׁעָה מוֹצֵאוֹ וְאִין
הוּא בּוֹנֶה עַל צוּרִי, כִּי עַל יְסוֹדוֹת חוֹל הוּא בּוֹנֶה,
וְשִׁעְרֵי שָׂאוֹל פְּתוּחִים לְקַבֵּל אֲשֶׁר כָּמוֹתוֹ
כְּאֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא עָלֵיהֶם הַשֹּׁטְפוֹן וְיָכּוּם הַרוּחוֹת.

40 And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my
doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but
he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open
to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

עַל כֵּן, לָכֵן נֹא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה וְהַשְׁמִיעוּ אֶת
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עַד אֶפְסִי אֶרְץ.

41 Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I
have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

יב

12

וּכְבֻּלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל
נְפִי וְאֶל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָרָאָם, וּמִסְפַּר הַקְּרוּאִים
אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ תִקּוּן וְסִמְכוֹת לְהִטְבִּיל הָיָה שְׁנַיִם

1 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto
Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them
who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was

עָשׂוּ, וְהִנֵּה הוּא נָטָה אֶת יָדוֹ אֶל הַקְּהָל וְקָרָא
אֵלָיו לֵאמֹר: בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ בְּהַקְשִׁיבְכֶם אֶל דְּבָרֵי
שְׁנַיִם עָשׂוֹר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרְתִּי מִתּוֹכְכֶם לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ
לְפָנֶיכֶם וְלִהְיוֹת מְשָׁרְתֵיכֶם. הִנֵּה, יִפְתִּי אֶת
יָדִים לְהַטְבִּילְכֶם בַּמַּיִם; וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר תִּטְבְּלוּ
בַּמַּיִם, אֲטַבִּילְכֶם אֲנִי בָאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
לָכֵן בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ אִם תִּאֱמִינוּ בִּי וּתִטְבְּלוּ, אַחֵר
אֲשֶׁר רְאִיתֶם אוֹתִי, וּבִיָּדְעֶכֶם כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים.

וּמְבָרְכִים אִף יוֹתֵר יִהְיוּ כָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ
בְּדְבָרֵיכֶם, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר תִּעֲשֶׂינִי כִּי רְאִיתֶם אוֹתִי
וַיִּדְעֶתֶם כִּי אֲנִי אֱלֹהִים. אָכֵן, בְּרוּכִים
הַמֵּאֱמִינִים בְּדְבָרֵיכֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁפִּילוּ אֶל
מַעַמְקֵי הַהִכָּנְעָה וְיִטְבְּלוּ, כִּי הֵם יִפְקְדוּ בָאֵשׁ
וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְיִקְבְּלוּ מַחִילָה עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם.

אָכֵן, בְּרוּכִים שְׁפָלֵי הָרוּחַ הַבָּאִים אֵלַי, כִּי
לָהֶם מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם.

וּבְרוּכִים כָּל הָאֲבֵלִים, כִּי הֵם יִנְחָמוּ.

בְּרוּכִים הָעֲנֻוִּים, כִּי הֵם יִירְשׁוּ אֶת הָאָרֶץ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל הָרָעִבִים וְהָצִמְאִים לְצַדִּיקָה, כִּי
הֵם יִמְלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

בְּרוּכִים הָרַחֲמָנִים, כִּי הֵם יִרְחָמוּ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל טְהוֹרֵי הַלֵּב, כִּי הֵם יֵחֲזוּ בְּאֱלֹהִים.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל עוֹשֵׂי שְׁלוֹם, כִּי בְנֵי אֱלֹהִים יִקְרָאוּ.

בְּרוּכִים כָּל הַנִּרְדָּפִים לְמַעַן שְׁמִי, כִּי לָהֶם
מַלְכוּת שָׁמַיִם.

בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ בְּחֶרֶף אֶתְכֶם אֲנָשִׁים
וּבְרִדְפָם אֶתְכֶם, וּבְדַבָּרָם עָלֵיכֶם שָׁקֵר וְכָל
דְּבָרָה רָעָה, בְּעֵבּוּרִי;

כִּי שְׂמַח תִּשְׂמַחוּ וְרוֹנֵן תִּתְרוֹנְנוּ, כִּי רַב יִהְיֶה
שְׂכָרְכֶם בַּשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי כֹן רָדְפוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ לְפָנֶיכֶם.

אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, נִתְתִּיכֶם לִהְיוֹת מֶלֶח
הָאָרֶץ; וְאִם לִמְלַח יֵאָבֵד טַעְמוֹ, בְּמָה תִּמְלַח
הָאָרֶץ? הֵן בְּזֹאת לֹא יִצְלַח הַמֶּלֶח לְדַבֵּר, כִּי

twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

2 And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

3 Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

4 And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

5 And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

6 And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

7 And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

8 And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

9 And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

10 And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

12 For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

13 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted?

- אם להיות משלך החוצה למרמס בני אדם. The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.
- 14 אכן, הנני אומר לכם, נתינתכם להיות אור לעם הזה. עיר היושבת על ההר לא תוכל להסתתר. Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.
- 15 הידלק נר ויושם תחת האזיפה? לא, כי אם על מנורה יושם; אזי יאיר לכל באי הבית. Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;
- 16 על כן, יאיר נא אורכם לפני העם הזה, בעבור יראו את מעשיכם הטובים ויפארו את אביכם אשר בשמים. Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.
- 17 אל תשערו כי באתי לבטל את התורה, או את דברי הנביאים. לא באתי לבטל כי אם לקיים. Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;
- 18 כי אכן אני אומר לכם, לא תעבר יוד אחת, או תג, מן התורה, כי בי התקיימה כלה. For verily I say unto you, one jot nor tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.
- 19 הנה נתתי לכם את תורת אבי ואת מצוותי, למען תאמינו בי, ולמען תנחמו על חטאיכם, ותבואו אלי בלב נשבר וברוח נכאה. הן לפניכם המצוות והתורה מקיימת. And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.
- 20 לכן, בואו אלי והושעו, כי אכן אני אומר לכם, בלתי אם תשמרו את מצוותי אשר צויתכם עתה, לא תבואו בשום אופן אל מלכות השמים. Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.
- 21 שמעתם כי בימי קדם נאמר, ואף לפניכם כתוב: לא תרצח; ואשר ירצח, יעמד בסכנת משפט אלהים. Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;
- 22 ואולם אני אומר לכם, כי כל הקוצץ על אחיו, יעמד בסכנת משפטו, ואשר יקרא לאחיו ריקה יעמד בסכנת מועצת הדינים, ואשר יאמר שוטה אתה, יסתכן באש שאול. But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.
- 23 על כן, אם תבוא אלי, או אם תחפץ לבוא אלי, ותזכר כי לאחיו יש דבר-מה עליה, לך לך אליו והתפייס תחלה עמו, ואחרי כן תבוא אלי בלב שלם ואני אקבלך. Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—
- 24 לך לך אליו והתפייס תחלה עמו, ואחרי כן תבוא אלי בלב שלם ואני אקבלך. Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.
- 25 מהר להתרצות אל איש ריבך בעודך בדרך עמו, פן יתפשד אייפועם ואל בית הכלא תשלך. Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison

- 26 Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.
- אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, יֵצֵא לֹא תִצָּא מִשָּׁם, כִּי אִם אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַמְתָּ אֶת הַסֵּנִין הָאֲחֵרוֹן. וּבִשְׂבִיתְךָ בַּכֶּלָּא, הֲתוּכָל לְשַׁלֵּם אֶף סֵנִין אֶחָד? אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא!
- 27 Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;
- הִנֵּה, בִּימֵי קִדְם נִכְתָּב: לֹא תִנְאַף.
- 28 But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל הַמִּבִּיט בְּאִשָּׁה לְחַמֵּד אוֹתָהּ, נֶאֱוָף נִנְאָפָה בְּלִבּוֹ.
- 29 Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;
- הִנְנִי מְצִוֶּה אֶתְכֶם אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִתִּירוּ לְאֵף אֶחָד מִכָּל אֵלֶּה לְהִכָּנֵס אֶל לְבַבְכֶּם.
- 30 For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.
- כִּי טוֹב אֲשֶׁר תִּמְנָעוּס מֵכֶּם, וּבִזָּאת תִּשְׁאוּ אֶת צִלְבְּכֶם, מֵאֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁלְכוּ שְׂאוֹלָה.
- 31 It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.
- כָּתוּב כִּי הַמְשַׁלַּח אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ, יִתֵּן לָהּ סֵפֶר כְּרִיתוֹת.
- 32 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.
- אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כָל הַמְשַׁלַּח אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ, בְּלִתֵּי עַל דְּבַר זְנוּת, עוֹשֶׂה אוֹתָהּ נֹאֲפֶת וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַף לֹא לְאִשָּׁה נֹאֵף הוּא.
- 33 And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;
- וְאֵף כָּתוּב: לֹא תִשְׁבַּע לְשָׁקֶר, כִּי הָקֵם תִּקִּים לַיהוָה אֶת שְׁבוּעוֹתֶיךָ.
- 34 But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;
- וְאוֹלָם, אָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם: לֹא תִשְׁבַּע כָּל שְׁבוּעָה; לֹא בַשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי כִסֵּא אֱלֹהִים הִמָּה;
- 35 Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;
- וְלֹא בָאָרֶץ, כִּי הָדוֹם רִגְלָיו הִיא.
- 36 Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;
- אֵף בְּרֹאשְׁךָ אַל תִּשְׁבַּע, כִּי אֵין בִּיכְלִיתְךָ לְהַפֵּךְ שְׂעָרָה אַחַת לְשֹׁהַרָה אוֹ לְלִבְנָה.
- 37 But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.
- אֵף יְהִי דִבְרֶיךָ: הֵן, הֵן; לֹא, לֹא; כִּי כָל הַנוֹסֵף עַל אֵלֶּה רָע הוּא.
- 38 And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;
- וְהִנֵּה, כָּתוּב: עֵין תַּחַת עֵין וְשֵׁן תַּחַת שֵׁן.
- 39 But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָךְ אַל תִּתְּנֵגַד לְרָע, וְכָל הַמִּכֶּה עַל הַלְּחִי הַיְּמָנִית, הִטָּה לוֹ גַּם אֶת הַשְּׁנִיָּה.
- 40 And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;
- וְאִם יִתְּבַע אוֹתְךָ אִישׁ לְדִין וַיִּקַּח אֶת כְּתָנְיָךְ, הִנַּח לוֹ גַּם אֶת מְעִילְךָ.

- 41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.
וְכֹל הַמְּפָצִיר בָּךְ לָלֶכֶת עִמּוֹ דֶּרֶךְ מִילָה, לֵךְ עִמּוֹ שְׁנַיִם.
- 42 Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not away.
הַשּׁוֹאֵל מִמֶּךָ תֵּן לוֹ, וְהַבֹּא לְלוֹוֹת מִמֶּךָ אַל תֵּשֶׁב פָּנֶיךָ רִיקָם.
- 43 And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;
וְהִנֵּה, אַכֵּן כָּתוּב, וְאַהֲבֵתָ לְרֵעֶךָ וְאֹיֲבֶךָ תִשָּׂא.
- 44 But I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;
וְאֹמֵר הֵנִי אֲמַר לָכֶם, אֲהַבּוּ אֶת אֹיְבֵיכֶם וּבְרַכּוּ אֶת מְקַלְלֵיכֶם, וְהִיטִיבוּ לְשׁוֹנְאֵיכֶם וְהִתְפַּלְלוּ בְּעַד מְנַצְלֵיכֶם וְרוֹדְפֵיכֶם;
- 45 That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.
לְמַעַן תִּהְיוּ בְּנֵי אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי הוּא מַעֲלֶה אֶת שֶׁמֶשׁוֹ הַזֹּרֶחַ עַל הָרָעִים וְעַל הַטּוֹבִים.
- 46 Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.
לְכֵן, הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר מִימֵי קֶדֶם, אֲשֶׁר בַּתּוֹרָה, בִּי קִיְּמוּ כָּלָם.
- 47 Old things are done away, and all things have become new.
הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְהַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ.
- 48 Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.
לְכֵן, חָפְצִי כִּי תִהְיוּ מְשֻׁלְּמִים כְּמוֹנִי וְכִמוֹ אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם.

יג

13

- 1 Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.
אֲכֵן, הֵנִי אֲמַר לָכֶם: רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִתְּנוּ צְדָקָה לְעֲנִיִּים; אֲךָ הִשְׁמְרוּ לָכֶם מַעֲשֵׂוֹת אֶת צְדָקְתְּכֶם לִפְנֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לְמַעַן יֵרְאוֹכֶם. אֲשֶׁר אִם לֹא כֵן, אֵין לָכֶם שָׂכָר מֵאֵת אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- 2 Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.
לְכֵן בְּעֲשׂוֹתְכֶם צְדָקָה, אַל תִּרְעוּ לִפְנֵיכֶם בְּשׁוֹפָר, כְּמַעֲשֵׂה הַחֲנֻפִּים בְּבֵתֵי הַכְּנָסִיּוֹת וּבִרְחוֹבוֹת, לְמַעַן יְהַלְלוּ בְּנֵי אָדָם. אֲכֵן אֲנִי אֲמַר לָכֶם, לְקוֹחַ לְקַחְוּ אֶת שְׂכָרְכֶם.
- 3 But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;
וְאַתָּה, בְּעֲשׂוֹתְךָ צְדָקָה, אַל תִּדַּע שְׂמאלְךָ אֶת אֲשֶׁר עוֹשֶׂה יְמִינְךָ;
- 4 That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.
לְמַעַן תִּהְיֶה צְדָקְתְּךָ בְּסֵתֶר; וְאַבִּיךָ, הָרוֹאֶה בְּמִסְתָּרִים, גָּמוּל יִגְמְלֶךָ בְּגָלוּי.
- 5 And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the

- הרחובות, למען יראום בני אדם. אכן אני
אומר לכם, לקוח לקחו את שכרם.
- 6 But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.
- 7 But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.
- 8 Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.
- 9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.
- 10 Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.
- 11 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.
- 12 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.
- 13 For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.
- 14 For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;
- 15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.
- 16 Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.
- 17 But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;
- 18 That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.
- 19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;
- ואתה, כי תתפלל, בוא בחדרך וסגר את
דלתך והתפלל אל אביך אשר בסתר; ואביך
הרואה במסתרים, גמול יגמלך בגלוי.
- ובהתפללכם, אל תשתמשו בחזרות שוא,
ככופרים, הסוברים כי בהרבותם מלים ישמעו.
- ואתם, אל תדמו להם אפוא, כי יודע אביכם
את כל צרככם בטרם תבקשוהו.
- לכן, באופן הזה תתפלל: אבינו אשר
בשמים, יתקדש שמך.
- יעשה רצונך בארץ כבשמים.
- מחל נא לנו על חובותינו, כפי שמוחלים
אנחנו לחיבים לנו.
- ואל תביאנו לידי נסיון, כי אם הצילנו מן הרע.
- כי לך הממלכה והעז והתפארת עד עולם. אמן.
- כי אם תסלחו לבני אדם על עברותיהם,
יסלח אביכם אשר בשמים אף לכם.
- אך אם לא תסלחו לבני אדם על עברותיהם,
לא יסלח אביכם לכם על עברותיכם.
- וכי תצומו, אל תהיו כחנפים המקדירים
פנים, כי משנים הם את פניהם בעבור יראו
לבני אדם קצמים. אכן אני אומר לכם, לקוח
לקחו את שכרם.
- ואתה, כי תצום, סוד ראשך ורחץ פניך;
- למען לא יראה צומך לבני אדם, כי אם
לאביך אשר בסתר; ואביך הרואה
במסתרים, גמול יגמלך בגלוי.
- אל תאצרו לכם אוצרות בארץ, אשר
ישחתום שם עש וחלדה, וגנבים יחטרו
אליהם ויגזלו;

20 But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.
 כי אם אִצְרוּ לָכֶם אוֹצְרוֹת בַּשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר עֵשׂ וְחָלְדָה לֹא יִשְׁחָתוּם שָׁם, וְגַנָּבִים לֹא יַחְתְּרוּ אֲלֵיהֶם וְלֹא יִגְזְלוּם.

21 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.
 כי בַּמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיֶה אוֹצְרְךָ, שָׁם יִהְיֶה אִפְּךָ לִבְבְּךָ.

22 The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.
 אור הגוף הוא העין; ואם עֵינְךָ אַחַת, כָּל גּוּפְךָ מְלֵא אור.

23 But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!
 אך אם רָעָה עֵינְךָ, כָּל גּוּפְךָ יִמְלֵא חֹשֶׁךְ; עַל כֵּן, אִם הָאור אֲשֶׁר בְּךָ יִחְשֹׁךְ, מִה רַב הַחֹשֶׁךְ הַהוּא!

24 No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.
 לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ לַעֲבֹד שְׁנֵי אֲדוֹנִים; כִּי אִם יִשְׂנֹא אֶת הָאֶחָד וַיֵּאָהֵב אֶת הָאֲחֵר, אוּ יִדְבֹּק בָּאֶחָד וַיִּבְזֶה אֶת הָאֲחֵר. לֹא תוּכְלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים וְאֶת הַמָּמוֹן.

25 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?
 וּכְכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא הִבִּיט עַל שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר נִבְחָרָיו וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: זְכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי. כִּי הִנֵּכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּחַרְתִּי לְשִׁמֵּשׁ לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה. עַל כֵּן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אַל תִּדְאָגוּ לִנְפְשְׁכֶם מִה תֹּאכְלוּ וּמִה תִּשְׁתּוּ, וּלְגוּפְכֶם מִה תִּלְבָּשׁוּ; הֲאִין הַנֶּפֶשׁ יְקָרָה מִמָּזוֹן וְהַגּוּף מִמַּלְבוּשׁ?

26 Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?
 רְאוּ אֶת עוֹפוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶם זֹרְעִים וְאֵינֶם קוֹצְרִים וְאֵינֶם אוֹסְפִים לְאֻסָּמִים; אֲךָ אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בַּשָּׁמַיִם מְכַלְכֵּלֶם. הֲאִין טוֹבִים אַתֶּם מֵהֶם?

27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?
 מִי בָכֶם אֲשֶׁר יוּכַל, עַל יְדֵי מַחְשַׁבְתּוֹ, לְהוֹסִיף עַל קוֹמָתוֹ אֲמָה אַחַת?

28 And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;
 וּמַדּוּעַ תִּתְּנוּ דַּעְתְּכֶם לְלִבּוּשׁ? הֲתִבּוֹנְנוּ נָא אֶל שׁוֹשַׁנֵּי הַשָּׂדֶה, אֵיךְ הֵן גִּדְּלוּת; אֵינֶן עֹמְלוֹת וְאֵינֶן טוֹווֹת.

29 And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.
 וְאוּלָם אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אִפְּךָ שְׁלֹמֹה בְּכָל הַדָּרוֹ לֹא הָיָה לְבוּשׁ כְּאַחַת מֵהֶן.

30 Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.
 לְכֵן, אִם כֵּךְ מַלְבִּישׁ אֱלֹהִים אֶת הָעֵצֶר הַשָּׂדֶה אֲשֶׁר הַיּוֹם צוֹמַחַ וּמָחָר יִשְׁלָף לְתוֹךְ הַתֵּנּוֹר, הֲרִי כֵךְ יַלְבִּישׁ אֶתְכֶם, אִם לֹא תִמְעָטוּ אֱמוּנָה.

- על כן, אל תעלו בדעתכם כל מחשבה כגון: מה נאכל? או, מה נשתה? או, איכה נלבש?
- 31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?
- כי אביכם אשר בשמים יודע כי צריכם אתם לכל אלה.
- 32 For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.
- אך בקשו תחלה את מלכות אלהים ואת צדקתו וכל הדברים האלה יתוספו לכם.
- 33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.
- לכן, אל תדאגו ליום המחר, כי המחר ידאג לעניניו, וידיו היום לצרתו.
- 34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

י

14

- וככלות ישוע לדבר את הדברים האלה, הוא פנה שנית אל המון העם, ודבר אליהם לאמר: אכן, הנני אומר לכם, אל תדונו, למען לא תדונו אתם.
- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.
- כי בדיו אשר אתם דנים, תדונו אתם; ובמידה אשר אתם מודדים, תמדדו אף אתם.
- 2 For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.
- ולמה זה אתה רואה את הקיסם בעין אחיה, ואלו לקורה אשר בעינך לא תשית לבך?
- 3 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?
- או, איכה תאמר אל אחיך: תניני לטל את הקיסם מעינך, והנה, יש בעינך קורה?
- 4 Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?
- אתה, החנף, טל תחלה את הקורה מעינך, ואז ראה תראה לטל את הקיסם מעין אחיך.
- 5 Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.
- אל תתנו את אשר קדוש הוא לכלבים, ואל תשליכו פניניכם לפני חזירים, פן ירמסון ברגליהם, ויפנו אליכם ויטרפוקם.
- 6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.
- בקשו, וינתן לכם; דרשו, ותמצאו; דפקו, ויפתח לכם.
- 7 Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
- כי כל המבקש, יקבל; והדורש, ימצא; והדופק, יפתח לו.
- 8 For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.
- ואיזה איש מכם, כֹּאֶשֶׁר בָּנוּ וּבִקְשׁוּהוּ לֶחֶם, יתן לו אבן?
- 9 Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?
- וכי יבקש ממנו דג, היתן לו נחש?
- 10 Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

- 11 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?
- הֵן אַם אַתֶּם, אֲשֶׁר רָשָׁעִים אַתֶּם, יוֹדְעִים לָתֵת מִתְּנוּת טוֹבוֹת לְבָנֵיכֶם, עַל אַחַת בְּמָה וּבְמָה יִרְבֶּה אֲבִיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם לְהִיטִיב לְמִבְקָשָׁיו.
- 12 Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.
- לָכֵן, כָּל אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲפֹצוּ כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לָכֶם בְּנֵי אָדָם, אוֹתוֹ עֲשׂוּ לָהֶם, כִּי זֶה דְּבַר הַתּוֹרָה וְהַנְּבִיאִים.
- 13 Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;
- בּוֹאוּ בַשַּׁעַר הַצָּר, כִּי רָחֵב הַשַּׁעַר וְרוֹחָבָה הַדֶּרֶךְ הַמּוֹלִיכָה אֵלֵי אֲבִדוֹן, וְרַבִּים הַבָּאִים בָּהּ.
- 14 Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.
- כִּי צָר הַשַּׁעַר, וְיָשָׁר הַדֶּרֶךְ הַמּוֹלִיכָה לַחַיִּים, וּמַעֲטִים מוֹצְאֶיהָ.
- 15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.
- הִשָּׁמְרוּ לָכֶם מִנְּבִיאֵי שֹׁקֶר, הַבָּאִים אֵלֵיכֶם בְּלִבוּשׁ כְּבָשִׁים, אֲךָ בְּקֶרֶבָם זֵאֲבִים מִשְׁחָרֵי טָרֶף.
- 16 Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?
- הֵן תִּכְרִירוֹם לְפִי פְרִיָם. הֲיִבְצֹר אִישׁ עֲנָבִים מִן הַקּוֹצִים, אוֹ יֵאָרֶה תְּאֵנִים מִן הַדֶּרְדְּרִים?
- 17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.
- וְכֵמוֹ כֵּן, כָּל עֵץ טוֹב נוֹתֵן פְּרִי טוֹב; וְעֵץ נִשְׁחָת נוֹתֵן פְּרִי רָע.
- 18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.
- עֵץ טוֹב לֹא יוּכַל לָתֵת פְּרִי רָע, וְעֵץ נִשְׁחָת לֹא יֵתֵן פְּרִי טוֹב.
- 19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.
- וְכָל עֵץ אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵתֵן פְּרִי טוֹב יִגָּדַע וְלֹאֵשׁ יִשְׂלָךְ.
- 20 Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.
- לָכֵן לְפִי פְרִיָם תִּכְרִירוֹם.
- 21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.
- לֹא כָל הָאוֹמֵר לִי: אֲדֹנָי, אֲדֹנָי, יָבוֹא אֶל מַלְכוּת הַשָּׁמַיִם, כִּי אִם הַעוֹשֶׂה אֶת רְצוֹן אָבִי אֲשֶׁר בְּשָׁמַיִם.
- 22 Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?
- וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא, רַבִּים יֹאמְרוּ אֵלַי: אֲדֹנָי, אֲדֹנָי, הֲלֹא בְשִׁמְךָ נִבְּאֵנוּ, וּבְשִׁמְךָ גִּרְשָׁנוּ שָׂדִים, וּבְשִׁמְךָ עָשִׂינוּ נִפְלְאוֹת רַבּוֹת?
- 23 And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.
- אָז אֶעֱנֶה לָהֶם לֵאמֹר: מֵעוֹלָם לֹא יָדַעְתִּיכֶם; סוּרוּ מִמֶּנִּי, פּוֹעֲלֵי אָוֶן.
- 24 Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—
- לָכֵן, כָּל הַשּׁוֹמֵעַ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֵלֹהִים וּמַקְיָמָם, אֶמְשִׁילֵהוּ לְאִישׁ חָכָם אֲשֶׁר בָּנָה אֶת בֵּיתוֹ עַל סֶלֶעַ.

- וְהַגָּשָׁם יָרַד, וְשִׁטְפֵי הַמַּיִם עָלוּ, וְהַרוּחוֹת נָשְׁבוּ
וְהִלְמוּ בְּבֵית הַהוּא; וְאֵכֶן, הוּא לֹא נָפַל, כִּי עַל
סֵלַע יָסַד.
- וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמְעֵי אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהִים וְאֵינֻם מְקִיְמִים, מְשׁוּל
לְאִישׁ בְּעֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּנָה אֶת בֵּיתוֹ עַל חוֹל.
- וְהַגָּשָׁם יָרַד, וְשִׁטְפֵי הַמַּיִם עָלוּ, וְהַרוּחוֹת
נָשְׁבוּ וְהִלְמוּ בְּבֵית הַהוּא; וְהוּא נָפַל וְגָדוֹלָה
הָיְתָה מַפְלָתוֹ.
- 25 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and
beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.
- 26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not
shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—
- 27 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and
beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

טו

15

- וּכְכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא
נָשָׂא אֶת עֵינָיו סָבִיב אֶל הַקָּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:
הִנֵּה שְׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לִמַּדְתִּי לָפָנַי
עֲלוּתִי אֶל אָבִי; עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַזֹּכֵר אֶת דְּבָרֵי
אֱלֹהִים וּמְקִיְמִים, אוֹתוֹ אֶנְשֵׂא בְיוֹם הָאַחֲרוֹן.
- וּכְדַבֵּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא רָאָה
כִּי הָיוּ שָׁם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְאוּ וְתָמְהוּ עַל
יְחֹסוֹ אֶל תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ
אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָמַר כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְכִי
הַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: אַל תִּשְׁתַּוְּמוּמוּ עַל
אֲמָרֵי לָכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ וְכִי
הַכֹּל הִתְחַדָּשׁ.
- וְהִנֵּי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הַתּוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה לְמֹשֶׁה
מְקִיְמָה.
- אֲנֹכִי אֲשֶׁר נִתַּתִּי אֶת הַתּוֹרָה, וְאֲנֹכִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי
בְּרִית עִם עַמִּי יִשְׂרָאֵל; עַל כֵּן, בִּי מְקִיְמָה
הַתּוֹרָה, כִּי בָאתִי לְקִיְמָהּ; וְלָכֵן יֵשׁ לָהּ תְּכֵלֶת.
- הִנֵּה, אֵינִי מְבַטֵּל אֶת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי כָּל
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר לֹא קִיְמוּ בִּי, אֲכֹן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם
קִיּוֹם יְקִימוּ.
- וּבְדַבְרֵי אֲלֵיכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הַיְשָׁנִים חָלְפוּ,
אֵינִי מְבַטֵּל אֶת אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמַר עַל הַבָּאוֹת.
- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings
he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them:
Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to
my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and
doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.
- 2 And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he per-
ceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered
what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not
the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had
become new.
- 3 And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things
had passed away, and that all things had become new.
- 4 Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto
Moses.
- 5 Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with
my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to
fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.
- 6 Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been
fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.
- 7 And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do
not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are
to come.

- 8 For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כְּרַתִּי עִם עַמִּי לֹא קִיְּמָה כְּלָהּ; אֲךָ לְתוֹרָה אֲשֶׁר נִתְּנָה לְמֹשֶׁה יֵשׁ תְּכַלִּית בִּי.
- 9 Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.
- הִנֵּה, אֲנִכִּי הַתּוֹרָה וְהָאוֹר. הִבִּיטוּ אֵלַי וְהִתְמַיְדוּ עַד הַקֶּץ וְתַחֲיוּ, כִּי לְמַתְמִיד עַד הַקֶּץ אֶתֶן חַיֵּי עוֹלָם.
- 10 Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.
- הִנֵּה נָתַתִּי לָכֶם אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת; עַל כֵּן, שְׁמְרוּ אֶת מִצְוֹתַי. זֹאת הַתּוֹרָה וְאֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי הֵם אֲכֹן הֶעִידוּ עָלַי נֶאֱמָנָה.
- 11 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:
- וּבְכַלּוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא אָמַר אֶל שְׁנַיִם הָעֲשָׂר אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר:
- 12 Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.
- אַתֶּם תַּלְמִידַי וְאַתֶּם אוֹר לְעַם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הוּא שְׂאֲרִית בֵּית יוֹסֵף.
- 13 And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.
- הִנֵּה, זֶה אֶרֶץ נַחֲלַתְכֶם וְהָאָב נָתַן לָכֶם.
- 14 And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.
- וּמִעוֹלָם לֹא צִוִּי הָאָב לֵאמֹר זֹאת לְאַחֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם.
- 15 Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.
- אֲףִי לֹא צִוִּי הָאָב לְהוֹדִיעַם עַל אוֹדוֹת שְׂאֵר שְׁבֻטֵי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אֲשֶׁר הוּצִיָּאם מִן הָאֶרֶץ.
- 16 This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:
- וְאוֹלָם זֹאת צִוִּי הָאָב כִּי אֲגִידֶם:
- 17 That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.
- צֹאן נֹסְפוֹת לִי, אֲשֶׁר אֵין הֵן מִן הָעֶדֶר הַזֶּה; וְאִף אוֹתָן עָלַי לְהָבִיא; וְהֵן יִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת קוֹלִי, וְהָיָה עֶדֶר אֶחָד וְרוֹעֶה אֶחָד.
- 18 And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.
- וְהֵנָּה, מִפְּנֵי קָשִׁי עֲרֹף וְחִסָּר אֱמוּנָה הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי. עַל כֵּן צִוִּי הָאָב כִּי לֹא אוֹסִיף לֵאמֹר לָהֶם עַל אוֹדוֹת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- 19 But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.
- אָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הָאָב צִוִּי, וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם זֹאת, כִּי הִפְרַדְתֶּם מֵעַמָּם מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם; לָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם אֵין הֵם יוֹדְעִים עֲלֵיכֶם.
- 20 And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.
- וְאִף אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם כִּי אֶת שְׂאֵר הַשְּׁבָטִים הִפְרִיד מֵהֶם הָאָב, וּמִפְּנֵי עוֹוֹנָם אֵין הֵם יוֹדְעִים עֲלֵיהֶם.

- וְאֵכֶן אֲנִי אֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי הֵנֶכֶם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
עָלִיְהֶם אֲמַרְתִּי: צֹאן נֹסְפוֹת לִי, אֲשֶׁר אֵין הֵן
מִן הָעֵדֶר הַזֶּה; וְאִם אוֹתָן עָלִי לְהִבְיֹא; וְהֵן
יִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת קוֹלִי, וְהִיָּה עֵדֶר אֶחָד וְרוֹעֶה אֶחָד.
- וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי, בְּסִבְרָם כִּי אֵלֶּה הַגּוֹיִים;
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי הַגּוֹיִים יִהְיוּ
לְמַאֲמִינִים עַל יְדֵי הַטָּפָתָם.
- וְהֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי בְּאֹמְרִי כִּי הֵן יִשְׁמְעוּ אֶת
קוֹלִי; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הֵם לֹא הִבִּינוּנִי כִּי הַגּוֹיִים לֹא
יִשְׁמְעוּ כָּלֵל אֶת קוֹלִי, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא אֶתְגַּלֶּה
אֲלֵיהֶם, כִּי אִם עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, אַתֶּם שָׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת קוֹלִי וְאִם רֵאִיתֶם
אוֹתִי; אַתֶּם צֹאנִי וְאַתֶּם נִמְנָיִם עִם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
נָתַנִּים לִי הָאֵב.
- 21 And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.
- 22 And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.
- 23 And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.
- 24 But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

טז

16

- וְאֵכֶן, הִנֵּנִי אֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יֵשׁ לִי צֹאן נֹסְפוֹת
אֲשֶׁר אֵינֶן מִן הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְאֵינֶן מֵאֶרֶץ
יְרוּשָׁלַם, וְאִם לֹא מֵאֶחָד מִמְּחֻבְלֵי הָאֶרֶץ
הַגּוֹבְלִים בָּהּ, אֲשֶׁר שָׁם בָּאתִי לְשִׁמּוֹשׁ.
- כִּי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָלִיְהֶם אֲנִי מְדַבֵּר לֹא שָׁמְעוּ
עַד־כֵּן אֶת קוֹלִי, וְאִם לֹא הִתְגַּלִּיתִי אֲלֵיהֶם אֲפֹלֵם
פַּעַם אַחַת.
- אֲךָ צִוִּנִי הָאֵב כִּי אֵלֶּךְ אֲלֵיהֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁמְעוּ
אֶת קוֹלִי וְיִמְנֹו עִם צֹאנִי, לְמַעַן יִהְיֶה עֵדֶר אֶחָד
וְרוֹעֶה אֶחָד; עַל כֵּן אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ לְהִרְאוֹת אֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְאֲנִי מְצֻוֶּכֶם כִּי תִכְתְּבוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אַחֲרֵי לְכֹתִי; וְהִיָּה אִם עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם,
הֵם אֲשֶׁר רָאוּנִי וְהָיוּ עַמִּי בְּעֵת שְׁמִשׁוֹתִי לֹא
יִבְקְשׁוּ מִן הָאֵב בְּשִׁמְיִי, כִּי יִקְבְּלוּ יְדִיעָה עָלֵיכֶם
עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְכֵן עַל שְׁאֵר הַשְּׁבָטִים
אֲשֶׁר עַל אֲדוֹמִיתֵיהֶם אֵין הֵם יוֹדְעִים דְּבַר, וְהִיָּה
כִּי יִשְׁמְרוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתְּבוּ, וְיִצְגּוּ
לְפָנֵי הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן תִּבּוֹא שְׂאֵרִית זֶרַעַם, אֲשֶׁר
תִּהְיֶה פְּזוּרָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֲמוּנָתָם,
אֶל הַיְדִיעָה אוֹתִי, גּוֹאֲלָם, עַל יְדֵי מְלֹא הַגּוֹיִים.
- 1 And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.
- 2 For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.
- 3 But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.
- 4 And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

- 5 And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfill the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.
- אֲזִי אֶקְבֹּצֶם מֵאַרְבַּע כְּנָפֹת הָאָרֶץ, וְאֲזִי אֶקְיֵם אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב לְכָל אֲנָשֵׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 6 And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.
- וּבְרוּכִים יִהְיוּ הַגּוֹיִּים עַל אֲמוּנָתָם בִּי, בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְעַל יְדִיו, הַמַּעֲיֵד לָהֶם עָלַי וְעַל הָאֵב.
- 7 Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.
- הִנֵּה, מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם בִּי, נְאוּם הָאֵב, וּמִפְּנֵי חֲסָר אֲמוּנָתְכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, תָּבוֹא הָאֱמֻנָה בְּאַחֲרִית הַיָּמִים אֶל הַגּוֹיִּים, בְּעִבּוֹר יוֹדְעוֹ לָהֶם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בְּמִלְאָם.
- 8 But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;
- אֲךָ אוֹי לַגּוֹיִּים, נְאוּם הָאֵב, אֲשֶׁר אֵינָם מְאֻמִּינִים, אִךְ כִּי פָשְׁטוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת וְהִפְצִיזוּ אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה; וְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה, גָּרְשׁוּ מִקִּרְבָּם וְנִרְמְסוּ תַּחַת רַגְלֵיהֶם;
- 9 And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—
- וּמִפְּנֵי רַחֲמֵי הָאֵב עַל הַגּוֹיִּים, וְכֹן מִפְּנֵי מִשְׁפָּטָיו עַל עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה, אֲכֹן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי אַחֵר כָּל אֵלֶּה, וְיָעַן אֲשֶׁר גָּרַמְתִּי כִּי עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הָמָּה, יִהְיוּ מְכִּים וּמַעֲנִים בְּיַדֵּי הַגּוֹיִּים, וְיִהְיוּ וְיִשְׁלָכוּ מִקִּרְבָּם, וְיִהְיוּ שְׂנוֹאִים עֲלֵיהֶם וְיִהְיוּ לְמִשְׁלַל וּלְשִׁנְיָנָה בְּקִרְבָּם;
- 10 And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.
- וְכֹה צִוָּה הָאֵב כִּי אֵמַר אֲלֵיכֶם: בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִחְטְאוּ הַגּוֹיִּים כְּנֶגֶד בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי, וְיִמָּאֲסוּ בְּבִשְׁוֹרְתִּי בְּמִלְאָה, וְתִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּגָאוֹת לָכֶם מֵעַל כָּל הָאֲמוּנוֹת וּמֵעַל כָּל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר לְתַבְּל כְּלָה, וְיִמָּלְאוּ בְּכָל מִיֵּי שָׁקָר וּמְרֵמָה וְכָזָב וּתְחַבּוּלוֹת רָשָׁע, וְכָל צְבִיעוֹת וְרִצָּח וּתְחַבּוּלוֹת כְּמוֹרָה, וְזִנוּת וְתוֹעֵבוֹת סֵתֵר; וְאִם יַעֲשׂוּ אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה וְיִמָּאֲסוּ בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי, נְאוּם הָאֵב, לְקוֹחַ אֶקַּח מִקִּרְבָּם אֶת מִלְאָ בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי.
- 11 And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.
- אֲזִי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתִי אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי לְעַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאָבִיא אֶת בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 12 And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.
- וְאֲזִי אֶרְאֶה לָכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, כִּי לֹא יוּכְלוּ לָכֶם הַגּוֹיִּים; כִּי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת בְּרִיתִי לָכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, וְאַתֶּם תָּבוֹאוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת בְּשׁוֹרְתִּי בְּמִלְאָה.
- 13 But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.
- אֲךָ אִם יִתְּנֻמוּ הַגּוֹיִּים עַל רַעְתָּם וְיָשׁוּבוּ אֵלַי, נְאוּם הָאֵב, הִמָּנָה יִמְנוּ עִם עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

- 14 And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.
- 15 But if they will not return unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.
- 16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.
- 17 And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:
- 18 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.
- 19 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- 20 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eye of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.
- וְלֹא אֶתִיר לְעַמִּי אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה, לְעֵבֶר בְּקִרְבָּם וּלְרַמְסָם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב.
- וְאִם לֹא יָשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִים אֵלַי וְלֹא יִשְׁמָעוּ לְקוֹלִי, הִתֵּר אֶתִיר לְעַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, כִּי יַעֲבְרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם וַיִּרְמְסוּם; אַזִּי יִהְיוּ הֵם כַּמֶּלַח אֲשֶׁר סָר טַעְמוֹ, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִצְלַח עוֹד, כִּי אִם לִהְיוֹת מִשְׁלַף הַחוּצָה וּלְהִיּוֹת מִרְמָס לְרַגְלֵי עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- אֲכֹן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּה צֻוֵּי הָאֵב, כִּי אֶתֶּן לָעָם הַזֶּה אֶת הָאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלָה לָהֶם.
- אֹז יִתְקַיְמוּ דְבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ הַנְּבִיא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר לֵאמֹר:
- קוֹל צִפְיָךְ נִשְׁאוּ קוֹל; יַחְדָּו יִרְנְנוּ, כִּי עֵין בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ בָשׁוּב יְהוָה צִיּוֹן.
- פִּצְחוּ רִנְנוּ יַחְדָּו, חֲרוֹבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם, כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עֲמוֹ, גָּאֵל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
- חֲשֹׁף יְהוָה אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם; וִירְאוּ כָל אֲפָסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ.

יז

17

- 1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.
- 2 I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.
- 3 Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.
- 4 But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.
- 5 And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב וַהֲבִיט סְבִיב עַל הַקְהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הִנֵּה, שְׁעִתִּי קִרְבָּה.
- רוֹאֶה אֲנִי כִּי רַפִּים אַתֶּם, כִּי אֵינְכֶם יְכוּלִים לְהִבִּין אֶת כָּל דְּבָרֵי אֲשֶׁר צֻוֵּי הָאֵב לְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם כְּעַתָּה.
- לְכֹן, לָכוּ נָא לְבֵתֵיכֶם וְהִרְהַרוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אָמַרְתִּי, וּבְקִשׁוּ מֵאֵת הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי, לְמַעַן תִּבְיְנוּ, וְהִכִּינוּ אֶת לְבָבְכֶם לַיּוֹם הַמּוֹחֵר, וְאֲנִי אָשׁוּב וְאָבּוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ אֶל הָאֵב וְאֶף לְהִרְאוֹת אֶל שְׁבִטֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל הָאֲבֻדִּים, כִּי אֵין הֵם אֲבֻדִּים לָאֵב, הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֵנָּה לְקַחְתָּם.
- וְכַכְלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר זֹאת, הוּא נִשָּׂא שְׁנִית אֶת עֵינָיו סְבִיב עַל הַקְהָל, וְרָאָה כִּי דִמְעוּ וְכִי דִבְק

- בו מִבְּטָם כָּאֵלוּ בִקְשׁוּ כִי יֵאָרִיךְ מֵעַתָּה שְׁהוּתוֹ עִמָּם.
- וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנֵּה, מַעֲי מִלְּאִים רַחֲמִים עֲלֵיכֶם.
- וְהִישׁ בְּכֶם חוֹלִים? הֲבִיאוּם הִנֵּה. הִישׁ בְּכֶם פֶּסֶחַ, אוֹ עִוְר, אוֹ צוֹלֵעַ, אוֹ נָכָה, אוֹ מְצֹרַע, אוֹ בַּעַל מוּם, חֵרֵשׁ אוֹ בַּעַל פֶּגַע כְּלָשְׁהוּ? הֲבִיאוּם הִנֵּה וְאֶרְפָּאֵם, כִּי חוֹמֵל אֲנִי עֲלֵיכֶם, וַיַּמְעִי מִלְּאוֹ רַחֲמִים.
- נֹכַח אֲנִי כִי חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם כִּי אֶרְאֶה לָכֶם אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי לְאַחֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם. הֵן רָאִיתִי כִי אֲמוֹנְתְכֶם דִּיָּה כִי אֶרְפָּאֶכֶם.
- וְאַחֵר דִּבְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יָצָא כָל הַקְּהָל כָּאִישׁ אֶחָד עִם הַחוֹלִים וְהַמְעֻנִּים, עִם הַפֶּסֶחִים וְהָעוֹרִים וְהָאֵלְמִים, וְעִם כָּל אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בַּמִּצּוּקָה כְּלָשְׁהִי; וְהוּא רָפָא אוֹתָם, כָּל אִישׁ כְּאֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵא אֵלָיו.
- וְכָלֶם, הַנֶּרְפָּאִים וְהַבְּרִיאִים, כָּרְעוּ לְרַגְלָיו וְהִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ אֵלָיו; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יָכְלוּ לָבוֹא מִן הַקְּהָל בָּאוּ וְנָשְׁקוּ אֶת רַגְלָיו, עַד כִּי רָחַצוּ אֶת רַגְלָיו בַּדְּמְעוֹתֵיהֶם.
- אֲזַי הוּא צִוָּה כִּי יָבִיאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם הֲבִיאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים וְהַנִּיחֻם סָבִיבוּ עַל הָאֶרֶץ, וַיִּשְׁוּעַ עֲמֵד בְּתוֹכָם; וְהַקְּהָל פָּנָה מְקוֹם עַד אֲשֶׁר כָּלֶם הוֹבֵאוּ אֵלָיו.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הוֹבֵאוּ כָּלֶם, צִוָּה יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר עָמַד בְּקֶרְבָּם, כִּי הַקְּהָל יִכְרַע בָּרָד עַל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם כָּרְעוּ עַל בְּרִכְיֵיהֶם נֶאֱנַח יֵשׁוּעַ וְאָמַר: אָבָא, מִטְּרָד אֲנִי מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲנָשֵׁי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וּבְאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כָּרַע אִף הוּא אֶרְצָה עַל בְּרִכְיָיו; אֲזַי הוּא הִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב וְדִבְרֵי תִפְלָתוֹ אֵינֶם יְכוּלִּים לְהַכְתֵּב, וְהַקְּהָל שָׁמַע וְהִעִיד עַל כֵּן.
- did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.
- 6 And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.
- 7 Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leproous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.
- 8 For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.
- 9 And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.
- 10 And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.
- 11 And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.
- 12 So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.
- 13 And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.
- 14 And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.
- 15 And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

- 16 And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;
- וְעִדּוּתָם הִיא כְּדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה: עֵין לֹא רָאָתָה מַעֲוָדָה, וְאָזֶן לֹא שָׁמְעָה מַעֲוֹלָם דְּבָרִים כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ וְשָׁמַעְנוּ בְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֶל הָאֵב.
- 17 And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.
- אֲכֹן, לֹא תוּכַל אֶף לְשׁוֹן אַחַת לְדַבֵּר, וְיָד אִישׁ לֹא תוּכַל לְכַתֵּב, וְלֵב אָנוּשׁ לֹא יִשְׁכִּיל לְהַגִּיד דְּבָרִים כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר רָאִינוּ וְשָׁמַעְנוּ בְּדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ; וְאִם אֶדְם אֶחָד לֹא יוּכַל לְדַמּוֹת אֶת הַשְׂמִיחָה אֲשֶׁר מָלְאָה אֶת נַפְשׁוֹתֵינוּ בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְנוּ אוֹתוֹ מִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנָּנוּ.
- 18 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.
- וְהָיָה כְּכֹלוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת תְּפִלָּתוֹ אֶל הָאֵב, הוּא קָם עַל רִגְלָיו, וְאוֹלָם כֹּה רַבָּה הָיְתָה שְׂמִיחַת הַקְּהָל, עַד כִּי הֵם הִכְרְעוּ.
- 19 And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.
- אִז דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם יֵשׁוּעַ וּבִקְשָׁם לָקוּם.
- 20 And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.
- וּבִקּוּמָם מִן הָאָרֶץ הוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנַתְכֶם. הִנֵּה, שְׂמִיחָתִי מְלֵאָה.
- 21 And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.
- וּבְאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא בָכָה, וְהַקְּהָל הָעֵיד עַל כֵּן; אִז הוּא לָקַח אֶת יְלָדֵיהֶם הַקְּטָנִים, אֶחָד־אֶחָד, וּבִרְכָם וְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנָּם.
- 22 And when he had done this he wept again;
- וְאַחֵר עָשׂוֹתוֹ זֹאת הוּא בָכָה שֵׁנִית.
- 23 And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.
- אִז הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל הַקְּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: רְאוּ אֶת יְלָדֵיכֶם.
- 24 And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.
- וּבְהִפְנוּתָם אֶת מַבְטֵיהֶם לְרֹאוֹת, הֵם נִשְׂאוּ אֶת עֵינֵיהֶם לְמָרוֹם; וְהִנֵּה נִפְתָּחוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם וּמַלְאָכִים יָרְדוּ מִהַשְׁמַיִם, כְּבָתוֹךְ אֵשׁ. וְהֵם יָרְדוּ וְהִקִּיפוּ אֶת הַיְלָדִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ מִקְּפִים בְּאֵשׁ, וְהַמַּלְאָכִים שָׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנֵיהֶם.
- 25 And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.
- וְהַקְּהָל רָאָה וְשָׁמַע וְהָעֵיד עַל זֹאת; וְהֵם יוֹדְעִים כִּי עִדּוּתָם אֲמִתִּית, כִּי כֻלָּם רָאוּ וְשָׁמַעוּ, אִישׁ־אִישׁ בְּמוֹ עֵינָיו וּבְמוֹ אָזְנוֹ. כְּאַלְפִים וַחֲמִשׁ מֵאוֹת נַפְשׁ הָיָה מִסְפָּרָם, גְּבָרִים, נָשִׁים וְטַף.

יח

18

- וְהָיָה כִּי יֵשׁוּעַ צִוָּה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו לְהָבִיא אֵלָיו לֶחֶם וַיֵּין. 1 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.
- וּבְעֵת הַלֶּכֶם לְהָבִיא לֶחֶם וַיֵּין, הוּא צִוָּה אֶת הַקָּהָל לָשֶׁבֶת עַל הָאָרֶץ. 2 And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.
- וּכְאֲשֶׁר הִבִּיאוּ הַתַּלְמִידִים לֶחֶם וַיֵּין, הוּא לָקַח מִן הַלֶּחֶם וּבָצַע אוֹתוֹ וַיְבָרֵךְ עָלָיו וַיִּתֵּנוּ לַתַּלְמִידִים וְצִוָּם לֶאֱכֹל. 3 And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵם אָכְלוּ וּשְׂבָעוּ, הוּא צִוָּם לָתֵת לַקָּהָל. 4 And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָכַל הַקָּהָל וּשְׂבָע, הוּא אָמַר אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים: הִנֵּה, אִישׁ אֶחָד מִכֶּם יִסְמָךְ, וְאֶת יָדוֹ אֵיפֹה לְבַצֵּעַ אֶת הַלֶּחֶם, וּלְבָרֵךְ עָלָיו וּלְתֵת לְאֲנָשֵׁי כְּנִסְיָתִי, לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ וְיִטְבְּלוּ בִּשְׁמִי. 5 And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.
- וְזֹאת תַּשְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר בָּצַעְתִּי אֶת הַלֶּחֶם וּבִרְכֵיתִי עָלָיו וַיִּתְּנוּ לָכֶם. 6 And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.
- וְזֹאת תַּעֲשׂוּ לְזִכֹּר גּוֹפִי, אֲשֶׁר הִרְאִיתִי לָכֶם. וְתִהְיֶה זֹאת לְעֵדוּת לִפְנֵי הָאֵב, כִּי זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם אוֹתִי תָּמִיד. וְאִם תִּזְכְּרוּנִי תָּמִיד, תִּהְיֶה רוּחִי עִמָּכֶם. 7 And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.
- וְאַחֵר אָמְרוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה הוּא צִוָּה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו לָקַחַת וּלְשִׁתּוֹת מִכּוֹס הַיַּיִן וְאֵף לָתֵת לַקָּהָל לְשִׁתּוֹת מִמֶּנָּה. 8 And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.
- וְכֵן עָשׂוּ. הֵם שָׁתוּ מִמֶּנָּה וְרוּוּ; וְהֵם נִתְּנוּ לַקָּהָל, וְאֵף הֵם שָׁתוּ וְרוּוּ. 9 And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ זֹאת הַתַּלְמִידִים, אָמַר יֵשׁוּעַ אֲלֵיהֶם: בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתֶם, כִּי הוּא קִוִּים מִצְוֹתִי וְזֹאת עֵדוּת לִפְנֵי הָאֵב כִּי חֲפָצִים אַתֶּם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיכֶם. 10 And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.
- וְזֹאת תַּעֲשׂוּ תָמִיד לְשׁוֹבִים מִרְעָתָם הַמִּטְבָּלִים בְּשִׁמִּי; וְזֹאת תַּעֲשׂוּ לְזִכָּר דְּמִי, אֲשֶׁר שָׁפַכְתִּי לְמַעַנְכֶם, בְּעֵבֹר תַּעֲדִידוּ לִפְנֵי הָאָב כִּי זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם אוֹתִי תָמִיד. וְהִיָּה אִם תִּזְכְּרוּנִי תָמִיד, תִּהְיֶה רוּחִי עִמָּכֶם.
- 12 And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.
- הֲנִי מְצַוְכֶם כִּי תַּעֲשׂוּ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; וְהִיָּה אִם תַּעֲשׂוּ תָמִיד אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ, כִּי עַל צוּרִי נִבְנִיתֶם.
- 13 But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר יוֹסִיפוּ עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אוּ יִפְחֲתוּ מֵהֶם, אֵין הֵם בְּנוּיִים עַל צוּרִי כִּי אִם עַל יְסוּדוֹת חוֹל; וּבִרְדַּת הַגֶּשֶׁם וּבְבּוֹא הַשֹּׁטְפוֹן וּבְנִשְׁבַּ הָרוּחוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יִהְלְמוּ בָהֶם, נָפֹל יָפֹל, וְשַׁעְרֵי שָׂאוֹל פְּתוּחִים וּמוֹכְנִים לְקַבֵּלָם.
- 14 Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.
- עַל כֵּן בְּרוּכִים אַתֶּם בְּשִׁמְרָכֶם אֵת מְצוּוֹתַי, אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי הָאָב כִּי אֶתֶּן לָכֶם.
- 15 Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.
- אָכֵן, הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי עֲלִיכֶם לְהִשָּׁמֵר וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, כֹּן יִפְתָּכֶם הַשָּׂטָן, וְיֹולִיכֶכֶם אֵילִי שָׁבִי.
- 16 And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.
- וְכַפִּי אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלַּלְתִּי אֲנִי בְּקִרְבְּכֶם, כֹּן תִּתְפַּלְּלוּ בְּכִנְסִיתִי, בְּקִרְבַּ עַמִּי הַשׁוֹבִים מִחַטָּא וְהַמִּטְבָּלִים בְּשִׁמִּי. הֲנִי הָאוֹר; מוֹפֵת אֲנִי לָכֶם.
- 17 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, הוּא פָּנָה שָׁנִית אֶל הַקְּהָל וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:
- 18 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.
- אָכֵן הֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, עֲלִיכֶם לְהִשָּׁמֵר וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד, כֹּן תִּתְפַּתּוּ, כִּי הַשָּׂטָן מִשְׁתַּוְּקֵק לְקַחְתְּכֶם, בְּעֵבֹר יִנְפָּכֶם כְּחֶשֶׁה.
- 19 Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;
- עַל כֵּן עֲלִיכֶם לְהִתְפַּלֵּל תָּמִיד אֶל הָאָב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 20 And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר תִּבְקָשׁוּ מִן הָאָב בְּשִׁמִּי, וְאֲשֶׁר יָשָׁר הוּא, בְּאִמּוּנַתְכֶם כִּי תִקְבְּלוּהוּ, הִנֵּה יִתֵּן וְיִתֵּן לָכֶם.
- 21 Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.
- הִתְפַּלְּלוּ בְּקִרְבַּ מִשְׁפּוּחוֹתֵיכֶם אֶל הָאָב, תָּמִיד בְּשִׁמִּי, בְּעֵבֹר יְבָרְכוּ נְשִׁיכֶם וְיִלְדֵיכֶם.
- 22 And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;
- הֲאִסְפוּ נָא יַחַד לַעֲתִים קְרוֹבוֹת; וְאַל לָכֶם לְאַסֹּר עַל אִישׁ לָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם בְּעַת הַתְּאַסְפוֹתְכֶם, כִּי אִם הִתִּירוּ לָהֶם לָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם וְאַל תִּמְנְעוּם.

- 23 But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.
אָכֵן, הַתְּפַלְלוּ נָא עֲלֵיהֶם, וְאַל תִּגְרְשׁוּם.
וְאִם יָרְבוּ לָבוֹא אֲלֵיכֶם, הַתְּפַלְלוּ לְמַעַנִּם
אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 24 Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.
עַל כֵּן שְׂאוּ אֹרְכֶם, בַּעֲבוּר יוֹרַח לְעוֹלָם. הִנֵּה,
אֲנִי הָאוֹר אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׂאוּ, אָכֵן, אֵת אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתֶם
כִּי עָשִׂיתִי אֲנִי. הֵן רָאִיתֶם כִּי הַתְּפַלְלָתִי אֶל
הָאֵב; כִּלְכֶם עֵדִים לְזֹאת.
- 25 And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.
וְרָאִיתֶם כִּי צִוִּיתִי כִּי לֹא יֵעֹזב אִישׁ מִכֶּם,
כִּי אִם צִוִּיתִי כִּי תָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי, לְמַעַן תִּמְשְׁשׁוּ
וְתִרְאוּ; וְכֵן תַּעֲשׂוּ לְעוֹלָם. וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר יַפְרֹא אֵת
הַמִּצְוָה הַזֹּאת, מִתְמַסֵּר לָבוֹא אֵלַי מִדּוּחִים.
- 26 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:
וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
הוּא שָׁב וְנָשָׂא אֶת מַבְטּוֹ אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים אֲשֶׁר
בָּחַר וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם:
- 27 Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.
אָכֵן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, מִצְוָה נוספת אֲנִי
מִצְוֶנְכֶם, וְאַחֲרַי כֵּן עָלִי לָלֶכֶת אֶל אָבִי לְמַעַן
אֲמַלֵּא מִצְוֹת אַחֵרוֹת אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לִי.
- 28 And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;
וְהִנֵּה, זֹאת הַמִּצְוָה אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מִצְוֶנְכֶם:
לֹא תִתְּרוּ מִדַּעַת כִּי יֹאכֵל אִישׁ מִבְּשָׂרִי,
אוֹ יִשְׁתֶּה מִדָּמִי, וְאֵין הוּא רָאוּי לָכֶּה,
בַּעַת שִׁמְשֹׁכֶם בְּקֹדֶשׁ.
- 29 For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.
כִּי כָל הָאוֹכֵל מִבְּשָׂרִי, אוֹ הַשּׂוֹתֶה מִדָּמִי,
וְאֵינוֹ רָאוּי, אוֹכֵל וְשׂוֹתֶה מֵאֲרָה לְנַפְשׁוֹ. עַל כֵּן
כָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר תִּדְעוּ כִּי אֵין הוּא רָאוּי לֵאכֹל
מִבְּשָׂרִי אוֹ לִשְׁתּוֹת מִדָּמִי, מְנוּעַ תִּמְנְעוּהוּ.
- 30 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.
וְאוּלָּם, לֹא תִגְרְשׁוּהוּ מִתּוֹכְכֶם, כִּי שִׁמְשׁ
תִּשְׁמְשׁוּ לְפָנָיו וְתִתְּפַלְלוּ לְמַעַנִּיו אֶל הָאֵב, בְּשִׁמִּי;
וְכִי יֵשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ וְיִטְבֵּל בְּשִׁמִּי, קִבֵּל תִּקְבְּלוּהוּ,
וְתִשְׁמְשׁוּהוּ וְתִתְּנוּ לוֹ מִבְּשָׂרִי וּמִדָּמִי.
- 31 But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.
וְאִם לֹא יֵשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ, לֹא יִמְנָה הוּא עִם
עַמִּי לְבֵל יֹאבִידִם, כִּי יוֹדַע אֲנִי אֵת צֹאנִי,
וּסְפוּרוֹת הֵנָּה.
- 32 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.
וְאוּלָּם, לֹא תִגְרְשׁוּהוּ מִבֵּיתֵי כְּנִסְיוֹתֵיכֶם, אוֹ
מִבֵּיתֵי תְּפִלָּתְכֶם, כִּי אִם לְאֲשֶׁר כְּמוֹתוֹ תוֹסִיפוּ
לְשִׁמְשׁ, כִּי אֵינְכֶם יוֹדְעִים, אוֹלֵי יֵשׁוּבוּ וְיִנְחָמוּ
עַל רְעָתָם, וְיָבוֹאוּ אֵלַי בְּלֵב שָׁלֵם וְאֲנִי אֶרְפָּאֵם;
וְאַתֶּם תִּהְיוּ כָּלִי שְׂרֵת לְהַבִּיאַם לִישׁוּעָה.

- 33 Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.
- לָכֵן, שְׁמְרוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִיכֶם, לְבַל תָּבוֹא עֲלֵיכֶם הָרָשָׁעָה כִּי אֲנִי לֹאֲשֶׁר יִרְשִׁיעֵהוּ הָאֵב.
- 34 And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.
- וְאֲנִי מְצַוְכֶם אֶת הַמִּצְוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּחְלֻקוֹת אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בֵּינֵיכֶם. וּבְרוּכִים אַתֶּם בְּאֵין מַחְלֻקוֹת בֵּינֵיכֶם.
- 35 And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.
- וְעַתָּה הוֹלֵךְ אֲנִי אֶל הָאֵב, כִּי טוֹב הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֵלַי אֶל הָאֵב לְמַעַנְכֶם.
- 36 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.
- וּכְכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְדַבֵּר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא סָמַךְ אֶת יָדוֹ עַל הַתְּלָמִידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר, אֶחָד־אֶחָד, עַד אֲשֶׁר נָגַע בְּכֻלָּם, וּבָעֵת אֲשֶׁר הוּא נָגַע בָּהֶם הוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם.
- 37 And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.
- וְהַקְהָל לֹא שָׁמְעוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר וְעַל כֵּן לֹא הָעִידוּ עֲלֵיהֶם, אֹף הַתְּלָמִידִים הָעִידוּ כִּי הוּא יָפָה אֶת יָדָם לְהַעֲנִיק אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ. וְאֲנִי אֲרַאֶה לָכֵם בְּהַמְשֹׁךְ הַדְּבָרִים כִּי עֲדוּת זֹאת אֵמֶת הִיא.
- 38 And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר סָמַךְ יֵשׁוּעַ יָדוֹ עַל כָּלָם, בָּא עָנָן וַכֶּסֶה אֶת הַמִּזְוֹן הָעָם עַד כִּי הֵם לֹא יָכֻלוּ לִרְאוֹת אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ.
- 39 And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.
- וּבְעֵת אֲפָפָם הָעָנָן, הוּא נִפְרָד מֵהֶם וְעָלָה הַשָּׁמַיְמָה. וְהַתְּלָמִידִים רָאוּ וְהָעִידוּ כִּי הוּא שָׁב וְעָלָה לַמָּרוֹם.

יט

19

- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר עֲלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ הַשָּׁמַיְמָה, הִתְפָּזַר הַקְהָל וְכָל אִישׁ לָקַח עִמּוֹ אֶת אִשְׁתּוֹ וְאֶת יְלָדָיו וְשָׁב אֶל בֵּיתוֹ.
- 2 And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בַמְהֵרָה, בְּטָרֶם תִּרְדּוּ הַחֹשֶׁכָה, יָצָא קוֹל בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם, כִּי רָאָה הַקְהָל אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, וְכִי שָׁמַשׁ לִפְנֵיהֶם, וְכִי הוּא יָשׁוּב בַּיּוֹם הַמָּחָר לְהִרְאוֹת לְעֵינֵי הַקְהָל.
- 3 Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night,
- אָכֵן, אֹף כָּל הַלַּיְלָה הִכְרִזוּ הַדְּבָרִים לְמִרְחָקִים עַל אוֹדוֹת יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהֵם כֹּה שָׁקְדוּ לְהַפִּיץ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים בָּעָם, עַד כִּי הָיוּ רַבִּים, אָכֵן, עֲצוֹם

וְרַב הָיָה מִסְפָּרָם, אֲשֶׁר עָמְלוּ רַב עִמָּל כָּל
הַלֵּילָה הַהוּא, בְּעִבּוּר יִמְצְאוּ לְמַחֲרָת בְּמָקוֹם
אֲשֶׁר עֲתִיד הָיָה יֵשׁוּעַ לְהֵרָאוֹת אֶל הַמּוֹן הָעָם.

that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַמַּחֲרָת, בְּהִתְאַסֵּף הַקָּהָל, וְהָנָה
בָּא נְפִי יַחַד עִם אָחִיו, אֲשֶׁר הָעֵלָהּ מִן הַמֵּתִים
וְאֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא טִימּוֹתִי. וְעִמָּם בָּא בֶן נְפִי,
אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא יוֹנָה, וְכֵן מִתּוֹנִי וְאָחִיו
מִתּוֹנִיָּהּ, וְקוּמֶן וְקוּמֶנוֹנְחִי וְיֵרֵמְיָהּ
וְשִׁמְנוֹן וְיֹזָה וְצִדְקָיָהּ וְיִשְׁעָיָהּ; אֵלֶּה שְׁמוֹת
הַתְּלָמִידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם
הִלְכוּ וְעָמְדוּ בְּקֶרֶב הַקָּהָל.

4 And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

וְהָנָה, כֹּה רַב הָיָה הַקָּהָל, עַד כִּי הֵם הוֹרוֹם
כִּי יִחַלְקוּ לְשִׁתִּים עֲשָׂרָה קְבוּצוֹת.

5 And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

וּשְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר הַתְּלָמִידִים לָמְדוּ אֶת הַקָּהָל;
וְהֵם הוֹרוּ לְקַהֵּל לְכַרְעַ אַרְצָהּ, עַל בְּרַפְיָהָם,
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב אֲבָב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ.

6 And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

וְאֵף הַתְּלָמִידִים הִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם
יֵשׁוּעַ, וְאַחֵר כֹּךְ הֵם קָמוּ וְשִׁמְשׁוּ לִפְנֵי הָעָם.

7 And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר שִׁמְשׁוּ בְּחִזָּרָם עַל אוֹתָן הַמַּלְיָם
אֲשֶׁר אָמַר יֵשׁוּעַ, בְּלֹא כָל שְׁנוֹי מִמְּלוּתָיו, הֵם
שָׁבוּ וְכָרְעוּ בָּרָךְ וְהִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ.

8 And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

וְהֵם הִתְפַּלְּלוּ עַל אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁתּוֹקְקוּ לוֹ יוֹתֵר.
מִכָּל; וְחִפְצָם הָיָה כִּי יִנָּתֶן לָהֶם רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

9 And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְּלוּ כֹךְ, הֵם יָרְדוּ אֶל קִצֵּה
אֲגֻם הַמַּיִם, וְהִקָּהָל בְּעִקְבוֹתֵיהֶם.

10 And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

וְנְפִי יָרַד אֶל הַמַּיִם וְטָבַל.

11 And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

וְהָיָה בְּעֹלוֹתוֹ מִן הַמַּיִם, הוּא הֵחֵל לְהִטְבִּיל; אָכֵן,
הוּא הִטְבִּיל אֶת כָּל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ.

12 And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ הַכֹּל וְעָלוּ מִן הַמַּיִם,
נָח עֲלֵיהֶם רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, וְהֵם מָלְאוּ רוּחַ
הַקֹּדֶשׁ וְאֵשׁ.

13 And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

וְהָנָה, הֵם כָּאֵלּוּ הִקְפּוּ בָּאֵשׁ, וְהָיָה יָרְדָּה מִן
הַשָּׁמַיִם; וְהִקָּהָל הָיוּ עֲדִים לָזֶה וְהָעִידוּ עַל כֹּךְ;
וּמַלְאָכִים יָרְדוּ מִמָּרוֹם וְשִׁמְשׁוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם.

14 And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

- 15 והיה בעוד המלאכים משמשים לפני התלמידים, והנה בא ישוע ועמד בתוכם ושמם לפניהם.
- 16 אז הוא דבר אל המון העם וצוה כי יכרעו ארצה שנית, ואף כי תלמידיו יעשו כן.
- 17 ואחר אשר כרעו הכל על הארץ, הוא צוה על תלמידיו כי יתפללו.
- 18 והנה, הם החלו בתפלה; אכן, הם התפללו אל ישוע וקראוהו אדוניהם ואלהיהם.
- 19 אז נפרד ישוע מתוכם, והתרחק מהם מעט והשתחוה ארצה, ואמר:
- 20 אבא, מודה אני כי נתת את רוח הקדש לאלה אשר בחרתי; הן מפני אמונתם בי בחרתיים מבני העולם.
- 21 אבא, אבקשך כי תתן את רוח הקדש לכל אלה אשר יאמינו בדבריהם.
- 22 אבא, נתת להם את רוח הקדש על אמונתם בי, ורואה אתה כי הם מאמינים בי כי שומע אתה אותם, והם מתפללים אלי; ותפלתם היא אלי כי אני עמם.
- 23 ועתה, אבי, מתפלל אני אליך למענם, ואף למען כל אשר יאמינו בדבריהם, בעבור יאמינו בי, בעבור אהיה אני בהם, כפי אשר אתה, אבי, הנך בי, בעבור נהיה אחד.
- 24 ואחר אשר התפלל כך ישוע אל האב, הוא בא אל תלמידיו, והנה, הם עודם מתפללים אליו, בלא הפוגה; והם לא הכבירו מלים, יען אשר נתנו להם הדברים אשר יתפללו, ולבם מלא שקיקה.
- 25 וכהתפללם אליו ברכם ישוע; ופניו חיכו אליהם ואור פניו זרח עליהם, והנה, הם היו לבנים כפני ישוע ושמלתו. והלבן היה בהיר מכל לבן; אכן לא היה דבר לבן על פני הארץ כלבן ההוא.
- And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.
- And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.
- And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.
- And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.
- And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:
- Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.
- Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.
- Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.
- And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.
- And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.
- And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

- 26 ואמר אליהם ישוע: הוסיפו להתפלל. ואכן, הם לא חדלו מתפלתם.
- 27 And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.
- 27 והוא פנה מהם שנית והתרחק מהם מעט והשתחוה ארצה, ושב והתפלל אל האב לאמר:
- 27 And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:
- 28 אבא, אוֹדֶךָ כִּי טִהַרְתָּ אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר בְּחַרְתִּי מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם; וּמִתְפַּלֵּל אֲנִי לְמַעַנָם וְאֶף לְמַעַן אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם, כִּי יִשְׁתָּהֲרוּ בִּי, עַל יְדֵי אֱמוּנָתָם בְּדִבְרֵיהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר מִטְהָרִים הֵם בִּי.
- 28 Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.
- 29 אבא, אֲיַנְנִי מִתְפַּלֵּל לְמַעַן הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם לְמַעַן אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נָתַתָּם לִי מִן הָעוֹלָם, מִפְּנֵי אֱמוּנָתָם, כִּי יִשְׁתָּהֲרוּ בִּי, בְּעֶבֶר אֵהְיָה בָּהֶם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אַתָּה, אבא, הֵנָּה בִּי, בְּעֶבֶר נִהְיָה אִיחָד, וְאֲנִי אֶתְפָּאֵר בָּהֶם.
- 29 Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.
- 30 והיה כִּדְבַר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא שָׁב וְקָרַב אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, וַהֲנִה הֵם דְּבָקִים בְּתַפְלָתָם אֵלָיו בְּלֹא הַפְּוָגָה; וְהוּא חִיָּךְ אֵלֵיהֶם שְׁנִית, וַהֲנִה הֵם לְבָנִים כְּיֵשׁוּעַ עִצְמוֹ.
- 30 And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.
- 31 והיה כִּי הוּא שָׁב וְרָחַק מֵהֶם מַעַט וְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֶל הָאֵב.
- 31 And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;
- 32 וְלֹא תוּכַל לְשׁוֹן לְסַפֵּר אֶת דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ, וְאָדָם לֹא יוּכַל לְקַתְּבָם.
- 32 And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.
- 33 וְהִקְהָל שְׁמָעוֹ וַהֲעִידוּ עַל כָּךְ; וּלְבָבָם נִפְתָּח וְהֵם הִבִּינוּ בְּלִבָּם אֶת דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ.
- 33 And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.
- 34 ואולם, כֹּה גְדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים הָיוּ דְּבָרֵי תַפְלָתוֹ, עַד כִּי אִין הֵם יְכוּלִים לְהַכְתֵּב, וְאִין אִישׁ יְכוּל לְסַפֵּרָם.
- 34 Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.
- 35 וְהָיָה כְּכֹלֹת יֵשׁוּעַ לְהִתְפַּלֵּל, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הַתַּלְמִידִים וְאָמַר אֵלֵיהֶם: אֱמוּנָה כֹּה רַבָּה לֹא רָאִיתִי מֵעוֹדִי בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הַיְּהוּדִים. לָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָתָם, לֹא יָכַלְתִּי לְהִרְאוֹתָם נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת פְּאֵלָה.
- 35 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.
- 36 אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, אִישׁ מֵהֶם לֹא רָאָה גְּדוֹלוֹת כְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָם, וְאֶף לֹא שָׁמָע גְּדוֹלוֹת כְּדְבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתֶּם.
- 36 Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

כ

20

- וַיִּשְׁוֹעַ צֹה אֶת הַקֹּהֶל כִּי יִחְדְּלוּ מִתְפַּלְתֵּם וְכֵן אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו; וְאוֹלָם הוּא צֹה כִּי לֹא יִחְדְּלוּ מִהִתְפַּלֵּל בְּלִבָּם.
- וְהוּא צֹה כִּי יָקוּמוּ עַל רַגְלֵיהֶם; וְכֵן עָשׂוּ.
- וְהוּא בָּצַע שֵׁנִית לֶחֶם וּבִרְכוּ וּנְתַנּוּ לַתְּלָמִידִים לֶאֱכֹל.
- וְאַחֵר אָכְלָם, הוּא צֹה לְבָצַע לֶחֶם וּלְתַתּוֹ לַקֹּהֶל.
- וְאַחֵר תַּתָּם לַקֹּהֶל, הוּא נָתַן גַּם יַיִן לְשִׁתּוֹת וְצֹה לְתַתּוֹ לַקֹּהֶל.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִתְלַמְּדִים לֹא הָבִיאוּ עִמָּם כֹּל לֶחֶם אוֹ יַיִן, וְאֵף הַקֹּהֶל לֹא הָבִיֵּא.
- עַל אֵף זֹאת, הוּא נָתַן לֶחֶם לֶאֱכֹל וְכֵן יַיִן לְשִׁתּוֹת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: הַאוֹכֵל אֶת הַלֶּחֶם הַזֶּה, אוֹכֵל מִגּוּפִי לְנִפְשׁוֹ; וְהַשּׂוֹתֶה מִן הַיַּיִן הַזֶּה, שׂוֹתֶה מִדַּמִּי לְנִפְשׁוֹ; וְלֹעֶזֶלָם לֹא תִרְעַב נִפְשׁוֹ וְלֹא תִצְמָא, כִּי שְׂבוּעַ תִּשָּׁבַע.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָכַל כָּל הַקֹּהֶל וְשָׁתָה, וְהִנֵּה הֵם מְלֵאוֹ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; וְהֵם קָרְאוּ בְּפֶה אֶחָד, וּפָאֲרוּ אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ וְאֵף שָׁמְעוּ.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר פָּאֲרוּ כָּלָם אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, הוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה עֵתָה אֶת אֲשֶׁר צִוִּי הָאֵב בְּעֵנֵן הָעַם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר שְׁאֲרִית בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הַמָּה.
- הֵן זֹכְרִים אַתֶּם כִּי דִבַּרְתִּי אֲלֵיכֶם בְּאֶמְרִי כִּי דִבְרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ יִתְקִימוּ; הִנֵּה, כְּתוּבִים הֵמָּה וְהָרִי הֵם לִפְנֵיכֶם; עַל כֵּן חַקְרוּם.
- וְאָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר יִתְקִימוּ הִיא עַת קִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב לְעַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 1 And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.
- 2 And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.
- 3 And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.
- 4 And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.
- 5 And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.
- 6 Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;
- 7 But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.
- 8 And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.
- 9 Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.
- 10 And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.
- 11 Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—
- 12 And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

- 13 And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.
- 14 And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.
- 15 And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—
- 16 Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.
- 17 Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.
- 18 And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.
- 19 For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.
- 20 And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.
- 21 And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.
- 22 And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.
- 23 Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall
- אֲזַיְקְבֻצוּ הַנּוֹתָרִים, הַנִּפְּזִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, מִמִּזְרָח וּמִמְעַרְב, מִדָּרוֹם וּמִצָּפוֹן; וְיִתְּוֹדְעוּ אֶל דַּעַת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר גָּאֻלָּם.
- וְהָאֵב צִוִּי לִתְתֹּכֶם אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלַתְכֶם.
- וְאֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, כִּי בִלְתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִם מִחֲטֵאֵיהֶם, אַחֵר הַבְּרָכָה אֲשֶׁר יְבָרְכוּ, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִפִּיצוּ אֶת עַמִּי,
- אֲזִי תֵלְכוּ אִתָּם, אֲשֶׁר שְׂאֲרִית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב הַנִּכָּס, אֶל קֶרֶבָם, אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ רַבִּים; וּבְקֶרֶבָם תִּהְיוּ כְּאַרְיֵה בְּבִהְמוֹת יַעַר כְּכַפִּיר בְּעֵדְרֵי צֹאן אֲשֶׁר אִם עֶבֶר וְרִמָּס וְסָרַף, וְאִין מַצִּיל.
- תָּרִם יָדְךָ עַל צָרֶיךָ וְכָל אֹיְבֶיךָ יִפְּרֹתוּ.
- וְאֲנִי אֶקְבֹּץ אֶת עַמִּי כְּקִבֹּץ אִישׁ אֶת עַמִּירוֹ אֶל גֶּרְנוֹ.
- כִּי אֲשִׁים אֶת עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר הָאֵב כָּרַת עִמּוֹ בְּרִית, אֶכּוּ, קֶרֶן אֲשִׁים בְּרִזָּל וּפְרִסְתִּיךָ אֲשִׁים נְחוּשָׁה. וְהִדְקוֹת עַמִּים רַבִּים; וְהִחְרַמְתִּי לַיהוָה בַּצָּעַם וְחִילָם לֹאדוֹן כָּל הָאָרֶץ. הֵן אֲנִי הוּא הָעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת.
- בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, נָאוֹם הָאֵב, תִּהְיֶה חֶרֶב מִשְׁפָּטִי תִלְוֶיהָ מֵעַלְיָהֶם; וְאִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם, נִפּוֹל תִּפּוֹל עֲלֵיהֶם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב; אֶכּוּ, עַל כָּל גּוֹיֵי הָאָרְצוֹת.
- וְאֲנִי אֶכּוֹנֵן אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶכּוֹנֵן בְּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְקַיֵּם אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם יַעֲקֹב אֲבִיכֶם; וְהָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת תִּהְיֶה יְרוּשָׁלַם חֲדָשָׁה. וְכוּחוֹת מְרוֹמִים יִהְיוּ בְּקֶרֶב הָעָם הַזֶּה; אֶכּוּ, אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה בְּתוֹכָכֶם.
- הִנֵּה, אֲנִכִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר עַל אֹדוֹתָיו דִּבֶּר מֹשֶׁה לֵאמֹר: נִבְיָא מִקֶּרְבְּךָ, מֵאַחֶיךָ כְּמִנִּי, יָקִים לְךָ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ. אֵלָיו תִּשְׁמָעוּן, בְּכָל דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר

יְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם. וְהָיָה כִּי הִנָּפֵשׁ אֲשֶׁר לֹא תִשְׁמָע
אֶל דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא הַהוּא, הַכֶּרֶת תִּכְרֹת מִן הָעָם.

come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

אָכֵן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים מִשְׁמוּאֵל
וְאַלְהָה אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ אַחֲרָיו, כֹּל אֲשֶׁר נִבְּאוּ,
הָעִידוּ עָלַי.

24 Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

הִנֵּה, בְּנֵי הַנְּבִיאִים אַתֶּם; מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל אַתֶּם;
וְאַתֶּם בְּנֵי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִם
אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם בְּאֶמְרוֹ אֶל אַבְרָהָם: וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ
בְּזֶרַעַךְ כָּל גּוֹי הָאָרֶץ.

25 And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

הָאֵב הִקִּימֵנִי רִאשׁוֹן לְמַעַנְכֶם, וְשָׁלַחֲנִי
לְבָרְכְּכֶם בְּהִסָּרֶת כָּל אֶחָד מִכֶּם מִעֲוֹנוֹתָיו;
וְזֹאת כִּי בְנֵי הַבְּרִית אַתֶּם.

26 The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

וְאַחֵר הִתְבָּרְכְּכֶם, יָקִים הָאֵב אֶת הַבְּרִית
אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם אַבְרָהָם, לֵאמֹר: וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ
בְּזֶרַעַךְ כָּל גּוֹי הָאָרֶץ, בְּהַשְׁפֹּךְ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ
מֵאֵתִי עַל הַגּוֹיִים. וְהַבְּרָכָה הַזֹּאת תִּשְׁיָמֵם
גְּבוּרִים מְכֹל, לְהַפִּיץ אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

27 And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

וְהֵם יִהְיוּ שׁוֹט לְעַם אֲשֶׁר בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
אִם אַחֵר קִבְּלֶם אֶת מְלֵא בְּשׁוֹרְתֵי יִקְשׁוּ
הֵם אֶת לִבָּם עָלַי, אֲזִי אֲשִׁיב אֶת עֹלָם
בְּרֹאשָׁם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב.

28 And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

וְאֲנִי אֶזְכֹּר אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי עִם עַמִּי;
כִּי כָרַתִּי עִמָּם בְּרִית לְקִבְּצָם בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישָׁר
בְּעֵינִי לְהַשִּׁיבָם אֶת אֶרֶץ אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם לְנַחֲלָה,
אֲשֶׁר הִיא אֶרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה לָהֶם
לְעֹלָם, נָאוֹם הָאֵב.

29 And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

וְיוֹם יָבוֹא וְיִשְׁיפּוּ לָהֶם אֶת מְלֵא בְּשׁוֹרְתֵי.

30 And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

וְהֵם יֵאֱמִינוּ בִּי, כִּי אֲנִי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן
אֱלֹהִים, וְיִתְפַּלְלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.

31 And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

אֲזִי יִשְׁאוּ צוֹפִיָּהֶם קוֹלָם, יַחַד וְיִרְנְנוּ, כִּי עֵין
בְּעֵין יִרְאוּ בְּשׁוֹב יִהְיֶה צִיּוֹן.

32 Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

אֲזִי שׁוֹב יִקְבְּצֵם הָאֵב וְיִתֵּן לָהֶם אֶת יְרוּשָׁלַם
לְאֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.

33 Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

- 34 ואֲזָהֶם יִפְצְחוּ בִּיהֶם: רִנְנוּ יַחְדָּו חֲרֻבוֹת יְרוּשָׁלַם כִּי נָחַם יְהוָה עִמּוֹ, גָּאֹל יְרוּשָׁלַם.
Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.
- 35 חֲשֹׁף הָאֵב אֶת זְרוֹעַ קִדְשׁוֹ לְעֵינֵי כָל הַגּוֹיִם, וְרָאוּ כָל אֲפָסֵי אֶרֶץ אֶת יְשׁוּעַת הָאֵב. וְהָאֵב וְאֲנִכִּי אֶחָד.
The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.
- 36 אֲזִי יִתְקַיֵּם הַכְּתוּב: עוֹרִי, עוֹרִי, לְבָשִׁי עֲנֹה, צִיּוֹן, לְבָשִׁי בְּגֵדֵי תִפְאָרְתִּי, יְרוּשָׁלַם עִיר הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כִּי לֹא יוֹסִיף יָבֹא בָּךְ עוֹד עָרֹל וְטָמֵא.
And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.
- 37 הִתְנַעֲרִי מֵעָפָר; אֲרִיז, יֹשֶׁבֶת צִיּוֹן, שִׁבִּי מִבְּדֵי צַוָּארְךָ, שִׁבִּיָּה בֵּת צִיּוֹן.
Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.
- 38 כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה: חָנַם נִמְכַּרְתֶּם וְלֹא בְכֶסֶף תִּגְאָלוּ.
For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.
- 39 אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי יָדַע עַמִּי אֶת שְׁמִי; אָכֵן, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יָדְעוּ הָמָּה כִּי אֲנִי הוּא הַמְדַּבֵּר.
Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.
- 40 אֲזִי יֹאמְרוּ: מַה נָּאוּ עַל הַהָרִים רִגְלֵי מְבַשֵּׁר, מְשַׁמֵּעַ שְׁלוֹם; מְבַשֵּׁר טוֹב, מְשַׁמֵּעַ יְשׁוּעָה; אֲמַר לְצִיּוֹן: מָלֹךְ אֱלֹהֶיהָ.
And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!
- 41 אֲזִי תִצֵּא קְרִיאָה: סוּרוּ, סוּרוּ, צֵאוּ מִשָּׁם, טָמֵא אֶל תִּגְעוּ; צֵאוּ מִתּוֹכָהּ; הִבְרוּ נִשְׂאֵי כְלֵי יְהוָה.
And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.
- 42 כִּי לֹא בְּחִפְזוֹן תִּצְאוּ, וְבִמְנוּסָה לֹא תִלְכוּ; כִּי הִלֵּךְ לִפְנֵיכֶם יְהוָה, וּמֵאַחֲרֵיכֶם אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.
- 43 הִנֵּה יִשְׁכֵּל עַבְדִּי; יָרוֹם וְנִשָּׂא וְנִבְּה מְאֹד.
Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.
- 44 כַּאֲשֶׁר שָׁמְמוּ עָלֶיךָ רַבִּים, כֵּן מִשְׁחַת מֵאִישׁ מֵרָאֵהוּ וְתֹאדָרוֹ מִבְּנֵי אָדָם;
As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—
- 45 כֵּן יִזְהַר גּוֹיִם רַבִּים, עָלָיו יִקְפְּצוּ מְלָכִים בִּיהֶם, כִּי אֲשֶׁר לֹא סִפְּרוּ לָהֶם רָאוּ וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁמְעוּ הִתְבּוֹנְנוּ.
So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.
- 46 אָכֵן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בּוֹא יָבוֹאוּ כָל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי הָאֵב. אֲזִי תִתְקַיֵּם הַבְּרִית הַזֹּאת אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִמָּךְ
Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall

עמו; וְאֵז שׁוֹב תִּישָׁב יְרוּשָׁלַם בְּיַד עַמִּי,
וְתִהְיֶה הָיָא אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.

Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land
of their inheritance.

כֹּא

21

וְאֶכֶן אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, הִנְנִי נוֹתֵן לָכֶם אוֹת
לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ אֶת מוֹעֵד קִיּוֹם הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אֶקְבֹּץ אֶת עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל,
מִתְפוצֵּצֵתָם אֶרֶצֶת הַיָּמִים וְשׁוֹב אֲכַוֵּן
בְּקִרְבָם אֶת צִיּוֹן אֲשֶׁר לִי.

1 And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the
time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather
in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall
establish again among them my Zion;

וְזֶה הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר אֶתֵּן לָכֶם לְאוֹת, כִּי, אֶכֶן אֲנִי
אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי מוֹדִיעֶכֶם, וְאֲשֶׁר אוֹדִיעֶכֶם אוֹתָם
אַחֲרֵי כֵן מִעַמִּי, וְאִי מִעַם כָּח רֹחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ
אֲשֶׁר יִתְּנֶכֶם הָאֵב; אֶכֶן, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יִדְעוּ אֵלֶּה
לְגוֹיִים, וְזֹאת בְּעִבּוֹר יִדְעוּ עַל אוֹדוֹת הָעַם
הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר שְׂאֲרִית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב הִמָּה, וְעַל
אוֹדוֹת עַמִּי זֶה אֲשֶׁר יוֹפֵץ עַל יְדֵיהֶם;

2 And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—
for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto
you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the
power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father,
shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning
this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning
this my people who shall be scattered by them;

אֶכֶן, הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי כֹאֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעוּ
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִעַם הָאֵב לְגוֹיִים, וְיִצְאוּ
אֲלֵיהֶם מִעַם הָאֵב, וְיָבֹאוּ מֵהֶם אֲלֵיכֶם;

3 Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known
unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them
unto you;

כִּי מִחֻמַּת הָאֵב הָיָא, לְכוֹנֵנָם בְּאֶרֶץ הַזֹּאת
וְלִהְיוֹתָם בְּכֹחַ כָּעַם חֲפָזִי, בְּעִבּוֹר יָבֹאוּ
הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מִעַמָּם אֶל שְׂאֲרִית זְרַעְכֶם,
בְּעִבּוֹר תִּתְקַיֵּם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאֵב עִם
עַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל;

4 For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this
land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these
things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that
the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted
with his people, O house of Israel;

לָכֵן, כֹּאֲשֶׁר יָבֹאוּ הַמַּעֲשִׂים הָאֵלֶּה,
וְהַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבְּכֶם אַחֲרֵי כֵן מִן
הַגּוֹיִים אֶל זְרַעְכֶם, אֲשֶׁר יִדְרְדְּרוּ בְּעוֹנוֹם אֶל
חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה;

5 Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought
among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your
seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

כִּי כֹה חֲפֵץ הָאֵב, כִּי יִצְאוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה
מִן הַגּוֹיִים, לְמַעַן יֵרָאֶה אֶת כָּחוֹ לְגוֹיִים, לְמַעַן
יָשׁוּבוּ הַגּוֹיִים מִרְעַתָם, וְאִם לֹא יִקְשׂוּ אֶת
לָבָם, וְיָבֹאוּ אֵלַי וְיִשְׁבְּלוּ בְּשִׁמִּי, וְיִדְעוּ אֶל
אֱמֶת עֲקָרִי תוֹרָתִי, בְּעִבּוֹר יִמְנוּ עִם עַמִּי,
בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל;

6 For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the
Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this
cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they
may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know
of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among
my people, O house of Israel;

וּבִבּוֹא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְזַרְעְכֶם יִחֲלוּ לְדַעַת
אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, יִהְיֶה זֶה לָהֶם לְאוֹת
בְּעִבּוֹר יִדְעוּ כִּי כָּבֵד הִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב לְמַעַן

7 And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know
these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the
work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the

- קיום הברית אשר כרת לעם, אשר מבית ישראל המה.
- 8 And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.
- 9 For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.
- 10 But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.
- 11 Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.
- 12 And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.
- 13 Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.
- 14 Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;
- 15 And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;
- 16 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy hand, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;
- 17 Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;
- 18 And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.
- אך הנה, חיי עבדי יהיו בידי, על כן לא ירעו לו, אף כי ישחת מפניהם. ואנכי ארפאהו, כי אראם כי חכמתי גוברת על ערמת השטן.
- על כן, כל אשר לא יאמין בדברי, אשר הם דברי ישוע המשיח, אשר האב צוה אליו להביאם אל הגויים, ויתן לו כח כי יביאם אל הגויים, יעשה להם כדבר משה: הכרת יכרתו מקרב עמי אשר מבני הברית המה.
- ועמי, אשר שארית יעקב המה, יהיו בקרב הגויים, אכן, הם יהיו בתוכם כאריה בבהמות יער ככפיר בעדרי צאן אשר אם עבר ורמס וטרף ואין מציל.
- תרם ידם על צריהם וכל איביהם יכרתו.
- אכן, אוי לגויים, בלתי אם ישובו מרעתם; והיה ביום ההוא, נאום האב, והכרתי סוסיה מקרבך, והאבדתי מרכבתיה.
- והכרתי ערי ארצך, והרסתי כל מבצריך.
- והכרתי כשפים מידך, ומעוננים לא יהיו לך.
- והכרתי פסיליך ומצבותיך מקרבך, ולא תשתחוה עוד למעשה ידיך.
- ונתשתי אשיריך מקרבך והשמדתי עריך.

- 19 וְהָיָה כִּי יִחְדְּלוּ כָּל שִׁקָּר וְכָזָב וְקִנְיָאָה וּמְרִיבָה וְתַרְמִיּוֹת הַכְּמוּרָה וְהַזְנוּגִּים.
- 20 וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, נְאוּם הָאֵב, כָּל אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָשׁוּב מִרְעָתוֹ וְלֹא יָבֹא אֶל בְּנֵי אֱהוֹבִי, הַכֶּרֶת אֶכְרִיתֶם מִקֶּרֶב עַמִּי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 21 וְשִׁלַּחְתִּי בָהֶם אֶת נִקְמָתִי וְחִמְתִּי, אַף כַּעֲשׂוֹתַי בְּבְנֵי נֹכַר, אֲשֶׁר לֹא שָׁמְעוּ.
- 22 אֲךְ אִם יָשׁוּבוּ מִרְעָתָם וְיִשְׁמְעוּ לְדִבְרִי, וְלֹא יִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם, אֶכּוֹנֵן אֶת כְּנִסְיָתִי בְּקֶרֶבָם, וְהֵם יָבֹאוּ בְּבִרְיִת וְיִמְנוּ עִם שְׁאֲרֵיתִי יַעֲקֹב הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר לָהֶם נְתַתִּי אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת לְנַחֲלָה.
- 23 וְהֵם יַעֲזְרוּ לְעַמִּי, לְשְׁאֲרֵיתִי יַעֲקֹב, וְלִכָּל אֲשֶׁר יָבֹאוּ אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הַמָּה, לְמַעַן יִבְנוּ עִיר אֲשֶׁר שְׁמָהּ יִקְרָא יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה.
- 24 וְאַזְ הֵם יַעֲזְרוּ לְעַמִּי, הַנִּפְּזִים עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, לְהִתְקַבֵּץ יַחַד אֶל יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה.
- 25 וְאַזְ יֵרֵד אֶל קֶרֶבָם כֹּחַ שָׁמַיִם; וְאַף אֲנִי אֶהְיֶה בְּתוֹכָם.
- 26 בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב, אֲכֹן בְּהִשְׁמַע הַבְּשׂוּרָה הַזֹּאת בְּקֶרֶב שְׁאֲרֵית הָעָם הַזֶּה. אֲכֹן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב בְּקֶרֶב כָּל נִפְּזֵי עַמִּי, אַף בְּקֶרֶב הַשְּׁבָטִים הָאֲבֻדִּים, אֲשֶׁר הִגֵּלָם הָאֵב מִירוּשָׁלַם.
- 27 אֲכֹן, יִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב בְּקֶרֶב כָּל פְּזוּרֵי עַמִּי, לְפָנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָבֹאוּ אֵלַי, בְּעֶבֹר יִקְרָאוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמִּי.
- 28 אֲכֹן, אֲזִי יִחַל מַעֲשֵׂה הָאֵב, בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָאֲמוֹת, לְפָנוֹת אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ נִקְבְּצוּ בְנֵי עַמּוֹ אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם.
- 29 וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מִכָּל הָאֲמוֹת; לֹא בַּחֲפָזוֹן וְיָצְאוּ וּבִמְנוּסָה לֹא יֵלְכוּ, כִּי אֲנִי אֵלֶּךְ לִפְנֵיהֶם, נְאוּם הָאֵב, וְאֶנְכִּי אֶהְיֶה מֵאֲסָפָם.
- 19 And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.
- 20 For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;
- 21 And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.
- 22 But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;
- 23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.
- 24 And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.
- 25 And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.
- 26 And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.
- 27 Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.
- 28 Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.
- 29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

כב

22

- אז יתקנים הכתוב: רני עקרה לא ילדה; פצחי רנה וצהלי, לא חלה; כי רבים בני שוממה מבני בעולה, אומר יהוה.
- 1 And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.
- הרחיבי מקום אהלך ויריעות משכנותיך יטו; אל תחשכי, האריכי מיתריך ויתדתיך חזקי.
- 2 Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thine habitations: spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes;
- כי ימין ושמאל תפרצי, וזרעך גוים יירש, וערים נשמות יושיבו.
- 3 For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall inherit the Gen-tiles, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.
- אל תיראי, כי לא תבושי ואל תכלמי, כי לא תחפירי; כי בשעת עלימך תשכחי, וחרפת אלמנותיך לא תזכרי עוד.
- 4 Fear not; for thou shalt not be ashamed: neither be thou confounded; for thou shalt not be put to shame: for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.
- כי בעליך, עשיך, יהוה צבאות שמו; וגאלך, קדוש ישראל, אלהי כל הארץ יקרא.
- 5 For thy Maker is thine husband; the Lord of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called.
- כי כאשר עזובה ונעצבת רוח קראך יהוה, ואשת נעורים כי תמאס, אומר אלהיך.
- 6 For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.
- ברגע קטן עזבתיו, וברחמים גדלים אקבצך.
- 7 For a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee.
- בשצף קצף הסתתיתי פני רגע ממה, ובחסד עולם רחמתיך, אומר גאלך יהוה.
- 8 In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.
- כי מי נח זאת לי, אשר נשבעתי מעבר מי נח עוד על הארץ, כן נשבעתי מקצף עליך ומנערך בך.
- 9 For this is as the waters of Noah unto me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee.
- כי ההרים ימושו, והגבעות תמוטינה, וחסדי מאתך לא ימושו, וברית שלומי לא תמוט, אומר מרחמיך יהוה.
- 10 For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.
- עניה סערה, לא נחמה! הנה אנכי מרבץ בפוך אבניו, ויסדתיך בספירים.
- 11 O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.
- ושמתי כדכד שמשתיך, ושעריך לאבני אקדח, וכל גבולך לאבני חפץ.
- 12 And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

- 13 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.
 וְכָל בְּנֵיךָ לְמוֹדֵי יְהוָה; וְרַב שְׁלוֹם בְּנֵיךָ.
- 14 In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee.
 בַּצְדָּקָה תִּכּוֹנְנִי; רַחֲקִי מֵעֲשָׁק כִּי לֹא תִירָאִי, וּמִמַּחֲתָה כִּי לֹא תִקְרַב אֵלַיךָ.
- 15 Behold, they shall surely gather together, but not by me: whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.
 הֵן גּוֹר יִגּוּר, אָפֶס מֵאוֹתִי; מִי גַר אֶתָּךְ עָלֶיךָ יִפּוֹל.
- 16 Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.
 הִנֵּה, אֲנֹכִי בָרָאתִי חֶרֶשׁ נֹפֵחַ בָּאֵשׁ פְּחָם, וּמוֹצִיא כְּלִי לְמַעֲשָׂהוּ; וְאֲנֹכִי בָרָאתִי מִשְׁחִית לְחַבֵּל.
- 17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.
 כָּל כְּלִי יוֹצֵר עָלֶיךָ לֹא יִצְלַח, וְכָל לְשׁוֹן תִּקְוֹם אֶתָּךְ לְמִשְׁפָּט תִּרְשִׁיעֵנִי. זֹאת נַחֲלַת עַבְדֵי יְהוָה, וְצִדְקָתְךָ מֵאֵתִי, נָאֻם יְהוָה.

כג

23

- 1 And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.
 וְעַתָּה, אוֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לַחְקֹר אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה. אַכֵּן, מִצְוָה אֲנִי מְצִוְכֶם כִּי תִשְׁקְדוּ לַחְקֹר אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי גְדוֹלִים דְּבָרֵי יִשְׁעִיהוּ.
- 2 For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.
 כִּי אַכֵּן דִּבֶּר הוּא עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הַנוֹגְעִים לְעַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה; עַל כֵּן, הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא כִּי אַכֵּן יִדְבֵּר אֶף אֶל הַגּוֹיִים.
- 3 And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.
 וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הָיוּ וְאֵף יִהְיוּ, כַּפִּי דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 4 Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.
 עַל כֵּן שִׁיתוּ לִבְכֶם לְדְבָרֵי; כְּתִיבוּ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגַּדְתִּיכֶם; וְכַפִּי הַמוֹעֵד אֲשֶׁר לְאַב וּכְרִצוֹנוֹ, יָבוֹאוּ הֵם אֶל הַגּוֹיִים.
- 5 And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.
 וְכָל הַשּׁוֹמְעַם אֶל דְּבָרֵי, וְנָחַם עַל חַטָּאוֹ, וּמִטְבָּל, הוּא יִשָּׁע. חִקְרוּ אֵת דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, כִּי רַבִּים הֵם הַמַּעֲיִדִים עַל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.
- 6 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.
 וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר אָמַר לָהֶם יֵשׁוּעַ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר לָהֶם אֵת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר בְּיָדֵיהֶם הוּא הוֹסִיף וְדִבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם לֵאמֹר: הִנֵּה, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִכְתְּבוּ כְּתָבִים נוֹסְפִים אֲשֶׁר אֵין בְּיָדֵיכֶם.

- 7 And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל נְפִי: הֲבֵא נָא אֶת הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר עָלֵיהֶם שָׁמַרְתֶּם.
- 8 And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הֵבִיא נְפִי אֶת הַכְּתָבִים וְהִנִּחָם לִפְנָיו, הוּא הִבִּיט בָּהֶם וְאָמַר:
- 9 Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?
- אָכֵן, אֹמֵר אֲנִי לָכֶם, צִוִּיתִי אֶת עַבְדִּי שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְּמָנִי כִּי יַעֲדִיד לִפְנֵי הָעָם הַזֶּה, כִּי בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִפְאָר הָאָב אֶת שְׁמוֹ בִּי, יָקוּמוּ קְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים מִן הַמֵּתִים וְיִפְּעִיעוּ לְעֵינֵי רַבִּים וְיִשְׁמָשׁוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם. וְהוּא אָמַר לָהֶם: הֲלֹא כֵן הָיָה הַדְּבָר?
- 10 And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.
- וְהַתְּלָמִידִים עָנוּ וְאָמְרוּ: אָכֵן, אֲדוֹנָנוּ, שְׁמוּאֵל נִבֵּא כְּדִבְרֶיךָ, וְכָל דְּבָרָיו הִתְקַיְּמוּ.
- 11 And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?
- וַיֹּשׁוּעַ אָמַר לָהֶם: אֵיכָכָה לֹא כָּתַבְתֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה, כִּי קָמוּ קְדוֹשִׁים רַבִּים וְהִפְּעִיעוּ לְעֵינֵי רַבִּים וְיִשְׁמָשׁוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם?
- 12 And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.
- וְנְפִי זָכַר כִּי לֹא נִכְתַּב הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- 13 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.
- אֲזַי צִוָּה יֵשׁוּעַ כִּי יִכְתַּב הַדְּבָר; עַל כֵּן נִכְתַּב הוּא כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּה.
- 14 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.
- וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר בָּאָר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת כָּל הַכְּתוּבִים אֲשֶׁר נִכְתְּבוּ עַל יְדֵיהֶם, הוּא צִוָּם לְלַמֵּד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הוּא בָּאָר לָהֶם.

כד

24

- 1 And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of hosts.
- אֲזַי הוּא צִוָּם לִכְתֹּב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נָתַן הָאָב לְמַלְאָכֵי, אֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר לָהֶם. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר כָּתְּבוּ הוּא בָּאָרָם, וְאָלָה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיד לָהֶם לֵאמֹר: כֹּה אָמַר הָאָב אֶל מַלְאָכֵי: הִנְנִי שֹׁלֵחַ מַלְאָכִי וּפְנֵה דֶרֶךְ לִפְנֵי, וּפְתָאם יְבוֹא אֵל הַיְכָלֹ הָאֲדוֹן אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם מְבַקְשִׁים, וּמַלְאָךְ הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר אַתֶּם חֲפָצִים הֵנָּה בָּא, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 2 But who may abide the day of his coming? And who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap:
- וּמִי מִכְלִיפֵל אֶת יוֹם בּוֹאוֹ, וּמִי הֶעָמִיד בְּהִרְאֻתוֹ? כִּי הוּא כְּאֵשׁ מְצַרֵּף וּכְבִּרִית מְכַבְּסִים.

- 3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver: and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.
- וַיֵּשֶׁב מִצָּרְף וּמְטַהֵר כֶּסֶף; וְטָהַר אֶת בְּנֵי לֵוִי, וְזָקַק אֹתָם כַּזָּהָב וּכְכֶסֶף, וְהָיוּ לַיהוָה מִגִּישֵׁי מִנְחָה בְּצִדְקָה.
- 4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.
- וְעֹרְבָה לַיהוָה מִנְחַת יְהוּדָה וִירוּשָׁלַם, כִּימֵי עוֹלָם וּכְשָׁנִים קִדְמֹנִיּוֹת.
- 5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger from his right, and fear not me, saith the Lord of hosts.
- וְקִרְבֹּתִי אֲלֵיכֶם לְמִשְׁפָּט; וְהִיִּיתִי עֵד מְהֵרָה בְּמִכְשָׁפִים וּבְמִנְאָפִים וּבְנִשְׁבָּעִים לְשֹׁקֵר וּבְעֹשֵׂי שְׂכָר שְׂכִיר אֲלֻמָּנָה וַיְתוֹם וּמִטִּי גֵר, וְלֹא יִרְאוּנִי, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.
- כִּי אֲנִי יְהוָה לֹא שֹׁנֵיתִי; וְאַתֶּם בְּנֵי יַעֲקֹב לֹא כָלִיתֶם.
- 7 Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of hosts. But ye said, Wherein shall we return?
- לְמִימֵי אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם סִרְתֶּם מִחֻקִּי, וְלֹא שָׁמַרְתֶּם. שׁוּבוּ אֵלַי וְאֶשׁוּבָה אֲלֵיכֶם, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת. וְאַמְרַתֶּם: בְּמָה נָשׁוּב? הֲיִקְבַע אָדָם אֱלֹהִים? כִּי אַתֶּם קִבַּעְתֶּם אֹתִי. וְאַמְרַתֶּם בְּמָה קִבַּעְנוּדָּ? הַמַּעֲשֶׂה וְהַתְרוּמָה.
- 8 Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye said, Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.
- בְּמַאֲרָה אַתֶּם נָאֲרִים, וְאֹתִי אַתֶּם קִבַּעְתֶּם, הַגּוֹי כָּלּוּ.
- 9 Ye are cursed with a curse: for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.
- הַבִּיאוּ אֶת כָּל הַמַּעֲשֶׂה אֶל בֵּית הָאוֹצָר, וְיִהְיֶה טָרֶף בְּבֵיתִי; וּבְחֻנּוֹנִי נָא בִּזְאוֹת, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, אֲסֹא אֶפְתַּח לָכֶם אֶת אֲרָבוֹת הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהִרִיקְתִּי לָכֶם בְּרָכָה עַד בְּלִי דֵי.
- 10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.
- וְגַעַרְתִּי לָכֶם בְּאֹכֶל, וְלֹא יִשְׁחַת לָכֶם אֶת פְּרִי הָאֲדָמָה; וְלֹא תִשְׁכַּל לָכֶם הַגֶּפֶן בְּשֹׁדָה, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 11 And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts.
- וְאֶשְׂרוּ אֶתְכֶם כָּל הַגּוֹיִם, כִּי תִהְיוּ אַתֶּם אֶרֶץ חֶפְזָא, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- 12 And all nations shall call you blessed: for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of hosts.
- חֲזָקוּ עָלַי דְּבָרֵיכֶם, אָמַר יְהוָה, וְאַמְרַתֶּם: מַה נִּדְבַּרְנוּ עִלְיָדָּ?
- 13 Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say, What have we spoken so much against thee?
- יֵהוּ אַמְרַתֶּם: שׁוֹא עֲבַד אֱלֹהִים, וּמָה בִצַּע כִּי שְׁמַרְנוּ מִשְׁמֶרֶתוֹ וְכִי הִלְכְנוּ קְדֻרָנִית מִפְּנֵי יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת?
- 14 Ye have said, It is vain to serve God: and what profit is it that we have kept his ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of hosts?
- וְעַתָּה אֲנַחְנוּ מְאֻשְׁרִים יְדִידִים; גַּם נִבְנוּ עֹשֵׂי רָשָׁעָה; גַּם בָּחֲנוּ אֱלֹהִים וַיִּמְלֹטוּ.
- 15 And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

- 16 אז נִדְבְּרוּ יִרְאֵי יְהוָה אִישׁ אֶל רֵעֵהוּ, וַיִּקְשֹׁב יְהוָה וַיִּשְׁמַע; וַיִּכְתֹּב סֵפֶר זִכְרוֹן לְפָנָיו, לִירְאֵי יְהוָה וּלְחֹשְׁבֵי שְׁמוֹ.
- 17 וְהָיוּ לִי, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, לְיוֹם אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה סִגְלָה; וְחִמַּלְתִּי עֲלֵיהֶם כַּאֲשֶׁר יַחְמֹל אִישׁ עַל בְּנוֹ הָעֶבֶד אֹתוֹ.
- 18 וְשִׁבְתֶּם וְרִאיתֶם בֵּין צַדִּיק לְרָשָׁע, בֵּין עֶבֶד אֱלֹהִים לְאֲשֶׁר לֹא עֶבֶדוֹ.
- 16 Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.
- 17 And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.
- 18 Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

כה

25

- כִּי הִנֵּה הַיּוֹם בָּא בַעֵר פְּתִנּוֹר; וְהָיוּ כָל יְדֵים וְכָל עֵשֶׂה וְרִשְׁעָה קֵשׁ; וְלִהְיוֹת אֹתָם הַיּוֹם הַבֹּא, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵעֹז לָהֶם שָׂרֵשׁ וְעֵנָף.
- וְזָרְחָה לָכֶם, יִרְאֵי שְׁמִי, שְׁמֹשׁ צִדְקָה וּמִרְפָּא בְּכִנְפֶיהָ; וַיִּצְאֲתֶם וּפְשַׁתֶּם כְּעִגְלֵי מִרְבֵּק.
- וְעִסּוֹתֶם רִשְׁעִים; כִּי יִהְיוּ אֶפֶר תַּחַת כַּפּוֹת רַגְלֵיכֶם בַּיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר אֲנִי עֹשֶׂה, אָמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת.
- זָכְרוּ תוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה עֶבְדִּי, אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי אוֹתוֹ בְּחֹרֵב עַל כָּל יִשְׂרָאֵל, חֻקִּים וּמִשְׁפָּטִים.
- הִנֵּה אֲנִי שֹׁלֵחַ לָכֶם אֶת אֱלִיָּה הַנָּבִיא לְפָנָי בּוֹא יוֹם יְהוָה הַגָּדוֹל וְהַנּוֹרָא.
- וְהָשִׁיב לֵב אֲבוֹת עַל בָּנִים, וְלֵב בָּנִים עַל אֲבוֹתָם, פֶּן אָבֹא וְהִכִּיתִי אֶת הָאָרֶץ חָרָם.
- 1 For, behold, the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.
- 2 But unto you that fear my name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.
- 3 And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of hosts.
- 4 Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.
- 5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord:
- 6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

כו

26

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיד יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא בָּאֲרָם אֶל הַקְּהָל, אָכֵן, הוּא בָּאֵר לָהֶם הַכֹּל, גְּדוֹלוֹת וּקְטָנוֹת.
- וְהוּא אָמַר: הַכְּתָבִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ בְיַדְכֶם, צִוִּינִי הָאֵב כִּי אֶתֵּן לָכֶם; כִּי מִחֻמַּתּוֹ הִיא לְתַתָּם לְדוֹרוֹת אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ.
- 1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.
- 2 And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

וְהוּא בָּאֵר לָהֶם אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, מִן הָרִאשִׁית
וְעַד עַתָּה בּוֹאוּ בְּתַפְאֲרָתוֹ; אַכֵּן, אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹאוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, אַף עַד הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר
יִנָּתְכוּ הַיְסוּדוֹת בַּחֵם לִוְהֵט וְהָאֲדָמָה תִּגָּל
כַּמְּגִלָּה, וְהַשָּׁמַיִם וְהָאָרֶץ יִסְתַּלְקוּ;

אַכֵּן, עַד לַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאַחֲרוֹן, כְּאֲשֶׁר יַעֲמְדוּ
כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם וְכָל הַמְּשֻׁפָּחוֹת וְכָל הָאֲמוֹת
וְהַלְשׁוֹנוֹת לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים לְהַשְׁפִּיט עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם,
אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.

וְאִם טוֹבִים, חֶלְקָם לְקוֹם לְחַיֵּי עוֹלָם; וְאִם רָעִים,
חֶלְקָם לְקוֹם לְמִשְׁפַּט חֶרֶם; וְהֵם מִקְבִּילִים,
אֶחָד בְּעֶבֶר הָאֶחָד וְאֶחָד בְּעֶבֶר הָאֶחָד, כְּפִי
הַרְחָמִים וְהַמְּשֻׁפָּט וְהַקְדָּשָׁה אֲשֶׁר בְּמִשְׁחֵי,
אֲשֶׁר הוּא הָיָה טָרָם רִאשִׁית הָעוֹלָם.

וְהִנֵּה, לֹא נָתַן לְכָתֹב בְּסֵפֶר הַזֶּה אֶף אֶת
חֶלֶק הַמָּאָה מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אַכֵּן לְמַד
יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם;

אֲךָ לִוְחוֹת נְפִי מְכִילִים אֶת רַב הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
לְמַד יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם.

אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כָּתַבְתִּי אֲנִי, וְהֵם מְעַט
מִזֶּכֶר מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר לְמַד יִשׁוּעַ אֶת הָעָם;
וְהִנֵּה אֲנִי כֹתֵבָתִים בְּעֶבֶר וּיּוֹבֵאוּ שׁוֹב אֶל הָעָם
הַזֶּה מֵאֵת הַגּוֹיִים, כְּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יִשׁוּעַ.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר יִקְבְּלוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
וְרָאוּ הוּא כִּי יִמְבָּלוּ תַּחֲלָה, בְּעֶבֶר תִּנָּסָה
בָּהֶם אֱמוּנָתָם, וְהִנֵּה, אִם הֵם יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה, אֲזִי יִתְגַּלּוּ לְעֵינֵיהֶם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם
גְּדוֹלִים יוֹתֵר.

אֲךָ הִיא כִּי אִם לֹא יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה,
יִמְנְעוּ מֵהֶם הַדְּבָרִים הַגְּדוֹלִים, וְתִגְזֹר אֲשֶׁר־מֵתָם.

הִנֵּה, עֲמַדְתִּי לְכָתֹבָם, אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר חָרוּטִים
עַל לִוְחוֹת נְפִי, אֲךָ יְהוָה מָנַע זֹאת כִּי אֶמַּר:
אֲנִסָּה אֶת אֱמוּנַת עַמִּי.

לָכֵן, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, כּוֹתֵב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר
צִוֵּנִי יְהוָה, וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, שָׁם קִץ לְדְּבָרִי
וּמוֹסִיף לְכָתֹב אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּיתִי.

3 And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

4 And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

5 If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

6 And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

7 But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

8 And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

9 And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

10 And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

11 Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

12 Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

- 13 לָכֵן, רְצוֹנִי כִּי תִשְׁתִּיחוּ לַבָּרֶךְ, כִּי הָאֲדוֹן אָבִן לְמַד אֶת הָעָם בְּמִשְׁךָ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים, וְאַחֲרֵי כֵן הוּא נִגְלָה אֲלֵיהֶם לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת, וַיַּצַּע לֶחֶם לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת, וַיְבָרֶךְ עָלָיו וַיִּתְּנוּ לָהֶם.
- 14 וְהוּא לְמַד אֶת יְלָדֵי הַקֹּהֶל, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו דְּבַר, וְשִׁמַּשׁ לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא הִתִּיר אֶת לְשׁוֹנָם, וְהֵם דִּבְּרוּ אֶל אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם דְּבָרִים גְּדוּלִּים וְנִפְלְאִים, גְּדוּלִּים אֲף מִן הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר גִּלָּה לָעָם. אָבִן, הוּא הִתִּיר אֶת חֲרָצוֹת לְשׁוֹנָם לְמַעַן יִמְלְלוּ.
- 15 וְהָיָה אַחֵר עָלוֹתוֹ הַשְּׁמִימָה, זֶה הַפַּעַם הַשְּׁנִי, אֲשֶׁר נִגְלָה אֲלֵיהֶם, וְהִלֵּךְ אֶל הָאֵב, אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָפָא אֶת כָּל חוֹלֵיהֶם וְאֶת פְּסֻחֵיהֶם וּפְקַח אֶת עֵינָיו עוֹרֵיהֶם וּפָתַח אָזְנוֹ הַחֲרָשִׁים, אָבִן אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה כָּל מִינֵי רְפוּי בָּהֶם, וְהָקִים אָדָם מִן הַמֵּתִים וְהִרְאָה לָהֶם אֶת כּוֹחוֹ, וְעָלָה אֶל הָאֵב,
- 16 וְהָיָה, לְמַחֲרָת הַתְּקַבְּצוֹ הַקֹּהֶל יַחְדָּו וְרָאוּ אֶת הַיְלָדִים הָאֵלֶּה וְשָׁמְעוּ; אָבִן, אֲף עוֹלָלִים פָּתְחוּ פִּיהֶם וּמָלְלוּ נִפְלְאוֹת; וְנִאֲסַר עַל כָּל אָדָם לְכַתֵּב אֶת אֲשֶׁר דִּבְּרוּ.
- 17 וְהַתְּלַמִּידִים אֲשֶׁר בָּחַר יֵשׁוּעַ הַחֲלוּ מִן הָעַת הַהִיא לְהַטְבִּיל אֶת כָּל הַבָּאִים אֲלֵיהֶם וּלְלַמְּדָם; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר הִטְבִּילוּ לִשְׁם יֵשׁוּעַ מָלְאוּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 18 וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם רָאוּ וְאֲף שָׁמְעוּ דְּבָרִים בֶּל יִסְפְּרוּ אֲשֶׁר אֵין בְּרִשּׁוֹת אָדָם לְכַתְּבָם.
- 19 וְהֵם לְמַדּוּ וְשִׁמְשׁוּ זֶה לַפְּנֵי זֶה, וְכָל הַדְּבָרִים הָיוּ מְשֻׁתָּפִים לָהֶם, וְכָל אָדָם נִהַג בְּיֶשֶׁר אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ.
- 20 וְכֵה הֵם עָשׂוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם יֵשׁוּעַ.
- 21 וְהַמְּטַבְּלִים לִשְׁם יֵשׁוּעַ נִקְרְאוּ כְּנִסְיַת הַמְּשִׁיחַ.
- Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.
- And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.
- And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—
- Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.
- And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.
- And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.
- And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.
- And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.
- And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

כז

27

- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ בְּמִסְעֵיהֶם
וְהָטִיפוּ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וְאָף רָאוּ,
וְהִטְבִּילוּ בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, הֵם הִתְאַסְּפוּ יַחְדָּו
וְהִתְאַחְדּוּ בַּתְּפִלָּה אֲדִירָה וּבְצוּם.
- וַיֵּשׁוּעַ הוֹסִיף וְהִתְגַּלָּה אֲלֵיהֶם בַּעֲדָה הֵם
מִתְפַּלְלִים אֶל הָאֵב בְּשִׁמּוֹ. וַיֵּשׁוּעַ בָּא וַעֲמַד
בְּתוֹכָם, וְאָמַר אֲלֵיהֶם: מַה חֹפְצְכֶם כִּי
אֶתֶּן לָכֶם?
- וְהֵם אָמְרוּ לוֹ: אֲדוֹנֵנוּ, חֹפְצֵנוּ כִּי תֹאמַר לָנוּ
אֶת הַשֵּׁם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה הַזֹּאת, כִּי
יִשׁ מִחֲלֻקוֹת בָּעָם עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה.
- וְאָמַר לָהֶם הָאֲדוֹן: אַכֹּן הִנְנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם,
מִדּוּעַ יִלּוּנוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים וְיָרִיבוּ עַל הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה?
- הֲלֹא הֵם קִרְאוּ אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַקִּדְשׁ, הָאוֹמְרִים כִּי
תִקְחוּ עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא
שְׁמִי? כִּי בְּשֵׁם הַזֶּה תִּקְרָאוּ בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- וְהִלֻּקַח עָלָיו אֶת שְׁמִי וְהִמְתַּמִּיד עַד הַקֵּץ,
הוּא יִנְשָׁע בַּיּוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן.
- עַל כֵּן, כֹּל אֲשֶׁר תַּעֲשׂוּ, בְּשְׁמִי תַעֲשׂוּ. לָכֵן
תִּקְרָאוּ אֶת שֵׁם הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּשְׁמִי; וְלֹאֵב תִּקְרָאוּ
בְּשְׁמִי, כִּי הוּא יְבָרֵךְ אֶת הַכְּנִסְיָה לְמַעֲנִי.
- וְכִיצַד תִּהְיֶה זֹאת כְּנִסְיָתִי אִם לֹא תִקְרָא בְּשְׁמִי?
כִּי אִם נִקְרָאת כְּנִסְיָה בְּשֵׁם מֹשֶׁה, כְּנִסְיַת מֹשֶׁה
הִיא; וְאִם הִיא נִקְרָאת בְּשֵׁם אָדָם, כְּנִסְיַת הָאָדָם
הִיא; אֲךָ אִם בְּשְׁמִי נִקְרָאת הִיא, כְּנִסְיַתִּי הִיא,
אִם אַכֹּן בְּנוֹיִים חֲבֵרִיָּה עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי.
- אַכֹּן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי בְּנוֹיִים אַתֶּם
עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי, עַל כֵּן תִּקְרָאוּ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים
אֲשֶׁר תִּקְרָאוּ, בְּשְׁמִי; עַל כֵּן, וְהָיָה כִּי תִקְרָאוּ
אֶל הָאֵב, לְמַעַן הַכְּנִסְיָה, בְּשְׁמִי, הוּא
יִשְׁמַע אֶתְכֶם.
- וְאִם תִּהְיֶה הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּנוֹיָה עַל בְּשׂוֹרְתִּי, יִרְאֶה
הָאֵב אֶת פְּעָלֵי בְּקִרְבָּהּ.
- 1 And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.
- 2 And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?
- 3 And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.
- 4 And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?
- 5 Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;
- 6 And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.
- 7 Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.
- 8 And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.
- 9 Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;
- 10 And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

- 11 But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.
- 12 For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.
- 13 Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.
- 14 And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—
- 15 And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.
- 16 And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.
- 17 And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.
- 18 And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.
- 19 And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.
- 20 Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified
- וְאִם לֹא תִהְיֶה הַכְּנִסְיָה בְּנוּיָה עַל בְּשׁוּרְתִּי, עַל פֶּעַל אָדָם תִּיִסֵּד, אוֹ עַל פֶּעַל הַשָּׂטָן, אָכֵן, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם, כִּי לְשָׁעָה קָלָה יִשְׂמְחוּ אֲנָשִׁיהָ בַּפִּעֲלָם, וְעוֹד זְמַן מָה יָבוֹא הַקֵּץ, וְלֹא־רֹץ הֵם יִגְדְּעוּ וְלֹא־שׁ הֵם יִשְׁלָכוּ, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה אֵין שִׁיבָה.
- כִּי גְמוּל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם יִרְדָּפֶם, אָכֵן, מִפְּנֵי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם הֵם יִגְדְּעוּ; עַל כֵּן זָכְרוּ אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֱלֹהֵיכֶם.
- הִנֵּה נָתַתִּי לָכֶם אֶת בְּשׁוּרְתִּי; וְזֹאת הַבְּשׁוּרָה אֲשֶׁר נָתַתִּיכֶם: בְּאִתִּי אֶל הָעוֹלָם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת רְצוֹן אָבִי, כִּי הוּא שְׁלָחָנִי.
- וְאָבִי שְׁלָחָנִי בַּעֲבוּר אֲנָשָׁא עַל הַצֵּלָב; וּבַעֲבוּר אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַתִּי עַל הַצֵּלָב אֲמַשׁוּ אֶת כָּל הָאָדָם אֵלַי; כִּי כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאַתִּי אֲנִי בִידֵי בְּנֵי אָדָם, כֵּן יִנָּשְׂאוּ בְּנֵי הָאָדָם בִּידֵי הָאָב לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי, לְהַשְׁפִּט עַל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אִם טוֹבִים וְאִם רָעִים.
- בַּעֲבוּר זֹאת נִשְׁאַתִּי; בְּאֲשֶׁר אֲמַשׁוּ אֵלַי, כִּפִּי כֹחַ הָאָב, אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, בַּעֲבוּר יִשְׁפָּטוּ כִּפִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם.
- וְכָל אֲשֶׁר שָׁב מִחַטָּאָיו וּמִטְבֵּל בְּשֵׁמִי מַלְא יְמֵלָא. וְאִם יִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, הִנֵּה, אוֹתוֹ אֲזַכֶּה לִפְנֵי אָבִי בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא אֲשֶׁר אֶעֱמֹד לְשַׁפֵּט אֶת הָעוֹלָם.
- וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִתְמִיד עַד הַקֵּץ, אָכֵן, יִגְדֵּעַ, וְאֶל הָאֵשׁ יִשְׁלָךְ, אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה אֵין שִׁיבָה, כִּפִּי צְדָקַת הָאָב.
- וְזֶה דְּבָרֹו אֲשֶׁר נָתַן לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם. וְלָכֵן מִקַּיִם הוּא אֶת דְּבָרָיו אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר וְלֹא יִשְׁקֹר, כִּי אִם מִקַּיִם אֶת כָּל דְּבָרָיו.
- וְכָל דְּבַר טָמֵא אֵינוֹ יָכוֹל לְהִכָּנֵס אֶל מַלְכוּתוֹ; לָכֵן לֹא יִכָּנְסוּ אֶל מְנוּחָתוֹ, כִּי אִם אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר רָחַצוּ אֶת בְּגָדֵיהֶם בְּדָמֵי מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתָם, וּמִפְּנֵי הַנִּחָמָם עַל כָּל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם, וּמִפְּנֵי נְאֻמָּנוּתָם עַד הַקֵּץ.
- וְזֹאת הַמִּצְוָה: שׁוּבוּ מִחַטָּאתֵיכֶם, כָּל אַפְסִי אֶרֶץ, וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי וְהִטְבַּלְוּ בְּשֵׁמִי, בַּעֲבוּר

- תתקדשו על ידי קבלת רוח הקדש, למען תעמדו ללא רבב, ביום האחרון.
- by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.
- 21 Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;
- אכן הנני אומר לכם, זאת בשורתי, ויודעים אתם את הדברים אשר עליכם לעשות בכנסייתי כי את הדברים אשר ראיתם אותי עושה, תעשו גם אתם; אכן, את אשר ראיתם אותי עושה, אף אתם תעשו.
- 22 Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.
- לכן, אם תעשו את הדברים האלה, ברוכים תהיו, כי תנשאו ביום האחרון.
- 23 Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.
- כתבו את הדברים אשר ראיתם ושמעתם, זולת אלה אשר נאסר עליכם.
- 24 Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.
- כתבו את מעשי העם הזה, אשר יעשו, כפי אשר נכתבו המעשים אשר היו.
- 25 For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.
- כי הנה, על פי הספרים אשר נכתבו, ואשר יכתבו, ישפט העם הזה, כי על ידיהם יודעו מעשיהם לבני האדם.
- 26 And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.
- הנה, כל הדברים נכתבים מאת האב; על כן, על פי הספרים אשר יכתבו, ישפט העולם.
- 27 And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.
- ודעו כי אתם תהיו שופטי העם הזה על פי המשפט אשר אתנכם, אשר משפט צדק הוא. לכן, אילו אנשים עליכם להיות? אכן אני אומר לכם, אף כמוני תהיו.
- 28 And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.
- ועתה הולך אני אל האב; ואכן אני אומר לכם, כל אשר תבקשו מאת האב בשמי, נתון ינתן לכם.
- 29 Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.
- על כן, בקשו וינתן לכם, דפקו ויפתח לכם. כי המבקש יקבל, והדופק יפתח לו.
- 30 And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.
- ועתה, הנה גדולה שמחתי ומלאה היא, בעבורכם ובעבור הדור הזה. אכן, אף האב שש וכן כל מלאכי הקדש, בעבורכם ובעבור הדור הזה, כי איש מהם לא יאבד.
- 31 Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.
- הן רצוני כי תבינו; כי פנתי לאלה החיים עתה מן הדור הזה; ואיש מהם לא יאבד, ובהם שמחתי מלאה.

32 But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

33 And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

כח

28

1 And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

2 And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

3 And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

4 And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

5 And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the things which they desired.

6 And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

7 Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of

- הָאָדָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִקְוּמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כְּרִצּוֹן הָאֵב, בְּעֵת בּוֹאִי בְתִפְאֶרְתִּי בְכֹחַ מְרוֹמַיִם.
- לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִסְבְּלוּ אֶת יְסוּרֵי הַמָּוֶת; אֲךָ כְּאֲשֶׁר אָבּוֹא בְתִפְאֶרְתִּי, תִּשְׁתַּנּוּ כְּהֶרֶף עֵין מִבְּנֵי תְמוּתָה לִבְנֵי אֱלֹמֹת; וְאִזִּי תִבָּרְכוּ בַּמַּלְכוּת אֲבִי.
- אֲכֹן, בְּהִיוֹתְכֶם בְּבֶשֶׁר, לֹא יִהְיֶה לָכֶם כָּל מִכְאוֹב וְאִף לֹא צֶעַר, כִּי אִם עַל חֲטָאֵי הָעוֹלָם; וְאֵת כָּל זֹאת אֶעֱשֶׂה מִפְּנֵי חֲפָצְכֶם מִמֶּנִּי, כִּי חֲפָצְתֶּם לְהִבִּיאַ אֵלַי אֶת נַפְשׁוֹת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, בְּעוֹד אֲשֶׁר עוֹמֵד הָעוֹלָם.
- וּבְעִבּוֹר זֹאת תִּהְיֶה לָכֶם שְׂמִיחָה שְׁלֵמָה, וְתִשְׁבּוּ בַּמַּלְכוּת אֲבִי; אֲכֹן, שְׂמִיחַתְכֶם תִּהְיֶה שְׁלֵמָה, כְּשִׂמְחָה הַשְּׁלֵמָה אֲשֶׁר הָאֵב נָתַן לִי. וְאִף כְּמוֹנֵי תִהְיוּ וְאִנִּי כָאֵב; וְהָאֵב וְאִנִּי אֶחָד.
- וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ מַעֲיֵד עַל הָאֵב וְעָלַי; וְהָאֵב נֹתֵן אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לִבְנֵי הָאָדָם בְּעִבּוֹרִי.
- וְהִיָּה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר יֵשׁוּעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא נָגַע בְּאֶצְבָּעוֹ בְּכָל אִישׁ מֵהֶם, זֹלַת הַשְּׁלִישָׁה אֲשֶׁר נִוְעְדוּ לְהִשְׁתַּהוֹת עַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה, וְנִפְרַד מֵהֶם.
- וְהִנֵּה נִפְתָּחוּ הַשָּׁמַיִם, וְהַשְּׁלִישָׁה הֶעֱלָו הַשָּׁמַיִמָה, וְהֵם רָאוּ וְשָׁמְעוּ דְּבָרִים בָּל יִסְפְּרוּ.
- וְנִאָּסַר עֲלֵיהֶם לְסַפֵּר דְּבָר; וְאִף לֹא נָתַן לָהֶם כֹּחַ לְהַגִּיד אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאוּ וְשָׁמְעוּ.
- וְאִם בְּגוֹפָם הָיוּ אוֹ מִחוּצָה לוֹ, לֹא יָכְלוּ לְהַגִּיד, כִּי נִדְּמָה לָהֶם כְּהִתְחַלְפוֹת צוּרָתָם, כְּאֵלּוּ הִשְׁתַּנּוּ מִגּוֹף בָּשָׂר אֶל מַצָּב אֱלֹמֹת, עַד כִּי יָכְלוּ לְרַאוֹת אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הַנּוֹגְעִים לְאֱלֹהִים.
- אֲךָ הֵם שָׁבוּ וְשִׁמְשׁוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָדָמָה; וְאוֹלָם הֵם לֹא שִׁמְשׁוּ בַּדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ וְרָאוּ, מִפְּנֵי הַמִּצְוָה אֲשֶׁר צִוּוּ בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- וְעַתָּה, אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ אִם מִיּוֹם הַתְּחַלְפוֹתָם הָיוּ הֵם בְּנֵי תְמוּתָה אוֹ בְּנֵי אֱלֹמֹת;
- men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.
- 8 And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.
- 9 And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.
- 10 And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;
- 11 And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.
- 12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.
- 13 And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.
- 14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;
- 15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.
- 16 But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.
- 17 And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

- 18 But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given— they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.
- אך זאת יודע אני, על פי הכתבים המסורים בזמננו: הם הלכו על פני הארץ, ושמשו לפני כל העם, וספחו אל הכנסייה את כל אשר האמינו בהשפעתם והטבילום; וכל המטבילים קבלו את רוח הקדש.
- 19 And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.
- והם השלכו אל בית הכלא על ידי האנשים אשר לא חברו אל הכנסייה. ולא יכלו בתי הכלא להכילם כי נבקעו.
- 20 And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.
- והם השלכו אל עמקי האדמה, אך הם הכו את האדמה על ידי דבר אלהים, עד כי השתחררו בכחו מן המעמקים; על כן לא יכלו כולאיהם לכרות בורות עמקים דים להחזיקם.
- 21 And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.
- שלוש פעמים הם השלכו אל כבשן אש ולא נפגעו כלל.
- 22 And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.
- ופעמים הם השלכו אל גב חיות פרא; והנה, הם שחקו עם החיות כילד עם ששה, ולא נפגעו כלל.
- 23 And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.
- והיה כי הם הלכו בקרב כל עם נפי והטיפו את בשורת המשיח לכל בני האדם אשר על פני הארץ. והאנשים הפכו למאמיני יהוה ונספחו אל כנסיית המשיח. כה התברכו אנשי הדור ההוא כדבר ישוע.
- 24 And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.
- ועתה, אני, מורמון, מכלה את דברי, לזמן מה, על אודות הדברים האלה.
- 25 Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.
- הנה, עמדתי לכתב את שמות אלה אשר לעולם לא יטעמו מות, אך יהוה אסר זאת; לכן אינני כותבם, כי נסתרים הם מבני תבל.
- 26 But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.
- אך הנה, אני ראיתים והם שמשו לפני.
- 27 And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.
- והנה, הם יהיו בקרב הגויים, והגויים לא יכירו.
- 28 They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.
- והם יהיו אף בקרב היהודים, והיהודים לא יכירו.
- 29 And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto
- ויום יבוא, כאשר בחקמתו ימצא יהוה לנכון, והם ישמשו לפני כל שבטי ישראל הנפוצים, ולפני כל האמות והמשפחות והלשונות והעמים, ויביאו מתוכם נפשות רבות אל

- יֵשׁוּעַ, בְּעִבּוּר יְתֻקִּים חֻפָּצִים וְאִם מִפְּנֵי כֹחַ
אֱלֹהִים הַמְשַׁכְנֵה אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.
- וְהֵם כְּמַלְאכֵי אֱלֹהִים, וְאִם יִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל
הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, יוּכְלוּ לְהִרְאוֹת עֲצָמָם
אֶל כָּל אָדָם אֲשֶׁר יִיטֵב בְּעֵינֵיהֶם.
- עַל כֵּן גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים הַמַּעֲשִׂים אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשׂוּ
עַל יְדֵיהֶם, לְפָנֵי הַיּוֹם הַגָּדוֹל הַקָּרֵב, כְּאֲשֶׁר כָּל
בְּנֵי הָאָדָם הַתִּיַּצְבּ יִתִּיצְבוּ לְפָנֵי כִסֵּי הַמִּשְׁפָּט
אֲשֶׁר לַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- אָכֵן, אִם בְּקֶרֶב הַגּוֹיִים יִהְיֶה מַעֲשֶׂה גְדוֹל וְנִפְלֵא,
אֲשֶׁר יַעֲשֶׂה עַל יְדֵיהֶם, לְפָנֵי יוֹם הַדִּין הַהוּא.
- וְאִלּוּ הָיוּ לָכֶם כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ הַמְסַפְּרִים עַל
כָּל מַעֲשֵׂי הַמָּשִׁיחַ הַנִּפְלְאִים, הֵייתֶם יוֹדְעִים, עַל
פִּי דְבָרֵי הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה בּוֹא יְבוֹאוּ.
- וְאִם לֹאֲשֶׁר לֹא יִשְׁמַע לְדְבָרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, וְאִם לְדְבָרֵי
נְבִיָּהוּ הַשְּׁלוּחִים מִמֶּנּוּ אֵלֵיהֶם, כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר
אֵינָנו מְקַבֵּל אֶת דְּבָרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, אוֹ אֶת דְּבָרֵי
שְׁלִיחָיו, אֵין הוּא מְקַבֵּל אוֹתוֹ; לָכֵן הוּא לֹא
יִקְבָּל בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- הֵן טוֹב הָיָה לָהֶם לֹא לָאֵלֶּה נּוֹלְדוּ. הַתְּחַשְּׁבוּ כִּי
תּוּכְלוּ לְהַפְּטֹר מִדִּין אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר כְּבוֹדוֹ מְחַלֵּל,
הַנֶּרְמָס בְּרַגְלֵי בְנֵי אָדָם, לְמַעַן תָּבוֹא הַיְשׁוּעָה?
- וְעַתָּה, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹאֲלֵה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי עֲלֵיהֶם
כִּי בְּחֶרֶם הָאָדָם, וְהֵם הַשְּׁלֵשָׁה אֲשֶׁר הֶעֱלָו
הַשָּׁמַיִם, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַעְתִּי אִם נִטְהָרוּ
מִהַיּוֹת בְּנֵי מוֹת לְבָנֵי אֱלֹהִים;
- וְהֵנָּה, מֵאֲזַי אֲשֶׁר כְּתַבְתִּי, בְּקִשְׁתִּי מִיְהוָה
לְדַעַת, וּמִמֶּנּוּ נִגְלָה לִּי, כִּי עַל גּוֹפֶם הָיָה לְעֵבֶר
תְּמוּרָה, וְלֹא, יִטְעֲמוּ הֵם מוֹת.
- לָכֵן, בְּעִבּוּר לֹא יִטְעֲמוּ מוֹת, נִעֲשְׂתָה תְּמוּרָה
בְּגוֹפֶם, לְכָל יִסְבְּלוּ מִכָּאֹב וְאִם לֹא צָעַר, כִּי
אִם עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- וְהַתְּמוּרָה הַזֹּאת לֹא הָיְתָה כְּזֹאת אֲשֶׁר תַּחֲוֹל
בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא; כִּי נִעֲשְׂתָה בָּהֶם תְּמוּרָה אֲשֶׁר
עַל יְדֵיהֶם לֹא יָכֹל לְהִיטֵן לְשִׁטְוֹן שְׁלִטוֹן בָּהֶם
וְאִם לֹא יָכֹל הוּא לְפַתּוֹתָם; כִּי הֵם הִתְקַדְּשׁוּ
בְּגוֹפֶם עַד כִּי הִכּוּ קְדוֹשִׁים, וְלֹא יָכֹלוּ כַּחֲוֹל
- Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.
- 30 And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.
- 31 Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;
- 32 Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.
- 33 And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.
- 34 And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;
- 35 And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?
- 36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—
- 37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;
- 38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.
- 39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

- 40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell eternally in the heavens.
- הָאָרֶץ לְהַחֲזִיק בָּהֶם. בְּמַצָּב הַזֶּה הֵם נֹעֲדוּ לְהִשָּׁאֵר עַד יוֹם הַדִּין אֲשֶׁר לְמֹשִׁיחַ. וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא נִכְוֶנָה לָהֶם תְּמוּרָה גְּדוֹלָה יוֹתֵר, וְהֵם יִתְקַבְּלוּ בְּמַלְכוּת הָאָב מִבְּלִי לְצֵאת עוֹד; אַכֵּן, הֵם נֹעֲדוּ לִשְׁכֹּן עִם אֱלֹהִים בְּמְרוֹמִים לְעוֹלָם.

29

כט

- 1 And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֶם כִּי כִּרְאוֹת יִהְיוּ בְּחֻקְמָתוֹ כִּי נִכְוֶנָה שְׁעֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְבּוֹא אֶל הַגּוֹיִים כְּדָבָרוֹ, אַתֶּם תֵּדְעוּ כִּי הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת הָאָב עִם בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל בְּדִבְרֵי שְׂיָבָתָם אֶל אֲרָצוֹת נַחֲלָתָם כְּבָר הַחֲלָה לְהִתְקַיֵּם.
- 2 And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.
- וְתֵדְעוּ כִּי דְבָרֵי יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר הִגִּידוּ הַנְּבִיאִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים יִתְקַיְּמוּ כָּלָם; וְאַל לָכֶם לוֹמַר כִּי מְשָׁהָה יִהְיוּ אֶת בּוֹאוֹ אֶל בְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 3 And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.
- וְאַל לָכֶם לְדַמּוֹת בְּלִבְכֶם כִּי הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נֶאֱמָרוּ שׁוֹא הֵמָּה; כִּי הִנֵּה, זִכֹּר יִהְיוּ אֶת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם עַמּוֹ, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 4 And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.
- וּכְרִאוֹתְכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מוֹפִיעִים בְּקִרְבְּכֶם, אַל לָכֶם לְהוֹסִיף לְבּוֹז לְמַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה, כִּי חֶרֶב מִשְׁפָּטוֹ בְּיָמִינוֹ; וְהִיא בְּיָד הַיְּמִינִי, אִם תִּבְּזוּ לְמַעֲשָׂיו, מִהֵרָה יִשְׁלַחָה בְּכֶם לְהַשִּׁיגְכֶם.
- 5 Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!
- אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִבְזוּ לְמַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה; אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בְּמֹשִׁיחַ וּבְפַעְלָיו!
- 6 Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!
- אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בְּחַזְיוֹנוֹת יְהוָה, וְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר כִּי אֵין יְהוָה מוֹסִיף לַפְּעֹל עַל יְדֵי חַזְיוֹנוֹת אוֹ נְבוּאָה אוֹ עַל יְדֵי מִתְּנוֹת אוֹ לְשׁוֹנוֹת אוֹ רְפוּי אוֹ עַל יְדֵי כֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ!
- 7 Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!
- אַכֵּן, אֹי לְאֲשֶׁר יֹאמַר בְּיוֹם הַהוּא, בְּעֶבּוֹר בְּצַע, כִּי אֵין כָּל גִּס מִבְּצַע עַל יְדֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ. כִּי הָעוֹשֶׂה זֹאת, יִהְיֶה כְּכֵן אֲבָדוֹן, אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִרְחַם לוֹ, כְּדָבָר הַמָּשִׁיחַ!
- 8 Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.
- וְאַל לָכֶם לְשַׂרֵּק וּלְבּוֹז לַיהוּדִים, וְאֵף לֹא לְשַׂחֵק לָהֶם אוֹ לְכָל שְׂרִיד מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; כִּי הִנֵּה, זִכֹּר יִהְיוּ אֶת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲתֶם וְהוּא. אַכֵּן יַעֲשֶׂה לָהֶם כְּדָבָר אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּע לַעֲשׂוֹת.

לָכֵן, אֵל לָכֶם לְסָבֵר כִּי תוֹכְלוּ לְהַחֲלִיף אֶת
יָמִין יְהוָה בְּשִׁמְאַלּוֹ, לְבָל יוֹצִיא אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ
בְּקִיּוֹם הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.

9 Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

ל

30

שָׁמְעוּ, גּוֹיִים, וְהֶאֱזִינוּ לְדִבְרֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ,
בֶּן אֵל חַי, אֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי לְדַבֵּר עֲלֵיכֶם, כִּי הִנֵּהוּ
מִצִּוְנִי לְכַתֵּב, לֵאמֹר:

1 Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

שׁוּבוּ, כָּל הַגּוֹיִים, מִרְשַׁעַת דְּרָכֵיכֶם וְהִנַּחְמוּ
עַל רָעַת מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם; עַל שְׁקָרֵיכֶם וְכַזְבֵּיכֶם,
עַל זְנוּנֵיכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם הַנִּסְתָּרוֹת, עַל
עֲבוֹדַת אֱלִילִיכֶם וּמַעֲשֵׂי הָרָצַח וְתַרְמִיּוֹת
כַּהֲנֵיכֶם, וְעַל הַקְּנָאָה וְהַמְרִיבוֹת וְעַל כָּל
רְשָׁעֵיכֶם וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיכֶם וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי, וְהִטְבַּלְוּ
בְּשִׁמִּי, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּקְבְּלוּ מַחִילָה עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם
וְתִמְלְאוּ בְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, לְמַעַן תִּמְנֶנּוּ עִם בְּנֵי
עַמִּי, אֲשֶׁר מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵמָּה.

2 Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

סֵפֶר נְפִי ד

THE BOOK OF 4 NEPHI

סֵפֶר נְפִי, הוּא נְפִי בֶן נְפִי, מִתְלַמִּידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
סֵפֹר קוֹרוֹת עִם נְפִי עַל פִּי סֵפֶר זְכוֹנוֹתָיו. (בְּעֶרְךָ
321–35 לְסִפְרָה.)

The book of Nephi, who is the son of Nephi, one of the disciples of Jesus Christ. An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record. (About A.D. 35–321.)

א

1

וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפָה שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָאַרְבַּע וְכֵן שְׁנַת
שְׁלֹשִׁים וָחֲמִשׁ. וְהִנֵּה הִקִּימוּ תִלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ
כְּנִסְיָה לְמִשִּׁיחַ בְּכָל הָאֲרָצוֹת אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. וְכָל
אֲשֶׁר בָּאוּ אֵלֵיהֶם, וָאֵכֹן שָׁבוּ מִחַטֹּאתֵיהֶם,
הִטְבְּלוּ בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ וָאֵף קִבְּלוּ אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

1 And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

וְהָיָה בְּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וָשֵׁשׁ הִפְכוּ הַכָּל, נְפִיִּים
וְלָמְנִים, מֵאֲמִינֵי יְהוָה, עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֲרֶץ, וְלֹא
הָיוּ בֵּינֵיהֶם מְרִיבוֹת וּמַחֲלוֹקוֹת, וְכָל אִישׁ נָהָג
בִּישָׁר עִם רֵעֵהוּ.

2 And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

וּבְכָל אֲשֶׁר הָיָה לָהֶם הָיוּ שְׁתָּפוּיִם; עַל כֵּן לֹא
הָיָה בֵּינֵיהֶם עָשִׁיר וָעֲנִי, אוֹ עֶבֶד וְחֹפְשִׁי, כִּי הַכָּל
הָיוּ חֹפְשִׁיִּים וְנוֹטְלִים חֶלֶק בְּמַתַּת שָׁמַיִם.

3 And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

נְפִי ד א:ה-י

וְאַף שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֶׁבַע חָלְפָה, וְהַשָּׁלוֹם עוֹדוֹ
נִמְשָׁךְ בְּאֶרֶץ.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also,
and there still continued to be peace in the land.

וּבָעֵת הַהִיא נַעֲשׂוּ מַעֲשִׂים גְּדוֹלִים וְנִפְלְאִים
עַל יְדֵי תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ; אַכֵּן, הֵם רָפְאוּ חוֹלִים
וְהַקִּימוּ מֵתִים, הִסְבּוּ הַלֵּיכָה לַפְסָחִים וְנָתְנוּ
מֵאֹר עֵינַיִם לְעֹרְרִים וְשִׁמְעָה לְחֹרְשִׁים, וְהֵם
עָשׂוּ כָּל מִיּוֹ נְסִים בְּקֶרֶב בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְכָל
נִסְיָהֶם לֹא נַעֲשׂוּ כִּי אִם בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ.

5 And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples
of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and
cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf
to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children
of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name
of Jesus.

כֹּה חָלְפָה שָׁנַת שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשִׁמוֹנָה וְכֹן שָׁנוֹת
שְׁלֹשִׁים וְתֵשַׁע, אַרְבָּעִים, אַרְבָּעִים וְאַחַת,
אַרְבָּעִים וְשָׁתַיִם, אַכֵּן, עַד שָׁנַת אַרְבָּעִים וְתֵשַׁע,
חֲמִשִּׁים, חֲמִשִּׁים וְאַחַת, חֲמִשִּׁים וְשָׁתַיִם וְעַד
שָׁנַת חֲמִשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע, אֲשֶׁר חָלְפָה אֵף הִיא.

6 And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty
and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until
forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the
fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

וַיְהִי הַצִּלְחִים בְּאֶרֶץ עַד מָאֵד; אַכֵּן, עַד כִּי
הֵם בָּנוּ שָׁנִית עָרִים בְּמָקוֹם הָעָרִים הַשְׂרוּפוֹת.

7 And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch
that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

אֵף אֶת הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה הַהִיא, זֶרַחְמָלָה,
הֵם בָּנוּ שָׁנִית.

8 Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

אֵף הָיוּ עָרִים רַבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ, וּמִים נָקוּ
בְּמָקוֹמָן; עַל כֵּן לֹא נָתַן הָיָה לְקוֹמָם אֶת
הָעָרִים הָאֵלֶּה.

9 But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up
in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

וְהֵנָּה, הַתְּחִזָּק עִם נְפִי, וְהֵם רַבּוּ מִהֵר מְאֹד
וְהָיוּ לְעַם נָאֶה וְנָעִים.

10 And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax
strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly
fair and delightsome people.

וְהֵם נָשְׂאוּ וְנִשְׂאוּ, וְהִתְבָּרְכוּ כְּמֵלֶאכֶּרֶת דְּבָרֵי
הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֱלֹהֵיהֶם יְהוָה.

11 And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed
according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made
unto them.

וְהֵם לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ לָלֶכֶת אַחֵר תּוֹרַת מֹשֶׁה
וְחֻקֹּתֶיהָ, כִּי אִם בְּדֶרֶךְ הַמִּצְוֹת אֲשֶׁר קִבְּלוּ
מֵאֲדוֹנֵיהֶם וְאֱלֹהֵיהֶם, בְּהוֹסִיפָם לְצוּם
וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל, וּלְהוֹעֵד יַחַד לְעֵתִים קְרוֹבוֹת,
לְתַפְּלָה וּלְשִׁמְעִיעַת דְּבַר יְהוָה.

12 And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances
of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which
they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting
and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the
word of the Lord.

וְלֹא הָיְתָה מְרִיבָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר
בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ; אֵף הָיוּ נְסִים גְּדוֹלִים, אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ
בְּקֶרֶב תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ.

13 And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people,
in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the
disciples of Jesus.

וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפָה שָׁנַת שֶׁבַעִים וְאַחַת, וְכֹן שָׁנַת
שֶׁבַעִים וְשָׁתַיִם, וּבִקְצָרָהּ, חָלְפוּ כָּל הַשָּׁנִים עַד
שָׁנַת שֶׁבַעִים וְתֵשַׁע, אַכֵּן, אֵף שָׁנַת מֵאָה,

14 And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and
also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and
ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed

- וְתַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרם, הָלְכוּ כֻּלָּם
אֶל גֶּן עֵדֶן אֲשֶׁר לֵאלֹהִים, וְזֹלַת הַשְּׁלֹשָׁה
אֲשֶׁר נִוָּעְדוּ לְהִשְׁתַּחֲוֹת; וְתַלְמִידִים אֲחֵרִים
הִסְמְכוּ תַּחְתֵּיהֶם; וְרַבִּים מִן הַדּוֹר הַהוּא
עָבְרוּ מִן הָעוֹלָם.
- 15 And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.
- וְלֹא הָיְתָה בָּאָרֶץ כָּל מַחְלָקָת, מִפְּנֵי אֲהֶבַת
אֱלֹהִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנָה בְּלִבְ הָעָם.
- 16 And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.
- וְלֹא שָׁרְרָה בֵּינֵיהֶם קִנְיָה, וְלֹא מְרִיבָה,
וְלֹא הַמְלָה, וְאֵף לֹא זִנוּת וּמְרָמָה וְרִצְחָ וְכָל
מִין זִמָּה; אֲכֹן, לֹא יָכַל לְהִיּוֹת עִם מֵאֲשֶׁר
יֹתֵר בְּכָל הָעַמִּים אֲשֶׁר בָּרָאָה יְד אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of —ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.
- אֲכֹן, לֹא הָיָה בָּהֶם שׁוֹדֵד אוֹ רוֹצֵחַ, וְלֹא הָיוּ
לְמַנִּים וְלֹא כָל בְּנֵי עִם אֲחֵר. כִּי הָפַל הָיוּ אֶחָד,
בְּנֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְיוֹרְשֵׁי מַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 18 And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.
- הִנֵּה, מִה מְבָרְכִים הָיוּ! כִּי בִּרְכָם יְהוָה
בְּכָל מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, וְהֵם הָיוּ מְבָרְכִים וּמַצְלִיחִים,
עַד אֲשֶׁר חָלְפָה שְׁנַת מֵאָה וָעֶשֶׂר; וְהַדּוֹר
הָרִאשׁוֹן מִיְמֵי יֵשׁוּעַ עָבַר מִן הָעוֹלָם,
וְלֹא הָיָה רִיב בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ.
- 19 And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.
- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת הַהִיא, כִּי נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר רָשַׁם אֶת
כְּתָב הַזְּכָרוֹן הָאֲחֵרוֹן הַזֶּה, וְהוּא רָשָׁמוֹ עַל
גְּבִי לוחות נְפִי, מָת; וְאַחֲרָיו רָשַׁם אוֹתוֹ בְּנוֹ
עָמוֹס, אֲשֶׁר אָף הוּא רָשָׁמוֹ עַל לוחות נְפִי.
- 20 And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.
- וְהוּא רָשַׁם אֶת כְּתָב זְכָרוֹנוֹ בְּמִשְׁוֹר שְׂמוֹנִים
וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים, וּבְכָל הָעֵת הַהִיא נִמְשָׁךְ הַשְּׁלוֹם
בָּאָרֶץ, וְזֹלַת חֵלֶק קָטָן מִן הָעָם אֲשֶׁר מָרְדוּ
בְּכִנְסִיָּה וְלָקְחוּ לָהֶם אֶת הַשֵּׁם לְמַנִּים; וְכֵן
שָׁבוּ וְהָיוּ לְמַנִּים בָּאָרֶץ.
- 21 And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.
- וְגַם עָמוֹס מָת, וְזֹאת מֵאָה וְתֵשְׁעִים וָאַרְבַּע
שָׁנִים מֵעַתָּה בּוֹא הַמְּשִׁיחַ; וְאַחֲרָיו רָשַׁם אֶת
סֵפֶר הַזְּכָרוֹנוֹת בְּנוֹ עָמוֹס, אֲשֶׁר הוּא כְּמוֹ כֵן
רָשָׁמוֹ עַל לוחות נְפִי. וּכְתָבוֹ נִרְשַׁם אָף הוּא
בְּסֵפֶר נְפִי, אֲשֶׁר הוּא הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה.
- 22 And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים שָׁנָה וְכָל הַדּוֹר הַשֵּׁנִי
עָבַר מִן הָעוֹלָם, וְזֹלַת מְתֵי מְעַט.
- 23 And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן חֹפֵץ כִּי תִדְעוּ כִּי בְנֵי הָעָם
רָבוּ, עַד כִּי פָשְׁטוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְאֵף

- הַתַּעֲשִׂרוּ מְאֹד, כִּי צָלְחָה דִּרְכָם בְּמִשִּׁיחַ.
- land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.
- 24 וְהִנֵּה, בְּשָׁנָה מֵאַתִּים וְאַחַת קָמוּ בִּינֵיהֶם אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר הִתְנַשְּׂאוּ בְּנֶאֱוָה, בְּלִבָּשִׁם לְבוּשׁ יָקָר וְכָל מִינֵי פְּנִינֵי חֵן וְשִׁכִּיּוֹת הָעוֹלָם.
- And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.
- 25 וּמִן הָעַתָּה הָיָא חֲדָלוּ קִנְיָנָם וְהוֹנָם לְהִיּוֹת מִשְׁתַּתָּפִּים.
- And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.
- 26 וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהַפְלֵג לְמַעֲמָדוֹת; וְהֵם בָּנוּ לְעֶצְמָם כְּנִסְיֹת בְּעֶבֶר בְּצַע, וְהִחֲלוּ לִכְחֹשׁ בַּכְּנִסִּית הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ.
- And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.
- 27 וַכְּעָבַר מֵאַתִּים וְעֶשְׂרֵי שָׁנִים רַבּוּ הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת בְּאַרְצָא; אַכֵּן, רַבּוֹת הָיוּ הַכְּנִסִּיּוֹת אֲשֶׁר טָעְנוּ כִּי הֵן יוֹדְעוֹת אֶת הַמִּשִּׁיחַ; אַךְ הֵן כָּחֲשׁוּ בְּעִקְרֵי בְּשׂוֹרָתוֹ, עַד כִּי קִבְּלוּ כָּל מִינֵי רָשָׁעָה בְּקִרְבָּם, וְהֵן שִׁמְשׁוּ אֶת אֲשֶׁר קֹדֶשׁ הוּא לֹאֲשֶׁר לֹא הָיוּ רְאוּיִים לוֹ וְלִכֵּן אָסוּר לָהֶם.
- And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.
- 28 וְהַכְּנִסִּיָּה הַזֹּאת גְּדָלָה וְעֶצְמָה מִפְּנֵי עֹוֹן וּמִפְּנֵי כַח הַשָּׁטָן אֲשֶׁר קָנָה שְׁבִיתָהּ בָּלָבָם.
- And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.
- 29 וְעוֹד הָיְתָה שְׁמָה כְּנִסִּיָּה אַחֶרֶת אֲשֶׁר כָּחֲשָׁה בְּמִשִּׁיחַ; וְאַנְשֵׁיהָ רָדְפוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי כְּנִסִּית הָאֱמֶת אֲשֶׁר לְמִשִּׁיחַ, מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹתָם וְאַמּוֹנָתָם בּוֹ; וְהֵם בְּזוּם מִפְּנֵי הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הַרְבּוֹת אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבָּם.
- And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.
- 30 עַל כֵּן הֵם הִפְעִילוּ כַח וְשׂוֹרָה עַל תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׂאָרוּ בְּקִרְבָּם, וְהִשְׁלִיכוּם אֶל הַכְּלָא; אַךְ עַל יְדֵי כַח דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּהֶם, נִבְקְעוּ בְּתֵי הַכְּלָא וְהֵם יָצְאוּ וַעֲשׂוּ נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת בְּקִרְבָּם הָעָם.
- Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.
- 31 וְאוֹלָם, וְעַל אִף כָּל הַנִּסִּים הָאֵלֶּה, הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת לַבָּם וּבִקְשׁוּ לְהָרְגֵם, אַכֵּן, כִּי־הוּדִים אֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר בִּקְשׁוּ לְהָרֹג אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, כַּכִּי דִּבְּרוּ.
- Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.
- 32 וְהֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּם אֶל כְּבִשְׁנֵי אֵשׁ, וְהֵם יָצְאוּ מֵהֶם בְּלֹא פָגַע.
- And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

- 33 And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.
- 34 Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.
- 35 And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.
- 36 And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;
- 37 Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.
- 38 And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.
- 39 And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.
- 40 And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.
- 41 And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.
- הם אף השליכו אל גְּבֵי חַיֹּת פְּרָא, אִף הֵם שָׁחֲקוּ עִם חַיֹּת הַפְּרָא כְּשֹׁחֵק יֶלֶד עִם שֶׂה; וְהֵם יֵצְאוּ מֵהֶם בְּלֹא פָגַע.
- עַל אִף זֹאת, הִקְשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת לִבָּם, כִּי הִנְהִיגוּם כְּמֹרִים וְנְבִיאֵי שֶׁקֶר רַבִּים לְבָנוֹת כְּנִסְיוֹת רַבּוֹת וְלַעֲשׂוֹת כָּל מִינֵי אָוֶן. וְהֵם הִכּוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁי יֵשׁוּעַ, אִף אֲנָשֵׁי יֵשׁוּעַ לֹא הִשְׁיבוּם מַכָּה. וְכֵה הֵם שָׁקְעוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה וּבְרָשָׁעָה מִשְׁנָה לְשָׁנָה, עַד אֲשֶׁר חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁלֹשִׁים שָׁנָה.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַזֵּאת, שָׁנַת מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחַת, הָיָה פְּלוּג גָּדוֹל בָּעָם.
- וּבִשְׁנָה הַזֵּאת קָם עִם אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָא שְׁמֵם הַנְּפִיִּים. וְהֵם הָיוּ מֵאֲמִינִים כְּנִים בְּמִשְׁיָח; וּבְתוֹכָם הָיוּ אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרָאוּ בְּפִי הַלְּמָנִים יַעֲקֹבִים וְיוֹסֵפִים וְזֹרָמִים.
- עַל כֵּן נִקְרָאוּ מֵאֲמִינֵי הַמִּשְׁיָח הַכְּנִים וְעוֹבְדֵי בָּאֵמֶת, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם הָיוּ שְׁלֹשֶׁת תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁאָרוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, בְּשֵׁם נְפִיִּים, וְיַעֲקֹבִים וְיוֹסֵפִים וְזֹרָמִים.
- וְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר מָאָסוּ בְּבִשּׁוּרָה נִקְרָאוּ לְמָנִים וְלִמְוֵאֵלִים וְיִשְׁמַעְאֵלִים. וְהֵם לֹא הִדְרָדְרוּ אֶל חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה כִּי אִם בְּזָדוֹן מְרֹדוֹ בְּבִשּׁוּרַת הַמִּשְׁיָח; וְהֵם לָמְדוּ אֶת בְּנֵיהֶם כִּי אַל לָהֶם לְהֶאֱמִין, כְּאֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲשֶׁר מִרְאשִׁיתָם שָׁקְעוּ בְּחֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- וְהָיָה זֶה מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעַת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וְתוֹעֲבַתָּם, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה. אַכֵּן, הֵם לָמְדוּ לְשׂוֹנֵא אֶת בְּנֵי אֱלֹהִים, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר לָמְדוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִרְאשִׁיתָם לְשׂוֹנֵא אֶת בְּנֵי נְפִי.
- כֹּה חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וְאַרְבָּעִים וְאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים וְכֵה הָיוּ עֲנִיֵּי הָעָם בָּעֵת הַזֵּאת. וְחָלַק הָעָם הָרָשָׁע הַתְּחִיזָּקוּ וּמִסְפָּרָם רַב עַד מְאֹד מִמִּסְפָּר עִם אֱלֹהִים.
- וְהֵם הוֹסִיפוּ לְבָנוֹת לָהֶם כְּנִסְיוֹת וּלְפָאֶרֶן בְּכָל מִינֵי יְקָרוֹת; כֹּה חָלְפוּ מֵאֵתִים וְחֲמִשִּׁים שָׁנָה, וְאִף מֵאֵתִים וּשְׁשִׁים שָׁנָה.

- 42 And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חֵלֶק הָעָם הָרָשָׁע שָׁב לְהִקָּים אֶת הַשְּׁבוּעוֹת וְאֶת אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר לְגַדִּיאַנְטוֹן.
- 43 And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.
- וְהָיָה כִּי אֵף הָעָם הַנִּקְרָא עִם נְפִי הֵחֵלּוּ לְהִתְנַשָּׂא בְּלִבָּם מִפְּנֵי רַב עֲשָׂרָם, וּלְלַכֵּת בְּדַרְכֵי הֶבֶל כְּאַחֵיהֶם הַלָּמָנִים.
- 44 And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.
- וּמִן הָעֵת הַהִיא הֵחֵלּוּ תַלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ לְהִתְעַצֵּב עַל חַטָּאֵי הָעוֹלָם.
- 45 And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.
- וְהָיָה כְּחֵלֶף שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה הָיוּ שְׁנֵי הָעַמִּים, הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלָּמָנִים כְּאַחֶד, מְרַשָּׁעִים מְאֹד, אִישׁ כְּאַחֵיו.
- 46 And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.
- וַשׁוּדְדֵי גַדִּיאַנְטוֹן הִתְפַּשְׁטוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְלֹא הָיָה אִישׁ צַדִּיק, זֹולַת תַּלְמִידֵי יֵשׁוּעַ. וְהֵם צָבְרוּ שֵׁפַע זָהָב וְכֶסֶף בְּאוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם וְהֵם שָׁלְחוּ אֶת יָדָם בְּכָל מִינֵי דַרְכֵי מִסְחָר.
- 47 And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֶבֶר שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְחֲמֵשׁ שָׁנִים, בְּעוֹד הָעָם מִחֲזִיק בְּרָשָׁעוֹתָיו, מֵת עָמוֹס, וְאַחִיו, אַמָּרוֹן, רָשַׁם אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אַחֲרָיו.
- 48 And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.
- וְהָיָה כְּחֵלֶף שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים שָׁנָה, הִצְפִּין אַמָּרוֹן, אֲשֶׁר עוֹרְרָתָהּ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֶת כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן הַקְּדוּשִׁים, אָכֵן, אֶת כָּל כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן הַקְּדוּשִׁים אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדוֹר, אֲשֶׁר הֵם קְדוּשִׁים, עַד שְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים לְבוֹא הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 49 And he did hide them up unto the Lord that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.
- אָכֵן, הוּא הִצְפִּינָם לַיְשׁ יְהוָה, בְּעֶבֶר יָשׁוּבוּ אֶל שְׂאֵרֵית בֵּית יַעֲקֹב, כְּפִי נְבוֹאוֹת יְהוָה וְדְבָרֵי בְרִיתוֹ. וְזֶה סוֹף כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאַמָּרוֹן.

ספר מורמון

מורמון מקבל לידיו את כתבי הזכרון של הנפיים. הוא מקצצרם. הוא מוביל את צבאות הנפיים במלחמות נגד הלמנים. כתב זכרונותיו על אודות הקרב האחרון בקומורה ומוותו של עם נפי. (בערך 385-321 לספירה.) נכלל בפרקים א-ז.

א

ועתה, אני, מורמון, רושם את הדברים אשר ראיתי ושמעתי, וקורא את כתב הזכרון הזה בשם ספר מורמון.

ובעת אשר הצפין אמרון את הכתבים לשם יהוה, הוא בא אלי, ואני הייתי כבן עשר שנים, והחלתי ללמד דבר-מה בדרך למוד עמי; וכה אמר אלי אמרון: הנה ראיתי כי נער מפכח אתה ומהיר להשכיל.

ולכן, רצוני כי בהיותך כבן עשרים וארבע שנים תזכר את קורות העם הזה אשר ראית; ובהגיעך לגיל הזה, לך אל ארץ אנטום, אל גבעה אשר שמה יקרא שים; שם הפקדתי לשם יהוה את כל לוחות הקדש החרוטים על אודות העם הזה.

ובעת ההיא, קח אליך את לוחות נפי, ואת זולתם השאר במקומם. ועל לוחות נפי תחרט את כל קורות העם הזה אשר ראית.

ואני, מורמון, צאצא לנפי, אשר שם אבי מורמון, זכרתי את הדברים אשר צוני אמרון.

ובהיותי בן אחת עשרה שנים לקחני אבי אל ארץ הדרום, אל ארץ זרעהמלה.

והנה, כל פני הארץ היו מכסים בנינים ורב מספר העם, כמעט כחול אשר על שפת הים.

ובשנה ההיא פרצה מלחמה בין הנפיים, אשר היו מזרע הנפיים, והיעקבים והיוספים והזורמים ובין הלמנים והלמואלים והישמעאלים.

THE BOOK OF MORMON

Mormon is given charge over the records of the Nephites; he abridges them. He leads the armies of the Nephites in wars against the Lamanites. His account of their final battle at Cumorah and the death of the people of Nephi. (About A.D. 321–385.) Comprising chapters 1–7.

1

1 And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

2 And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

3 Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

4 And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

5 And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

6 And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

7 The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

8 And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.
- וְהַלְמָנִים וְהַלְמוֹאֲלִים וְהִישְׁמַעְאֲלִים נִקְרְאוּ בְּשֵׁם לְמָנִים. אָכֵן, שְׁתֵּי הַמִּפְלָגוֹת הָיוּ הַנְּפִיִּים וְהַלְמָנִים.
- 10 And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.
- וְהַמִּלְחָמָה בֵּינֵיהֶם הֵחֵלָה בְּגְבוּלוֹת זְרַחֵמְלָה, לִיד מֵי צִידוֹן.
- 11 And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים אָסְפוּ מִסְפַּר אַנְשִׁים רַב, אֲשֶׁר עָלָה עַל שְׁלֹשִׁים אֶלֶף. וּבִשְׁנָה הַהִיא הָיוּ קְרִבּוֹת אַחֲדִים, וְהַנְּפִיִּים נִצְחוּ בָּהֶם אֶת הַלְמָנִים וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מֵהֶם.
- 12 And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הַלְמָנִים חָדְלוּ מִתְכַּנְּיָתָם, וְהַשְׁלוֹם שָׁכַן בְּאֶרֶץ. כְּאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים שָׁרַר הַשְׁלוֹם וְלֹא הָיְתָה שְׂפִיכוֹת דָּמִים.
- 13 But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.
- אָף הָנָה, הָרָשָׁעָה שָׁלְטָה עַל פְּנֵי כָּל הָאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי לָקַח יְהוָה אֶת תַּלְמִידָיו הָאֱהוּבִים, וּמַעֲשֵׂי הַנִּסִּים וְהָרְפוּי חָדְלוּ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹן הָעָם.
- 14 And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.
- וְלֹא הָיוּ מַתָּנוֹת מֵאֵת יְהוָה וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לֹא נָחָה עַל אִישׁ, מִפְּנֵי רָשָׁעָתָם וְחִסְרֵם אֱמוּנָתָם.
- 15 And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.
- וְאֲנִי, בְּהִיְוִיתִי אֶז בֶּן חֲמִשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה שָׁנִים וּבִרְדֵּעַת מִפְּכַחַת דִּי, עַל כֵּן פָּקַדְנִי יְהוָה וְאֲנִי טַעַמְתִּי מִטּוֹבַת יֵשׁוּעַ וַיִּדְעָתִיהָ.
- 16 And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.
- וְאֲנִי הִתְאַמַּצְתִּי לְהִטִּיף לָעָם הַזֶּה, אָף פִּי נִחָתָם, וְנִאָסַר עָלַי לְהִטִּיף לָהֶם; כִּי בָּדוֹן מָרְדוּ בְּאַלְהֵיהֶם; וְהַתַּלְמִידִים הָאֱהוּבִים נִלְקְחוּ מִן הָאֶרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנָם.
- 17 But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.
- וְאוֹלָם אֲנִי נִשְׁאַרְתִּי בְּתוֹכָם, אָף נִאָסַר עָלַי לְהִטִּיף לָהֶם מִפְּנֵי קִשֵּׁי לִבָּם. וּמִפְּנֵי קִשֵּׁי לִבָּם הָיְתָה הָאֶרֶץ אֲרוּרָה בַּעֲבוּרָם.
- 18 And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.
- וְשׁוֹדְדֵי גָדִיאַנְטוֹן הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בְּקִרְבֵּי הַלְמָנִים, שָׁרְצוּ בְּאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי הֵחֵלוּ תּוֹשְׁבֵיהָ לְהַחְבֹּיֵא אֶת אוֹצְרוֹתֵיהֶם בְּאֶדְמָה; וְהָאוֹצְרוֹת הִפְכוּ חֲלָקִים, כִּי אָרַר יְהוָה אֶת הָאֶרֶץ, עַד כִּי נִשְׁמְטוּ מִיַּד תּוֹשְׁבֵיהָ וְאֵף לֹא יָכְלוּ הֵם לְשׁוּב וּלְקַחְתָּם.
- 19 And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.
- וְהָיָה כִּי רַבּוּ מַעֲשֵׂי כַּשׁוּף וּלְהִטִּים וְקִסְמִים; וְכַח הַמְרָשָׁע הַהוּא פָּעַל עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ; וּבִזְאוֹת הַתְּקִימוֹ כָּל דְּבָרֵי אַבִּינָדִי וְכֵן דְּבָרֵי שְׁמוּאֵל הַלְמָנִי.

ב

2

- וְהָיָה בַשָּׁנָה הַהִיא שָׁבָה וּפְרָצָה מִלְחָמָה בֵּין
הַנְּפִיִּים וּבֵין הַלָּמָנִיתִים. וְעַל אִף גִּילִי הַצָּעִיר
הָיִיתִי בַעַל מִדָּה, לָכֵן מוֹנִי עִם נָפִי לְמִנְהִיגָם
אוּלְמַפְקֵד צְבָאוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְכֹה, בַּשָּׁנָה שֶׁשׁ עֶשְׂרֵה לִימֵי חַיִּי, יָצֵאתִי
בְּרֹאשׁ צָבָא הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלָּמָנִיתִים; כֹּה חָלְפָה
שָׁנָה שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים וָשֵׁשׁ.
- וְהָיָה בַּשָּׁנָה שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְעֶשְׂרִים וָשֶׁבַע עָלוּ
הַלָּמָנִיתִים עָלֵינוּ בְּכֹחַ עֲצוֹם וָרֵב, עַד כִּי הִפְחִידוּ
אֶת חֵילוֹתִי; עַל כֵּן הֵם לֹא אָבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם,
וַהֲחִלוּ לָסֶגֶת אֶל אֲרָצוֹת הַצָּפוֹן.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ בָּאנוּ אֶל הָעִיר אַנְגוֹלָה, וַהֲחִזְקֵנוּ בָּהּ
וַהֲתַכּוֹנְנוּ לְהִגָּנְתָּנוּ מִפְּנֵי הַלָּמָנִיתִים; אָכֵן, בְּצֻרָנוּ
אֶת הָעִיר בְּכֹחֵנוּ; וְאוֹלָם עַל אִף כָּל בְּצוּרֵינוּ,
עָלוּ עָלֵינוּ הַלָּמָנִיתִים וַיִּגְרִשׁוּנוּ מִן הָעִיר.
- וְהֵם אִף הִדְפוּנוּ מֵאֶרֶץ דָּוִד.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ צָעַדְנוּ וּבָאנוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יוֹשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר
שָׁכְנָה בְּגָבול הַמַּעֲרָבִי, לִיד חוֹף הַיָּם.
- וְאַנְחֵנוּ אֶסְפָּנוּ אֶת אַנְשֵׁינוּ בְּמַהֲרֹת, כָּל אֲשֶׁר
הָיָה לֵאלֹלֵינוּ, בַּעֲבוּר קִבְצָם לְמִחְנָה אֶחָד.
- וְהִנֵּה מְלָאָה הָאֶרֶץ שׂוֹדְדִים וְלָמָנִיתִים. וְעַל אִף
הַהֲשָׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה אֲשֶׁר אִימָה עַל עַמִּי, הֵם
לֹא שָׁבוּ מִרַעְתָּם; לָכֵן פָּשְׁטוּ שְׁפִיכוֹת דָּמִים
וְשָׁבַח עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ, מִיַּד הַנְּפִיִּים כְּמִיַּד
הַלָּמָנִיתִים. אָכֵן, הָיְתָה זֹאת מִהֲפָכָה אֶחָד
שֶׁלָּמָה עַל פְּנֵי כָל הָאֶרֶץ.
- וְלָלָמָנִיתִים הָיָה מֶלֶךְ, וּשְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא אַהֲרֹן. וְהוּא
בָּא עָלֵינוּ בְּרֹאשׁ חֵיל בֶּן אַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבָּעָה
אֲלָף אִישׁ. וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי עֲמַדְתִּי בִפְנֵי עַם
אַרְבָּעִים וְשָׁנִים אֲלָף אִישׁ. וְהִבְסָתִי אוֹתוֹ
בְּצָבָאִי, וְהוּא נָס מִפְּנֵי. הִנֵּה, כָּל זֶה הָיָה,
וַחֲלָפָה שָׁנָה שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וָשָׁלֹשׁ.
- בַּעֲת הַהִיא הֲחִלוּ הַנְּפִיִּים לְהִנָּחֵם עַל עֲוֹנָם
וּלְצַעֵק, כְּנִבְאוֹת שְׁמַאֵל הַנְּבִיא; כִּי הִנֵּה, אִישׁ
- 1 And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.
- 2 Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.
- 3 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.
- 4 And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.
- 5 And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.
- 6 And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.
- 8 But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.
- 9 And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.
- 10 And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet;

מורמון ב:יא-יח

לֹא יָכֹל לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכֹשֶׁוֹ מִפְּנֵי הַגָּנָבִים
וְהַשּׁוֹדְדִים וְהַרוֹצְחִים, וּמִפְּנֵי הַקֶּסֶם וְהַכְּשׁוֹף
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ בָּאָרֶץ.

for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves,
and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the
witchcraft which was in the land.

כֹּה נִשְׁמְעוּ הָאָבֶל וְהַקִּינָה בְּכָל הָאָרֶץ,
מִפְּנֵי הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וּבַעֲקָר בְּקָרֵב עִם נָפִי.

11 Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land
because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

וְאֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, בְּרֹאֲוֹתִי אוֹתָם מְקוֹנְנִים
וּמִתְאַבְּלִים וּמִצְטַעֲרִים לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, הֵחֵל לְבִי
לְעֹלֵץ בְּקָרְבִי, כִּי יֵדַעְתִּי אֶת רַחֲמֵי יְהוָה וְאֶת
אֲרֹךְ אִפְיוֹ. לָכֵן סְבַרְתִּי כִּי יִרְחַמֵם בְּעֶבּוֹר
יָשׁוּבוּ לַיהוָה עִם צְדִיקָה.

12 And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and
their mourning and their sorrowing before the Lord, my heart did
begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering
of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them
that they would again become a righteous people.

אֲךָ שְׂמִיחָתִי זֹאת הָיְתָה לְשׁוֹא, כִּי הִצְטַעֲרוּתָם
לֹא הָיְתָה לְשֵׁם תְּשׁוּבָה, מִפְּנֵי טוֹב אֱלֹהִים; כִּי
אִם הָיְתָה זֹאת הִצְטַעֲרוּת הַמְּקַלְלִים, יַעַן
אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָתִיר לָהֶם תְּמִיד יְהוָה לַעֲלוֹ בְּחַטָּא.

13 But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto
repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the
sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer
them to take happiness in sin.

אָכֵן, הֵם לֹא בָּאוּ אֶל יֵשׁוּעַ בְּלֵב נִשְׁבָּר וּבְרוּחַ
נִכְאָה, כִּי אִם קָלְלוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים וּבִקְשׁוּ לָמוּת.
עַל אַף זֹאת, הֵם נִלְחַמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם בַּחֶרֶב.

14 And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite
spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they
would struggle with the sword for their lives.

וְצַעֲרִי שָׁב אֵלַי וְרֹאֲיִתִי כִּי יוֹם חֲסָדָם חָלַף
מֵהֶם, בְּגוֹף וּבְרוּחַ; כִּי רֹאֲיִתִי אֶלְפִים מֵהֶם
נִגְדָעִים בַּעַת מִרְדָּם גְּלוּיּוֹת בְּאֵלֵיהֶם,
וְנִעְרְמִים כְּדָמָן עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה. כֹּה חָלְפוּ
שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וָאַרְבָּעִים וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנִים.

15 And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I
saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and
spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion
against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land.
And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

וּבִשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וָאַרְבָּעִים וְחָמֵשׁ הֵחֵל
הַנְּפִיִּים לָנוֹס מִלִּפְנֵי הַלָּמָנִים; וְהֵם נָסוּ עַד
אֲשֶׁר הִגִּיעוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ יָשׁוֹן, בְּטָרֶם אֲפָשָׁר הָיְתָה
לְעַצֹּר אֶת נְסִיגָתָם.

16 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year
the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were
pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was
possible to stop them in their retreat.

וְהָעִיר יָשׁוֹן הָיְתָה בְּקִרְבָּת הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר
בְּאֲדָמְתָהּ הִפְקִיד אֲמָרוֹן, לְשֵׁם יְהוָה, אֶת
כְּתָבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן לְכָל יִשְׁמָדוֹ. וְהִנֵּה, אֲנִי הִלַּכְתִּי
בְּדָבָר אֲמָרוֹן אֵלַי, וְלִקְחָתִי אֶת לוחות נָפִי,
וְהִכְנַתִּי כְּתָב וְזִכְרוֹן, כְּדָבָרוֹ.

17 And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had
deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed.
And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken
the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of
Ammaron.

וְהָיָה כִּי רָשַׁמְתִּי עַל לוחות נָפִי אֶת מְלֵא סִפּוֹר
הַרְשָׁעָה וְהַתּוֹעֲבוֹת; וְאוֹלָם עַל הַלּוּחוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה הִתְאַפְּקִיתִי מִרְשָׁם אֶת מְלֵא רִשְׁעָתָם
וְתוֹעֲבוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי מִרְאוֹת בְּלִיתִי פּוֹסְקִים שֶׁל
רִשְׁעָה וְתוֹעֲבוֹת הָיוּ לִפְנֵי עֵינֵי מֵאֵז בְּגִרְתִּי
לְחַזוֹת בְּדַרְכֵי אָדָם.

18 And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the
wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to
make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a
continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine
eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

- 19 And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.
- אוי לי מפני רשעתם, כי כל ימי מלא לבי צער מפני רשעתם, אף כי יודע אני כי ביום האחרון אתנשא.
- 20 And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.
- ובשנה ההיא הוסיפו הלמנים לרדף אחר עם נפי והניסום. ואנחנו הונסנו עד אשר באנו צפונה, אל הארץ אשר נקראה שם.
- 21 And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.
- ואנחנו בצרנו את העיר שם וקבצנו את אנשינו, ככל אשר היה לאל ידינו, בעבור הצילם מאבדון.
- 22 And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.
- והיה בשנת שלש מאות וארבעים ושש, הם שבו ויצאו עלינו.
- 23 And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.
- בעת ההיא דברתי אל אנשי והמרצתים עד מאד כי יעמדו בגבורה לפני הלמנים וילחמו למען נשיהם וילדיהם, בתיהם ומשכנותיהם.
- 24 And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.
- ודברי הפיחו בהם מעט אמן, עד כי הם לא נסו מפני הלמנים, כי אם עמדו נגדם בגבורה.
- 25 And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.
- ואנחנו עמדנו בצבא אשר מנה שלשים אלף איש בפני צבא אשר מנה חמשים אלף. וכה איתנים עמדנו, עד כי נסו הם מפנינו.
- 26 And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.
- והיה כנוסם, דלקנו אחריהם בחילותינו, ופגשנו אותם שנית והביסונו. ואולם לא היה עמנו כח יהוה; אכן, נעזבנו לנפשנו ולא שקנה בנו רוח יהוה. לכן נחלשנו כאחינו.
- 27 And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.
- ולבי נעצב מפני המכה הגדולה הזאת אשר הכה עמי, מפני רשעתם ותועבותיהם. אך הנה, יצאנו על הלמנים ועל שודדי גדיאנטון עד אשר החזקנו שנית באדמות נחלתנו.
- 28 And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.
- ושנת שלש מאות וארבעים ותשע חלפה. ובשנת שלש מאות וחמשים כרתנו ברית עם הלמנים ועם שודדי גדיאנטון ובה הסכמנו על חלקת אדמות נחלתנו.
- 29 And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.
- והלמנים נתנו לנו את ארץ הצפון עד המעבר הצר אשר הוליק אל ארץ הדרום. ואנחנו נתנו ללמנים את כל ארץ הדרום.

ג

3

- וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא הוֹסִיפוּ הַלְמָנִים לָצֵאת לְקָרֵב
עַד אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ עוֹד עֶשְׂרֵי שָׁנִים. וְאֲנִי הִטְלֵיתִי
עַל עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיטִים, לְהַכִּין אֶת אֲדָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְאֶת
כָּלִי נִשְׁקָם לְקִרְאָת עֵת מִלְחָמָה.
- וְאָמַר אֵלַי יְהוָה: קְרֹא אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה לֵאמֹר:
הִנֵּחֶמוּ נָא עַל חַטֹּאתֵיכֶם וּבֹאוּ אֵלַי, וְהִטְבַּלְוּ
וּבְנוּ שָׁנִית אֶת כְּנִסְיָתִי, וְתִנָּצְלוּ.
- וְאֲנִי קִרְאתִי אֶל הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲדָּא לִשְׂוֹא הִיא,
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא הִבִּינוּ כִּי הַצִּילָם יְהוָה וְהִנֵּחֵם
לָהֶם אִפְשָׁרוֹת לְהִנָּחֵם עַל חַטֹּאתֵיהֶם. וְהִנֵּה,
הֵם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם עַל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר חֲלָף הַשָּׁנָה הָעֲשִׁירִית הַהִיא,
אֲשֶׁר עָמָה חֲלָפוּ שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים שָׁנָה
מֵעַתָּה בּוֹא הַמֶּלֶךְ, שֶׁלַח אֵלַי מֶלֶךְ הַלְמָנִים
אֲגִרָת, וּמִמֶּנָּה נֹדַע לִי כִּי הֵם נִעְרָכִים שָׁנִית
לָצֵאת לְקָרֵב עָלֵינוּ.
- וְאֲנִי הוֹרִיתִי אֶת עַמִּי כִּי יֵאָסְפוּ בְּאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה,
בְּעִיר אֲשֶׁר בְּגִבּוֹל, עַל יַד הַמַּעְבָּר הַצָּר הַמּוֹלִיד
אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם.
- שָׁם הִחֲנִינוּ אֶת חֵילוֹתֵינוּ בְּעִבּוֹר נֶעְצָר
אֶת חֵילוֹת הַלְמָנִים, לְבַל יִתְפָּשׂוּ כָּל חֵלֶק
מֵאֲרָצֵנוּ. לָכֵן הִתְבַּצְּרָנוּ עֲלֵיהֶם בְּכָל כֹּחֵנוּ.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְאַחַת,
יָרְדוּ הַלְמָנִים אֶל הָעִיר חֲרָבָה לָצֵאת עָלֵינוּ
לְקָרֵב; וּבְשָׁנָה הַהִיא הִבְסָנוּ אוֹתָם, עַד כִּי
הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל אֲרָצָם.
- וְהָיָה בְּשָׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשִׁתִּים,
הֵם יָרְדוּ עָלֵינוּ שָׁנִית לְמִלְחָמָה. אֲףִי הִפַּעֵם
הִבְסָנוּ אוֹתָם וְהִרְגָנוּ בָּהֶם מִסָּפָר רַב;
וְהוֹרִגְתִּים הַשְׁלָכּוּ אֶל הַיָּם.
- וְעַתָּה, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּעֲשֶׂה הַגָּדוֹל הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ
בְּנֵי עַמִּי, הַנְּפִיטִים, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְפָּאֵר בְּכֹחָם
וּלְהִשָּׁבַע לִפְנֵי שָׁמַי מָרוֹם כִּי יִנְקְמוּ אֶת דַּם
אֲחֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בְּיַדֵּי אוֹיְבֵיהֶם.
- 1 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.
- 2 And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.
- 3 And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.
- 4 And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.
- 5 And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.
- 6 And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.
- 7 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.
- 8 And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.
- 9 And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

- 10 הם נשבעו בשם שמים ואף בכס אלהים כי יעלו לקרב על אויביהם ויכריתום מעל פני האדמה.
- 11 ואני, מורמון, סרבתי תכלית סרוב, מן היום ההוא והלאה, להיות מפקד העם הזה ומנהיגו מפני רשעתם ותועבתם.
- 12 הנה, הנהגתים, על אף רשעתם, והולכתים פעמים רבות אלי קרב. ואהבתים כפי אהבה אלהים אשר בי, בכל לבי; ונפשי נשפכה בתפלה אל אלהי למענם כל היום; ואולם, הנה זה בלא אמונה, מפני קשי לבם.
- 13 שלש פעמים הצלתיים מיד אויביהם, והם לא שבו מחטאייהם.
- 14 וכאשר הם נשבעו בכל אשר היו אסורים עליו מאת אדוננו ומושיענו, ישוע המשיח, כי יעלו להלחם באויביהם וינקמו נקם דם אחיהם, בא אלי קול יהוה לאמר:
- 15 לי הנקם ואני אשלם גמול. יען אשר לא נחם העם הזה מרעתם אחר הצילי אותם, הנה, הכרת יכרתו מעל פני האדמה.
- 16 ואני סרבתי תכלית סרוב לצאת על אויבי; כמצות יהוה אשר צוני כן עשיתי; אכן, עמדתי כעד עצל להעיד לפני העולם על הדברים אשר ראיתי ושמעתי, כפי ההצהרות רוח הקדש, אשר העיד על העתיד לבוא.
- 17 על כן כותב אני אליכם, הגויים, וכן אליכם, בית ישראל; בעבור תהיו מוכנים, כאשר תחיל הפעלה, להערוך לשוב אל ארץ נחלתכם.
- 18 אכן, הנני כותב אל כל אפסי ארץ; אכן, אליכם, שנים עשר שבטי ישראל, אשר תשפטו כפי מעשיכם על ידי אותם שנים עשר, אשר בחרם ישוע בארץ ירושלים לתלמידיו.
- 19 וכותב אני אל שארית העם הזה, אשר אף היא תשפט על ידי שנים עשר התלמידים אשר בחר ישוע בארץ הזאת; ואלה ישפטו על ידי שנים העשר אשר בחר ישוע בארץ ירושלים.
- 10 And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.
- 11 And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.
- 12 Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.
- 13 And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.
- 14 And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me saying:
- 15 Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.
- 16 And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.
- 17 Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;
- 18 Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.
- 19 And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

- 20 And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;
- אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה מוֹדִיעַתִּי רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ;
עַל כֵּן כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי לְכֻלְכֶּם. וּבִעֲבוּר זֹאת אֲנִי
כוֹתֵב לָכֶם, לְמַעַן תִּדְעוּ כִּי תַעֲמְדוּ בְּלָכֶם
לִפְנֵי כֹס מִשְׁפַּט הַמָּשִׁיחַ; אַכֵּן, כָּל נֶפֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר
לְמִשְׁפַּחַת הָאָדָם כָּלָה, עֲמוּד תַעֲמְדוּ לְמִשְׁפַּט
עַל מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם, אִם טוֹבִים הֵם וְאִם רָעִים.
- 21 And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.
- וְאֲנִי כוֹתֵב לָכֶם אִף בְּעִבּוּר תִּאֱמִינוּ בְּבִשׁוֹרַת
יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר תִּהְיֶה בְּתוֹכְכֶם; וְאִף בְּעִבּוּר
יִהְיֶה לַיהוּדִים, עִם הִבְרִית אֲשֶׁר לַיהוָה, עַד
נוֹסֶף, מִלְּבַד זֶה אֲשֶׁר רָאוּהוּ וּשְׁמָעוּהוּ, כִּי יֵשׁוּעַ,
אֲשֶׁר הֵם הִרְגוּ, הוּא אַכֵּן הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְאֱלֹהִים עֲצֻמוֹ.
- 22 And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְיִכְלֹתִי לְשַׁכְנַע אֶת כָּל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ
לְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא וּלְהִתְכַּוֵּן לַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כֹס
מִשְׁפַּט הַמָּשִׁיחַ.

ד

4

- 1 And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.
- וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשָׁלֹשׁ, יָצְאוּ
הַנְּפִיטִים עִם חֵילוֹתֵיהֶם מֵאֶרֶץ חֲרָבָה וְעָלוּ
לְהִלָּחֵם בְּלָמָנִים.
- 2 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.
- וְהָיָה שָׁבוּ וְנִדְּחוּ חֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים אֶל אֶרֶץ
חֲרָבָה. וְהָיָה בְּעוֹדָם יְגֻעִים, עָלָה עֲלֵיהֶם חֵיל
לָמָנִים רִעָנָו; וְהִתְפַּתַּח קָרֵב מֶר, וְהִלָּמְנִים
כָּבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה וְהָרְגוּ רַבִּים מִן הַנְּפִיטִים
וְאִף לָקְחוּ רַבִּים בְּשָׁבִי.
- 3 And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.
- וְהַנּוֹתָרִים בָּרָחוּ וְהִתְחַבְּרוּ אֶל תּוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר
טֵיאַנְקוּם. וְהָעִיר טֵיאַנְקוּם שְׁכֵנָה בְּגִבּוֹל אֲשֶׁר
לְחוּף הַיָּם בְּקִרְבַּת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה.
- 4 And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.
- וַיְעַן כִּי עָלוּ חֵילוֹת הַנְּפִיטִים עַל הַלָּמָנִים, הֵם
הוּבְסוּ; וְלֹא זֹאת הָיָה בְּלָמָנִים כִּחַ
לְהִתְגַּבֵּר עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 5 But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהִים יִשִּׁיג אֶת הָרָשָׁעִים;
כִּי מִיַּד הָרָשָׁעִים בָּאִים הָרָשָׁעִים עַל עֲנָשָׁם;
כִּי הָרָשָׁעִים הֵם הַמְּעוֹרְרִים אֶת לֵב בְּנֵי
הָאָדָם לְשַׁפֹּךְ דָּם.
- 6 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.
- וְהַלָּמָנִים נִעְרְכוּ לְקָרֵב עַל הָעִיר טֵיאַנְקוּם.

מורמון ד:ז-טז

וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וָאַרְבַּע, בָּאוּ
הַלְּמָנִים עַל הָעִיר טֵי־אֲנָקוּם לְכַבְּשָׁהּ אֶף הִיא.

וְהַנְּפִיִּים הִדְפוּם וְהִסִּיגוּם לְאַחֹר. וְכִרְאוּת
הַנְּפִיִּים כִּי הִדְפוּ אֶת הַלְּמָנִים הֵם שָׁבוּ וְהִתְפָּאֲרוּ
בַּגְּבוּרָתָם; וְהֵם הָלְכוּ בְּכַחֵם וְכָבְשׁוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת
הָעִיר חֲרָבָה.

וְהִנֵּה, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קָמוּ וְהָיוּ; וְאֵלֶּפִים
נִהָרְגוּ מִשְׁנֵי הַצְּדָדִים, מִן הַנְּפִיִּים וּמִן הַלְּמָנִים.

וּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְחֹמֶשׁ חָלְפָה,
וְהַלְּמָנִים יָצְאוּ שׁוֹב לְהִלָּחֵם בַּנְּפִיִּים. וְאוּלָם,
לֹא שָׁבוּ הַנְּפִיִּים מִרְעֵתָם אֲשֶׁר עָשׂוּ, כִּי אִם
הוֹסִיפוּ לְשָׁקֵד עַל רְשָׁעָתָם.

הִנֵּה, לֹא יִכּוֹלָה לְשׁוֹן לְתַאֵר וְאִין אִישׁ יִכּוֹל
לְכַתֵּב תַּאֲוֹר מִשְׁלֵם עַל מַחֲזֵה הַדָּמִים וְהַטְּבַח
הַנוֹרָא אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בָּעַם, בְּקֶרֶב הַנְּפִיִּים בְּקֶרֶב
הַלְּמָנִים. כָּל לֵב הִקְשָׁה וְלָכֵן שָׁבְעוּ נַחַת תָּמִיד
בְּשִׁפְיוֹת הַדָּמִים.

וְלֹא הָיְתָה מַעֲוֹלָם רְשָׁעָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה בְּקֶרֶב כָּל
בְּנֵי לְחִי, וְאֶף לֹא בְּקֶרֶב כָּל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל, עַל פִּי
דְּבַר יְהוָה, כִּרְשָׁעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיְתָה בָּעַם הַזֶּה.

וְהַלְּמָנִים כָּבְשׁוּ אֶת הָעִיר חֲרָבָה. וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי
מִסְפָּרָם אֲשֶׁר עָלָה עַל מִסְפָּר הַנְּפִיִּים.

וְהֵם אֶף צָעְדוּ עַל הָעִיר טֵי־אֲנָקוּם וַיִּגְרְשׁוּ
מִמֶּנָּה אֶת תּוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, וְלָקְחוּ שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים,
נָשִׁים וְיֻלְדִים, וְהִעֲלוּם קֶרְבָּנוֹת לְאֱלִילֵיהֶם.

וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנַת שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשִׁשִּׁים וְשֶׁבַע,
יָעַן כִּי רָגְזוּ הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלְּמָנִים כִּי הִקְרִיבוּ
אֶת נְשֵׁיהֶם וְיֻלְדֵיהֶם, הֵם יָצְאוּ עַל הַלְּמָנִים
בְּחֵמַת זַעַם, עַד כִּי הִבִּסּוּ אוֹתָם פַּעַם נֹסֶפֶת
וַיִּגְרְשׁוּם מֵאַרְצָם.

וְלֹא יָסְפוּ הַלְּמָנִים לָבוֹא עַל הַנְּפִיִּים עַד שְׁנַת
שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֶׁבַעִים וְחָמֵשׁ.

7 And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

8 And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

9 And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

10 And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

11 And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

12 And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

13 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

14 And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

15 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

16 And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

- 17 And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.
- 18 And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.
- 19 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.
- 20 And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.
- 21 And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.
- 22 And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.
- 23 And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.
- וּבשָׁנָה הַהִיא הָם יָרְדוּ עַל הַנְּפִיִּים בְּכָל צָבָאָם; וְלֹא נִמְנָה מִסְפָּרָם כִּי הָיָה עָצוֹם וָרֹב.
- וּמִן הָעַת הַהִיא לֹא גָבְרוּ עוֹד הַנְּפִיִּים עַל הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי אִם נִמְאָגוּ לִפְנֵיהֶם כְּטֹל מִפְּנֵי הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים יָרְדוּ עַל הָעִיר חֲרָבָה; וְאִזְּתַּחֲוִלָּל קָרַב מֵרֶעַד מְאֹד בְּאַרְץ חֲרָבָה, וּבֹו הַבִּיסוּ הַלְּמָנִים אֶת הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים נָסוּ שׁוֹב מִפְּנֵיהֶם וּבָאוּ אֶל הָעִיר בֹּעַז. שָׁם הָם עָמְדוּ בְּפָנֵי הַלְּמָנִים בְּגִבּוּרָה גְּדוֹלָה, עַד כִּי לֹא נִצְחוּם הַלְּמָנִים, כִּי אִם בָּבוֹאָם שֵׁנִית.
- וּבְבוֹאָם שֵׁנִית, נִהָדְפוּ הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִסְבְּחוּ טָבַח גָּדוֹל מְאֹד; וְשׁוֹב הִקְרִיבוּ נְשִׂיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם לְאֵלִילֵי הַלְּמָנִים.
- וְהַנְּפִיִּים נָסוּ פַעַם נֹסֶפֶת מִפְּנֵיהֶם וּלְקָחוּ עִמָּם אֶת כָּל הַתּוֹשָׁבִים, מִן הָעָרִים וּמִן הַכְּפָרִים.
- וְאַנִּי, מוֹרְמוֹן, בִּרְאוֹתִי כִּי הַלְּמָנִים עָמְדוּ לְהַשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ, הִלְכֵתִי אֶל גִּבְעַת שִׁים וּלְקַחְתִּי אֶת כָּל הַכְּתָבִים אֲשֶׁר הִצְפִּין אֶמְרוֹן לְשֵׁם יְהוָה.

ה

5

- 1 And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.
- 2 But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.
- 3 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.
- וְהָיָה כִּי יֵצְאתִי אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים וְנִחַמְתִּי עַל הַשְּׁבוּעָה אֲשֶׁר נִשְׁבַּעְתִּי, לְחַדֵּל מִכָּל עֲזָרָה לָהֶם; וְהֵם נָתְנוּ לִי שִׁנִּית אֶת הַפְּקוּד עַל חִילוּתֵיהֶם, כִּי נִרְאִיתִי בְּעֵינֵיהֶם כְּאִלּוּ יִכְלְתִּי לְהוֹשִׁיעֵם מִצָּרוֹתֵיהֶם.
- אֲךָ הִנֵּה, הָיִיתִי בְּלֹא כָל תְּקוּהָ, כִּי יִדְעֵתִי אֶת דִּין יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר יְבוֹאֵם כִּי הֵם לֹא נִחְמוּ עַל עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם, אֲלֹא נִלָּחְמוּ עַל חַיֵּיהֶם, בְּלֹא לְקַרֵּא אֶל בּוֹרְאָם.
- וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ עָלֵינוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר בָּרַחְנוּ אֶל הָעִיר יֶרֶדוֹ; וְאוֹלָם, הֵם נִהָדְפוּ וְלֹא תָפְשוּ אֶת הָעִיר בְּעַת הַהִיא.

מורמון ה:ד-יא

- ואחר זאת הם שבו ועלו עלינו, אך אנחנו
החזקנו בעיר ואף היו ערים נוספות אשר
החזיקו הנפיים; והמבצרים האלה נתקו את
דרך הלמנים לבל יוכלו לחדור אל פנים הארץ
המשתרעת לפנינו, ולהשמיד את יושבי ארצנו.
- ובכל האזורים אשר עברנו בהם, אשר
תושביהם לא התקבצו אלינו, השמידו
הלמנים את שוכניהם; ועריהם וכפריהם
וכרפיהם נשרפו באש. כה חלפה שנת
שלש מאות ושבעים ותשע.
- והיה בשנת שלש מאות ושמונים, יצאו
הלמנים פעם נוספת למלחמה עלינו. ואנחנו
עמדנו נגדם בגבורה, אך הכל היה לשוא,
כי כה עצום היה מספרם, עד כי הם רמסו
את עם הנפיים תחת רגליהם.
- ואנחנו נסנו שנית; והבורחים אשר קלו
רגליהם מרגלי הלמנים נמלטו, ואלה אשר
לא היו מהירים מן הלמנים, הברעו והשמידו.
- והנה, אני מורמון, אינני חפץ לצער נפש בני
אדם בהציגי להם מחזה דמים וטבח נורא
כזה אשר נגלה לעיני; ואולם, בידעי כי על
הדברים האלה להודיע, וכי כל הנסתרות
עתידות להתגלות בראש חוצות;
- ואף בידעי כי תבוא ידיעת הדברים האלה
אל שארית העם הזה, וכן אל הגוים, אחר
יפיצו, כדבר יהוה, את העם הזה, וכי העם
הזה יחשב כאין בתוכם; לכן הנני כותב את
קצור הדברים, מפני המצוה אשר צויתי, כי
אינני מעז לספר בפרוט את כל אשר ראיתי,
ואף בעבור מנע מכם יתר צער על רשעת
העם הזה.
- ועתה, הנה אדבר זאת אל זרעם, וכן אל
הגוים, אשר דאגתם נתונה לבית ישראל,
והמכירים ואף יודעים את מקור ברכתם.
- ואני יודע כי אלה יתעצבו על שבר בית
ישראל; אכן, הם יתעצבו על חרבן העם הזה;
והם יתעצבו כי לא נחם העם הזה מחסא
בעבור יחבקו בזרועות ישוע.
- 4 And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did main-
tain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained
by Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not
get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of
our land.
- 5 And it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and
the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the
Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with
fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.
- 6 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the
Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against
them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that
they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.
- 7 And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose
flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose
flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.
- 8 And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of
men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage
as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must
surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be
revealed upon the house-tops—
- 9 And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant
of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said
should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as
naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not
to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the
commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have
too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.
- 10 And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles
who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from
whence their blessings come.
- 11 For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel;
yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow
that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in
the arms of Jesus.

מורמון ה:יב-כ

- 12 הנה, הדברים האלה כתובים אל שארית בית יעקב; והם כתובים באופן הזה, כי ידוע מאת אלהים כי לא רשעה תוציאם אליהם; ויש להצפינם לשם יהוה, בעבור יצאו לאור בעת אשר תישר בעיניו.
- 13 אכן, זאת המצווה אשר צויתי; והנה, הם יצאו לאור כפי מצות יהוה, בעת אשר תישר בעיניו בחכמתו.
- 14 והנה, הם ילכו אל חסרי האמונה אשר ביהודים. ובכונה הזאת הם יצאו, בעבור שכן יושע הוא המשיח, בן אלהים חיים; וזאת למען יוציא האב לפעל, על ידי אהובו, את תכליתו הגדולה והנצחית, היא השבת היהודים, אכן, את כל בית ישראל, אל ארץ נחלתם, אשר יהוה אלהיהם נתן להם, בעבור יקיים את בריתו עמם;
- 15 ואף בעבור יאמינו זרע העם הזה ביתר אמונה בבשורתו, אשר תצא אליהם מאת הגוים; כי העם הזה יפזר ויהפך עם קודר וטמא ומאוס, מעבר לתאור אשר רוח בניינו מעולם; אכן, אף מעבר לנמצא בקרב הלמנים. וזאת מפני חסר אמונתם ואילוליתם.
- 16 כי הנה, רוח יהוה חדל כבר להתאמץ עם אבותיהם; והם בלי משיח ובלי אלהים בעולם; והם נדפים כמוץ לפני רוח.
- 17 הן לפנים היו הם עם חביב, והמשיח היה לרועם; אכן, אף אלהים האב הנהיגם.
- 18 ואולם עתה, השטן מנהיגם, והם נדפים, כהנדף מוץ לפני רוח או כספינה המטלטלת על פני הגלים, בלי מפרש ובלי עגון, או בלי כל כלי לכוונה; וכמוהו כמוהם.
- 19 והנה שמר יהוה את ברכתם, אשר יכולים היו לקבל בארץ, עבור הגוים אשר ינחלו את הארץ.
- 20 אכן, בוא תבוא עת אשר ישאום הגוים ופיצומו. והנה, אחר אשר ינשאו ויפצו על ידי הגוים, אז יזכר יהוה את הברית אשר כרת לאברהם ולכל בית ישראל.
- 12 Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.
- 13 And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.
- 14 And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;
- 15 And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.
- 16 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.
- 17 They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.
- 18 But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.
- 19 And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.
- 20 But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

מורמון ה:כא-ו:ו

- 21 And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.
- 22 And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?
- 23 Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?
- 24 Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.
- ואף יזכר יהוה את תפלות הצדיקים אשר העלו אליו למענם.
- ואתם, הגוים, איך תעמדו אז לפני פח אלהים, אם לא תנחמו על חטאיכם ותשובו מרעיתכם?
- האינכם יודעים כי בידי אלהים אתם? האינכם יודעים כי לו כל הכח ולפקדתו האדירה תגולל הארץ כמגלה?
- על כן, הנחמו על חטאיכם והכנעו לפניו, פן יקום עליכם במשפט; פן תפרץ שארית יזרע יעקב אל תוכם כאריה, וטרף תטרף ואין מציל.

1

6

- 1 And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.
- 2 And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.
- 3 And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.
- 4 And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.
- 5 And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.
- 6 And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in
- ועתה אשלים את כתב הזכרון בדבר חרבן עמי, הנפיים. והיה בשעת ההיא, צעדנו לפני הלמנים.
- ואני, מורמון, כתבתי אגרת אל מלך הלמנים ובקשתי כי יתנו לקבץ את בני עמנו אל ארץ קומורה, ליד גבעה בשם קומורה, ושם נעשה עמם מלחמה.
- ומלך הלמנים נתן לי את אשר חפצתי.
- ואנחנו נסענו אל ארץ קומורה ונסינו את אהלינו סביב לגבעת קומורה; והארץ הזאת הייתה רבת אנמי מים ונהרות ומעיינות; במקום הזה הייתה לנו תקוה להשיג יתרון על הלמנים.
- והיה כעבר שנת שלש מאות ושמונים וארבע, קבצנו את כל שארית עמנו אלינו, אל ארץ קומורה.
- ובעת קבצנו את כל בני עמנו יחדו אל ארץ קומורה, ראיתי כי אני, מורמון, זקנתי. ובידעי כי יהיה זה מאבק עמי האחרון, ועני כי צוני יהוה כי לא אניח לכתבים אשר מסרום אבותינו מדור לדור, ואשר הם קדושים, לפל לידי הלמנים, אשר היו משמידים אותם, לכן רשמתי את כתב

הַזְכְּרוֹן הַזֶּה עַל פִּי לְיוֹחוֹת נָפִי, וְהַצָּפְנָתִי
בְּגִבְעַת קוֹמֹרָה אֶת כָּל כְּתָבִי הַזְכְּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר יָד
יְהוָה הִפְקִידָה לְיָדִי, זֹלַת הַלּוֹחוֹת הַמְּעֻשִׁים
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר מִסְרָתִי לְבְנִי מוֹרוֹנִי.

the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by
the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto
my son Moroni.

וְהָיָה כִּרְאוֹת בְּנֵי עַמִּי, עִם נְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם וְיִלְדֵיהֶם,
אֶת מִסַּע צָבָא הַלְּמָנִים לִקְרֹאתָם, הֵם מִלֹּא
פֶּחַד הַמָּוֶת הַנוֹרָא הַמְּמַלֵּא אֶת לֵב כָּל
הָרָשָׁעִים; כֹּה חָכְנוּ הֵם לְבוֹאֵם.

7 And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children,
did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them;
and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked,
did they await to receive them.

וְהַלְּמָנִים בָּאוּ לְהִלָּחֵם בָּנוּ, וְכָל נֶפֶשׁ מִלֹּאָה
אֵימָה מִפְּנֵי עֲצָם מִסְפָּרָם.

8 And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul
was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

וְהֵם הִתְנַפְּלוּ עַל אַנְשֵׁי בְּחָרָב וּבִקְשֵׁת וְחָץ
וּבִגְרָזָן וּבְכָל מִינֵי כָּלִי מִלְחָמָה.

9 And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword,
and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all
manner of weapons of war.

וְאַנְשֵׁי נִגְדְּעוּ אֶרְצָה. אַכֵּן, הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לִי,
אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי; וְאִף אֲנִי נִפְלָתִי פְּצוּעַ בְּתוֹכָם,
וְהַלְּמָנִים עָבְרוּ לְיָדִי וְלֹא שָׁמוּ קֶץ לְחַיִּי.

10 And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten
thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they
passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר עָבְרוּ הַלְּמָנִים בְּתוֹכָנוּ, וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר
נִגְדְּעוּ אֶרְצָה אֶת כָּל בְּנֵי עַמִּי, זֹלַת עֲשָׂרִים
וְאַרְבָּעָה אִישׁ, אֲשֶׁר בִּינְיָהֶם הָיָה בְּנֵי מוֹרוֹנִי,
אַכֵּן לְמַחֲרָת, כְּשׁוֹב הַלְּמָנִים אֶל מַחֲנֵיהֶם,
רָאִינוּ אֶנְחָנוּ, הַנוֹתָרִים בַּחַיִּים, אֶת הָרֶגַע בְּנֵי
עַמֵּנוּ מִרָאשׁ גִּבְעַת קוֹמֹרָה, אַכֵּן אֶת רִבְבַּת
בְּנֵי עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר נִגְדְּעוּ בַּהֲיוֹתִי עוֹמֵד בְּרֹאשָׁם.

11 And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save
it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and
we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow,
when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the
hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down,
being led in the front by me.

וְכֵן רָאִינוּ אֶת רִבְבַּת בְּנֵי עַמִּי אֲשֶׁר מוֹרוֹנִי
בְּנֵי הַנְּהִיגָם.

12 And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my
son Moroni.

וְהִנֵּה, אִף הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לְגִדְגִּדּוֹנָה נָפְלוּ
וְהוּא בְּתוֹכָם.

13 And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also
in the midst.

וְלָמָּא נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; וְגִלְגַּל נָפַל
עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; וְלִמְחָה נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה
אֲשֶׁר לוֹ; יוֹנִיאֻם נָפַל עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ;
וּכְמִנִּיָּה וּמוֹרוֹנִיָּה וְאַנְטִיאֻנוֹם וְשִׁבְלוֹם
וְשֵׁם יוֹשׁ נָפְלוּ, אִישׁ־אִישׁ עִם רִבְבַּת אֲנָשָׁיו.

14 And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen
with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand;
and Joneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and
Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had
fallen with their ten thousand each.

וְהָיוּ עוֹד עֲשָׂרָה אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בְּחָרָב, כָּל אִישׁ
עִם הִרְבָּה אֲשֶׁר לוֹ. אַכֵּן, כָּל עַמִּי זֹלַת אוֹתָם
עֲשָׂרִים וְאַרְבָּעָה אֲשֶׁר הָיוּ עִמִּי, וְכֵן מְעַשִׂים
אֲשֶׁר נִמְלְטוּ אֶל אֶרְצוֹת הַדְּרוֹם, וּמְעַשִׂים
אֲשֶׁר עָרְקוּ אֶל הַלְּמָנִים. וּבָשָׂר הַהוֹרֹגִים
וְעֲצָמוֹתֵיהֶם וְדָמָם כְּסוּ אֶת פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה,

15 And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the
sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it
were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who
had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over
unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood
lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew

- יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדִי הוֹרְגִיהֶם הַשְׂאִירוּם לְהִרְקִיב עַל הָאָרֶץ, וּלְהִתְפֹּרֵר וּלְשׁוּב אֶל אִמָּא אֲדָמָה.
- 16 And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:
- אֶהְיֶה, יְפִי מֵרָאָה, אֵיכָה רַחֲקֶתֶם מִדְּרָכֵי יְהוָה! אֶהְיֶה, יְפִי מֵרָאָה, אֵיכָה מָאַסְתֶּם אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, זֶה אֲשֶׁר עָמַד בְּזִרְעוֹת פְּתוּחוֹת לְקַבֵּל אֶת בְּנֵיכֶם!
- 17 O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!
- הִנֵּה, לֹא עָשִׂיתֶם זֹאת, לֹא נָפַלְתֶּם. אֲנִי הִנֵּה, נִפְלַתֶם חֲלָלִים, וְאֲנִי אֲבֵל עַל אֲבֵדְנֶכֶם.
- 18 Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.
- אֶהְיֶה, בָּנִים יְפִים וּבָנוֹת יְפוֹת, אֲבוֹת וְאִמֹּהוֹת, בְּעָלִים וְנָשִׁים, יְפִי מֵרָאָה, אֵיכָה נָפַלְתֶּם חֲלָלִים!
- 19 O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!
- וְהִנֵּה, חֲלַפְתֶּם וְיֹגוֹנִי לֹא יִשְׁיבְכֶם.
- 20 But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.
- הֵן בְּמַהֲרָה יָבוֹא הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יַהֲפֹךְ מוֹתְכֶם אֶל־חַיּוֹת, וְהַגּוֹפּוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, הַמְרַקִּיבוֹת עִתָּה לְשַׁחַת, עַד מַהֲרָה יִהְיוּ בְּלִתֵּי נִשְׁחָתוֹת. אֲנִי עֹמֵד תַּעֲמִדוּ לִפְנֵי כִסֵּי מִשְׁפַּט הַמֶּשִׁיחַ לְהִשְׁפֹּט כָּפִי מֵעֲשִׂיכֶם; וְאִם תִּמָּצְאוּ יֹשְׁרִים, בְּרוּכִים תִּהְיוּ עִם אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר חָלְפוּ לִפְנֵיכֶם.
- 21 And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ to be judged according to your works and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.
- מִי יִתֵּן וְנִחַמְתֶּם עַל חֲטָאֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי הוֹאֵה הַהִשְׁמָדָה הַגְּדוֹלָה הַזֹּאת עֲלֵיכֶם. אֲנִי הִנֵּה, חֲלַפְתֶּם, וְהָאֵב, אֲבִי הַשָּׁמַיִם הַנִּצְחִי, יוֹדֵעַ אֶת מַצְבְּכֶם; וְהוּא נוֹהֵג בְּכֶם כָּכִי כָּפִי דִּינוֹ וְכָפִי רַחֲמָיו.
- 22 O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

ז

7

- וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר מֵעַתָּה אֶל שְׂאִרֵּי הָעָם הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר נִוְתְּרוּ בַחַיִּים, אִם אִמָּנֶם יִמְסֹר לָהֶם אֱלֹהִים אֶת דְּבָרִי, בְּעֵבֹר יִדְעוּ אֶת דְּבַר אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; אֲכֹן, אֲלֵיכֶם אֲדַבֵּר, שְׂאִרֵּי בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל; וְאֵלֶּה דְּבָרֵי:
- 1 And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:
- דְּעוּ כִּי מִבֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הֵנֶכֶם.
- 2 Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.
- דְּעוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לְשׁוּב וּלְהִנָּחֵם מִחֲטָא; וְלֹא, לֹא תִוָּשָׁעוּ.
- 3 Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.
- דְּעוּ כִּי עֲלֵיכֶם לְהִנִּיחַ אֶת כָּל הַמִּלְחָמָה וּלְחַדֵּל מִהִנָּאָה בְּשִׁפְכוֹת דָּמִים. וְאַל לָכֶם לְשׁוּב אֶל כָּלִי נִשְׁקָכְכֶם, בְּלִתֵּי אִם יִצְוְכֶם אֱלֹהִים לְאַחֵז בָּהֶם.
- 4 Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

מורמון ז:ה-ח:ב

- 5 Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.
- וְדַעוּ כִּי עַל־יֵכֶם לְקַנּוֹת אֶת דַּעַת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, וּלְהִנָּחֵם עַל כָּל חַטָּאֵיכֶם וְעוֹנוֹתֵיכֶם, וּלְהֶאֱמִין בִּישׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי בֶן אֱלֹהִים הוּא, וְכִי הוּא הוּמַת עַל יְדֵי הַיְּהוּדִים, וּבְכַח הָאָב הוּא קָם מִן הַמָּתִים, וּבְזֹאת זָכָה בִּנְצָחוֹן עַל שְׂאוֹל; וְבוֹ נִבְלַע עֶקֶץ הַמָּוֶת.
- 6 And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.
- וְעַל יְדֵיו בָּאָה תְּחִיַּת הַמֵּתִים, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָקוּם הָאָדָם וְיַעֲמֹד לִפְנֵי כִסֵּי מִשְׁפָּטוֹ.
- 7 And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.
- וְהוּא הֵבִיא אֶת גְּאֻלַּת הָעוֹלָם, וּבְכָךְ כָּל הַנִּמְצָא זָכָאי לִפְנֵי בְּיוֹם הַדִּין, נִתֵּן לוֹ לִשְׂכּוֹן לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים בְּמַלְכוּתוֹ, לְשִׁיר תְּהִלּוֹת לֵאלֹהֵי חֲשׁוֹד עִם מַקְהִלּוֹת מְרוֹם, לְאֵב וּלְבָן וּלְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר אֱלֹהִים אֶחָד הֵמָּה, בְּאֲשֶׁר לֹא קֵץ.
- 8 Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.
- עַל כֵּן שׁוּבוּ מִרַעֲתֵיכֶם וְהִטְבְּלוּ בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ, וְהִחַזִּיקוּ בְּבִשּׁוּרַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר תּוֹשִׁם לִפְנֵיכֶם, לֹא רַק בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַזֶּה, כִּי אִם אַף בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא אֶל הַגּוֹיִים מֵאַתְּ הַיְּהוּדִים, וְהוּא אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא מִן הַגּוֹיִים אֲלֵיכֶם.
- 9 For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.
- כִּי הִנֵּה זֶה נִכְתָּב בְּעֵבֶר תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַהוּא; וְאִם תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּכֹתֵב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן הַהוּא, אֲזִי תִאֲמִינוּ אַף בְּזֶה; וְאִם תִּאֲמִינוּ בְּזֶה תִּדְעוּ עַל אֲדוּת אֲבוֹתֵיכֶם וְכֹן עַל הַנִּפְלְאוֹת אֲשֶׁר נַעֲשׂוּ בְּקִרְבָּם עַל יְדֵי כַח אֱלֹהִים.
- 10 And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.
- וְתִדְעוּ אַף כִּי שְׂאִרִית יִזְרַע יַעֲקֹב הֵנֶכֶם; לְכֹן נִמְנִים אַתֶּם עִם עַם הַבְּרִית הָרִאשׁוֹנָה. וְאִם אַכֶּן תִּאֲמִינוּ בַּמָּשִׁיחַ וְהִטְבְּלוּ, תִּחְלָה בַּמַּיִם וְאַחֲרָי כֵּן בָּאֵשׁ וּבְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, כְּדִגְמַת מוֹשִׁיעֵנו, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוָּנוּ, טוֹב יִהְיֶה לָכֶם בְּיוֹם הַדִּין. אָמֵן.

ח

8

- 1 Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.
- הִנֵּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, מְשַׁלֵּם אֶת כְּתָב הַזֶּכָּרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לְאָבִי, מוֹרְמוֹן. יֵשׁ לִי לְכֹתֵב רַק דְּבָרִים מְעַשִׂים אֲשֶׁר אָבִי צִוָּנִי עָלֵיהֶם.
- 2 And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.
- וְהָיָה אַחֲרֵי הַקָּרָב הַגָּדוֹל וְהָאֲדִיר בְּקוּמוֹרָה, עָרְכוּ הַלְּמָנִים מִצּוֹד עַל הַנְּפִיִּים אֲשֶׁר נִמְלְטוּ אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, עַד אֲשֶׁר הִשְׁמִידוּ אֶת כָּלָם.

מורמון ח:ג-יב

- אף אבי נהרג בידיהם, ונותרתי אני לבדי
לכתב את הספור העגום על חרבן בני עמי.
והנה, הם חלפו ואינם, ואני מקיים את מצות
אבי. ואם יהרגוני אינני יודע.
- על כן אכתב ואצפין את הכתבים באדמה;
ואין חשיבות לאן אלף.
- הנה, אבי רשם את כתב הזכרון הזה, ואף
כתב את כונתו. והנה, גם אני הייתי כותב
זאת אלו היה לי מקום לכתב על גבי הלוחות,
אף אין לי; ועופרת אין לי כלל, כי בודד אני.
אבי נהרג בקרב, וכן כל בני משפחתי, ואין לי
ידידים ואף לא מקום אשר אליו אלף; וכמה
זמן יתן לי יהוה לחיות עוד, אינני יודע.
- והנה, ארבע מאות שנה חלפו מעת בוא
אדוננו ומושיענו.
- והלמנים ערכו מצוד על עמי, הנפיים, מעיר
אל עיר וממקום אל מקום, עד כלותם. וכה
גדולה הייתה מפלתם, אכן, גדול ומפליא הוא
חרבן עמי, בני נפי.
- הנה, יד יהוה עשתה זאת; ואף הלמנים
נלחמים זה בזה וכל פני הארץ הזאת הם
מהפכת רצח ושפיכות דמים בלתי פוסקת;
ואין איש יודע את אחרית המלחמה הזאת.
- ועתה, לא אוסיף לדבר עוד על אודותיהם,
כי אין קימים על פני הארץ כי אם הלמנים
והשודדים.
- ואין איש יודע את אלהי האמת וזאת תלמידי
ישוע, אשר נשארו בארץ, עד אשר הייתה
רשעת העם כה גדולה ולא נתנם יהוה
להשאיר עוד בקרבם; ואם עודם נמצאים על
פני הארץ, אין איש יודע.
- ואולם אבי ואני ראינו אותם והם שמשו לפנינו.
- וכל המקבל את כתב הזכרון הזה, ולא
מגנהו מפני הפגמים אשר בו, הוא אכן ידע
גדולות מאלה. הנני מורוני, ואילו נתן הנה,
הייתי מודיעכם את כל הדברים.
- 3 And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.
- 4 Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.
- 5 Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.
- 6 Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.
- 7 And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.
- 8 And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.
- 9 And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.
- 10 And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.
- 11 But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.
- 12 And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

- 13 Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.
הִנְנִי מְכַלֶּה אֶת דְּבָרֵי עַל הָעָם הַזֶּה. אֲנִי בֶן מֹרְמוֹן, וְאָבִי צֶאֱצָא נְפִי.
- 14 And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.
וְאֲנִי הוּא הַמְצִיפִין אֶת כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן הַזֶּה לְשֵׁם יְהוָה; הַלּוּחוֹת עֲצָמָם אֵינָם בְּעֲלֵי עֶרֶךְ, מִפְּנֵי מִצְוַת יְהוָה, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הוּא אָכֵן אָמַר כִּי לֹא יִהְיוּ לְאִישׁ לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ; אֲדָּ לְכַתְּבֵי הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר עַל גְּבֵי הַלּוּחוֹת עֶרֶךְ רַב; וְאֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיאֵם לְאוֹר, יִבְרַכְהוּ יְהוָה.
- 15 For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.
כִּי אֵין לְאִישׁ כֹּחַ לְהוֹצִיאֵם לְאוֹר, בְּלֹא תְּנִיתָ לּוֹ מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים; יַעַן אֲשֶׁר חָפֵץ אֱלֹהִים כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה הַדְּבָר לְשֵׁם תַּפְאֲרָתוֹ בְּלִבָּד, לְטוֹבָתָם עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה הַעֲתִיק וְהַמְפֹּזֵר עַתְּ אֲרָפָה.
- 16 And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.
וּבְרוּךְ הוּא אֲשֶׁר יוֹצִיא אֶת הַדְּבָר הַזֶּה לְאוֹר, כִּי מִחֹשֶׁךְ לְאוֹר יוֹצֵא כְּדִבְרֵי אֱלֹהִים; אָכֵן, מִן הָאֲדָמָה יוֹצֵא וְיִזְהֵר מִתּוֹךְ הַחֹשֶׁךְ, וְיִזְדַּע לְבִנֵי הָאָדָם; וְזֹאת יַעֲשֶׂה בְכַח אֱלֹהִים.
- 17 And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.
וְאִם יֵשׁ בּוֹ פְּגָמִים, פְּגָמֵי אָדָם הֵם, אֲדָ אֲנַחְנוּ לֹא מִצְאָנוּ בּוֹ כָּל פְּגָם, וְאוֹלָם, אֱלֹהִים יוֹדֵעַ הַכֹּל. לְכֵן, הַמְגַנֶּה, יִשְׁמַר נָא פִּי: סִתְפֵן בְּאֵשׁ שָׂאוֹל.
- 18 And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.
וְהַאֲמֹר: הֲרָאֵנִי, וְלֹא, תִּכָּה; יִשְׁמַר נָא פִּי יִצְוֶה אֶת אֲשֶׁר אָסַר יְהוָה.
- 19 For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.
כִּי, הִנֵּה, הַנִּחְפֹּז לְשֹׁפֵט, בְּחִפְזוֹן יָשׁוּב וְיִשְׁפֹּט, כִּי כִפְעָלוֹ כֵּן יִהְיֶה שְׂכָרוֹ; עַל כֵּן, הַמִּכֶּה, יָשׁוּב יִיכָהוּ.
- 20 Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.
רְאוּ אֶת הַכְּתוּב בְּסִפְרֵי הַקֹּדֶשׁ: אִישׁ בֹּל יִכֶּה וְאִף לֹא יִשְׁפֹּט כִּי לִי הַמִּשְׁפָּט, נְאוּם יְהוָה, וְאִף לִי הַנֶּקֶם וְאֲנִכִּי אֲשַׁלֵּם גְּמוּלָה.
- 21 And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;
וְאֲשֶׁר יִפְיחַ זַעַם וּמְדוֹן עַל פְּעֻלַת יְהוָה וְעַל עִם בְּרִית יְהוָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל הִמָּה, וַיֹּאמֶר: נִשְׁמִיד אֶת פְּעֹל יְהוָה, וְלֹא יִזְכֹּר יְהוָה אֶת בְּרִיתוֹ אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת לְבֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל, מִסִּתְפֵן הוּא כִּי יִכֶּה וְיִשְׁלֹךְ אֶל הָאֵשׁ.
- 22 For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.
כִּי תַכְלִית יְהוָה הַנֶּצְחִית תּוֹסִיף לְהִתְקַיֵּם, עַד אֲשֶׁר יִמְלֵא כָּל דְּבָרוֹ.
- 23 Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who
חֲקְרוּ בְּנְבוּאוֹת יִשְׁעִיהוּ. הִנֵּה, אֵינֶנִּי יָכוֹל לְכַתְּבָן. אֲדָ, אֲנִי אוֹמֵר לָכֵם כִּי הַקְּדוֹשִׁים

אֲשֶׁר חָיו לִפְנֵי, אֲשֶׁר הִחְיִיקוּ בְּאַרְצָךְ הַזֹּאת, יִצְעֲקוּ, אָכֵן, מֵעַפֵּר יִקְרָאוּ אֶל יְהוָה; וְחֵי יְהוָה, הוּא יִזְכֹּר אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִמָּהֶם.

have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

וְהוּא יוֹדֵעַ אֶת תְּפִלּוֹתֵיהֶם, כִּי לְמַעַן אֲחֵיהֶם הָיוּ. וְהוּא יוֹדֵעַ אֶת אֱמוּנָתָם, כִּי בִשְׁמוֹ הִסִּירוּ הָרִים, וּבִשְׁמוֹ הִרְעִידוּ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה, וּבְכַח דְּבָרוֹ הִתְמוּסְטוּ בְּתֵי כָּלָא אֲרֻצָּה; אָכֵן, אִף הַכְּבִשָּׁן הַלּוֹהֵט לֹא יָכֹל לִפְגֹּעַ בָּהֶם, וְאִף לֹא חַיּוֹת פָּרָא וְנִחְשֵׁי אֲרָס, וְזֹאת מִפְּנֵי כַח דְּבָרוֹ.

24 And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

וְהִנֵּה, תְּפִלּוֹתֵיהֶם הָיוּ אִף לְמַעַן זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִתֵּן יְהוָה כִּי יוֹצִיא אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה לְאוֹר.

25 And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

וְאֵל יֹאמֶר אִישׁ כִּי הֵם לֹא יֵצְאוּ, כִּי אָכֵן, יֵצְאוּ יֵצְאוּ. אָכֵן, מִן הָאֲדָמָה יֵצְאוּ, בְּיַד יְהוָה, וְאֵין מוֹנֵעַ; וְתֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יֹאמֶר כִּי חָדְלוּ נָסִים; וְתֵהִי זֹאת כְּאֵלוֹ דְּבַר אִישׁ מִן הַמֵּתִים.

26 And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

וְתֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִצְעַק דָּם הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֶל יְהוָה עַל אֲגָדוֹת סֵתֶר וּמַעֲשֵׂי חֹשֶׁךְ.

27 And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִכְחֹשׁוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים, וּכְנִסְיוֹתֵיהֶם תִּחַלְלֶנָּה וְתִתְנַשְּׂאֲנָה בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּן; אָכֵן, בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִתְנַשְּׂאוּ מְנַהֲיֵי כְּנִסְיוֹת וּמוֹרִיָּהוֹן בְּגִאוֹת לִבָּם, וְאִף יִקְנְאוּ בְּחִבְרֵי כְּנִסְיוֹתֵיהֶם.

28 Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִשְׁמַע עַל אֵשׁ וְסוּפוֹת וְתִמְרוֹת עָשָׁן בְּאַרְצוֹת נָכָר.

29 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

וְאִף יִשְׁמַע עַל מִלְחָמָה וְשִׁמוּעוֹת מִלְחָמָה וְרַעֲיִדוֹת אֲדָמָה בְּמִקְוֵמוֹת שׁוֹנִים.

30 And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

אָכֵן, יֵהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ זְהוּמִים גְּדוֹלִים עַל פְּנֵי הָאֲדָמָה; וְיִהְיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי רָצַח וְשָׂדֶה, שְׁקָר וּמְרָמָה, זְנוּת וְכָל מִינֵי תוֹעֵבוֹת; בָּעֵת אֲשֶׁר יֹאמְרוּ אֲזַרְבִּים: עֲשֵׂה זֹאת אוֹ עֲשֵׂה זֹאת, וְאֵין לָכֵךְ חֲשִׁיבוֹת, כִּי יִסְעָדֶם יְהוָה בְּיוֹם הָאֲחֵרוֹן. אִף אוֹי לְשִׁכְמוֹתָם, כִּי שְׂרוּיִים הֵם בְּמִרְרַת רוֹשׁ וּבְכַבְלֵי עוֹוֹן.

31 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

אָכֵן, תֵּהִי זֹאת בְּיוֹם הַבְּנוֹת כְּנִסְיוֹת אֲשֶׁר תֵּאֱמַרְנָה: בּוֹא אֵלַי וְתִמְרוֹרַת כֶּסֶף יִמְחֹלוּ לָךְ חַטָּאִיךָ.

32 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

- 33 O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.
- אוי לָכֶם, עִם רָשָׁעִים וּמִשְׁחָתִים וְקָשִׁי עֲרָרִי! מִדּוּעַ בְּנִיתֶם לָכֶם כְּנִסְיוֹת לְמַעַן בָּצֵעַ? מִדּוּעַ עֲוִיתֶם אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הַקְדּוֹשׁ, לְהֵבִיא מָאֲרָה עַל נַפְשְׁכֶם? הִנֵּה הַבִּיטוּ אֶל חֲזִיוֹנוֹת אֱלֹהִים; כִּי הִנֵּה, בּוֹא תְּבוֹא הָעֵת בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר יִקְוּמוּ כָּל הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְיִהְיוּ.
- 34 Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.
- הִנֵּה הָרָאֵנִי יְהוָה גְּדוּלוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת עַל אֲשֶׁר קָרֹב לְבוֹא, בַּיּוֹם בּוֹא הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֵלֵיכֶם.
- 35 Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.
- הִנֵּנִי מְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם כְּאִלּוּ אַתֶּם לִפְנֵי, אַךְ כִּי לֹא כֵן הַדְּבָר. כִּי הִנֵּה, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ הָרָאֵנִי אֶתְכֶם, וְאֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ אֶת מַעֲשֵׂיכֶם.
- 36 And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.
- יּוֹדֵעַ אֲנִי כִּי מֵתְהַלְכִים אַתֶּם בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם, וְכִי זוֹלַת מַעֲשִׂים, מִתְנַשְּׂאִים הֵכַל בְּגָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם, לּוֹבְשִׁים בְּגָדִים הַדּוּרִים מְאֹד, וְנוֹהֲגִים בְּקִנְיָה וּבְמִדּוֹן וּבְזִדּוֹן וּבְרִדְפוֹת וּבְכָל מִינֵי עֲוֹנוֹת. וְכִנְסִיּוֹתֵיכֶם, אַכּוֹ, כָּלֹן כְּאַחַת, הִזְדַּחְמוּ מִפְּנֵי גָאוֹת לְבָבְכֶם.
- 37 For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.
- כִּי הִנֵּה רַבָּה אֶהְבַּתְכֶם לְמָמוֹן וּלְקִנְיָנְכֶם, לְבִגְדֵיכֶם הַהֲדוּרִים וּלְקִשּׁוּטֵי כְּנִסְיֹתֵיכֶם מֵאֶהְבַּתְכֶם לְעָנִי וּלְאֲבִיּוֹן, לַחֹלֶה וּלְנֹכָח.
- 38 O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?
- הוֹי, אַתֶּם הַזֹּהוּמִים! אַתֶּם הַחֲנִפִּים, אַתֶּם הַמּוֹרִים, הַמּוֹכְרִים עַצְמְכֶם לְמַעַן זֶה אֲשֶׁר יִרְקַב! מִדּוּעַ זֶהְמַתֶּם אֶת כְּנִסְיַת אֱלֹהִים הַקְדּוֹשָׁה? מִדּוּעַ תְּבוֹשׁוּ לְשֵׂאת עֲלֵיכֶם אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ? מִדּוּעַ לֹא יָקָר בְּעֵינֵיכֶם אֲשֶׁר נִצְחִי מִיְסוּרֵי עוֹלָם? הַמִּפְנֵי שְׂבַחֵי הָעוֹלָם הַזֶּה?
- 39 Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?
- מִדּוּעַ תְּתַיְּפוּ בְּזֶה אֲשֶׁר הוּא נֶעְדֵּר חַיִּים, אַךְ תִּתְּרוּ כִּי יַחְלְפוּ עַל פְּנֵיכֶם רָעִב וְאֲבִיּוֹן, עָרֵם וְחֹלֶה וְנֹכָח, וְאֶת לְבָבְכֶם לֹא תִשְׁתִּיתוּ לָהֶם?
- 40 Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?
- אָכֵן, מִדּוּעַ תְּקִימוּ אֶת אֲגָדוֹת סִתְרֵיכֶם בְּעִבּוֹר בָּצֵעַ, וְתִסְבּוּ לְאֲלֻמָּנוֹת וּלְיִתוּמִים כִּי יִתְאַבְּלוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה? מִדּוּעַ תִּסְבּוּ כִּי תִעַלָּה צַעֲקַת דָּם אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְעֵלֵיהֶן מִן הָאֲדָמָה אֶל יְהוָה, לְמַעַן יָבִיא נָקָם עַל רִאשְׁכֶם?
- 41 Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.
- הִנֵּה חֶרֶב הַנָּקָם תִּלְוֶה מֵעַלְיֶיכֶם וְקָרוּבָה עֵת בּוֹא יְהוָה לְקַחַת מִכֶּם אֶת נִקְמַת דָּם הַקְדּוֹשִׁים, כִּי הוּא לֹא יִתֵּיר עוֹד אֶת זַעֲקוֹתֵיהֶם.

ט

9

- 1 And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.
ועתה אף אדבר על אלה אשר אינם מאמינים במשיח.
- 2 Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?
התאמינו ביום פקדונכם? הנה, ביום אשר בו יבוא יהוה, אכן ביום הגדול ההוא, בהגלל הארץ כמגלה ובהנתן היסודות בהם לוהט, אכן, ביום הגדול ההוא כאשר תבואו לעמד לפני שם אלהים, התאמרו אז כי אין אלהים?
- 3 Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?
התוסיפו אז לנכח במשיח, או, התוכלו להביט אל שם אלהים? התשארו כי תשכנו עמו בעוד מקננת בכם הכרת אשמתכם? התשארו כי תוכלו לשכן עם אותה היות קדש, בעוד נפשכם שסועה בהכרת אשם כי מעולם הפרתם את חקיו?
- 4 Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.
הנני אומר לכם, כי הייתם אמללים יותר בשכונכם עם אל קדוש וישר, ומצפונכם כבד על טמאתכם, מאשר בשכונכם עם הנפשות המקללות אשר בשאול.
- 5 For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.
כי כאשר תובאו ותראו את מערמיכם לפני אלהים ותפארתו, ואת קדשת ישוע המשיח, תצת עליכם שלהבת אש בל תכבה.
- 6 O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.
הוי, חסרי אמונה, פנו נא אל יהוה, צעקו צעקה אל האב בשם ישוע; אולי תמצאו ביום הגדול והאחרון ההוא זכים וטהורים ובהירים וצחורים, ואתם חטאתם בדם השם.
- 7 And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;
ועוד אני מדבר אליכם, המכחשים בחזיונות אלהים, האומרים כי תמו, כי אין עוד חזיונות, ואף לא נבואות, ולא מתת שמים, ורפוי, ודבור בלשונות ובאור משמיעה.
- 8 Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.
הנני אומר לכם, כי המכחש בדברים האלה, אינו יודע את בשורת המשיח; אכן, הוא לא קרא את כתבי הקדש; ואם כן, אין הוא מבינם.
- 9 For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?
האין אנחנו קוראים כי אלהים אחד הוא אתמול, היום ולעולם, ואין בו כל השתנות ואף לא תמורה כלשהי?

- ועתה, אם דמיתם בנפשכם אל משתנה, אשר יש בו תמורה כלשהי, הנה דמיתם בנפשכם אל אשר איננו אלהי פלאות.
- 10 And now if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not God of miracles.
- והנה, אני אראה לכם אלהי פלאות, את אלהי אברהם ואלהי יצחק ואלהי יעקב; והוא אותו האל אשר ברא את השמים ואת הארץ ואת כל אשר בו.
- 11 But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.
- והנה, הוא ברא את אדם, ועל ידי אדם באה נפילת בני האדם. ומפני נפילת בני האדם בא ישוע המשיח, הוא אב ובן, ומפני ישוע המשיח באה גאלת האדם.
- 12 Behold he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.
- ומפני גאלת בני האדם, אשר באה על ידי ישוע המשיח, מושבים הם לפני יהוה; אכן, באפן הזה נגאלים כל בני האדם, כי מות המשיח מביא את תחית המתים, המביאה גאלה משנת עולם, אשר ממנה יעורו כל בני האדם על ידי כח אלהים בהשמע תרועת השופר. אזי הם יבואו, קטנים וגדולים, ויעמדו כלם לפני כס משפטו, גאולים ומשחררים ממוסרות המות הנצחיות, מות אשר הוא מות הגוף.
- 13 And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.
- ואזי יבוא עליהם משפט האל הקדוש; אזי תבוא העת אשר הטמא ישאר בטמאותו, והצדיק ישאר בצדקתו; המאשר ישאר באשרו, והאמלל ישאר באמללותו.
- 14 And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.
- ועתה אשאלכם, אתם אשר דמיתם בנפשכם אלהים אשר אינו יכול לעשות נסים, האם חלפו כל הדברים האלה אשר דברתי עליהם? האם הגיע כבר הקץ? הנני אומר לכם: לא! ולא חדל אלהים להיות אלהי פלאות.
- 15 And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.
- הנה, האין מעשי אלהים נפלאים בעינינו? אכן, ומי יכול להבין את מעשי אלהים הנפלאים?
- 16 Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?
- מי יאמר כי לא היה זה נס, היות שמים וארץ בדברו? הן בכח דברו נוצר האדם מעפר הארץ, ובכח דברו נעשו נסים.
- 17 Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?
- ומי יאמר כי ישוע המשיח לא עשה נסים גדולים? הן נסים גדולים רבים נעשו בידי השליחים.
- 18 And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

- 19 ואם בעת ההיא נעשו נסים, מדוע יחדל אלהים מהיות אלהי פלאות, ועדין הוא הויה בלתי משתנה? הנני אומר לכם: אין הוא משתנה; שאם לא כן, יחדל מהיותו אלהים; אך אין הוא חדל מהיות אלהים, ואכן אלהי פלאות הוא.
- 20 והנה, חדל הוא מעשות נסים בקרב בני האדם מפני שקיעתם בחסר אמונה, כי הם סרו מדרך הישר ואינם יודעים את האלהים אשר בו עליהם לשים את מבטחם.
- 21 הנני אומר לכם כי המאמין במשיח ואינו מטיל ספק, כל אשר יבקש מאת האב בשם המשיח ינתן לו. ודבר הברית הזה נתון לכל, אף לקצות הארץ.
- 22 כי כה אמר ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אל תלמדיו אשר נשארו לשמות בעולם הזה, אכן, אף לכל תלמידיו, באזני המון העם: צאו נא אל כל העולם והשיפו את הבשורה לכל בריה.
- 23 והמאמין אשר נטבל וישע, אך זה אשר לא יאמין, ארור יהיה.
- 24 ואלה האותות אשר ילוו את המאמינים: בשמי יגרשו שדים; הם ידברו בלשונות חדשות; הם ירימו נחשים; ואם ישתו כל רעל, לא יאנה להם כל רע; הם יסמכו ידיהם על חולים ואלה ירפאו.
- 25 וכל אשר יאמין בשמי, ולא יטיל ספק, לו אאשר את כל דברי, אף עד קצות הארץ.
- 26 הנה, מי יעמד נגד פעלת יהוה? מי יכחש בדבריו? מי יקום על כח יהוה העליון? מי יבזה את מעשי יהוה? מי יבזה את בני המשיח? ראו, כל המבזים את מעשי יהוה, כי אכן תתמהו ותאבדו.
- 27 לא תבזו אפוא, ולא תתמהו, כי אם הקשיבו לדברי יהוה, ובקשו את האב בשם ישוע על כל הנחוצ לכם. אכן, אל תפקדו, כי אם היו מאמינים ועשו כבימי קדם, ובואו אל יהוה בכל לבבכם, והכינו את ישועתכם ביראה וברעדה מלפניו.
- 19 And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.
- 20 And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.
- 21 Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.
- 22 For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;
- 23 And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;
- 24 And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;
- 25 And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.
- 26 And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.
- 27 O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

- 28 Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.
- הָיוּ חֲכָמִים בְּיָמֵי מִבְחָנְכֶם; הִשְׁהָרוּ מִכָּל טְמֵאָה; אַל תִּבְקְשׁוּ דָבָר לְסִפּוֹק תַּאֲוֹתֵיכֶם, כִּי אִם בִּקְשׁוּ בְתִקְיֹת לֵב כִּי לֹא תִפְנְעוּ לְכָל פְּתוּי, וְכִי תַעֲבֹדוּ אֶת אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמֶת, אֵל חַי.
- 29 See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.
- הִשְׁמָרוּ לָכֶם לִבֵּל תִּטְבְּלוּ וְאִינְכֶם רְאוּיִים לָכֶף; הִשְׁמָרוּ לָכֶם לִבֵּל תִּטְעַמְמוּ מִסַּעֲדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ אֲשֶׁר לְמִשְׁיַח וְאִינְכֶם רְאוּיִים לָכֶף; אַךְ הִשְׁגִּיחוּ כִּי תַעֲשׂוּ הַכֹּל בְּהַיּוֹתְכֶם רְאוּיִים, וְעֵשׂוּ כֵן בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ, בֶּן אֱלֹהִים חַיִּים. וְאִם תַּעֲשׂוּ זֹאת, וְתִתְמִידוּ עַד הַקֵּץ, הִשְׁלֹף לֹא תִשְׁלָכוּ.
- 30 Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.
- הִנְנִי מְדַבֵּר אֲלֵיכֶם כְּאִלּוּ דִּבַּרְתִּי מִן הַמֵּתִים, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי יִהְיוּ לָכֶם דְּבָרַי.
- 31 Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.
- אַל תְּדוֹנוּ אוֹתִי לְכֹף חֻבָּה עַל פְּגָמִי, וְאֶף לֹא אֶת אָבִי עַל פְּגָמִיו, וְאֶף לֹא אֶת אֱלֹהֵי אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבוּ לִפְנָי; כִּי אִם הוֹדוּ לֵאלֹהִים עַל אֲשֶׁר הִרְאָה לָכֶם אֶת פְּגָמֵינוּ, בְּעִבּוֹר תִּלְמִדּוֹ וְתַחֲכִימוּ מִמֶּנּוּ.
- 32 And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.
- הִנֵּה, רָשַׁמְנוּ אֶת כְּתָב הַזִּכְרוֹן הַזֶּה כְּפִי יְדִיעַתְנוּ, בְּסִמְנִים הַנִּקְרָאִים בְּפִינוּ בְּשֵׁם מִצְרַיִת מְתַקְנֶת אֲשֶׁר נִמְסְרוּ מִדּוֹר לְדּוֹר, וְאֲשֶׁר שִׁנְנוּ אוֹתָם עַל פִּי אִפֹּן דְּבוּרָנוּ.
- 33 And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.
- וְאִלּוּ הָיוּ לוחֹתֵינוּ גְדוֹלִים דִּים, הָיִינוּ כּוֹתְבִים בְּעִבְרִית; אַךְ אֵף אֶת הָעִבְרִית שִׁנְיָנוּ; וְלוֹ יִכְלָנוּ לְכַתֵּב בְּעִבְרִית, לֹא הָיוּ נִמְצָאִים פְּגָמִים בְּכַתֵּב הַזִּכְרוֹן אֲשֶׁר לָנוּ.
- 34 But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.
- וְאוֹלָם יְהוָה יוֹדֵעַ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר כָּתְבָנוּ, וְאֵף כִּי אֵין עִם אַחֵר הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת שְׁפָתֵנוּ; וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר אֵין עִם אַחֵר הַיּוֹדֵעַ אֶת שְׁפָתֵנוּ, הֵכִין יְהוָה אֲמָצָעִים לְבִאָרָם.
- 35 And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.
- וְהַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה כְּתוּבִים בְּעִבּוֹר נָסִיר מִבְּגָדֵינוּ אֶת דָּם אַחֵינוּ, אֲשֶׁר שָׁקְעוּ בַּחֲסָר אֱמוּנָה.
- 36 And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.
- וְהִנֵּה, הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר חָפְצָנוּ כִּי יָבוֹאוּ עַל אַחֵינוּ, אַכֵּן, כִּי יִשׁוּבוּ אֶל יְדִיעַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ, הֵם כְּפִי תַפְלוֹת כָּל הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שָׁכְנוּ בָאָרֶץ.
- 37 And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember
- מִי יִתֵּן וְהָאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ יִסַּב בַּחֲסִדּוֹ כִּי תַעֲנֶינָה תַפְלוֹתֵיהֶם כְּפִי אֱמוּנָתָם; וּמִי יִתֵּן

אתר א:א-ח

וַיִּזְכֹּר אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת עִם
בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וַיְבָרְכֵם לְעוֹלָם, עַל יְדֵי הָאֱמוּנָה
בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ. אָמֵן.

the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he
bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

ספר אתר

THE BOOK OF ETHER

מורוני בן מורמון מקצר את ספר זכרון הירדים
אשר באו מהמגדל הגדול, כאשר כלכל אלהים
את לשונות בני האדם. נלקח מעשרים וארבעה
הלוחות אשר מצאום אנשי למחי בימי המלך
מושיע.

*Moroni, the son of Mormon, abridges the record of the Jaredites, who
came forth from the great tower when God confused the languages of the
people. Taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi
in the days of King Mosiah.*

א

1

ועתה, אני, מורוני, אוסיף לרשם את ספור
המעשה אשר לתושבים הקדומים, אשר
השמדו ביד יהוה מעל פני ארץ הצפון הזאת.

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient
inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face
of this north country.

ואני לוקח את ספורי, מתוך עשרים וארבעה
הלוחות הנקראים ספר אתר, אשר מצאום
אנשי למחי.

2 And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were
found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

ויען אשר סבור אני כי החלק הראשון מכתב
הזכרון הזה נמצא בקרב היהודים, והוא על
אודות בריאת העולם ועל אדם, ועל הקורות
מן העת ההיא ועד ימי המגדל הרם, וכן על
כל קורות בני האדם עד העת ההיא;

3 And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks
concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an
account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things
transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among
the Jews—

לכן לא אכתב את הדברים אשר היו מימי
אדם עד העת ההיא; ואולם הם רשומים על
גבי הלוחות; ואשר ימצאם, יהיה לאל ידו
להשיג את הספור במלאו.

4 Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days
of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso
findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

ואני לא אכתב את מלא הדברים כי אם את
חלקם, מימי המגדל ועד יום השמדתם.

5 But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give,
from the tower down until they were destroyed.

ובאופן הזה אכתב את ספור המעשה.
רושם כתב הזכרון הזה היה אתר, והוא
היה צאצא לקוריאנטור.

6 And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was
Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

קוריאנטור היה בן מורון.

7 Coriantor was the son of Moron.

ומורון היה בן עתם.

8 And Moron was the son of Ethem.

- 9 And Ethem was the son of Ahah.
וְעֶתֶם הָיָה בֶּן אָחָא.
- 10 And Ahah was the son of Seth.
וְאָחָא הָיָה בֶּן שֵׁת.
- 11 And Seth was the son of Shiblon.
וְשֵׁת הָיָה בֶּן שִׁבְלוֹן.
- 12 And Shiblon was the son of Com.
וְשִׁבְלוֹן הָיָה בֶּן קוֹם.
- 13 And Com was the son of Coriantum.
וְקוֹם הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרִיאַנְטוּם.
- 14 And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.
וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּם הָיָה בֶּן אֲמִיגַדָּא.
- 15 And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.
וְאֲמִיגַדָּא הָיָה בֶּן אֶהְרֹן.
- 16 And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.
וְאֶהְרֹן הָיָה צֶאֱצָא חֵת, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בֶּן הִיאֲרָטוּם.
- 17 And Hearthom was the son of Lib.
וְהִיאֲרָטוּם הָיָה בֶּן לִיב.
- 18 And Lib was the son of Kish.
וְלִיב הָיָה בֶּן קִישׁ.
- 19 And Kish was the son of Corom.
וְקִישׁ הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרָאוּם.
- 20 And Corom was the son of Levi.
וְקוֹרָאוּם הָיָה בֶּן לֵוִי.
- 21 And Levi was the son of Kim.
וְלֵוִי הָיָה בֶּן קִים.
- 22 And Kim was the son of Morianton.
וְקִים הָיָה בֶּן מוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן.
- 23 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.
וּמוֹרִיאַנְטוֹן הָיָה צֶאֱצָא רִיפְלָכִישׁ.
- 24 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.
וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ הָיָה בֶּן שֵׁז.
- 25 And Shez was the son of Heth.
וְשֵׁז הָיָה בֶּן חֵת.
- 26 And Heth was the son of Com.
וְחֵת הָיָה בֶּן קוֹם.
- 27 And Com was the son of Coriantum.
וְקוֹם הָיָה בֶּן קוֹרִיאַנְטוּם.
- 28 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.
וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּם הָיָה בֶּן עֶמֶר.
- 29 And Emer was the son of Omer.
וְעֶמֶר הָיָה בֶּן עֹמֶר.
- 30 And Omer was the son of Shule.
וְעֹמֶר הָיָה בֶּן שׁוּל.
- 31 And Shule was the son of Kib.
וְשׁוּל הָיָה בֶּן קִיב.
- 32 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;
וְקִיב הָיָה בֶּן אוֹרִיחָה, אֲשֶׁר הָיָה בֶּן יָרֵד.

- וַיֵּרֶד יָצָא עִם אָחִיו וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְעִם אֲנָשִׁים נְסֻפִּים וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, מִן הַמִּגְדָּל הַזֶּה, בְּעַת אֲשֶׁר בָּלַל יְהוָה אֶת שְׂפַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְנִשְׁבַּע בְּחֻמָּתוֹ כִּי יִפּוּצוּ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וַכְּפִי דְבַר יְהוָה, נִפּוּצוּ בְנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 33 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.
- וְאָחִי יֶרֶד הָיָה אִישׁ בָּעַל מַדּוֹת וְגִבּוֹר חֵיל, וַיְהוּה נָטָה לוֹ חֶסֶד רַב. וְאָמַר אֵלָיו אָחִיו יֶרֶד: קְרָא אֶל יְהוָה לְבַל יִבְלָלֵנוּ, וְלֹא נִבְיִן אֶת דְּבָרֵינוּ.
- 34 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.
- וְאָחִי יֶרֶד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה, וְרַחֲמֵי יְהוָה נִכְמְרוּ עָלָיו; עַל כֵּן הוּא לֹא בִלְבַל אֶת שְׂפַת יֶרֶד, וַיֵּרֶד וְאָחִיו לֹא בִלְבָלוּ.
- 35 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.
- וַיֵּרֶד אָמַר אֶל אָחִיו: קְרָא אֶל יְהוָה שְׁנִית, אוֹלִי יִסִּיר הוּא אֶת חֻמָּתוֹ מִרְעִינוּ וְלֹא יִבְלָל אֶת שְׂפָתָם.
- 36 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.
- וְאָחִי יֶרֶד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה, וְרַחֲמֵי יְהוָה נִכְמְרוּ עַל רְעֵיהֶם וְאָף עַל מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְהֵם לֹא בִלְבָלוּ.
- 37 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.
- וַיֵּרֶד הוֹסִיף לְדַבֵּר אֶל אָחִיו לֵאמֹר: לֵךְ וּדְרֵשׁ מִיְהוָה לְדַעַת אִם יִגְרֹשֵׁנוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, וְהִיא אִם יִגְרֹשֵׁנוּ מִן הָאָרֶץ, קְרָא אֵלָיו אָנָּה נֵלֵךְ. מִי יוֹדֵעַ, אוֹלִי יִשְׁאֲנֵנוּ יְהוָה אֶל אָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל אֲרָצוֹת תִּבְלָל? וְאִם כֹּה יִהְיֶה, הֲבֵיאָה נִהְיֶה נְאֻמָּנִים לִיהוָה; בַּעֲבוּר נִקְבְּלָנָה לְנַחֲלָה לָנוּ.
- 38 And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.
- וְאָחִי יֶרֶד קָרָא אֶל יְהוָה וַדְּבַר כְּדִבְרֵים אֲשֶׁר נֹאמְרוּ מִפִּי יֶרֶד.
- 39 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.
- וַיְהוּה שָׁמַע אֶת אָחִי יֶרֶד, וְרַחֲמָיו נִכְמְרוּ עָלָיו, וְהוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו:
- 40 And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:
- לֵךְ וְאַסְפַּת אֶת עֲדָרֶיךָ, זָכָר וּנְקֵבָה, מִכָּל מִין, וְלִקְחָתָהּ מִזֶּרַע הָאָרֶץ, מִכָּל מִין, וְאֶת בְּנֵי מִשְׁפַּחְתָּךְ, וְאֶת יֶרֶד אָחִיךָ וְאֶת מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וְכֹן אֶת רְעִידָךְ וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְאֶת רְעֵי יֶרֶד וּמִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 41 Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy family; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.
- וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוֹתָךְ זֹאת, תֵּרֶד בְּרֹאשׁ אֶל הָעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר מִצְפּוֹן. שָׁם אֶפְגְּשֶׁךָ, וְהִלַּכְתִּי לְפָנֶיךָ אֶל אָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל אֲרָצוֹת תִּבְלָל.
- 42 And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

אתר א:מג-ב:ח

- וְשֵׁם אַבְרָהָם אוֹתָרָה וְאֵת זֶרַעַה; וּמִזֶּרְעָהּ וּמִזֶּרַע
אֶחָיד וּמִזֶּרַע הַהוֹלְכִים עִמָּהּ אֲגַדֵּל לִי אֲמָה
גְּדוֹלָה. וְלֹא תִהְיֶה עַל פָּנָי כָּל תִּבְלֵ אֲמָה
גְּדוֹלָה מִן הָאֲמָה אֲשֶׁר אֲגַדֵּל לִי מִזֶּרְעֲכֶם. וְכֹה
אֶעֱשֶׂה לָּךְ עַל כִּי עַתָּה אָרְכָה זֹאת קִרְאתִנִּי.
- 43 And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

ב

2

- וַיֵּרֶד וְאָחִיו יִרְדּוּ עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, וְכֵן רַעֲי
יִרְדּוּ וְאָחִיו עִם מִשְׁפְּחוֹתֵיהֶם, אֶל הָעֵמֶק אֲשֶׁר
מִצְפּוֹן; וְשֵׁם הָעֵמֶק נִמְרֹד, כְּשֵׁם הַצִּיד הַגָּבוֹר.
וְהֵם יִרְדּוּ שָׁמָּה עִם עֲדֵרֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁר אָסְפוּ, זָכָר
וְנִקְבָּה מִכָּל מִין.
- 1 And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.
- וְהֵם הִטְמִינוּ פָּחִים וַצְדוּ מַעוֹף הַשָּׁמַיִם; וְהֵם
בָּנוּ סִינָה וְנָשְׂאוּ בָּהּ אֶת דְּגֵי הַנְּהָרוֹת.
- 2 And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.
- וְהֵם אָף נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם דְּסֶרֶת, אֲשֶׁר פֶּשֶׁר
דְּבוֹרַת דְּבֶשֶׁ. וְכֹה הֵם נָשְׂאוּ עִמָּם נְחִילֵי
דְּבוֹרִים, וְכָל סוּג דְּבַר אֲשֶׁר עַל פָּנֵי הָאָרֶץ,
זֶרְעִים מִכָּל מִין.
- 3 And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.
- וְהָיָה בְּבוֹאֵם אֶל עֵמֶק נִמְרֹד, יִרְדּוּ יוֹהוּ וְדָבָר
אֶל אָחִי יִרְדּוּ. וְהוּא בָּא בְּעָנָן וְלֹא נִרְאָה לְעֵינֵי
אָחִי יִרְדּוּ.
- 4 And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.
- וַיְהִי צֶמֶס לְלֶכֶת אֶל הַיַּעַר; אָכֵן, אֶל הָאֲזוּר
אֲשֶׁר אִישׁ לֹא הָיָה בּוֹ מַעוֹלָם. וַיְהִי הַלֵּךְ
לְפָנֵיהֶם; וְהוּא דִּבֶּר אֲלֵיהֶם, וְהוּא עוֹמֵד בְּתוֹךְ
הָעָנָן וּמוֹרָה אֶת דְּרֹךְ מַסָּעָם.
- 5 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.
- וְהֵם נָסְעוּ בַּיַּעַר וּבְנוּ אֲרָבוֹת; וְהֵם עָבְרוּ
בָּהֶן בְּתוֹךְ מַיִם רַבִּים, וַיֵּד יוֹהוּ מוֹלִיכָה
אוֹתָם כָּל הָעֵת.
- 6 And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.
- וַיְהִי לֹא הִתִּיר כִּי יִשְׁאָרוּ בַּיַּעַר אֲשֶׁר מַעְבָּר
לָיִם כִּי אִם חִפְץ אֲשֶׁר יִמְשִׁיכוּ בְּמַסָּעָם, וַיְבֹאוּ
אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל
הָאֲרָצוֹת, אֲשֶׁר שָׁמָּה יוֹהוּ אֱלֹהִים לָעַם צִדִּיק.
- 7 And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.
- וְהוּא נִשְׁבַּע בְּחַמְתּוֹ לְאָחִי יִרְדּוּ כִּי כָּל הַנוֹחַל
אֶת הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה הַזֹּאת, מִן הָעֵת הַהִיא וְעַד
עוֹלָם, עָבוֹד יַעֲבֹדֶהוּ, אֶת אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱמָת הַיְחִיד;
וְלֹא, הַסְחָף יִסְחָפוּ בְּבוֹא מְלֹא חַמְתּוֹ.
- 8 And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

ועתה, רואים אנחנו את גזרת אלהים על הארץ הזאת, כי ארץ ועודה היא; וכל אמה אשר תנחל אותה תעבד את אלהים; ולא, יסחפו בבווא עליהם מלא חמתו. וחמת זעמו כתמה תבווא עליהם כאשר תמלא סאת עונם.

אכן, זאת ארץ מבחר מכל הארצות; על כן, הנוחל אותה יעבד את אלהים; ולא, יסחף יסחף; כי גזרת עולם היא מאת אלהים. ולא יסחפו, כי אם כאשר תמלא סאת העון בקרב בני הארץ.

וזאת בא אליכם, הגויים, למען תדעו את גזרות אלהים, בעבור תנחמו מרע, ולכל תוסיפו לעונות עד אשר תמלא הסאה, בעבור לא תעירו את מלא חמת אלהים עליכם, כאשר עשו יושבי הארץ לפניכם.

הנה, ארץ מבחר היא, וכל אמה אשר תנחלה חפשיית תהיה משעבוד ומשבי ומכל שאר האמות אשר תחת השמים, אם אף יעבדו את אלהי הארץ, אשר הוא ישוע המשיח, אשר התגלה בדברים אשר כתבנום.

ועתה אשוב אל כתב זכרונותי. ויהוה הביא את ירד ואת עמיתיו אל הים הגדול המפריד בין היבשות. והיה בבוואם אל הים, הם נטו את אהליהם; והם קראו את שם המקום מוריאנקומר; והם שכנו באהלים על חוף הים במשך ארבע שנים.

והיה כולם ארבע שנים בא יהוה שנית אל אחי ירד; והוא עמד בענן ודבר עמו. ובמשך שלש שעות דבר יהוה עם אחי ירד והוכיחו על פי לא זכר לקרא בשם יהוה.

ואחי ירד נחם על רעתו אשר עשה וקרא בשם יהוה למען רעיו אשר עמו. ואמר אליו יהוה: סלחתי לך ולאחייך על חטאיכם; אף אל תוסף לחטא, כי זכור תזכרו כי לא ידון רוחי באדם לעולם; על כן, אם תחטאו עד המלא הסאה, הכרת תכרתו מלפני יהוה. אלה מחשבותי על הארץ אשר אתנד לנחלה, כי היא ארץ מבחר מכל הארצות.

9 And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

10 For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

11 And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

12 Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

13 And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14 And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

15 And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

- 16 And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.
- 17 And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.
- 18 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.
- 19 And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.
- 20 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.
- 21 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.
- 22 And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?
- 23 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.
- 24 For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.
- ואמר יהוה: לך ועבד, ובנית ארבות באפן אשר בנית עד עתה. ואחי ירד הלך ועבד, וכן עשו עמיתיו; והם בנו ארבות באפן אשר בנו לפני כן, כפי אשר הורם יהוה. והארבות היו קטנות והיו קלות על פני המים, כקלות עוף השט על פניהם.
- והוּ נבנו באפן אשר היו אטומות היטב, עד כי יכלו להכיל מים כקערה; ותחתיתן היתה אטומה כקערה; וצדן היה אטום כקערה; וקצותיו הסתימו בחד ותקרתן היתה אטומה כקערה; וארכן היה כארץ עץ; ובהסגר פתח הארבה, היתה דלתה צמודה כקערה.
- ואחי ירד קרא אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, עשיתי את אשר צויתני; ובנית את הארבות כפי אשר הוריתני.
- והנה, יהוה, אין בהן אור; לאן נכון מהלכנו? ואף נאבד, כי לא נוכל לנשם בהן, וזולת האויר אשר בתוכן; לכן נאבד.
- ואמר יהוה אל אחי ירד: הנה, תעשה לך חור בתקרה, ואף בתחתית; וכי יחסר לך אויר, וחלצת את מגופת החור ותקבל אויר. וכי יבואו המים עליך, והנה הנפת את החור, ולא אבדת בשטף.
- ואחי ירד עשה כן, כמצות יהוה.
- ואחי ירד הוסיף לקרא אל יהוה לאמר: יהוה, הנה עשיתי כאשר צויתני; והכינותי את הספינות בעבור אנשי, והנה אין בהן אור. התנננו יהוה, לעבר את הים הגדול הזה בחשכה?
- ואמר יהוה אל אחי ירד: מה תפצצם כי אעשה בעבור יהיה אור בספינותיכם? הן אין לעשות בהן חלונות, פן יתנפצו; ואש אל לכם לקחת עמכם, כי לא תסעו לאור אש.
- אכן, כליתן בתוך הים תהיו, כי גלים אדירים יתנפצו עליכם; אך אני אעלכם ממעמקי הים; כי הרוחות יצאו מפי, ואף את הגשם ואת מי השטפון אני שלחתי.

אתר ב:כה-ג:ו

והנני מכין אתכם לעמוד עליהם; כי לא תוכלו לעבר את תהום רבה הזאת בלתי אם אכניכם לעמוד על גלי הים ועל הרוחות אשר יצאו, ועל מי השטפון אשר יבואו. על כן, מה חפצכם כי אכין לכם, בעבור יהיה לכם אור, עת תבלעו במעמקי הים?

25 And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

ג

ושמונה היה מספר הספינות הבניות. והיה כי אחי ירד יצא אל ההר, אשר קראוהו הר שלם מפני גבהו הרב, והוא התמיד שש עשרה אבנים קטנות מתוך סלע; והאבנים היו לבנות ובהירות, שקופות כזכוכית; והוא נשאן בידיו אל פסגת ההר וקרא שנית אל יהוה לאמר:

יהוה, אמרת כי יקיפוננו מי השטפון; ועתה, יהוה, אל נא יחר אפך בעבדך על חלשותי לפניך; הן ידענו כי קדוש אתה, שוכן מרומים, וכי לא ראויים אנחנו לפניך; לאחר נפילת האדם הורע בהתמדה טבענו; ואולם אתה, יהוה, צויתנו לקרא אליך, בעבור נקבל ממך כפי חפצנו.

הנה, יהוה, הפיתנו על עווננו, וגרשתנו; וכל השנים הרבות האלה היינו ביערות; ואולם רחמתנו חננו יהוה והסיר מעמד מעמד זה, ואל נא תתנם לחלף באפלה דרך תהום סועה זאת; אף הבט אל הדברים האלה אשר התבתי מתוך הסלע.

ידעתי, יהוה, כי לך מלא הכח, וכי בידך לעשות למען האדם ככל אשר תחפץ. על כן, גע נא יהוה באצבעך באבנים האלה וכוונן להאיר בחשכה; והן יאירו לנו בספינות אשר הכינונו, בעבור יהיה לנו אור בעת עברנו בים.

הן אתה, יהוה, יכול לעשות זאת. ידענו כי בידך להראות כח רב, הנראה קטן להבנת בני אדם.

והיה כאשר אמר אחי ירד את הדברים האלה, והנה הושיט יהוה את ידו, ונגע באבנים באצבעו, אחת אחת. והלוט הוסר מעיני אחי ירד, והוא ראה את אצבע יהוה;

3

1 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

2 O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

3 Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

4 And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

5 Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the

אתר ג:ז-יז

- וְהִיתָה הָיָא כְּאַצְבַּע אָדָם, כְּבָשָׂר וָדָם. וְאַחִי יֵרֵד נָפֹל אֶרְצָה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה כִּי הִכְהוּ פָּחַד.
- וְהָיָה הָיָא כְּאַצְבַּע אָדָם, כְּבָשָׂר וָדָם. וְאַחִי יֵרֵד נָפֹל אֶרְצָה, אָמַר יְהוָה אֵלָיו: קוּם, מַדּוּעַ נָפַלְתָּ?
- וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל יְהוָה: רָאִיתִי אֶת אֶצְבַּע יְהוָה וְיִרְאָתִי פָּן יָכֵנִי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא יָדַעְתִּי כִּי לִיהוָה בָּשָׂר וָדָם.
- וְאַמַּר יְהוָה אֵלָיו: מִפְּנֵי אֲמוּנָתְךָ רָאִיתָ כִּי אֶלְבָּשׁ בָּשָׂר וָדָם; וּמַעוֹלָם לֹא בָּא לִפְנֵי אִישׁ בְּאֲמוּנָה כֹּה עֲזָה בְּאֲמוּנָתְךָ; לֹא־לֹא כֹן, לֹא יָכַלְתָּ לְרַאוֹת אֶת אֶצְבָּעִי. הֲתִרְאָה יוֹתֵר מִזֹּאת?
- וְהוּא עָנָה: לֹא; יְהוָה, הֲרָאֵנִי נָא אֶת מְרָאָךְ.
- וְאַמַּר יְהוָה אֵלָיו: הֲתֵאֱמִין בְּדִבְרִים אֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר?
- וְהוּא עָנָה: אָכֵן, יְהוָה, יוֹדַע אֲנִי כִּי אֱמֶת דִּבְרְךָ, כִּי אֱלֹהֵי אֱמֶת אַתָּה, וְלֹא תִשְׁקֶר.
- וְהָיָה כְּאַמְרוֹ אֶת הַדִּבְרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וְהִנֵּה הֲרָאָהוּ יְהוָה אֶת מְרָאָהוּ, וְאַמַּר: יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַעְתָּ אֶת הַדִּבְרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הִנֵּךְ גָּאוֹל מִנִּפְלִית הָאָדָם; עַל כֵּן תּוֹשֵׁב אֶל נֹכַח פָּנָי; עַל כֵּן הִתְגַּלִּיתִי אֵלָיְךָ.
- אֲנִכִּי הוּא אֲשֶׁר הוּכַן מִסּוּד הָעוֹלָם לְגַאֲלֵי אֶת עַמִּי. הִנֵּנִי יֹשֹׁעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ. אֲנִכִּי הָאֵב וְהַבֵּן. בִּי יִחְיֶה כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, עַד עוֹלָם, אָכֵן, לְאֲשֶׁר יֵאֱמִינוּ בְּשִׁמִּי; וְהֵם יִהְיוּ בְּנֵי וּבָנוֹתִי.
- וּמַעוֹלָם לֹא הֲרָאִיתִי אֶת מְרָאִי לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר בָּרָאתִי, כִּי מַעוֹלָם לֹא הֵאֱמִין בִּי אִישׁ כְּפִי אֲמוּנָתְךָ. הֲרֹאֶה אַתָּה כִּי נִבְרָאתָם כְּדַמוֹתַי? אָכֵן, כָּל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם נִבְרָאוּ בְּרִאשׁוֹנָה כְּדַמוֹתִי.
- הִנֵּה, הַגּוֹף הַזֶּה, אֲשֶׁר רוּאָה אַתָּה עַתָּה, גּוֹף רוּחִי הוּא; וְאֵת הָאָדָם בְּרָאתִי בְּדַמוֹת גּוֹף רוּחִי; וְכַפִּי אֲשֶׁר הוֹפַעְתִּי אֵלָיְךָ בְּרוּחַ, כֵּן אוֹפִיעַ אֶל עַמִּי בְּבָשָׂר.
- וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר אֲמַרְתִּי, לֹא יָכַלְתִּי לְסַפֵּר בְּמִלָּאָם אֶת הַדִּבְרִים אֲשֶׁר הֵם כְּתוּבִים; עַל כֵּן דִּי בְּאַמְרִי כִּי יֹשֹׁעַ הִתְגַּלָּה
- finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.
- And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?
- And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.
- And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?
- And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.
- And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?
- And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.
- And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.
- Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.
- And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.
- Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.
- And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and

אתר ג:יח-כו

- אֶל הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה בְּרוּחַ, בְּאִפֹּן וּבְדַמּוֹת אוֹתוֹ
הַגּוֹף אֲשֶׁר הָרָאָה עֲצָמוֹ אֶל הַנְּפִיִּים.
- 18 And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.
- וְהוּא שָׁמַשׁ לְפָנָיו כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַשׁ אֶת
הַנְּפִיִּים; וְכָל זֹאת בְּעֵבֹר יָדַע הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה
כִּי הוּא אֱלֹהִים, מִפְּנֵי הַמַּעֲשִׂים הַגְּדוֹלִים
וְהַרְבֵּים אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה הָרָאָהוּ.
- 19 And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.
- וּמִפְּנֵי הַיָּדִיעָה אֲשֶׁר לְאִישׁ הַזֶּה, לֹא נִתֵּן הָיָה
לְמַנְעוֹ מִהִבִּיט אֶל מַעֲבָר לָלוֹט; וְהוּא רָאָה אֶת
אֶצְבַּע יֵשׁוּעַ, וְכִרְאוֹתָיו אוֹתָהּ, הוּא נָפַל בְּאִימָה,
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי אֶצְבַּע יְהוָה הִיא; וְלֹא הָיְתָה
לוֹ עוֹד אֱמוּנָה, כִּי יָדוּעַ יָדַע, לֹלֵא כָּל סִפְק.
- 20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.
- עַל כֵּן, בְּהִיּוֹתוֹ בַּעַל יָדִיעַת אֱלֹהִים שְׁלֵמָה,
לֹא נִתֵּן הָיָה לְמַנְעוֹ מִהִבִּיט אֶל מַעֲבָר לָלוֹט;
לְכֵן הוּא רָאָה אֶת יֵשׁוּעַ, וְהוּא שָׁמַשׁ לְפָנָיו.
- 21 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.
- וְאָמַר יְהוָה אֶל אָחִי יָרֵד: לֹא תִתֵּן כִּי יֵצְאוּ
הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ וְשָׁמַעְתָּ אֶל הָעוֹלָם, עַד
בּוֹא הָעֵת אֲשֶׁר אֶפְאַר אֶת שְׁמִי בְּבָשָׂר. עַל כֵּן
אֶצְרָתָ אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר רָאִיתָ וְשָׁמַעְתָּ וְלֹא
תִרְאֶם לְאִישׁ.
- 22 And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.
- וְהִנֵּה, בְּבוֹאֲךָ אֵלַי תִּכְתְּבֵם וְתִחַתְּמֵם, לְכָל
יְבָאֲרָם אִישׁ, כִּי בְשָׂפָה אֲשֶׁר לֹא יִקְרָאוּ
תִּכְתְּבֵם.
- 23 And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.
- הִנֵּה, אֶת שְׁתֵּי הָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה אֶתֵּן לָךְ,
וְתִחַתְּמָתָ אֹף אוֹתָן עִם הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב.
- 24 For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.
- כִּי אֶת הַשָּׂפָה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב, בְּלִבְלָתִי; עַל כֵּן
אֶתֵּן, בְּעֵת אֲשֶׁר תִּישֶׁר בְּעֵינִי, כִּי יִגְדִּילוּ
הָאֲבָנִים הָאֵלֶּה לְעֵינֵי בְנֵי הָאָדָם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים
הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר תִּכְתֹּב.
- 25 And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.
- וְאַחֵר דִּבֶּר יְהוָה אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, הוּא
הָרָאָה לְאָחִי יָרֵד אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי תֵּבֶל אֲשֶׁר
הָיוּ, וְאֹף אֶת כָּל אֲשֶׁר יִהְיוּ. וְהוּא לֹא מָנְעוֹ
מִהִבִּיט בָּהֶם, אֹף עַד קְצוֹי אֶרֶץ.
- 26 For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.
- כִּי הוּא אָמַר אֵלָיו לְפָנִים כִּי אָכֵן, אִם יֵאֱמִין
כִּי יוּכַל הוּא לְהִרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, הָרָאָה
יָרְאוּ לוֹ. לְכֵן, לֹא הָיָה בְּיַד יְהוָה לְמַנֵּעַ מִמֶּנּוּ דְּבָר,
יַעַן אֲשֶׁר יָדַע כִּי יֻכֹּל יְהוָה לְהִרְאוֹתוֹ אֶת
כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.

אתר ג:כז-ד:ז

27 ואמר יהוה אלי: כתב את הדברים האלה וחתמם אותם; ואני אראם לבני האדם בעת אשר תישר בעיני.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

28 ויהיה צוה את אחי ירד לחתם את שתי האבנים אשר קבל ולא להראותן, עד אשר יראו יהוה לבני האדם.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

ד

4

ויהיה צוה את אחי ירד לרדת מן ההר, מלפני יהוה, ולכתב את הדברים אשר ראה; והם היו אסורים לבוא אל בני האדם כי אם אחר עלותו על הצלב. ועל כן שמרם המלך מושיע, בעבור לא יצאו אל הקהל כי אם אחר הראות המשיח עצמו לעמו.

1 And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

ואחר אשר התגלה ישוע אל עמו, הוא צוה כי יתגלו.

2 And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

ואחר כל זאת שקעו כלם בחסר אמונה; ואין איש זולת הלמנים, והם מאסו בבשורת המשיח; על כן מצוה אני כי יצפנו שנית באדמה.

3 And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

הנה, כתבתי על הלוחות האלה את עצם הדברים אשר ראה אחי ירד; ומעולם לא התגלו לעיני איש דברים גדולים מאלה אשר התגלו לאחי ירד.

4 Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

על כן צוני יהוה לכתבם, ואני כתבתי. והוא צוני לחתם אותם; והוא אף צוני לחתם את באורם; לכן חתמתי את כלי הבאור, כפי מצות יהוה.

5 Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

כי כה אמר יהוה אלי: לא יצאו הם אל הגוים עד היום אשר ישוּבו מעוונם ויטהרו לפני יהוה.

6 For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

וביום אשר יאמינו בי, נאום יהוה, כהאמין בי אחי ירד, בעבור יתקדשו בי, אזי אגלה להם את הדברים אשר ראה אחי ירד, ואף אפרש לפניהם את כל גלויי נאום ישוע המשיח, בן אלהים, אבי שמים וארץ וכל אשר בם.

7 And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 ואֲשֶׁר יֵצֵא עַל דְּבַר יְהוָה, אֲרוּר יִהְיֶה; וְאֲשֶׁר יִכְחַשׁ בַּדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אֲרוּר יִהְיֶה; כִּי לָהֶם לֹא אֶרְאֶה גְדוּלוֹת מַאֲלָה, נְאוּם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ; כִּי אֲנִי הוּא אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר.
- 9 לְפַקְדֹתַי נִפְתָּחִים הַשָּׁמַיִם, אִף נִסְגָּרִים; וּבְדִבְרֵי תִרְעֵד הָאָרֶץ וּבְמִצְוֹתַי יִחְלְפוּ מִמֶּנָּה יוֹשְׁבֶיהָ, כְּמֵאֲכַלֶּת אֵשׁ.
- 10 וְאֲשֶׁר אֵינָנו מֵאֲמִין לְדִבְרֵי, אֵינָנו מֵאֲמִין לְתַלְמִידִי. וְאִם לֹא אֲנִי הוּא הַמְּדַבֵּר, שְׁפֹטוּ אַתֶּם; כִּי יָדוּעַ תִּדְעוּ בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא כִּי, אֲכֹן, אֲנִי הַמְּדַבֵּר.
- 11 אִף הַמֵּאֲמִין לְדִבְרֵים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר דִּבַּרְתִּי, אוֹתוֹ אֶפְקֹד בְּגִלְיוֹי רוּחִי; וְהוּא יֵדַע וְיַעֲשֶׂה עַל כֵּן; כִּי מִפְּנֵי רוּחִי יֵדַע כִּי אִמֶּת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה; כִּי מְשַׁכְנֵעִים הֵם אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיטִיב עֲשׂוֹת.
- 12 וְכָל דְּבַר הַמְּשַׁכְנֵעַ אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם לְהִיטִיב, מִפְּנֵי הוּא; כִּי אֵין הַטוֹב בָּא כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי. אֲנֹכִי הוּא הַמּוֹלִיד אֶת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם אֶל כָּל הַטוֹב. וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֲמִין לְדִבְרֵי, לֹא יֵאֲמִין לִי כִּי אֲנִי הוּא; וְאֲשֶׁר לֹא יֵאֲמִין לִי, לֹא יֵאֲמִין לְאָב אֲשֶׁר שְׁלַחְנִי. כִּי הִנֵּה, אֲנֹכִי הָאָב, וְאֲנֹכִי אוֹר הָעוֹלָם וְחַיִּיו וְאַמְתָּתוֹ.
- 13 בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, הַגּוֹיִם, וְאֶרְאֶה לָכֶם אֶת הַגְּדוּלוֹת, אֲשֶׁר יָדִיעַתֶּן נִסְתָּרֹת מִפְּנֵי חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 14 בּוֹאוּ אֵלַי, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיִתְגַּלֶּה לְעֵינֵיכֶם, מֵה גְדוּלוֹת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר אֶצֶר הָאָב בְּעִבּוּרְכֶם, מִיִּסּוּד הָעוֹלָם; וְלֹא בָאוּ אֵלֵיכֶם מִפְּנֵי חֹסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 15 אֲכֹן, בְּקִרְעֵכֶם אֶת לוֹט חֹסֶר הָאֱמוּנָה הַהוּא, הַמַּסֵּב לָכֶם לְהִשָּׁאֵר בְּמַצֵּב הָרָשָׁע הַנּוֹרָא אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ אַתֶּם שְׂרוּיִים, וּבְקִשְׁי הַלֵּב וּבְעִוְרוֹן הַדַּעַת, אֲנִי הַנִּפְלְאוֹת הַגְּדוּלוֹת אֲשֶׁר הִסְתָּרוּ מִכֶּם מִיִּסּוּד הָעוֹלָם, אֲכֹן, בְּקִרְאֵכֶם אֶל הָאָב בְּשֵׁמִי, בְּלֵב נִשְׁבָּר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אֲנִי תִדְעוּ כִּי זֹכֵר הָאָב אֶת הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַת לְאֲבוֹתֵיכֶם, בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 16 וְאֲנִי יִפְרְשׂוּ לְעֵינַי כָּל הָעָם דְּבָרֵי גִלְיוֹי אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי כִּי יִכְתְּבוּ בְּיַד עַבְדִּי יוֹחָנָן; וְזָכוּ כִּי
- 8 And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.
- 9 And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.
- 10 And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.
- 11 But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.
- 12 And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.
- 13 Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.
- 14 Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.
- 15 Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.
- 16 And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember,

אתר ד:יז-ה:ו

בראותכם את הדברים האלה, ידוע תדעו כי
קרבה עת הופעתם והוצאתם במעשה.

when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that
they shall be made manifest in very deed.

על כן, בקבלכם את כתב הזכרון הזה, תדעו
כי החלה פעלת האב על כל פני הארץ.

17 Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work
of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

על כן, שובו כל אפסי ארץ ובואו אלי,
והאמינו בבשרתי, והטבלו בשמי; כי המאמין
והמטבל, יושע; ואשר איננו מאמין, ארו
יהיה; ואותות ילוו את המאמינים בשמי.

18 Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe
in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is
baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and
signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

ברוך האיש אשר ימצא שומר אמונים בשמי
ביום האחרון, כי הוא ינשא לשכן במלכות
המוקנה לו מיסוד העולם. הנה, אני הוא
המדבר זאת. אמן.

19 And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for
he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the
foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

ה

5

והנה, אני, מורוני, כתבתי את הדברים אשר
צויתי עליהם, כפי זכרוני; ואף ספרתי לכם
את הדברים אשר חתמתי. על כן, לא תגעו
בהם לתרגום, כי אסור הדבר לכם לעשותו,
כי אם בבוא שעתם כפי חכמת אלהים.

1 And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded
me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I
have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate;
for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in
God.

והנה, אכן תזכו להראות את הלוחות לאלה
אשר יעזרו להוציא לאור את העבודה הזאת.

2 And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto
those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

לעיני שלשה הם יראו בכח אלהים; לכן ידוע
ידעו המה כי הדברים האלה אמת הם.

3 And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore
they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

ובפי שלשת העדים יכוננו הדברים האלה;
ועדות שלשה והעבודה הזאת, אשר בה
יראה כח אלהים וכן דברו, אשר עליו
מעידים האב והבן ורוח הקדש, כל אלה
יעמדו כעדות על בני תבל ביום האחרון.

4 And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established;
and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown
forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and
the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a
testimony against the world at the last day.

ואם אכן ינחמו על חטאייהם ויבואו אל האב
בשם ישוע, יתקבלו הם אל מלכות אלהים.

5 And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name
of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

ועתה, אם אין לי כח סמכות בדברים האלה,
שפטו אתם; כי ידוע תדעו כי לי כח הסמכות
בראותכם אותי בעמדנו לפני אלהים ביום
האחרון. אמן.

6 And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall
know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand
before God at the last day. Amen.

1

ועתה, אני, מורוני, מוסיף לרשם את כתבי הזכרונות אשר לירד ולאחיו.

והיה אחר אשר הכין יהוה את האבנים אשר נשא אחי ירד אל ההר, ירד אחי ירד מן ההר, ושם את האבנים בתוך הספינות, אשר הוכנו, אחת בקצה כל ספינה. והנה הן האירו לספינות.

וכה הסב יהוה לאבנים כי תזהרנה באפלה; להאיר לגברים ולנשים ולילדים, לבל יעברו את המים הרבים בחשכה.

והיה אחר הכינם כל מיני מזון, בעבור מחיתם על פני המים, וכן מזון בעבור צאנם ובקרים וכל בהמה וחיה ועוף, אשר נשא עמם; אכן, אחר עשותם כל זאת, הם עלו על ספינותיהם, או ארבותיהם, ויצאו אל הים, מפקידים עצמם בידי יהוה אלהיהם.

ויהוה אלהים השיב רוח עזה על פני המים ופניה אל עבר הארץ היעודה; וכה הם הטלטלו מפני הרוח על פני גלי הים.

פעמים רבות הם נקברו במעמקי הים, מפני הגלים האדירים אשר נשברו עליהם, ומפני הסופות הגדולות והנוראות אשר חוללה הרוח העזה.

ובעת אשר כסום התהומות, לא פגעו בהם המים, כי היו ספינותיהם אטומות כקערה ואטומות כתבת נח; על כן בעטף אותם מים רבים הם קראו אל יהוה והוא שב והעלים על פני המים.

והרוח לא חדלה לנשב אל עבר הארץ היעודה בעודם על פני המים; וכה הם נדפו מפני הרוח.

והם זמרו תהלות ליהוה; אכן, אחי ירד זמר תהלות ליהוה; כל היום הודה ליהוה והללו, ובבוא הלילה לא חדל פיהם לשבח את יהוה.

6

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

2 For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

3 And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

4 And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6 And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

7 And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

8 And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

אתר וי-כא

- 10 וְכֵן הָיוּ נִדְחָפוּ הַלְאָה, וְאֵף מִפְּלִצָּת יָם אַחַת לֹא יָכְלָה לְשֹׁבֵר אוֹתָם, אֵף לֹא פָּגַע בָּהֶם כָּל לַיְלָתוֹ; וְהָיָה לָהֶם אוֹר תָּמִיד, עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם, אוֹ תַּחְתִּיהֶם.
- 11 וְכֵן הָיוּ נִדְחָפוּ הַלְאָה עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם, שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְאַרְבָּעִים וְאַרְבָּעָה יוֹם.
- 12 וְהֵם הִגִּיעוּ אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה וְעָלוּ עַל חוּפָּהּ. וְהָיָה בְּהִצִּיגָם אֶת כָּף רַגְלָם עַל חוּפֵי הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה, הֵם הִשְׁתַּחֲווּ אֶרְצָה וְנִכְנְעוּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְשָׁפְכוּ דְמְעוֹת גִּיל לִפְנֵי יְהוָה עַל הַמְּוֹן רַחֲמָיו הַרְכִּים עֲלֵיהֶם.
- 13 וְהֵם הִלְכוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהִחֲלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת הָאֲדָמָה.
- 14 וְיָרֵד הָיָה אַרְבָּעָה בָּנִים; וְהֵם נִקְרְאוּ יָקוֹם, גִּילְגָּה, מָהָה וְאוֹרִיחָה.
- 15 וְאֵף אָחִי יָרֵד הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.
- 16 וּמִסְפַּר רֵעֵי יָרֵד וְאָחָיו כְּעֹשְׂרִים וּשְׁתֵּים נָפֶשׁ. וְאֵף הֵם הוֹלִידוּ בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת לִפְנֵי בּוֹאָם אֶל הָאָרֶץ הַיְעוּדָה. עַל כֵּן הִחֵל מִסְפָּרָם לִפְרֹץ.
- 17 וְהֵם לָמְדוּ לְהִצְנִיעַ לִכְתּ לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְהֵם אֵף לָמְדוּ מִמְּרוֹם.
- 18 וְהֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִתְפַּשֵּׁט עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְהֵם רַבּוּ וְעָבְדוּ אֶת הָאֲדָמָה; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ חֵיל בָּאָרֶץ.
- 19 וְאָחִי יָרֵד זָקֵן וְרָאָה כִּי קָרְבָּה שְׁעָתוֹ לָרֶדֶת אֵלֵי קֶבֶר. וְהוּא אָמַר אֶל יָרֵד: הִבֵּה נִקְבֵּץ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ לְמִנוּתָם, בְּעֵבֹר יוֹדִיעֵנוּ מִה חֲפָצָם מִמֶּנּוּ לִפְנֵי רִדְתָּנוּ אֵלֵי קֶבֶר.
- 20 וְכֵן נִקְבְּצוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים. וְהָיָה מִסְפַּר בְּנֵי אָחִי יָרֵד וּבָנוֹתָיו עֹשְׂרִים וּשְׁתֵּים נָפֶשׁ, וּמִסְפַּר בְּנֵי יָרֵד וּבָנוֹתָיו שְׁנַיִם עָשָׂר, וּבָהֶם אַרְבָּעָה בָּנִים.
- 21 וְהֵם מְנוּ אֶת אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם, וְאַחֵר עָשׂוּתָם כֵּן הֵם שָׁאֲלוּ מִה חֲפָצָם כִּי יַעֲשׂוּ לִפְנֵי רִדְתָּם אֵלֵי קֶבֶר.
- And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.
- And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.
- And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.
- And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.
- And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.
- And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.
- And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.
- And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.
- And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.
- And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.
- And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.
- And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

- 22 And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.
- 23 And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.
- 24 But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.
- 25 And it came to pass that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.
- 26 And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.
- 27 And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.
- 28 And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.
- 29 And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.
- 30 And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים בִּקְשׁוּם כִּי יִמְשְׁחוּ אֶת אֶחָד מִבְּנֵיהֶם לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְאִלֵּם, רַע הָיָה הַדָּבָר בְּעֵינֵיהֶם. וְאָמַר אֶלְיָהֶם אָחִי יָרֵד: הֵן יוֹלִיד הַדָּבָר לְשִׁעְבּוֹד.
- אָף יָרֵד אָמַר אֶל אָחִיו: הִנֵּחַ לָהֶם, וְהָיָה לָהֶם מֶלֶךְ. לָכֵן אָמַר אֶלְיָהֶם אָחִי יָרֵד: בַּחֲרוּ לָכֶם מֶלֶךְ מִבְּיֵן בְּנֵינוּ, אֶת אֲשֶׁר תִּרְצוּהוּ.
- וְהֵם בַּחֲרוּ אֶת בְּכוֹר בְּנֵי אָחִי יָרֵד; וּשְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא פָּגָג; וְאִלֵּם הוּא סָרַב וּמֵאֵן לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- וְהָאֲנָשִׁים בִּקְשׁוּ כִּי יִשְׁדְּלוּ אָבִיו בְּדָבָרִים, אָף לֹא אָבָה אָבִיו לַעֲשׂוֹת כֵּן; וְהוּא צִוָּם כִּי לֹא יִשְׁדְּלוּ אִישׁ לְהִיּוֹת מֶלֶכָם.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם בַּחֲרוּ בְּכָל אֶחָד מֵאֲחֵי פָּגָג, וְכָלֶם מֵאֵנוּ לְמֶלֶךְ עֲלֵיהֶם.
- אָף בְּנֵי יָרֵד מֵאֵנוּ לְמֶלֶךְ, וְזוֹלַת אֶחָד. וְאוֹרִיָּהָה נִמְשַׁח לְמֶלֶךְ עַל הָעָם.
- וְאוֹרִיָּהָה הֵחֵל לְמֶלֶךְ, וְהָאֲנָשִׁים רָאוּ בִּרְכָּה בְּעַמְלָם וְעָשְׂרוּ עַד מְאֹד.
- וְהָיָה כִּי מֵת יָרֵד וְאָף מֵת אָחִיו.
- וְאוֹרִיָּהָה הִצְנִיעַ לָכֶת לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, וְזָכַר מֵה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַן אָבִיו, וְאָף לְמַד אֶת עַמּוֹ מֵה גְדוֹלִים הָיוּ מַעֲשֵׂי יְהוָה לְמַעַן אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.

ז

7

- 1 And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.
- 2 And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.
- 3 And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.
- 4 And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons
- וְהָיָה כִּי אוֹרִיָּהָה שָׁפַט בְּאֶרֶץ מִשְׁפַּט צֶדֶק כָּל יָמָיו, וְהָיוּ יָמָיו רַבִּים מְאֹד.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; אֲכֹן, הוּא הוֹלִיד שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַחָד, וּבָהֶם עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה בָּנִים.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קִיב לְעֵת זְקוּנָיו. וְקִיב מֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו; וְקִיב הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרִיָּהוֹר.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִיּוֹת קוֹרִיָּהוֹר בֶּן שְׁלֹשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה, הוּא מָרַד בְּאָבִיו וְהָלַךְ וְגָר בְּאֶרֶץ נְחוֹר. וְהוּא

- הוליד בנים ובנות, והם היו יפי תאר עד מאד; על כן הטה אליו קוריהור אנשים רבים ללכת אחריו.
- והוא אסף צבא ועלה אל ארץ מורון, מקום מושב המלך, והוא לקחו בשבי וכה התקיים דבר אחי ירד כי הם יפלו בשבי.
- וְאַרְץ מוֹרוֹן, אֲשֶׁר בָּהּ יָשַׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ, הִיְתָה לִיד הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר שְׁמָהּ נִקְרָא חֲרָבָה בְּפִי הַנְּפִיִּים.
- וְקִיב שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי, וְעָמְדוּ יוֹשְׁבֵי תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹן בְּנוֹ קוֹרִיהוֹר, עַד אֲשֶׁר זָקַן מְאֹד; וְאוֹלָם קִיב הוֹלִיד אֶת שׁוּל בְּיָמָיו זְקֵנָתוֹ, בְּעוֹדוֹ בְּשָׁבִי.
- וְשׁוּל כָּעַם עַל אָחִיו; וְשׁוּל חֲזַק וְהָיָה אִישׁ חָזֵק אֲשֶׁר לוֹ כַּחַ גִּבּוֹר; וְכֹחוֹ רַב לוֹ אִף בְּשָׁפוּט.
- עַל כֵּן הוּא בָּא אֶל גִּבְעַת אֶפְרַיִם, וְהִתִּיד עֶפְרָה מִתּוֹכָהּ, וַעֲשֶׂה חֲרָבוֹת פְּלָדָה לְתַתָּן לְיָדֵי אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הָטָה אֵלָיו. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר חִמְשָׁם בְּחֲרָבוֹת, הוּא שָׁב אֶל הָעִיר נְחוֹר וְנָלַחַם בְּאַחִיו קוֹרִיהוֹר; כֹּה הוּא תָּפַשׂ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה וְהִשְׁיבָהּ לְאָבִיו, קִיב.
- וְעַל הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה שׁוּל, הֶעֱנִיק לוֹ אָבִיו אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. עַל כֵּן הוּא הִחֵל לְמָלֵךְ תַּחַת אָבִיו.
- וְהוּא שָׁפַט בְּצֶדֶק; וְהוּא פָּרַשׂ אֶת מַלְכוּתוֹ עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, כִּי רַב הָעָם וְעֶצֶם מְאֹד.
- וְאַף שׁוּל הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים.
- וְקוֹרִיהוֹר נָחַם עַל רָעָתוֹ אֲשֶׁר הִרְבָּה לַעֲשׂוֹת. עַל כֵּן נָתַן לוֹ שׁוּל שְׁרָרָה בְּמַמְלַכְתּוֹ.
- וְלְקוֹרִיהוֹר הָיוּ בָנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים, וְשֵׁם אֶחָד מִבְּנֵי קוֹרִיהוֹר נֹחַ.
- וְנֹחַ מָרַד בְּשׁוּל הַמֶּלֶךְ וּבְאַבְיוֹ קוֹרִיהוֹר, וְהָטָה אֵלָיו אֶת קוֹהוֹר אָחִיו, וְכֹן אֶת כָּל אָחָיו וְאֵף רַבִּים מֵהָעָם.
- and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.
- 5 And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.
- 6 Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.
- 7 And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.
- 8 And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.
- 9 Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.
- 10 And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.
- 11 And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.
- 12 And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.
- 13 And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.
- 14 And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.
- 15 And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

- 16 And he gave battle unto Shule the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.
- וְהוּא נָלַחַם בַּמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, וּכְבַשׁ אֶת אֶרֶץ
נַחֲלָתָם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהוּא מֶלֶךְ עַל חֶבֶל
הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא.
- 17 And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.
- וְהוּא יָצָא שְׁנִית לַמִּלְחָמָה בַּמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל.
וְהוּא תָּפַשׂ אֶת הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל וּלְקָחוּ בַשָּׁבִי
אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן.
- 18 And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.
- וְהָיָה בְּאַמְרוֹ לְהַמִּיתוֹ, הֵתְנַגְּבוּ בְּנֵי שׁוּל
בַּלַּיְלָה אֶל בֵּית נֹחַ וְהִמִּיתוּהוּ; וְהֵם שָׁבְרוּ אֶת
דֶּלֶת בֵּית הַכְּלָא וְהוֹצִיאוּ אֶת אָבִיהֶם
וְהוֹשִׁיבוּהוּ עַל כִּסֵּי מַלְכוּתוֹ בְּמַמְלַכְתּוֹ.
- 19 Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בֶן נֹחַ כּוֹנֵן אֶת הַמַּלְכוּת תַּחַת אָבִיו,
וְאוּלָם עֲמֹ לֹא גָבַר עוֹד עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, וְהָעָם
אֲשֶׁר תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹן הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל גָּדַל, וְהִצְלַחְתָּם
רַבְתָּה מְאֹד.
- 20 And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.
- וְהָאֶרֶץ הִיטָּה מְחֻלָּקֶת לְשְׁתֵּי מַמְלָכוֹת,
מִמְלַכְתּוֹ שׁוּל וּמִמְלַכְתּוֹ קוּהוֹר, בֶּן נֹחַ.
- 21 And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.
- וְקוּהוֹר, בֶּן נֹחַ, צִוָּה אֶת עַמּוֹ לְהִלָּחֵם בְּשׁוּל.
וְשׁוּל הִכָּם וְאֶת קוּהוֹר הָרַג.
- 22 And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.
- וּלְקוּהוֹר בֶּן הַנִּקְרָא בְּשֵׁם נִמְרֹד; וְנִמְרֹד עָזַב
אֶת מַמְלַכְתּוֹ קוּהוֹר וְעָבַר אֶל שׁוּל, וְהָיָה כִּי
הוּא מֵצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי שׁוּל, וְשׁוּל הִרְבֵּה חֲסָדָיו
עִמּוֹ וְנִמְרֹד עָשָׂה כְּחֻצּוֹ בְּמַמְלַכְתּוֹ שׁוּל.
- 23 And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.
- וְהָנָה, בִּימֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל, בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים בְּקֶרֶב
הָעָם, שְׁלוּחִים מֵאֵת יְהוָה, וְנִבְּאוּ כִּי רָשָׁעַת
הָעָם וְעִבּוּדֵי אֱלִילֵיו יִמְיִטוּ קָלָלָה עַל הָאֶרֶץ,
וְכִי הֵם יִשְׁמְדוּ בְּלִתִּי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעֵתָם.
- 24 And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.
- וּבְנֵי הָעָם גָּדְפוּ אֶת הַנְּבִיאִים וְלָעָגוּ לָהֶם.
וְהַמֶּלֶךְ שׁוּל הִבִּיא לְמִשְׁפָּט אֶת כָּל
מְגִדְּפֵי הַנְּבִיאִים.
- 25 And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.
- וְהַמֶּלֶךְ חֹקֵק חֹק לְכָל הָאֶרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר יָפָה אֶת
כָּח הַנְּבִיאִים לָלֶכֶת לְכָל אֲשֶׁר יַחְפְּצוּ; וּבִאֲפֹן
זֶה הוּבָא הָעָם לְתַשׁוּבָה.
- 26 And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.
- וְיַעַן אֲשֶׁר שָׁבוּ הָעָם מִעֲוֹנָם וּמֵאִילִילוֹתָם חָס
יְהוָה עַל חַיֵּיהֶם; וְהֵם שָׁבוּ לַעֲשׂוֹת חַיִּל בְּאֶרֶץ.
וְהָיָה כִּי בִזְקֻנָּתוֹ הוֹלִיד שׁוּל בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.

- 27 ולא היו עוד מלחמות בימי שול. והוא זכר את הגדולות אשר עשה יהוה לאבותיו בהביאם אותם דרך תהום רבה אל הארץ היעודה; לכן שפט בצדק כל ימיו.
- And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

ח

8

- 1 ושול הוליד את עמר, ועמר מלך תחתיו. ועמר הוליד את ירד; וירד הוליד בנים ובנות.
- And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.
- 2 וירד מרד באביו, והלך ושכן בארץ חת. והיה הדיח בחלקת לשונו אנשים רבים, כי דבר בערמה, עד אשר השיג את חצי הממלכה.
- And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.
- 3 ואחר השיגו את חצי הממלכה הוא יצא למלחמה באביו, והוא לקחו בשבי ושעבדו.
- And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;
- 4 וימי עמר בשביה היו כמחצית ימי חייו. והוא הוליד בנים ובנות, ובהם עזרום וקוריאנטומר.
- And now, in the days of the reigns of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;
- 5 והם רגזו מאד על מעשי ירד אחיהם, עד כי הקימו צבא ונלחמו בו; והם ערכו עמו קרב בלילה.
- And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.
- 6 והיה בהרגם את חיל ירד, הם אמרו אף להרגו. ואולם הוא הפציר בהם לבל יהרגוהו, ואמר כי ימסר את המלכות לאביו. ואכן הם חסו על נפשו.
- And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he plead with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.
- 7 והיה אחר הדברים האלה, התעצב ירד מאד על כי אבדה לו המלכות, כי נפשו חשקה במלכות ובתהלת בני תבל.
- And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.
- 8 ולירד בת חכמה ונבונה. ובראותה את יגון אביה וזממה מזמה, אשר תשיב את המלוכה לידיה.
- Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.
- 9 ובת ירד יפה מאד למראה. והיא דברה אל אביה לאמר: מדוע כה נעצב אבי? האם לא קרא את כתב הזכרון אשר הביאו אבותינו מעבר לתהום רבה? וכי אין מספר שם על הקדמונים, אשר על ידי מזמות סתר השיגו ממלכות ורב תפארה?
- Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

- על כן, ישלח נא אבי לקרא אל אכיש בן קמנור; וראה, זפה אנכי, וארקד לפניו, ואענג את לבו, ויחשק בי לאשה. והנה, בשאלו מאתך כי תתנני לו לאשה, תאמר: אתננה אם תביאני את ראש אבי, המלך.
- 10 And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.
- ועמר היה רע לאכיש. והיה אחר אשר שלח ירד לקרא אל אכיש, ורקדה בת ירד לפניו; והיא ענגתהו עד כי חשקה להיות לו לאשה, והוא אמר אל ירד: תננה לי לאשה.
- 11 And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.
- ואמר אליו ירד: אתננה לך, אם תביאני את ראש אבי, המלך.
- 12 And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.
- ואכיש אסף את כל בני משפחתו אל בית ירד, ואמר אליהם: התשבועו לי כי תהיו נאמנים לי בדבר אשר אבקשכם?
- 13 And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?
- וכלם נשבעו לו באלהי השמים, ובשמים ובארץ ובראשם, כי כל אשר יסור מעזר כבקשת אכיש, יסור ראשו מעליו; וכל אשר יגלה את אשר ספר להם אכיש, מות יומת.
- 14 And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.
- והם היו בעצה אחת עם אכיש, ואכיש השביעם באלות אשר השביעו בהן הקדמונים, אשר אף הם בקשו שררה; הן נמסרו מדור אל דור, מידי קנן, אשר היה רוצח מראשית.
- 15 And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.
- והן נשמרו בכח השטן להשביע בהן אנשים, להחזיקם בחשך, ולעזר אלה המבקשים שררה כדי לשלט ולרצח ולגזל ולשקר ולעשות כל מיני רשעה וזנות.
- 16 And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.
- ובת ירד היא אשר נטעה בלב אביה את דבר חפוש דברים אלה אשר מקדם. וירד נטע את הדבר בלב אכיש; על כן השביע אכיש את בני משפחתו ומרעיו ואף הטה אותם בדברי חלקות לפעל ככל אות נפשו.
- 17 And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.
- והם התחברו לאגדת סתר כדרך הקדמונים, אשר היא אגדה נתעבת ומרשעת מכל בעיני אלהים;
- 18 And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;
- כי אין יהוה פועל באגדות סתר ואיננו חפץ כי ישפך האדם דם; כי בכל דבר אשר זאת, מראשית האדם.
- 19 For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

אתר ח:כ-כו

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, לא אכתב את אפן שבועותיהם וקשריהם, יען אשר נודע לי כי הם קימים בין כל העמים והם נמצאים אף בין הלמנים.
- 20 And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.
- והם הביאו את השמדת העם אשר דברתי עלי בזה, ואף את השמדת עם נפי.
- 21 And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.
- וכל אמה אשר תקים אגדות סתר כאלה, למען השג שררה ובעד עד כי תתפשטה בכל האמה, השמיד תשמד; כי לא יתן יהוה לדם קדושו, אשר ישפך על ידיהם, לצעק עלי תמיד מן האדמה לנקמה עליהם, והוא לא ינקם את נקמתם.
- 22 And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.
- על כן, הגויים, חכמת אלהים היא, כי יראו לכם הדברים האלה בעבור תנחמו מחטאיכם, ולא תתירו את אגדות הרצח האלה, אשר הוקמו להשיג שררה ובעד, להשתרר עליכם, והיה אם תתירו את קיומן, והנה תחול עליכם הפעלה, היא פעלת ההרס, ותפל עליכם חרב הדין אשר לאלהי העולמים, אכן עד מפלתכם והשמדתכם.
- 23 Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.
- על כן מצוכם יהוה, כי בראותכם את הדברים האלה קמים בקרבכם, תתעוררו לחוש את אימת מצבכם, מפני אגדת הסתר הזאת אשר תהיה בקרבכם; אכן, אוי לה על דם אלה אשר הרגו, כי הם צועקים מן העפר לנקם בה ואף במקימיה.
- 24 Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who build it up.
- כי יבוא יום אשר כל מקימה יבקש להרס את חרות כל הארצות והאמות והמדינות; וכה תבוא השמדת כל האדם, כי השטן, אשר הוא אבי כל כזב, יסדה. אכן, הוא השקרן אשר רמה את אבותינו הראשונים, הרמאי אשר הסב לבני אדם להרג מימי קדם; אכן, הוא אשר הקשה את לב בני האדם עד אשר הרגו את הנביאים, וסקלום באבן וגרשום מאז.
- 25 For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.
- לכן אני, מורוני, מצוה לכתב את הדברים האלה למען יבטל הרע, ובעבור תבוא העת אשר לא יהיה לשטן כח על לב בני האדם, אם יטה לבם לעשות תמיד את הטוב, למען יבואו אל מעין כל הצדקה ויושעו.
- 26 Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

ט

9

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, אוסיף לרשם את
כתב הזכרון הזה. והנה, מפני אגדות
הסתרים אשר לאכיש ולמרעיו הם הפילו
את ממלכת עמר.
- ואולם יהוה רחם על עמר ועל בניו ובנותיו,
אשר לא בקשו להשמדו.
- ויהוה הזהיר את עמר בחלום האומר לו כי עליו
לעזב את הארץ. על כן יצא עמר מן הארץ עם
משפחתו ונסע ימים רבים, והגיע אל גבעת
שים, ובעברו ממנה הוא הגיע אל המקום אשר
בו השמדו הנפיים. והוא נסע משם מזרחה
ובא אל מקום אשר נקרא שמו אבלום, ליד
חוף הים. שם הוא נטה את אהלו, הוא ובניו
ובנותיו וכל ביתו, זולת ירד ומשפחתו.
- וירד נמשח למלך על העם ביד הרשעה.
והוא נתן לאכיש את בתו לאשה.
- ואכיש בקש את נפש חותנו; והוא פנה אל
אלה אשר השביעם באלת הקדמונים, והם
כרתו את ראש חותנו, בשבתו על כס
מלכותו, בהטותו און אל דברי עמו.
- אכן, כה התפשטה החבורה החשאית
והמרשעת הזאת, עד כי השחיתה את לב כל
האנשים; וכך נרצח ירד בשבתו על כסאו,
ואכיש מלך תחתיו.
- אז החל אכיש לקנא בבנו; והוא כלאו
והאכילו אף מעט מזער מזון עד כי גוע ומת.
- והיה כי אחי המת, אשר שמו נקרא נמרה,
רגז על אביו מפני המעשה אשר עשה לאחיו.
- ונמרה קבץ מתי מספר וברח מן הארץ, ובא
אל עמר ושכן עמו.
- ואכיש הוליד עוד בנים. והם קנו את לב
העם, אף כי נשבעו לאביהם כי יבצעו כל
מיני מעשי און כפאות נפשו.
- 1 And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it
came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his
friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.
- 2 Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons
and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.
- 3 And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of
the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family,
and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim,
and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and
from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom,
by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and
his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.
- 4 And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by
the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.
- 5 And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and
he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients,
and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his
throne, giving audience to his people.
- 6 For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society
that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was
murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.
- 7 And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore
he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he
had suffered death.
- 8 And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was
Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had
done unto his brother.
- 9 And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number
of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.
- 10 And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the
hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do
all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

אתר ט:יא-כא

- 11 Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.
- 12 And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.
- 13 Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.
- 14 And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.
- 15 And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.
- 16 And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—
- 17 Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;
- 18 And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.
- 19 And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.
- 20 And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.
- 21 And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.
- ועם אכיש התאוּו לְבָצֵעַ, כְּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִתְאַוָּה
אֲכִישׁ לְשֹׁרֶרָה; עַל כֵּן הִצִּיעוּ לָהֶם בְּנֵי אֲכִישׁ
כֶּסֶף וְכֹה הָיוּ אֵלֵיהֶם אֶת לֵב רַב הָעָם.
- וּמִלְחָמָה פָּרְצָה בֵּין בְּנֵי אֲכִישׁ וּבֵין אֲכִישׁ,
וְהָיָה אַרְכָּהּ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, אֲכֹן, עַד כִּי נִשְׁמַד
כְּמַעֲט כָּל עַם הַמְּמִלְכָּה; אֲכֹן, כָּלָם, זֹולַת
שְׁלֹשִׁים נַפְשׁ וְאֵלּוּ אֲשֶׁר בָּרָחוּ עִם בֵּית עֹמֶר.
- כֹּה הוּשַׁב עֹמֶר אֶל אֶרֶץ נַחֲלָתוֹ.
- וְעֹמֶר זָקֵן, וְאוֹלָם בְּזִקְנָתוֹ הוֹלִיד אֶת עֹמֶר;
וְעֹמֶר מָשַׁח אֶת עֹמֶר לְמֶלֶךְ, לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר מָשַׁחוּ אֶת עֹמֶר לְמֶלֶךְ, הוּא רָאָה
שְׁלוֹם בְּאֶרֶץ שְׁנַתָּים יָמִים וּמֵת אַחֵר שְׁנוֹת
חַיִּים מְרֻבּוֹת עֲקֻבוֹת עֶצֶב וְצָעַר. וְעֹמֶר מָלַךְ
תַּחְתָּיו וְהִלָּךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו.
- וַיְהִי הִסִּיר שְׁנִית אֶת הַקְּלָלָה מִן הָאֶרֶץ,
וְהָיָה בֵּית עֹמֶר מְצַלִּיחַ מְאֹד תַּחַת שְׁלֹטוֹנוֹ עַד
כִּי בַתּוֹךְ שְׁשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה הִתְחַזְּקוּ מְאֹד
וַעֲשָׂרָם פָּרִיץ.
- וְהָיוּ לָהֶם פְּרִי וְדָגָנִים מִכָּל מִין, וּמָשִׁי וְשֵׁשׁ
מְשֻׁזָּר וְזָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּשְׂאֵר יְקָרוֹת.
- וְאֵף הָיוּ לָהֶם כָּל מִינֵי בְהֵמָה, שֹׁרִים וּפְרוֹת
וּכְבָּשִׁים וְחִזִּירִים וְעִזִּים וְחִיּוֹת מִמִּינֵים אֲחֵרִים
לָרֶב, אֲשֶׁר צָלְחוּ לְמֶאֱכָל אָדָם.
- וְהָיוּ לָהֶם סוּסִים וְחִמּוֹרִים; וְאֵף פִּילִים
וְקוֹרְלוֹמִים וְקוֹמוֹמִים; כָּל אֵלֶּה הָיוּ עֹזֵר לָאָדָם,
וּבִפְרֹט הַפִּילִים וְהַקֹּרְלוֹמִים וְהַקֹּמוֹמִים.
- וְכֹה הָעֲתִיר יְהוָה אֶת בְּרָכָתוֹ עַל הָאֶרֶץ
הַזֹּאת, אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת;
וְהוּא צִוָּה כִּי כָל אֲשֶׁר יִנְחֹלוּ אֶת הָאֶרֶץ
יִנְחֹלוּהָ לְשֹׁמוֹ. וְלֹא, הַשְׁמֹד יִשְׁמְדוּ כְּאֲשֶׁר
תִּמְלֹא סָאת עֲוֹנוֹם; כִּי כֹה אָמַר יְהוָה:
עַל כִּגּוֹן אֵלֶּה, אֲשַׁפּוֹךְ אֶת מְלֹא חֲמָתִי.
- וְעֹמֶר שָׁפֵט מִשְׁפָּט צָדֵק כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּיו וְהוֹלִיד
בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת
קוֹרְיָאנְטוֹם וּמָשַׁח אוֹתוֹ לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו.

- והיה אחר מִשְׁחוֹ אֶת קוריאנטוס לְמֶלֶךְ
תַּחֲתָיו, הוא חי אַרְבַּע שָׁנִים, וְרָאָה שְׁלוֹם
בְּאֶרֶץ; וְאָף הוא רָאָה אֶת בֶּן הַצֶּדֶק, וְשִׂמַּח
וְהִתְהַלֵּל בְּיוֹמוֹ, וְהוּא מָת בְּשְׁלוֹם.
- 22 And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.
- וְקוריאנטוס הָלַךְ בְּדַרְכֵי אָבִיו; וְהוּא בָנָה
עָרִים אֲדִירוֹת רַבּוֹת, וְהָיָה מוֹרָה אֶת עַמּוֹ אֶת
הַטּוֹב לָהֶם כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּיו. וְלֹא הָיוּ לוֹ בָּנִים עַד
אֲשֶׁר זָקֵן וְכָא בְּיָמָיו.
- 23 And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.
- וְאִשְׁתּוֹ מָתָה, וְהָיָה בֵּת מֵאָה וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנִים.
וְהָיָה לְעֵת זִקְנָתוֹ, לָקַח קוריאנטוס נַעֲרָה לוֹ
לְאִשָּׁה. וְהוּא הוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; וְהוּא חֵי עַד
אֲשֶׁר מָלְאוּ לוֹ מֵאָה וְאַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה.
- 24 And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.
- וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹם, וְקוֹם מָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו
אַרְבָּעִים וְתֵשַׁע שָׁנָה; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת חֵת וְכֵן
בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת נוֹסְפִים.
- 25 And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.
- וְהָעָם נִפְצוּ שֵׁנִית עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ, וְשׁוּב
הָיְתָה רָשָׁעָה גְדוֹלָה מְאֹד עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ. וְחֵת
הֵחֵל לְאַמֵּץ לוֹ אֶת מִזְמוֹת הַסֵּתֶר אֲשֶׁר
מִקֵּדָם, בְּעִבּוֹר הַשְּׂמֵד אֶת אָבִיו.
- 26 And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.
- וְהוּא הִסִּיר אֶת אָבִיו מִכִּסְאוֹ, כִּי הִרְגוּ בָּמוֹ
חֲרָבוֹ, וּמִלֶּךְ תַּחֲתָיו.
- 27 And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.
- אֲזַי בָּאוּ שֵׁנִית נְבִיאִים בְּאֶרֶץ, וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶל
יוֹשְׁבֵיָהּ לְשׁוּב מִרְעַתָּם, לְמַעַן יִפְנוּ אֶת דֶּרֶךְ
יְהוָה, וְלֹא, בּוֹא תְּבוֹא קָלָלָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ;
אֲכֹ, רָעַב גְּדוֹל יָבוֹא, אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ הֵם יֵאבְדוּ,
בְּלִיתִי אִם יִשׁוּבוּ מִרְעַתָּם.
- 28 And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.
- וְאוֹלָם הָעָם לֹא הֶאֱמִין לְדִבְרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים
וְגִרְשׁוּם; וּמִקְצָתָם הֵם הִשְׁלִיכוּ אֶל בּוֹרוֹת
וְעִזְבוּם לָגוֹעַ. וְכָל זֹאת עָשׂוּ עַל פִּי מִצְוֹת
הַמֶּלֶךְ חֵת.
- 29 But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.
- אֲזַי הָיָה רָעַב גְּדוֹל בְּאֶרֶץ; וְיוֹשְׁבֵיָהּ אָבְדוּ
בְּמַהֲרִית רַבָּה מִפְּנֵי הָרָעַב. יַעַן אֲשֶׁר לֹא
הִמָּטִיר הַמָּטָר עַל הָאֶרֶץ.
- 30 And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.
- וְהָיָה כִּי בָאוּ נִחְשֵׁי אֶרֶס עַל פְּנֵי הָאֶרֶץ,
וְהִכִּישׁוּ אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים. וְעִדְרֵי צֹאנִים נָסוּ מִפְּנֵי
הַנִּחְשִׁים אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, אֲשֶׁר הַנְּפִיִּים קָרְאוּ
לָהּ זֶרַחֶמְלָה.
- 31 And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

- 32 And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.
- וְרַבִּים מֵהֶם אָבְדוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ, וְאוֹלָם חֲלָקָם מִצָּא מִפִּלְט בְּאַרְצָא הַדְּרוֹם.
- 33 And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.
- וַיְהִי הַסֵּב כִּי יַחְדְּלוּ הַנָּחָשִׁים מִרְדֹּף אַחֵר הַצֹּאן, וְכִי הֵם יַחֲסִמוּ אֶת הַדֶּרֶךְ לְכָל יַעֲבְרוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים, וְכִי כָל הַמִּבְקָשִׁים לַעֲבֹר יִפְּלוּ בַּהֲכָשֶׁת הַנָּחָשִׁים.
- 34 And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.
- וְהָעָם הָלַךְ בְּעֵקֶבְבוֹת הַבְּהֵמוֹת, וְהָיוּ הַפְּגָרִים אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ בַדֶּרֶךְ טָרֵף לָהֶם, עַד כִּי אָכְלוּם עַד תָּם; וְכִרְאוֹת הָעָם כִּי בָּאָה שְׁעַת כְּלִיוָנָם, הֵם הִחֲלוּ לְהִנָּחֵם עַל עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וּלְקַרְא אֶל יְהוָה.
- 35 And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.
- וְהָיָה בְּהִכְנַע הָעָם רַב הַכְּנָעָה לִפְנֵי יְהוָה, שָׁלַח יְהוָה מָטָר עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ, וְשָׁבָה נֶפֶשׁ הָעָם אֲלֵיהֶם. וְהִיאָדְמָה הַחֲלָה לְתֵת פְּרִיָּה בְּאַרְצוֹת הַצִּפּוֹן וּבְכָל הָאֲרָצוֹת אֲשֶׁר סָבִיב. כֹּה הָרָאָה יְהוָה אֶת כּוֹחוֹ בְּהַצִּילוֹ אוֹתָם מִן הָרָעָב.

י

10

- 1 And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.
- וְהָיָה כִּי חַת מֵת בְּרָעַב עִם כָּל בֵּיתוֹ, וְזוֹלַת שֵׁז אֲשֶׁר הוּא צֶאֱצָא לוֹ. וְשֵׁז הִחַל לְהָקִים שְׁנִית אֶת הָעָם הַנִּשְׁבֵּר.
- 2 And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.
- וְשֵׁז זָכַר אֶת כְּלִיוֹן אֲבוֹתָיו וּבְנֵה מְלָכוֹת צָדִיק; וְהוּא זָכַר אֶת אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה בְּהִבְיֹאוֹ אֶת יָרֵד וְאֶת אָחִיו מֵעַל תְּהוֹם הַיָּם. וְהוּא הָלַךְ בַּדְּרָכֵי יְהוָה, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת.
- 3 And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.
- וּבְנֵו בְּכוֹרוֹ, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא שֵׁז, מָרַד בּוֹ; וְאוֹלָם שֵׁז הִכָּה בְּיַד שׁוֹדֵד, בְּעִבּוֹר עֲשָׂרוֹ הַעֲצוֹם, וְכֹה שָׁבָה הַשְּׁלָוָה אֶל אָבִיו.
- 4 And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.
- וְאָבִיו בָּנָה עָרִים רַבּוֹת עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ; וְהָאֲנָשִׁים הִתְפָּשְׁטוּ שְׁנִית עַל כָּל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ. וְשֵׁז חָיָה עַד הַגִּיעוֹ לְזִקְנָה מְפֹלָגַת; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת רִיפְלָכִישׁ. וְהוּא מֵת, וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- 5 And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.
- וְרִיפְלָכִישׁ לֹא עָשָׂה אֶת הַיֹּשֶׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה, כִּי הִרְבֵּה לוֹ נָשִׁים וּפִילָגְשִׁים. וְהוּא הִכְבִּיד אֶת עַל הַמָּשָׂא עַל שִׁכְמֵם הָאֲנָשִׁים; אֲבָן, הוּא הִטִּיל עֲלֵיהֶם מַסִּים כְּבִידִים, וּבָנָה בָּהֶם בָּתִּים רַחְבֵּי מִדּוֹת לָרֵב.

אתר יו-יד

והוא עשה לו כס מלכות הדור ומפאָר; והוא
בנה בתי כלא לרב, וכלא את אשר לא העלו
מס. והוא כלא את אשר לא יכלו לשלם מס,
וצוה עליהם לעבד כל העת לכלכלתם; ואשר
סרב לעבד הומת בפקדתו.

כה הוא השיג כל מלאכת מחשבת;
אכן את זהבו הטהור הוא צוה לצרף בבית
הכלא, וכן כל מלאכת אמנות עדינה צוה
פי תעשה בבית הכלא. והוא צרר את
העם בזונגיו ובתועבותיו.

והיה אחר אשר מלך ארבעים ושתים שנה,
קם העם ומרד בו; ופרצה שנית מלחמה
בארץ, עד אשר נהרג ריפלכיש, וצאצאיו
גרשו מן הארץ.

והיה אחר שנים רבות, אסף מוריאנטון,
אשר היה צאצא לריפלכיש, צבא מגרשים
ויצא למלחמה על העם; והוא גבר על ערים
רבות. והמלחמה הייתה קשה מאד וארכה
שנים רבות; והוא השתמר על כל הארץ וכונן
עצמו למלך עליה.

והיה אחר כוננו למלך, הוא הקל את על
העם, ובזאת נשא חן לפניהם, והם משחוהו
למלך עליהם.

והוא נהג בצדק עם עמו אך לא כן עם עצמו,
מפני רב זונגיו; על כן נכרת מלפני יהוה.

ומוריאנטון בנה ערים לרב, והעם התעשר
עד מאד תחת שלטונו בהיות להם בתים
רבים וזהב וכסף ודגן ועדרי צאן ובקר, וכל
דבר אשר הושב להם.

ומוריאנטון חי עד הגיעו לזקנה מפלגת,
והוליד את קים; וקים מלך תחת אביו, והוא
מלך שמונה שנים לפני מות אביו. וקים לא
מלך בצדק, על כן לא נטה לו יהוה את חסדו.

והיה כי קם עליו אחיו במרד ושבה אותו;
והוא היה בשבי כל ימיו. ובימי שביו הוא
הוליד בנים ובנות; ולעת זקנתו הוא הוליד
את לוי, ומת.

6 And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

7 Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison, and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

9 And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

10 And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

11 And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

12 And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

13 And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

14 And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

אתר י:טו-כה

- 15 And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.
- 16 And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.
- 17 And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.
- 18 And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.
- 19 And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.
- 20 And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.
- 21 And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.
- 22 And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.
- 23 And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.
- 24 And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.
- 25 And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.
- וְלֵוִי עָבַד בְּשָׂבִי אַחֵר מוֹת אָבִיו בְּמִשְׁךְ אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה. וְהוּא יָצָא לִקְרֹב עַל מֶלֶךְ הָאָרֶץ וּלְקַח לֹא אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה.
- וְהָיָה אַחֵר תִּפְשֹׁוּ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, הוּא עָשָׂה אֶת הַיָּשָׁר בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה; וְהָעָם הִצְלִיחַ בְּאָרְצוֹ. וְהוּא חָיָה עַד הִגִּיעוֹ לְשִׁיבָה טוֹבָה, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת; וְבָהֶם קוֹרָמוֹ, אֲשֶׁר מָשַׁח לְמֶלֶךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְקוֹרָמוֹ עָשָׂה אֶת הַטוֹב בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה כָּל יָמָיו, חָיָיו, וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת רַבִּים. וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָאָה שָׁנוֹת חַיִּים רַבּוֹת, הוּא הָלַךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל הָאָרֶץ; וְקִישׁ מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְקִישׁ מָתָּה אַף הוּא, וְלִיב מָלַךְ תַּחְתָּיו.
- וְלִיב אַף הוּא עָשָׂה אֶת הַטוֹב בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה. וּבְיָמָיו לִיב הִשְׁמָדוּ נַחְשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ. עַל כֵּן הָלְכוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶל אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם, לְצוּד צִיד לְמֵאֲכָל לָאֲנָשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ. כִּי הָאָרֶץ מְלֵאָה חַיּוֹת יַעַר. וְלִיב הָיָה לְצִיד גָּדוֹל.
- וְהֵם בָּנוּ עִיר גְּדוֹלָה בְּרִצְעוֹת הָאָרֶץ הַחֲצֵה, לִיד מְקוֹם חֲלָקַת הָאָרֶץ לִיד הַיָּם.
- וְהֵם הוֹעִידוּ אֶת אֶרֶץ הַדְּרוֹם לְהָיִית׀ אֶרֶץ לֹא נוֹשֶׁבֶת, בְּעִבּוֹר תְּהִיָּה לָהֶם מְקוֹם צִיד. וְכָל פְּנֵי אֶרֶץ הַצָּפוֹן יוֹשְׁבוּ בְּתוֹשְׁבִים.
- וְהָיוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים שׁוֹקְדִים מְאֹד בְּעִמְלָם, וְהֵם קָנוּ וּמָכְרוּ וְסָחְרוּ אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ, בְּעִבּוֹר הוֹן וָרוֹחַ.
- וְהֵם עָבְדוּ בְּכָל מִינֵי עֲפָרָה, וְהִפִּיקוּ זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּבְרָזֶל וּנְחָשֶׁת קָלָל וְכָל מִינֵי מִתְּכֹוֹת; וְהֵם חָפְרוּ אוֹתָן מִן הָאֲדָמָה. עַל כֵּן עָרְמוּ עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ צְבוּרֵי עֲפָר אֲדִירִים לְהִפִּיק מֵהֶם עֲפָרוֹת זָהָב וְכֶסֶף וּבְרָזֶל וּנְחָשֶׁת. וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי מְלָאכָת מִחֻשְׁבָּת.
- וְהָיוּ לָהֶם מָשִׁי וְשֵׁשׁ מְשֹׁר; וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל סוּג אָרִיג לְהַלְבִּישׁ אֶת מַעְרַמֵּיהֶם.
- וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי כְּלִים לְעִבּוֹדַת הָאֲדָמָה, לְחִרְיֵשׁ, וְלִזְרִיעָה וּלְעִדּוֹר וְאֶף לְדִישׁ.

אתר יכו-יא:א

- 26 And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.
וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי עֲבוּדָה אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם הִעֲבִידוּ אֶת בְּהֶמְתָּם.
- 27 And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.
וְהֵם עָשׂוּ כָּל מִינֵי כְּלֵי מִלְחָמָה וְעָבְדוּ בְּכָל מְלָאכָת מַחֲשָׁבֶת רַבָּה.
- 28 And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.
וּמַעֲוֹלָם לֹא הָיָה עִם אֲשֶׁר הִתְבָּרַרְוּ וְהַצְלִיחַ יוֹתֵר בְּיַד יְהוָה מֵאֲשֶׁר הָעָם הַזֶּה. וְהֵם הָיוּ בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר הִיא מִבְּחָר מִכָּל הָאֲרָצוֹת, כִּי יְהוָה דִּבֶּר זֹאת.
- 29 And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.
וְלִיב חַי שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת וְהוֹלִיד בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת, וּבָהֶם הִיאֲרִטוּם.
- 30 And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.
וְהִיאֲרִטוּם מֶלֶךְ תַּחַת אָבִיו. וְהָיָה כַּעֲבָר עֶשְׂרִים וָאַרְבַּע שָׁנָה לְשִׁלְטוֹנוֹ, וְהִנֵּה נִלְקָחָה הַמְּלָכוּת מִיָּדָיו. וְהוּא עָבַד שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת בְּשָׁבִי, אַכֵּן, כָּל שְׁאֵרִית יָמֵי חַיָּיו.
- 31 And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.
וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת חֶת, וְחֶת שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי כָּל יָמָיו. וְחֶת הוֹלִיד אֶת אַהֲרֹן; וְאַהֲרֹן שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי כָּל יָמָיו וְהוֹלִיד אֶת אַמְנִיגַדָּה; וְאַף אַמְנִיגַדָּה שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי כָּל יָמָיו. וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּם; וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּם שָׁכַן בְּשָׁבִי כָּל יָמָיו, וְהוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹם.
- 32 And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.
וְקוֹם הִטָּה אֵלָיו אֶת חֲצִי הַמְּמָלְכָה; וְהוּא מָלַךְ עַל חֲצִי הַמְּמָלְכָה אַרְבָּעִים וּשְׁתַּיִם שָׁנָה. וְהוּא יָצָא לְמִלְחָמָה עַל הַמֶּלֶךְ אַמְגִּיד; וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת, עַד אֲשֶׁר גָּבַר קוֹם עַל אַמְגִּיד וְהִשְׁתַּלֵּט עַל שְׁאֵרִית הַמְּמָלְכָה.
- 33 And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.
בְּיָמֵי קוֹם הִחֲלוּ שׁוֹדְדִים לַפַּעַל בְּאֶרֶץ; הֵם אִמְצוּ אֶת מִזְמוֹת יָמֵי קֶדֶם, וְהִשְׁבִּיעוּ כְּדֶרֶךְ הַקְּדָמוֹנִים וּבִקְשׁוּ, כָּל־פָּנִים, לְאַבֵּד אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה.
- 34 Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.
וְקוֹם אָסַר עֲלֵיהֶם מִלְחָמָה כְּבִדָּה, אָף הוּא לֹא הִיבִיסָם.

יא

11

- 1 And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.
וְהָיָה כִּי אָף בְּיָמֵי קוֹם בָּאוּ נְבִיאִים רַבִּים, אֲשֶׁר נְבְאוּ כְּלִיּוֹן עַל כָּל הָעָם הַגָּדוֹל הַהוּא, בְּלִתִּי אִם יִנְחָמוּ עַל חַטָּאתֵיהֶם וַיִּפְּנוּ אֶל יְהוָה וַיַּחֲדְלוּ מִמַּעֲשֵׂי הָרָצָח וּמִרְשָׁעָתָם.

אתר יא:ב-יב

- והעם מאס בנביאים, והם ברחו אל קום להגנתם, יען אשר בקשו האנשים לאבדם.
- 2 And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.
- והם נבאו לקום דברים רבים; והוא התברך כל שארית ימיו.
- 3 And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.
- וקום חי עד הגיעו לשיבה טובה, והוא הוליד את שבלום; ושבלום מלך תחתיו. ואחי שבלום מרד בו, ופרצה מלחמה גדולה מאד בכל הארץ.
- 4 And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.
- ואחי שבלום צוה להמית את כל הנביאים אשר נבאו את כליון העם.
- 5 And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;
- והיתה רעה גדולה בכל הארץ, יען אשר העידו הנביאים כי קללה גדולה תבוא על הארץ ועל העם, וכי חרבן גדול יהיה בקרבם, אשר כמותו לא היה על פני האדמה, וכי עצמותיהם תערמנה כצבורי עפר על פני הארץ, אם לא ישובו מרעם.
- 6 And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.
- והם לא שמעו לקול יהוה, מפני אגדות הרשעה אשר להם, לכן פרצו מלחמות ומריבות בכל הארץ, ואף רבו הרעב והדבר, עד כי היה חרבן אדיר, אשר כמוהו לא נודע מעולם על פני האדמה. כל זאת היה בימי שבלום.
- 7 And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.
- והעם החלו להנחם על עונם, וככל אשר נחמו רחם עליהם יהוה.
- 8 And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.
- אז הומת שבלום ושת נלקח בשבי, והוא שכן בשבי כל ימי חייו.
- 9 And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.
- ואחא בנו לקח את הממלכה לידי. והוא מלך על העם כל ימי חייו. ובימיו הוא עשה כל מיני מעשי און, אשר הסבו שפיכות דמים רבה. וימיו היו מעשים.
- 10 And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.
- ועתה, אשר הוא צאצא אחא, לקח את הממלכה לידי; ואף הוא עשה בימיו את הרע.
- 11 And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.
- והיה בימי עתם, באו נביאים רבים ונבאו עוד אל העם; אכן, הם נבאו כי ימחם יהוה כליל מעל פני האדמה בלתי אם ינחמו על עוונותיהם.
- 12 And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

אתר יא:יג-יב:א

- 13 And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.
- 14 And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.
- 15 And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.
- 16 And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.
- 17 And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.
- 18 And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.
- 19 And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.
- 20 And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;
- 21 And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.
- 22 And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.
- 23 And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.
- וּבְנֵי הָעָם הִקְשׁוּ אֶת לִבָּם וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ
אֶל דְּבָרֵיהֶם; וְהַנְּבִיאִים הִתְאַבְּלוּ וַיִּצְאוּ
מִקֶּרֶב הָעָם.
- וַעֲתָם שָׁפֵט בְּרָשָׁעָה כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד
אֶת מוֹרוֹן. וּמוֹרוֹן מָלַךְ תַּחֲתָיו; וּמוֹרוֹן עָשָׂה
אֶת הָרַע בְּעֵינֵי יְהוָה.
- וְהָיָה כִּי פָרַץ מֶרֶד בָּעָם מִפְּנֵי אֲגֻדַּת הַסֵּתֶרִים
אֲשֶׁר הוֹקְמָה בְּעִבּוֹר שָׂרָרָה וּבִצְעָה. וְקָם בֵּהֶם
אִישׁ גִּבּוֹר לְהִרְשִׁיעַ, וְהוּא לָחַם בְּמוֹרוֹן וַיִּכְבֹּשׁ
אֶת חֲצֵי הַמַּמְלָכָה, וְהוּא מָשַׁל בְּחֲצֵי
הַמַּמְלָכָה שָׁנִים רַבּוֹת.
- וְהָיָה כִּי הִדִּיחוּ מוֹרוֹן מִן הַשְּׁלֶטוֹן וַהֲשִׁיב לִידָיו
אֶת הַמַּמְלָכָה.
- וְהָיָה קָם אִישׁ חָזָק אֲחֵר, אֲשֶׁר הוּא צֶאֱצָא
אֶחָי יָרֵד.
- וְהוּא הִדִּיחַ אֶת מוֹרוֹן מִן הַשְּׁלֶטוֹן וַיִּלְקַח לִידָיו
אֶת הַמַּמְלָכָה. וּמוֹרוֹן שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבִּי כָּל שְׁאֵרִית
יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא הוֹלִיד אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבִּי כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו.
- וְהָיָה בְּיָמֵי קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר, בָּאוּ שׁוֹב נְבִיאִים רַבִּים
וַיְנַבְּאוּ גְדוֹלוֹת וְנִפְלְאוֹת. וְהֵם קָרְאוּ אֶת הָעָם
לְתִשּׁוּבָה בְּאָמְרָם כִּי אִם לֹא יִנְחָמוּ עַל
חַטָּאתֵיהֶם יוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֶת מִשְׁפָּטוֹ
עֲלֵיהֶם, לְכַלּוֹתָם עַד תָּם;
- וְכִי יִשְׁלַח יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים, אוֹ יָבִיא, בְּכּוֹחַ,
עִם אֲחֵר לְנַחֵל אֶת הָאָרֶץ, כְּדֶרֶךְ אֲשֶׁר הָבִיא
אֶת אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- וְהֵם מָאָסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאִים, מִפְּנֵי חֲבֵרָתָם
הַחֲשָׁאִית וְתוֹעֲבוֹת רְשָׁעָתָם.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹר שָׁכַן בְּשִׁבְיָה כָּל יְמֵי חַיָּו; וְהוּא
הוֹלִיד אֶת אֶתֶר, וָמָת.

יב

12

- 1 And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.
- וְהָיוּ יְמֵי אֶתֶר בְּיָמֵי קוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֶר,
וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוֹמֶר הָיָה מֶלֶךְ עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ.

אתר יב:ב-י

- 2 And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.
- 3 For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—
- 4 Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.
- 5 And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.
- 6 And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.
- 7 For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.
- 8 But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.
- 9 Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.
- 10 Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.
- ואתר היה נביא יהוה; ואתר בא בימי קוריאנטומר והחל לנבא לעם, כי לא נתן למנעו מפני רוח יהוה אשר בו.
- והוא קרא מן הבקר ועד שקיעת השמש, בהוסיחו את העם להאמין באלהים לשם תשובה, פן ישמדו, ואמר להם כי על ידי אמונה מתקמים כל הדברים;
- וכי כל המאמין באלהים יכול לקוות בבטחה לעולם טוב יותר, אכן, אף למקום לימין אלהים; והתקנה הזאת באה מאמונה והיא עגן לנפשות בני האדם, אשר תעשים בטוחים ויציבים, שופעים תמיד מעשים טובים ומנהיגים לפאר את אלהים.
- ואתר נבא לעם דברים גדולים ונפלאים, אשר הם לא האמינו בהם, וען אשר לא ראום.
- ועתה, אני, מורוני, אדבר דברמה על הדברים האלה. חפצי להראות לעולם כי אמונה היא דברים אשר מקוים להם ואשר אינם נראים. על כן, אל תתוכחו על כי אינכם רואים; כי לא תהיה לכם כל עדות עד אשר תעמד אמונתכם בנסיון.
- כי באמונה נראה המשיח לעיני אבותינו, אחר קומו מן המתים; והוא לא התגלה אליהם, כי אם אחר היות להם אמונה בו. לכן, הכרח הוא כי למקצתם הייתה אמונה בו, כי הוא לא התגלה לבני תבל כלו.
- אך מפני אמונת בני אדם הוא נראה לעולם, ופאר את שם האב לפנות את הדרך אשר על ידיה יוכלו אחרים להנות ממתת השמים בעבור יקוו לדברים אשר לא ראו.
- לכן, אף אתם תוכלו לקוות ולהנות מן המתת, אם אך תהיה לכם אמונה.
- הן על ידי האמונה נקראו הקדמונים על פי סדר הקדש אשר לאלהים.

אתר יב:יא-כא

- 11 ואכן, על ידי האמונה נתנה תורת משה. ואולם במתנת בנו הכין אלהים דרך מעלה יותר; ועל ידי אמונה קם הדבר. Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.
- 12 כי אם אין אמונה בקרב בני האדם, לא יעשה אלהים כל נס בקרבם; לכן לא התגלה הוא לעיניהם כי אם אחר אשר היתה להם אמונה. For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.
- 13 הן היתה זאת אמונת עלמא ועמולק אשר מוטטה את בית הכלא ארצה. Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.
- 14 והן היתה זאת אמונת נפי ולחי אשר חוללה את התמורה בלמנים, בבואם להטבל באש וברוח הקדש. Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.
- 15 והן היתה זאת אמונת עמון ועמיתיו אשר חוללה נס כה גדול בקרב הלמנים. Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.
- 16 אכן, כל אשר חוללו נסים, על ידי אמונה חוללו; אכן, אלה אשר קדמו למשיח כאלה אשר באו אחריו. Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.
- 17 והיה זה על ידי אמונה אשר קבלו שלשת התלמידים דבר ברית כי לא יטעמו את טעם המות; והם לא קבלו את דבר הברית כי אם אחר היות להם אמונה. And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.
- 18 ומעולם לא עשה איש נסים כי אם אחר היות לו אמונה; אכן, תחלה האמינו הם בבן אלהים. And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.
- 19 והיו רבים אשר אמונתם היתה עזה עד מאד, אף לפני בוא המשיח, אשר לא נתן למנעם מהביט מעבר ללוט; והם ראו במו עיניהם את הדברים אשר ראום בעין אמונה, והיו מאשרים. And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.
- 20 והנה, ראינו בכתב הזכרון הזה כי אחד מאלה היה אחי ירד; כי כה גדולה היתה אמונתו באלהים, עד כי בשלח אלהים את אצבעו הוא לא יכול היה להסתירה מעין אחי ירד, מפני דברו אשר דבר אליו, אשר אף הוא קבל על ידי אמונה. And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.
- 21 ואחר ראות אחי ירד את אצבע יהוה, מפני דבר הברית אשר קבל על ידי אמונה, לא יכול היה יהוה להסתיר דבר מעיניו. על כן הוא הראהו הכל, כי לא נתן היה להותירו עוד מעבר ללוט. And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

ועל ידי האמונה קבלו אבותי דבר ברית
כי יבואו הדברים האלה אל אחיהם מידי
הגוים; על כך צוני יהוה, הוא ישוע המשיח.

ואמרתי אליו: יהוה, הגוים ילעגו לדברים
האלה מפני חלשתנו בכתיבה. כי אתה, יהוה,
נתתנו להיות גבורי דבור על ידי האמונה, אך
לא נתתנו להיות גבורי כתיבה; כי עשית את
כל העם הזה מרבי כשר דבור, מפני רוח
הקדש אשר נתת להם.

ועשיתנו מעוטי כשר כתיבה, מפני רפיון
ידינו. הן לא עשיתנו גבורי כתיבה כאחי
יָרֵד, כי עשיתו כך אשר כתביו היו מלאים
עז כמותך עד כי גוברים על האדם
הקורא אותם.

ואף את דברינו עשית גדולים ומלאים עז,
עד כי איננו יכולים לכתבם; על כן, בכתיבתנו
ראינו את חלשתנו, מפני מעידתנו בבור
דברינו; וירא אני פן ילעגו הגוים לדברינו.

וכאמרי את הדברים האלה דבר יהוה אלי
לאמר: כסילים ילעגו, אך הם יתאבלו; וחסדי
מספיק לענוים, הנה לא ינצלו את חלשתכם.

והיה אם יבואו אלי בני אדם, אראם את
חלשתם. אנכי הוא הנותן חלשה לבני האדם
בעבור ישפילו עצמם; וחסדי מספיק לכל בני
האדם המכניעים עצמם לפני, כי אם יכניעו
עצמם לפני, ויאמינו בי, להם אהפוך דברים
חלשים לחזקים.

הנה, אראה לגוים את חלשתם, וכי אמונה,
תקנה וחסד מובילים אלי, אל מען כל הצדקה.

ואני, מורוני, כשמעי את הדברים האלה
התנחמתי ואמרתי: יהוה, תעשה נא צדקת
רצונה, יען אשר יודע אני כי פועל אתה לבני
האדם כפי אמונתם.

כי אחי יָרֵד אמר אל הר זרין: סור! והוא סר.
ולילא היתה לו אמונה לא היה זע ההר הנה,
פועל אתה לאחר היות אמונה בבני האדם.

22 And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

23 And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

24 And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

25 Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

26 And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

27 And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

28 Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

29 And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

30 For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

- 31 כי כה התגלית אל תלמידך; כי אחר היות להם אמונה, ואחר דברם בשמך, הראית עצמך להם בכחך הגדול.
- 32 ואני אף זוכר כי אמרת כי הכינות בית לאדם; אכן, במשכנות אביך, אשר בו יכולה להיות לאדם תקנה מעלה יותר. על פן הכרח הוא כי יקנה האדם; ולא, לא יוכל לקבל נחלה במקום אשר הכינות.
- 33 ואני זוכר עוד כי אמרת כי אהבת את העולם, עד כדי הנחת חיך למענו, בעבור תקום שנית להכין מקום לבני האדם.
- 34 והן יודע אני כי האהבה אשר אתה רוחש לבני האדם היא חסד; לכן, בלתי אם יהיה לבני האדם חסד, לא יוכלו לנחל את המקום אשר הכינות במשכנות אביך.
- 35 ויודע אני על פי הדבר הזה אשר אמרת, כי בלתי אם יהיה לגוים חסד, מפני חלשתנו, הוכח תוכיחם; ואת פשרונם תסיר מהם, אכן, את אשר קבלו, ותתנהו לאלה אשר יהיה להם רב יותר.
- 36 ואני התפללתי אל יהוה כי יכונן את הגוים, בעבור יהיה להם חסד.
- 37 ואמר יהוה אלי: אחת היא לך אם אין להם חסד, הן אתה נאמן; לכן ינקו בגדיה. ויען אשר ראית את חלשתך חזק תהיה, ומושך יהיה במקום אשר הכינותי במשכנות אבי.
- 38 ועתה, אני, מורוני, שולח ברכת שלום לגוים, ואף לאחי, אשר אני אוהבם, עד אשר נפגש לפני כס המשפט אשר למשיח; שם ידעו כל בני האדם כי אין בגדי מכתמים בדמכם.
- 39 אז תדעו כי ראיתי את ישוע, וכי הוא דבר עמי פנים אל פנים, וכי הוא ספר לי, בעונה פשוטה, כדבר איש אל רעהו בלשוני, על אודות הדברים האלה.
- 40 ורק מעט מדבריו רשמתי, מפני חלשתי בכתיבה.
- 31 For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.
- 32 And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.
- 33 And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.
- 34 And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.
- 35 Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.
- 36 And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.
- 37 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.
- 38 And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.
- 39 And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;
- 40 And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

אתר יב:מ-יג:ח

- ועתה, אֲדַבֵּר עַל לְבַבְכֶּם כִּי תִבְקְשׁוּ אַחֵר יֵשׁוּעַ, אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כָּתְבוּ הַנְּבִיאִים וְהַשְּׁלִיחִים, בְּעִבּוֹר יְהִיָּה וְאַף יֵשׁוּפָן בְּכֶם לְעוֹלָם חֶסֶד אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב וְכֵן הָאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר מַעֲיֵד עֲלֵיהֶם. אָמֵן.
- 40 And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

יג

13

- ועתה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, אוֹסִיף לְהַשְׁלִים אֶת כְּתָב הַזְכָּרוֹן הַזֶּה עַל אֲדוּת חֲרָבֹת הָעָם אֲשֶׁר עָלָיו כָּתְבֹתִי.
- 1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.
- כִּי הִנֵּה, הֵם מֵאֲסוּ בְּכָל דְּבָרֵי אֶתֶר, כִּי הוּא אָכֵן הוֹדִיעָם עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, מִרְאִשִׁית הָאָדָם; וְכִי אַחֵר שׁוֹף הַמַּיִם מֵעַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, הִיא הָיְתָה אָרֶץ מְבֻחָר מִכָּל שְׂאֵר הָאָרְצוֹת, אָרֶץ נִבְחָרָת אֲשֶׁר לִיהוָה. עַל כֵּן, הָיָה בְּרָצוֹנוֹ כִּי כָּל הַשּׂוֹכְנִים בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת עָבֹד יַעֲבֹדוּהוּ.
- 2 For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;
- וְכִי מְקוֹמָהּ יְהִיָּה מְקוֹם יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה, אֲשֶׁר תֵּרַד מִן הַשָּׁמַיִם, מְקוֹם מְקֻדָּשׁ יְהוָה.
- 3 And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.
- וְהִנֵּה, אֶתֶר חָזָה אֶת יְמוֹת הַמְּשִׁיחַ. וְהוּא דִּבֶּר עַל יְרוּשָׁלַם הַחֲדָשָׁה בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת.
- 4 Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.
- וְהוּא אָף דִּבֶּר עַל בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל וְעַל יְרוּשָׁלַם אֲשֶׁר מִמֶּנָּה יֵצֵא לְחִי, אֲשֶׁר אַחֵר הַחֲרָבָה הִיא תִּבְנֶה שֵׁנִית, וְתִהְיֶה עִיר קֹדֶשׁ לִיהוָה; עַל כֵּן אֵין הִיא יְרוּשָׁלַם חֲדָשָׁה, כִּי כָּבֵר הָיְתָה בִּימֵי קֶדֶם. וְאוּלָם הִיא תִּבְנֶה שֵׁנִית וְתִהְיֶה עִיר קֹדֶשׁ לִיהוָה; וְהִיא תִּבְנֶה בְּעִבּוֹר בֵּית יִשְׂרָאֵל.
- 5 And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel.
- וְכִי יְרוּשָׁלַם חֲדָשָׁה עֲתִידָה לִהְבִּנוֹת בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, לְשִׁאֲרֵית זֶרַע יוֹסֵף; וְלְדְבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה קִיָּמָת תִּבְנִית.
- 6 And that a New Jerusalem should be built upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.
- כִּי כִּמוֹ אֲשֶׁר הוֹרִיד יוֹסֵף אֶת אָבִיו אֶל אָרֶץ מִצְרַיִם, וְהָ מָת בָּהּ, כֵּן הוֹצִיא יְהוָה אֶת שְׂאֲרֵית זֶרַע יוֹסֵף מֵאָרֶץ יְרוּשָׁלַם, בְּעִבּוֹר יְרַחֵם עֲלֵיהֶם, לְבַל יֵאָבְדוּ; אָכֵן, כִּפִּי אֲשֶׁר רַחֵם עַל אָבִי יוֹסֵף, לְבַל יֵאָבֵד.
- 7 For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.
- עַל כֵּן תִּבְנֶה שְׂאֲרֵית בֵּית יוֹסֵף בָּאָרֶץ הַזֹּאת, וְתִהְיֶה זֹאת אָרֶץ נַחֲלָתָם; וְהֵם יִבְנוּ עִיר קֹדֶשׁ
- 8 Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build

ליהוה, כמו ירושלם אשר מקדם, ולא יכלמו עוד, עד אשר יבוא הקץ, בחלף הארץ.

up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

ויהיו שמים חדשים וארץ חדשה; והם יהיו כקודמיהם, וזולת כי הישן יחלף וכל הדברים יתחדשו.

9 And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

אז תופיע ירושלם החדשה; וברוכים השוכנים בה, כי אלה הם אשר בגדיהם לבנים על ידי דם השם; והם הנמנים עם שארית זרע יוסף, אשר מבית ישראל המה.

10 And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

אז תבוא אף ירושלם הישנה; ויושביה ברוכים הם, כי נרחצו בדם השם; והם אלה אשר היו פזורים ואשר נקבצו מארבע כנפות הארץ ומארצות הצפון. והם הלוקחים חלק בקיום הברית אשר כרת אלהים עם אברהם אביהם.

11 And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

ובבוא הדברים האלה יתקיים הכתוב האומר: יש אשר היו ראשונים, ויהיו אחרונים; ויש אשר היו אחרונים, ויהיו ראשונים.

12 And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

ואני אמרתי לכתב עוד, אף אסור עלי הדבר. אולם גדולות ונפלאות היו נבואות אתר, אף האנשים חשבוהו כאין וגרשוהו; והוא הסתתר ביום במערת סלע ובלילה יצא לחזות את אשר יבוא על העם.

13 And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

ובשבתי במערת הסלע כתב את שאר כתב הזכרון הזה, בחזונו לילה את האבדון אשר יבוא על העם.

14 And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of his record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

והיה בעצם השנה אשר גרש מתוך העם, פריצה בעם מלחמה גדולה; כי רבים היו גבורי כח הקמים בבקשם לאבד את קוריאנטומר במזמות רשעתם החשאיות, אשר עליהן דבר.

15 And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

וקוריאנטומר, אשר היה מלמד בכל דרכי המלחמה ובכל ערמת העולם, יצא להלחם במבקשי נפשו.

16 And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

אף הוא לא שב מסורו, וכמוהו בניו ובנותיו יפי התאר; וכן בני קוהור ובנותיו יפי התאר.

17 But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters

אתר יג:יח-כז

ואף בני קוריהור ובנותיו יפי התאר; ובקצרה
אף אחד מן הבנים והבנות יפי התאר אשר
על פני כל האדמה לא שב מחטאתו.

of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters
upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

על כן, בשנה הראשונה לשכן אתר במערת
הסלע, נהרגו אנשים רבים בחרב אגדות
הסתה הנלחמות בקוריאנטומר בעבור תפיש
המלוכה מידי.

18 Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the
cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword
of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they
might obtain the kingdom.

ובני קוריאנטומר הרבו להלחם ודמיהם
נשפכו לרב.

19 And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and
bled much.

והיה דבר יהוה אל אתר בשנה השנייה,
כי ילך וינבא לקוריאנטומר כי אם ישוב מרע,
הוא וכל ביתו, יתנהו יהוה את מלכותו ויחוס
על העם;

20 And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he
should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and
all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare
the people—

ולא, לאבד העם וכל בני ביתו, וזולתו. והוא
יחיה רק עד ראותו את קיום דברי הנבואה
על אודות עם אחר אשר יקבל את הארץ
לנחלתם; וכי קוריאנטומר יקבר בידם,
וכי תאבד כל נפש, וזולת קוריאנטומר.

21 Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were
himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies
which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land
for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them;
and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

והיה כי קוריאנטומר לא שב מרעתו, ואף לא
ביתו ולא העם; והמלחמות לא חדלו,
והאנשים בקשו להרג את אתר, אך הוא ברח
מפניהם ושב להסתתר במערת הסלע.

22 And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his
household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they
sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the
cavity of the rock.

והיה כי קם שרד, ואף הוא נלחם
בקוריאנטומר; והוא הפה, עד כי שבה אותו
בשנה השלישית.

23 And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle
unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year
he did bring him into captivity.

ובני קוריאנטומר הכו את שרד בשנה
הרביעית והשיבו את המלכות לאביהם.

24 And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and
did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

אז פשטה המלחמה על כל פני הארץ; כל
איש נלחם עם כנפיתו לקים את חפצו.

25 Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man
with his band fighting for that which he desired.

והיו בארץ שודדים; אכן, כל מיני רשעה
פשטו על כל פני הארץ.

26 And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all
the face of the land.

וחמת קוריאנטומר בערה על שרד, והוא יצא
אליו עם צבאו להלחם בו; והם נפגשו בחמת
זעם, בעמק גלגל נפגשו; והמלחמה הייתה
כבדה מאד.

27 And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with
Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did
meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the
battle became exceedingly sore.

- 28 And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.
- וְשָׂרָד נִלְחַם בּוֹ שְׁלֹשָׁה יָמִים. וְהָיָה כִּי הִכְהוּ קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר, וַיִּרְדֹּף אַחֲרָיו עַד בּוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׁפֵלַת חֶשְׁלוֹן.
- 29 And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.
- וְשָׂרָד הִשִּׁיבוּ מִלְחָמָה בְּשְׁפִלוֹת, וְהִנֵּה הוּא הִכָּה אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר וַיְדַפּוּ, וַהֲסִיגוּ אֶל עֵמֶק גִּלְגָּל.
- 30 And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר נִלְחַם בְּשָׂרָד שְׁנִית בְּעֵמֶק גִּלְגָּל, וְהִכָּה אֶת שָׂרָד וַהֲמִיתוֹ.
- 31 And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.
- וַיַּעַן אֲשֶׁר פָּצְעוּ שָׂרָד בִּירְכוֹ, לֹא יָצָא עוֹד קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר לְמִלְחָמָה שְׁנָתַיִם יָמִים; וּבָעֵת הַהִיא הָיוּ כָּל אַנְשֵׁי הָאָרֶץ שׁוֹפְכִים דָּם בְּאֵין מוֹנֵעַ.

14

יד

- 1 And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.
- וְהָיְתָה קִלְלָה גְדוֹלָה עַל כָּל הָאָרֶץ מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹנוֹת הָעָם. וְהָיָה כִּי הִנִּיחַ אִישׁ אֵישׁ אֶת כְּלָיו, אוֹ אֶת חֶרְבוֹ, עַל מִדְּף בֵּיתוֹ, אוֹ בְּמָקוֹם הַחֻזְקָתָם, וְהִנֵּה לְמַחְרָת לֹא מֵצְאָם; כֹּה גְדוֹלָה הָיְתָה הַקִּלְלָה עַל פְּנֵי הָאָרֶץ.
- 2 Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.
- עַל כֵּן דָּבַק כָּל אִישׁ בְּקִנְיָנוֹ וַהֲחִזִּיקוּ בִּידוֹ, בְּלֹא לָלוּז וּבְלֹא לְהִשְׁאִיל; וְכָל אִישׁ הִחִזִּיק אֶת נֹצֵב חֶרְבוֹ בְּיָמֵינוּ, לְמַעַן הִגֵּן עַל רְכוּשׁוֹ, וְעַל חַיּוֹ וְעַל חַיֵּי נְשׁוֹתָיו וְיֶלְדָּיו.
- 3 And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.
- וְהָיָה כְּעֵבֶר שְׁנָתַיִם יָמִים אַחֵר מוֹת שָׂרָד, וְהִנֵּה קָם אָחִי שָׂרָד וַיִּצָּא לְמִלְחָמָה עַל קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר; וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר הִכְהוּ וַיִּרְדֹּף אַחֲרָיו עַד יַעַר אַכִּישׁ.
- 4 And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.
- וְאָחִי שָׂרָד נִלְחַם בּוֹ בְּיַעַר אַכִּישׁ; וְהָיְתָה הַמִּלְחָמָה כְּבֵדָה מְאֹד, וְאַלְפִים רַבִּים נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב.
- 5 And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר הִטִּיל מָצוֹר עַל הַיַּעַר; וְאָחִי שָׂרָד יָצָא מִן הַיַּעַר בַּלַּיְלָה וַהֲרֹג חֵלֶק מִמִּצְבָּא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר בְּהִיוֹתָם שׁוֹכְרִים.
- 6 And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.
- וְהוּא בָּא אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן, וַיָּשֶׁב עַל כִּסֵּי הַמַּלְכוּת אֲשֶׁר לְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר.

אתר יד:ז-יח

- 7 And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי שָׁכַן עִם צָבָאוֹ בְּיַעַר בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁנָתַיִם יָמִים, וְאִסַּף כַּח גָּדוֹל לְצָבָאוֹ.
- 8 Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.
- וְאָף אָחִי שָׂרֵד, אֲשֶׁר שְׁמוֹ נִקְרָא גִלְעָד, קָבַל תְּגִבְרַת רַבָּה לְצָבָאוֹ, מִפְּנֵי אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר.
- 9 And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.
- וְהָיָה בָּעֵת שִׁבְתּוֹ עַל כִּסֵּאוֹ, רָצְחוּ כְהֵנוֹ הַגָּדוֹל.
- 10 And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.
- וְאֶחָד מִחֲבָרֵי אֲגָדוֹת הַסֵּתֶר רָצַח אֶת הַכֹּהֵן בְּמִשְׁעוֹל סֵתֶר, וְלָקַח לוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה. וְשֵׁם הָאִישׁ לִיב. וְלִיב הָיָה גָבֹר בְּעַל מִזָּה רַבָּה, וְהָיָה גָדוֹל מִכָּל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר בָּעָם.
- 11 And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.
- וְהָיָה בִּשְׁנָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה לְשָׁלוֹטוֹן לִיב, עָלָה קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי אֶל אֶרֶץ מוֹרוֹן, וְאָסַר מִלְחָמָה עַל לִיב.
- 12 And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.
- וּבַהֲלָחֵם קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי בְּלִיב, הִכָּה לִיב אֶת זְרוֹעוֹ וּפָצְעָה; אָף צָבָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי הִשְׁתַּעַר עַל לִיב, וְהוּא נָס אֶל גְּבוּל חוּף הַיָּם.
- 13 And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי רָדַף אַחֲרָיו, וְלִיב יָצָא עָלָיו לִקְרֹב עַל חוּף הַיָּם.
- 14 And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.
- וְלִיב הִכָּה אֶת צָבָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי, עַד כִּי נָסוּ שְׁנֵיתָא אֶל יַעַר אַכִּישׁ.
- 15 And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.
- וְלִיב רָדַף אַחֲרָיו עַד בּוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׂפֹלֶת אַגוֹשׁ; וּבָעֵת מְנוֹסָתוֹ מִפְּנֵי לִיב, לָקַח קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי אֶת כָּל יוֹשְׁבֵי חֻבֵּל הָאֶרֶץ הַהוּא, אֲשֶׁר נָס שָׁמָּה.
- 16 And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.
- וְהָיָה בּוֹאוֹ אֶל שְׂפֹלֶת אַגוֹשׁ, הוּא נָלָחֵם בְּלִיב, וְהִכָּהוּ עַד מוֹת. וְאוֹלָם, אָחִי לִיב יָצָא תַּחְתָּיו עַל קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי וְהִמְלִיחָמָה כְּבֹדָה מְאֹד; וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי נָס שְׁנֵיתָא מִפְּנֵי צָבָא אָחִי לִיב.
- 17 Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.
- וְשֵׁם אָחִי לִיב נִקְרָא שִׁז. וְשׁוֹ רָדַף אַחֲרָיו קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְרִי; וְהוּא הָרַס עָרִים רַבּוֹת, וְהָרַג נָשִׁים וְיְלָדִים, וְאֶת הָעָרִים שָׂרַף.
- 18 And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!
- וְהָיָה כִּי נָפַל פֶּחַד מִפְּנֵי שִׁז עַל כָּל הָאֶרֶץ; אֲכֹן הִצְעָקָה עֲבָרָה בְּכָל הָאֶרֶץ, לֵאמֹר: מִי יוּכַל לַעֲמֹד בְּפָנֵי צָבָא שִׁז? הִנֵּה, מְטַאטֵא הוּא אֶת הָאֲדָמָה מִלְּפָנָיו!

- 19 והאנשים החלו לנהר בכל פני הארץ ולהתגודד לצבאות.
- 20 והם היו מפלגים. חלקם ברחו אל צבא שזי וחלקם ברחו אל צבא קוריאנטומר.
- 21 וכה גדולה וארצה היתה המלחמה, וכה משוף היה חזיון הדמים והשבח, עד כי כל פני הארץ כסו בגויות החללים.
- 22 וכה מהירה וחפזה היתה המלחמה, עד אשר לא נותר איש לקבר את המתים, כי הם צעדו ממרחץ דמים אל מרחץ דמים בהותירם אחריהם גופות גברים ונשים וילדים, פזורות על פני הארץ, להיות מאכל לרמות הבשר.
- 23 וצחנתם נשאה על פני הארץ, אכן, על כל פניה; לכן התענה העם יומם ולילה, מפני הצחנה ההיא.
- 24 ואולם שזי לא חדל מרדף אחר קוריאנטומר, כי נשבע לנקם מידיו את דמי אחיו ההרוג ובעבור דבר יהוה אל אתר האומר כי לא יפל קוריאנטומר בחרב.
- 25 וכה רואים אנחנו כי פקדם יהוה במלא חמתו, וכי רשעתם ותועבותיהם הכינו את דרך השמדתם הנצחית.
- 26 ושזי רדף אחר קוריאנטומר מזרחה, עד גבול חוף הים. שם נלחם קוריאנטומר בשזי במשך שלשה ימים.
- 27 וכה נוראה היתה ההשמדה בקרב צבא שזי, עד כי אחזם הפחד, והאנשים החלו לנוס מפני צבא קוריאנטומר אל ארץ קוריהור; והם סחפו את יושבי הארץ אשר עמדו בדרךם, את כל אשר לא התחברו אליהם.
- 28 והם נטו את אהליהם בעמק קוריהור; וקוריאנטומר נטה את אהליו בעמק שור. ועמק שור היה ליד הגבעה קומנור; על פן אסף קוריאנטומר את צבאו על הגבעה קומנור. והוא תקע בשופר אל צבא שזי לקראתם אל הקרב.
- 19 And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.
- 20 And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.
- 21 And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.
- 22 And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.
- 23 And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.
- 24 Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.
- 25 And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.
- 26 And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.
- 27 And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.
- 28 And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

- 29 וַחֲלִי שִׁז יֵצְאוּ לְקִרְאָתָם, וְאוֹלָם הֵם שָׁבוּ וְנִהְדָּפוּ; וְהֵם בָּאוּ בַּשְּׁנִית, וּבַשְּׁנִית נִהְדָּפוּ. וְהָיָה כִּי הֵם בָּאוּ עוֹד בַּשְּׁלִישִׁית, וְהַמִּלְחָמָה כָּבֵדָה עַד מְאֹד.
- 30 וַשִּׁז הָלַם בְּקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר וּפָצְעוּ וּפָצְעוּ עֲמָקִים רַבִּים. וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר הִתְעַלֵּף מֵאֲבֹד דָּם, וְנִשְׁאָוָהוּ מִשָּׁם, כְּאִלּוּ הָיָה מֵת.
- 31 וְהָיוּ אֲבֹדוֹת הַגְּבָרִים וְהַנְּשִׁים וְהַיְלָדִים, בַּשְּׁנִי הַמַּחֲנוֹת, כֹּה גְדוֹלוֹת עַד כִּי צָוָה שִׁז אֶת אֲנָשָׁיו לְחַדֵּל מִרְדִּיפָה אַחֵר צָבָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר; עַל כֵּן הֵם שָׁבוּ אֶל מַחֲנֵם.

טו

15

- וְהָיָה אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר רָפָא קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר מִפְּצָעָיו, הוּא זָכַר אֶת דְּבָרֵי אֶתֶר אֵלָיו.
- וְהוּא רָאָה כִּי כָּבֵד נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב כְּמֵאתִים רְבֹאֵם מַעֲמֹ, וְנִנְעֵצַב לְבוֹ; אָכֵן, נִהְרְגוּ רְבֹאֵם רַבּוֹת גְּבוּרֵי חֵיל וְכֹן נִשְׁיָהֶם וַיְלָדֵיהֶם.
- וְהוּא הִחֵל לְהִנָּחֵם עַל הָרַע אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה. הוּא זָכַר אֶת הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי כָּל הַנְּבִיאִים; וְרָאָה אֶת אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר קָמוּ וְהָיוּ עַד כֹּה, כָּל פֶּרֶט וּפֶרֶט. וְנִפְשׁוּ אֲבֵלָה וּמֵאֲנָה לְהִנָּחֵם.
- וְהוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת אֶל שִׁז וּבִקְשׁוּ לְחוּס עַל הָעָם; וְהוּא אָמַר כִּי יִנִּיחַ מִיָּדוֹ אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה בְּעִבּוֹר חַיֵּי הָעָם.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר קִבֵּל שִׁז אֶת הָאֶגְרָת, הוּא כָּתַב אֶגְרָת אֶל קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר וְאָמַר כִּי אִם יִמָּסֵר עֲצָמוֹ לְמַעַן יִהְרָגָהוּ בְּמוֹ חֶרֶב, יָחוּס עַל חַיֵּי הָאֲנָשִׁים.
- וּבְנֵי הָעָם לֹא שָׁבוּ מִעֲוֹנָם. וְאֲנָשִׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר עוֹרְרוּ לְכַעַס עַל אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז, וְאֲנָשִׁי שִׁז עוֹרְרוּ לְכַעַס עַל אֲנָשִׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר; עַל כֵּן נִלְחָמוּ אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז בְּאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר.
- וּכְרָאוֹת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר כִּי קְרוּבָה שְׁעָתוֹ לְנָפֹל, הוּא בָּרַח שְׁנִית מִפְּנֵי אֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז.
- 1 And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.
- 2 He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.
- 3 He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.
- 4 And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.
- 5 And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.
- 6 And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.
- 7 And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

אתר טו:ח-טז

- והוא בא אל מי ריפליאנקום; ומשמע השם
ההוא גדול או רב מכל. והיה בבואם אל
מקום המים האלה, הם נטו את אהליהם;
ושז אף הוא נטה את אהליו לידם; לכן הם
יצאו למחרת אל הקרב.
- והם נלחמו מלחמה קשה מאד, וקוריאנטומר
נפצע שנית, והתעלף מאבוד דם.
- וחילי קוריאנטומר השתערו על חילות
שז, והכום והניסום מפניהם. והם נסו דרומה,
ונטו את אהליהם במקום אשר שמו
נקרא אוגת.
- וחילי קוריאנטומר נטו את אהליהם ליד
הגבעה רמה; היא הגבעה אשר בה הצפין
אבי מורמון את כתבי הזכרון אשר ליהוה,
אשר קדושים.
- והם קבצו את כל העם אשר על כל פני
הארץ, אשר לא נהרגו, וזלת אתה.
- ואתר ראה את כל מעשי העם; וראה כי
העם אשר היו בעד קוריאנטומר נקבצו אל
צבא קוריאנטומר, וכי העם אשר היו בעד שז
נקבצו אל צבא שז.
- אכן, במשך ארבע שנים הם היו מקבצים את
העם בעבור יקחו להם את כל האנשים אשר
על פני הארץ, ובעבור יקבלו את כל העצמה
אשר היה לאל ידם לקבל.
- והיה בהתקבץ כלם, איש-איש לצבא אשר
חפצו, עם נשיהם וילדיהם, בהיות גברים,
נשים וילדים חמושים בכלי מלחמה ובמגנים
ובשריוני חזה ובקובעים, ובהיותם לבושים חגור
קרב, הם יצאו לקרב, חיל לקראת חיל; והם
נלחמו כל היום ההוא, ולא הייתה הכרעה.
- וברדת הלילה הם היו יגעים ושובו אל
מחנותיהם; ואחר שובם אל מחנותיהם
הם נשאו את קולם ביללה וקינה על אבדן
אנשיהם אשר נפלו. והיו זעקותיהם
ויללותיהם וקינותיהם כה גדולות,
עד כי פלחו את האויר.
- 8 And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.
- 9 And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.
- 10 And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.
- 11 And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.
- 12 And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.
- 13 And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.
- 14 Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.
- 15 And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, everyone to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.
- 16 And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

- 17 And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.
- וּלְמַחֲרָת הֵם יֵצְאוּ שֵׁנִית לִקְרָב, וְהָיָה הַיּוֹם הַהוּא גָּדוֹל וְנוֹרָא, וְאוֹלָם, לֹא הָיְתָה הַכְרָעָה. וּבִבּוֹא הַלַּיְלָה, הֵם פָּלְחוּ שֵׁנִית אֶת הָאָוִיר בְּזַעֲקוֹתֵיהֶם וּבִלְלוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְקִינוֹתֵיהֶם עַל אֲבֹדָן אֲנָשֵׁיהֶם אֲשֶׁר נָפְלוּ.
- 18 And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.
- וְקוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר כָּתַב שֵׁנִית אֶגְרָת אֶל שִׁז, וּבִקְשׁוֹ כִּי לֹא יָשׁוּב לְהִלָּחֵם, כִּי אִם יִקַּח אֶת הַמְּלוּכָה, וְיַחֲסוּ עַל חַיֵּי הָעָם.
- 19 And behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.
- וְהִנֵּה, רוּחַ יְהוָה חָדְלָה לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִמָּם, וְלִשְׁטָן הָיְתָה שְׁלִיטָה מְלָאָה עַל לֵב הָעָם; כִּי הֵם הָיוּ מְסוּרִים לִקְשֵׁי לִבָּם וּלְעֵרְוֹן דַּעְתָּם בְּעֵבֹר יִשְׁמָדוֹ; עַל כֵּן הֵם שָׁבוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ לְמִלְחָמָה.
- 20 And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.
- וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא; וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם יָשְׁנוּ עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 21 And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַמָּחָרָת הֵם נִלְחָמוּ עַד בּוֹא הַלַּיְלָה.
- 22 And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.
- וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם הָיוּ שׂוֹכְרִים מְזַעֵם, כְּשׂוֹכֵר הַלֵּוֹם יַיִן; וְהֵם יָשְׁנוּ שֵׁנִית עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם.
- 23 And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.
- וּבַיּוֹם הַמָּחָרָת הֵם שָׁבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם; וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה הֵם כָּלָם נָפְלוּ בַּחֶרֶב, זֹלַת חֲמִשִּׁים וּשְׁנַיִם מֵאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר, וְשִׁשִּׁים וְתֵשַׁע מֵאֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז.
- 24 And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.
- וּבַלַּיְלָה הַהוּא הֵם יָשְׁנוּ עַל חֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם, וּלְמַחֲרָת שָׁבוּ לְהִלָּחֵם; וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בְּרֶב פָּחַם בַּחֶרְבוֹתֵיהֶם וּבְמִגְנֵיהֶם כָּל הַיּוֹם הַהוּא.
- 25 And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.
- וּכְבוֹא הַלַּיְלָה נִוְתְּרוּ שְׁלִשִּׁים וּשְׁנַיִם מֵאֲנָשֵׁי שִׁז וְעֶשְׂרִים וְשֶׁבַע מֵאֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר.
- 26 And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.
- וְהֵם אָכְלוּ וַיָּשְׁנוּ וַהֲכִינוּ לְקִרְאָת הַמָּוֶת אֲשֶׁר לְמַחֲרָת. וְהֵם הָיוּ אֲנָשִׁים גְּדוֹלֵי מַדּוּת וְחִזְקִים כָּלֹךְ גְּבָרִים.
- 27 And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.
- וְהֵם נִלְחָמוּ בְּמִשְׁךְ שְׁלֹשׁ שָׁעוֹת וַנָּפְלוּ מִתַּעֲלָפִים מֵאֲבֹד דָּם.
- 28 And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.
- וְהָיָה כְּאֲשֶׁר הִתְאוּשְׁשׁוּ אֲנָשֵׁי קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר עַד כִּי יָכְלוּ לְהֵלֵךְ, הֵם עָמְדוּ לְהִמָּלֵט עַל נַפְשָׁם; וְהִנֵּה קָם שִׁז, וְכֵן אֲנָשָׁיו, וְהוּא נִשְׁבַּע בְּחִמָּתוֹ כִּי יַהֲרֹג אֶת קוֹרִיאַנְטוּמְר, וְלֹא, יֵאָבֵד בַּחֶרֶב.

אתר טו:כט – מורוני א:ב

- 29 Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.
- 30 And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.
- 31 And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised upon his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.
- 32 And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.
- 33 And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.
- 34 Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.
- על כן הוא רדף אחריהם, והשיגם למחרת; והם שבו להלחם בחרב. והיה בנפל כלם בחרב, זולת קוריאנטומר ושיז, והנה נפל שיז מתעלף מאבוד דם.
- והיה אחר אשר נשען קוריאנטומר על חרבו לנוח מעט, הוא התזז את ראש שיז מעליו.
- ואחר התזז את ראש שיז, התרומם שיז על ידיו ונפל; ואחר אשר נאבק על נשימתו, מת.
- וקוריאנטומר נפל ארצה, והיה כחסר חיים.
- ויהוה דבר אל אתר, ואמר אליו: לך לך; והוא הלך וראה כי דברי יהוה קמו והיו כלם. והוא סים את כתב זכרונותיו, אשר ממנו לא רשמתי אף חלק אחד ממאה; והוא הטמינם באפן אשר מצאום אנשי למחי.
- ואלה הדברים האחרונים אשר כתב אתר: אם ירצה יהוה כי אעבר תמורה, או כי אשא את רצון יהוה בעודי בבשר, אחת היא לי, ובלבד אשר אנשע במלכות אלהים. אמן.

ספר מורוני

THE BOOK OF MORONI

מורוני כותב חקי כנסיה הקדושים בקרב עמו. הוא רושם כמה מדברי אביו מורמון. הוא מדבר אל הגוים והלמנים אשר יהיו באחרית הימים. (בערך 421-401 לספירה.)

Moroni records sacred ordinances of the church among his people. He writes some of the words of his father Mormon. He speaks to the Gentiles and Lamanites who will be in the latter days. (About A.D. 401-421.)

א

1

- 1 Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.
- 2 For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.
- ועתה, אני, מורוני, אחר אשר פליתי לרשם את קצור קורות עם ירד, התכוננתי לחדל מכתב; אך עדן לא כלי ימי, ואינני מתודע אל הלמנים פן ישמידוני.
- כי הנה המלחמות ביניהם קשות ועזות עד מאד, ומפני שנאתם מוציאים הם להורג כל נפיי אשר לא יכחש בנשיח.

מורוני א:ג-ג:ד

- 3 And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whither-soever I can for the safety of mine own life.
- וְאֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, לֹא אֶכְחַשׁ בְּמִשִּׁיחַ; לָכֵן נִדְדָּה אֲנִי אֶל כָּל מְקוֹם אֲשֶׁר אוֹכַל לְמַצֵּא בוֹ מִקָּלֵט לְנַפְשִׁי.
- 4 Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written anymore; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.
- לָכֵן, אֶכְתֹּב דְּבָרִים אַחֲדִים נוספים, אֲשֶׁר לֹא כִכְוַנְתִּי הַקּוֹדֶמֶת, כִּי הִתְכַּוַּנְתִּי שֶׁלֹּא לְהוֹסִיף כְּתוֹב. אֲךָ אֲנִי כוֹתֵב דְּבָרִים אַחֲדִים נוספים אֲשֶׁר אוּלֵי יִהְיוּ, בְּיוֹם אֲשֶׁר יָבוֹא, בְּעֲלֵי עֶרְךָ בְּעֵינֵי אֲחֵי הַלְּמָנִיתִים, כְּרָצוֹן יְהוָה.

ב

2

- 1 The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—
- דְּבָרֵי הַמִּשִּׁיחַ אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר אֶל תַּלְמִידָיו, שְׁנֵים עָשָׂר אֲשֶׁר בָּחַרם, בְּסֻמְכּוֹ אֶת יָדָיו עָלֵיהֶם.
- 2 And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.
- הוּא קָרָא לָהֶם בְּשֵׁמוֹתֵיהֶם, לֵאמֹר: קְרֹאוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁמִי בְּהַפְלָה אֲדִירָה, וְאַחֵר עֲשׂוּתְכֶם כֵּן, תִּמְלְאוּ כַח לָתֵת אֶת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְזֶה אֲשֶׁר עַל רֹאשׁוֹ תִסְמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיכֶם. בְּשֵׁמִי תִתְּנוּהוּ כִּי כֹה יַעֲשׂוּ שְׁלִיחֵי.
- 3 Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.
- אַלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר הַמִּשִּׁיחַ אֲלֵיהֶם בְּעֵת הוֹפְעָתוֹ הָרִאשׁוֹנָה; וְהָיָה כִּי לֹא שָׁמְעוּהוּ הַמִּן הָעָם, אֲךָ הַתַּלְמִידִים שָׁמְעוּ. וְעַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר סָמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם נָחָה רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.

ג

3

- 1 The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—
- זֶה אַפֵּן סְמִיכַת כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים אֲשֶׁר עָרְכוּ הַתַּלְמִידִים, הַמָּה אֲשֶׁר נִקְרְאוּ זִקְנֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה:
- 2 After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:
- אַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִתְפַּלְלוּ אֶל הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, הֵם סָמְכוּ אֶת יְדֵיהֶם עָלֵיהֶם וְכֹה אָמְרוּ:
- 3 In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest, (or, if he be a teacher) I ordain you to be a teacher, to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.
- בְּשֵׁם יֵשׁוּעַ הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, הִנְנִי מְסַמֵּיכְךָ לְהִיּוֹת כְּהֵן, אוֹ, אִם יִהְיֶה מוֹרֶה, הִנְנִי מְסַמֵּיכְךָ לְהִיּוֹת מוֹרֶה, לְהַסִּיף לְתַשׁוּבָה וְלִמְחִילַת חַטָּאִים עַל יְדֵי יֵשׁוּעַ הַמִּשִּׁיחַ, בְּאַמּוּנָה מְתִמֶּדֶה בְּשֵׁמוֹ עַד הַקֵּץ. אָמֵן.
- 4 And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.
- בְּאַפֵּן זֶה הֵם הִסְמִיכוּ כְּהֻנִּים וּמוֹרִים כְּחֻסְדֵּי אֱלֹהִים וּקְרִיאָתוֹ אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם; וְהֵם הִסְמִיכוּם בְּכַח רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אֲשֶׁר בָּהֶם.

ד

4

וְזֶה הָאִפֶּן אֲשֶׁר עַל פִּי שְׁמָשׁוּ בִקְדָּשׁ זִקְנִיָּהֶם
וְלִהְיוֹתָם אֶת בָּשָׂר הַמְּשִׁיחַ וְדָמוֹ לְחִבְרֵי
הַכְּנִסְיָה; וְהֵם הִגִּישׁוּ אוֹתָם כְּפִי מִצְוֹת
הַמְּשִׁיחַ. לָכֵן יוֹדְעִים אֲנִיכֶם כִּי הָאִפֶּן הַזֶּה
נָכוֹן; וְהִזְקֵן אוֹ הַכֹּהֵן שְׁמֵשׁ בָּזֶה:

הֵם כָּרְעוּ בָּרֶךְ עִם חֲבֵרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה וְהִתְפַּלְּלוּ אֶל
הָאֵב בְּשֵׁם הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לֵאמֹר:

אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, מִבְּקָשִׁים אֲנִיכֶם
מִמֶּךָ בְּשֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי תִבְרַךְ אֶת
הַלֶּחֶם הַזֶּה וְתִקְדָּשׁוּ בְּעֵבֶר נֶפֶשׁ כָּל הָאוֹכְלִים
מִמֶּנּוּ; לְמַעַן יֵאָכְלוּ לְזִכָּר גּוֹף בְּנֶךָ וְיִעֲשִׂדוּ
לְפָנֶיךָ, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, כִּי תִפְצִיעַ הֵם
לְקַחַת עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת שֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, וְלִזְכֹּרוֹ תָּמִיד,
וְלִשְׁמֹר אֶת מִצְוֹתָיו אֲשֶׁר צִוָּם, לְמַעַן תִּשְׁכַּן
רוּחוֹ עִמָּם תָּמִיד. אָמֵן.

1 The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

2 And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

3 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

ה

5

וְזֶה סֵדֶר הַגִּשְׁתַּת הַיַּיִן: הֵם לָקְחוּ אֶת הַכּוֹס
וְאָמְרוּ:

אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, מִבְּקָשִׁים אֲנִיכֶם
מִמֶּךָ בְּשֵׁם בְּנֶךָ, יֵשׁוּעַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי תִבְרַךְ אֶת
הַיַּיִן הַזֶּה וְתִקְדָּשׁוּ בְּעֵבֶר נֶפֶשׁ כָּל הַשּׁוֹתִים
מִמֶּנּוּ; לְמַעַן יַעֲשׂוּ זֹאת לְזִכָּר דָּם בְּנֶךָ, אֲשֶׁר
נִשְׁפָּךְ לְמַעַנָם, וְיִעֲשִׂדוּ לְפָנֶיךָ, אֱלֹהִים, אֵב
הָעוֹלָמִים, כִּי הֵם זֹכְרִים אוֹתוֹ תָּמִיד, לְמַעַן
תִּשְׁכַּן רוּחוֹ עִמָּם. אָמֵן.

1 The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

2 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

ו

6

וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר עַל הַטְּבִילָה. הִנֵּה, זִקְנִים,
כֹּהֲנִים וּמוֹרִים הַטְּבִילוּ; וְהֵם לֹא הַטְּבִילוּ כִּי
אִם בְּהִבִּיאֵם אֶת פְּרִיָם, הַמַּעֲשִׂד כִּי רְאוּיִים
הֵם לָכֵן.

וְהֵם אִף לֹא קִבְּלוּ אִישׁ לְהַטְבִּילָה, כִּי אִם אֶת
הַבָּאִים בְּלֵב נִשְׁבָּר וּבְרוּחַ נִכְאָה, אֲשֶׁר הִעֲשִׂדוּ
לְפָנֶי הַכְּנִסְיָה כִּי אֲכֹן נִחְמוּ עַל כָּל חַטָּאֵיהֶם.

1 And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

- 3 And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.
וְלֹא הִתְקַבְּלוּ אִישׁ לְהִטְבֵּל, בְּלֹתִי אִם קִבַּל עָלָיו אֶת שֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ וְנָמַר אֲמֹר בְּנַפְשׁוֹ לְשָׁרְתוֹ עַד הַקֵּץ.
- 4 And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.
וְאַחֵר אֲשֶׁר הִטְבְּלוּ הַמִּקְבָּלִים לְהִטְבֵּלָה וְנִפְעְלוּ וְטִהְרוּ בְכֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, הֵם נִמְנוּ עִם אַנְשֵׁי כְנִסְיַת הַמָּשִׁיחַ; וְשִׁמוֹתֵיהֶם נִרְשָׁמוּ, לְמַעַן יִזְכְּרוּ וְיִתְכַלְּלוּ עַל יְדֵי דְבַר אֱלֹהִים הַטּוֹב, לְנִצְרָם בְּדֶרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁר וּלְשִׁמְרָם תָּמִיד נִזְהָרִים בַּתְּפִלָּה בְּשִׁימָם אֶת מִבְטָחָם רַק עַל סִגְלוֹת הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אֲשֶׁר הוּא מִיסַד אֱמוּנָתָם וּמְשַׁלְּמָהּ.
- 5 And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.
וְקָהַל הַכְּנִסְיָה הִתְכַּנְּסָה לְעֵתִים קְרוּבוֹת לְצוּם וּלְהִתְפַּלֵּל וּלְשׁוֹחַח אִישׁ עִם רֵעֵהוּ עַל דְּבַר טוֹבַת נַשְׁמָתָם.
- 6 And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.
וְהֵם נִפְגְּשׁוּ לְעֵתִים קְרוּבוֹת לֶאֱכֹל לֶחֶם וּלְשִׁתּוֹת יַיִן, לְזִכָּר הָאֲדוֹן יֵשׁוּעַ.
- 7 And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.
וְהֵם הִקְפִּידוּ כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה כָּל עוֹוֹן בְּקִרְבָּם; וְכָל אֲשֶׁר נִמְצָא עוֹשֶׂה עוֹוֹן, הָאִשָּׁם לִפְנֵי הַזְּקֵנִים עַל יְדֵי שְׁלֹשָׁה עֵדִים חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה, וְאִם לֹא שָׁב מִרְעָתוֹ וְלֹא הִתְוֹדָה, נִמְחָה שְׁמוֹ וְהוּא לֹא נִמְנָה עִם עַם הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 8 But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.
וְאוּלָם בְּכָל עֵת אֲשֶׁר שָׁב הַחוּטָא מִרְעָתוֹ, וּבִקֵּשׁ סְלִיחָה בְּכֹנֶה כֹּנֶה, נִסְלַח לוֹ.
- 9 And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.
וְאִסְפוֹתֵיהֶם נִהְלוּ עַל יְדֵי חֲבָרֵי הַכְּנִסְיָה לְפִי דֶרֶךְ פְּעֻלַּת הָרוּחַ וְעַל יְדֵי כֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ; כִּי אֲכֹן, כָּפִי אֲשֶׁר הִנְהִיגָם כֹּחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ, אִם לְהִטְפֶּה וְאִם לְתוֹכַחָה, אִם לְתַפִּלָּה אוֹ לְתַחֲנָה, וְאִם לְשִׁירָה, כֵּן נַעֲשָׂה.

T

7

- 1 And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.
וְעַתָּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרוֹנִי, אֶכְתֵּב מֵעַט מִדְּבָרֵי אָבִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר עַל אֱמוּנָה, תְּקוּהָ וְחֶסֶד. כִּי בְּאָפֶן הַזֶּה הוּא דִּבֶּר אֶל הָעָם בְּעֵת לְמִדּוֹ אוֹתָם בְּבֵית הַכְּנִסָּה אֲשֶׁר בָּנוּ לְהִיּוֹת מְקוֹם עֲבוֹדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ:
- 2 And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.
הִנֵּה, אֲנִי, מוֹרְמוֹן, אֶדְבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, אַחֵי הַיִּקְרִים; וּבְזָכוֹת אֱלֹהִים הָאֵב וְאֲדוֹנֵנוּ יֵשׁוּעַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ וּרְצוֹנוֹ הַקְּדוֹשׁ וּמִפְנֵי מִתַּת קְרִיאָתוֹ לִי, מִרְשָׁה אֲנִי לְדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם הַעַם.

- 3 על כן אֲדַבֵּר אֵלֵיכֶם, אֲשֶׁר חֲבָרִי הַכְּנִסְיָה וְחִסְדִּי הַמְּשִׁיחַ אִתְּכֶם, וְשׁוֹחֲרֵי הַשְּׁלוֹם אֲשֶׁר קִנִּיתֶם יְדֵי תַקְוָה, אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיהֶם תִּכְנְסוּ אֶל מְנוּחַת יְהוָה, מִעַתָּה וְעַד מְנוּחַתְכֶם עִמּוֹ בַּשָּׁמַיִם.
- 4 And wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.
- 3 וְהִנֵּה, אַחֵי, יַעַן אֲשֶׁר הוֹלְכִים אִתְּכֶם בְּשָׁלוֹם עִם בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, מֵינִיחַ אֲנִי זֹאת עֲלֵיכֶם.
- 4 And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.
- 5 כִּי זֹכֵר אֲנִי אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים הָאוֹמֵר: עַל פִּי מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם תִּכְרִירוּם; כִּי אִם טוֹבִים מַעֲשֵׂיהֶם, אִף הֵם טוֹבִים.
- 5 For I remember the word of God, which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.
- 6 כִּי כֹה אָמַר אֱלֹהִים: לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר רָע הוּא לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב; כִּי בְהַגִּישׁוֹ מִנְחָה, אוֹ בְהַתְּפִלּוֹ אֶל אֱלֹהִים, וְלֹא בְכֹנֶנֶת אֶמֶת, לֹא יִפְּיֵק כָּל תּוֹעֵלָתוֹ.
- 6 For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.
- 7 כִּי הִנֵּה, לֹא תִחָשֵׁב לוֹ זֹאת לְצַדִּיקָה.
- 7 For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.
- 8 כִּי הִנֵּה, בְּתֵת אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע מִנְחָה, בְּחֶסֶר רְצוֹן הוּא נּוֹתֵנָה. עַל כֵּן הִיא נְחֻשֶׁבֶת לוֹ כְּאִלוֹ הַחֲזִיקָה לְעֶצְמוֹ; לְכֹן נְחֻשֶׁב הוּא רָשָׁע לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים.
- 8 For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.
- 9 וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן נְחֻשֶׁבֶת הִיא רָעָה לְאָדָם, אִם מִתְּפַלֵּל הוּא וְלֹא בְכֹנֶנֶת לֵב אֱמֶתִית; אֲכֹן, לֹא תּוֹעִילָהּ זֹאת מֵאוֹמְרָהּ, כִּי לֹא יִקְבֹּל אֱלֹהִים כְּמוֹת אֵלֶּה.
- 9 And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.
- 10 עַל כֵּן, לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב; וְאִף לֹא יִתֵּן מִתֵּן טוֹב.
- 10 Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.
- 11 הֵן לֹא יוּכַל מַעְיָן מֵרַ לְתֵת מִיַּם טוֹבִים; וְכִמּוֹ כֵּן לֹא יוּכַל מַעְיָן טוֹב לְתֵת מִיַּם מְרִים. עַל כֵּן, לֹא יוּכַל אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר הוּא עֶבֶד לְשָׁטָן לְלַכֵּת אַחֵר הַמְּשִׁיחַ; כִּי אִם יִלְךְ הוּא אַחֵר הַמְּשִׁיחַ, אִין הוּא יָכוֹל לְהִיּוֹת עֶבֶד לְשָׁטָן.
- 11 For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.
- 12 עַל כֵּן, כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר טוֹבִים הֵם, מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הֵם בָּאִים, וְאֲשֶׁר רָעִים, מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הֵם; כִּי הַשָּׁטָן הוּא אוֹיֵב לְאֱלֹהִים וְנִלְחָם בּוֹ תָּמִיד; אֲכֹן, קוֹרָא הוּא וּמִפְּתָה לְחַטָּא, וְלַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע תָּמִיד.
- 12 Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.
- 13 אִךְ הִנֵּה, זֶה אֲשֶׁר מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הוּא, קוֹרָא וּמוֹשֵׁךְ לַעֲשׂוֹת תָּמִיד אֶת הַטּוֹב; לְכֹן כָּל דְּבַר
- 13 But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, everything which inviteth and enticeth to do

הקורא ומוֹשֵׁף לַעֲשׂוֹת טוֹב, וְלֹאֲהֵב אֶת
אֱלֹהִים וְלִעֲבֹדוֹ, בְּהִשְׁרָאת אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

עַל כֵּן, הִשְׁמְרוּ, אַחֵי הַיְקָרִים, לִבְל תִּדְּוֹנוּ אֶת
אֲשֶׁר הוּא רָע כְּאֵלוֹ מֵאֱלֹהִים הוּא, אוֹ אֶת הַטּוֹב
וְאֲשֶׁר מֵאֱלֹהִים, כְּאֵלוֹ מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הוּא.

14 Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אַחֵי, נָתַן הוּא זֶה לָכֶם לְשֹׁפֵט, לְמַעַן
תִּדְּעוּ לְהַבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע; וְהַדְּרֹךְ לְשֹׁפֵט
כֹּה פְּשוּטָה, לְמַעַן תִּדְּעוּ בִּידְעָה מְחֻלָּטָה,
כִּפִּי הַבְּחִינְכֶם בֵּין אֹר וּבֵין הַיּוֹם לְחֹשֶׁכֶת הַלַּיְלָה.

15 For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

כִּי הִנֵּה, רוּחַ הַמְּשִׁיחַ נָתַןָה לְכָל אָדָם,
בְּעִבּוֹר יִבְחִין בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע, לְכֵן אֲנִי מְרַאֶה
לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּרֹךְ לְשֹׁפֵט; כָּל דְּבַר הַקּוֹרֵא לַעֲשׂוֹת
טוֹב וְהַמְּסַב אֶת הַדְּעָת לְהֶאֱמִין בַּמְּשִׁיחַ, יוֹצֵא
הוּא מֵאֵת כַּחַּ הַמְּשִׁיחַ וּמִתָּתוֹ; לְכֵן תִּדְּעוּ
יְדִיעָה מְחֻלָּטָה כִּי מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים הוּא.

16 For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for everything which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

וְאוֹלָם כָּל דְּבַר הַמְּסַב אֶת דְּעָת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם
לַעֲשׂוֹת רָע, וְלֹא לְהֶאֱמִין בַּמְּשִׁיחַ, כִּי אִם
לְכַחֵשׁ בּוֹ וְלֹא לִעֲבֹד אֶת אֱלֹהִים, דְּעוֹ בִּידְעָה
מְחֻלָּטָה כִּי מֵאֵת הַשָּׁטָן הוּא. כִּי בְּאִפְּן הַזֶּה
פּוֹעֵל הַשָּׁטָן. כִּי אִין הוּא מְסַב דְּעָת אֶף אָדָם
אֶחָד לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַטּוֹב, אָכֵן, אֶף לֹא אֶחָד;
וְכֵן אִין מְלַאֲכֵיו עוֹשִׂים זֹאת; אֶף לֹא אֶלֶּה
הַמְּקַבְּלִים עֲלֵיהֶם אֶת שְׁלֹטוֹנוֹ.

17 But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

וְעַתָּה, אַחֵי, יֵעַן אֲשֶׁר יוֹדְעִים אַתֶּם אֶת הָאֹר
אֲשֶׁר עַל יְדֵיו תִּשְׁפָּטוּ, וְהוּא אֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ,
הִשְׁמְרוּ לִבְל תִּטְּעוּ בַּמְּשָׁפֵט; כִּי בְּאוֹתוֹ
הַמְּשָׁפֵט אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁפָּטוּ, תִּשְׁפָּטוּ אֶף אַתֶּם.

18 And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

עַל כֵּן אֲנִי מְפַצֵּר בְּכֶם, אַחֵים, כִּי תִּחְקְרוּ
בְּשִׁקְיָה בְּאוֹר הַמְּשִׁיחַ, לְמַעַן תִּדְּעוּ לְהַבְחִין
בֵּין טוֹב וּבֵין רָע; וְאִם תִּחְזִיקוּ בְּכָל דְּבַר טוֹב,
וְלֹא תִּגְנוּהוּ, הִיָּה תִּהְיֶה בְּנֵי הַמְּשִׁיחַ.

19 Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

עַתָּה, אַחֵי, אִיךְ יִכּוֹלִים אַתֶּם לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכָל
דְּבַר טוֹב?

20 And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

הִנְנִי בָּא אֶל אוֹתָהּ הָאֲמוֹנָה, אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ
אֶמְרִיתִי כִּי אֲדַבֵּר; וְאֲנִיד לָכֶם אֶת הַדְּרֹךְ אֲשֶׁר
בָּהּ תּוּכְלוּ לְהַחֲזִיק בְּכָל דְּבַר טוֹב.

21 And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

כִּי הִנֵּה, אֱלֹהִים, הִיֹּדֵעַ אֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים, כִּי
מַעוֹלָמִי עוֹלָמִים הוּא, שָׁלַח מְלָאֲכִים לְשִׁמְשׁוֹת

22 For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of

- לפני בני האדם, לגלות להם בדבר בוא המשיח. והן במשיח בוא יבוא כל דבר טוב.
- 23 And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.
- 24 And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.
- 25 Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.
- 26 And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as sure as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.
- 27 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?
- 28 For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.
- 29 And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.
- 30 For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.
- 31 And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfill and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children
- והנה, בדרכים שונות הראה אלהים דברים טובים לבני האדם; וכל הדברים אשר הם טובים, מאת המשיח הם באים; לולא זאת, היו האדם בני נפלים, ואף דבר טוב אחד לא היה בא אליהם.
- על כן, על ידי שרות המלאכים, ועל ידי כל דבר היוצא מפי אלהים, החלו בני אדם להאמין במשיח. וכך, על ידי האמונה, הם החזיקו בכל דבר טוב; וכך היה עד בוא המשיח.
- ואחר בואו נושעו בני אדם אף על ידי האמונה בשמו; ועל ידי האמונה הם נהיו לבני אלהים. ויחי המשיח, כי דבר הוא את הדברים האלה אל אבותינו, לאמר: כל דבר אשר הוא טוב, אשר תבקשו מן האב בשמי, באמונתכם כי אכן תקבלוהו, עשה יעשה לכם.
- על כן, אחי היקרים, האם חדלו נסים אשר עלה המשיח השמימה וישב לימין אלהים, לדרש מן האב את זכויות רחמי על בני האדם?
- כי הוא, אכן, ספק את תכלית החק, והוא דורש את זכות כל אלה אשר יש להם אמונה בו. והמאמינים בו ידבקו בכל דבר טוב; על כן הוא מליץ ישר לבני האדם, והוא שוכן מרומים לעולם.
- החדלו נסים, אחי היקרים, מפני עשותו זאת? הנני אומר לכם: לא! אף מלאכים לא חדלו לשמש לפני בני האדם.
- כי הנה המלאכים סרים אל משמעתו, לשמש בדבר אשר יצום, בהתגלותם לאנשי אמונה איתנה ודעה מוצקה בכל צורת קדשת אלהים.
- ותפקיד שרותם הוא לקרא את בני האדם לתשובה, ולקיים ולעשות את עבודת בריתות האב, אשר פרת לבני האדם, לפנות בתוכם

את הדרך, על ידי הודעת דבר המשיח אל כלי יהוה הנבחרים, למען יעידו עדותם עליו.

of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

ובעשותם כן מכין יהוה אלהים את הדרך לשאר האדם, למען יאמינו במשיח, וכה תקנה רוח הקדש שבייתה בלבם, כפי כחה. ובאופן הזה מקים האב את הבריתות אשר כרת לבני האדם.

32 And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

וכה אמר המשיח: אם תהיה לכם אמונה בי, עמוד יעמוד לכם כחכם לעשות את כל אשר אמצאהו לנכון.

33 And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

וכן אמר: שובו, כל אפסי ארץ, ובואו אלי, והטבלו בשמי, וקנו לכם אמונה בי, בעבור תושעו.

34 And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

ועתה, אחי היקרים, אם אכן נכונים הדברים אשר דברתי אליכם, ואלהים יראה לכם בכח וברב תפארה ביום האחרון כי אמת הם, ואם כך הדרך האם חדל יום הנסים?

35 And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

החדלו מלאכים להופיע אל בני האדם? וכי מנע אלהים מבני האדם את כח רוח הקדש? וכי יעשה זאת כל עוד ימשך הזמן, או כל עוד תהיה הארץ קיימת, או כל עוד יהיה על פניה איש אחד אשר יש להושיעו?

36 Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

הנני אומר לכם: לא! הן על ידי האמונה נעשים נסים; ועל ידי האמונה מופיעים מלאכים ומשמשים לפני בני אדם; לכן, אלו חדלו הדברים האלה, אוי לבני האדם, כי זאת מפני חסר אמונה והכל לשווא.

37 Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

כי אין איש יכול להושיע, כדברי המשיח, כי אם בהיות לו אמונה בשמו; לכן, אלו חדלו הדברים האלה, חדלה אף האמונה; ומה נורא מצב בני האדם כי מצבם הוא כאלו לא חלה גאולה.

38 For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

אך הנה, אחי היקרים, סבור אני כי טובים אתם מזה, יען אשר רואה אני כי הנכם בעלי אמונה במשיח מפני ענוותכם; כי אם אין לכם אמונה בו, אינכם ראויים להמנות עם עם כנסיתו.

39 But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

- ועוד, אחי היקרים, רצוני לדבר אליכם על תקוה; כי איך תוכלו לקנות אמונה אם אין לכם תקוה?
- 40 And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?
- ומה הוא אשר תקוו לו? הנני אומר לכם, כי תהיה לכם תקוה על ידי כפרת המשיח וכח תחיתו מן המתים, להנשא לחיי עולם; וזאת מפני אמונתכם בו כפי דבר בריתו.
- 41 And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.
- על כן, אם יש לאדם אמונה, הכרח כי תהיה לו תקוה; כי בלי אמונה לא יכולה להיות כל תקוה.
- 42 Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.
- ועוד, הנני אומר לכם כי לא תהיה לאדם אמונה ותקוה, כי אם בהיותו ענו ושפל רוח.
- 43 And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.
- ואם לא יהיה כן לשוא אמונתו ותקוהו, כי שום איש איננו נרצה לפני אלהים, כי אם הענו ושפל הרוח; ואם יהיה איש ענו ושפל רוח, ומתודה בכח רוח הקדש כי ישוע הוא המשיח, הכרח כי יהיה לו חסד, כי אם אין לו חסד כריק הוא; על כן חייב להיות לו חסד.
- 44 If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly of heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.
- וחסד הוא סבלן ואדיב ואיננו צר עין ואיננו מתנפח בגאווה, איננו מבקש בעבור עצמו ואיננו מתעורר בקלות לכעס ואיננו זומם רע ואין לו ששון בעוון; כי אם הוא שמח באמת ונושא בכל משא ומאמין לכל ומקנה לכל ומתמיד באיתנותו בפני הכל.
- 45 And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.
- לכן, אחי היקרים, אם אין בכם חסד, כריק אתם, כי לעולם אין החסד כושל. על כן דבקו בחסד, אשר הוא הגדול מכל, כי הכל יכשל וימוט;
- 46 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—
- ואולם החסד הוא אהבת המשיח הזכה, המתמידה לעולם; וכל אשר ימצא בו חסד ביום האחרון, טוב יהיה לו.
- 47 But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.
- על כן, אחי היקרים, התפללו אל האב בכל עצמת לבבכם, בעבור תמלאו באהבה הזאת, אשר העניק הוא לכל ההולכים הנאמנים אחר בנו, ישוע המשיח, בעבור תהיו לבני אלהים; ובעבור נהיה כמוהו כאשר יופיע, ונראהו כאשר הוא; ובעבור נקנה לנו את התקוה הזאת ונטהר, אכן, כפי אשר הוא טהור. אמן.
- 48 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

ח

8

- זאת אגרת אבי, מורמון, אשר כתב אלי, מורוני; והיא נכתבה אלי זמן מה לאחר הקראי לשרות. וכה הוא כתב אלי לאמר:
- בני אהובי, מורוני, אני שמח מאד כי נשא אדוניך ישוע המשיח פניו אליה, וקראך לשרותו ולעבודת קדשו.
- אני זוכר אותך תמיד בתפילתי ומתפיל תמיד אל אלהים, האב, בשם בנו הקדוש, ישוע, כי בטובו אשר ללא קץ ובחסדו ישמרך על ידי התמדת האמונה בשמו עד הקץ.
- ועתה, בני, אדבר אליך בענין המעציבני עד מאד; כי צר לי על המחלוקות אשר התעוררו בקרבכם.
- כי, אם נודעה לי האמת, היו בקרבכם מחלוקות באשר להטבלת ילדיכם הקטנים.
- והנה, בני, רצוני כי תעמל בשקידה למען תוסר השגיאה הגדולה הזאת מתוכם, כי לתכלית הזאת כתבתי את האגרת הזאת.
- כי מיד אחר אשר נודעו לי הדברים האלה עליכם, דרשתי ביהוה על הענין הזה. ודבר יהוה היה אלי בכם רוח הקדש, לאמר:
- שמע את דברי המשיח, גואלך, אדוניך ואלהיך. הן לא באתי אל העולם לקרא את הצדיקים לתשובה, כי אם את החוטאים. לא הבריאים צריכים רופא, כי אם החולים. לכן, ילדים קטנים הם תמים, כי אינם יכולים לבצע חטא; על כן, מוסרת מהם בי קללת אדם, ואין היא תקפה לגביהם; וכן בי מוסר חק המילה.
- ובאפן הזה גלתה לי רוח הקדש את דבר אלהים; לכן, בני אהובי, יודע אני כי הטבלתכם ילדים קטנים היא לעג לרש לפני אלהים.
- והנני אומר לך כי את הדבר הזה תלמדו: תשובה והטבלה לאשר נושאים באחריות יכולים לבצע חטא; אכן, למדו הורים כי
- 1 An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:
- 2 My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.
- 3 I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.
- 4 And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.
- 5 For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.
- 6 And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.
- 7 For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:
- 8 Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.
- 9 And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.
- 10 Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and

מורוני ח:יא-כ

- עליהם לשוב מחטא ולהטביל, ולהשפיל עצמם כילדיהם הקטנים, והם יושעו בלם, עם ילדיהם הקטנים.
- 11 And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.
- 12 But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!
- 13 Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.
- 14 Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity, for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.
- 15 For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.
- 16 Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.
- 17 And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.
- 18 For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.
- 19 Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.
- 20 And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.
- והנני אומר לה, כי הסובר כי על ילדים קטנים להטביל שרי במררת רש ובכבלי עוון, כי אין לו כל אמונה, או תקווה, ואף לא חסד; על כן אם יכרת וזאת מחשבתו, שאלה ירד.
- כי נוראה רשעת האומר כי אלהים מושיע ילד אחד מפני הטבילה, ואלו וזולתו יאבד כי אינו מטביל.
- אוי לאלה המעוותים את דרכי יהוה באופן הזה, כי הם יאבדו אם לא ישובו מחטאייהם. הנני מדבר בתקוה, כי לי הסמכות מאת אלהים; אינני ירא מה יעשה לי אדם; כי אהבה שלמה מסירה כל מורא.
- הן מלאתי חסד, אשר הוא אהבת עולם; על כן כל הילדים שוים בעיני. אכן, אוהב אני ילדים קטנים אהבה שלמה; וכלם שווים ולהם חלק בישועה.
- כי יודע אני כי אין אלהים נושא פנים, ואף איננו הויה משתנה; וכי הוא בלתי משתנה, מעולם ועד עולמי עולמים.
- אין ילדים קטנים יכולים לשוב מחטא; לכן רשעה נוראה לשלל מהם את חמלת אלהים הזכה, כי הם בלם חיים בו מפני חמלתו.
- והאומר כי על ילדים קטנים להטביל, מכחש בחמלת המשיח, ושולל את הכפרה אשר מאתו ואת כח גאלתו.

- 21 **אוי לְכַאֲלָה כִּי הֵם בְּסִכְנַת מוֹת, שְׂאוּל וְיִסּוּרֵי עוֹלָם. אוֹמֵר אֲנִי זֹאת בְּתוֹקָה, כְּאֲשֶׁר צִוֵּנִי אֱלֹהִים. שְׁמְעוּ אֶת דְּבָרִי וְשִׁיתוּ לְבַבְכֶּם לָהֶם, לְבַל יַעֲמְדוּ עֲלֵיכֶם לִפְנֵי כֹס הַמִּשְׁפָּט אֲשֶׁר לַמֶּשִׁיחַ.**
 21 **Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.**
- 22 **הֵן כָּל הַיְלָדִים הַקְּטָנִים חַיִּים בַּמֶּשִׁיחַ, וְכֵן כָּל אֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר הֵם בְּלִי חֹק. כִּי כֹחַ הַנִּצְלָה בָּא עַל כָּל אֲשֶׁר אֵין הַחֹק חָל עֲלֵיהֶם; עַל כֵּן זֶה אֲשֶׁר לֹא נִמְצָא אֲשֶׁם, אוֹ אֲשֶׁר אֵין עָלָיו כָּל הָרָשָׁעָה, אֵינָנו יָכוֹל לָשׁוּב מִחֲטָא; וְאֵין כָּל תּוֹעֵלַת בְּהִטְבָּלָתוֹ;**
 22 **For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—**
- 23 **כִּי זֶה לַעֲג לִפְנֵי אֱלֹהִים, וּלְכַחַשׁ בְּרַחֲמֵי הַמֶּשִׁיחַ וּבְכַח רִיחַ קֹדֶשׁ, וּלְשִׁים מִבְּטָח בַּמַּעֲשִׂים רִיקִים.**
 23 **But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.**
- 24 **הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, אֵין לַעֲשׂוֹת אֶת הַדָּבָר הַזֶּה; כִּי תִשׁוּבָה הִיא לְאֲשֶׁר חָל עֲלֵיהֶם אֲשֶׁם אוֹ לְאֲשֶׁר מְקַלְלִים עַל פְּרִיצַת הַחֹק.**
 24 **Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.**
- 25 **וּבְכוּרֵי הַתִּשְׁוּבָה הֵם הַטְּבָלָה; וְהַטְּבָלָה בָּאָה עַל יְדֵי אֱמֻנָה לְקִיּוֹם הַמִּצְוֹת. וְקִיּוֹם הַמִּצְוֹת מְבִיא מַחִילַת חֲטָאִים.**
 25 **And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;**
- 26 **וּמַחִילַת חֲטָאִים מְבִיאָה עֲנוּה וְשִׁפְלוּת רוּחַ; וּמִפְּנֵי עֲנוּה וְשִׁפְלוּת רוּחַ בָּאָה לְשִׁרְוֹת רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ. וְהִיא הַמְּנַחֶמֶת הַמְּמַלֵּאת בְּתוֹקָה וְאַהֲבָה שְׁלֵמָה, אַהֲבָה הַמְּתַמִּידָה עַל יְדֵי שְׁקִידָה בְּתַפְלָה, עַד בּוֹא הַקֵּץ, כְּאֲשֶׁר יִשְׁכְּנוּ כָּל הַקְּדוֹשִׁים עִם אֱלֹהִים.**
 26 **And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.**
- 27 **הִנֵּה, בְּנִי, עוֹד אוֹסִיף לְכַתֵּב לָךְ, אִם לֹא אֶצְא בְּקִרּוֹב אֶל הַלְּמָנִיתִים. הִנֵּה, גִּאוּת הָעַם הַזֶּה, עִם נָפִי, חָרְצָה אֶת כָּלִיוָנָם, אִם לֹא יִשׁוּבוּ מִרַעְתָּם.**
 27 **Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.**
- 28 **הַתְּפַלֵּל לְמַעַנָם, בְּנִי, כִּי יִשׁוּבוּ מִחֲטָאֵיהֶם. אֲדָ תֵרָד אֲנִי כִּי תִדַּל רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ לְהַתְּאַמֵּץ עִמָּם; וּבְחֻלָּק הָאֶרֶץ הַזֶּה הֵם אֵף מְבַקְשִׁים לְבַטֵּל כָּל כֹּחַ וְסִמְכוּת הַבָּאִים מֵאֵת אֱלֹהִים, וּמְכַחֲשִׁים הֵם בְּרוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.**
 28 **Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.**
- 29 **וְאַחֵר מְאֻסָּם, בְּנִי, בִּידֵיעָה כֹּה גְדוֹלָה, בְּמַהֲרָה יֵאָבְדוּ, וְזֹאת לְקִיּוֹם אֶת הַנְּבוּאוֹת אֲשֶׁר יֵצְאוּ מִפִּי הַנְּבִיאִים וּמִפִּי מוֹשִׁיעֵנו עֲצָמוֹ.**
 29 **And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.**

- שְׁלוֹם עָלֶיךָ, בְּנִי, עַד אֲשֶׁר אוֹסִיף כָּתוֹב אֵלֶיךָ, אוֹ אֲשׁוּב לְרֹאוֹתְךָ. אָמֵן.
- 30 Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

ט

9

- בְּנִי, אֶהוּבִי, כּוֹתֵב אֲנִי אֵלֶיךָ שֵׁנִית לְמַעַן תִּדְעַה כִּי עוֹדֵנִי חַי; וְאוֹלָם אֶכְתֹּב בְּזֶה דְּבַר־מָה עַל עֲנִין חָמוּר.
- 1 My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.
- הִנֵּה, הִיא לִי קָרֵב מִרַעַם הַלְּמָנִיטִים וְלֹא הִכְרַעְנוּם. אֶרְחֵאֲנִטוֹס נָפַל בַּחֶרֶב, וְכֵן לִוְרָם וְאֶמְרוֹן; אֲכֹן, אֲבִדְנוּ מִסָּפָר רַב מִמִּבְחָר אֲנָשֵׁינוּ.
- 2 For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי, יִרְאֵתִי פֶן יִשְׁמִידוּ הַלְּמָנִיטִים אֶת הָעָם הַזֶּה; כִּי אֵין הֵם שׁוֹבִים מִרְעַתָּם, וְהַשָּׁטָן מַעֲוֹרֵרם תָּמִיד לְזַעַם זֶה עַל זֶה.
- 3 And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.
- הִנֵּנִי עֹמֵל עִמָּם תָּמִיד; וּבְדַבְרִי אֶת דְּבַר אֱלֹהִים בְּתִקְוָה הֵם מִרְעִידִים וְכוֹעֲסִים עָלַי; וְכֹאֲשֶׁר אֲדַבֵּר בְּלֹא תִקְוָה הֵם מִקְשִׁים אֶת לְבָבם עָלַי. עַל כֵּן חָרַד אֲנִי פֶן יִחְדַּל רוּחַ יְהוָה לְהִתְאַמֵּץ עִמָּם.
- 4 Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.
- כִּי כֹה גָדוֹל כְּעֵסָם, עַד אֲשֶׁר נִרְאָה בְּעֵינַי כִּי אֵין הֵם יֹרְאִים אֶת הַמָּוֶת; וְהֵם אֲבָדוּ אֶת אֲהֶבְתָּם אִישׁ לְרֵעֵהוּ; וְתָמִיד צָמְאִים הֵם לָדָם וּלְנֶקֶם.
- 5 For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.
- וְעַתָּה, בְּנִי אֶהוּבִי, עַל אֵף כִּי קִשִּׁים הֵם, הֵבִיא נְעֻמָּה בְּשִׁקְדָּה; כִּי אִם נִחְדַּל מִעֲמָלְנוּ, נִצָּא חַיִּיבִים בְּדִין, כִּי יֵשׁ לָנוּ עֲבוּדָה אֲשֶׁר עָלֵינוּ לְבַצֵּעָה בְּעוֹדֵנוּ נִמְצָאִים בְּמִשְׁכַּן הַחֹמֶר הַזֶּה, בְּעִבּוֹר נִכְנִיעַ אֶת אוֹיֵב כָּל הַצִּדְקָה, וְנִנְיַח אֶת נַשְׁמוֹתֵינוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים.
- 6 And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.
- וְעַתָּה אֶכְתֹּב דְּבַר־מָה עַל סִבְלוֹת הָעָם הַזֶּה. כִּי נֹדַע לִי מֵאֵת עֲמוּרוֹן כִּי שָׁבוּ הַלְּמָנִיטִים שְׁבוּיִים רַבִּים, אֲשֶׁר לָקְחוּ מִמִּגְדַּל שְׁרִיצָה; וְהָיוּ בָּהֶם גְּבָרִים וְנָשִׁים וְיִלְדִים.
- 7 And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherriyah; and there were men, women, and children.
- וְאֵת בְּעָלֵי הַנָּשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה וְאֵת אֲבוֹת הַיִּלְדִּים הֵם הָרְגוּ; וְהֵם מֵאֲכִילִים אֶת הַנָּשִׁים בְּבֶשֶׁר בְּעָלֵיהֶן, וְאֵת הַיִּלְדִּים בְּבֶשֶׁר אֲבוֹתֵיהֶם; וְאֵין הֵם מְשָׁקִים אוֹתָם מַיִם, כִּי אִם מַעַט.
- 8 And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.
- וְאַף כִּי גְדוֹלָה תּוֹעֲבַת הַלְּמָנִיטִים הַזֹּאת, אֵין הִיא עוֹלָה עַל תּוֹעֲבַת אֲנָשֵׁינוּ בְּמוֹרִיאֲנוֹס.
- 9 And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of

כי הנה, הם שבו רבות מבנות הלמנים; ואחר אשר שללו מהן את היקר והנעלה מכל, את צניעותן ותמדתן,

the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

ואחר עשותם את המעשה הזה, הם רצחו אותן באפן אכזרי מאד, בענותם את גופן עד מות; ואחר עשותם כן, הם טורפים את בשרן כמו חיות טרף, מפני קשי לבם. והם עושים זאת כאות גבורה.

10 And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

אהה, בני אהובי, איכה יכול עם כזה, חסר תרבות,

11 O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

ורק לפני שנים אחדות הם היו עם תרבותי ונעים הליכות,

12 (And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightful people)

אהה, בני, איכה יכול עם כזה, המתענג בתועבה כה רבה,

13 But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

איכה נצפה כי ימנע אלהים את ידו במשפט עלינו?

14 How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

הנה, לבי קורא: אוי לעם הזה. בואה נא במשפט אלהים, והסתור את חטאיהם ואת רשעתם ואת תועבותיהם מפניך!

15 Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

והנה, בני, אלמנות רבות ובנותיהן נשארו בשריצה; ואת חלק הצידה אשר לא נשארו עמם הלמנים, הנה, צבא זנפני נשא, ואותן השאיר נודדות אנה ואנה, לבקש מזון; ונשים זקנות רבות מתעלפות בדרךים ומתות.

16 And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

והצבא אשר עמי חלש; וחיל הלמנים נמצא ביני ובין שריצה; וכל אשר ברחו אל צבא אהרן, נפלו קרבן לפראותם הנוראה.

17 And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

אהה, שחיתות עמי! הם חסרי משמעת וחסרי רחמים. הן רק בן אדם אני, ורק כח אדם לי, ואינני יכול עוד לאכוף את פקדוטי.

18 O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

והם התעצמו בעקשותם; וכלם כאחד פראים, ואין הם חסים על איש, זקן או צעיר; והם מתענגים על כל דבר, וזלת אשר הוא טוב. וסבל נשינו וילדינו על כל פני הארץ הזאת עולה על כל סבל; אכן, לא תוכל לשון לספר זאת, ולא נהן אף לכתבם.

19 And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

מורוני ט:כ-י:ב

- ועתה, בני, לא אוסיף להתעבב על תאור המרצה הנורא הזה; הן יודע אתה את רשעת העם הזה; אכן, יודע אתה כי אין להם כל חק, ואטומי רגש הם; וכי רשעתם עולה על רשעת הלמנים.
- 20 And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.
- הנה, בני, אינני יכול להיות להם מליץ ישר לפני אלהים פן יכני.
- 21 Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.
- ואולם עליך, בני, הנני ממליץ לפני אלהים, ובוטח אני במשיח כי תושע. ואני מתפלל אל אלהים כי יציל את נפשו, ותעיד על שובת העם הזה אליו, או על כליונם המחלט; כי ידעתי כי אבוד יאבדו, בלתי אם ינחמו וישובו אליו.
- 22 But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.
- ואם יאבדו, יהיה זה כמקרה הירדים, על זדון לבם, בבקשם דם ונקם.
- 23 And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.
- ואם יאבדו, הן יודעים אנחנו כי רבים מאחינו ערקו ממנו אל הלמנים, ורבים עוד יערכו אליהם; על כן, כתב נא דברים אחדים, אם תנצל אתה, ואני אמות ולא אראך; אך סבור אני כי עד מהרה אראך, כי בידי כתבי קדש אשר חפץ אני למסר לידך.
- 24 And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.
- בני, היה נאמן למשיח; ואל יעציבו הדברים אשר כתבתי, להורידך אלי קבר, יהי רצון כי ישאף המשיח, וכי ישכנו בדעתך לעולם סבלותיו ומותו, והראותו את גופו לאבותינו, ורחמיו וארך אפיו והתקנה לזכות בתפארתו ובחיי עולם.
- 25 My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.
- ויהי רצון כי יחול עליך לעולם חסד אלהים האב, אשר כסאו בגבהי מרומים, וחסד אדונו ישוע המשיח, היושב לימין גבורתו, עד אשר יכנעו לו כל הדברים. אמן.
- 26 And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

י

10

- ועתה, אני, מורוני, כותב דבר-מה אשר הוא טוב בעיני; ואני כותב לאחי הלמנים. רצוני כי ידעו כי יותר מארבע מאות ועשרים שנה חלפו מעת נתן האות לבוא המשיח.
- 1 Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.
- ואני חותם את הכתבים האלה, אחר דברי אליכם דברים מעשים כדרך הפצרה.
- 2 And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

- 3 Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down unto the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.
- הַנִּי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם כִּי בְקִרְאַתְכֶּם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, אִם יִהְיֶה זֶה בְּחִכְמַת אֱלֹהִים כִּי תִקְרְאוּם, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ מִה רַחוּם יְהוָה לִבְנֵי הָאָדָם, מֵעַתַּת בְּרִיאַת אָדָם וְעַד יוֹם קִבְּלָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה, וּתְהַרְהֲרוּ בְּזֹאת בְּלִבְכֶּם.
- 4 And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם כִּי בְקִבְּלָכֶם אֶת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה תִּשְׁאַלּוּ אֶת אֱלֹהִים, אֵב הָעוֹלָמִים, בְּשֵׁם הַמָּשִׁיחַ, אִם אֵין הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֱמֶת. וְאִם תִּשְׁאַלּוּ בְּלִב שָׁלֵם, בְּכֹנֶה כֹנֶה, בְּהִיּוֹת לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה בַּמָּשִׁיחַ, יִגְלֶה הוּא לָכֶם אֱמֶת זֹאת בְּכֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ.
- 5 And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.
- וּבְכֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ תִּדְעוּ אֶת אֱמֶת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים.
- 6 And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.
- וְכָל דָּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא טוֹב, צוּדִק וְדָבָר אֱמֶת הוּא; עַל כֵּן, דָּבָר אֲשֶׁר הוּא טוֹב לֹא יִכְחַשׁ בַּמָּשִׁיחַ, כִּי אִם יֵאשֶׁר אֶת קִיּוּמוֹ.
- 7 And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.
- וְאַתֶּם תִּדְעוּ בְּכֹחַ רוּחַ הַקֹּדֶשׁ כִּי הוּא מֵיִם; עַל כֵּן אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם לְבַל תִּכְחַשׁוּ בְּכֹחַ אֱלֹהִים; כִּי הוּא פּוֹעֵל בְּכֹחַ, כְּפִי אֱמוּנַת בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, וְאַחַד הוּא, הַיּוֹם וּמָחָר, וְלָעוֹלָם.
- 8 And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.
- וְעוֹד, אֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי, לְבַל תִּכְחַשׁוּ בְּמַתָּנוֹת אֱלֹהִים, כִּי רַבּוֹת הֵן, וּבָאוֹת הֵן מֵאוֹתוֹ הָאֱלֹהִים. וְהַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה מְעַנְקוֹת בְּדַרְכִּים שׁוֹנוֹת, אֲפֹר אוֹתוֹ הָאֱלֹהִים הוּא הַעוֹשֶׂה הַכֹּל בְּכֹל; וְהֵן נִתְּנוֹת עַל יְדֵי הַתְּגַלִּיּוֹת רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים אֶל בְּנֵי הָאָדָם, לְהוֹעִילָם.
- 9 For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;
- הִנֵּה, לְאֶחָד נָתַן רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים, כִּי יִלְמַד אֶת דְּבַר הַחֲכָמָה;
- 10 And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;
- וּלְאַחֵר כִּי יִלְמַד אֶת דְּבַר הַדַּעַת, עַל יְדֵי אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ;
- 11 And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;
- וּלְאַחֵר, אֱמוּנָה רַבָּה מְאֹד; וּלְאַחֵר מַתַּת הַרְפּוּי, עַל יְדֵי אוֹתוֹ רוּחַ;
- 12 And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כִּי יַעֲשֶׂה נִפְלְאוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת;
- 13 And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כִּי יִנְבֵּא עַל כָּל הַדְּבָרִים;
- 14 And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;
- וּלְאַחֵר, רְאִיַת מַלְאָכִים וְרוּחוֹת שָׂרָת;
- 15 And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;
- וּלְאַחֵר, כָּל מִינֵי לְשׁוֹנוֹת;

- 16 And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.
- וְלֵאחֶר בְּאוּר שְׁפוֹת וּלְשׁוֹנוֹת שׁוֹנוֹת.
- 17 And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.
- וְכָל הַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה בָּאוֹת עַל יְדֵי רוּחַ הַמָּשִׁיחַ; וְהֵן בָּאוֹת אֶל כָּל אָדָם בְּפָנֵי עֲצָמוֹ, כַּפִּי רְצוֹנוֹ.
- 18 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי הַיְקָרִים, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי כָל מַתָּנָה טוֹבָה בָּאָה מֵאֵת הַמָּשִׁיחַ.
- 19 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.
- וְאֲנִי מִפְּצִיר בָּכֶם, אַחֵי הַיְקָרִים, כִּי תִזְכְּרוּ כִּי אֶחָד הוּא אֶתְמוֹל, הַיּוֹם, וְלְעוֹלָם, וְכִי כָל הַמַּתָּנוֹת הָאֵלֶּה, אֲשֶׁר עָלִיָּהֶן דִּבַּרְתִּי, אֲשֶׁר הֵן רוּחָנִיּוֹת, לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִחַדְלָנָה; אָכֵן, כָּל עוֹד קִנְיָם הָעוֹלָם, כִּי אִם מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה בְּנֵי הָאָדָם.
- 20 Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.
- עַל כֵּן הַכֶּרֶחַ הוּא כִּי תִהְיֶה אֱמוּנָה. וְאִם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה אֱמוּנָה, אִף הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה תִקְוָה. וְאִם הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי תִהְיֶה תִקְוָה, הַכֶּרֶחַ כִּי אִף יִהְיֶה חֶסֶד.
- 21 And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.
- וּבִלְתִּי אִם יִהְיֶה לָכֶם חֶסֶד, לֹא תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּשׁוּם אֶפֶן בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; אִף לֹא תוֹשְׁעוּ בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים אִם אֵין לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה; וְאִף אִם אֵין לָכֶם תִּקְוָה.
- 22 And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.
- וְאִם אֵין לָכֶם תִּקְוָה, שְׂרוּיִים אַתֶּם בְּיֹאשׁ; וְהַיֹּאשׁ בָּא מִפְּנֵי עֲוֹן.
- 23 And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.
- וְהַמָּשִׁיחַ אָכֵן דִּבֶּר אֶל אֲבוֹתֵינוּ לֵאמֹר: אִם יֵשׁ לָכֶם אֱמוּנָה, יְכוּלִים אַתֶּם לַעֲשׂוֹת אֵת כָּל הַדְּבָרִים אֲשֶׁר נְכוֹנִים הֵם בְּעֵינַי.
- 24 And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.
- וְעַתָּה אֲדַבֵּר אֶל כָּל קְצוֹת הָאָרֶץ, כִּי אִם יָבוֹא יוֹם אֲשֶׁר בּוֹ יִחַדְלוּ כֹחַ אֱלֹהִים וּמַתָּנוֹתָיו מִקִּרְבְּכֶם, יִהְיֶה זֶה מִפְּנֵי חֶסֶר אֱמוּנָה.
- 25 And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.
- וְאֹי לְבְנֵי הָאָדָם אִם כֵּן יִהְיֶה; כִּי לֹא יִהְיֶה בָכֶם אִישׁ עוֹשֶׂה טוֹב, אִף אִישׁ אֶחָד. כִּי אִם יִהְיֶה בָכֶם אִישׁ עוֹשֶׂה טוֹב, הוּא, אָכֵן, יַעֲלֶל בְּכַח אֱלֹהִים וּבְמַתָּתוֹ.
- 26 And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.
- וְאֹי לְאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר יִבְטְלוּ אֵת הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וְיָמוּתוּ, כִּי בְּחַטָּאִים יָמוּתוּ, וְלֹא תִהְיֶה לָהֶם יְשׁוּעָה בְּמַלְכוּת אֱלֹהִים; וְאֲנִי אוֹמֵר זֹאת עַל פִּי דִבַּר הַמָּשִׁיחַ, וְאֵינִי מְכַזֵּב.

- 27 ואני מפציר בכם לזכר את הדברים האלה; כי במהרה יבוא המועד אשר תדעו כי אני אני מכזב, כי תראוני ליד כס המשפט אשר לאלהים; וכה יאמר אליכם יהוה אלהים: הלא הודעתים את דברי, אשר נכתבו ביד האיש הזה, באיש הקורא מן המתים, אכן, כדבר איש מן העפר?
- 28 הנני מודיעכם את הדברים האלה למען קיום הנבואות. הנה, הם יצאו מפי אלהי העולמים, ודברו ולחש מדור אל דור.
- 29 ואלהים יראה לכם כי את אשר כתבתי אמת הוא.
- 30 ועוד אני מפציר בכם כי תבואו אל המשיח, ותחזיקו בכל מתת טוב, וכי לא תגעו במתת רע ובדבר טמא.
- 31 עורי, קומי מעפר, ירושלם; יאה, ופני בגדי תפארתך, בת ציון; חזקי יתדותיך, והרחיבי את גבולך לעולם לכל תפלמי עוד, בעבור יקומו בריתות אב העולמים, אשר פרת עמך, בית ישראל.
- 32 אכן, בואו אל המשיח, והעשו משלמים בו, והמנעו מכל עולה; ואם תמנעו מכל עולה, ותאהבו את אלהים בכל מאדכם ובכל דעתכם ובכל כחכם, אזי יספיק לכם חסדו בעבור תעשו, על ידי חסדו, משלמים במשיח. ואם תהיו משלמים במשיח על ידי חסד אלהים, כחש לא תכחשו בשום אופן בכל אלהים.
- 33 והנה, אם בחסד אלהים תעשו משלמים במשיח, ולא תכחשו בכלח, מקדשים תהיו במשיח בחסד אלהים, על ידי שפיכת דם המשיח אשר היא בברית האב למחילת חטאיכם, בעבור תהיו קדושים, ללא רבב.
- 34 ועתה, שולח אני לכל ברפת שלום. עד מהרה אלו לניח בגן עד אשר לאלהים, עד אשר ישבו נשמותי וגופי להתאחד, ואובא באויר כמנצח, לקבל את פניכם לפני כס המשפט הנעים אשר ליהוה הגדול, שופט החיים והמתים הנצחי. אמן.
- And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?
- I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.
- And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.
- And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.
- And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.
- Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.
- And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.
- And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.